The \LaTeX3 Sources

The \LaTeX Project*

Released 2022-02-05

Abstract

This is the reference documentation for the \texttt{expl3} programming environment. The \texttt{expl3} modules set up an experimental naming scheme for \LaTeX commands, which allow the \LaTeX programmer to systematically name functions and variables, and specify the argument types of functions.

The \TeX and \vTeX primitives are all given a new name according to these conventions. However, in the main direct use of the primitives is not required or encouraged: the \texttt{expl3} modules define an independent low-level \LaTeX3 programming language.

The \texttt{expl3} modules are designed to be loaded on top of \LaTeX2\epsilon. With an up-to-date \LaTeX2\epsilon kernel, this material is loaded as part of the format. The fundamental programming code can also be loaded with other \TeX formats, subject to restrictions on the full range of functionality.

*E-mail: latex-team@latex-project.org
## Contents

### I Introduction

1 Introduction to expl3 and this document
   1.1 Naming functions and variables ........................................ 2
   1.1.1 Scratch variables .................................................. 5
   1.1.2 Terminological inexactitude ...................................... 5
   1.2 Documentation conventions ........................................... 5
   1.3 Formal language conventions which apply generally ................. 7
   1.4 \TeX concepts not supported by \LaTeXe ................................ 7

### II Bootstrapping

2 The \texttt{l3bootstrap} package: Bootstrap code ....................... 9
   2.1 Using the \LaTeXe modules ........................................... 9

3 The \texttt{l3names} package: Namespace for primitives ............... 11
   3.1 Setting up the \LaTeXe programming language ...................... 11

### III Programming Flow

4 The \texttt{l3basics} package: Basic definitions ...................... 13
   4.1 No operation functions ............................................. 13
   4.2 Grouping material .................................................. 13
   4.3 Control sequences and functions .................................. 14
      4.3.1 Defining functions ........................................... 14
      4.3.2 Defining new functions using parameter text ................ 15
      4.3.3 Defining new functions using the signature ................. 17
      4.3.4 Copying control sequences .................................. 19
      4.3.5 Deleting control sequences ................................ 20
      4.3.6 Showing control sequences .................................. 20
      4.3.7 Converting to and from control sequences .................. 20
   4.4 Analysing control sequences ..................................... 22
   4.5 Using or removing tokens and arguments .......................... 23
      4.5.1 Selecting tokens from delimited arguments ................ 25
   4.6 Predicates and conditionals ...................................... 25
      4.6.1 Tests on control sequences ................................ 27
      4.6.2 Primitive conditionals ...................................... 27
   4.7 Starting a paragraph .............................................. 28
   4.8 Debugging support ................................................. 29
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>The \texttt{\LaTeX} \texttt{expansion} package: Argument expansion</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>Defining new variants</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2</td>
<td>Methods for defining variants</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3</td>
<td>Introducing the variants</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4</td>
<td>Manipulating the first argument</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>Manipulating two arguments</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>Manipulating three arguments</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.7</td>
<td>Unbraced expansion</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.8</td>
<td>Preventing expansion</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.9</td>
<td>Controlled expansion</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.10</td>
<td>Internal functions</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>The \texttt{\LaTeX} \texttt{sort} package: Sorting functions</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>Controlling sorting</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>The \texttt{\LaTeX} \texttt{tl-analysis} package: Analysing token lists</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>The \texttt{\LaTeX} \texttt{regex} package: Regular expressions in \TeX</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>Syntax of regular expressions</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.1.1</td>
<td>Regular expression examples</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.1.2</td>
<td>Characters in regular expressions</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.1.3</td>
<td>Characters classes</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.1.4</td>
<td>Structure: alternatives, groups, repetitions</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.1.5</td>
<td>Matching exact tokens</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.1.6</td>
<td>Miscellaneous</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2</td>
<td>Syntax of the replacement text</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3</td>
<td>Pre-compiling regular expressions</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.4</td>
<td>Matching</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.5</td>
<td>Submatch extraction</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.6</td>
<td>Replacement</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.7</td>
<td>Scratch regular expressions</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.8</td>
<td>Bugs, misfeatures, future work, and other possibilities</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>The \texttt{\LaTeX} \texttt{prg} package: Control structures</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.1</td>
<td>Defining a set of conditional functions</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2</td>
<td>The boolean data type</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.1</td>
<td>Scratch booleans</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.3</td>
<td>Boolean expressions</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.4</td>
<td>Logical loops</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>Producing multiple copies</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.6</td>
<td>Detecting \TeX's mode</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.7</td>
<td>Primitive conditionals</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.8</td>
<td>Nestable recursions and mappings</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.8.1</td>
<td>Simple mappings</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.9</td>
<td>Internal programming functions</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
10 The l3sys package: System/runtime functions
  10.1 The name of the job ........................................ 72
  10.2 Date and time .............................................. 72
  10.3 Engine ...................................................... 73
  10.4 Output format .............................................. 73
  10.5 Platform ..................................................... 74
  10.6 Random numbers ........................................... 74
  10.7 Access to the shell ....................................... 74
  10.8 Loading configuration data ............................... 75
    10.8.1 Final settings ...................................... 76

11 The l3msg package: Messages
  11.1 Creating new messages ................................. 77
  11.2 Customizable information for message modules ....... 78
  11.3 Contextual information for messages ................ 78
  11.4 Issuing messages ....................................... 80
    11.4.1 Messages for showing material .................. 83
    11.4.2 Expandable error messages ....................... 83
  11.5 Redirecting messages ................................... 83

12 The l3file package: File and I/O operations
  12.1 Input–output stream management ....................... 85
    12.1.1 Reading from files ................................ 87
    12.1.2 Writing to files .................................. 90
    12.1.3 Wrapping lines in output ......................... 92
    12.1.4 Constant input–output streams, and variables .. 93
    12.1.5 Primitive conditionals ............................ 93
  12.2 File operation functions ................................. 93

13 The l3luatex package: LuaTeX-specific functions ......... 98
  13.1 Breaking out to Lua .................................... 98
  13.2 Lua interfaces .......................................... 99

14 The l3legacy package: Interfaces to legacy concepts ... 100

IV Data types

15 The l3tl package: Token lists
  15.1 Creating and initialising token list variables ....... 102
  15.2 Adding data to token list variables .................. 103
  15.3 Token list conditionals ................................ 104
    15.3.1 Testing the first token ......................... 106
  15.4 Working with token lists as a whole ................ 107
    15.4.1 Using token lists ................................. 107
    15.4.2 Counting and reversing token lists .............. 108
    15.4.3 Viewing token lists .............................. 109
  15.5 Manipulating items in token lists .................... 110
    15.5.1 Mapping over token lists ....................... 110
    15.5.2 Head and tail of token lists .................... 112
20 The \texttt{l3int} package: Integers \hfill 155
20.1 Integer expressions \hfill 155
20.2 Creating and initialising integers \hfill 157
20.3 Setting and incrementing integers \hfill 158
20.4 Using integers \hfill 158
20.5 Integer expression conditionals \hfill 159
20.6 Integer expression loops \hfill 160
20.7 Integer step functions \hfill 162
20.8 Formatting integers \hfill 163
20.9 Converting from other formats to integers \hfill 164
20.10 Random integers \hfill 165
20.11 Viewing integers \hfill 166
20.12 Constant integers \hfill 166
20.13 Scratch integers \hfill 166
20.14 Direct number expansion \hfill 167
20.15 Primitive conditionals \hfill 167

21 The \texttt{l3flag} package: Expandable flags \hfill 169
21.1 Setting up flags \hfill 169
21.2 Expandable flag commands \hfill 170

22 The \texttt{l3clist} package: Comma separated lists \hfill 171
22.1 Creating and initialising comma lists \hfill 172
22.2 Adding data to comma lists \hfill 173
22.3 Modifying comma lists \hfill 174
22.4 Comma list conditionals \hfill 175
22.5 Mapping over comma lists \hfill 175
22.6 Using the content of comma lists directly \hfill 177
22.7 Comma lists as stacks \hfill 178
22.8 Using a single item \hfill 179
22.9 Viewing comma lists \hfill 180
22.10 Constant and scratch comma lists \hfill 180

23 The \texttt{l3token} package: Token manipulation \hfill 181
23.1 Creating character tokens \hfill 182
23.2 Manipulating and interrogating character tokens \hfill 183
23.3 Generic tokens \hfill 186
23.4 Converting tokens \hfill 187
23.5 Token conditionals \hfill 187
23.6 Peeking ahead at the next token \hfill 191
23.7 Description of all possible tokens \hfill 195
### 24 The \l3prop package: Property lists

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>24.1</td>
<td>Creating and initialising property lists</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.2</td>
<td>Adding and updating property list entries</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.3</td>
<td>Recovering values from property lists</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.4</td>
<td>Modifying property lists</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.5</td>
<td>Property list conditionals</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.6</td>
<td>Recovering values from property lists with branching</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.7</td>
<td>Mapping over property lists</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.8</td>
<td>Viewing property lists</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.9</td>
<td>Scratch property lists</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.10</td>
<td>Constants</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 25 The \l3skip package: Dimensions and skips

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>25.1</td>
<td>Creating and initialising \texttt{dim} variables</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.2</td>
<td>Setting \texttt{dim} variables</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.3</td>
<td>Utilities for dimension calculations</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.4</td>
<td>Dimension expression conditionals</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.5</td>
<td>Dimension expression loops</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.6</td>
<td>Dimension step functions</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.7</td>
<td>Using \texttt{dim} expressions and variables</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.8</td>
<td>Viewing \texttt{dim} variables</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.9</td>
<td>Constant dimensions</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.10</td>
<td>Scratch dimensions</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.11</td>
<td>Creating and initialising \texttt{skip} variables</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.12</td>
<td>Setting \texttt{skip} variables</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.13</td>
<td>Skip expression conditionals</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.14</td>
<td>Using \texttt{skip} expressions and variables</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.15</td>
<td>Viewing \texttt{skip} variables</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.16</td>
<td>Constant skips</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.17</td>
<td>Scratch skips</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.18</td>
<td>Inserting skips into the output</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.19</td>
<td>Creating and initialising \texttt{muskip} variables</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.20</td>
<td>Setting \texttt{muskip} variables</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.21</td>
<td>Using \texttt{muskip} expressions and variables</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.22</td>
<td>Viewing \texttt{muskip} variables</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.23</td>
<td>Constant muskips</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.24</td>
<td>Scratch muskips</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.25</td>
<td>Primitive conditional</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 26 The \l3keys package: Key–value interfaces

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26.1</td>
<td>Creating keys</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.2</td>
<td>Sub-dividing keys</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.3</td>
<td>Choice and multiple choice keys</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.4</td>
<td>Key usage scope</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.5</td>
<td>Setting keys</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.6</td>
<td>Handling of unknown keys</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.7</td>
<td>Selective key setting</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.8</td>
<td>Utility functions for keys</td>
<td>233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.9</td>
<td>Low-level interface for parsing key–val lists</td>
<td>233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Page</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27 The l3intarray package: fast global integer arrays</td>
<td>236</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.1 l3intarray documentation</td>
<td>236</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.1.1 Implementation notes</td>
<td>237</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28 The l3fp package: Floating points</td>
<td>238</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.1 Creating and initialising floating point variables</td>
<td>240</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.2 Setting floating point variables</td>
<td>240</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.3 Using floating points</td>
<td>241</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.4 Floating point conditionals</td>
<td>242</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.5 Floating point expression loops</td>
<td>244</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.6 Some useful constants, and scratch variables</td>
<td>246</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.7 Floating point exceptions</td>
<td>247</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.8 Viewing floating points</td>
<td>248</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.9 Floating point expressions</td>
<td>249</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.9.1 Input of floating point numbers</td>
<td>249</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.9.2 Precedence of operators</td>
<td>250</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.9.3 Operations</td>
<td>250</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.10 Disclaimer and roadmap</td>
<td>257</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29 The l3fparray package: fast global floating point arrays</td>
<td>260</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.1 l3fparray documentation</td>
<td>260</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 The l3ctab package: Category code tables</td>
<td>261</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.1 Creating and initialising category code tables</td>
<td>261</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.2 Using category code tables</td>
<td>261</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.3 Category code table conditionals</td>
<td>262</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.4 Constant category code tables</td>
<td>262</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V Text manipulation</td>
<td>263</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31 The l3unicode package: Unicode support functions</td>
<td>264</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32 The l3text package: text processing</td>
<td>265</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.1 Expanding text</td>
<td>265</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.2 Case changing</td>
<td>266</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.3 Removing formatting from text</td>
<td>267</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.4 Control variables</td>
<td>267</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI Typesetting</td>
<td>269</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Pages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>The <code>l3box</code> package: Boxes</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.1</td>
<td>Creating and initialising boxes</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.2</td>
<td>Using boxes</td>
<td>271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.3</td>
<td>Measuring and setting box dimensions</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.4</td>
<td>Box conditionals</td>
<td>273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.5</td>
<td>The last box inserted</td>
<td>273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.6</td>
<td>Constant boxes</td>
<td>273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.7</td>
<td>Scratch boxes</td>
<td>273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.8</td>
<td>Viewing box contents</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.9</td>
<td>Boxes and color</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.10</td>
<td>Horizontal mode boxes</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.11</td>
<td>Vertical mode boxes</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.12</td>
<td>Using boxes efficiently</td>
<td>277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.13</td>
<td>Affine transformations</td>
<td>278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.14</td>
<td>Primitive box conditionals</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>The <code>l3coffins</code> package: Coffin code layer</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.1</td>
<td>Creating and initialising coffins</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.2</td>
<td>Setting coffin content and poles</td>
<td>283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.3</td>
<td>Coffin affine transformations</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.4</td>
<td>Joining and using coffins</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.5</td>
<td>Measuring coffins</td>
<td>285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.6</td>
<td>Coffin diagnostics</td>
<td>285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.7</td>
<td>Constants and variables</td>
<td>286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>The <code>l3color</code> package: Color support</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.1</td>
<td>Color in boxes</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.2</td>
<td>Color models</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.3</td>
<td>Color expressions</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.4</td>
<td>Named colors</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.5</td>
<td>Selecting colors</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.6</td>
<td>Colors for fills and strokes</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.6.1</td>
<td>Coloring math mode material</td>
<td>292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.7</td>
<td>Multiple color models</td>
<td>292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.8</td>
<td>Exporting color specifications</td>
<td>293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.9</td>
<td>Creating new color models</td>
<td>293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.9.1</td>
<td>Color profiles</td>
<td>294</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>The <code>l3pdf</code> package: Core PDF support</td>
<td>295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.1</td>
<td>Objects</td>
<td>295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.2</td>
<td>Version</td>
<td>296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.3</td>
<td>Compression</td>
<td>297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.4</td>
<td>Destinations</td>
<td>297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII</td>
<td>Additions and removals</td>
<td>299</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 37 The \texttt{l3candidates} package: Experimental additions to \texttt{l3kernel}

- 37.1 Important notice .......................... 300
- 37.2 Additions to \texttt{l3box} ................. 301
- 37.3 Additions to \texttt{l3expansion} .......... 301
- 37.4 Additions to \texttt{l3fp} .................. 301
- 37.5 Additions to \texttt{l3file} ............... 302
- 37.6 Additions to \texttt{l3flag} ............... 302
- 37.7 Additions to \texttt{l3intarray} .......... 302
- 37.8 Additions to \texttt{l3msg} ............... 303
- 37.9 Additions to \texttt{l3prop} .............. 303
- 37.10 Additions to \texttt{l3prop} ............. 304
- 37.11 Additions to \texttt{l3seq} .............. 305
- 37.12 Additions to \texttt{l3sys} .............. 306
- 37.13 Additions to \texttt{l3tl} ............... 307
- 37.14 Additions to \texttt{l3token} .......... 308

### VIII Implementation

- 38 \texttt{l3bootstrap} implementation ............ 311
  - 38.1 Lua\TeX{}-specific code .................. 311
  - 38.2 The \texttt{pdfstrcmp} primitive in Xe\TeX{} .... 311
  - 38.3 Loading support Lua code ................ 312
  - 38.4 Engine requirements ..................... 312
  - 38.5 Extending allocators .................... 313
  - 38.6 The \texttt{luatex3} code environment ....... 314

- 39 \texttt{l3names} implementation .............. 316

- 40 \texttt{l3kernel-functions}: kernel-reserved functions ................. 342
  - 40.1 Internal kernel functions ............... 342
  - 40.2 Kernel backend functions ................ 348

- 41 \texttt{l3basics} implementation ............... 350
  - 41.1 Renaming some \TeX{} primitives (again) .... 350
  - 41.2 Defining some constants ................ 352
  - 41.3 Defining functions ..................... 352
  - 41.4 Selecting tokens ....................... 353
  - 41.5 Gobbling tokens from input .............. 355
  - 41.6 Debugging and patching later definitions .... 355
  - 41.7 Conditional processing and definitions .... 356
  - 41.8 Dissecting a control sequence .......... 362
  - 41.9 Exist or free ................................ 364
  - 41.10 Preliminaries for new functions .......... 366
  - 41.11 Defining new functions .................. 367
  - 41.12 Copying definitions .................... 369
  - 41.13 Undefining functions ................... 369
  - 41.14 Generating parameter text from argument count .... 370
  - 41.15 Defining functions from a given number of arguments .... 371
  - 41.16 Using the signature to define functions .... 372
41.17 Checking control sequence equality ................................. 374
41.18 Diagnostic functions .................................................. 374
41.19 Decomposing a macro definition ..................................... 376
41.20 Doing nothing functions .............................................. 377
41.21 Breaking out of mapping functions .................................. 377
41.22 Starting a paragraph .................................................. 378

42 \texttt{l3expansion} implementation ................................. 379
42.1 General expansion ...................................................... 379
42.2 Hand-tuned definitions .................................................. 383
42.3 Last-unbraced versions .................................................. 386
42.4 Preventing expansion .................................................... 388
42.5 Controlled expansion ................................................... 389
42.6 Emulating e-type expansion .......................................... 390
42.7 Defining function variants ............................................ 397
42.8 Definitions with the automated technique ............................ 407

43 \texttt{l3sort} implementation ........................................ 409
43.1 Variables .............................................................. 409
43.2 Finding available \texttt{\toks} registers .................................. 410
43.3 Protected user commands ............................................ 412
43.4 Merge sort ............................................................ 414
43.5 Expandable sorting .................................................... 417
43.6 Messages .............................................................. 422

44 \texttt{l3tl-analysis} implementation ................................. 425
44.1 Internal functions ...................................................... 425
44.2 Internal format .......................................................... 425
44.3 Variables and helper functions ...................................... 426
44.4 Plan of attack ........................................................... 428
44.5 Disabling active characters ......................................... 429
44.6 First pass ............................................................... 430
44.7 Second pass ............................................................. 435
44.8 Mapping through the analysis ....................................... 438
44.9 Showing the results .................................................... 438
44.10 Peeking ahead .......................................................... 441
44.11 Messages .............................................................. 446

45 \texttt{l3regex} implementation ........................................ 448
45.1 Plan of attack .......................................................... 448
45.2 Helpers ................................................................. 449
45.2.1 Constants and variables ....................................... 451
45.2.2 Testing characters ................................................ 452
45.2.3 Internal auxiliaries .............................................. 453
45.2.4 Character property tests .................................... 456
45.2.5 Simple character escape ...................................... 458
45.3 Compiling .............................................................. 463
45.3.1 Variables used when compiling ................................ 464
45.3.2 Generic helpers used when compiling ......................... 466
45.3.3 Mode ................................................................. 467
47 l3sys implementation
47.1 Kernel code ........................................ 574
   47.1.1 Detecting the engine .......................... 574
   47.1.2 Randomness ................................... 576
   47.1.3 Platform ...................................... 576
   47.1.4 Configurations ................................ 576
   47.1.5 Access to the shell ........................... 578
47.2 Dynamic (every job) code ........................... 581
   47.2.1 The name of the job ........................... 581
   47.2.2 Time and date ................................ 581
   47.2.3 Random numbers ............................... 582
   47.2.4 Access to the shell ........................... 583
   47.2.5 Held over from l3file ......................... 584
47.3 Last-minute code ................................... 584
   47.3.1 Detecting the output ......................... 585
   47.3.2 Configurations ................................. 585

48 l3msg implementation ................................... 587
48.1 Internal auxiliaries ................................. 587
48.2 Creating messages .................................. 587
48.3 Messages: support functions and text .............. 589
48.4 Showing messages: low level mechanism ............. 590
48.5 Displaying messages ................................ 592
48.6 Kernel-specific functions ......................... 601
48.7 Internal messages .................................. 602
48.8 Expandable errors .................................. 608
48.9 Message formatting ................................ 609

49 l3file implementation ................................ 610
49.1 Input operations .................................... 610
   49.1.1 Variables and constants ....................... 610
   49.1.2 Stream management ............................. 611
   49.1.3 Reading input ................................ 614
49.2 Output operations .................................. 617
   49.2.1 Variables and constants ....................... 617
   49.2.2 Internal auxiliaries ......................... 618
49.3 Stream management .................................. 618
   49.3.1 Deferred writing .............................. 620
   49.3.2 Immediate writing .............................. 620
   49.3.3 Special characters for writing ............... 621
   49.3.4 Hard-wrapping lines to a character count .... 622
49.4 File operations ..................................... 631
   49.4.1 Internal auxiliaries ......................... 633
49.5 GetIdInfo ........................................... 648
49.6 Checking the version of kernel dependencies ....... 649
49.7 Messages ........................................... 651
49.8 Functions delayed from earlier modules ............ 652
50 l3luatex implementation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>50.1</td>
<td>Breaking out to Lua</td>
<td>654</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.2</td>
<td>Messages</td>
<td>655</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.3</td>
<td>Lua functions for internal use</td>
<td>655</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.4</td>
<td>Preserving iniTex Lua data for runs</td>
<td>660</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

51 l3legacy Implementation

52 l3tl implementation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>52.1</td>
<td>Functions</td>
<td>664</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52.2</td>
<td>Constant token lists</td>
<td>666</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52.3</td>
<td>Adding to token list variables</td>
<td>666</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52.4</td>
<td>Internal quarks and quark-query functions</td>
<td>669</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52.5</td>
<td>Reassigning token list category codes</td>
<td>672</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52.6</td>
<td>Modifying token list variables</td>
<td>676</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52.7</td>
<td>Token list conditionals</td>
<td>676</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52.8</td>
<td>Mapping over token lists</td>
<td>681</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52.9</td>
<td>Using token lists</td>
<td>683</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52.10</td>
<td>Working with the contents of token lists</td>
<td>684</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52.11</td>
<td>The first token from a token list</td>
<td>687</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52.12</td>
<td>Token by token changes</td>
<td>692</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52.13</td>
<td>Using a single item</td>
<td>694</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52.14</td>
<td>Viewing token lists</td>
<td>697</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52.15</td>
<td>Internal scan marks</td>
<td>699</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52.16</td>
<td>Scratch token lists</td>
<td>699</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

53 l3str implementation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>53.1</td>
<td>Internal auxiliaries</td>
<td>700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53.2</td>
<td>Creating and setting string variables</td>
<td>701</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53.3</td>
<td>Modifying string variables</td>
<td>702</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53.4</td>
<td>String comparisons</td>
<td>703</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53.5</td>
<td>Mapping over strings</td>
<td>706</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53.6</td>
<td>Accessing specific characters in a string</td>
<td>708</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53.7</td>
<td>Counting characters</td>
<td>713</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53.8</td>
<td>The first character in a string</td>
<td>714</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53.9</td>
<td>String manipulation</td>
<td>715</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53.10</td>
<td>Viewing strings</td>
<td>717</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

54 l3str-convert implementation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>54.1</td>
<td>Helpers</td>
<td>718</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54.1.1</td>
<td>Variables and constants</td>
<td>718</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54.2</td>
<td>String conditionals</td>
<td>720</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54.3</td>
<td>Conversions</td>
<td>721</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54.3.1</td>
<td>Producing one byte or character</td>
<td>721</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54.3.2</td>
<td>Mapping functions for conversions</td>
<td>722</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54.3.3</td>
<td>Error-reporting during conversion</td>
<td>723</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54.3.4</td>
<td>Framework for conversions</td>
<td>724</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54.3.5</td>
<td>Byte unescape and escape</td>
<td>728</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54.3.6</td>
<td>Native strings</td>
<td>729</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54.3.7</td>
<td>clist</td>
<td>730</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td><code>l3clist implementation</code></td>
<td>830</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59.1</td>
<td>Removing spaces around items</td>
<td>831</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59.2</td>
<td>Allocation and initialisation</td>
<td>832</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59.3</td>
<td>Adding data to comma lists</td>
<td>834</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59.4</td>
<td>Comma lists as stacks</td>
<td>835</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59.5</td>
<td>Modifying comma lists</td>
<td>837</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59.6</td>
<td>Comma list conditionals</td>
<td>840</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59.7</td>
<td>Mapping over comma lists</td>
<td>841</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59.8</td>
<td>Using comma lists</td>
<td>845</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59.9</td>
<td>Using a single item</td>
<td>847</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59.10</td>
<td>Viewing comma lists</td>
<td>849</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59.11</td>
<td>Scratch comma lists</td>
<td>850</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td><code>l3token implementation</code></td>
<td>851</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60.1</td>
<td>Internal auxiliaries</td>
<td>851</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60.2</td>
<td>Manipulating and interrogating character tokens</td>
<td>851</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60.3</td>
<td>Creating character tokens</td>
<td>851</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60.4</td>
<td>Generic tokens</td>
<td>854</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60.5</td>
<td>Token conditionals</td>
<td>862</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60.6</td>
<td>Peeking ahead at the next token</td>
<td>863</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td><code>l3prop implementation</code></td>
<td>880</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61.1</td>
<td>Internal auxiliaries</td>
<td>881</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61.2</td>
<td>Allocation and initialisation</td>
<td>882</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61.3</td>
<td>Accessing data in property lists</td>
<td>884</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61.4</td>
<td>Property list conditionals</td>
<td>889</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61.5</td>
<td>Recovering values from property lists with branching</td>
<td>890</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61.6</td>
<td>Mapping over property lists</td>
<td>891</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61.7</td>
<td>Viewing property lists</td>
<td>892</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td><code>l3skip implementation</code></td>
<td>894</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.1</td>
<td>Length primitives renamed</td>
<td>894</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.2</td>
<td>Internal auxiliaries</td>
<td>894</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.3</td>
<td>Creating and initialising <code>dim</code> variables</td>
<td>894</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.4</td>
<td>Setting <code>dim</code> variables</td>
<td>895</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.5</td>
<td>Utilities for dimension calculations</td>
<td>896</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.6</td>
<td>Dimension expression conditionals</td>
<td>897</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.7</td>
<td>Dimension expression loops</td>
<td>899</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.8</td>
<td>Dimension step functions</td>
<td>900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.9</td>
<td>Using <code>dim</code> expressions and variables</td>
<td>902</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.10</td>
<td>Viewing <code>dim</code> variables</td>
<td>904</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.11</td>
<td>Constant dimensions</td>
<td>904</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.12</td>
<td>Scratch dimensions</td>
<td>904</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.13</td>
<td>Creating and initialising <code>skip</code> variables</td>
<td>904</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.14</td>
<td>Setting <code>skip</code> variables</td>
<td>904</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.15</td>
<td>Skip expression conditionals</td>
<td>906</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.16</td>
<td>Using <code>skip</code> expressions and variables</td>
<td>906</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.17</td>
<td>Inserting skips into the output</td>
<td>907</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.18</td>
<td>Viewing <code>skip</code> variables</td>
<td>908</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.19</td>
<td>Constant skips</td>
<td>908</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
75 l3fp-trig Implementation
  75.1 Direct trigonometric functions ........................................... 1130
    75.1.1 Filtering special cases ........................................... 1130
    75.1.2 Distinguishing small and large arguments ......................... 1133
    75.1.3 Small arguments ................................................... 1134
    75.1.4 Argument reduction in degrees .................................... 1134
    75.1.5 Argument reduction in radians .................................... 1135
    75.1.6 Computing the power series ....................................... 1143
  75.2 Inverse trigonometric functions ....................................... 1145
    75.2.1 Arctangent and arccotangent .................................... 1146
    75.2.2 Arcsine and arccosine .......................................... 1151
    75.2.3 Arccosecant and arcsecant ...................................... 1153

76 l3fp-convert implementation
  76.1 Dealing with tuples .................................................... 1155
  76.2 Trimming trailing zeros ............................................... 1155
  76.3 Scientific notation ................................................... 1156
  76.4 Decimal representation ............................................... 1157
  76.5 Token list representation ............................................ 1159
  76.6 Formatting ............................................................. 1160
  76.7 Convert to dimension or integer ...................................... 1160
  76.8 Convert from a dimension ............................................. 1161
  76.9 Use and eval .......................................................... 1162
  76.10 Convert an array of floating points to a comma list .............. 1163

77 l3fp-random Implementation .............................................. 1165
  77.1 Engine support ........................................................ 1165
  77.2 Random floating point ............................................... 1169
  77.3 Random integer ........................................................ 1169

78 l3farray implementation .................................................. 1175
  78.1 Allocating arrays ..................................................... 1175
  78.2 Array items ............................................................ 1176

79 l3ctab implementation ..................................................... 1180
  79.1 Variables ............................................................... 1180
  79.2 Allocating category code tables .................................... 1181
  79.3 Saving category code tables ......................................... 1182
  79.4 Using category code tables .......................................... 1183
  79.5 Category code table conditionals ................................... 1188
  79.6 Constant category code tables ..................................... 1189
  79.7 Messages ............................................................... 1191

80 l3unicode implementation ................................................ 1193

81 l3text implementation ..................................................... 1197
  81.1 Internal auxiliaries .................................................... 1197
  81.2 Utilities ................................................................. 1198
  81.3 Configuration variables .............................................. 1201
  81.4 Expansion to formatted text ......................................... 1202
82 \texttt{\texttt{l3}text-case implementation} \hspace{1cm} 1210
82.1 Case changing \hspace{1cm} 1210
82.2 Case changing data for 8-bit engines \hspace{1cm} 1231

83 \texttt{\texttt{l3}text-purify implementation} \hspace{1cm} 1243
83.1 Purifying text \hspace{1cm} 1243
83.2 Accent and letter-like data for purifying text \hspace{1cm} 1249

84 \texttt{\texttt{l3}box implementation} \hspace{1cm} 1257
84.1 Support code \hspace{1cm} 1257
84.2 Creating and initialising boxes \hspace{1cm} 1257
84.3 Measuring and setting box dimensions \hspace{1cm} 1258
84.4 Using boxes \hspace{1cm} 1259
84.5 Box conditionals \hspace{1cm} 1260
84.6 The last box inserted \hspace{1cm} 1260
84.7 Constant boxes \hspace{1cm} 1260
84.8 Scratch boxes \hspace{1cm} 1261
84.9 Viewing box contents \hspace{1cm} 1261
84.10 Horizontal mode boxes \hspace{1cm} 1262
84.11 Vertical mode boxes \hspace{1cm} 1264
84.12 Affine transformations \hspace{1cm} 1267

85 \texttt{\texttt{l3}coffins Implementation} \hspace{1cm} 1277
85.1 Coffins: data structures and general variables \hspace{1cm} 1277
85.2 Basic coffin functions \hspace{1cm} 1278
85.3 Measuring coffins \hspace{1cm} 1284
85.4 Coffins: handle and pole management \hspace{1cm} 1284
85.5 Coffins: calculation of pole intersections \hspace{1cm} 1288
85.6 Affine transformations \hspace{1cm} 1290
85.7 Aligning and typesetting of coffins \hspace{1cm} 1298
85.8 Coffin diagnostics \hspace{1cm} 1303
85.9 Messages \hspace{1cm} 1309

86 \texttt{\texttt{l3}color Implementation} \hspace{1cm} 1310
86.1 Basics \hspace{1cm} 1310
86.2 Predefined color names \hspace{1cm} 1311
86.3 Setup \hspace{1cm} 1312
86.4 Utility functions \hspace{1cm} 1312
86.5 Model conversion \hspace{1cm} 1313
86.6 Color expressions \hspace{1cm} 1314
86.7 Selecting colors (and color models) \hspace{1cm} 1321
86.8 Math color \hspace{1cm} 1323
86.9 Fill and stroke color \hspace{1cm} 1326
86.10 Defining named colors \hspace{1cm} 1327
86.11 Exporting colors \hspace{1cm} 1329
86.12 Additional color models \hspace{1cm} 1332
86.13 Applying profiles \hspace{1cm} 1346
86.14 Diagnostics \hspace{1cm} 1347
86.15 Messages \hspace{1cm} 1347
87 l3pdf implementation
  87.1 Compression ....................................................... 1351
  87.2 Objects ............................................................. 1352
  87.3 Version ............................................................... 1352
  87.4 Destinations ......................................................... 1354

88 l3candidates Implementation ............................................ 1355
  88.1 Additions to l3box .................................................. 1355
      88.1.1 Viewing part of a box ...................................... 1355
  88.2 Additions to l3flag .................................................. 1357
  88.3 Additions to l3msg .................................................. 1358
  88.4 Additions to l3prg .................................................. 1359
  88.5 Additions to l3prop .................................................. 1360
  88.6 Additions to l3seq .................................................. 1360
  88.7 Additions to l3sys .................................................. 1365
  88.8 Additions to l3file .................................................. 1366
  88.9 Additions to l3tl .................................................... 1366
      88.9.1 Building a token list .................................... 1366
      88.9.2 Other additions to l3tl ................................ 1370
  88.10 Additions to l3token ............................................... 1370

89 l3deprecation implementation ......................................... 1373
  89.1 Patching definitions to deprecate ............................. 1373
  89.2 Removed functions .................................................. 1375
  89.3 Deprecated l3str functions .................................... 1379
  89.4 Deprecated l3seq functions .................................... 1380
  89.5 Deprecated l3sys functions .................................... 1380
  89.6 Deprecated l3tl functions ...................................... 1380
  89.7 Deprecated l3token functions ................................... 1381

Index ........................................................................ 1383
Part I
Introduction
Chapter 1

Introduction to expl3 and this document

This document is intended to act as a comprehensive reference manual for the expl3 language. A general guide to the \LaTeX3 programming language is found in expl3.pdf.

1.1 Naming functions and variables

\LaTeX3 does not use @ as a “letter” for defining internal macros. Instead, the symbols _ and : are used in internal macro names to provide structure. The name of each function is divided into logical units using _, while : separates the name of the function from the argument specifier (“arg-spec”). This describes the arguments expected by the function. In most cases, each argument is represented by a single letter. The complete list of arg-spec letters for a function is referred to as the signature of the function.

Each function name starts with the module to which it belongs. Thus apart from a small number of very basic functions, all expl3 function names contain at least one underscore to divide the module name from the descriptive name of the function. For example, all functions concerned with comma lists are in module clist and begin \clist_.

Every function must include an argument specifier. For functions which take no arguments, this will be blank and the function name will end :. Most functions take one or more arguments, and use the following argument specifiers:

N and n These mean no manipulation, of a single token for N and of a set of tokens given in braces for n. Both pass the argument through exactly as given. Usually, if you use a single token for an n argument, all will be well.

c This means csname, and indicates that the argument will be turned into a csname before being used. So \foo:c {ArgumentOne} will act in the same way as \foo:N \ArgumentOne.

V and v These mean value of variable. The V and v specifiers are used to get the content of a variable without needing to worry about the underlying \TeX structure containing the data. A V argument will be a single token (similar to N), for example \foo:V \MyVariable; on the other hand, using v a csname is constructed first, and then the value is recovered, for example \foo:v \MyVariable.
This means *expansion once*. In general, the \texttt{V} and \texttt{v} specifiers are favoured over \texttt{o} for recovering stored information. However, \texttt{o} is useful for correctly processing information with delimited arguments.

The \texttt{x} specifier stands for *exhaustive expansion*: every token in the argument is fully expanded until only unexpandable ones remain. The \TeX\ \texttt{edef} primitive carries out this type of expansion. Functions which feature an \texttt{x}-type argument are *not* expandable.

The \texttt{e} specifier is in many respects identical to \texttt{x}, but with a very different implementation. Functions which feature an \texttt{e}-type argument may be expandable. The drawback is that \texttt{e} is extremely slow (often more than 200 times slower) in older engines, more precisely in non-Lua\TeX\ engines older than 2019.

The \texttt{f} specifier stands for *full expansion*, and in contrast to \texttt{x} stops at the first non-expandable token (reading the argument from left to right) without trying to expand it. If this token is a ⟨space token⟩, it is gobbled, and thus won’t be part of the resulting argument. For example, when setting a token list variable (a macro used for storage), the sequence

\begin{verbatim}
\tl_set:Nn \l_mya_tl { A }
\tl_set:Nn \l_myb_tl { B }
\tl_set:Nf \l_mya_tl { \l_mya_tl \l_myb_tl }
\end{verbatim}

will leave \texttt{\l_mya_tl} with the content \texttt{A\l_myb_tl}, as \texttt{A} cannot be expanded and so terminates expansion before \texttt{\l_myb_tl} is considered.

For logic tests, there are the branch specifiers \texttt{T} (*true*) and \texttt{F} (*false*). Both specifiers treat the input in the same way as \texttt{n} (*no change*), but make the logic much easier to see.

The letter \texttt{p} indicates \TeX\ *parameters*. Normally this will be used for delimited functions as expl3 provides better methods for creating simple sequential arguments.

Finally, there is the \texttt{w} specifier for *weird* arguments. This covers everything else, but mainly applies to delimited values (where the argument must be terminated by some specified string).

The \texttt{D} stands for *Do not use*. All of the \TeX\ primitives are initially \texttt{\let} to a \texttt{D} name, and some are then given a second name. These functions have no standardized syntax, they are engine dependent and their name can change without warning, thus their use is *strongly discouraged* in package code: programmers should instead use the interfaces documented in interface3.pdf\textsuperscript{1}.

Notice that the argument specifier describes how the argument is processed prior to being passed to the underlying function. For example, \texttt{\foo:c} will take its argument, convert it to a control sequence and pass it to \texttt{\foo:N}.

Variables are named in a similar manner to functions, but begin with a single letter to define the type of variable:

\textsuperscript{1}If a primitive offers a functionality not yet in the kernel, programmers and users are encouraged to write to the \LaTeX-L mailing list (mailto:LATEX-L@listserv.uni-heidelberg.de) describing their use-case and intended behaviour, so that a possible interface can be discussed. Temporarily, while an interface is not provided, programmers may use the procedure described in the \texttt{\abstractstyleguide.pdf}.
c Constant: global parameters whose value should not be changed.

g Parameters whose value should only be set globally.

l Parameters whose value should only be set locally.

Each variable name is then build up in a similar way to that of a function, typically starting with the module\(^2\) name and then a descriptive part. Variables end with a short identifier to show the variable type:

clist Comma separated list.

dim “Rigid” lengths.

fp Floating-point values;

int Integer-valued count register.

muskip “Rubber” lengths for use in mathematics.

seq “Sequence”: a data-type used to implement lists (with access at both ends) and stacks.

skip “Rubber” lengths.

str String variables: contain character data.

tl Token list variables: placeholder for a token list.

Applying V-type or v-type expansion to variables of one of the above types is supported, while it is not supported for the following variable types:

bool Either true or false.

box Box register.

coffin A “box with handles” — a higher-level data type for carrying out box alignment operations.

flag Integer that can be incremented expandably.

fparray Fixed-size array of floating point values.

intarray Fixed-size array of integers.

ior/iow An input or output stream, for reading from or writing to, respectively.

prop Property list: analogue of dictionary or associative arrays in other languages.

regex Regular expression.

\(^2\)The module names are not used in case of generic scratch registers defined in the data type modules, e.g., the int module contains some scratch variables called \(\backslash l\_tmpa\_int, \backslash l\_tmpb\_int\), and so on. In such a case adding the module name up front to denote the module and in the back to indicate the type, as in \(\backslash l\_int\_tmpa\_int\) would be very unreadable.
1.1.1 Scratch variables

Modules focussed on variable usage typically provide four scratch variables, two local and two global, with names of the form \((\text{scope})_{\text{tmpa}}(\text{type})/ (\text{scope})_{\text{tmpb}}(\text{type})\). These are never used by the core code. The nature of \TeX{} grouping means that as with any other scratch variable, these should only be set and used with no intervening third-party code.

1.1.2 Terminological inexactitude

A word of warning. In this document, and others referring to the expl3 programming modules, we often refer to “variables” and “functions” as if they were actual constructs from a real programming language. In truth, \TeX{} is a macro processor, and functions are simply macros that may or may not take arguments and expand to their replacement text. Many of the common variables are also macros, and if placed into the input stream will simply expand to their definition as well — a “function” with no arguments and a “token list variable” are almost the same.\(^3\) On the other hand, some “variables” are actually registers that must be initialised and their values set and retrieved with specific functions.

The conventions of the expl3 code are designed to clearly separate the ideas of “macros that contain data” and “macros that contain code”, and a consistent wrapper is applied to all forms of “data” whether they be macros or actually registers. This means that sometimes we will use phrases like “the function returns a value”, when actually we just mean “the macro expands to something”. Similarly, the term “execute” might be used in place of “expand” or it might refer to the more specific case of “processing in \TeX{}’s stomach” (if you are familiar with the \TeX{}book parlance).

If in doubt, please ask; chances are we’ve been hasty in writing certain definitions and need to be told to tighten up our terminology.

1.2 Documentation conventions

This document is typeset with the experimental \texttt{l3doc} class; several conventions are used to help describe the features of the code. A number of conventions are used here to make the documentation clearer.

Each group of related functions is given in a box. For a function with a “user” name, this might read:
\begin{verbatim}
\ExplSyntaxOn
\ExplSyntaxOff
\end{verbatim}

The textual description of how the function works would appear here. The syntax of the function is shown in mono-spaced text to the right of the box. In this example, the function takes no arguments and so the name of the function is simply reprinted.

For programming functions, which use _ and : in their name there are a few additional conventions: If two related functions are given with identical names but different argument specifiers, these are termed \textit{variants} of each other, and the latter functions are printed in grey to show this more clearly. They will carry out the same function but will take different types of argument:
\begin{verbatim}
\ExplSyntaxOn ...
\ExplSyntaxOff
\end{verbatim}

\(^3\)\TeX{}nically, functions with no arguments are \texttt{\long} while token list variables are not.
When a number of variants are described, the arguments are usually illustrated only for the base function. Here, \texttt{\textbackslash seq: \textbackslash new:N} indicates that \texttt{\textbackslash seq: \textbackslash new:N} expects the name of a sequence. From the argument specifier, \texttt{\textbackslash seq: \textbackslash new:c} also expects a sequence name, but as a name rather than as a control sequence. Each argument given in the illustration should be described in the following text.

**Fully expandable functions** Some functions are fully expandable, which allows them to be used within an \texttt{x}-type or \texttt{e}-type argument (in plain \TeX{} terms, inside an \texttt{edef} or \texttt{expanded}), as well as within an \texttt{f}-type argument. These fully expandable functions are indicated in the documentation by a star:

\texttt{\cs: \textbackslash cs: \textbackslash to: \textbackslash str:N \star}

As with other functions, some text should follow which explains how the function works. Usually, only the star will indicate that the function is expandable. In this case, the function expects a \texttt{\textbackslash cs}, shorthand for a \texttt{\textbackslash control sequence}.

**Restricted expandable functions** A few functions are fully expandable but cannot be fully expanded within an \texttt{f}-type argument. In this case a hollow star is used to indicate this:

\texttt{\textbackslash seq: \textbackslash map: \textbackslash function:NN \star}

**Conditional functions** Conditional \texttt{(if)} functions are normally defined in three variants, with \texttt{T}, \texttt{F} and \texttt{TF} argument specifiers. This allows them to be used for different “true”/“false” branches, depending on which outcome the conditional is being used to test. To indicate this without repetition, this information is given in a shortened form:

\texttt{\textbackslash sys-if-engine-xetex:TF \star}

The underlining and italic of \texttt{TF} indicates that three functions are available:

- \texttt{\sys-if-engine-xetex:T}
- \texttt{\sys-if-engine-xetex:F}
- \texttt{\sys-if-engine-xetex:TF}

Usually, the illustration will use the \texttt{TF} variant, and so both \texttt{(true code)} and \texttt{(false code)} will be shown. The two variant forms \texttt{T} and \texttt{F} take only \texttt{(true code)} and \texttt{(false code)}, respectively. Here, the star also shows that this function is expandable. With some minor exceptions, all conditional functions in the \texttt{expl3} modules should be defined in this way.

Variables, constants and so on are described in a similar manner:

\texttt{\textbackslash l-tmpa_tl}

A short piece of text will describe the variable: there is no syntax illustration in this case.

In some cases, the function is similar to one in \texttt{\TeX{}2e} or plain \TeX{}. In these cases, the text will include an extra “\TeX{}hackers note” section:
Changes to behaviour  When new functions are added to \texttt{expl3}, the date of first inclusion is given in the documentation. Where the documented behaviour of a function changes after it is first introduced, the date of the update will also be given. This means that the programmer can be sure that any release of \texttt{expl3} after the date given will contain the function of interest with expected behaviour as described. Note that changes to code internals, including bug fixes, are not recorded in this way \emph{unless} they impact on the expected behaviour.

1.3 Formal language conventions which apply generally

As this is a formal reference guide for \LaTeX{} programming, the descriptions of functions are intended to be reasonably “complete”. However, there is also a need to avoid repetition. Formal ideas which apply to general classes of function are therefore summarised here.

For tests which have a \texttt{TF} argument specification, the test if evaluated to give a logically \texttt{TRUE} or \texttt{FALSE} result. Depending on this result, either the \texttt{true code} or the \texttt{false code} will be left in the input stream. In the case where the test is expandable, and a predicate (\_p) variant is available, the logical value determined by the test is left in the input stream: this will typically be part of a larger logical construct.

1.4 \TeX{} concepts not supported by \LaTeX{}

The \TeX{} concept of an “\texttt{outer}” macro is \emph{not supported} at all by \LaTeX{}. As such, the functions provided here may break when used on top of \LaTeX{}2\epsilon if \texttt{outer} tokens are used in the arguments.
Part II

Bootstrapping
Chapter 2

The \texttt{l3bootstrap} package
Bootstrap code

2.1 Using the \LaTeXe\ modules

The modules documented in \texttt{source3} are designed to be used on top of \LaTeXe\ and are loaded all as one with the usual \texttt{\usepackage{expl3}} or \texttt{\RequirePackage{expl3}} instructions.

As the modules use a coding syntax different from standard \LaTeXe\, it provides a few functions for setting it up.

\texttt{\ExplSyntaxOn}\langle code\rangle\texttt{\ExplSyntaxOff}

The \texttt{\ExplSyntaxOn} function switches to a category code regime in which spaces and new lines are ignored, and in which the colon (:) and underscore (_\texttt{\_}) are treated as “letters”, thus allowing access to the names of code functions and variables. Within this environment, _\texttt{\_} is used to input a space. The \texttt{\ExplSyntaxOff} reverts to the document category code regime.

\textbf{\texttt{\TeX}hackers note}: Spaces introduced by _\texttt{\_} behave much in the same way as normal space characters in the standard category code regime: they are ignored after a control word or at the start of a line, and multiple consecutive _\texttt{\_} are equivalent to a single one. However, _\texttt{\_} is not ignored at the end of a line.

\texttt{\ProvidesExplPackage}\langle\texttt{package}\rangle\langle\texttt{date}\rangle\langle\texttt{version}\rangle\langle\texttt{description}\rangle

These functions act broadly in the same way as the corresponding \LaTeXe\ kernel functions \texttt{\ProvidesPackage}, \texttt{\ProvidesClass} and \texttt{\ProvidesFile}. However, they also implicitly switch \texttt{\ExplSyntaxOn} for the remainder of the code with the file. At the end of the file, \texttt{\ExplSyntaxOff} will be called to reverse this. (This is the same concept as \LaTeXe\ provides in turning on \texttt{\makeatletter} within package and class code.) The \texttt{\langle date\rangle} should be given in the format \texttt{(year)/(month)/(day)} or in the ISO date format \texttt{(year)-(month)-(day)}. If the \texttt{\langle version\rangle} is given then it will be prefixed with \texttt{v} in the package identifier line.
Extracts all information from a SVN field. Spaces are not ignored in these fields. The information pieces are stored in separate control sequences with \ExplFileName for the part of the file name leading up to the period, \ExplFileDate for date, \ExplFileVersion for version and \ExplFileDescription for the description.

To summarize: Every single package using this syntax should identify itself using one of the above methods. Special care is taken so that every package or class file loaded with \RequirePackage or similar are loaded with usual \LaTeX category codes and the \LaTeX3 category code scheme is reloaded when needed afterwards. See implementation for details. If you use the \GetIdInfo command you can use the information when loading a package with

\ProvidesExplPackage{\ExplFileName}
{\ExplFileDate}{\ExplFileVersion}{\ExplFileDescription}
Chapter 3

The \texttt{l3names} package
Namespace for primitives

3.1 Setting up the \LaTeX{}3 programming language

This module is at the core of the \LaTeX{}3 programming language. It performs the following tasks:

- defines new names for all \TeX{} primitives;
- emulate required primitives not provided by default in Lua\TeX{};
- switches to the category code régime for programming;

This module is entirely dedicated to primitives (and emulations of these), which should not be used directly within \LaTeX{}3 code (outside of “kernel-level” code). As such, the primitives are not documented here: \textit{The \TeX{}book}, \textit{\TeX{} by Topic} and the manuals for pdf\TeX{}, Xe\TeX{}, Lua\TeX{}, p\TeX{} and up\TeX{} should be consulted for details of the primitives. These are named \texttt{\textbackslash tex\_\langle name\rangle:}\TeX{}, typically based on the primitive’s \langle name\rangle in pdf\TeX{} and omitting a leading pdf when the primitive is not related to pdf output.
Part III
Programming Flow
Chapter 4

The \texttt{l3basics} package

Basic definitions

As the name suggest this package holds some basic definitions which are needed by most or all other packages in this set.

Here we describe those functions that are used all over the place. With that we mean functions dealing with the construction and testing of control sequences. Furthermore the basic parts of conditional processing are covered; conditional processing dealing with specific data types is described in the modules specific for the respective data types.

4.1 No operation functions

\texttt{\texttt{prg} \_ \texttt{do} \_ \texttt{nothing}: }\star

An expandable function which does nothing at all: leaves nothing in the input stream after a single expansion.

\texttt{\texttt{scan} \_ \texttt{stop}:}

A non-expandable function which does nothing. Does not vanish on expansion but produces no typeset output.

4.2 Grouping material

\texttt{\texttt{group} \_ \texttt{begin}:} \texttt{\texttt{group} \_ \texttt{end}:}

These functions begin and end a group for definition purposes. Assignments are local to groups unless carried out in a global manner. (A small number of exceptions to this rule will be noted as necessary elsewhere in this document.) Each \texttt{\texttt{group} \_ \texttt{begin}:} must be matched by a \texttt{\texttt{group} \_ \texttt{end}:}, although this does not have to occur within the same function. Indeed, it is often necessary to start a group within one function and finish it within another, for example when seeking to use non-standard category codes.
\texttt{\textbackslash group\_insert\_after:N (token)}

Adds \texttt{(token)} to the list of \texttt{(tokens)} to be inserted when the current group level ends. The list of \texttt{(tokens)} to be inserted is empty at the beginning of a group: multiple applications of \texttt{\group\_insert\_after:N} may be used to build the inserted list one \texttt{(token)} at a time. The current group level may be closed by a \texttt{\group\_end:} function or by a token with category code 2 (close-group), namely a \texttt{)}} if standard category codes apply.

\texttt{\group\_show\_list: \group\_log\_list:}

Display (to the terminal or log file) a list of the groups that are currently opened. This is intended for tracking down problems.

\textbf{\texttt{Tex}}hackers note: This is a wrapper around the \texttt{\showgroups} primitive.

### 4.3 Control sequences and functions

As \textsc{TeX} is a macro language, creating new functions means creating macros. At point of use, a function is replaced by the replacement text (“code”) in which each parameter in the code \texttt{(\#1, \#2, etc.)} is replaced the appropriate arguments absorbed by the function. In the following, \texttt{(code)} is therefore used as a shorthand for “replacement text”.

Functions which are not “protected” are fully expanded inside an \texttt{x} expansion. In contrast, “protected” functions are not expanded within \texttt{x} expansions.

#### 4.3.1 Defining functions

Functions can be created with no requirement that they are declared first (in contrast to variables, which must always be declared). Declaring a function before setting up the code means that the name chosen is checked and an error raised if it is already in use. The name of a function can be checked at the point of definition using the \texttt{\cs\_new...} functions: this is recommended for all functions which are defined for the first time.

There are three ways to define new functions. All classes define a function to expand to the substitution text. Within the substitution text the actual parameters are substituted for the formal parameters \texttt{(\#1, \#2, \ldots)}.

\texttt{new} Create a new function with the \texttt{new} scope, such as \texttt{\cs\_new:Npn}. The definition is global and results in an error if it is already defined.

\texttt{set} Create a new function with the \texttt{set} scope, such as \texttt{\cs\_set:Npn}. The definition is restricted to the current \textsc{TeX} group and does not result in an error if the function is already defined.

\texttt{gset} Create a new function with the \texttt{gset} scope, such as \texttt{\cs\_gset:Npn}. The definition is global and does not result in an error if the function is already defined.

Within each set of scope there are different ways to define a function. The differences depend on restrictions on the actual parameters and the expandability of the resulting function.

\texttt{nopar} Create a new function with the \texttt{nopar} restriction, such as \texttt{\cs\_set\_nopar:Npn}. The parameter may not contain \texttt{\par} tokens.
protected Create a new function with the protected restriction, such as \texttt{\cs_set_protected:Npn}. The parameter may contain \texttt{\par} tokens but the function will not expand within an x-type or e-type expansion.

Finally, the functions in Subsections 4.3.2 and 4.3.3 are primarily meant to define base functions only. Base functions can only have the following argument specifiers:

N and n No manipulation.

T and F Functionally equivalent to n (you are actually encouraged to use the family of \texttt{\prg_new_conditional}: functions described in Section 9.1).

p and w These are special cases.

The \texttt{\cs_new:} functions below (and friends) do not stop you from using other argument specifiers in your function names, but they do not handle expansion for you. You should define the base function and then use \texttt{\cs_generate_variant:Nn} to generate custom variants as described in Section 5.2.

### 4.3.2 Defining new functions using parameter text

\begin{Verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \cs_new:cpn \cs_new:Npx \cs_new:cpx
\end{Verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \cs_new_protected:cpn \cs_new_protected:Npx \cs_new_protected:cpx
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected_nopar:Npn \cs_new_protected_nopar:cpn \cs_new_protected_nopar:Npx \cs_new_protected_nopar:cpx
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\cs_new:Npn} \texttt{\cs_new:cpn} \texttt{\cs_new:Npx} \texttt{\cs_new:cpx} \texttt{\cs_new_protected:Npn} \texttt{\cs_new_protected:cpn} \texttt{\cs_new_protected:Npx} \texttt{\cs_new_protected:cpx} \texttt{\cs_new_protected_nopar:Npn} \texttt{\cs_new_protected_nopar:cpn} \texttt{\cs_new_protected_nopar:Npx} \texttt{\cs_new_protected_nopar:cpx}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new (function) \langle parameters \rangle \{\langle code \rangle\}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_nopar (function) \langle parameters \rangle \{\langle code \rangle\}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected (function) \langle parameters \rangle \{\langle code \rangle\}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected_nopar (function) \langle parameters \rangle \{\langle code \rangle\}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\cs_new:Npn} \texttt{\cs_new:cpn} \texttt{\cs_new:Npx} \texttt{\cs_new:cpx} \texttt{\cs_new_protected:Npn} \texttt{\cs_new_protected:cpn} \texttt{\cs_new_protected:Npx} \texttt{\cs_new_protected:cpx} \texttt{\cs_new_protected_nopar:Npn} \texttt{\cs_new_protected_nopar:cpn} \texttt{\cs_new_protected_nopar:Npx} \texttt{\cs_new_protected_nopar:cpx}

\texttt{\cs_new:Npn} \texttt{\cs_new:cpn} \texttt{\cs_new:Npx} \texttt{\cs_new:cpx} \texttt{\cs_new_protected:Npn} \texttt{\cs_new_protected:cpn} \texttt{\cs_new_protected:Npx} \texttt{\cs_new_protected:cpx} \texttt{\cs_new_protected_nopar:Npn} \texttt{\cs_new_protected_nopar:cpn} \texttt{\cs_new_protected_nopar:Npx} \texttt{\cs_new_protected_nopar:cpx}

Creates \texttt{\function} to expand to \texttt{\langle code \rangle} as replacement text. Within the \texttt{\langle code \rangle}, the \texttt{\langle parameters \rangle} (\#1, \#2, etc.) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. The definition is global and an error results if the \texttt{\function} is already defined.

Creates \texttt{\function} to expand to \texttt{\langle code \rangle} as replacement text. Within the \texttt{\langle code \rangle}, the \texttt{\langle parameters \rangle} (\#1, \#2, etc.) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. When the \texttt{\function} is used the \texttt{\langle parameters \rangle} absorbed cannot contain \texttt{\par} tokens. The definition is global and an error results if the \texttt{\function} is already defined.

Creates \texttt{\function} to expand to \texttt{\langle code \rangle} as replacement text. Within the \texttt{\langle code \rangle}, the \texttt{\langle parameters \rangle} (\#1, \#2, etc.) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. The \texttt{\function} will not expand within an x-type argument. The definition is global and an error results if the \texttt{\function} is already defined.

Creates \texttt{\function} to expand to \texttt{\langle code \rangle} as replacement text. Within the \texttt{\langle code \rangle}, the \texttt{\langle parameters \rangle} (\#1, \#2, etc.) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. When the \texttt{\function} is used the \texttt{\langle parameters \rangle} absorbed cannot contain \texttt{\par} tokens. The \texttt{\function} will not expand within an x-type or e-type argument. The definition is global and an error results if the \texttt{\function} is already defined.
Sets \texttt{(function)} to expand to \texttt{(code)} as replacement text. Within the \texttt{(code)}, the \texttt{(parameters)} (#1, #2, etc.) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. The assignment of a meaning to the \texttt{(function)} is restricted to the current \TeX{} group level.

Sets \texttt{(function)} to expand to \texttt{(code)} as replacement text. Within the \texttt{(code)}, the \texttt{(parameters)} (#1, #2, etc.) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. When the \texttt{(function)} is used the \texttt{(parameters)} absorbed cannot contain \texttt{\par} tokens. The assignment of a meaning to the \texttt{(function)} is restricted to the current \TeX{} group level.

Sets \texttt{(function)} to expand to \texttt{(code)} as replacement text. Within the \texttt{(code)}, the \texttt{(parameters)} (#1, #2, etc.) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. When the \texttt{(function)} is used the \texttt{(parameters)} absorbed cannot contain \texttt{\par} tokens. The assignment of a meaning to the \texttt{(function)} is restricted to the current \TeX{} group level. The \texttt{(function)} will not expand within an \texttt{x}-type or \texttt{e}-type argument.

Globally sets \texttt{(function)} to expand to \texttt{(code)} as replacement text. Within the \texttt{(code)}, the \texttt{(parameters)} (#1, #2, etc.) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. The assignment of a meaning to the \texttt{(function)} is not restricted to the current \TeX{} group level: the assignment is global.

Globally sets \texttt{(function)} to expand to \texttt{(code)} as replacement text. Within the \texttt{(code)}, the \texttt{(parameters)} (#1, #2, etc.) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. When the \texttt{(function)} is used the \texttt{(parameters)} absorbed cannot contain \texttt{\par} tokens. The assignment of a meaning to the \texttt{(function)} is not restricted to the current \TeX{} group level: the assignment is global.

Globally sets \texttt{(function)} to expand to \texttt{(code)} as replacement text. Within the \texttt{(code)}, the \texttt{(parameters)} (#1, #2, etc.) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. The assignment of a meaning to the \texttt{(function)} is not restricted to the current \TeX{} group level: the assignment is global. The \texttt{(function)} will not expand within an \texttt{x}-type or \texttt{e}-type argument.
Globally sets \emph{(function)} to expand to \emph{(code)} as replacement text. Within the \emph{(code)}, the \emph{(parameters)} $(#1, #2, \text{etc.})$ will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. When the \emph{(function)} is used the \emph{(parameters)} absorbed cannot contain \texttt{par} tokens. The assignment of a meaning to the \emph{(function)} is not restricted to the current \TeX group level: the assignment is global. The \emph{(function)} will not expand within an \texttt{x}-type argument.

### 4.3.3 Defining new functions using the signature

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Nn \cs_new:nopar:Nn \cs_gset_protected_nopar:Npn
\cs_new_protected_nopar:Nn \cs_gset_protected_nopar:cpn
\cs_gset_protected_nopar:Npx
\end{verbatim}

Creates \emph{(function)} to expand to \emph{(code)} as replacement text. Within the \emph{(code)}, the number of \emph{(parameters)} is detected automatically from the function signature. These \emph{(parameters)} $(#1, #2, \text{etc.})$ will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. The definition is global and an error results if the \emph{(function)} is already defined.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:nopar:Nn \cs_new:nopar:(cn|nx|cx)
\end{verbatim}

Creates \emph{(function)} to expand to \emph{(code)} as replacement text. Within the \emph{(code)}, the \emph{(parameters)} absorbed cannot contain \texttt{par} tokens. The definition is global and an error results if the \emph{(function)} is already defined.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Nn \cs_new_protected:(cn|nx|cx)
\end{verbatim}

Creates \emph{(function)} to expand to \emph{(code)} as replacement text. Within the \emph{(code)}, the \emph{(parameters)} absorbed cannot contain \texttt{par} tokens. The \emph{(function)} will not expand within an \texttt{x}-type argument. The definition is global and an error results if the \emph{(function)} is already defined.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_set:nopar:Nn \cs_set:nopar:(cn|nx|cx)
\end{verbatim}

Sets \emph{(function)} to expand to \emph{(code)} as replacement text. Within the \emph{(code)}, the number of \emph{(parameters)} is detected automatically from the function signature. These \emph{(parameters)} $(#1, #2, \text{etc.})$ will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. The assignment of a meaning to the \emph{(function)} is restricted to the current \TeX group level.
\texttt{\cs_set_protected:Nn} \texttt{\cs_set_protected:(cn|Nx|cx)} \texttt{\cs_set_protected:Nn} \texttt{(code) \langle function \rangle}

Sets \texttt{(function)} to expand to \texttt{(code)} as replacement text. Within the \texttt{(code)}, the number of \texttt{parameters} is detected automatically from the function signature. These \texttt{parameters} (\#1, \#2, etc.) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. When the \texttt{(function)} is used the \texttt{parameters} absorbed cannot contain \texttt{\par} tokens. The assignment of a meaning to the \texttt{(function)} is restricted to the current \TeX{} group level.

\texttt{\cs_set_protected_nopar:Nn} \texttt{\cs_set_protected_nopar:(cn|Nx|cx)} \texttt{\cs_set_protected_nopar:Nn} \texttt{(code) \langle function \rangle}

Sets \texttt{(function)} to expand to \texttt{(code)} as replacement text. Within the \texttt{(code)}, the number of \texttt{parameters} is detected automatically from the function signature. These \texttt{parameters} (\#1, \#2, etc.) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. The \texttt{(function)} will not expand within an x-type argument. The assignment of a meaning to the \texttt{(function)} is restricted to the current \TeX{} group level.

\texttt{\cs_gset:cn} \texttt{\cs_gset:(cn|Nx|cx)} \texttt{\cs_gset:cn} \texttt{(code) \langle function \rangle}

Sets \texttt{(function)} to expand to \texttt{(code)} as replacement text. Within the \texttt{(code)}, the number of \texttt{parameters} is detected automatically from the function signature. These \texttt{parameters} (\#1, \#2, etc.) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. The assignment of a meaning to the \texttt{(function)} is global.

\texttt{\cs_gset_nopar:cn} \texttt{\cs_gset_nopar:(cn|Nx|cx)} \texttt{\cs_gset_nopar:cn} \texttt{(code) \langle function \rangle}

Sets \texttt{(function)} to expand to \texttt{(code)} as replacement text. Within the \texttt{(code)}, the number of \texttt{parameters} is detected automatically from the function signature. These \texttt{parameters} (\#1, \#2, etc.) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. When the \texttt{(function)} is used the \texttt{parameters} absorbed cannot contain \texttt{\par} tokens. The assignment of a meaning to the \texttt{(function)} is restricted to the current \TeX{} group level.

\texttt{\cs_gset_protected:cn} \texttt{\cs_gset_protected:(cn|Nx|cx)} \texttt{\cs_gset_protected:cn} \texttt{(code) \langle function \rangle}

Sets \texttt{(function)} to expand to \texttt{(code)} as replacement text. Within the \texttt{(code)}, the number of \texttt{parameters} is detected automatically from the function signature. These \texttt{parameters} (\#1, \#2, etc.) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. The \texttt{(function)} will not expand within an x-type argument. The assignment of a meaning to the \texttt{(function)} is global.
Sets \textit{(function)} to expand to \textit{(code)} as replacement text. Within the \textit{(code)}, the number of \textit{(parameters)} is detected automatically from the function signature. These \textit{(parameters)} (#1, #2, etc.) will be replaced by those absorbed by the function. When the \textit{(function)} is used the \textit{(parameters)} absorbed cannot contain \texttt{par} tokens. The \textit{(function)} will not expand within an \texttt{x}-type or \texttt{e}-type argument. The assignment of a meaning to the \textit{(function)} is global.

\texttt{\cs_generate_from_arg_count:NNnn \langle function \rangle \langle creator \rangle \{\langle number \rangle\} \{\langle code \rangle\}}

Updated: 2012-01-14

Uses the \textit{(creator)} function (which should have signature \texttt{Npn}, for example \texttt{\cs_new:Npn}) to define a \textit{(function)} which takes \textit{(number)} arguments and has \textit{(code)} as replacement text. The \textit{(number)} of arguments is an integer expression, evaluated as detailed for \texttt{\int_eval:n}.

4.3.4 Copying control sequences

Control sequences (not just functions as defined above) can be set to have the same meaning using the functions described here. Making two control sequences equivalent means that the second control sequence is a \textit{copy} of the first (rather than a pointer to it). Thus the old and new control sequence are not tied together: changes to one are not reflected in the other. In the following text “cs” is used as an abbreviation for “control sequence”.

\texttt{\cs_new_eq:NN \langle cs \rangle \langle cs \rangle}
\texttt{\cs_new_eq:NN \langle cs \rangle \langle \texttt{token} \rangle}

Globally creates \textit{(control sequence)} and sets it to have the same meaning as \textit{(control sequence)} or \textit{(token)}. The second control sequence may subsequently be altered without affecting the copy.

\texttt{\cs_set_eq:NN \langle cs \rangle \langle cs \rangle}
\texttt{\cs_set_eq:NN \langle cs \rangle \langle \texttt{token} \rangle}

Sets \textit{(control sequence)} to have the same meaning as \textit{(control sequence)} (or \textit{(token)}). The second control sequence may subsequently be altered without affecting the copy. The assignment of a meaning to the \textit{(control sequence)} is restricted to the current \TeX{} group level.

\texttt{\cs_gset_eq:NN \langle cs \rangle \langle cs \rangle}
\texttt{\cs_gset_eq:NN \langle cs \rangle \langle \texttt{token} \rangle}

Globally sets \textit{(control sequence)} to have the same meaning as \textit{(control sequence)} (or \textit{(token)}). The second control sequence may subsequently be altered without affecting the copy. The assignment of a meaning to the \textit{(control sequence)} is \textit{not} restricted to the current \TeX{} group level: the assignment is global.
4.3.5 Deleting control sequences

There are occasions where control sequences need to be deleted. This is handled in a very simple manner.

\cs_undefine:N \langle control sequence \rangle

Sets \langle control sequence \rangle to be globally undefined.

4.3.6 Showing control sequences

\cs_meaning:N \langle control sequence \rangle

This function expands to the meaning of the \langle control sequence \rangle control sequence. For a macro, this includes the \langle replacement text \rangle.

\TeX hackers note: This is \TeX\'s \texttt{\textbackslash meaning} primitive. For tokens that are not control sequences, it is more logical to use \texttt{\textbackslash token_to_meaning:N}. The \texttt{c} variant correctly reports undefined arguments.

\cs_show:N \langle control sequence \rangle

Displays the definition of the \langle control sequence \rangle on the terminal.

\TeX hackers note: This is similar to the \TeX\ primitive \texttt{\textbackslash show}, wrapped to a fixed number of characters per line.

\cs_log:N \langle control sequence \rangle

Writes the definition of the \langle control sequence \rangle in the log file. See also \texttt{\cs_show:N} which displays the result in the terminal.

4.3.7 Converting to and from control sequences

\use:c \{\langle control sequence name \rangle\}

Expands the \langle control sequence name \rangle until only characters remain, and then converts this into a control sequence. This process requires two expansions. As in other \texttt{c}-type arguments the \langle control sequence name \rangle must, when fully expanded, consist of character tokens, typically a mixture of category code 10 (space), 11 (letter) and 12 (other).

\TeX hackers note: Protected macros that appear in a \texttt{c}-type argument are expanded despite being protected; \texttt{\exp_not:n} also has no effect. An internal error occurs if non-characters or active characters remain after full expansion, as the conversion to a control sequence is not possible.

As an example of the \texttt{\use:c} function, both
\use:c { a b c }

and
\tl_new:N \l_my_tl
\tl_set:Nn \l_my_tl { a b c }
\use:c { \tl_use:N \l_my_tl }

would be equivalent to
\abc

after two expansions of \use:c.

\cs_if_exist_use:N \cs_if_exist_use:c \cs_if_exist_use:N \cs_if_exist_use:cTF

Tests whether the \textit{control sequence} is currently defined according to the conditional \cs_if_exist_use:NTF (whether as a function or another control sequence type), and if it is inserts the \textit{control sequence} into the input stream followed by the \textit{true code}. Otherwise the \textit{false code} is used.

\cs:w \cs_end:

Converts the given \textit{control sequence name} into a single control sequence token. This process requires one expansion. The content for \textit{control sequence name} may be literal material or from other expandable functions. The \textit{control sequence name} must, when fully expanded, consist of character tokens which are not active: typically of category code 10 (space), 11 (letter) or 12 (other), or a mixture of these.

\TeXhacks note: These are the \TeX primitives \csname and \endcsname.

As an example of the \cs:w and \cs_end: functions, both
\cs:w a b c \cs_end:

and
\tl_new:N \l_my_tl
\tl_set:Nn \l_my_tl { a b c }
\cs:w \tl_use:N \l_my_tl \cs_end:

would be equivalent to
\abc

after one expansion of \cs:w.

\cs_to_str:N \cs_to_str:N \cs_to_str:N \cs_to_str:N \cs_to_str:N \cs_to_str:N \cs_to_str:N

Converts the given \textit{control sequence} into a series of characters with category code 12 (other), except spaces, of category code 10. The result does not include the current escape token, contrarily to \token_to_str:N. Full expansion of this function requires exactly 2 expansion steps, and so an \texttt{x}-type or \texttt{e}-type expansion, or two \texttt{o}-type expansions are required to convert the \textit{control sequence} to a sequence of characters in the input stream. In most cases, an \texttt{f}-expansion is correct as well, but this loses a space at the start of the result.
4.4 Analysing control sequences

\texttt{\cs_split_function:N} \texttt{\cs_split_function:N \langle function \rangle}

Splits the \langle function \rangle into the \langle name \rangle (i.e. the part before the colon) and the \langle signature \rangle (i.e. after the colon). This information is then placed in the input stream in three parts: the \langle name \rangle, the \langle signature \rangle and a logic token indicating if a colon was found (to differentiate variables from function names). The \langle name \rangle does not include the escape character, and both the \langle name \rangle and \langle signature \rangle are made up of tokens with category code 12 (other).

The next three functions decompose \TeX macros into their constituent parts: if the \langle token \rangle passed is not a macro then no decomposition can occur. In the latter case, all three functions leave \texttt{\scan_stop:} in the input stream.

\texttt{\cs_prefix_spec:N} \texttt{\cs_prefix_spec:N \langle token \rangle}

If the \langle token \rangle is a macro, this function leaves the applicable \TeX prefixes in input stream as a string of tokens of category code 12 (with spaces having category code 10). Thus for example

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_set:Npn \next:nn #1#2 { x #1~y #2 }
\cs_prefix_spec:N \next:nn
\end{verbatim}

leaves \texttt{\long} in the input stream. If the \langle token \rangle is not a macro then \texttt{\scan_stop:} is left in the input stream.

\textbf{\TeXhackers note:} The prefix can be empty, \texttt{\long}, \texttt{\protected} or \texttt{\protected\long} with backslash replaced by the current escape character.

\texttt{\cs_argument_spec:N} \texttt{\cs_argument_spec:N \langle token \rangle}

If the \langle token \rangle is a macro, this function leaves the primitive \TeX argument specification in input stream as a string of character tokens of category code 12 (with spaces having category code 10). Thus for example

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_set:Npn \next:nn #1#2 { x #1 y #2 }
\cs_argument_spec:N \next:nn
\end{verbatim}

leaves \texttt{#1#2} in the input stream. If the \langle token \rangle is not a macro then \texttt{\scan_stop:} is left in the input stream.

\textbf{\TeXhackers note:} If the argument specification contains the string ->, then the function produces incorrect results.
\cs_replacement_spec:N \cs_replacement_spec:N (token)

If the (token) is a macro, this function leaves the replacement text in input stream as a string of character tokens of category code 12 (with spaces having category code 10). Thus for example

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_set:Npn \next:nn #1#2 { x #1~y #2 }
\cs_replacement_spec:N \next:nn
\end{verbatim}

leaves x#1␣y#2 in the input stream. If the (token) is not a macro then \scan_stop: is left in the input stream.

\TeXhackers note: If the argument specification contains the string ->, then the function produces incorrect results.

### 4.5 Using or removing tokens and arguments

Tokens in the input can be read and used or read and discarded. If one or more tokens are wrapped in braces then when absorbing them the outer set is removed. At the same time, the category code of each token is set when the token is read by a function (if it is read more than once, the category code is determined by the situation in force when first function absorbs the token).

\begin{verbatim}
\use:n * \use:n {⟨group1⟩}
\use:nn * \use:nn {⟨group1⟩} {⟨group2⟩}
\use:nnn * \use:nnn {⟨group1⟩} {⟨group2⟩} {⟨group3⟩}
\use:nnnn * \use:nnnn {⟨group1⟩} {⟨group2⟩} {⟨group3⟩} {⟨group4⟩}
\end{verbatim}

As illustrated, these functions absorb between one and four arguments, as indicated by the argument specifier. The braces surrounding each argument are removed and the remaining tokens are left in the input stream. The category code of these tokens is also fixed by this process (if it has not already been by some other absorption). All of these functions require only a single expansion to operate, so that one expansion of

\begin{verbatim}
\use:nn { abc } { { def } }
\end{verbatim}

results in the input stream containing

\begin{verbatim}
abc { def }
\end{verbatim}

i.e. only the outer braces are removed.

\TeXhackers note: The \use:n function is equivalent to \LaTeX2e’s \firstofone.
These functions absorb two arguments from the input stream. The function \use_i:nn discards the second argument, and leaves the content of the first argument in the input stream. \use_ii:nn discards the first argument and leaves the content of the second argument in the input stream. The category code of these tokens is also fixed (if it has not already been by some other absorption). A single expansion is needed for the functions to take effect.

**\TeXhackers note:** These are equivalent to \TeX’s \@firstoftwo and \@secondoftwo.

These functions absorb three arguments from the input stream. The function \use_i:nnn discards the second and third arguments, and leaves the content of the first argument in the input stream. \use_ii:nnn and \use_iii:nnn work similarly, leaving the content of second or third arguments in the input stream, respectively. The category code of these tokens is also fixed (if it has not already been by some other absorption). A single expansion is needed for the functions to take effect.

These functions absorb four arguments from the input stream. The function \use_i:nnnn discards the second, third and fourth arguments, and leaves the content of the first argument in the input stream. \use_ii:nnnn, \use_iii:nnnn and \use_iv:nnnn work similarly, leaving the content of second, third or fourth arguments in the input stream, respectively. The category code of these tokens is also fixed (if it has not already been by some other absorption). A single expansion is needed for the functions to take effect.

\use_i:ii:nnn \{ \langle \text{arg}_1 \rangle \} \{ \langle \text{arg}_2 \rangle \} \{ \langle \text{arg}_3 \rangle \}

This function absorbs three arguments and leaves the content of the first and second in the input stream. The category code of these tokens is also fixed (if it has not already been by some other absorption). A single expansion is needed for the function to take effect. An example:

\use_i:ii:nnn \{ abc \} \{ \{ def \} \} \{ ghi \}

results in the input stream containing

\begin{verbatim}
abc \{ def \}
\end{verbatim}

i.e. the outer braces are removed and the third group is removed.

\use_ii:ii:nn \{ \langle \text{arg}_1 \rangle \} \{ \langle \text{arg}_2 \rangle \}

This function absorbs two arguments and leaves the content of the second and first in the input stream. The category code of these tokens is also fixed (if it has not already been by some other absorption). A single expansion is needed for the function to take effect.
These functions absorb between one and nine groups from the input stream, leaving nothing on the resulting input stream. These functions work after a single expansion. One or more of the \( n \) arguments may be an unbraced single token (\textit{i.e.} an \( N \) argument).

\textbf{\TeX hackers note:} These are equivalent to \LaTeXe\ 's \texttt{@gobble}, \texttt{@gobbletwo}, etc.

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{\textbackslash use: e} \langle \texttt{expandable tokens} \rangle
\end{itemize}

\begin{itemize}
\item Fully expands the \langle \texttt{token list} \rangle in an \texttt{x}-type manner, but the function remains fully expandable, and parameter character (usually \#) need not be doubled.
\item \textbf{\TeX hackers note:} \texttt{\textbackslash use: e} is a wrapper around the primitive \texttt{\textbackslash expanded} where it is available: it requires two expansions to complete its action. When \texttt{\textbackslash expanded} is not available this function is very slow.
\end{itemize}

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{\textbackslash use: x} \langle \texttt{expandable tokens} \rangle
\end{itemize}

\begin{itemize}
\item Fully expands the \langle \texttt{expandable tokens} \rangle and inserts the result into the input stream at the current location. Any hash characters (\#) in the argument must be doubled.
\end{itemize}

### 4.5.1 Selecting tokens from delimited arguments

A different kind of function for selecting tokens from the token stream are those that use delimited arguments.

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{\textbackslash use: i delimit_by_q_nil:w} \langle \texttt{inserted tokens} \rangle \langle \texttt{balanced text} \rangle \texttt{\textbackslash q \_nil}
\item \texttt{\textbackslash use: i delimit_by_q_stop:w} \langle \texttt{inserted tokens} \rangle \langle \texttt{balanced text} \rangle \texttt{\textbackslash q \_stop}
\item \texttt{\textbackslash use: i delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:w} \langle \texttt{inserted tokens} \rangle \langle \texttt{balanced text} \rangle \texttt{\textbackslash q \_recursion \_stop}
\end{itemize}

Absorb the \langle \texttt{balanced text} \rangle from the input stream delimited by the marker given in the function name, leaving nothing in the input stream.

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{\textbackslash use: i delimit_by_q_nil:nw} \langle \texttt{inserted tokens} \rangle \langle \texttt{balanced text} \rangle \texttt{\textbackslash q \_nil}
\item \texttt{\textbackslash use: i delimit_by_q_stop:nw} \langle \texttt{inserted tokens} \rangle \langle \texttt{balanced text} \rangle \texttt{\textbackslash q \_stop}
\item \texttt{\textbackslash use: i delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:nw} \langle \texttt{inserted tokens} \rangle \langle \texttt{balanced text} \rangle \texttt{\textbackslash q \_recursion \_stop}
\end{itemize}

Absorb the \langle \texttt{balanced text} \rangle from the input stream delimited by the marker given in the function name, leaving \langle \texttt{inserted tokens} \rangle in the input stream for further processing.

### 4.6 Predicates and conditionals

\LaTeXe\ has three concepts for conditional flow processing:
Branching conditionals Functions that carry out a test and then execute, depending on its result, either the code supplied as the (true code) or the (false code). These arguments are denoted with T and F, respectively. An example would be

\cs_if_free:cTF {abc} {(true code)} {(false code)}

a function that turns the first argument into a control sequence (since it’s marked as c) then checks whether this control sequence is still free and then depending on the result carries out the code in the second argument (true case) or in the third argument (false case).

These type of functions are known as “conditionals”; whenever a TF function is defined it is usually accompanied by T and F functions as well. These are provided for convenience when the branch only needs to go a single way. Package writers are free to choose which types to define but the kernel definitions always provide all three versions.

Important to note is that these branching conditionals with (true code) and/or (false code) are always defined in a way that the code of the chosen alternative can operate on following tokens in the input stream.

These conditional functions may or may not be fully expandable, but if they are expandable they are accompanied by a “predicate” for the same test as described below.

Predicates “Predicates” are functions that return a special type of boolean value which can be tested by the boolean expression parser. All functions of this type are expandable and have names that end with _p in the description part. For example,

\cs_if_free_p:N

would be a predicate function for the same type of test as the conditional described above. It would return “true” if its argument (a single token denoted by N) is still free for definition. It would be used in constructions like

\bool_if:nTF { \cs_if_free_p:N \l_tmpz_tl || \cs_if_free_p:N \g_tmpz_tl } {(true code)} {(false code)}

For each predicate defined, a “branching conditional” also exists that behaves like a conditional described above.

Primitive conditionals There is a third variety of conditional, which is the original concept used in plain \TeX and \LaTeX. Their use is discouraged in expl3 (although still used in low-level definitions) because they are more fragile and in many cases require more expansion control (hence more code) than the two types of conditionals described above.

\c_true_bool \c_false_bool Constants that represent true and false, respectively. Used to implement predicates.
4.6.1 Tests on control sequences

\cs_if_eq_p:NN \langle cs_1 \rangle \langle cs_2 \rangle
\cs_if_eq:NNTF \langle cs_1 \rangle \langle cs_2 \rangle \{ \text{true code} \} \{ \text{false code} \}

Compares the definition of two \textit{(control sequences)} and is logically \texttt{true} if they are the same, \textit{i.e.} if they have exactly the same definition when examined with \texttt{\cs_show:N}.

\cs_if_exist_p:N \langle control sequence \rangle
\cs_if_exist:NTF \langle control sequence \rangle \{ \text{true code} \} \{ \text{false code} \}

Tests whether the \textit{(control sequence)} is currently defined (whether as a function or another control sequence type). Any definition of \textit{(control sequence)} other than \texttt{\relax} evaluates as \texttt{true}.

\cs_if_free_p:N \langle control sequence \rangle
\cs_if_free:NTF \langle control sequence \rangle \{ \text{true code} \} \{ \text{false code} \}

Tests whether the \textit{(control sequence)} is currently free to be defined. This test is \texttt{false} if the \textit{(control sequence)} currently exists (as defined by \texttt{\cs_if_exist:NTF}).

4.6.2 Primitive conditionals

The \texttt{\$\LaTeX$} engine itself provides many different conditionals. Some expand whatever comes after them and others don’t. Hence the names for these underlying functions often contain a \texttt{:w} part but higher level functions are often available. See for instance \texttt{\int_compare_p:nNn} which is a wrapper for \texttt{\if_int_compare:w}.

Certain conditionals deal with specific data types like boxes and fonts and are described there. The ones described below are either the universal conditionals or deal with control sequences. We prefix primitive conditionals with \texttt{\if_}.

\texttt{\if_true:} \langle true code \rangle \texttt{\else:} \langle false code \rangle \texttt{\fi:}
\texttt{\if_false:} \langle true code \rangle \texttt{\else:} \langle false code \rangle \texttt{\fi:}
\texttt{\else:} \langle primitive conditional \rangle
\texttt{\if:}
\texttt{\reverse_if:N} \langle primitive conditional \rangle
\texttt{\if_true:} always executes \langle true code \rangle, while \texttt{\if_false:} always executes \langle false code \rangle. \texttt{\reverse_if:N} reverses any two-way primitive conditional. \texttt{\else:} and \texttt{\fi:} delimit the branches of the conditional. The function \texttt{\or:} is documented in \texttt{l3int} and used in case switches.

\texttt{\TeXhackers note:} These are equivalent to their corresponding \texttt{\LaTeX} primitive conditionals; \texttt{\reverse_if:N} is \texttt{\$\LaTeX$}'s \texttt{\unless}.

\texttt{\if_meaning:w} \langle arg_1 \rangle \langle arg_2 \rangle \langle true code \rangle \texttt{\else:} \langle false code \rangle \texttt{\fi:}
\texttt{\if_meaning:w} \langle arg_1 \rangle \langle arg_2 \rangle \langle true code \rangle when \langle arg_1 \rangle and \langle arg_2 \rangle are the same, otherwise it executes \langle false code \rangle. \langle arg_1 \rangle and \langle arg_2 \rangle could be functions, variables, tokens; in all cases the \textit{unexpanded} definitions are compared.

\texttt{\TeXhackers note:} This is \texttt{\LaTeX}'s \texttt{\ifx}.
These conditionals expand any following tokens until two unexpandable tokens are left. If you wish to prevent this expansion, prefix the token in question with \exp_not:N. \if_catcode:w tests if the category codes of the two tokens are the same whereas \if:w tests if the character codes are identical. \if_charcode:w is an alternative name for \if:w.

\if_cs_exist:N \if_cs_exist:w
Check if ⟨cs⟩ appears in the hash table or if the control sequence that can be formed from ⟨tokens⟩ appears in the hash table. The latter function does not turn the control sequence in question into \scan_stop:. This can be useful when dealing with control sequences which cannot be entered as a single token.

\if_mode_horizontal: \if_mode_vertical: \if_mode_math: \if_mode_inner:
Execute ⟨true code⟩ if currently in horizontal mode, otherwise execute ⟨false code⟩. Similar for the other functions.

4.7 Starting a paragraph

\mode_leave_vertical:
Ensures that \TeX is not in vertical (inter-paragraph) mode. In horizontal or math mode this command has no effect, in vertical mode it switches to horizontal mode, and inserts a box of width \parindent, followed by the \everypar token list.

\TeXhackers note: This results in the contents of the \everypar token register being inserted, after \mode_leave_vertical: is complete. Notice that in contrast to the \TeX2ε \leavevmode approach, no box is used by the method implemented here.
4.8 Debugging support

\debug_on:n \debug_off:n

\debug_on:n \{ (comma-separated list) \}
\debug_off:n \{ (comma-separated list) \}

Turn on and off within a group various debugging code, some of which is also available as expl3 load-time options. The items that can be used in the \langle list\rangle are

- **check-declarations** that checks all expl3 variables used were previously declared and that local/global variables (based on their name or on their first assignment) are only locally/globally assigned;
- **check-expressions** that checks integer, dimension, skip, and muskip expressions are not terminated prematurely;
- **deprecation** that makes soon-to-be-deprecated commands produce errors;
- **log-functions** that logs function definitions;
- **all** that does all of the above.

Providing these as switches rather than options allows testing code even if it relies on other packages: load all other packages, call \debug_on:n, and load the code that one is interested in testing. These functions can only be used in \LaTeXe package mode loaded with enable-debug or another option implying it.

\debug_suspend: \debug_resume:

\debug_suspend: ... \debug_resume:

Suppress (locally) errors and logging from debug commands, except for the deprecation errors or warnings. These pairs of commands can be nested. This can be used around pieces of code that are known to fail checks, if such failures should be ignored. See for instance \l3coffins.

New: 2017-07-16
Updated: 2017-08-02

New: 2017-11-28
Chapter 5

The l3expan package
Argument expansion

This module provides generic methods for expanding \TeX arguments in a systematic manner. The functions in this module all have prefix \texttt{exp}.

Not all possible variations are implemented for every base function. Instead only those that are used within the \LaTeX{} kernel or otherwise seem to be of general interest are implemented. Consult the module description to find out which functions are actually defined. The next section explains how to define missing variants.

5.1 Defining new variants

The definition of variant forms for base functions may be necessary when writing new functions or when applying a kernel function in a situation that we haven’t thought of before.

Internally preprocessing of arguments is done with functions of the form \texttt{\exp_{-}...}. They all look alike, an example would be \texttt{\exp_args:NNo}. This function has three arguments, the first and the second are a single tokens, while the third argument should be given in braces. Applying \texttt{\exp_args:NNo} expands the content of third argument once before any expansion of the first and second arguments. If \texttt{\seq_gpush:No} was not defined it could be coded in the following way:

\begin{verbatim}
\exp_args:NNo \seq_gpush:Nn
\g_file_name_stack
{ \l_tmpa_tl }
\end{verbatim}

In other words, the first argument to \texttt{\exp_args:NNo} is the base function and the other arguments are preprocessed and then passed to this base function. In the example the first argument to the base function should be a single token which is left unchanged while the second argument is expanded once. From this example we can also see how the variants are defined. They just expand into the appropriate \texttt{\exp_{-}} function followed by the desired base function, \textit{e.g.}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_gpush:Nn { No }
\end{verbatim}

results in the definition of \texttt{\seq_gpush:No}
Providing variants in this way in style files is safe as the \texttt{\textbackslash cs\_generate\_variant:Nn} function will only create new definitions if there is not already one available. Therefore adding such definition to later releases of the kernel will not make such style files obsolete.

The steps above may be automated by using the function \texttt{\textbackslash cs\_generate\_variant:Nn}, described next.

5.2 Methods for defining variants

We recall the set of available argument specifiers.

- \texttt{N} is used for single-token arguments while \texttt{c} constructs a control sequence from its name and passes it to a parent function as an \texttt{N}-type argument.

- Many argument types extract or expand some tokens and provide it as an \texttt{n}-type argument, namely a braced multiple-token argument: \texttt{V} extracts the value of a variable, \texttt{v} extracts the value from the name of a variable, \texttt{n} uses the argument as it is, \texttt{o} expands once, \texttt{f} expands fully the front of the token list, \texttt{e} and \texttt{x} expand fully all tokens (differences are explained later).

- A few odd argument types remain: \texttt{T} and \texttt{F} for conditional processing, otherwise identical to \texttt{n}-type arguments, \texttt{p} for the parameter text in definitions, \texttt{w} for arguments with a specific syntax, and \texttt{D} to denote primitives that should not be used directly.
This function is used to define argument-specifier variants of the \textit{parent control sequence} for \LaTeX3 code-level macros. The \textit{parent control sequence} is first separated into the \textit{base name} and \textit{original argument specifier}. The comma-separated list of \textit{variant argument specifiers} is then used to define variants of the \textit{original argument specifier} if these are not already defined. For each \textit{variant} given, a function is created that expands its arguments as detailed and passes them to the \textit{parent control sequence}. So for example

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_set:Npn \foo:Nn #1#2 { code here }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \foo:Nn { c }
\end{verbatim}

creates a new function \texttt{$\foo:cn$} which expands its first argument into a control sequence name and passes the result to \texttt{$\foo:Nn$}. Similarly

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \foo:Nn \foo:Nn { NV , cV }
\end{verbatim}

generates the functions \texttt{$\foo:NV$} and \texttt{$\foo:cV$} in the same way. The \texttt{\cs_generate_variant:Nn} function can only be applied if the \textit{parent control sequence} is already defined. If the \textit{parent control sequence} is protected or if the \textit{variant} involves any \texttt{x} argument, then the \textit{variant control sequence} is also protected. The \textit{variant} is created globally, as is any \texttt{exp_args:N(variant)} function needed to carry out the expansion.

Only \texttt{n} and \texttt{N} arguments can be changed to other types. The only allowed changes are

- \texttt{c} variant of an \texttt{N} parent;
- \texttt{o}, \texttt{V}, \texttt{v}, \texttt{f}, \texttt{e}, or \texttt{x} variant of an \texttt{n} parent;
- \texttt{N}, \texttt{n}, \texttt{T}, \texttt{F}, or \texttt{p} argument unchanged.

This means the \textit{parent} of a \textit{variant} form is always unambiguous, even in cases where both an \texttt{n}-type parent and an \texttt{N}-type parent exist, such as for \texttt{$\tl_count:n$} and \texttt{$\tl_count:N$}.

For backward compatibility it is currently possible to make \texttt{n}, \texttt{o}, \texttt{V}, \texttt{v}, \texttt{f}, \texttt{e}, or \texttt{x}-type variants of an \texttt{N}-type argument or \texttt{N} or \texttt{c}-type variants of an \texttt{n}-type argument. Both are deprecated. The first because passing more than one token to an \texttt{N}-type argument will typically break the parent function’s code. The second because programmers who use that most often want to access the value of a variable given its name, hence should use a \texttt{V}-type or \texttt{v}-type variant instead of \texttt{c}-type. In those cases, using the lower-level \texttt{exp_args:No} or \texttt{exp_args:Nc} functions explicitly is preferred to defining confusing variants.

### 5.3 Introducing the variants

The \texttt{V} type returns the value of a register, which can be one of \texttt{tl}, \texttt{clist}, \texttt{int}, \texttt{skip}, \texttt{dim}, \texttt{muskip}, or built-in \TeX registers. The \texttt{v} type is the same except it first creates a control sequence out of its argument before returning the value.

In general, the programmer should not need to be concerned with expansion control. When simply using the content of a variable, functions with a \texttt{V} specifier should be used. For those referred to by \texttt{(cs)}name, the \texttt{v} specifier is available for the same purpose. Only
when specific expansion steps are needed, such as when using delimited arguments, should the lower-level functions with \texttt{o} specifiers be employed.

The \texttt{e} type expands all tokens fully, starting from the first. More precisely the expansion is identical to that of \TeX's \texttt{\message} (in particular \texttt{#} needs not be doubled). It was added in May 2018. In recent enough engines (starting around 2019) it relies on the primitive \texttt{\expanded} hence is fast. In older engines it is very much slower. As a result it should only be used in performance critical code if typical users will have a recent installation of the \TeX ecosystem.

The \texttt{x} type expands all tokens fully, starting from the first. In contrast to \texttt{e}, all macro parameter characters \texttt{#} must be doubled, and omitting this leads to low-level errors. In addition this type of expansion is not expandable, namely functions that have \texttt{x} in their signature do not themselves expand when appearing inside \texttt{x} or \texttt{e} expansion.

The \texttt{f} type is so special that it deserves an example. It is typically used in contexts where only expandable commands are allowed. Then \texttt{x}-expansion cannot be used, and \texttt{f}-expansion provides an alternative that expands the front of the token list as much as can be done in such contexts. For instance, say that we want to evaluate the integer expression \texttt{3 + 4} and pass the result \texttt{7} as an argument to an expandable function \texttt{\example:n}. For this, one should define a variant using \texttt{\cs_generate_variant:Nn \example:n { f }}, then do

\begin{verbatim}
\example:f { \int_eval:n { 3 + 4 } }
\end{verbatim}

Note that \texttt{x}-expansion would also expand \texttt{\int_eval:n} fully to its result \texttt{7}, but the variant \texttt{\example:x} cannot be expandable. Note also that \texttt{o}-expansion would not expand \texttt{\int_eval:n} fully to its result since that function requires several expansions. Besides the fact that \texttt{x}-expansion is protected rather than expandable, another difference between \texttt{f}-expansion and \texttt{x}-expansion is that \texttt{f}-expansion expands tokens from the beginning and stops as soon as a non-expandable token is encountered, while \texttt{x}-expansion continues expanding further tokens. Thus, for instance

\begin{verbatim}
\example:f { \int_eval:n { 1 + 2 }, \int_eval:n { 3 + 4 } }
\end{verbatim}

results in the call

\begin{verbatim}
\example:n { 3 , \int_eval:n { 3 + 4 } }
\end{verbatim}

while using \texttt{\example:x} or \texttt{\example:e} instead results in

\begin{verbatim}
\example:n { 3 , 7 }
\end{verbatim}

at the cost of being protected (for \texttt{x} type) or very much slower in old engines (for \texttt{e} type). If you use \texttt{f} type expansion in conditional processing then you should stick to using TF type functions only as the expansion does not finish any \texttt{\if... \fi}: itself!

It is important to note that both \texttt{f}- and \texttt{o}-type expansion are concerned with the expansion of tokens from left to right in their arguments. In particular, \texttt{o}-type expansion applies to the first token in the argument it receives: it is conceptually similar to

\begin{verbatim}
\exp_after:wN <base function> \exp_after:wN { <argument> }
\end{verbatim}

At the same time, \texttt{f}-type expansion stops at the first non-expandable token. This means for example that both

\begin{verbatim}
\tl_set:No \l_tmpa_tl { { \g_tmb_tl } }
\end{verbatim}

33
and

\tl_set:Nf \l_tmpa_tl { { \g_tmpb_tl } }

leave \g_tmpb_tl unchanged: \{ is the first token in the argument and is non-expandable.

It is usually best to keep the following in mind when using variant forms.

- Variants with x-type arguments (that are fully expanded before being passed to
  the n-type base function) are never expandable even when the base function is.
  Such variants cannot work correctly in arguments that are themselves subject to
  expansion. Consider using f or e expansion.

- In contrast, e expansion (full expansion, almost like x except for the treatment of #)
  does not prevent variants from being expandable (if the base function is). The drawback
  is that e expansion is very much slower in old engines (before 2019). Consider
  using f expansion if that type of expansion is sufficient to perform the required
  expansion, or x expansion if the variant will not itself need to be expandable.

- Finally f expansion only expands the front of the token list, stopping at the first
  non-expandable token. This may fail to fully expand the argument.

When speed is essential (for functions that do very little work and whose variants are
used numerous times in a document) the following considerations apply because internal
functions for argument expansion come in two flavours, some faster than others.

- Arguments that might need expansion should come first in the list of arguments.

- Arguments that should consist of single tokens N, c, V, or v should come first among
  these.

- Arguments that appear after the first multi-token argument n, f, e, or o require
  slightly slower special processing to be expanded. Therefore it is best to use the
  optimized functions, namely those that contain only N, c, V, and v, and, in the last
  position, o, f, e, with possible trailing N or n or T or F, which are not expanded.
  Any x-type argument causes slightly slower processing.

5.4 Manipulating the first argument

These functions are described in detail: expansion of multiple tokens follows the same
rules but is described in a shorter fashion.

\exp_args:Nc \exp_args:cc
\exp_args:Nc \exp_args:cc
\exp_args:Nc \exp_args:cc

This function absorbs two arguments (the \texttt{function} name and the \texttt{tokens}). The
\texttt{tokens} are expanded until only characters remain, and are then turned into a control
sequence. The result is inserted into the input stream after reinsertion of the \texttt{function}.
Thus the \texttt{function} may take more than one argument: all others are left unchanged.

The \texttt{:cc} variant constructs the \texttt{function} name in the same manner as described for
the \texttt{tokens}.

\textbf{\texttt{\textsc{\TeX}hackers note}:} Protected macros that appear in a c-type argument are expanded
despite being protected; \texttt{\exp_not:n} also has no effect. An internal error occurs if non-characters
or active characters remain after full expansion, as the conversion to a control sequence is not
possible.

34
This function absorbs two arguments (the \textit{function} name and the \textit{tokens}). The \textit{tokens} are expanded once, and the result is inserted in braces into the input stream \textit{after} reinsertion of the \textit{function}. Thus the \textit{function} may take more than one argument: all others are left unchanged.

This function absorbs two arguments (the names of the \textit{function} and the \textit{variable}). The content of the \textit{variable} are recovered and placed inside braces into the input stream \textit{after} reinsertion of the \textit{function}. Thus the \textit{function} may take more than one argument: all others are left unchanged.

This function absorbs two arguments (the \textit{function} name and the \textit{tokens}). The \textit{tokens} are expanded until only characters remain, and are then turned into a control sequence. This control sequence should be the name of a \textit{variable}. The content of the \textit{variable} are recovered and placed inside braces into the input stream \textit{after} reinsertion of the \textit{function}. Thus the \textit{function} may take more than one argument: all others are left unchanged.

\textbf{\LaTeX}hackers note: Protected macros that appear in a v-type argument are expanded despite being protected; \texttt{\exp_not:n} also has no effect. An internal error occurs if non-characters or active characters remain after full expansion, as the conversion to a control sequence is not possible.

This function absorbs two arguments (the \textit{function} name and the \textit{tokens}) and exhaustively expands the \textit{tokens}. The result is inserted in braces into the input stream \textit{after} reinsertion of the \textit{function}. Thus the \textit{function} may take more than one argument: all others are left unchanged.

\textbf{\LaTeX}hackers note: This relies on the \texttt{\expanded} primitive when available (in \LaTeX{} and starting around 2019 in other engines). Otherwise it uses some fall-back code that is very much slower. As a result it should only be used in performance-critical code if typical users have a recent installation of the \TeX{} ecosystem.
This function absorbs two arguments (the \textit{function} name and the \textit{tokens}) and exhaustively expands the \textit{tokens}. The result is inserted in braces into the input stream \textit{after} reinsertion of the \textit{function}. Thus the \textit{function} may take more than one argument: all others are left unchanged.

### 5.5 Manipulating two arguments

These optimized functions absorb three arguments and expand the second and third as detailed by their argument specifier. The first argument of the function is then the next item on the input stream, followed by the expansion of the second and third arguments.

These functions absorb three arguments and expand the second and third as detailed by their argument specifier. The first argument of the function is then the next item on the input stream, followed by the expansion of the second and third arguments. These functions need slower processing.

These functions absorb three arguments and expand the second and third as detailed by their argument specifier. The first argument of the function is then the next item on the input stream, followed by the expansion of the second and third arguments. These functions are not expandable due to their \textit{x}-type argument.
5.6 Manipulating three arguments

\texttt{\exp_args:NNNo} \star
\texttt{\exp_args:NNNV} \star
\texttt{\exp_args:NNNv} \star
\texttt{\exp_args:Nccc} \star
\texttt{\exp_args:NcNc} \star
\texttt{\exp_args:Ncco} \star
\texttt{\exp_args:Noo} \langle \text{token} \rangle \langle \text{token} \rangle \langle \text{token} \rangle \langle \text{tokens} \rangle

These optimized functions absorb four arguments and expand the second, third and fourth as detailed by their argument specifier. The first argument of the function is then the next item on the input stream, followed by the expansion of the second argument, \textit{etc.}

\texttt{\exp_args:NNcf} \star
\texttt{\exp_args:NNno} \star
\texttt{\exp_args:NNnV} \star
\texttt{\exp_args:NNoo} \star
\texttt{\exp_args:NNVV} \star
\texttt{\exp_args:Ncno} \star
\texttt{\exp_args:NcnV} \star
\texttt{\exp_args:Ncoo} \star
\texttt{\exp_args:NcVV} \star
\texttt{\exp_args:Nnc} \star
\texttt{\exp_args:Nnn} \star
\texttt{\exp_args:Nmf} \star
\texttt{\exp_args:Nno} \star
\texttt{\exp_args:Nff} \star
\texttt{\exp_args:Nooo} \star
\texttt{\exp_args:Noo} \star
\texttt{\exp_args:Nff} \star
\texttt{\exp_args:Nee} \star
\texttt{\exp_args:Nnx} \langle \text{token} \rangle \langle \text{tokens} \rangle \langle \text{tokens} \rangle

These functions absorb four arguments and expand the second, third and fourth as detailed by their argument specifier. The first argument of the function is then the next item on the input stream, followed by the expansion of the second argument, \textit{etc.} These functions need slower processing.

\texttt{\exp_args:NNhx} \langle \text{token} \rangle \langle \text{tokens} \rangle \langle \text{tokens} \rangle

These functions absorb four arguments and expand the second, third and fourth as detailed by their argument specifier. The first argument of the function is then the next item on the input stream, followed by the expansion of the second argument, \textit{etc.}
5.7 Unbraced expansion

These functions absorb the number of arguments given by their specification, carry out the expansion indicated and leave the results in the input stream, with the last argument not surrounded by the usual braces. Of these, the :Nno, :Noo, :Nfo and :NnNo variants need slower processing.

**TeXhackers note:** As an optimization, the last argument is unbraced by some of those functions before expansion. This can cause problems if the argument is empty: for instance, \exp_last_unbraced:Nf \foo_bar:w \q_stop leads to an infinite loop, as the quark is f-expanded.

5.8 Preventing expansion

Despite the fact that the following functions are all about preventing expansion, they’re designed to be used in an expandable context and hence are all marked as being ‘expand-
able’ since they themselves disappear after the expansion has completed.

\[\exp_not:N \langle \text{token} \rangle \]

Prevents expansion of the \langle token \rangle in a context where it would otherwise be expanded, for example an x-type argument or the first token in an o or e or f argument.

\textbf{\TeXhackers note:} This is the \TeX \texttt{noexpand} primitive. It only prevents expansion. At the beginning of an f-type argument, a space \langle token \rangle is removed even if it appears as \exp_not:N \c_space_token. In an x-expanding definition (\cs_new:Npx), a macro parameter introduces an argument even if it appears as \exp_not:N \#1. This differs from \exp_not:n.

\[\exp_not:c \{ \langle \text{tokens} \rangle \}\]

Expands the \langle tokens \rangle until only characters remain, and then converts this into a control sequence. Further expansion of this control sequence is then inhibited using \exp_not:N.

\textbf{\TeXhackers note:} Protected macros that appear in a c-type argument are expanded despite being protected; \exp_not:n also has no effect. An internal error occurs if non-characters or active characters remain after full expansion, as the conversion to a control sequence is not possible.

\[\exp_not:n \{ \langle \text{tokens} \rangle \}\]

Prevents expansion of the \langle tokens \rangle in an e or x-type argument. In all other cases the \langle tokens \rangle continue to be expanded, for example in the input stream or in other types of arguments such as c, f, v. The argument of \exp_not:n must be surrounded by braces.

\textbf{\TeXhackers note:} This is the \TeX \texttt{unexpanded} primitive. In an x-expanding definition (\cs_new:Npx), \exp_not:n \{#1\} is equivalent to \#1 rather than to \#1, namely it inserts the two characters \# and 1. In an e-type argument \exp_not:n \{#\} is equivalent to \#, namely it inserts the character \#.

\[\exp_not:o \{ \langle \text{tokens} \rangle \}\]

Expands the \langle tokens \rangle once, then prevents any further expansion in x-type or e-type arguments using \exp_not:n.

\[\exp_not:V \langle \text{variable} \rangle \]

Recovers the content of the \langle variable \rangle, then prevents expansion of this material in x-type or e-type arguments using \exp_not:n.
\texttt{\textbackslash exp\_not\textbackslash v \{\texttt{tokens}\}}

Expands the \langle tokens \rangle until only characters remains, and then converts this into a control sequence which should be a \langle variable \rangle name. The content of the \langle variable \rangle is recovered, and further expansion in \texttt{x}-type or \texttt{e}-type arguments is prevented using \texttt{\exp\_not\textbackslash n}.

\textbf{\LaTeX{}hackers note:} Protected macros that appear in a \texttt{v}-type argument are expanded despite being protected; \texttt{\exp\_not\textbackslash n} also has no effect. An internal error occurs if non-characters or active characters remain after full expansion, as the conversion to a control sequence is not possible.

\texttt{\textbackslash exp\_not\textbackslash e \{\texttt{tokens}\}}

Expands \langle tokens \rangle exhaustively, then protects the result of the expansion (including any tokens which were not expanded) from further expansion in \texttt{e} or \texttt{x}-type arguments using \texttt{\exp\_not\textbackslash n}. This is very rarely useful but is provided for consistency.

\texttt{\textbackslash exp\_not\textbackslash f \{\texttt{tokens}\}}

Expands \langle tokens \rangle fully until the first unexpandable token is found (if it is a space it is removed). Expansion then stops, and the result of the expansion (including any tokens which were not expanded) is protected from further expansion in \texttt{x}-type or \texttt{e}-type arguments using \texttt{\exp\_not\textbackslash n}.

\texttt{\foo\textunderscore bar\textbackslash f \{\texttt{tokens} \texttt{\exp\_stop\_f} \{\texttt{more tokens}\}\}}

This function terminates an \texttt{f}-type expansion. Thus if a function \texttt{\foo\textunderscore bar\textbackslash f} starts an \texttt{f}-type expansion and all of \langle tokens \rangle are expandable \texttt{\exp\_stop\_f} terminates the expansion of tokens even if \langle more tokens \rangle are also expandable. The function itself is an implicit space token. Inside an \texttt{x}-type expansion, it retains its form, but when typeset it produces the underlying space (\texttt{\textbackslash \textunderscore}).

5.9 Controlled expansion

The \texttt{expl3} language makes all efforts to hide the complexity of \LaTeX{} expansion from the programmer by providing concepts that evaluate/expand arguments of functions prior to calling the “base” functions. Thus, instead of using many \texttt{\expandafter} calls and other trickery it is usually a matter of choosing the right variant of a function to achieve a desired result.

Of course, deep down \LaTeX{} is using expansion as always and there are cases where a programmer needs to control that expansion directly; typical situations are basic data manipulation tools. This section documents the functions for that level. These commands are used throughout the kernel code, but we hope that outside the kernel there will be little need to resort to them. Instead the argument manipulation methods document above should usually be sufficient.

While \texttt{\exp\_after\textbackslash wN} expands one token (out of order) it is sometimes necessary to expand several tokens in one go. The next set of commands provide this functionality. Be aware that it is absolutely required that the programmer has full control over the tokens to be expanded, i.e., it is not possible to use these functions to expand unknown input as part of \langle expandable-tokens \rangle as that will break badly if unexpandable tokens are encountered in that place!
\exp:w \exp:w (expandable-tokens) \exp_end:
Expands \langle expandable-tokens \rangle until reaching \exp_end: at which point expansion stops. The full expansion of \langle expandable tokens \rangle has to be empty. If any token in \langle expandable tokens \rangle or any token generated by expanding the tokens therein is not expandable the expansion will end prematurely and as a result \exp_end: will be misinterpreted later on.\footnote{Due to the implementation you might get the character in position 0 in the current font (typically ‘‘) in the output without any error message!}

In typical use cases the \exp_end: is hidden somewhere in the replacement text of \langle expandable-tokens \rangle rather than being on the same expansion level than \exp:w, e.g., you may see code such as

\exp:w \@@_case:NnTF #1 {#2} { } { }

where somewhere during the expansion of \@@_case:NnTF the \exp_end: gets generated.

\TeXhacksnote The current implementation uses \romannumeral hence ignores space tokens and explicit signs + and - in the expansion of the \langle expandable tokens \rangle, but this should not be relied upon.

\exp:w \exp:w \exp:w (expandable-tokens) \exp_end_continue_f:w \exp:w \langle \text{further-tokens} \rangle
Expands \langle expandable-tokens \rangle until reaching \exp_end_continue_f:w at which point expansion continues as an \text{f}-type expansion expanding \langle \text{further-tokens} \rangle until an unexpandable token is encountered (or the \text{f}-type expansion is explicitly terminated by \exp_stop_f:). As with all \text{f}-type expansions a space ending the expansion gets removed.

The full expansion of \langle expandable-tokens \rangle has to be empty. If any token in \langle expandable-tokens \rangle or any token generated by expanding the tokens therein is not expandable the expansion will end prematurely and as a result \exp_end_continue_f:w will be misinterpreted later on.\footnote{In this particular case you may get a character into the output as well as an error message.}

In typical use cases \langle expandable-tokens \rangle contains no tokens at all, e.g., you will see code such as

\exp_after:wN \exp:w \langle \text{further-tokens} \rangle
where the \exp_after:wN triggers an \text{f}-expansion of the tokens in \#2. For technical reasons this has to happen using two tokens (if they would be hidden inside another command \exp_after:wN would only expand the command but not trigger any additional \text{f}-expansion).

You might wonder why there are two different approaches available, after all the effect of

\exp:w (expandable-tokens) \exp_end:
can be alternatively achieved through an \text{f}-type expansion by using \exp_stop_f:, i.e.

\exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w (expandable-tokens) \exp_stop_f:
The reason is simply that the first approach is slightly faster (one less token to parse and less expansion internally) so in places where such performance really matters and where we want to explicitly stop the expansion at a defined point the first form is preferable.
The difference to \texttt{\exp_end\_continue\_f:w} is that we first we pick up an argument which is then returned to the input stream. If \texttt{\textit{further-tokens}} starts with space tokens then these space tokens are removed while searching for the argument. If it starts with a brace group then the braces are removed. Thus such spaces or braces will not terminate the \textit{f}-type expansion.

\section{5.10 Internal functions}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \exp_args:Ncof { \::c \::o \::f \::: }
\end{verbatim}

Internal forms for the base expansion types. These names do \textit{not} conform to the general \LaTeX{} approach as this makes them more readily visible in the log and so forth. They should not be used outside this module.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \exp_last_unbraced:Nno { \::n \::o_unbraced \::: }
\end{verbatim}

Internal forms for the expansion types which leave the terminal argument unbraced. These names do \textit{not} conform to the general \LaTeX{} approach as this makes them more readily visible in the log and so forth. They should not be used outside this module.
Chapter 6

The l3sort package
Sorting functions

6.1 Controlling sorting

\TeX\ comes with a facility to sort list variables (sequences, token lists, or comma-lists) according to some user-defined comparison. For instance,

\begin{verbatim}
\clist_set:Nn \l_foo_clist { 3 , 01 , -2 , 5 , +1 }
\clist_sort:Nn \l_foo_clist
{ \int_compare:nNnTF { #1 } > { #2 }
{ \sort_return_swapped: }
{ \sort_return_same: }
}
\end{verbatim}

results in \l_foo_clist holding the values \{-2, 01, +1, 3, 5\} sorted in non-decreasing order.

The code defining the comparison should call \sort_return_swapped: if the two items given as \#1 and \#2 are not in the correct order, and otherwise it should call \sort_return_same: to indicate that the order of this pair of items should not be changed.

For instance, a \textit{comparison code} consisting only of \sort_return_same: with no test yields a trivial sort: the final order is identical to the original order. Conversely, using a \textit{comparison code} consisting only of \sort_return_swapped: reverses the list (in a fairly inefficient way).

\TeX\hackers note: The current implementation is limited to sorting approximately 20000 items (40000 in \TeX\), depending on what other packages are loaded.

Internally, the code from l3sort stores items in \toks registers allocated locally. Thus, the \textit{comparison code} should not call \nevtoks or other commands that allocate new \toks registers. On the other hand, altering the value of a previously allocated \toks register is not a problem.
\sort_return_same: \seq_sort:Nn \seq { ... \sort_return_same: or \sort_return_swapped: ... } 

\sort_return_swapped: 

Indicates whether to keep the order or swap the order of two items that are compared in the sorting code. Only one of the \sort_return_same: ... functions should be used by the code, according to the results of some tests on the items \#1 and \#2 to be compared.
Chapter 7

The \l3tl-analysis package: Analysing token lists

This module provides functions that are particularly useful in the \l3regex module for mapping through a token list one \texttt{token} at a time (including begin-group/end-group tokens). For \texttt{tl_analysis_map_inline:Nn} or \texttt{tl_analysis_map_inline:nn}, the token list is given as an argument; the analogous function \texttt{peek_analysis_map_inline:n} documented in \l3token finds tokens in the input stream instead. In both cases the user provides \texttt{(inline code)} that receives three arguments for each \texttt{token}:

- \texttt{(tokens)}, which both \texttt{o}-expand and \texttt{x}-expand to the \texttt{token}. The detailed form of \texttt{(tokens)} may change in later releases.
- \texttt{(char code)}, a decimal representation of the character code of the \texttt{token}, $-1$ if it is a control sequence.
- \texttt{(catcode)}, a capital hexadecimal digit which denotes the category code of the \texttt{token} (0: control sequence, 1: begin-group, 2: end-group, 3: math shift, 4: alignment tab, 6: parameter, 7: superscript, 8: subscript, A: space, B: letter, C: other, D: active). This can be converted to an integer by writing "\texttt{(catcode)}".

In addition, there is a debugging function \texttt{tl_analysis_show:n}, very similar to the \texttt{ShowTokens} macro from the \texttt{ted} package.

\begin{verbatim}
\tl_analysis_show:N \tl_analysis_show:n \tl_analysis_log:N \tl_analysis_log:n
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{New: 2021-05-11}

\begin{verbatim}
\tl_analysis_map_inline:nn \tl_analysis_map_inline:Nn
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{New: 2018-04-09}

Displays to the terminal (or log) the detailed decomposition of the \texttt{token list} into tokens, showing the category code of each character token, the meaning of control sequences and active characters, and the value of registers.

Applies the \texttt{(inline function)} to each individual \texttt{token} in the \texttt{token list}. The \texttt{(inline function)} receives three arguments as explained above. As all other mappings the mapping is done at the current group level, \textit{i.e.} any local assignments made by the \texttt{(inline function)} remain in effect after the loop.
Chapter 8

The l3regex package: Regular expressions in \TeX

The l3regex package provides regular expression testing, extraction of submatches, splitting, and replacement, all acting on token lists. The syntax of regular expressions is mostly a subset of the PCRE syntax (and very close to POSIX), with some additions due to the fact that \TeX manipulates tokens rather than characters. For performance reasons, only a limited set of features are implemented. Notably, back-references are not supported.

Let us give a few examples. After

\tl_set:Nn \l_my_tl { That~cat. }
\regex_replace_once:nnN { at } { is } \l_my_tl

the token list variable \l_my_tl holds the text “This cat.”, where the first occurrence of “at” was replaced by “is”. A more complicated example is a pattern to emphasize each word and add a comma after it:

\regex_replace_all:nnN { \w+ } { \c{emph}\cB\{ \0 \cE\} , } \l_my_tl

The \w sequence represents any “word” character, and + indicates that the \w sequence should be repeated as many times as possible (at least once), hence matching a word in the input token list. In the replacement text, \0 denotes the full match (here, a word). The command \emph is inserted using \c{emph}, and its argument \0 is put between braces \cB\{ and \cE\}.

If a regular expression is to be used several times, it can be compiled once, and stored in a regex variable using \regex_set:Nn. For example,

\regex_new:N \l_foo_regex
\regex_set:Nn \l_foo_regex { \c{begin} \cB. \(\c[^{BE}.]*\) \cE. }

stores in \l_foo_regex a regular expression which matches the starting marker for an environment: \begin, followed by a begin-group token (\cB.), then any number of tokens which are neither begin-group nor end-group character tokens (\c[^{BE}.]*), ending with an end-group token (\cE.). As explained in the next section, the parentheses “capture” the result of \c[^{BE}.]*, giving us access to the name of the environment when doing replacements.
8.1 Syntax of regular expressions

8.1.1 Regular expression examples

We start with a few examples, and encourage the reader to apply \regex_show:n to these regular expressions.

- **Cat** matches the word “Cat” capitalized in this way, but also matches the beginning of the word “Cattle”: use \bCat\b to match a complete word only.

- \[abc\] matches one letter among “a”, “b”, “c”; the pattern (a|b|c) matches the same three possible letters (but see the discussion of submatches below).

- \[A-Za-z\]* matches any number (due to the quantifier *) of Latin letters (not accented).

- \c{[A-Za-z\]} matches a control sequence made of Latin letters.

- \_\[^\_]*\_ matches an underscore, any number of characters other than underscore, and another underscore; it is equivalent to \_.*?\_ where ? matches arbitrary characters and the lazy quantifier *? means to match as few characters as possible, thus avoiding matching underscores.

- \[\\+-]?!\\d+ matches an explicit integer with at most one sign.

- \[\\+-\[\_\]*\\d+\\_\_ matches an explicit integer with any number of + and – signs, with spaces allowed except within the mantissa, and surrounded by spaces.

- \[\\+-\][\_\]*\(\d+!\d*!\d+\)\_\_ matches an explicit integer or decimal number; using [.,] instead of \ would allow the comma as a decimal marker.

- \[\\+-\][\_\]*\(\d+!\d*!\d+\)\_\_\(\(?i\)pt\|in\|\[cem\]m\|ex\|\[bs\]p\|\[dn\]d\|\[pcn\]c\)\_\_ matches an explicit dimension with any unit that \TEX{} knows, where (?! means to treat lowercase and uppercase letters identically.

- \[\\+-\][\_\]*\(\(?i\)nan\|inf\|\(\d+!\d*!\d+\)\_\_\e\(\\+-\[\_\]*\d+\)?)\_\_\_ matches an explicit floating point number or the special values nan and inf (with signs and spaces allowed).

- \[\\+-\][\_\]*\(\d+!\cC.\)\_\_\_ matches an explicit integer or control sequence (without checking whether it is an integer variable).

- \G.\_?\K at the beginning of a regular expression matches and discards (due to \K) everything between the end of the previous match (\G) and what is matched by the rest of the regular expression; this is useful in \regex_replace_all:nnN when the goal is to extract matches or submatches in a finer way than with \regex_extract_all:nnN.

While it is impossible for a regular expression to match only integer expressions, \[\\+-\\[\_\]*\d+\_\_\(\(+\_\_\)/\(\d+!\d*!\d+\)\_\_\] matches among other things all valid integer expressions (made only with explicit integers). One should follow it with further testing.
8.1.2 Characters in regular expressions

Most characters match exactly themselves, with an arbitrary category code. Some characters are special and must be escaped with a backslash (e.g., \* matches a star character). Some escape sequences of the form backslash–letter also have a special meaning (for instance \d matches any digit). As a rule,

- every alphanumeric character (A–Z, a–z, 0–9) matches exactly itself, and should not be escaped, because \A, \B, ... have special meanings;
- non-alphanumeric printable ascii characters can (and should) always be escaped: many of them have special meanings (e.g., use \(, \), \?, \.., \^);
- spaces should always be escaped (even in character classes);
- any other character may be escaped or not, without any effect: both versions match exactly that character.

Note that these rules play nicely with the fact that many non-alphanumeric characters are difficult to input into \TeX\ under normal category codes. For instance, \abc\% matches the characters \abc\% (with arbitrary category codes), but does not match the control sequence \abc followed by a percent character. Matching control sequences can be done using the \c{⟨regex⟩} syntax (see below).

Any special character which appears at a place where its special behaviour cannot apply matches itself instead (for instance, a quantifier appearing at the beginning of a string), after raising a warning.

Characters.
\x{hh...} Character with hex code hh...
\xhh Character with hex code hh.
\a Alarm (hex 07).
\e Escape (hex 1B).
\f Form-feed (hex 0C).
\n New line (hex 0A).
\r Carriage return (hex 0D).
\t Horizontal tab (hex 09).

8.1.3 Characters classes

Character types.
.
\d Any decimal digit.
\h Any horizontal space character, equivalent to [\ \^-I]: space and tab.
\s Any space character, equivalent to [\ \^-I\^-J\^-L\^-M].

48
\v Any vertical space character, equivalent to `[^\^J\^K\^L\^M]`. Note that `\^K` is a vertical space, but not a space, for compatibility with Perl.
\w Any word character, i.e., alphanumerics and underscore, equivalent to the explicit class `[^A-Za-z0-9_]`.
\d Any token not matched by `\d`.
\H Any token not matched by `\H`.
\N Any token other than the `\n` character (hex 0A).
\s Any token not matched by `\s`.
\V Any token not matched by `\v`.
\W Any token not matched by `\w`.

Of those, `. \d \H \N \S \V \W` match arbitrary control sequences.

Character classes match exactly one token in the subject.

[...] Positive character class. Matches any of the specified tokens.

[^...] Negative character class. Matches any token other than the specified characters.

x-y Within a character class, this denotes a range (can be used with escaped characters).

[:^⟨name⟩:] Negative POSIX character class.

For instance, `[^a-q-z\cC.]` matches any lowercase latin letter except p, as well as control sequences (see below for a description of `\c`).

In character classes, only `[ ^ ]`, `\` and spaces are special, and should be escaped. Other non-alphanumeric characters can still be escaped without harm. Any escape sequence which matches a single character (`\d`, `\D`, etc.) is supported in character classes. If the first character is `^`, then the meaning of the character class is inverted; `^` appearing anywhere else in the range is not special. If the first character (possibly following a leading `^`) is `]` then it does not need to be escaped since ending the range there would make it empty. Ranges of characters can be expressed using `^`, for instance, `[^\d 0-5]` and `[^6-9]` are equivalent.

8.1.4 Structure: alternatives, groups, repetitions

Quantifiers (repetition).

? 0 or 1, greedy.
?? 0 or 1, lazy.
* 0 or more, greedy.
*? 0 or more, lazy.
+ 1 or more, greedy.
+? 1 or more, lazy.
{\text{n}} Exactly \text{n}.
{\text{n,}} \text{n or more, greedy.}
{\text{n,}?} \text{n or more, lazy.}
{\text{n, m}} \text{n or more, m, greedy.}
{\text{n, m}?} \text{n or more, m, lazy.}

For greedy quantifiers the regex code will first investigate matches that involve as many
repetitions as possible, while for lazy quantifiers it investigates matches with as few
repetitions as possible first.

Alternation and capturing groups.
A|B|C Either one of \text{A}, \text{B}, or \text{C}, investigating \text{A} first.
(... ) Capturing group.
(?:...) Non-capturing group.

(?!!!) Non-capturing group which resets the group number for capturing groups in each
alternative. The following group is numbered with the first unused group number.

Capturing groups are a means of extracting information about the match. Paren-
thesized groups are labelled in the order of their opening parenthesis, starting at 1. The
contents of those groups corresponding to the “best” match (leftmost longest) can be
extracted and stored in a sequence of token lists using for instance \regex_extract_once:
nN.

The \K escape sequence resets the beginning of the match to the current position in
the token list. This only affects what is reported as the full match. For instance,

\regex_extract_all:nN { a \K . } { a123aaxyz } \l_foo_seq
results in \l_foo_seq containing the items \{1\} and \{a\}: the true matches are \{a1\} and
\{aa\}, but they are trimmed by the use of \K. The \K command does not affect capturing
groups: for instance,

\regex_extract_once:nN { (. \K c)+ \d } { acbc3 } \l_foo_seq
results in \l_foo_seq containing the items \{c3\} and \{bc\}: the true match is \{acbc3\},
with first submatch \{bc\}, but \K resets the beginning of the match to the last position
where it appears.

8.1.5 Matching exact tokens

The \c escape sequence allows to test the category code of tokens, and match control
sequences. Each character category is represented by a single uppercase letter:

- \text{C} for control sequences;
- \text{B} for begin-group tokens;
- \text{E} for end-group tokens;
• \text{M} for math shift;
• \text{T} for alignment tab tokens;
• \text{P} for macro parameter tokens;
• \text{U} for superscript tokens (up);
• \text{D} for subscript tokens (down);
• \text{S} for spaces;
• \text{L} for letters;
• \text{O} for others; and
• \text{A} for active characters.

The \texttt{\textbackslash c} escape sequence is used as follows.

\texttt{\textbackslash c\{\texttt{regex}\}} A control sequence whose csname matches the \texttt{\textbackslash{regex}}, anchored at the beginning and end, so that \texttt{\textbackslash{begin}} matches exactly \texttt{\begin{z}}, and nothing else.

\texttt{\textbackslash cX} Applies to the next object, which can be a character, escape character sequence such as \texttt{\textbackslash{X\{OA\}}}, character class, or group, and forces this object to only match tokens with category \texttt{X} (any of \texttt{CBEMTPUDSLOA}). For instance, \texttt{\textbackslash{L[A-Z\{d\}}} matches uppercase letters and digits of category code letter, \texttt{\textbackslash{C}}. matches any control sequence, and \texttt{\textbackslash{O(abc)}} matches \texttt{abc} where each character has category other.\footnote{This last example also captures “\texttt{abc}” as a regex group; to avoid this use a non-capturing group \texttt{\textbackslash{D(?ːabc)}}.}

\texttt{\textbackslash c[XYZ]} Applies to the next object, and forces it to only match tokens with category \texttt{X}, \texttt{Y}, or \texttt{Z} (each being any of \texttt{CBEMTPUDSLOA}). For instance, \texttt{\textbackslash{LSO}\{\ldots\}} matches two tokens of category letter, space, or other.

\texttt{\textbackslash c[^XYZ]} Applies to the next object and prevents it from matching any token with category \texttt{X}, \texttt{Y}, or \texttt{Z} (each being any of \texttt{CBEMTPUDSLOA}). For instance, \texttt{\textbackslash{[\texttt{^-O]\{d}}} matches digits which have any category different from other.

The category code tests can be used inside classes; for instance, \texttt{\textbackslash{C\[d\\textbackslash{\text{[L0]\{A-F\}]]}}} matches what \texttt{Tpx} considers as hexadecimal digits, namely digits with category other, or uppercase letters from \texttt{A} to \texttt{F} with category either letter or other. Within a group affected by a category code test, the outer test can be overridden by a nested test: for instance, \texttt{\textbackslash{L\{ab\textbackslash{\text{[c0]*cd\}}} matches \texttt{ab*cd} where all characters are of category letter, except * which has category other.

The \texttt{\textbackslash u} escape sequence allows to insert the contents of a token list directly into a regular expression or a replacement, avoiding the need to escape special characters. Namely, \texttt{\textbackslash u\{\texttt{\{var name\}}\}} matches the exact contents (both character codes and category codes) of the variable \texttt{\{var name\}}, which are obtained by applying \texttt{\exp_not:v} \texttt{\{\{var name\}\}} at the time the regular expression is compiled. Within a \texttt{\textbackslash{\{\ldots\}}} control sequence matching, the \texttt{\textbackslash u} escape sequence only expands its argument once, in effect performing \texttt{\texttt{\textbackslash t}1\texttt{\textbackslash t}o\texttt{\textbackslash t}o_str:v}. Quantifiers are supported.

The \texttt{\textbackslash ur} escape sequence allows to insert the contents of a \texttt{\textbackslash regex} variable into a larger regular expression. For instance, \texttt{\textbackslash ur\{1\_tmpa\_regex\}D} matches the tokens \texttt{A} and
D separated by something that matches the regular expression \l_tmpa_regex. This behaves as if a non-capturing group were surrounding \l_tmpa_regex, and any group contained in \l_tmpa_regex is converted to a non-capturing group. Quantifiers are supported.

For instance, if \l_tmpa_regex has value B|C, then A\ur{l_tmpa_regex}D is equivalent to A(?:B|C)D (matching ABD or ACD) and not to AB|CD (matching AB or CD). To get the latter effect, it is simplest to use \TeX's expansion machinery directly: if \_mymodule_BC_tl contains B|C then the following two lines show the same result:

\regex_show:n { A \u{l_mymodule_BC_tl} D }
\regex_show:n { A B | C D }

8.1.6 Miscellaneous

Anchors and simple assertions.

\b Word boundary: either the previous token is matched by \w and the next by \W, or the opposite. For this purpose, the ends of the token list are considered as \W.

\B Not a word boundary: between two \w tokens or two \W tokens (including the boundary).

\A or \^ Start of the subject token list.

\z, \Z or \$ End of the subject token list.

\G Start of the current match. This is only different from ~ in the case of multiple matches: for instance \regex_count:nnN { \G a } { aaba } \l_tmpa_int yields 2, but replacing \G by ~ would result in \l_tmpa_int holding the value 1.

The option (?i) makes the match case insensitive (identifying A–Z with a–z; no Unicode support yet). This applies until the end of the group in which it appears, and can be reverted using (?-i). For instance, in (?i)(a(?-i)b|c)d, the letters a and d are affected by the i option. Characters within ranges and classes are affected individually: (?i)[Y-\\] is equivalent to [YZ\\yz] and (?i)[^aeiou] matches any character which is not a vowel. Neither character properties, nor \c{...} nor \u{...} are affected by the i option.

8.2 Syntax of the replacement text

Most of the features described in regular expressions do not make sense within the replacement text. Backslash introduces various special constructions, described further below:

- \0 is the whole match;
- \1 is the submatch that was matched by the first (capturing) group (\ldots); similarly for \2, \ldots, \9 and \g{number};
- \␣ inserts a space (spaces are ignored when not escaped);
- \a, \e, \f, \n, \r, \t, \xhh, \x{hhh} correspond to single characters as in regular expressions;
\c\{⟨cs name⟩\} inserts a control sequence;
\c⟨category⟩⟨character⟩ (see below);
\u\{⟨tl var name⟩\} inserts the contents of the ⟨tl var⟩ (see below).

Characters other than backslash and space are simply inserted in the result (but since the replacement text is first converted to a string, one should also escape characters that are special for \TeX, for instance use \#). Non-alphabetic characters can always be safely escaped with a backslash.

For instance,
\tl_set:Nn \l_my_tl { Hello,-world! }
\regex_replace_all:nnN { ([er]?l|o) . } { (\0--\1) } \l_my_tl
results in \l_my_tl holding H(ell--el)(o,--o) w(or--o)(ld--l)!

The submatches are numbered according to the order in which the opening paren-
thesis of capturing groups appear in the regular expression to match. The \(n\)-th submatch
is empty if there are fewer than \(n\) capturing groups or for capturing groups that appear in
alternatives that were not used for the match. In case a capturing group matches several
times during a match (due to quantifiers) only the last match is used in the replacement
text. Submatches always keep the same category codes as in the original token list.

By default, the category code of characters inserted by the replacement are deter-
mined by the prevailing category code regime at the time where the replacement is made,
with two exceptions:
• space characters (with character code 32) inserted with \, or \x20 or \x{20} have
category code 10 regardless of the prevailing category code regime;
• if the category code would be 0 (escape), 5 (newline), 9 (ignore), 14 (comment) or
15 (invalid), it is replaced by 12 (other) instead.

The escape sequence \c allows to insert characters with arbitrary category codes, as well
as control sequences.
\cX(\ldots\) Produces the characters “...” with category \(X\), which must be one of CBEMTPUDSLOA
as in regular expressions. Parentheses are optional for a single character (which
can be an escape sequence). When nested, the innermost category code applies, for
instance \cL(Hello\cS\ world)! gives this text with standard category codes.
\c\{⟨text⟩\} Produces the control sequence with csname ⟨text⟩. The ⟨text⟩ may contain refer-
ces to the submatches \0, \1, and so on, as in the example for \u below.

The escape sequence \u\{⟨var name⟩\} allows to insert the contents of the variable with name ⟨var name⟩
directly into the replacement, giving an easier control of category codes. When nested in \c\{\ldots\} and \u\{\ldots\} constructions, the \u and \c escape sequences
perform \tl_to_str:v, namely extract the value of the control sequence and turn it into
a string. Matches can also be used within the arguments of \c and \u. For instance,
\tl_set:Nn \l_my_one_tl { first }
\tl_set:Nn \l_my_two_tl { \emph{second} }
\tl_set:Nn \l_my_tl { one , two , one , one }
\regex_replace_all:nnN { [\-,]+ } { \u\{l_my_\0_tl\} } \l_my_tl
results in \texttt{l\_my\_tl} holding \texttt{first,second,first,first}.

Regex replacement is also a convenient way to produce token lists with arbitrary category codes. For instance

\verbatim
\tl\_clear:N \l\_tmpa\_tl
\regex\_replace\_all:nnN { } { \texttt{\cU\% \cA\~} } \l\_tmpa\_tl
\endverbatim

results in \texttt{l\_tmpa\_tl} containing the percent character with category code 7 (superscript) and an active tilde character.

### 8.3 Pre-compiling regular expressions

If a regular expression is to be used several times, it is better to compile it once rather than doing it each time the regular expression is used. The compiled regular expression is stored in a variable. All of the \texttt{l3regex} module’s functions can be given their regular expression argument either as an explicit string or as a compiled regular expression.

\verbatim
\regex\_new:N \l\_my\_regex
\regex\_set:Nn \l\_my\_regex { my\ (simple\ )? reg\(ex\|ular\ expression\) }
\endverbatim

\verbatim
\regex\_show:n {\A X|Y}
\regex\_show:N {\A X|Y}
\regex\_log:n {\A X|Y}
\endverbatim

indicating that the anchor \texttt{\A} only applies to the first branch: the second branch is not anchored to the beginning of the match.
8.4 Matching

All regular expression functions are available in both :n and :N variants. The former require a “standard” regular expression, while the later require a compiled expression as generated by \regex_set:Nn.

\regex_match:nnTF { ⟨regular expression⟩ } { ⟨token list⟩ } { ⟨true code⟩ } { ⟨false code⟩ }

Tests whether the ⟨regular expression⟩ matches any part of the ⟨token list⟩. For instance,

\regex_match:nnTF { b [cde]* } { abedcx } { TRUE } { FALSE }
\regex_match:nnTF { [b-dq-w] } { example } { TRUE } { FALSE }

leaves TRUE then FALSE in the input stream.

\regex_count:nnN { ⟨regular expression⟩ } { ⟨token list⟩ } { ⟨int var⟩ }

Sets ⟨int var⟩ within the current \TeX{} group level equal to the number of times ⟨regular expression⟩ appears in ⟨token list⟩. The search starts by finding the left-most longest match, respecting greedy and lazy (non-greedy) operators. Then the search starts again from the character following the last character of the previous match, until reaching the end of the token list. Infinite loops are prevented in the case where the regular expression can match an empty token list: then we count one match between each pair of characters. For instance,

\int_new:N \l_foo_int
\regex_count:nnN { (b+|c) } { abbabcbcc } \l_foo_int

results in \l_foo_int taking the value 5.

\regex_match_case:nnTF
{ ⟨regex1⟩ } ⟨(code case1)⟩
{ ⟨regex2⟩ } ⟨(code case2)⟩
...
{ ⟨regexn⟩ } ⟨(code case)n⟩
} ⟨(token list)⟩
{ ⟨true code⟩ } ⟨(false code)⟩

Determines which of the ⟨regular expressions⟩ matches at the earliest point in the ⟨token list⟩, and leaves the corresponding ⟨code⟩ followed by the ⟨true code⟩ in the input stream. If several ⟨regex⟩ match starting at the same point, then the first one in the list is selected and the others are discarded. If none of the ⟨regex⟩ match, the ⟨false code⟩ is left in the input stream. Each ⟨regex⟩ can either be given as a regex variable or as an explicit regular expression.

In detail, for each starting position in the ⟨token list⟩, each of the ⟨regex⟩ is searched in turn. If one of them matches then the corresponding ⟨code⟩ is used and everything else is discarded, while if none of the ⟨regex⟩ match at a given position then the next starting position is attempted. If none of the ⟨regex⟩ match anywhere in the ⟨token list⟩ then nothing is left in the input stream. Note that this differs from nested \regex_match:nnTF statements since all ⟨regex⟩ are attempted at each position rather than attempting to match ⟨regex1⟩ at every position before moving on to ⟨regex2⟩.
8.5 Submatch extraction

\regex_extract_once:nnN \{⟨regex⟩\} \{⟨token list⟩\} \{⟨seq var⟩\} \{(true code)\} \{(false code)\}

Finds the first match of the ⟨regular expression⟩ in the ⟨token list⟩. If it exists, the match is stored as the first item of the ⟨seq var⟩, and further items are the contents of capturing groups, in the order of their opening parenthesis. The ⟨seq var⟩ is assigned locally. If there is no match, the ⟨seq var⟩ is cleared. The testing versions insert the ⟨true code⟩ into the input stream if a match was found, and the ⟨false code⟩ otherwise.

For instance, assume that you type

\regex_extract_once:nnNTF \{ \A(La)?TeX(!*)\Z \} \{ LaTeX!!! \} \l_foo_seq \{ true \} \{ false \}

Then the regular expression (anchored at the start with \A and at the end with \Z) must match the whole token list. The first capturing group, (La)?, matches La, and the second capturing group, (!*), matches !!! Thus, \l_foo_seq contains as a result the items {LaTeX!!!}, {La}, and {!!!}, and the true branch is left in the input stream. Note that the n-th item of \l_foo_seq, as obtained using \seq_item:Nn, correspond to the submatch numbered (n − 1) in functions such as \regex_replace_once:nnN.

\regex_extract_all:nnN \{⟨regex⟩\} \{⟨token list⟩\} \{⟨seq var⟩\}

\regex_extract_all:nnNTF \{⟨regex⟩\} \{⟨token list⟩\} \{⟨seq var⟩\} \{⟨true code⟩\} \{⟨false code⟩\}

Finds all matches of the ⟨regular expression⟩ in the ⟨token list⟩, and stores all the submatch information in a single sequence (concatenating the results of multiple \regex_extract_once:nnN calls). The ⟨seq var⟩ is assigned locally. If there is no match, the ⟨seq var⟩ is cleared. The testing versions insert the ⟨true code⟩ into the input stream if a match was found, and the ⟨false code⟩ otherwise. For instance, assume that you type

\regex_extract_all:nnNTF \{ \w+ \} \{ Hello,-world! \} \l_foo_seq \{ true \} \{ false \}

Then the regular expression matches twice, the resulting sequence contains the two items {Hello} and {world}, and the true branch is left in the input stream.
Splits the \langle token list \rangle into a sequence of parts, delimited by matches of the \langle regular expression \rangle. If the \langle regular expression \rangle has capturing groups, then the token lists that they match are stored as items of the sequence as well. The assignment to \langle seq var \rangle is local. If no match is found the resulting \langle seq var \rangle has the \langle token list \rangle as its sole item. If the \langle regular expression \rangle matches the empty token list, then the \langle token list \rangle is split into single tokens. The testing versions insert the \langle true code \rangle into the input stream if a match was found, and the \langle false code \rangle otherwise. For example, after
\seq_new:N \l_path_seq
\regex_split:nnNTF { / } { the/path/for/this/file.tex } \l_path_seq
{ true } { false }
the sequence \l_path_seq contains the items \{the\}, \{path\}, \{for\}, \{this\}, and \{file.tex\}, and the true branch is left in the input stream.

8.6 Replacement

Replaces all occurrences of the \langle regular expression \rangle in the contents of the \langle tl var \rangle by the \langle replacement \rangle, where \0 represents the full match, \1 represent the contents of the first capturing group, \2 of the second, etc. Every match is treated independently, and matches cannot overlap. The result is assigned locally to \langle tl var \rangle.
Replaces the earliest match of the regular expression \(?1\langle regex1 \rangle \ldots 1\langle regex_n \rangle \) in the \langle token list variable \rangle by the \langle replacement \rangle corresponding to which \langle regex_i \rangle matched, then leaves the \langle true code \rangle in the input stream. If none of the \langle regex \rangle match, then the \langle tl var \rangle is not modified, and the \langle false code \rangle is left in the input stream. Each \langle regex \rangle can either be given as a regex variable or as an explicit regular expression.

In detail, for each starting position in the \langle token list \rangle, each of the \langle regex \rangle is searched in turn. If one of them matches then it is replaced by the corresponding \langle replacement \rangle as described for \regex_replace_case_once:nN. This is equivalent to checking with \regex_match_case:nn which \langle regex \rangle matches, then performing the replacement with \regex_replace_once:nnN.

\regex_replace_case_all:nN
\regex_replace_case_all:nN
Replaces all occurrences of all \langle regex \rangle in the \langle token list \rangle by the corresponding \langle replacement \rangle. Every match is treated independently, and matches cannot overlap. The result is assigned locally to \langle tl var \rangle, and the \langle true code \rangle or \langle false code \rangle is left in the input stream depending on whether any replacement was made or not.

In detail, for each starting position in the \langle token list \rangle, each of the \langle regex \rangle is searched in turn. If one of them matches then it is replaced by the corresponding \langle replacement \rangle, and the search resumes at the position that follows this match (and replacement). For instance

\tl_set:Nn \l_tmpa_tl { Hello,-world! }
\regex_replace_case_all:nN
\{ \{ [A-Za-z]+ \} { ‘‘\0’’ } \{ \b \} { --- } \{ . \} { [\0] } \} \l_tmpa_tl

results in \l_tmpa_tl having the contents ‘‘Hello’’---[.][,]’‘world’’---[!]. Note in particular that the word-boundary assertion \b did not match at the start of words because the case [A-Za-z]+ matched at these positions. To change this, one could simply swap the order of the two cases in the argument of \regex_replace_case_all:nN.
8.7 Scratch regular expressions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>l_tmpa_regex</th>
<th>l_tmpb_regex</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rev: 2017-12-11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Scratch regex for local assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any \LaTeX3-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>g_tmpa_regex</th>
<th>g_tmpb_regex</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rev: 2017-12-11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Scratch regex for global assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any \LaTeX3-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.

8.8 Bugs, misfeatures, future work, and other possibilities

The following need to be done now.

- Rewrite the documentation in a more ordered way, perhaps add a BNF?
  Additional error-checking to come.
- Clean up the use of messages.
- Cleaner error reporting in the replacement phase.
- Add tracing information.
- Detect attempts to use back-references and other non-implemented syntax.
- Test for the maximum register \c{c_max_register_int}.
- Find out whether the fact that \W and friends match the end-marker leads to bugs. Possibly update \_\_regex_item_reverse:n.
- The empty cs should be matched by \c{c{}}, not by \c{csname ?endcsname\s?}.
  Code improvements to come.
- Shift arrays so that the useful information starts at position 1.
- Only build \c{c {...}} once.
- Use arrays for the left and right state stacks when compiling a regex.
- Should \_\_regex_action_free_group:n only be used for greedy \{n,\} quantifier? (I think not.)
- Quantifiers for \u and assertions.
- When matching, keep track of an explicit stack of \texttt{curr\_state} and \texttt{curr\_submatches}.
- If possible, when a state is reused by the same thread, kill other subthreads.
• Use an array rather than `\g__regex_balance_tl` to build the function `\__regex_replacement_balance_one_match:n`.

• Reduce the number of epsilon-transitions in alternatives.

• Optimize simple strings: use less states (`abcade` should give two states, for `abc` and `ade`). [Does that really make sense?]

• Optimize groups with no alternative.

• Optimize states with a single `\__regex_action_free:n`.

• Optimize the use of `\__regex_action_success:` by inserting it in state 2 directly instead of having an extra transition.

• Optimize the use of `\int_step...` functions.

• Groups don’t capture within regexes for csnames; optimize and document.

• Better “show” for anchors, properties, and catcode tests.

• Does `\K` really need a new state for itself?

• When compiling, use a boolean `in_cs` and less magic numbers.

• Instead of checking whether the character is special or alphanumeric using its character code, check if it is special in regexes with `\cs_if_exist` tests.

The following features are likely to be implemented at some point in the future.

• General look-ahead/behind assertions.

• Regex matching on external files.

• Conditional subpatterns with look ahead/behind: “if what follows is […], then […].”

• `(.*..)` and `(?....)` sequences to set some options.

• UTF-8 mode for pdfTeX.

• Newline conventions are not done. In particular, we should have an option for . not to match newlines. Also, `\A` should differ from `^`, and `\Z`, `\z`, and `$` should differ.

• Unicode properties: `\p{..}` and `\P{..}`; `\X` which should match any “extended” Unicode sequence. This requires to manipulate a lot of data, probably using tree-boxes.

The following features of PCRE or Perl may or may not be implemented.

• Callout with `(?:..)` or other syntax: some internal code changes make that possible, and it can be useful for instance in the replacement code to stop a regex replacement when some marker has been found; this raises the question of a potential `\regex_break:` and then of playing well with `\tl_map_break:` called from within the code in a regex. It also raises the question of nested calls to the regex machinery, which is a problem since `\fontdimen` are global.
Conditional subpatterns (other than with a look-ahead or look-behind condition): this is non-regular, isn’t it?

Named subpatterns: \TeX programmers have lived so far without any need for named macro parameters.

The following features of \texttt{PCRE} or Perl will definitely not be implemented.

Back-references: non-regular feature, this requires backtracking, which is prohibitively slow.

Recursion: this is a non-regular feature.

Atomic grouping, possessive quantifiers: those tools, mostly meant to fix catastrophic backtracking, are unnecessary in a non-backtracking algorithm, and difficult to implement.

Subroutine calls: this syntactic sugar is difficult to include in a non-backtracking algorithm, in particular because the corresponding group should be treated as atomic.

Backtracking control verbs: intrinsically tied to backtracking.

\texttt{\textbackslash ddd}, matching the character with octal code \texttt{ddd}: we already have \texttt{\textbackslash x{...}} and the syntax is confusingly close to what we could have used for backreferences (\texttt{\textbackslash 1, \textbackslash 2, ...}), making it harder to produce useful error message.

\texttt{\textbackslash cx}, similar to \TeX’s own \texttt{\textbackslash ^\textbackslash x}.

Comments: \TeX already has its own \texttt{\textbackslash ^\textbackslash .}

\texttt{\textbackslash Q...\textbackslash E} escaping: this would require to read the argument verbatim, which is not in the scope of this module.

\texttt{\textbackslash C} single byte in UTF-8 mode: \texttt{Xe\TeX} and \texttt{Lua\TeX} serve us characters directly, and splitting those into bytes is tricky, encoding dependent, and most likely not useful anyways.
Chapter 9

The \texttt{l3prg} package

Control structures

Conditional processing in \LaTeX{} has two forms of conditional flow processing based on these states. The first form is predicate functions that turn the returned state into a boolean \texttt{true} or \texttt{false}. For example, the function \texttt{\cs_if_free_p:N} checks whether the control sequence given as its argument is free and then returns the boolean \texttt{true} or \texttt{false} values to be used in testing with \texttt{\if_predicate:w} or in functions to be described below. The second form is the kind of functions choosing a particular argument from the input stream based on the result of the testing as in \texttt{\cs_if_free:NTF} which also takes one argument (the \texttt{N}) and then executes either \texttt{true} or \texttt{false} depending on the result.

\textbf{\texttt{\LaTeX}hackers note:} The arguments are executed after exiting the underlying \texttt{\if...\fi} structure.

9.1 Defining a set of conditional functions

These functions create a family of conditionals using the same \texttt{(code)} to perform the test created. Those conditionals are expandable if \texttt{(code)} is. The \texttt{new} versions check for existing definitions and perform assignments globally (cf. \texttt{\cs_new:Npn}) whereas the \texttt{set} versions do no check and perform assignments locally (cf. \texttt{\cs_set:Npn}). The conditionals created are dependent on the comma-separated list of \texttt{(conditions)}, which should be one or more of \texttt{p, T, F and TF}. 
These functions create a family of protected conditionals using the same \{\textit{code}\} to perform the test created. The \{\textit{code}\} does not need to be expandable. The \texttt{new} version check for existing definitions and perform assignments globally (of \texttt{cs\_new:Nnn}) whereas the \texttt{set} version do not (cf. \texttt{cs\_set:Nnn}). The conditionals created are depended on the comma-separated list of \{\textit{conditions}\}, which should be one or more of \texttt{T}, \texttt{F} and \texttt{TF} (not \texttt{p}).

The conditionals are defined by \texttt{prg\_new\_conditional:Nnn} and friends as:

- \texttt{\{name\}_p:\{arg spec\}} — a predicate function which will supply either a logical \texttt{true} or logical \texttt{false}. This function is intended for use in cases where one or more logical tests are combined to lead to a final outcome. This function cannot be defined for protected conditionals.

- \texttt{\{name\}:\{arg spec\}\_T} — a function with one more argument than the original \{\textit{arg spec}\} demands. The \{\textit{true branch}\} code in this additional argument will be left on the input stream only if the test is \texttt{true}.

- \texttt{\{name\}:\{arg spec\}\_F} — a function with one more argument than the original \{\textit{arg spec}\} demands. The \{\textit{false branch}\} code in this additional argument will be left on the input stream only if the test is \texttt{false}.

- \texttt{\{name\}:\{arg spec\}\_TF} — a function with two more argument than the original \{\textit{arg spec}\} demands. The \{\textit{true branch}\} code in the first additional argument will be left on the input stream if the test is \texttt{true}, while the \{\textit{false branch}\} code in the second argument will be left on the input stream if the test is \texttt{false}.

The \{\textit{code}\} of the test may use \{\textit{parameters}\} as specified by the second argument to \texttt{prg\_set\_conditional:Nnn}: this should match the \{\textit{argument specification}\} but this is not enforced. The \texttt{Nnn} versions infer the number of arguments from the argument specification given (cf. \texttt{cs\_new:Nn}, etc.). Within the \{\textit{code}\}, the functions \texttt{prg\_return\_true} and \texttt{prg\_return\_false} are used to indicate the logical outcomes of the test.

An example can easily clarify matters here:

\begin{verbatim}
\prg_set_conditional:Nnn \foo_if_bar:NN #1#2 { p , T , TF }
{
  \if_meaning:w \l_tmpa_tl #1
  \prg_return_true:
  \else:
  \if_meaning:w \l_tmpa_tl #2
  \prg_return_true:
  \else:
  \prg_return_false:
  \fi:
  \fi:
}
\end{verbatim}
This defines the function \foo_{if\_bar:p:NN}, \foo_{if\_bar:NNTF} and \foo_{if\_bar:NNT} but not \foo_{if\_bar:NNF} (because F is missing from the \langle conditions \rangle list). The return statements take care of resolving the remaining \texttt{\textbackslash else:} and \texttt{\textbackslash fi:} before returning the state. There must be a return statement for each branch; failing to do so will result in erroneous output if that branch is executed.

\begin{verbatim}
\prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \langle name \rangle1: \langle arg spec \rangle1 \langle name \rangle2: \langle arg spec \rangle2 \{\langle conditions \rangle\}
\prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \langle name \rangle1: \langle arg spec \rangle1 \langle name \rangle2: \langle arg spec \rangle2 \{\langle conditions \rangle\}
\end{verbatim}

These functions copy a family of conditionals. The new version checks for existing definitions (cf. \cs_new_eq:NN) whereas the set version does not (cf. \cs_set_eq:NN). The conditionals copied are depended on the comma-separated list of \langle conditions \rangle, which should be one or more of p, T, F and TF.

\begin{verbatim}
\prg_return_true: * \prg_return_false: *
\end{verbatim}

These “return” functions define the logical state of a conditional statement. They appear within the code for a conditional function generated by \prg_set_conditional:Npnn, etc, to indicate when a true or false branch should be taken. While they may appear multiple times each within the code of such conditionals, the execution of the conditional must result in the expansion of one of these two functions \textit{exactly once}.

The return functions trigger what is internally an f-expansion process to complete the evaluation of the conditional. Therefore, after \prg_return_true: or \prg_return_false: there must be no non-expandable material in the input stream for the remainder of the expansion of the conditional code. This includes other instances of either of these functions.

\begin{verbatim}
\prg_generate_conditional_variant:Nnn \langle name \rangle: \langle arg spec \rangle \{\langle variant argument specifiers \rangle\} \{\langle condition specifiers \rangle\}
\prg_generate_conditional_variant:Nnn \langle name \rangle: \langle arg spec \rangle \{\langle variant argument specifiers \rangle\} \{\langle condition specifiers \rangle\}
\end{verbatim}

Defines argument-specifier variants of conditionals. This is equivalent to running \cs_generate_variant:Nn \langle conditional \rangle \{\langle variant argument specifiers \rangle\} on each \langle conditional \rangle described by the \langle condition specifiers \rangle. These base-form \langle conditionals \rangle are obtained from the \langle name \rangle and \langle arg spec \rangle as described for \prg_new_conditional:Npnn, and they should be defined.

\section{The boolean data type}

This section describes a boolean data type which is closely connected to conditional processing as sometimes you want to execute some code depending on the value of a switch (e.g., draft/final) and other times you perhaps want to use it as a predicate function in an \texttt{\textbackslash if\_predicate:w} test. The problem of the primitive \texttt{\textbackslash if\_false:} and \texttt{\textbackslash if\_true:} tokens is that it is not always safe to pass them around as they may interfere with scanning for termination of primitive conditional processing. Therefore, we employ two canonical booleans: \c_true\_bool or \c_false\_bool. Besides preventing problems as described above, it also allows us to implement a simple boolean parser supporting the logical operations And, Or, Not, etc. which can then be used on both the boolean type and predicate functions.
All conditional \bool_ functions except assignments are expandable and expect the input to also be fully expandable (which generally means being constructed from predicate functions and booleans, possibly nested).

\TeXhackers note: The \bool_ data type is not implemented using the \iffalse/\iftrue primitives, in contrast to \neqvif, etc., in plain \TeX, \If\TeX~2e and so on. Programmers should not base use of \bool_ switches on any particular expectation of the implementation.

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{ll}
\texttt{\bool_new:N} & \texttt{\bool_new:N \langle boolean \rangle} \\
\texttt{\bool_new:c} & \texttt{\bool_new:c} \\
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

Creates a new \langle boolean \rangle or raises an error if the name is already taken. The declaration is global. The \langle boolean \rangle is initially \texttt{false}.

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{ll}
\texttt{\bool_const:Nn} & \texttt{\bool_const:Nn \langle boolean \rangle \{\langle boolexpr \rangle\}} \\
\texttt{\bool_const:cn} & \texttt{\bool_const:cn} \\
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

Creates a new constant \langle boolean \rangle or raises an error if the name is already taken. The value of the \langle boolean \rangle is set globally to the result of evaluating the \langle boolexpr \rangle.

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{ll}
\texttt{\bool_set_false:N} & \texttt{\bool_set_false:N \langle boolean \rangle} \\
\texttt{\bool_set_false:c} & \texttt{\bool_set_false:c} \\
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

Sets \langle boolean \rangle logically \texttt{false}.

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{ll}
\texttt{\bool_set_true:N} & \texttt{\bool_set_true:N \langle boolean \rangle} \\
\texttt{\bool_set_true:c} & \texttt{\bool_set_true:c} \\
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

Sets \langle boolean \rangle logically \texttt{true}.

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{ll}
\texttt{\bool_set_eq:NN} & \texttt{\bool_set_eq:NN \langle boolean 1 \rangle \langle boolean 2 \rangle} \\
\texttt{\bool_set_eq:NN} & \texttt{\bool_set_eq:NN (cN|Nc|cc)} \\
\texttt{\bool_gset_eq:NN} & \texttt{\bool_gset_eq:NN (cN|Nc|cc)} \\
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

Sets \langle boolean 1 \rangle to the current value of \langle boolean 2 \rangle.

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{ll}
\texttt{\bool_set:Nn} & \texttt{\bool_set:Nn \langle boolean \rangle \{\langle boolexpr \rangle\}} \\
\texttt{\bool_set:cn} & \texttt{\bool_set:cn} \\
\texttt{\bool_gset:Nn} & \texttt{\bool_gset:Nn} \\
\texttt{\bool_gset:cn} & \texttt{\bool_gset:cn} \\
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

Evaluates the \langle boolean expression \rangle as described for \bool_if:nTF, and sets the \langle boolean \rangle variable to the logical truth of this evaluation.

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{ll}
\texttt{\bool_if_p:N} & \texttt{\bool_if_p:N \langle boolean \rangle} \\
\texttt{\bool_if_p:c} & \texttt{\bool_if_p:c} \\
\texttt{\bool_if:NTF} & \texttt{\bool_if:NTF \{\langle true code \rangle\} \{\langle false code \rangle\}} \\
\texttt{\bool_if:cTF} & \texttt{\bool_if:cTF} \\
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

Tests the current truth of \langle boolean \rangle, and continues expansion based on this result.

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{ll}
\texttt{\bool_to_str:N} & \texttt{\bool_to_str:N \langle boolean \rangle} \\
\texttt{\bool_to_str:c} & \texttt{\bool_to_str:c} \\
\texttt{\bool_to_str:n} & \texttt{\bool_to_str:n} \\
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

Expands to the letters \texttt{true} or \texttt{false} depending on the logical truth of the \langle boolean \rangle or \langle boolean expression \rangle.
\bool_show:N \bool_show:c
New: 2012-02-09
Updated: 2021-04-29

\bool_show:n
New: 2012-02-09
Updated: 2017-07-15

\bool_log:N \bool_log:c
New: 2014-08-22
Updated: 2021-04-29

\bool_log:n
New: 2014-08-22
Updated: 2017-07-15

\bool_if_exist_p:N \bool_if_exist:NTF \bool_if_exist:c TF
New: 2012-03-03

9.2 Scratch booleans

\l_tmpa_bool \l_tmpb_bool
A scratch boolean for local assignment. It is never used by the kernel code, and so is safe for use with any \LaTeX-defined function. However, it may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.

\g_tmpa_bool \g_tmpb_bool
A scratch boolean for global assignment. It is never used by the kernel code, and so is safe for use with any \LaTeX-defined function. However, it may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.

9.3 Boolean expressions

As we have a boolean datatype and predicate functions returning boolean \textit{true} or \textit{false} values, it seems only fitting that we also provide a parser for \textit{boolean expressions}.

A boolean expression is an expression which given input in the form of predicate functions and boolean variables, return boolean \textit{true} or \textit{false}. It supports the logical operations And, Or and Not as the well-known infix operators \texttt{&&} and \texttt{||} and prefix \texttt{!} with their usual precedences (namely, \texttt{&&} binds more tightly than \texttt{||}). In addition to this, parentheses can be used to isolate sub-expressions. For example,
\int_compare_p:n \{ \ 1 = 1 \} \&\&
( \int_compare_p:n \{ \ 2 = 3 \} \|\|
\int_compare_p:n \{ \ 4 <= 4 \} \|\|
\str_if_eq_p:nn \{ \ abc \} \{ \ def \} \&\&
) \&\&
! \int_compare_p:n \{ \ 2 = 4 \}

is a valid boolean expression.

Contrarily to some other programming languages, the operators \&\& and || evaluate both operands in all cases, even when the first operand is enough to determine the result. This “eager” evaluation should be contrasted with the “lazy” evaluation of \bool_lazy_-functions.

**\TeXhackers note:** The eager evaluation of boolean expressions is unfortunately necessary in \TeX. Indeed, a lazy parser can get confused if \&\& or || or parentheses appear as (unbraced) arguments of some predicates. For instance, the innocuous-looking expression below would break (in a lazy parser) if \#1 were a closing parenthesis and \l_tmpa_bool were true.

\( \text{(} \l_tmpa_bool \| \text{token_if_eq_meaning_p:NN X} \ \#1 \text{)} \)

Minimal (lazy) evaluation can be obtained using the conditionals \bool_lazy_-all:nTF, \bool_lazy_and:nnTF, \bool_lazy_any:nTF, or \bool_lazy_or:nnTF, which only evaluate their boolean expression arguments when they are needed to determine the resulting truth value. For example, when evaluating the boolean expression

\bool_lazy_and:p:nn
{ \bool_lazy_any:p:n
{ \int_compare_p:n \{ \ 2 = 3 \} \}
{ \int_compare_p:n \{ \ 4 <= 4 \} \}
{ \int_compare_p:n \{ \ 1 = \text{error} \} \% \text{skipped} \}
}
{ \ ! \int_compare_p:n \{ \ 2 = 4 \} \}

the line marked with skipped is not expanded because the result of \bool_lazy_any-p:nn is known once the second boolean expression is found to be logically true. On the other hand, the last line is expanded because its logical value is needed to determine the result of \bool_lazy_and:p:nn.

\begin{align*}
\text{\textbackslash bool\_if\_p:n} & \quad \text{\textbackslash bool\_if\_nTF} \\
\{ \text{\textbackslash boolean\ expression} \} & \quad \{ \text{\{true\ code\}} \{\text{false\ code}\} \}
\end{align*}

Tests the current truth of \(\text{\textbackslash boolean\ expression}\), and continues expansion based on this result. The \(\text{\textbackslash boolean\ expression}\) should consist of a series of predicates or boolean variables with the logical relationship between these defined using \&\& (“And”), || (“Or”), \(!\) (“Not”) and parentheses. The logical Not applies to the next predicate or group.
\bool_lazy_all_p:n\#\bool_lazy_all:n\#\newline
\bool_lazy_all_p:nTF\#\bool_lazy_all:nTF\#
\bool_lazy_all_p:n \{ \langle boolean expr \rangle \} \{ \langle boolean expr \rangle \} \cdots \{ \langle boolean expr \rangle \}\}
\bool_lazy_all_p:nTF \{ \langle boolean expr \rangle \} \{ \langle boolean expr \rangle \} \cdots \{ \langle boolean expr \rangle \}\} \{ \langle true code \rangle \} \{ \langle false code \rangle \}

Implements the “And” operation on the \langle boolean expressions \rangle, hence is true if all of them are true and false if any of them is false. Contrarily to the infix operator &&, only the \langle boolean expressions \rangle which are needed to determine the result of \bool_lazy_{\text{all}}:nTF are evaluated. See also \bool_lazy_{\text{all}}:nnTF when there are only two \langle boolean expressions \rangle.

\bool_lazy_and_p:nn\#\bool_lazy_and:nnTF\#\newline
\bool_lazy_and_p:nn \{ \langle boolean expr \rangle \} \{ \langle boolean expr \rangle \} \{ \langle true code \rangle \} \{ \langle false code \rangle \}
\bool_lazy_and_p:nnTF \{ \langle boolean expr \rangle \} \{ \langle boolean expr \rangle \} \{ \langle true code \rangle \} \{ \langle false code \rangle \}

Implements the “Or” operation on the \langle boolean expressions \rangle, hence is true if any of them is true and false if all of them are false. Contrarily to the infix operator ||, only the \langle boolean expressions \rangle which are needed to determine the result of \bool_lazy_{\text{any}}:nTF are evaluated. See also \bool_lazy_{\text{any}}:nnTF when there are only two \langle boolean expressions \rangle.

\bool_xor_p:nn\#\bool_xor:nnTF\#\newline
\bool_xor_p:nn \{ \langle boolean expr \rangle \} \{ \langle boolean expr \rangle \} \{ \langle true code \rangle \} \{ \langle false code \rangle \}
\bool_xor_p:nnTF \{ \langle boolean expr \rangle \} \{ \langle boolean expr \rangle \} \{ \langle true code \rangle \} \{ \langle false code \rangle \}

Implements an “exclusive or” operation between two boolean expressions. There is no infix operator for this logical operation.

9.4 Logical loops

Loops using either boolean expressions or stored boolean values.

\bool_not_p:n\#\newline
\bool_not_p:n \{ \langle boolean expression \rangle \}

Function version of (!\langle boolean expression \rangle) within a boolean expression.

\bool_do_until:Nn\#\bool_do_until:cn\#
\bool_do_until:Nn \langle boolean \rangle \{ \langle code \rangle \}
\bool_do_until:cn \{ \langle boolean \rangle \} \{ \langle code \rangle \}

Places the \langle code \rangle in the input stream for \LaTeX{} to process, and then checks the logical value of the \langle boolean \rangle. If it is false then the \langle code \rangle is inserted into the input stream again and the process loops until the \langle boolean \rangle is true.
\bool_do_while:Nn \bool_do_while:cn \par
Places the \langle code\rangle in the input stream for \TeX{} to process, and then checks the logical value of the \langle boolean\rangle. If it is \texttt{true} then the \langle code\rangle is inserted into the input stream again and the process loops until the \langle boolean\rangle is \texttt{false}.

\bool_until_do:Nn \bool_until_do:cn \par
This function firsts checks the logical value of the \langle boolean\rangle. If it is \texttt{false} the \langle code\rangle is placed in the input stream and expanded. After the completion of the \langle code\rangle the truth of the \langle boolean\rangle is re-evaluated. The process then loops until the \langle boolean\rangle is \texttt{true}.

\bool_while_do:Nn \bool_while_do:cn \par
This function firsts checks the logical value of the \langle boolean expression\rangle (as described for \bool_if:nTF). If it is \texttt{true} the \langle code\rangle is placed in the input stream and expanded. After the completion of the \langle code\rangle the truth of the \langle boolean expression\rangle is re-evaluated. The process then loops until the \langle boolean expression\rangle is \texttt{false}.

\bool_do_until:nn \bool_do_until:cn \par
Places the \langle code\rangle in the input stream for \TeX{} to process, and then checks the logical value of the \langle boolean expression\rangle as described for \bool_if:nTF. If it is \texttt{false} then the \langle code\rangle is inserted into the input stream again and the process loops until the \langle boolean expression\rangle evaluates to \texttt{true}.

\bool_until_do:nn \bool_until_do:cn \par
This function firsts checks the logical value of the \langle boolean expression\rangle (as described for \bool_if:nTF). If it is \texttt{false} the \langle code\rangle is placed in the input stream and expanded. After the completion of the \langle code\rangle the truth of the \langle boolean expression\rangle is re-evaluated. The process then loops until the \langle boolean expression\rangle is \texttt{false}.

\bool_while_do:nn \bool_while_do:cn \par
This function firsts checks the logical value of the \langle boolean expression\rangle (as described for \bool_if:nTF). If it is \texttt{true} the \langle code\rangle is placed in the input stream and expanded. After the completion of the \langle code\rangle the truth of the \langle boolean expression\rangle is re-evaluated. The process then loops until the \langle boolean expression\rangle is \texttt{false}.

\prg_replicate:nn \prg_replicate:cn \par
Evaluates the \langle integer expression\rangle (which should be zero or positive) and creates the resulting number of copies of the \langle tokens\rangle. The function is both expandable and safe for nesting. It yields its result after two expansion steps.

9.5 Producing multiple copies
9.6 Detecting \( \text{TEx}'s \) mode

\begin{verbatim}
\mode_if_horizontal_p: *
\mode_if_horizontal:TF {
⟨true code⟩} {(false code)}

Detects if \text{TEx} is currently in horizontal mode.
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\mode_if_inner_p: *
\mode_if_inner:TF {
⟨true code⟩} {(false code)}

Detects if \text{TEx} is currently in inner mode.
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\mode_if_math_p: *
\mode_if_math:TF {
⟨true code⟩} {(false code)}

Detects if \text{TEx} is currently in maths mode.
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\mode_if_vertical_p: *
\mode_if_vertical:TF {
⟨true code⟩} {(false code)}

Detects if \text{TEx} is currently in vertical mode.
\end{verbatim}

9.7 Primitive conditionals

\begin{verbatim}
\if_predicate:w ⟨predicate⟩ ⟨true code⟩ \else: ⟨false code⟩ \fi:

This function takes a predicate function and branches according to the result. (In practice
this function would also accept a single boolean variable in place of the ⟨predicate⟩ but
to make the coding clearer this should be done through \if_bool:N.)
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\if_bool:N ⟨boolean⟩ ⟨true code⟩ \else: ⟨false code⟩ \fi:

This function takes a boolean variable and branches according to the result.
\end{verbatim}

9.8 Nestable recursions and mappings

There are a number of places where recursion or mapping constructs are used in expl3.
At a low-level, these typically require insertion of tokens at the end of the content to
allow “clean up”. To support such mappings in a nestable form, the following functions
are provided.

\begin{verbatim}
\prg_break_point:Nn ⟨type⟩_map_break: {⟨code⟩}

Used to mark the end of a recursion or mapping: the functions \( ⟨type⟩ \_map\_break: \)
and \( ⟨type⟩ \_map\_break:n \) use this to break out of the loop (see \prg_map\_break:Nn
for how to set these up). After the loop ends, the ⟨code⟩ is inserted into the input
stream. This occurs even if the break functions are not applied: \prg_break_point:Nn
is functionally-equivalent in these cases to \use_iI:nn.
\end{verbatim}
\prg_map_break:Nn \langle type \rangle _\text{map\_break}: \{ \langle user\ code \rangle \}

\prg_break_point:Nn \langle type \rangle _\text{map\_break}: \{ \langle ending\ code \rangle \}

Breaks a recursion in mapping contexts, inserting in the input stream the \langle user\ code \rangle after the \langle ending\ code \rangle for the loop. The function breaks loops, inserting their \langle ending\ code \rangle, until reaching a loop with the same \langle type \rangle as its first argument. This \langle type \rangle - \text{map\_break}: argument must be defined; it is simply used as a recognizable marker for the \langle type \rangle.

For types with mappings defined in the kernel, \langle type \rangle _\text{map\_break}: and \langle type \rangle - \text{map\_break}:n are defined as \prg_map_break:Nn \langle type \rangle _\text{map\_break}: \{ \} and the same with \{ \} omitted.

9.8.1 Simple mappings

In addition to the more complex mappings above, non-nestable mappings are used in a number of locations and support is provided for these.

\prg_break_point: *
\prg_break_point: *

This copy of \prg_do_nothing: is used to mark the end of a fast short-term recursion: the function \prg_break:n uses this to break out of the loop.

\prg_break:n \langle code \rangle \prg_break:n *
\prg_break:n *

Breaks a recursion which has no \langle ending\ code \rangle and which is not a user-breakable mapping (see for instance \prop_get:Nn), and inserts the \langle code \rangle in the input stream.

9.9 Internal programming functions

\group_align_safe_begin: *
\group_align_safe_end: *

\group_align_safe_begin:
\group_align_safe_end:

These functions are used to enclose material in a \TeX alignment environment within a specially-constructed group. This group is designed in such a way that it does not add brace groups to the output but does act as a group for the & token inside \halign. This is necessary to allow grabbing of tokens for testing purposes, as \TeX uses group level to determine the effect of alignment tokens. Without the special grouping, the use of a function such as \peek_after:Nw would result in a forbidden comparison of the internal \endtemplate token, yielding a fatal error. Each \group_align_safe_begin: must be matched by a \group_align_safe_end:, although this does not have to occur within the same function.
Chapter 10

The \texttt{l3sys} package:
System/runtime functions

10.1 The name of the job

\texttt{\c_sys_jobname_str}

Constant that gets the “job name” assigned when \TeX{} starts.

\TeX{}hackers note: This copies the contents of the primitive \texttt{\jobname{}}. For technical reasons, the string here is not of the same internal form as other, but may be manipulated using normal string functions.

10.2 Date and time

\texttt{\c_sys_minute_int}  
\texttt{\c_sys_hour_int}  
\texttt{\c_sys_day_int}  
\texttt{\c_sys_month_int}  
\texttt{\c_sys_year_int}

The date and time at which the current job was started: these are all reported as integers.

\TeX{}hackers note: Whilst the underlying primitives can be altered by the user, this interface to the time and date is intended to be the “real” values.
10.3 Engine

Conditionals which allow engine-specific code to be used. The names follow naturally from those of the engine binaries: note that the (u)ptex tests are for $\varepsilon$-pTEX and $\varepsilon$-upTEX as expl3 requires the $\varepsilon$-TEX extensions. Each conditional is true for exactly one supported engine. In particular, \texttt{\sys_if_engine_ptex_p} is true for $\varepsilon$-pTEX but false for $\varepsilon$-upTEX.

\begin{verbatim}
\sys_if_engine_luatex_p:⋆
\sys_if_engine_luatex:TF
\sys_if_engine_pdfTeX_p:⋆
\sys_if_engine_pdfTeX:TF
\sys_if_engine_ptex_p:⋆
\sys_if_engine_ptex:TF
\sys_if_engine_uptex_p:⋆
\sys_if_engine_uptex:TF
\sys_if_engine_xetex_p:⋆
\sys_if_engine_xetex:TF
\end{verbatim}

The current engine given as a lower case string: one of \texttt{luatex}, \texttt{pdfTeX}, \texttt{ptex}, \texttt{uptex} or \texttt{xetex}.

\begin{verbatim}
\c_sys_engine_str
\end{verbatim}

The name of the standard executable for the current \TeX{} engine given as a lower case string: one of \texttt{luatex}, \texttt{luahtex}, \texttt{pdfTeX}, \texttt{eptex}, \texttt{euptex} or \texttt{xetex}.

\begin{verbatim}
\c_sys_engine_exec_str
\end{verbatim}

The name of the preloaded format for the current \TeX{} run given as a lower case string: one of \texttt{lualatex} (or \texttt{dvilualatex}), \texttt{pdflatex} (or \texttt{latex}), \texttt{platex}, \texttt{uplatex} or \texttt{xelatex} for \LaTeX{}, similar names for plain \TeX{} (except pdflatex in DVI mode yields \texttt{etex}), and \texttt{cont-en} for Con\TeX{}t (i.e. the \texttt{\fmtname}).

\begin{verbatim}
\sys_timer:
\end{verbatim}

Expands to the current value of the engine’s timer clock, a non-negative integer. This function is only defined for engines with timer support. This command measures not just CPU time but real time (including time waiting for user input). The unit are scaled seconds ($2^{-16}$ seconds).

10.4 Output format

Conditionals which give the current output mode the \TeX{} run is operating in. This is always one of two outcomes, DVI mode or PDF mode. The two sets of conditionals are thus complementary and are both provided to allow the programmer to emphasise the most appropriate case.

\begin{verbatim}
\sys_if_output_dvi_p:⋆
\sys_if_output_dvi:TF
\sys_if_output_pdf_p:⋆
\sys_if_output_pdf:TF
\end{verbatim}

The current output mode given as a lower case string: one of \texttt{dvi} or \texttt{pdf}.
10.5 Platform

\sys_if_platform_unix_p: \* \sys_if_platform_unix:TF {{true code}} {{false code}}
\sys_if_platform_unix:TF \* \sys_if_platform_unix_p: \*
\sys_if_platform_windows_p: \* \sys_if_platform_windows:TF \*

New: 2018-07-27

Conditionals which allow platform-specific code to be used. The names follow the Lua os.type() function, i.e. all Unix-like systems are unix (including Linux and MacOS).

\c_sys_platform_str

New: 2018-07-27

The current platform given as a lower case string: one of unix, windows or unknown.

10.6 Random numbers

\sys_rand_seed: \*

\sys_rand_seed:

Expands to the current value of the engine’s random seed, a non-negative integer. In engines without random number support this expands to 0.

\sys_gset_rand_seed:n {{intexpr}}

New: 2017-05-27

\sys_gset_rand_seed:n \{intexpr\}

Globally sets the seed for the engine’s pseudo-random number generator to the \{integer expression\}. This random seed affects all \_\_\_\_rand functions (such as \int_rand:nn or \clist_rand_item:n) as well as other packages relying on the engine’s random number generator. In engines without random number support this produces an error.

\TeX{}hackers note: While a 32-bit (signed) integer can be given as a seed, only the absolute value is used and any number beyond \(2^{28}\) is divided by an appropriate power of 2. We recommend using an integer in \([0, 2^{28} - 1]\).

10.7 Access to the shell

\sys_get_shell:nnN \sys_get_shell:nnN {{shell command}} {{setup}} \{tl var\}
\sys_get_shell:nnNTF {{shell command}} {{setup}} \{tl var\} \{true code\} \{false code\}

Rev: 2019-09-20

Defines \{tl var\} to the text returned by the \{shell command\}. The \{shell command\} is converted to a string using \tl_to_str:n. Category codes may need to be set appropriately via the \{setup\} argument, which is run just before running the \{shell command\} (in a group). If shell escape is disabled, the \{tl var\} will be set to \q_no_value in the non-branching version. Note that quote characters (*) cannot be used inside the \{shell command\}. The \sys_get_shell:nnNTF conditional inserts the true code if the shell is available and no quote is detected, and the false code otherwise.
This variable exposes the internal triple of the shell escape status. The possible values are

0 Shell escape is disabled
1 Unrestricted shell escape is enabled
2 Restricted shell escape is enabled

\( \text{sys\_if\_shell\_p} \):
\( \text{sys\_if\_shell\_p}: \text{TF} \) \{\text{true code}\} \{\text{false code}\}

Performs a check for whether shell escape is enabled. This returns true if either of restricted or unrestricted shell escape is enabled.

\( \text{sys\_if\_shell\_unrestricted\_p} \):
\( \text{sys\_if\_shell\_unrestricted\_p}: \text{TF} \) \{\text{true code}\} \{\text{false code}\}

Performs a check for whether unrestricted shell escape is enabled.

\( \text{sys\_if\_shell\_restricted\_p} \):
\( \text{sys\_if\_shell\_restricted\_p}: \text{TF} \) \{\text{true code}\} \{\text{false code}\}

Performs a check for whether restricted shell escape is enabled. This returns false if unrestricted shell escape is enabled. Unrestricted shell escape is not considered a superset of restricted shell escape in this case. To find whether any shell escape is enabled use \( \text{sys\_if\_shell} \).

\( \text{sys\_shell\_now\_n} \):
\( \text{sys\_shell\_now\_n}: \{\text{tokens}\} \)

Execute \( \{\text{tokens}\} \) through shell escape immediately.

\( \text{sys\_shell\_shipout\_n} \):
\( \text{sys\_shell\_shipout\_n}: \{\text{tokens}\} \)

Execute \( \{\text{tokens}\} \) through shell escape at shipout.

## 10.8 Loading configuration data

\( \text{sys\_load\_backend\_n} \):
\( \text{sys\_load\_backend\_n}: \{\text{backend}\} \)

Loads the additional configuration file needed for backend support. If the \( \{\text{backend}\} \) is empty, the standard backend for the engine in use will be loaded. This command may only be used once.

\( \text{c\_sys\_backend\_str} \)

Set to the name of the backend in use by \( \text{sys\_load\_backend\_n} \) when issued.
\sys_load_debug: Load the additional configuration file for debugging support.

New: 2019-09-12

10.8.1 Final settings

\sys_finalise: Finalises all system-dependent functionality: required before loading a backend.

New: 2019-10-06
Chapter 11

The l3msg package

Messages

Messages need to be passed to the user by modules, either when errors occur or to indicate how the code is proceeding. The l3msg module provides a consistent method for doing this (as opposed to writing directly to the terminal or log).

The system used by l3msg to create messages divides the process into two distinct parts. Named messages are created in the first part of the process; at this stage, no decision is made about the type of output that the message will produce. The second part of the process is actually producing a message. At this stage a choice of message class has to be made, for example error, warning or info.

By separating out the creation and use of messages, several benefits are available. First, the messages can be altered later without needing details of where they are used in the code. This makes it possible to alter the language used, the detail level and so on. Secondly, the output which results from a given message can be altered. This can be done on a message class, module or message name basis. In this way, message behaviour can be altered and messages can be entirely suppressed.

11.1 Creating new messages

All messages have to be created before they can be used. The text of messages is automatically wrapped to the length available in the console. As a result, formatting is only needed where it helps to show meaning. In particular, \ may be used to force a new line and \ forces an explicit space. Additionally, \, \#, \%, and ~ can be used to produce the corresponding character.

Messages may be subdivided by one level using the / character. This is used within the message filtering system to allow for example the \LaTeX{} kernel messages to belong to the module \LaTeX{} while still being filterable at a more granular level. Thus for example

\msg_new:nnnn { mymodule } { submodule / message } ...

will allow to filter out specifically messages from the submodule.
\msg_new:nmmn
\msg_new:nnnn

Creates a \langle message \rangle for a given \langle module \rangle. The message is defined to first give \langle text \rangle and then \langle more text \rangle if the user requests it. If no \langle more text \rangle is available then a standard text is given instead. Within \langle text \rangle and \langle more text \rangle four parameters (#1 to #4) can be used: these will be supplied at the time the message is used. An error is raised if the \langle message \rangle already exists.

\msg_set:nmmn
\msg_set:nnnn
\msg_gset:nmmn
\msg_gset:nnnn

Sets up the text for a \langle message \rangle for a given \langle module \rangle. The message is defined to first give \langle text \rangle and then \langle more text \rangle if the user requests it. If no \langle more text \rangle is available then a standard text is given instead. Within \langle text \rangle and \langle more text \rangle four parameters (#1 to #4) can be used: these will be supplied at the time the message is used.

\msg_if_exist_p:nn
\msg_if_exist:nnTF

Tests whether the \langle message \rangle for the \langle module \rangle is currently defined.

\msg_module_name:n
\msg_module_type:n

Expands to the public name of the \langle module \rangle as defined by \g_msg_module_name_prop (or otherwise leaves the \langle module \rangle unchanged).

Expands to the description which applies to the \langle module \rangle, for example a Package or Class. The information here is defined in \g_msg_module_type_prop, and will default to Package if an entry is not present.

\g_msg_module_name_prop
\g_msg_module_type_prop

Provides a mapping between the module name used for messages, and that for documentation. For example, \LaTeX^3 core messages are stored in the reserved \LaTeX tree, but are printed as \LaTeX^3.

Provides a mapping between the module name used for messages, and that type of module. For example, for \LaTeX^3 core messages, an empty entry is set here meaning that they are not described using the standard Package text.

\msg_line_context:

Prints the current line number when a message is given, and thus suitable for giving context to messages. The number itself is proceeded by the text on line.
\msg_line_number:  \*  \msg_line_number:
Prints the current line number when a message is given.

\msg_fatal_text:n  \*  \msg_fatal_text:n \{\module\}
Produces the standard text

\textbf{Fatal Package \{\module\} Error}
This function can be redefined to alter the language in which the message is given, using
\#1 as the name of the \{\module\} to be included.

\msg_critical_text:n  \*  \msg_critical_text:n \{\module\}
Produces the standard text

\textbf{Critical Package \{\module\} Error}
This function can be redefined to alter the language in which the message is given, using
\#1 as the name of the \{\module\} to be included.

\msg_error_text:n  \*  \msg_error_text:n \{\module\}
Produces the standard text

\textbf{Package \{\module\} Error}
This function can be redefined to alter the language in which the message is given, using
\#1 as the name of the \{\module\} to be included.

\msg_warning_text:n  \*  \msg_warning_text:n \{\module\}
Produces the standard text

\textbf{Package \{\module\} Warning}
This function can be redefined to alter the language in which the message is given, using
\#1 as the name of the \{\module\} to be included. The \{\type\} of \{\module\} may be adjusted:
\textbf{Package} is the standard outcome: see \msg_module_type:n.

\msg_info_text:n  \*  \msg_info_text:n \{\module\}
Produces the standard text:

\textbf{Package \{\module\} Info}
This function can be redefined to alter the language in which the message is given, using
\#1 as the name of the \{\module\} to be included. The \{\type\} of \{\module\} may be adjusted:
\textbf{Package} is the standard outcome: see \msg_module_type:n.
Produces the standard text

See the ⟨module⟩ documentation for further information.

This function can be redefined to alter the language in which the message is given, using #1 as the name of the ⟨module⟩ to be included. The name of the ⟨module⟩ is produced using \msg_module_name:n.

11.4 Issuing messages

Messages behave differently depending on the message class. In all cases, the message may be issued supplying 0 to 4 arguments. If the number of arguments supplied here does not match the number in the definition of the message, extra arguments are ignored, or empty arguments added (of course the sense of the message may be impaired). The four arguments are converted to strings before being added to the message text: the x-type variants should be used to expand material. Note that this expansion takes place with the standard definitions in effect, which means that shorthands such as \- or \ are not available; instead one should use \iow_char:N \- and \iow_newline:, respectively. The following message classes exist:

- fatal, ending the \TeX{} run;
- critical, ending the file being input;
- error, interrupting the \TeX{} run without ending it;
- warning, written to terminal and log file, for important messages that may require corrections by the user;
- note (less common than info) for important information messages written to the terminal and log file;
- info for normal information messages written to the log file only;
- term and log for un-decorated messages written to the terminal and log file, or to the log file only;
- none for suppressed messages.

\msg_fatal:nnnnnn ⟨module⟩ ⟨message⟩ ⟨arg one⟩ ⟨arg two⟩ ⟨arg three⟩ ⟨arg four⟩

Issues ⟨module⟩ error ⟨message⟩, passing ⟨arg one⟩ to ⟨arg four⟩ to the text-creating functions. After issuing a fatal error the \TeX{} run halts. No PDF file will be produced in this case (DVI mode runs may produce a truncated DVI file).
\msg_critical:nnnnnn \msg_critical:nnxxxx \msg_critical:nnnnn \msg_critical:nnxx \msg_critical:nn \msg_critical:nn

Issues \langle module \rangle error \langle message \rangle, passing \langle arg one \rangle to \langle arg four \rangle to the text-creating functions. After issuing a critical error, \TeX stops reading the current input file. This may halt the \TeX run (if the current file is the main file) or may abort reading a sub-file.

\TeXhackers note: The \TeX \texttt{\endinput} primitive is used to exit the file. In particular, the rest of the current line remains in the input stream.

\msg_error:nnnnnn \msg_error:nnxxxx \msg_error:nnnnn \msg_error:nnxx \msg_error:nnx \msg_error:nn

Issues \langle module \rangle error \langle message \rangle, passing \langle arg one \rangle to \langle arg four \rangle to the text-creating functions. The error interrupts processing and issues the text at the terminal. After user input, the run continues.

\msg_warning:nnnnnn \msg_warning:nnxxxx \msg_warning:nnnnn \msg_warning:nnxx \msg_warning:nnx \msg_warning:nn

Issues \langle module \rangle warning \langle message \rangle, passing \langle arg one \rangle to \langle arg four \rangle to the text-creating functions. The warning text is added to the log file and the terminal, but the \TeX run is not interrupted.
Issues \texttt{\langle module \rangle} information \texttt{\langle message \rangle}, passing \texttt{\langle arg one \rangle} to \texttt{\langle arg four \rangle} to the text-creating functions. For the more common \texttt{\msg_info:nnnnnn}, the information text is added to the log file only, while \texttt{\msg_note:nnnnnn} adds the info text to both the log file and the terminal. The \TeX{} run is not interrupted.

Does nothing: used as a message class to prevent any output at all (see the discussion of message redirection).
11.4.1 Messages for showing material

\msg_show:nnnnn \{module\} \{message\} \{arg one\} \{arg two\} \{arg three\} \{arg four\}

Issues \textit{(module)} information \textit{(message)}, passing \textit{(arg one)} to \textit{(arg four)} to the text-creating functions. The information text is shown on the terminal and the \TeX run is interrupted in a manner similar to \texttt{\tl_show:n}. This is used in conjunction with \msg_show_item:n and similar functions to print complex variable contents completely. If the formatted text does not contain \texttt{>} at the start of a line, an additional line \texttt{>} will be put at the end. In addition, a final period is added if not present.

11.4.2 Expandable error messages

In very rare cases it may be necessary to produce errors in an expansion-only context. The functions in this section should only be used if there is no alternative approach using \msg_error:nnnnn or other non-expandable commands from the previous section. Despite having a similar interface as non-expandable messages, expandable errors must be handled internally very differently from normal error messages, as none of the tools to print to the terminal or the log file are expandable. As a result, short-hands such as \texttt{\{ or \}} do not work, and messages must be very short (with default settings, they are truncated after approximately 50 characters). It is advisable to ensure that the message is understandable even when truncated, by putting the most important information up front. Another particularity of expandable messages is that they cannot be redirected or turned off by the user.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>\msg_expandable_error:nnnnn</th>
<th>\msg_expandable_error:nnfff</th>
<th>\msg_expandable_error:nnnnn {module} {message} {arg one} {arg two} {arg three} {arg four}</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\msg_expandable_error:nnfff</td>
<td>\msg_expandable_error:nnnnn</td>
<td>\msg_expandable_error:nnnnn {module} {message} {arg one} {arg two} {arg three} {arg four}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\msg_expandable_error:nnnnn</td>
<td>\msg_expandable_error:nnfff</td>
<td>\msg_expandable_error:nnnnn {module} {message} {arg one} {arg two} {arg three} {arg four}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\msg_expandable_error:nnfff</td>
<td>\msg_expandable_error:nnnnn</td>
<td>\msg_expandable_error:nnnnn {module} {message} {arg one} {arg two} {arg three} {arg four}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\msg_expandable_error:nnnnn</td>
<td>\msg_expandable_error:nnfff</td>
<td>\msg_expandable_error:nnnnn {module} {message} {arg one} {arg two} {arg three} {arg four}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\msg_expandable_error:nnfff</td>
<td>\msg_expandable_error:nnnnn</td>
<td>\msg_expandable_error:nnnnn {module} {message} {arg one} {arg two} {arg three} {arg four}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Issues an “Undefined error” message from \TeX itself using the undefined control sequence \texttt{\::error} then prints “! \{module\}: ”\texttt{(error message)}, which should be short. With default settings, anything beyond approximately 60 characters long (or bytes in some engines) is cropped. A leading space might be removed as well.

11.5 Redirecting messages

Each message has a “name”, which can be used to alter the behaviour of the message when it is given. Thus we might have

\msg_new:nnnn \{ module \} \{ my-message \} \{ Some-text \} \{ Some-more-text \}
to define a message, with

\msg_error:nn { module } { my-message }

when it is used. With no filtering, this raises an error. However, we could alter the
behaviour with

\msg_redirect_class:nn { error } { warning }

to turn all errors into warnings, or with

\msg_redirect_module:nnn { module } { error } { warning }

to alter only messages from that module, or even

\msg_redirect_name:nnn { module } { my-message } { warning }

to target just one message. Redirection applies first to individual messages, then to
messages from one module and finally to messages of one class. Thus it is possible to
select out an individual message for special treatment even if the entire class is already
redirected.

Multiple redirections are possible. Redirections can be cancelled by providing an
empty argument for the target class. Redirection to a missing class raises an error
immediately. Infinite loops are prevented by eliminating the redirection starting from
the target of the redirection that caused the loop to appear. Namely, if redirections are
requested as \( A \rightarrow B, B \rightarrow C \) and \( C \rightarrow A \) in this order, then the \( A \rightarrow B \) redirection is
cancelled.

Changes the behaviour of messages of \langle class one \rangle so that they are processed using the
code for those of \langle class two \rangle. Each \langle class \rangle can be one of fatal, critical, error,
warning, note, info, term, log, none.

Redirects message of \langle class one \rangle for \langle module \rangle to act as though they were from \langle class
two \rangle. Messages of \langle class one \rangle from sources other than \langle module \rangle are not affected by this
redirection. This function can be used to make some messages “silent” by default. For
example, all of the warning messages of \langle module \rangle could be turned off with:

\msg_redirect_module:nnn { module } { warning } { none }

Redirects a specific \langle message \rangle from a specific \langle module \rangle to act as a member of \langle class \rangle of
messages. No further redirection is performed. This function can be used to make a
selected message “silent” without changing global parameters:

\msg_redirect_name:nnn { module } { annoying-message } { none }

\msg_redirect_class:nn
Updated: 2012-04-27
\msg_redirect_module:nnn
Updated: 2012-04-27
\msg_redirect_name:nnn
Updated: 2012-04-27
Chapter 12

The l3file package
File and I/O operations

This module provides functions for working with external files. Some of these functions apply to an entire file, and have prefix \file_...; while others are used to work with files on a line by line basis and have prefix \ior_... (reading) or \iow_... (writing).

It is important to remember that when reading external files \TeXX attempts to locate them using both the operating system path and entries in the \TeXX file database (most \TeXX systems use such a database). Thus the “current path” for \TeXX is somewhat broader than that for other programs.

For functions which expect a \emph{(file name)} argument, this argument may contain both literal items and expandable content, which should on full expansion be the desired file name. Active characters (as declared in \l_char_active_seq) are not expanded, allowing the direct use of these in file names. Quote tokens (") are not permitted in file names as they are reserved for internal use by some \TeXX primitives.

Spaces are trimmed at the beginning and end of the file name: this reflects the fact that some file systems do not allow or interact unpredictably with spaces in these positions. When no extension is given, this will trim spaces from the start of the name only.

12.1 Input–output stream management

As \TeXX engines have a limited number of input and output streams, direct use of the streams by the programmer is not supported in l3\TeXX. Instead, an internal pool of streams is maintained, and these are allocated and deallocated as needed by other modules. As a result, the programmer should close streams when they are no longer needed, to release them for other processes.

Note that I/O operations are global: streams should all be declared with global names and treated accordingly.
Globally reserves the name of the \langle stream \rangle, either for reading or for writing as appropriate. The \langle stream \rangle is not opened until the appropriate \ldots open:nn function is used. Attempting to use a \langle stream \rangle which has not been opened is an error, and the \langle stream \rangle will behave as the corresponding \_c_term_....

\ior_open:Nn \langle \text{name} \rangle
\ior_open:Nn \langle \text{true code} \rangle \{\langle \text{false code} \rangle \}

Opens \langle file name \rangle for reading using \langle stream \rangle as the control sequence for file access. If the \langle stream \rangle was already open it is closed before the new operation begins. The \langle stream \rangle is available for access immediately and will remain allocated to \langle file name \rangle until a \ior_close:N instruction is given or the \TeX{} run ends. If the file is not found, an error is raised.

\ior_open:NnTF \langle \text{name} \rangle \{\langle \text{true code} \rangle \{\langle \text{false code} \rangle \}

Opens \langle file name \rangle for reading using \langle stream \rangle as the control sequence for file access. If the \langle stream \rangle was already open it is closed before the new operation begins. The \langle stream \rangle is available for access immediately and will remain allocated to \langle file name \rangle until a \ior_close:N instruction is given or the \TeX{} run ends. The \langle true code \rangle is then inserted into the input stream. If the file is not found, no error is raised and the \langle false code \rangle is inserted into the input stream.

\ior_open:cn

Opens \langle \text{false code} \rangle for writing using \langle stream \rangle as the control sequence for file access. If the \langle stream \rangle was already open it is closed before the new operation begins. The \langle stream \rangle is available for access immediately and will remain allocated to \langle file name \rangle until a \ior_close:N instruction is given or the \TeX{} run ends. Opening a file for writing clears any existing content in the file (i.e. writing is not additive).

\ior_close:N

Closes the \langle stream \rangle. Streams should always be closed when they are finished with as this ensures that they remain available to other programmers.

\ior_show:N
\ior_log:N

Display (to the terminal or log file) the file name associated to the (read or write) \langle stream \rangle.
Display (to the terminal or log file) a list of the file names associated with each open (read or write) stream. This is intended for tracking down problems.

12.1.1 Reading from files

Reading from files and reading from the terminal are separate processes in expl3. The functions \ior_get:NN and \ior_str_get:NN, and their branching equivalents, are designed to work with files.

\ior_get:NN \ior_get:NN \ior_get:NNTF

Function that reads one or more lines (until an equal number of left and right braces are found) from the file input \(\langle \text{stream} \rangle\) and stores the result locally in the \(\langle \text{token list variable} \rangle\) variable. The material read from the \(\langle \text{stream} \rangle\) is tokenized by TEX according to the category codes and \endlinechar in force when the function is used. Assuming normal settings, any lines which do not end in a comment character % have the line ending converted to a space, so for example input

\begin{verbatim}
a b c
\end{verbatim}

results in a token list \texttt{a b c \par}. Any blank line is converted to the token \texttt{\par}. Therefore, blank lines can be skipped by using a test such as

\begin{verbatim}
\ior_get:NN \l_my_stream \l_tmpa_tl
\tl_set:Nn \l_tmpb_tl { \par }
\tl_if_eq:NNF \l_tmpa_tl \l_tmpb_tl \l_tmpa_tl \l_tmpb_tl
\end{verbatim}

Also notice that if multiple lines are read to match braces then the resulting token list can contain \texttt{\par} tokens. In the non-branching version, where the \(\langle \text{stream} \rangle\) is not open the \(\langle \text{tl var} \rangle\) is set to \texttt{\q_no_value}.

\textbf{TeX hackers note:} This protected macro is a wrapper around the \TeX\ primitive \texttt{\read}. Regardless of settings, \TeX\ replaces trailing space and tab characters (character codes 32 and 9) in each line by an end-of-line character (character code \texttt{\endlinechar}, omitted if \texttt{\endlinechar} is negative or too large) before turning characters into tokens according to current category codes. With default settings, spaces appearing at the beginning of lines are also ignored.
Function that reads one line from the file input ⟨stream⟩ and stores the result locally in the ⟨token list⟩ variable. The material is read from the ⟨stream⟩ as a series of tokens with category code 12 (other), with the exception of space characters which are given category code 10 (space). Multiple whitespace characters are retained by this process. It always only reads one line and any blank lines in the input result in the ⟨token list variable⟩ being empty. Unlike \ior_get:NN, line ends do not receive any special treatment. Thus input

\begin{verbatim}
a b c
\end{verbatim}

results in a token list a b c with the letters a, b, and c having category code 12. In the non-branching version, where the ⟨stream⟩ is not open the ⟨tl var⟩ is set to \q_no_value.

\textbf{\TeXhackers note:} This protected macro is a wrapper around the \TeX primitive \newline. Regardless of settings, \TeX removes trailing space and tab characters (character codes 32 and 9). However, the end-line character normally added by this primitive is not included in the result of \ior_str_get:NN.

All mappings are done at the current group level, \textit{i.e.} any local assignments made by the ⟨function⟩ or ⟨code⟩ discussed below remain in effect after the loop.
\ior_str_map_variable:NNn \ior_str_map_variable:NNn \ior_map_break:
\ior_map_break:
\ior_map_break:n \ior_map_break:n
\ior_map_break:n
\ior_map_break:n

For each \langle line \rangle in the \langle stream \rangle, stores the \langle line \rangle in the \langle variable \rangle then applies the \langle code \rangle. The material is read from the \langle stream \rangle as a series of tokens with category code 12 (other), with the exception of space characters which are given category code 10 (space). The \langle code \rangle will usually make use of the \langle variable \rangle, but this is not enforced. The assignments to the \langle variable \rangle are local. Its value after the loop is the last \langle line \rangle, or its original value if the \langle stream \rangle is empty. Note that \TeX{} removes trailing space and tab characters (character codes 32 and 9) from every line upon input. \TeX{} also ignores any trailing new-line marker from the file it reads. This function is typically faster than \ior_str_map_inline:Nn.

Used to terminate a \ior_map_... function before all lines from the \langle stream \rangle have been processed. This normally takes place within a conditional statement, for example

\ior_map_inline:Nn \|my_ior
\ior_map_break:
% Do something useful

Use outside of a \ior_map_... scenario leads to low level \TeX{} errors.

\TeXhackers note: When the mapping is broken, additional tokens may be inserted before further items are taken from the input stream. This depends on the design of the mapping function.

Used to terminate a \ior_map_... function before all lines in the \langle stream \rangle have been processed, inserting the \langle code \rangle after the mapping has ended. This normally takes place within a conditional statement, for example

\ior_map_inline:Nn \|my_ior
\ior_map_break:n \langle code \rangle
% Do something useful

Use outside of a \ior_map_... scenario leads to low level \TeX{} errors.

\TeXhackers note: When the mapping is broken, additional tokens may be inserted before the \langle code \rangle is inserted into the input stream. This depends on the design of the mapping function.
Tests if the end of a file \textlangle stream\textrangle has been reached during a reading operation. The test also returns a true value if the \textlangle stream\textrangle is not open.

\subsection{Writing to files}

\texttt{\textbackslash iow\_now\textbackslash Nn}

\texttt{\textbackslash iow\_now\textbackslash (Nx\mid cn\mid cx)\textbackslash}

This function writes \textlangle tokens\textrangle to the specified \textlangle stream\textrangle immediately (i.e. the write operation is called on expansion of \texttt{\textbackslash iow\_now\textbackslash Nn}).

\texttt{\textbackslash iow\_log\textbackslash n}

\texttt{\textbackslash iow\_log\textbackslash x}

This function writes the given \textlangle tokens\textrangle to the log (transcript) file immediately: it is a dedicated version of \texttt{\textbackslash iow\_now\textbackslash Nn}.

\texttt{\textbackslash iow\_term\textbackslash n}

\texttt{\textbackslash iow\_term\textbackslash x}

This function writes the given \textlangle tokens\textrangle to the terminal file immediately: it is a dedicated version of \texttt{\textbackslash iow\_now\textbackslash Nn}.

\texttt{\textbackslash iow\_shipout\textbackslash Nn}

\texttt{\textbackslash iow\_shipout\textbackslash (Nx\mid cn\mid cx)\textbackslash}

This function writes \textlangle tokens\textrangle to the specified \textlangle stream\textrangle when the current page is finalised (i.e. at shipout). The x-type variants expand the \textlangle tokens\textrangle at the point where the function is used but not when the resulting tokens are written to the \textlangle stream\textrangle (cf. \texttt{\textbackslash iow\_shipout\_x\textbackslash Nn}).

\textbf{\LaTeX}hackers note: When using expl3 with a format other than \LaTeX, new line characters inserted using \texttt{\textbackslash iow\_newline\textbackslash} or using the line-wrapping code \texttt{\textbackslash iow\_wrap\textbackslash mnnN} are not recognized in the argument of \texttt{\textbackslash iow\_shipout\textbackslash Nn}. This may lead to the insertion of additional unwanted line-breaks.

\texttt{\textbackslash iow\_shipout\_x\textbackslash Nn}

\texttt{\textbackslash iow\_shipout\_x\textbackslash (Nx\mid cn\mid cx)\textbackslash}

This functions writes \textlangle tokens\textrangle to the specified \textlangle stream\textrangle when the current page is finalised (i.e. at shipout). The \textlangle tokens\textrangle are expanded at the time of writing in addition to any expansion when the function is used. This makes these functions suitable for including material finalised during the page building process (such as the page number integer).

\textbf{\LaTeX}hackers note: This is a wrapper around the \LaTeX primitive \texttt{\textbackslash write\textbackslash}. When using expl3 with a format other than \LaTeX, new line characters inserted using \texttt{\textbackslash iow\_newline\textbackslash} or using the line-wrapping code \texttt{\textbackslash iow\_wrap\textbackslash mnnN} are not recognized in the argument of \texttt{\textbackslash iow\_shipout\textbackslash Nn}. This may lead to the insertion of additional unwanted line-breaks.
\texttt{\iow\_char:N} * \texttt{\iow\_char:N \{char\}}

Inserts \texttt{(char)} into the output stream. Useful when trying to write difficult characters such as \texttt{%}, \texttt{\{}, \texttt{\}}, \texttt{\etc}. in messages, for example:

\texttt{\iow\_now:Nx \texttt{\g\_my\_iow \{ \iow\_char:N \{ text \iow\_char:N \}\} }}

The function has no effect if writing is taking place without expansion (\textit{e.g.} in the second argument of \texttt{\iow\_now:Nn}).

\texttt{\iow\_newline: * \iow\_newline:}

Function to add a new line within the \texttt{(tokens)} written to a file. The function has no effect if writing is taking place without expansion (\textit{e.g.} in the second argument of \texttt{\iow\_now:Nn}).

\textbf{\TeX} hackers note: When using expl3 with a format other than \texttt{\LaTeX}, the character inserted by \texttt{\iow\_newline:} is not recognized by \TeX, which may lead to the insertion of additional unwanted line-breaks. This issue only affects \texttt{\iow\_shipout:Nn}, \texttt{\iow\_shipout\_x:Nn} and direct uses of primitive operations.
12.1.3 Wrapping lines in output

\iow_wrap:nnnN {⟨text⟩} {(run-on text)} {(set up)} (function)

This function wraps the ⟨text⟩ to a fixed number of characters per line. At the start of each line which is wrapped, the ⟨run-on text⟩ is inserted. The line character count targeted is the value of \l_iow_line_count_int minus the number of characters in the ⟨run-on text⟩ for all lines except the first, for which the target number of characters is simply \l_iow_line_count_int since there is no run-on text. The ⟨text⟩ and ⟨run-on text⟩ are exhaustively expanded by the function, with the following substitutions:

- \ or \iow_newline: may be used to force a new line,
- \␣ may be used to represent a forced space (for example after a control sequence),
- \#, \%, \{, \}, \~ may be used to represent the corresponding character,
- \iow_allow_break: may be used to allow a line-break without inserting a space (this is experimental),
- \iow_indent:n may be used to indent a part of the ⟨text⟩ (not the ⟨run-on text⟩).

Additional functions may be added to the wrapping by using the ⟨set up⟩, which is executed before the wrapping takes place: this may include overriding the substitutions listed.

Any expandable material in the ⟨text⟩ which is not to be expanded on wrapping should be converted to a string using \token_to_str:N, \tl_to_str:n, \tl_to_str:N, etc.

The result of the wrapping operation is passed as a braced argument to the ⟨function⟩, which is typically a wrapper around a write operation. The output of \iow_wrap:nnnN (i.e. the argument passed to the ⟨function⟩) consists of characters of category “other” (category code 12), with the exception of spaces which have category “space” (category code 10). This means that the output does not expand further when written to a file.

TeXhackers note: Internally, \iow_wrap:nnnN carries out an x-type expansion on the ⟨text⟩ to expand it. This is done in such a way that \exp_not:N or \exp_not:n could be used to prevent expansion of material. However, this is less conceptually clear than conversion to a string, which is therefore the supported method for handling expandable material in the ⟨text⟩.

\iow_indent:n \iow_indent:n ⟨(text)⟩

In the first argument of \iow_wrap:nnnN (for instance in messages), indents ⟨text⟩ by four spaces. This function does not cause a line break, and only affects lines which start within the scope of the ⟨text⟩. In case the indented ⟨text⟩ should appear on separate lines from the surrounding text, use \ \ to force line breaks.

\l_iow_line_count_int

The maximum number of characters in a line to be written by the \iow_wrap:nnnN function. This value depends on the TeX system in use: the standard value is 78, which is typically correct for unmodified TeX Live and MiKTeX systems.
12.1.4 Constant input–output streams, and variables

Scratch input stream for global use. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any \LaTeX3-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{\g_tmpa_ior}
  \item \texttt{\g_tmpb_ior}
\end{itemize}

New: 2017-12-11

Constant output streams for writing to the log and to the terminal (plus the log), respectively.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{\c_log_iow}
  \item \texttt{\c_term_iow}
\end{itemize}

Scratch output stream for global use. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any \LaTeX3-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{\g_tmpa_iow}
  \item \texttt{\g_tmpb_iow}
\end{itemize}

New: 2017-12-11

12.1.5 Primitive conditionals

\begin{verbatim}
\if_eof:w \ (stream) \end{verbatim}
\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{\if_eof:w (stream)}
  \item \texttt{\else:}
  \item \texttt{(false code)}
  \item \texttt{\fi:}
\end{itemize}

Tests if the \texttt{(stream)} returns “end of file”, which is true for non-existent files. The \texttt{\else:} branch is optional.

\TeXhackers note: This is the \TeX primitive \texttt{\ifeof}.

12.2 File operation functions

Contain the directory, name and extension of the current file. The directory is empty if the file was loaded without an explicit path (i.e. if it is in the \TeX search path), and does not end in / other than the case that it is exactly equal to the root directory. The \texttt{(name)} and \texttt{(ext)} parts together make up the file name, thus the \texttt{(name)} part may be thought of as the “job name” for the current file. Note that \TeX does not provide information on the \texttt{(ext)} part for the main (top level) file and that this file always has an empty \texttt{(dir)} component. Also, the \texttt{(name)} here will be equal to \texttt{\c_sys_jobname_str}, which may be different from the real file name (if set using \texttt{--jobname}, for example).
Each entry is the path to a directory which should be searched when seeking a file. Each path can be relative or absolute, and should not include the trailing slash. The entries are not expanded when used so may contain active characters but should not feature any variable content. Spaces need not be quoted.

\TeXhackers note: When working as a package in \LaTeX{} 2e, expl3 will automatically append the current \input@path to the set of values from \l_file_search_path_seq.

\file_if_exist:nTF \{\langle file name\rangle\} \{\langle true code\rangle\} \{\langle false code\rangle\}

Searches for \langle file name\rangle using the current \TeX{} search path and the additional paths controlled by \l_file_search_path_seq.

\file_get:nnN \{\langle filename\rangle\} \{\langle setup\rangle\} \langle tl \rangle
\file_get:nnNTF \{\langle filename\rangle\} \{\langle setup\rangle\} \langle tl \rangle \{\langle true code\rangle\} \{\langle false code\rangle\}

Defines \langle tl \rangle to the contents of \langle filename\rangle. Category codes may need to be set appropriately via the \langle setup\rangle argument. The non-branching version sets the \langle tl \rangle to \q_no_value if the file is not found. The branching version runs the \langle true code\rangle after the assignment to \langle tl \rangle if the file is found, and \langle false code\rangle otherwise.

\file_get_full_name:nN \{\langle file name\rangle\} \langle tl \rangle
\file_get_full_name:VN
\file_get_full_name:nN \langle true code\rangle \{\langle false code\rangle\}
\file_get_full_name:VNF \langle true code\rangle \{\langle false code\rangle\}

Searches for \langle file name\rangle in the path as detailed for \file_if_exist:nTF, and if found sets the \langle tl var \rangle the fully-qualified name of the file, i.e. the path and file name. This includes an extension .tex when the given \langle file name\rangle has no extension but the file found has that extension. In the non-branching version, the \langle tl var \rangle will be set to \q_no_value in the case that the file does not exist.

\file_full_name:n \{\langle file name\rangle\}
\file_full_name:V \{\langle file name\rangle\}

Searches for \langle file name\rangle in the path as detailed for \file_if_exist:nTF, and if found leaves the fully-qualified name of the file, i.e. the path and file name, in the input stream. This includes an extension .tex when the given \langle file name\rangle has no extension but the file found has that extension. If the file is not found on the path, the expansion is empty.
Parses the \langle full name \rangle and splits it into three parts, each of which is returned by setting the appropriate local string variable:

- The \langle dir \rangle: everything up to the last / (path separator) in the \langle file path \rangle. As with system PATH variables and related functions, the \langle dir \rangle does not include the trailing / unless it points to the root directory. If there is no path (only a file name), \langle dir \rangle is empty.

- The \langle name \rangle: everything after the last / up to the last ., where both of those characters are optional. The \langle name \rangle may contain multiple . characters. It is empty if \langle full name \rangle consists only of a directory name.

- The \langle ext \rangle: everything after the last . (including the dot). The \langle ext \rangle is empty if there is no . after the last /.

Before parsing, the \langle full name \rangle is expanded until only non-expandable tokens remain, except that active characters are also not expanded. Quotes (") are invalid in file names and are discarded from the input.
\file_mdfive_hash:n \{\langle file name \rangle\}

Searches for \langle file name \rangle using the current \TeX{} search path and the additional paths controlled by \l_file_search_path_seq. It then expands to leave the MD5 sum generated from the contents of the file in the input stream. The file is read as bytes, which means that in contrast to most \TeX{} behaviour there will be a difference in result depending on the line endings used in text files. The same file will produce the same result between different engines: the algorithm used is the same in all cases. When the file is not found, the result of expansion is empty.

\file_get_mdfive_hash:n \{\langle file name \rangle\} \{tl var\}

Sets the \langle tl var \rangle to the result of applying \file_mdfive_hash:n to the \langle file \rangle. If the file is not found, the \langle tl var \rangle will be set to \q_no_value.

\file_size:n \{\langle file name \rangle\}

Searches for \langle file name \rangle using the current \TeX{} search path and the additional paths controlled by \l_file_search_path_seq. It then expands to leave the size of the file in bytes in the input stream. When the file is not found, the result of expansion is empty.

\file_get_size:n \{\langle file name \rangle\} \{tl var\}

Sets the \langle tl var \rangle to the result of applying \file_size:n to the \langle file \rangle. If the file is not found, the \langle tl var \rangle will be set to \q_no_value. This is not available in older versions of \XeTeX{}.

\file_timestamp:n \{\langle file name \rangle\}

Searches for \langle file name \rangle using the current \TeX{} search path and the additional paths controlled by \l_file_search_path_seq. It then expands to leave the modification timestamp of the file in the input stream. The timestamp is of the form D:\langle year \rangle:\langle month \rangle:\langle day \rangle:\langle hour \rangle:\langle minute \rangle:\langle second \rangle:\langle offset \rangle, where the latter may be Z (UTC) or \langle plus-minus \rangle\langle hours \rangle:\langle minutes \rangle. When the file is not found, the result of expansion is empty. This is not available in older versions of \XeTeX{}.

\file_get_timestamp:n \{\langle file name \rangle\} \{tl var\}

Sets the \langle tl var \rangle to the result of applying \file_timestamp:n to the \langle file \rangle. If the file is not found, the \langle tl var \rangle will be set to \q_no_value. This is not available in older versions of \XeTeX{}. 

\file_compare_timestamp_p:nNn * \file_compare_timestamp:nNn \{\langle file-1\rangle\} \{\langle comparator\rangle\} \{\langle file-2\rangle\} \{\langle true code\rangle\} \{\langle false code\rangle\}

Updated: 2019-09-20

Compares the file stamps on the two \langle files\rangle as indicated by the \langle comparator\rangle, and inserts either the \langle true code\rangle or \langle false case\rangle as required. A file which is not found is treated as older than any file which is found. This allows for example the construct

\file_compare_timestamp:nNnT \{ source-file \} > \{ derived-file \}
{
\% Code to regenerate derived file
}

to work when the derived file is entirely absent. The timestamp of two absent files is regarded as different. This is not available in older versions of X\TeX.

\file_input:n \{\langle file name\rangle\}

Updated: 2017-06-26

Searches for \langle file name\rangle in the path as detailed for \file_if_exist:nTF, and if found reads in the file as additional \E\TeX source. All files read are recorded for information and the file name stack is updated by this function. An error is raised if the file is not found.

\file_input_stop:

Updated: 2017-07-07

Ends the reading of a file started by \file_input:n or similar before the end of the file is reached. Where the file reading is being terminated due to an error, \msg_-critical:n(n) should be preferred.

\TeXhackers note: This function must be used on a line on its own: \TeX reads files line-by-line and so any additional tokens in the “current” line will still be read. This is also true if the function is hidden inside another function (which will be the normal case), i.e., all tokens on the same line in the source file are still processed. Putting it on a line by itself in the definition doesn’t help as it is the line where it is used that counts!

\file_show_list:
\file_log_list:

These functions list all files loaded by \E\TeX commands that populate \@filelist or by \file_input:n. While \file_show_list: displays the list in the terminal, \file_-log_list: outputs it to the log file only.

97
Chapter 13

The \l3\lua\texttt{tex} package: \LaTeX\-specific functions

The \LaTeX{} engine provides access to the Lua programming language, and with it access to the “internals” of \TeX{}. In order to use this within the framework provided here, a family of functions is available. When used with pdf\TeX{}, \d\TeX{}, up\TeX{} or X\TeX{} these raise an error: use \texttt{\(sys_if_engine_luatex:T)} to avoid this. Details on using Lua with the \LaTeX{} engine are given in the \LaTeX{} manual.

13.1 Breaking out to Lua

\texttt{\lua_now:n \{token list\}}

The \langle token list\rangle is first tokenized by \TeX{}, which includes converting line ends to spaces in the usual \TeX{} manner and which respects currently-applicable \TeX{} category codes. The resulting \langle Lua input\rangle is passed to the Lua interpreter for processing. Each \texttt{\lua_now:n} block is treated by Lua as a separate chunk. The Lua interpreter executes the \langle Lua input\rangle immediately, and in an expandable manner.

\textbf{\LaTeX{}hackers note:} \texttt{\lua_now:e} is a macro wrapper around \texttt{\directlua}: when Lua\TeX{} is in use two expansions are required to yield the result of the Lua code.

\texttt{\lua_shipout:n \{token list\}}

The \langle token list\rangle is first tokenized by \TeX{}, which includes converting line ends to spaces in the usual \TeX{} manner and which respects currently-applicable \TeX{} category codes. The resulting \langle Lua input\rangle is passed to the Lua interpreter when the current page is finalised (\textit{i.e.} at shipout). Each \texttt{\lua_shipout:n} block is treated by Lua as a separate chunk. The Lua interpreter will execute the \langle Lua input\rangle during the page-building routine: no \TeX{} expansion of the \langle Lua input\rangle will occur at this stage.

In the case of the \texttt{\lua_shipout_e:n} version the input is fully expanded by \TeX{} in an \texttt{e}-like manner during the shipout operation.

\textbf{\LaTeX{}hackers note:} At a \TeX{} level, the \langle Lua input\rangle is stored as a “whatsit”.
\texttt{\textbackslash lua\_escape:n \{(token list)\}}

Converts the \{(token list)\} such that it can safely be passed to Lua: embedded backslashes, double and single quotes, and newlines and carriage returns are escaped. This is done by prepending an extra token consisting of a backslash with category code 12, and for the line endings, converting them to \texttt{\textbackslash n} and \texttt{\textbackslash r}, respectively.

\textbf{\textit{\texttt{\textbackslash lua\_escape:e}} note:} \texttt{\textbackslash lua\_escape:e} is a macro wrapper around \texttt{\textbackslash lua\_es\_cape\_string}: when \texttt{\textbackslash Lua\textbackslash TeX} is in use two expansions are required to yield the result of the Lua code.

### 13.2 Lua interfaces

As well as interfaces for \texttt{\textbackslash TeX}, there are a small number of Lua functions provided here.

**\texttt{ltx.utils}**

Most public interfaces provided by the module are stored within the \texttt{ltx.utils} table.

**\texttt{ltx.utils.filedump}**

\texttt{\langle dump \rangle = ltx.utils.filedump\langle(\text{file}), (\text{offset}), (\text{length})\rangle}

Returns the uppercase hexadecimal representation of the content of the \langle\text{file}\rangle read as bytes. If the \langle length\rangle is given, only this part of the file is returned; similarly, one may specify the \langle offset\rangle from the start of the file. If the \langle length\rangle is not given, the entire file is read starting at the \langle offset\rangle.

**\texttt{ltx.utils.filemd5sum}**

\texttt{\langle hash \rangle = ltx.utils.filemd5sum\langle(file)\rangle}

Returns the MD5 sum of the file contents read as bytes; note that the result will depend on the nature of the line endings used in the file, in contrast to normal \texttt{\textbackslash TeX} behaviour. If the \langle file\rangle is not found, nothing is returned with \textit{no error raised}.

**\texttt{ltx.utils.filemoddate}**

\texttt{\langle date \rangle = ltx.utils.filemoddate\langle(file)\rangle}

Returns the date/time of last modification of the \langle file\rangle in the format

\texttt{D:\langle year\rangle\langle month\rangle\langle day\rangle\langle hour\rangle\langle minute\rangle\langle second\rangle\langle offset\rangle}

where the latter may be \texttt{Z} (UTC) or \texttt{\langle plus\textbackslash minus\rangle\langle hours\rangle\langle plus\textbackslash minus\rangle\langle minutes\rangle}. If the \langle file\rangle is not found, nothing is returned with \textit{no error raised}.

**\texttt{ltx.utils.filesize}**

\texttt{size = ltx.utils.filesize\langle(file)\rangle}

Returns the size of the \langle file\rangle in bytes. If the \langle file\rangle is not found, nothing is returned with \textit{no error raised}.
Chapter 14

The \texttt{l3}legacy package

Interfaces to legacy concepts

There are a small number of Te\LaTeX or \LaTeXe concepts which are not used in \texttt{expl3} code but which need to be manipulated when working as a \LaTeXe package. To allow these to be integrated cleanly into \texttt{expl3} code, a set of legacy interfaces are provided here.

\begin{verbatim}
\legacy_if_p:n \legacy_if:TF \legacy_if:nTF
\end{verbatim}

Tests if the \LaTeXe/plain \TeX conditional (generated by \texttt{\newif}) if \texttt{true} or \texttt{false} and branches accordingly. The \texttt{name} of the conditional should \texttt{omit} the leading \texttt{if}.

\begin{verbatim}
\legacy_if_set_true:n \legacy_if_set_false:n
\end{verbatim}

Sets the \LaTeXe/plain \TeX conditional \texttt{\if(name)} (generated by \texttt{\newif}) to be \texttt{true} or \texttt{false}.

\begin{verbatim}
\legacy_if_set:nn \legacy_if_gset:nn
\end{verbatim}

Sets the \LaTeXe/plain \TeX conditional \texttt{\if(name)} (generated by \texttt{\newif}) to the result of evaluating the \texttt{boolean expression}.
Part IV
Data types
Chapter 15

The \texttt{\textbackslash tl} package

Token lists

\texttt{\LaTeX} works with tokens, and \texttt{\LaTeX3} therefore provides a number of functions to deal with lists of tokens. Token lists may be present directly in the argument to a function:

\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{\textbackslash foo:n \{ a collection of \texttt{\textbackslash tokens} \}}
\end{verbatim}

or may be stored in a so-called “token list variable”, which have the suffix \texttt{tl}: a token list variable can also be used as the argument to a function, for example

\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{\textbackslash foo:N \textbackslash l\_some\_tl}
\end{verbatim}

In both cases, functions are available to test and manipulate the lists of tokens, and these have the module prefix \texttt{tl}. In many cases, functions which can be applied to token list variables are paired with similar functions for application to explicit lists of tokens: the two “views” of a token list are therefore collected together here.

A token list (explicit, or stored in a variable) can be seen either as a list of “items”, or a list of “tokens”. An item is whatever \texttt{\use:n} would grab as its argument: a single non-space token or a brace group, with optional leading explicit space characters (each item is thus itself a token list). A token is either a normal $N$ argument, or $\texttt{\textbackslash ,}$, $\{\}$ (assuming normal \texttt{\LaTeX} category codes). Thus for example

\begin{verbatim}
\{ \texttt{Hello} \} - \texttt{world}
\end{verbatim}

contains six items (\texttt{Hello, w, o, r, l and d}), but thirteen tokens (\{, \texttt{H, e, l, l, o, \}, \texttt{w, o, r, l and d}\}). Functions which act on items are often faster than their analogue acting directly on tokens.

15.1 Creating and initialising token list variables

\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{\textbackslash tl\_new:N} \langle \texttt{tl var} \rangle
\texttt{\textbackslash tl\_new:c}
\end{verbatim}

Creates a new \langle \texttt{tl var} \rangle or raises an error if the name is already taken. The declaration is global. The \langle \texttt{tl var} \rangle is initially empty.
\tl_const:Nn \tl_const:(Nx|cn|cx)

\tl_const:Nn \tl var \{(token list)\}

Creates a new constant \tl var or raises an error if the name is already taken. The value
of the \tl var is set globally to the \{(token list)\}.

\tl_clear:N \tl_clear:c \tl_gclear:N \tl_gclear:c

\tl_clear:N \tl var

Clears all entries from the \tl var.

\tl_clear_new:N \tl_clear_new:c \tl_gclear_new:N \tl_gclear_new:c

\tl_clear_new:N \tl var

Ensures that the \tl var exists globally by applying \tl_new:N if necessary, then applies
\tl_(g)clear:N to leave the \tl var empty.

\tl_set_eq:NN \tl_set_eq:(cN|Nc|cc)
\tl_gset_eq:NN \tl_gset_eq:(cN|Nc|cc)

\tl_set_eq:NN \tl var_1 \tl var_2

Sets the content of \tl var_1 equal to that of \tl var_2.

\tl_concat:NNN \tl_concat:ccc \tl_gconcat:NNN \tl_gconcat:ccc

\tl_concat:NNN \tl_concat:ccc

Concatenates the content of \tl var_1 and \tl var_2 together and saves the result in
\tl var_3. The \tl var_2 is placed at the left side of the new token list.

\tl_if_exist_p:N \tl_if_exist_p:c \tl_if_exist:NTF \tl_if_exist:cTF

\tl_if_exist_p:N \tl var

Tests whether the \tl var is currently defined. This does not check that the \tl var
really is a token list variable.

15.2 Adding data to token list variables

\tl_set:Nn \tl_set:NN \tl_set:(NV|Nv|No|Nf|Nx|cn|cV|co|cf|cx)
\tl_gset:Nn \tl_gset:NN \tl_gset:(NV|Nv|No|Nf|Nx|cn|cV|co|cf|cx)

\tl_set:Nn \tl var \{\textit{tokens}\}

Sets \tl var to contain \textit{tokens}, removing any previous content from the variable.

\tl_put_left:Nn \tl_put_left:NN \tl_put_left:(NV|Nv|No|Nf|Nx|cn|cV|co|cf|cx)
\tl_gput_left:Nn \tl_gput_left:NN \tl_gput_left:(NV|Nv|No|Nf|Nx|cn|cV|co|cf|cx)

\tl_put_left:Nn \tl var \{\textit{tokens}\}

Appends \textit{tokens} to the left side of the current content of \tl var.
15.3 Token list conditionals

\begin{enumerate}
\item \texttt{\tl_if_blank_p:n} \{\texttt{(token list)}\}
\item \texttt{\tl_if_blank:nTF} \{\texttt{(token list)}\} \{\texttt{(true code)}\} \{\texttt{(false code)}\}
\end{enumerate}

Tests if the \texttt{(token list)} consists only of blank spaces (\textit{i.e.} contains no item). The test is \texttt{true} if \texttt{(token list)} is zero or more explicit space characters (explicit tokens with character code 32 and category code 10), and is \texttt{false} otherwise.

\begin{enumerate}
\item \texttt{\tl_if_empty_p:N} \{\texttt{\tl_var}\}
\item \texttt{\tl_if_empty:nTF} \{\texttt{\tl_var}\} \{\texttt{(true code)}\} \{\texttt{(false code)}\}
\end{enumerate}

Tests if the \texttt{(token list variable)} is entirely empty (\textit{i.e.} contains no tokens at all).

\begin{enumerate}
\item \texttt{\tl_if_empty_p:n} \{\texttt{(token list)}\}
\item \texttt{\tl_if_empty:nTF} \{\texttt{(token list)}\} \{\texttt{(true code)}\} \{\texttt{(false code)}\}
\end{enumerate}

Tests if the \texttt{(token list)} is entirely empty (\textit{i.e.} contains no tokens at all).

\begin{enumerate}
\item \texttt{\tl_if_eq_p:NN} \{\texttt{\tl_var_1}\} \{\texttt{\tl_var_2}\}
\item \texttt{\tl_if_eq:NNTF} \{\texttt{\tl_var_2}\} \{\texttt{(true code)}\} \{\texttt{(false code)}\}
\end{enumerate}

Compares the content of two \texttt{(token list variables)} and is logically \texttt{true} if the two contain the same list of tokens (\textit{i.e.} identical in both the list of characters they contain and the category codes of those characters). Thus for example

\begin{verbatim}
\tl_set:Nn \l_tmpa_tl { abc }
\tl_set:Nx \l_tmpb_tl { \tl_to_str:n { abc } }
\tl_if_eq:NNTF \l_tmpa_tl \l_tmpb_tl \{ true \} \{ false \}
\end{verbatim}

yields \texttt{false}. See also \texttt{\str_if_eq:nnTF} for a comparison that ignores category codes.

\begin{enumerate}
\item \texttt{\tl_if_eq:NnTF} \{\texttt{\tl_var_1}\} \{\texttt{(token list_2)}\} \{\texttt{(true code)}\} \{\texttt{(false code)}\}
\end{enumerate}

Tests if the \texttt{(token list variable_1)} and the \texttt{(token list_2)} contain the same list of tokens, both in respect of character codes and category codes. This conditional is not expandable: see \texttt{\tl_if_eq:NNTF} for an expandable version when both token lists are stored in variables, or \texttt{\str_if_eq:nnTF} if category codes are not important.
\tl_if_eq:nnTF \{\langle token list_1\rangle\} \{\langle token list_2\rangle\} \{\langle true code\rangle\} \{\langle false code\rangle\}

Tests if \langle token list_1\rangle and \langle token list_2\rangle contain the same list of tokens, both in respect of character codes and category codes. This conditional is not expandable: see \tl_if_eq:NNTF for an expandable version when token lists are stored in variables, or \str_if_eq:nnTF if category codes are not important.

\tl_if_in:NnTF \{\langle token list\rangle\} {\langle tl var\rangle} \{\langle true code\rangle\} \{\langle false code\rangle\}

Tests if the \langle token list\rangle is found in the content of the \langle tl var\rangle. The \langle token list\rangle cannot contain the tokens { }, or # (more precisely, explicit character tokens with category code 1 (begin-group) or 2 (end-group), and tokens with category code 6).

\tl_if_in:nnTF \{\langle token list_1\rangle\} \{\langle token list_2\rangle\} \{\langle true code\rangle\} \{\langle false code\rangle\}

Tests if \langle token list_2\rangle is found inside \langle token list_1\rangle. The \langle token list_2\rangle cannot contain the tokens { }, or # (more precisely, explicit character tokens with category code 1 (begin-group) or 2 (end-group), and tokens with category code 6). The search does not enter brace (category code 1/2) groups.

\tl_if_novalue_p:n \{\langle token list\rangle\}

Tests if the \langle token list\rangle is exactly equal to the special \c_novalue_tl marker. This function is intended to allow construction of flexible document interface structures in which missing optional arguments are detected.

\tl_if_single_p:N \{\langle tl var\rangle\}
\tl_if_single_p:c \{\langle tl var\rangle\}
\tl_if_single_NTF \{\langle tl var\rangle\}
\tl_if_single_cTF \{\langle tl var\rangle\}

Tests if the content of the \langle tl var\rangle consists of a single \langle item\rangle, i.e. is a single normal token (neither an explicit space character nor a begin-group character) or a single brace group, surrounded by optional spaces on both sides. In other words, such a token list has token count 1 according to \tl_count:N.

\tl_if_single_p:n \{\langle token list\rangle\}
\tl_if_single_p:n \{\langle token list\rangle\}
\tl_if_single:nTF \{\langle token list\rangle\} \{\langle true code\rangle\} \{\langle false code\rangle\}

Tests if the \langle token list\rangle has exactly one \langle item\rangle, i.e. is a single normal token (neither an explicit space character nor a begin-group character) or a single brace group, surrounded by optional spaces on both sides. In other words, such a token list has token count 1 according to \tl_count:n.

\tl_if_single_token_p:n \{\langle token list\rangle\}
\tl_if_single_token:nTF \{\langle token list\rangle\} \{\langle true code\rangle\} \{\langle false code\rangle\}

Tests if the token list consists of exactly one token, i.e. is either a single space character or a single normal token. Token groups { . . . } are not single tokens.
This function compares the \textit{test token list variable} in turn with each of the \textit{token list variable cases}. If the two are equal (as described for \texttt{\tl_if_eq:NNTF}) then the associated \textit{code} is left in the input stream and other cases are discarded. If any of the cases are matched, the \textit{true code} is also inserted into the input stream (after the code for the appropriate case), while if none match then the \textit{false code} is inserted. The function \texttt{\tl_case:Nn}, which does nothing if there is no match, is also available.

15.3.1 Testing the first token

Tests if the first \textit{token} in the \textit{token list} has the same category code as the \textit{test token}. In the case where the \textit{token list} is empty, the test is always \textit{false}.

Tests if the first \textit{token} in the \textit{token list} has the same character code as the \textit{test token}. In the case where the \textit{token list} is empty, the test is always \textit{false}.

Tests if the first \textit{token} in the \textit{token list} has the same meaning as the \textit{test token}. In the case where the \textit{token list} is empty, the test is always \textit{false}.

Tests if the first \textit{token} in the \textit{token list} is an explicit begin-group character (with category code 1 and any character code), in other words, if the \textit{token list} starts with a brace group. In particular, the test is \textit{false} if the \textit{token list} starts with an implicit token such as \texttt{\c_group_begin_token}, or if it is empty. This function is useful to implement actions on token lists on a token by token basis.
Tests if the first \langle \text{token} \rangle in the \langle \text{token list} \rangle is a normal N-type argument. In other words, it is neither an explicit space character (explicit token with character code 32 and category code 10) nor an explicit begin-group character (with category code 1 and any character code). An empty argument yields false, as it does not have a normal first token. This function is useful to implement actions on token lists on a token by token basis.

Tests if the first \langle \text{token} \rangle in the \langle \text{token list} \rangle is an explicit space character (explicit token with character code 12 and category code 10). In particular, the test is false if the \langle \text{token list} \rangle starts with an implicit token such as \c_space_token, or if it is empty. This function is useful to implement actions on token lists on a token by token basis.

15.4 Working with token lists as a whole
15.4.1 Using token lists

Converses the \langle \text{token list} \rangle to a \langle \text{string} \rangle, leaving the resulting character tokens in the input stream. A \langle \text{string} \rangle is a series of tokens with category code 12 (other) with the exception of spaces, which retain category code 10 (space). This function requires only a single expansion. Its argument must be braced.

\textbf{\LaTeX}hackers note: This is the \LaTeX primitive \texttt{detokenize}. Converting a \langle \text{token list} \rangle to a \langle \text{string} \rangle yields a concatenation of the string representations of every token in the \langle \text{token list} \rangle. The string representation of a control sequence is

- an escape character, whose character code is given by the internal parameter \texttt{\escapechar}, absent if the \texttt{\escapechar} is negative or greater than the largest character code;
- the control sequence name, as defined by \texttt{\cs_to_str:N};
- a space, unless the control sequence name is a single character whose category at the time of expansion of \texttt{\tl_to_str:n} is not “letter”.

The string representation of an explicit character token is that character, doubled in the case of (explicit) macro parameter characters (normally \#). In particular, the string representation of a token list may depend on the category codes in effect when it is evaluated, and the value of the \texttt{\escapechar}: for instance \texttt{\tl_to_str:n \{a\}} normally produces the three character “backslash”, “lower-case a”, “space”, but it may also produce a single “lower-case a” if the escape character is negative and a is currently not a letter.

Converses the content of the \langle \text{tl var} \rangle into a series of characters with category code 12 (other) with the exception of spaces, which retain category code 10 (space). This \langle \text{string} \rangle is then left in the input stream. For low-level details, see the notes given for \texttt{\tl_to_str:n}. 107
\tl_use:N \tl_use:C

Recovers the content of a \langle tl var \rangle and places it directly in the input stream. An error is raised if the variable does not exist or if it is invalid. Note that it is possible to use a \langle tl var \rangle directly without an accessor function.

15.4.2 Counting and reversing token lists

\tl_count:n \{\langle tokens \rangle\}

Counts the number of \langle items \rangle in \langle tokens \rangle and leaves this information in the input stream. Unbraced tokens count as one element as do each token group (\{ ... \}). This process ignores any unprotected spaces within \langle tokens \rangle. See also \tl_count:n. This function requires three expansions, giving an \langle integer denotation \rangle.

\tl_count:N \tl_count:c

Counts the number of \langle items \rangle in the \langle tl var \rangle and leaves this information in the input stream. Unbraced tokens count as one element as do each token group (\{ ... \}). This process ignores any unprotected spaces within the \langle tl var \rangle. See also \tl_count:n. This function requires three expansions, giving an \langle integer denotation \rangle.

\tl_count_tokens:n \{\langle tokens \rangle\}

Counts the number of \TeX{} tokens in the \langle tokens \rangle and leaves this information in the input stream. Every token, including spaces and braces, contributes one to the total; thus for instance, the token count of \texttt{a\{bc\}} is 6.

\tl_reverse:n \{\langle token list \rangle\}

Reverses the order of the \langle items \rangle in the \langle token list \rangle, so that \langle item_1 \rangle\langle item_2 \rangle\langle item_3 \rangle \ldots \langle item_n \rangle becomes \langle item_n \rangle\ldots\langle item_2 \rangle\langle item_1 \rangle. This process preserves unprotected space within the \langle token list \rangle. Tokens are not reversed within braced token groups, which keep their outer set of braces. In situations where performance is important, consider \tl_reverse_items:n. See also \tl_reverse:N.

\textbf{\TeX{}hackers note:} The result is returned within \texttt{\unexpanded}, which means that the token list does not expand further when appearing in an \texttt{x}-type argument expansion.

\tl_reverse:N \tl_reverse:c \tl_greverse:N \tl_greverse:c

Sets the \langle tl var \rangle to contain the result of reversing the order of its \langle items \rangle, so that \langle item_1 \rangle\langle item_2 \rangle\langle item_3 \rangle \ldots \langle item_n \rangle becomes \langle item_n \rangle\ldots\langle item_2 \rangle\langle item_1 \rangle. This process preserves unprotected spaces within the \langle token list variable \rangle. Braced token groups are copied without reversing the order of tokens, but keep the outer set of braces. This is equivalent to a combination of an assignment and \tl_reverse:V. See also \tl_reverse_items:n for improved performance.
\texttt{\tl_reverse_items:n} \{\texttt{token list}\}  
Reverses the order of the \texttt{items} stored in \texttt{tl var}, so that \{\texttt{item}_1\}\{\texttt{item}_2\}\{\texttt{item}_3\} \ldots \{\texttt{item}_n\} becomes \{\texttt{item}_n\} \ldots \{\texttt{item}_3\}\{\texttt{item}_2\}\{\texttt{item}_1\}. This process removes any unprotected space within the \texttt{token list}. Braced token groups are copied without reversing the order of tokens, and keep the outer set of braces. Items which are initially not braced are copied with braces in the result. In cases where preserving spaces is important, consider the slower function \texttt{\tl_reverse:n}.

**\TeXhackers note:** The result is returned within \texttt{\unexpanded}, which means that the token list does not expand further when appearing in an \texttt{x}-type argument expansion.

\texttt{\tl_trim_spaces:n} \{\texttt{token list}\}  
Removes any leading and trailing explicit space characters (explicit tokens with character code 32 and category code 10) from the \texttt{token list} and leaves the result in the input stream.  

**\TeXhackers note:** The result is returned within \texttt{\unexpanded}, which means that the token list does not expand further when appearing in an \texttt{x}-type argument expansion.

\texttt{\tl_trim_spaces_apply:nN} \{\texttt{token list}\} \{\texttt{function}\}  
Removes any leading and trailing explicit space characters (explicit tokens with character code 32 and category code 10) from the \texttt{token list} and passes the result to the \texttt{function} as an \texttt{n}-type argument.

\texttt{\tl_trim_spaces:N} \texttt{tl var}  
Sets the \texttt{tl var} to contain the result of removing any leading and trailing explicit space characters (explicit tokens with character code 32 and category code 10) from its contents.

15.4.3 Viewing token lists

\texttt{\tl_show:N} \texttt{tl var}  
Displays the content of the \texttt{tl var} on the terminal.  

**\TeXhackers note:** This is similar to the \TeX primitive \texttt{\show}, wrapped to a fixed number of characters per line.

\texttt{\tl_show:n} \{\texttt{token list}\}  
Displays the \texttt{token list} on the terminal.  

**\TeXhackers note:** This is similar to the \TeX primitive \texttt{\showtokens}, wrapped to a fixed number of characters per line.
\tl_log:N \tl_log:c
New: 2014-08-22
Updated: 2021-04-29

\tl_log:n \{\langle token list\rangle\}
New: 2014-08-22
Updated: 2015-08-07

15.5 Manipulating items in token lists

15.5.1 Mapping over token lists

All mappings are done at the current group level, \textit{i.e.} any local assignments made by the \langle function\rangle or \langle code\rangle discussed below remain in effect after the loop.

\tl_map_function:NN \tl_map_function:cN
Updated: 2012-06-29

\tl_map_function:nN
Updated: 2012-06-29

\tl_map_inline:Nn \tl_map_inline:cn
Updated: 2012-06-29

\tl_map_inline:nn
Updated: 2012-06-29

\tl_map_function:NN (\tl var) \langle function\rangle

Applies \langle function\rangle to every \langle item\rangle in the \langle tl var\rangle. The \langle function\rangle receives one argument for each iteration. This may be a number of tokens if the \langle item\rangle was stored within braces. Hence the \langle function\rangle should anticipate receiving \textit{n}-type arguments. See also \tl_map_function:nN.

\tl_map_function:nN \{\langle token list\rangle\} \langle function\rangle

Applies \langle function\rangle to every \langle item\rangle in the \langle token list\rangle. The \langle function\rangle receives one argument for each iteration. This may be a number of tokens if the \langle item\rangle was stored within braces. Hence the \langle function\rangle should anticipate receiving \textit{n}-type arguments. See also \tl_map_function:NN.

\tl_map_inline:Nn \langle inline function\rangle

Applies the \langle inline function\rangle to every \langle item\rangle stored within the \langle tl var\rangle. The \langle inline function\rangle should consist of code which receives the \langle item\rangle as \#1. See also \tl_map_function:nN.

\tl_map_inline:nn \langle inline function\rangle

Applies the \langle inline function\rangle to every \langle item\rangle stored within the \langle token list\rangle. The \langle inline function\rangle should consist of code which receives the \langle item\rangle as \#1. See also \tl_map_function:nN.
Analogue of \tl_map_function:NN which maps several tokens instead of a single function. The \langle code \rangle receives each \langle item \rangle in the \langle tl \ var \rangle or in \langle tokens \rangle as a trailing brace group. For instance,

\tl_map_tokens:Nn \l_my_tl \{ \prg_replicate:nn \{ 2 \} \}

expands to twice each \langle item \rangle in the \langle tl \ var \rangle: for each \langle item \rangle in \l_my_tl the function \prg_replicate:nn receives 2 and \langle item \rangle as its two arguments. The function \tl_map_inline:Nn is typically faster but is not expandable.

\tl_map_variable:NNn \langle tl var \rangle \langle variable \rangle \{ \langle code \rangle \}
Stores each \langle item \rangle of the \langle tl \ var \rangle in turn in the (token list) \langle variable \rangle and applies the \langle code \rangle. The \langle code \rangle will usually make use of the \langle variable \rangle, but this is not enforced. The assignments to the \langle variable \rangle are local. Its value after the loop is the last \langle item \rangle in the \langle tl \ var \rangle, or its original value if the \langle tl \ var \rangle is blank. See also \tl_map_inline:Nn.

\tl_map_variable:nNn \langle token list \rangle \langle variable \rangle \{ \langle code \rangle \}
Stores each \langle item \rangle of the \langle token list \rangle in turn in the (token list) \langle variable \rangle and applies the \langle code \rangle. The \langle code \rangle will usually make use of the \langle variable \rangle, but this is not enforced. The assignments to the \langle variable \rangle are local. Its value after the loop is the last \langle item \rangle in the \langle tl \ var \rangle, or its original value if the \langle tl \ var \rangle is blank. See also \tl_map_inline:nn.

\tl_map_break: \(\star\)
Used to terminate a \tl_map_... function before all entries in the \langle token list variable \rangle have been processed. This normally takes place within a conditional statement, for example

\tl_map_inline:Nn \l_my_tl
{\
 \str_if_eq:nnT \{ #1 \} \{ bingo \} \{ \tl_map_break: \}
% Do something useful
}

See also \tl_map_break:n. Use outside of a \tl_map_... scenario leads to low level \TeX errors.

\textbf{\TeXhackers note:} When the mapping is broken, additional tokens may be inserted before the \langle tokens \rangle are inserted into the input stream. This depends on the design of the mapping function.
\newcommand*{\tl_map_break:n}{⟨code⟩}

Used to terminate a \tl_map... function before all entries in the ⟨token list variable⟩ have been processed, inserting the ⟨code⟩ after the mapping has ended. This normally takes place within a conditional statement, for example

\begin{verbatim}
\tl_map_inline:Nn \l_my_tl
{\str_if_eq:nnT { #1 } { bingo }{\tl_map_break:n { <code> }}%
 % Do something useful
}\end{verbatim}

Use outside of a \tl_map... scenario leads to low level \TeX errors.

\textbf{\TeXhackers note:} When the mapping is broken, additional tokens may be inserted before the ⟨code⟩ is inserted into the input stream. This depends on the design of the mapping function.

### 15.5.2 Head and tail of token lists

Functions which deal with either only the very first item (balanced text or single normal token) in a token list, or the remaining tokens.

\begin{verbatim}
\tl_head:n{⟨token list⟩}
\tl_head:n{⟨token list⟩}
\tl_head:(V|v|f)
\end{verbatim}

Leaves in the input stream the first ⟨item⟩ in the ⟨token list⟩, discarding the rest of the ⟨token list⟩. All leading explicit space characters (explicit tokens with character code 32 and category code 10) are discarded; for example

\begin{verbatim}
\tl_head:n{ abc }
\end{verbatim}

and

\begin{verbatim}
\tl_head:n{ - abc }
\end{verbatim}

both leave a in the input stream. If the “head” is a brace group, rather than a single token, the braces are removed, and so

\begin{verbatim}
\tl_head:n{ - { - ab } c }
\end{verbatim}

yields ab. A blank ⟨token list⟩ (see \tl_if_blank:nTF) results in \tl_head:n leaving nothing in the input stream.

\textbf{\TeXhackers note:} The result is returned within \exp_not:n, which means that the token list does not expand further when appearing in an x-type argument expansion.
Leaves in the input stream the first ⟨item⟩ in the ⟨token list⟩, discarding the rest of the ⟨token list⟩. All leading explicit space characters (explicit tokens with character code 32 and category code 10) are discarded. A blank ⟨token list⟩ (which consists only of space characters) results in a low-level \TeX error, which may be avoided by the inclusion of an empty group in the input (as shown), without the need for an explicit test. Alternatively, \tl_if_blank:nF may be used to avoid using the function with a “blank” argument. This function requires only a single expansion, and thus is suitable for use within an \o-type expansion. In general, \tl_head:n should be preferred if the number of expansions is not critical.

Discards all leading explicit space characters (explicit tokens with character code 32 and category code 10) and the first ⟨item⟩ in the ⟨token list⟩, and leaves the remaining tokens in the input stream. Thus for example

\tl_tail:n { a ~ {bc} d }

and

\tl_tail:n { ~ a ~ {bc} d }

both leave ⟨bc⟩d in the input stream. A blank ⟨token list⟩ (see \tl_if_blank:nF) results in \tl_tail:n leaving nothing in the input stream.

\TeXhackers note: The result is returned within \exp_not:n, which means that the ⟨item⟩ does not expand further when appearing in an \x-type argument expansion.

Indexing items in the ⟨token list⟩ from 1 on the left, this function evaluates the ⟨integer expression⟩ and leaves the appropriate item from the ⟨token list⟩ in the input stream. If the ⟨integer expression⟩ is negative, indexing occurs from the right of the token list, starting at −1 for the right-most item. If the index is out of bounds, then the function expands to nothing.

\TeXhackers note: The result is returned within the \unexpanded primitive (\exp_not:n), which means that the ⟨item⟩ does not expand further when appearing in an \x-type argument expansion.
\tl_rand_item:N * \tl_rand_item:N \{tl var\}
\tl_rand_item:c * \tl_rand_item:n \{(token list)\}
\tl_rand_item:n * Selects a pseudo-random item of the \langle token list \rangle. If the \langle token list \rangle is blank, the result is empty. This is not available in older versions of \LaTeXX.

\textbf{\TeXhackers note:} The result is returned within the \texttt{\unexpanded} primitive (\texttt{\exp_not:n}), which means that the \langle item \rangle does not expand further when appearing in an \texttt{x}-type argument expansion.
\texttt{\textbackslash tl\_range:Nnn} \texttt{\textbackslash tl\_range:nnn} *

Leaves in the input stream the items from the \texttt{\langle start index\rangle} to the \texttt{\langle end index\rangle} inclusive. Spaces and braces are preserved between the items returned (but never at either end of the list). Here \texttt{\langle start index\rangle} and \texttt{\langle end index\rangle} should be \texttt{(integer expressions)}. For describing in detail the functions’ behavior, let \texttt{m} and \texttt{n} be the start and end index respectively. If either is \texttt{0}, the result is empty. A positive index means ‘start counting from the left end’, and a negative index means ‘from the right end’. Let \texttt{l} be the count of the token list.

The \textit{actual start point} is determined as \texttt{M = m} if \texttt{m > 0} and as \texttt{M = l + m + 1} if \texttt{m < 0}. Similarly the \textit{actual end point} is \texttt{N = n} if \texttt{n > 0} and \texttt{N = l + n + 1} if \texttt{n < 0}. If \texttt{M > N}, the result is empty. Otherwise it consists of all items from position \texttt{M} to position \texttt{N} inclusive; for the purpose of this rule, we can imagine that the token list extends at infinity on either side, with void items at positions \texttt{s} for \texttt{s ≤ 0} or \texttt{s > l}.

Spaces in between items in the actual range are preserved. Spaces at either end of the token list will be removed anyway (think to the token list being passed to \texttt{\textbackslash tl\_trim\_spaces:n} to begin with.

Thus, with \texttt{l = 7} as in the examples below, all of the following are equivalent and result in the whole token list

\begin{verbatim}
\tl_range:nnn { abcd{-e{}}fg } { 1 } { 7 }
\tl_range:nnn { abcd{-e{}}fg } { 1 } { 12 }
\tl_range:nnn { abcd{-e{}}fg } { -7 } { 7 }
\tl_range:nnn { abcd{-e{}}fg } { -12 } { 7 }
\end{verbatim}

Here are some more interesting examples. The calls

\begin{verbatim}
\iow_term:x { \tl_range:nnn { abcd{-e{}}fg } { 2 } { 5 } }
\iow_term:x { \tl_range:nnn { abcd{-e{}}fg } { 2 } { -3 } }
\iow_term:x { \tl_range:nnn { abcd{-e{}}fg } { -6 } { 5 } }
\iow_term:x { \tl_range:nnn { abcd{-e{}}fg } { -6 } { -3 } }
\end{verbatim}

are all equivalent and will print \texttt{bcd{e{}}} on the terminal; similarly

\begin{verbatim}
\iow_term:x { \tl_range:nnn { abcd{-e{}}fg } { 2 } { 5 } }
\iow_term:x { \tl_range:nnn { abcd{-e{}}fg } { 2 } { -3 } }
\iow_term:x { \tl_range:nnn { abcd{-e{}}fg } { -6 } { 5 } }
\iow_term:x { \tl_range:nnn { abcd{-e{}}fg } { -6 } { -3 } }
\end{verbatim}

are all equivalent and will print \texttt{bcd} \texttt{ \{e{}\}} on the terminal (note the space in the middle). To the contrary,

\begin{verbatim}
\tl_range:nnn { abcd{-e{}}f } { 2 } { 4 }
\end{verbatim}

will discard the space after ‘d’.

If we want to get the items from, say, the third to the last in a token list \texttt{<tl>}, the call is \texttt{\tl_range:nnn { \langle tl\rangle } { 3 } { -1 }}. Similarly, for discarding the last item, we can do \texttt{\tl_range:nnn { \langle tl\rangle } { 1 } { -2 }}.

For better performance, see \texttt{\tl\_range\_braced:nnn} and \texttt{\tl\_range\_unbraced:nnn}.

\textbf{\TeX}hackers note: The result is returned within the \texttt{\unexpanded} primitive \texttt{(\exp_not:n)}, which means that the \texttt{\langle item\rangle} does not expand further when appearing in an \texttt{x}-type argument expansion.
15.5.4 Sorting token lists

\tl_sort:Nn \tl_sort:cn
\tl_gsort:Nn \tl_gsort:cn

Sorts the items in the \tl var according to the \comparison code, and assigns the result to \tl var. The details of sorting comparison are described in Section 6.1.

\tl_sort:nN *

Sorts the items in the \token list, using the \conditional to compare items, and leaves the result in the input stream. The \conditional should have signature \mnnTF, and return \texttt{true} if the two items being compared should be left in the same order, and \texttt{false} if the items should be swapped. The details of sorting comparison are described in Section 6.1.

\TeXhackers note: The result is returned within \exp_not:n, which means that the token list does not expand further when appearing in an x-type or e-type argument expansion.

15.6 Manipulating tokens in token lists

15.6.1 Replacing tokens

Within token lists, replacement takes place at the top level: there is no recursion into brace groups (more precisely, within a group defined by a category code 1/2 pair).

\tl_replace_once:Nnn \tl_replace_once:cn
\tl_greplace_once:Nnn \tl_greplace_once:cn

Replaces the first (leftmost) occurrence of \old tokens in the \tl var with \new tokens. \old tokens cannot contain \{, \} or \# (more precisely, explicit character tokens with category code 1 (begin-group) or 2 (end-group), and tokens with category code 6).

\tl_replace_all:Nnn \tl_replace_all:cn
\tl_greplace_all:Nnn \tl_greplace_all:cn

Replaces all occurrences of \old tokens in the \tl var with \new tokens. \old tokens cannot contain \{, \} or \# (more precisely, explicit character tokens with category code 1 (begin-group) or 2 (end-group), and tokens with category code 6). As this function operates from left to right, the pattern \old tokens may remain after the replacement (see \tl_remove_all:Nn for an example).

\tl_remove_once:Nn \tl_remove_once:cn
\tl_gremove_once:Nn \tl_gremove_once:cn

Removes the first (leftmost) occurrence of \tokens from the \tl var. \tokens cannot contain \{, \} or \# (more precisely, explicit character tokens with category code 1 (begin-group) or 2 (end-group), and tokens with category code 6).
\tl_remove_all:Nn \tl_remove_all:cn \tl_gremove_all:Nn \tl_gremove_all:cn

Updated: 2011-08-11

15.6.2 Reassigning category codes

These functions allow the rescanning of tokens: re-apply \TeX{}'s tokenization process to apply category codes different from those in force when the tokens were absorbed. Whilst this functionality is supported, it is often preferable to find alternative approaches to achieving outcomes rather than rescanning tokens (for example construction of token lists token-by-token with intervening category code changes or using \texttt{\char_generate:nn}).

\tl_set_rescan:Nnn \tl_set_rescan:nn \tl_gset_rescan:Nnn \tl_gset_rescan:nn

Sets \texttt{\tl var} to contain \texttt{\tokens}, applying the category code régime specified in the \texttt{\setup} before carrying out the assignment. (Category codes applied to tokens not explicitly covered by the \texttt{\setup} are those in force at the point of use of \texttt{\tl_set_rescan:Nnn}.) This allows the \texttt{\tl var} to contain material with category codes other than those that apply when \texttt{\tokens} are absorbed. The \texttt{\setup} is run within a group and may contain any valid input, although only changes in category codes, such as uses of \texttt{\cctab_select:N}, are relevant. See also \texttt{\tl_rescan:nn}.

\TeX{}hackers note: The \texttt{\tokens} are first turned into a string (using \texttt{\tl_to_str:n}). If the string contains one or more characters with character code \texttt{\newlinechar} (set equal to \texttt{\endlinechar} unless that is equal to 32, before the user \texttt{\setup}), then it is split into lines at these characters, then read as if reading multiple lines from a file, ignoring spaces (catcode 10) at the beginning and spaces and tabs (character code 32 or 9) at the end of every line. Otherwise, spaces (and tabs) are retained at both ends of the single-line string, as if it appeared in the middle of a line read from a file.
\tl_rescan:nn \tl_rescan:nn \{\langle setup\rangle\} \{\langle tokens\rangle\}

Rescans \langle tokens\rangle applying the category code régime specified in the \langle setup\rangle, and leaves the resulting tokens in the input stream. (Category codes applied to tokens not explicitly covered by the \langle setup\rangle are those in force at the point of use of \tl_rescan:nn.) The \langle setup\rangle is run within a group and may contain any valid input, although only changes in category codes, such as uses of \cctab_select:N, are relevant. See also \tl_set_:rescan:Nnn, which is more robust than using \tl_set:Nn in the \langle tokens\rangle argument of \tl_rescan:nn.

\textbf{\textsf{\texttt{\textbackslash{\texttt{rescan}}}hackers note:}} The \langle tokens\rangle are first turned into a string (using \tl_to_str:n). If the string contains one or more characters with character code \newlinechar (set equal to \endlinechar unless that is equal to 32, before the user \langle setup\rangle), then it is split into lines at these characters, then read as if reading multiple lines from a file, ignoring spaces (catcode 10) at the beginning and spaces and tabs (character code 32 or 9) at the end of every line. Otherwise, spaces (and tabs) are retained at both ends of the single-line string, as if it appeared in the middle of a line read from a file.

Contrarily to the \scantokens primitive, \tl_rescan:nn tokenizes the whole string in the same category code regime rather than one token at a time, so that directives such as \verb that rely on changing category codes will not function properly.

### 15.7 Constant token lists

\c_empty_tl

Constant that is always empty.

\c_novalue_tl

A marker for the absence of an argument. This constant \texttt{tl} can safely be typeset (cf. \texttt{\textbackslash{q_\text{-\texttt{nil}}}}), with the result being \texttt{-NoValue-}. It is important to note that \c_novalue_tl is constructed such that it will not match the simple text input \texttt{-NoValue-}, \textit{i.e.} that

\[ \tl_if_eq:NnTF \c_novalue_tl { -NoValue- } \]

is logically \texttt{false}. The \c_novalue_tl marker is intended for use in creating document-level interfaces, where it serves as an indicator that an (optional) argument was omitted. In particular, it is distinct from a simple empty \texttt{tl}.

\c_space_tl

An explicit space character contained in a token list (compare this with \c_space_token). For use where an explicit space is required.

### 15.8 Scratch token lists

\l_tmpa_tl \l_tmpb_tl

Scratch token lists for local assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any \texttt{\LaTeX3} defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.
Scratch token lists for global assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any \LaTeX3-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.
Chapter 16

The \texttt{l3str} package: Strings

\LaTeX{} associates each character with a category code: as such, there is no concept of a “string” as commonly understood in many other programming languages. However, there are places where we wish to manipulate token lists while in some sense “ignoring” category codes: this is done by treating token lists as strings in a \LaTeX{} sense.

A \TeX{} string (and thus an \texttt{expl3} string) is a series of characters which have category code 12 (“other”) with the exception of space characters which have category code 10 (“space”). Thus at a technical level, a \TeX{} string is a token list with the appropriate category codes. In this documentation, these are simply referred to as strings.

String variables are simply specialised token lists, but by convention should be named with the suffix \texttt{...str}. Such variables should contain characters with category code 12 (other), except spaces, which have category code 10 (blank space). All the functions in this module which accept a token list argument first convert it to a string using \texttt{\tl_to_\string:n} for internal processing, and do not treat a token list or the corresponding string representation differently.

As a string is a subset of the more general token list, it is sometimes unclear when one should be used over the other. Use a string variable for data that isn’t primarily intended for typesetting and for which a level of protection from unwanted expansion is suitable. This data type simplifies comparison of variables since there are no concerns about expansion of their contents.

The functions \texttt{\cs_to_str:N, \tl_to_str:n, \tl_to_str:N} and \texttt{\token_to_str:N} (and variants) generate strings from the appropriate input: these are documented in \texttt{l3basics}, \texttt{l3tl} and \texttt{l3token}, respectively.

Most expandable functions in this module come in three flavours:

- \texttt{\str\_\dots:N}, which expect a token list or string variable as their argument;
- \texttt{\str\_\dots:n}, taking any token list (or string) as an argument;
- \texttt{\str\_\dots\_ignore_spaces:n}, which ignores any space encountered during the operation: these functions are typically faster than those which take care of escaping spaces appropriately.
16.1 Creating and initialising string variables

\str_new:N \langle str var \rangle

Creates a new \langle str var \rangle or raises an error if the name is already taken. The declaration is global. The \langle str var \rangle is initially empty.

\str_new:N \langle str var \rangle \{\langle token list \rangle\}

Creates a new constant \langle str var \rangle or raises an error if the name is already taken. The value of the \langle str var \rangle is set globally to the \langle token list \rangle, converted to a string.

\str_clear:N \langle str var \rangle

Clears the content of the \langle str var \rangle.

\str_clear:N \langle str var \rangle
\str_clear:c
\str_gclear:N
\str_gclear:c

Ensures that the \langle str var \rangle exists globally by applying \str_new:N if necessary, then applies \str_(g)clear:N to leave the \langle str var \rangle empty.

\str_set_eq:NN \langle str var 1 \rangle \langle str var 2 \rangle

Sets the content of \langle str var 1 \rangle equal to that of \langle str var 2 \rangle.

\str_set_eq:NN \langle str var 1 \rangle \langle str var 2 \rangle \langle str var 3 \rangle

Concatenates the content of \langle str var 2 \rangle and \langle str var 3 \rangle together and saves the result in \langle str var 1 \rangle. The \langle str var 2 \rangle is placed at the left side of the new string variable. The \langle str var 2 \rangle and \langle str var 3 \rangle must indeed be strings, as this function does not convert their contents to a string.

\str_if_exist:p:N \langle str var \rangle
\str_if_exist:p:c \langle str var \rangle
\str_if_exist:NTF \langle str var \rangle \{\langle true code \rangle\} \{\langle false code \rangle\}

Tests whether the \langle str var \rangle is currently defined. This does not check that the \langle str var \rangle really is a string.
16.2 Adding data to string variables

```latex
\str_set:Nn \str_set:N \langle \str var \rangle \{ \langle \text{token list} \rangle \}
```

Converts the \textit{token list} to a \textit{string}, and stores the result in \textit{str var}.

```latex
\newcommand{\str_set}{\str_set:Nn} \str_set:N \langle \str var \rangle \{ \langle \text{token list} \rangle \}
\newcommand{\str_gset}{\str_gset:Nn} \str_gset:N \langle \str var \rangle \{ \langle \text{token list} \rangle \}
```

New: 2015-09-18
Updated: 2018-07-28

Converts the \textit{token list} to a \textit{string}, and stores the result in \textit{str var}.

```latex
\str_set:Nn \newcommand{\str_set}{\str_set:Nn} \str_set:N \langle \str var \rangle \{ \langle \text{token list} \rangle \}
\str_set:Nn \str_gset:N \langle \str var \rangle \{ \langle \text{token list} \rangle \}
```

New: 2015-09-18
Updated: 2018-07-28

Converts the \textit{token list} to a \textit{string}, and prepends the result to \textit{str var}. The current contents of the \textit{str var} are not automatically converted to a string.

```latex
\str_set_left:Nn \str_set_left:N \langle \str var \rangle \{ \langle \text{token list} \rangle \}
\str_set_left:Nn \str_gset_left:N \langle \str var \rangle \{ \langle \text{token list} \rangle \}
```

New: 2015-09-18
Updated: 2018-07-28

Converts the \textit{token list} to a \textit{string}, and appends the result to \textit{str var}. The current contents of the \textit{str var} are not automatically converted to a string.

```latex
\str_set_right:Nn \str_set_right:N \langle \str var \rangle \{ \langle \text{token list} \rangle \}
\str_set_right:Nn \str_gset_right:N \langle \str var \rangle \{ \langle \text{token list} \rangle \}
```

New: 2015-09-18
Updated: 2018-07-28

16.3 String conditionals

```latex
\str_if_empty_p:N \str_if_empty_p:c \str_if_empty:N \str_if_empty:p \langle \str var \rangle \{ \langle \text{true code} \rangle \} \{ \langle \text{false code} \rangle \}
```

Tests if the \textit{string variable} is entirely empty (i.e. contains no characters at all).

```latex
\newcommand{\str_if_empty}{\str_if_empty_p:N} \str_if_empty_p:N \langle \str var \rangle \{ \langle \text{true code} \rangle \} \{ \langle \text{false code} \rangle \}
\newcommand{\str_if_empty}{\str_if_empty_p:c} \str_if_empty_p:c \langle \str var \rangle \{ \langle \text{true code} \rangle \} \{ \langle \text{false code} \rangle \}
```

New: 2015-09-18

```latex
\str_if_eq_p:NN \str_if_eq:p:NN \str_if_eq:NNTF \str_if_eq:N \langle \str var \rangle \{ \langle \str var \rangle \} \{ \langle \text{true code} \rangle \} \{ \langle \text{false code} \rangle \}
\str_if_eq:p:NN \str_if_eq:N \langle \str var \rangle \{ \langle \str var \rangle \} \{ \langle \text{true code} \rangle \} \{ \langle \text{false code} \rangle \}
```

Compares the content of two \textit{str variables} and is logically \textit{true} if the two contain the same characters in the same order. See \texttt{tl_if_eq:NNTF} to compare tokens (including their category codes) rather than characters.
\str_if_eq_p:nn * \str_if_eq_p:{(Vn|on|no|nV|Vn|nv|ee)} * \str_if_eq:nnTF \str_if_eq:{(Vn|on|no|nV|Vn|nv|ee)}TF *

Updated: 2018-06-18

Compares the two \langle token lists \rangle on a character by character basis (namely after converting them to strings), and is true if the two \langle strings \rangle contain the same characters in the same order. Thus for example

\str_if_eq_p:no \{ abc \} \{ \tl_to_str:n \{ abc \} \}

is logically true. See \tl_if_eq:nnTF to compare tokens (including their category codes) rather than characters.

\str_if_in:NnTF \str_if_in:cnTF

New: 2017-10-08

\str_if_in:NnTF \str_if_in:cnTF

Rev: 2017-10-08

Converts the \langle token list \rangle to a \langle string \rangle and tests if that \langle string \rangle is found in the content of the \langle str var \rangle.

\str_if_in:nnTF

Rev: 2017-10-08

Converts both \langle token lists \rangle to \langle strings \rangle and tests whether \langle string2 \rangle is found inside \langle string1 \rangle.

\str_case:nn * \str_case:{(Vn|on|no|nV|Vn|nv)} * \str_case:nnTF \str_case:{(Vn|on|no|nV|Vn|nv|ee)}TF *

New: 2013-07-24

Updated: 2015-02-28

\str_case:nnTF \str_case:{(test string)}

\{ \langle string case1 \rangle \{ \langle code case1 \rangle \} \langle string case2 \rangle \{ \langle code case2 \rangle \} \ldots \langle string case_n \rangle \{ \langle code case_n \rangle \} \} \{ \langle true code \rangle \} \{ \langle false code \rangle \}

Compares the \langle test string \rangle in turn with each of the \langle string cases \rangle (all token lists are converted to strings). If the two are equal (as described for \str_if_eq:nnTF) then the associated \langle code \rangle is left in the input stream and other cases are discarded. If any of the cases are matched, the \langle true code \rangle is also inserted into the input stream (after the code for the appropriate case), while if none match then the \langle false code \rangle is inserted. The function \str_case:nn, which does nothing if there is no match, is also available.
\str_case_e:nn \str_case_e:nnTF \{ ⟨test string⟩ \} { ⟨string case 1⟩ } { ⟨code case 1⟩ } { ⟨string case 2⟩ } { ⟨code case 2⟩ } \ldots { ⟨string case n⟩ } { ⟨code case n⟩ } } { ⟨true code⟩ } { ⟨false code⟩ }

Compares the full expansion of the (test string) in turn with the full expansion of the (string cases) (all token lists are converted to strings). If the two full expansions are equal (as described for \str_if_eq:nnTF) then the associated (code) is left in the input stream and other cases are discarded. If any of the cases are matched, the (true code) is also inserted into the input stream (after the code for the appropriate case), while if none match then the (false code) is inserted. The function \str_case_e:nn, which does nothing if there is no match, is also available. The (test string) is expanded in each comparison, and must always yield the same result: for example, random numbers must not be used within this string.

\str_compare_p:nNn \str_compare:nNnTF \{ ⟨token list 1⟩ \} { ⟨relation⟩ } { ⟨token list 2⟩ } { ⟨true code⟩ } { ⟨false code⟩ }

Compares the two (token lists) on a character by character basis (namely after converting them to strings) in a lexicographic order according to the character codes of the characters. The (relation) can be <, =, or > and the test is true under the following conditions:

- for <, if the first string is earlier than the second in lexicographic order;
- for =, if the two strings have exactly the same characters;
- for >, if the first string is later than the second in lexicographic order.

Thus for example the following is logically true:

\str_compare_p:nNn \{ ab \} < \{ abc \}

\TeXhacker note: This is a wrapper around the \TeX primitive \pdf{strcmp}. It is meant for programming and not for sorting textual contents, as it simply considers character codes and not more elaborate considerations of grapheme clusters, locale, etc.

16.4 Mapping over strings

All mappings are done at the current group level, i.e. any local assignments made by the \langle function⟩ or \langle code⟩ discussed below remain in effect after the loop.

\str_map_function:nN \str_map_function:NN \str_map_function:cN

Converts the \langle token list⟩ to a \langle string⟩ then applies \langle function⟩ to every \langle character⟩ in the \langle string⟩ including spaces.

124
\texttt{\textbackslash str\_map\_inline:nn} \{\textit{token list}\} \{\textit{inline function}\} \texttt{\textbackslash str\_map\_inline:Nn} \{\textit{str var}\} \{\textit{inline function}\}

Converts the \textit{token list} to a \textit{string} then applies the \textit{inline function} to every \textit{character} in the \textit{str var} including spaces. The \textit{inline function} should consist of code which receives the \textit{character} as \#1.

\texttt{\textbackslash str\_map\_tokens:nn} \{\textit{token list}\} \{\textit{code}\} \texttt{\textbackslash str\_map\_tokens:Nn} \{\textit{str var}\} \{\textit{code}\}

Converts the \textit{token list} to a \textit{string} then applies \textit{code} to every \textit{character} in the \textit{string} including spaces. The \textit{code} receives each character as a trailing brace group. This is equivalent to \texttt{\textbackslash str\_map\_function:nN} if the \textit{code} consists of a single function.

\texttt{\textbackslash str\_map\_variable:nNn} \{\textit{token list}\} \{\textit{variable}\} \{\textit{code}\} \texttt{\textbackslash str\_map\_variable:NNn} \{\textit{str var}\} \{\textit{variable}\} \{\textit{code}\}

Converts the \textit{token list} to a \textit{string} then stores each \textit{character} in the \textit{string} (including spaces) in turn in the \textit{string} or \textit{token list}\ \textit{variable} and applies the \textit{code}. The \textit{code} will usually make use of the \textit{variable}, but this is not enforced. The assignments to the \textit{variable} are local. Its value after the loop is the last \textit{character} in the \textit{string}, or its original value if the \textit{string} is empty. See also \texttt{\textbackslash str\_map\_inline:Nn}.

\texttt{\textbackslash str\_map\_break:} \star

Used to terminate a \texttt{\textbackslash str\_map\_...} function before all characters in the \textit{string} have been processed. This normally takes place within a conditional statement, for example

\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{\textbackslash str\_map\_inline:Nn \_my\_str }
\{ \texttt{\str\_if\_eq:nnT \{ \#1 \} \{ \textit{bingo} \} \{ \textbackslash str\_map\_break: \} }
% Do something useful
\}
\end{verbatim}

See also \texttt{\textbackslash str\_map\_break:n}. Use outside of a \texttt{\textbackslash str\_map\_...} scenario leads to low level \LaTeX{} errors.

\textbf{\TeX{}hackers note:} When the mapping is broken, additional tokens may be inserted before continuing with the code that follows the loop. This depends on the design of the mapping function.
Used to terminate a \str_map\ldots function before all characters in the \langle string \rangle have been processed, inserting the \langle code \rangle after the mapping has ended. This normally takes place within a conditional statement, for example

\begin{verbatim}
\str_map_inline:Nn \l_my_str
{\str_if_eq:nnT { #1 } { bingo }
{ \str_map_break:n { <code> } }
% Do something useful
}
\end{verbatim}

Use outside of a \str_map\ldots scenario leads to low level \TeX errors.

\TeX hackers note: When the mapping is broken, additional tokens may be inserted before the \langle code \rangle is inserted into the input stream. This depends on the design of the mapping function.

### 16.5 Working with the content of strings

\begin{verbatim}
\str_use:N \langle str var \rangle
\end{verbatim}

Recovers the content of a \langle str var \rangle and places it directly in the input stream. An error is raised if the variable does not exist or if it is invalid. Note that it is possible to use a \langle str \rangle directly without an accessor function.

\begin{verbatim}
\str_count:n \langle token list \rangle
\str_count:N
\str_count:c
\str_count:n
\str_count_ignore_spaces:n
\str_count_spaces:n
\str_count_spaces:N
\str_count_spaces:c
\str_count_spaces:n
\end{verbatim}

Leaves in the input stream the number of characters in the string representation of \langle token list \rangle, as an integer denotation. The functions differ in their treatment of spaces. In the case of \str_count:N and \str_count:n, all characters including spaces are counted. The \str_count_ignore_spaces:n function leaves the number of non-space characters in the input stream.

\begin{verbatim}
\str_count_spaces:n \langle token list \rangle
\end{verbatim}

Leaves in the input stream the number of space characters in the string representation of \langle token list \rangle, as an integer denotation. Of course, this function has no \_ignore_spaces variant.
\texttt{\textbackslash str\_head:N} \text{*} \texttt{\textbackslash str\_head:n \{\langle token list\rangle\}}
\texttt{\textbackslash str\_head:c} \text{*}
\texttt{\textbackslash str\_head:n}
\texttt{\textbackslash str\_head\_ignore\_spaces:n} \text{*}

Rev: 2015-09-18

Converts the \texttt{\langle token list\rangle} into a \texttt{\langle string\rangle}. The first character in the \texttt{\langle string\rangle} is then left in the input stream, with category code “other”. The functions differ if the first character is a space: \texttt{\textbackslash str\_head:N} and \texttt{\textbackslash str\_head:n} return a space token with category code 10 (blank space), while the \texttt{\textbackslash str\_head\_ignore\_spaces:n} function ignores this space character and leaves the first non-space character in the input stream. If the \texttt{\langle string\rangle} is empty (or only contains spaces in the case of the \_ignore\_spaces function), then nothing is left on the input stream.

\texttt{\textbackslash str\_tail:N} \text{*} \texttt{\textbackslash str\_tail:n \{\langle token list\rangle\}}
\texttt{\textbackslash str\_tail:c} \text{*}
\texttt{\textbackslash str\_tail:n}
\texttt{\textbackslash str\_tail\_ignore\_spaces:n} \text{*}

Rev: 2015-09-18

Converts the \texttt{\langle token list\rangle} to a \texttt{\langle string\rangle}, removes the first character, and leaves the remaining characters (if any) in the input stream, with category codes 12 and 10 (for spaces). The functions differ in the case where the first character is a space: \texttt{\textbackslash str\_tail:N} and \texttt{\textbackslash str\_tail:n} only trim that space, while \texttt{\textbackslash str\_tail\_ignore\_spaces:n} removes the first non-space character and any space before it. If the \texttt{\langle token list\rangle} is empty (or blank in the case of the \_ignore\_spaces variant), then nothing is left on the input stream.

\texttt{\textbackslash str\_item:Nn} \text{*} \texttt{\textbackslash str\_item:nn \{\langle token list\rangle\} \{\langle integer expression\rangle\}}
\texttt{\textbackslash str\_item:nn} \text{*}
\texttt{\textbackslash str\_item\_ignore\_spaces:nn} \text{*}

Rev: 2015-09-18

Converts the \texttt{\langle token list\rangle} to a \texttt{\langle string\rangle}, and leaves in the input stream the character in position \texttt{\langle integer expression\rangle} of the \texttt{\langle string\rangle}, starting at 1 for the first (left-most) character. In the case of \texttt{\textbackslash str\_item:Nn} and \texttt{\textbackslash str\_item:nn}, all characters including spaces are taken into account. The \texttt{\textbackslash str\_item\_ignore\_spaces:nn} function skips spaces when counting characters. If the \texttt{\langle integer expression\rangle} is negative, characters are counted from the end of the \texttt{\langle string\rangle}. Hence, \texttt{-1} is the right-most character, \textit{etc.}
\str_range:Nnn \str_range:nnn \token list \start index \end index
\str_range:nnn *
\str_range:nnn *
\str_range:nnn *
\str_range_ignore_spaces:nnn *

Converting the \token list to a \string, and leaves in the input stream the characters from the \start index to the \end index inclusive. Spaces are preserved and counted as items (contrast this with \tl_range:nnn where spaces are not counted as items and are possibly discarded from the output).

Here \start index and \end index should be integer denotations. For describing in detail the functions’ behavior, let \m and \n be the start and end index respectively. If either is 0, the result is empty. A positive index means ‘start counting from the left end’, a negative index means ‘start counting from the right end’. Let \l be the count of the token list.

The actual start point is determined as \( M = m \) if \( m > 0 \) and as \( M = l + m + 1 \) if \( m < 0 \). Similarly the actual end point is \( N = n \) if \( n > 0 \) and \( N = l + n + 1 \) if \( n < 0 \). If \( M > N \), the result is empty. Otherwise it consists of all items from position \( M \) to position \( N \) inclusive; for the purpose of this rule, we can imagine that the token list extends at infinity on either side, with void items at positions \( s \) for \( s \leq 0 \) or \( s > l \). For instance,

\begin{verbatim}
\iow_term:x { \str_range:nnn { abcdef } { 2 } { 5 } }
\iow_term:x { \str_range:nnn { abcd } { -4 } { -1 } }
\iow_term:x { \str_range:nnn { abcd } { -2 } { -1 } }
\iow_term:x { \str_range:nnn { abcd } { 0 } { -1 } }
\end{verbatim}

prints bcde, cdef, ef, and an empty line to the terminal. The \start index must always be smaller than or equal to the \end index: if this is not the case then no output is generated. Thus

\begin{verbatim}
\iow_term:x { \str_range:nnn { abcdef } { 5 } { 2 } }
\iow_term:x { \str_range:nnn { abcd } { -1 } { -4 } }
\end{verbatim}

both yield empty strings.

The behavior of \str_range_ignore_spaces:nnn is similar, but spaces are removed before starting the job. The input

\begin{verbatim}
\iow_term:x { \str_range:nnn { abcdef } { 2 } { 5 } }
\iow_term:x { \str_range:nnn { abcd } { 2 } { -3 } }
\iow_term:x { \str_range:nnn { abcd } { -6 } { 5 } }
\iow_term:x { \str_range:nnn { abcd } { -6 } { -3 } }
\iow_term:x { \str_range:nnn { abc-efg } { 2 } { 5 } }
\iow_term:x { \str_range:nnn { abc-ef } { 2 } { -3 } }
\iow_term:x { \str_range:nnn { abc-ef } { -6 } { 5 } }
\iow_term:x { \str_range:nnn { abc-ef } { -6 } { -3 } }
\iow_term:x { \str_range_ignore_spaces:nnn { abcdef } { 2 } { 5 } }
\iow_term:x { \str_range_ignore_spaces:nnn { abcd } { 2 } { -3 } }
\iow_term:x { \str_range_ignore_spaces:nnn { abcd } { -6 } { 5 } }
\iow_term:x { \str_range_ignore_spaces:nnn { abcd } { -6 } { -3 } }
\end{verbatim}

128
will print four instances of bcde, four instances of bc e and eight instances of bcde.

16.6 Modifying string variables

\texttt{str\_replace\_once:Nn} \texttt{(str var) \{old\} \{new\}}

Converts the \texttt{\{old\}} and \texttt{\{new\}} token lists to strings, then replaces the first (leftmost) occurrence of \texttt{\{old string\}} in the \texttt{str var} with \texttt{\{new string\}}.

\texttt{str\_replace\_all:Nn} \texttt{(str var) \{old\} \{new\}}

Converts the \texttt{\{old\}} and \texttt{\{new\}} token lists to strings, then replaces all occurrences of \texttt{\{old string\}} in the \texttt{str var} with \texttt{\{new string\}}. As this function operates from left to right, the pattern \texttt{\{old string\}} may remain after the replacement (see \texttt{str\_remove\_all:Nn} for an example).

\texttt{str\_remove\_once:Nn} \texttt{(str var) \{token list\}}

Converts the \texttt{\{token list\}} to a \texttt{\{string\}} then removes the first (leftmost) occurrence of \texttt{\{string\}} from the \texttt{str var}.

\texttt{str\_remove\_all:Nn} \texttt{(str var) \{token list\}}

Converts the \texttt{\{token list\}} to a \texttt{\{string\}} then removes all occurrences of \texttt{\{string\}} from the \texttt{\{str var\}}. As this function operates from left to right, the pattern \texttt{\{string\}} may remain after the removal, for instance,

\texttt{\str_set:Nn \l_tmpa_str {abbccd} \str_remove\_all:Nn \l_tmpa_str \{bc\}}

results in \texttt{\l_tmpa_str} containing abcd.
16.7 String manipulation

\str_lowercase:n \{tokens\}
\str_uppercase:n \{tokens\}

Converts the input \{tokens\} to their string representation, as described for \tl_to_str:n, and then to the lower or upper case representation using a one-to-one mapping as described by the Unicode Consortium file UnicodeData.txt.

These functions are intended for case changing programmatic data in places where upper/lower case distinctions are meaningful. One example would be automatically generating a function name from user input where some case changing is needed. In this situation the input is programmatic, not textual, case does have meaning and a language-independent one-to-one mapping is appropriate. For example

\cs_new_protected:Npn \myfunc:nn #1#2
{\cs_set_protected:cpn
{user\str_uppercase:f \{\tl_head:n \{#1\}\}
\str_lowercase:f \{\tl_tail:n \{#1\}\}}
{#2}}

would be used to generate a function with an auto-generated name consisting of the upper case equivalent of the supplied name followed by the lower case equivalent of the rest of the input.

These functions should not be used for

- Caseless comparisons: use \str_foldcase:n for this situation (case folding is distinct from lower casing).
- Case changing text for typesetting: see the \text_lowercase:n(n), \text_uppercase:n(n) and \text_titlecase:n(n) functions which correctly deal with context-dependence and other factors appropriate to text case changing.

\TeXhackers\ note: As with all expl3 functions, the input supported by \str_foldcase:n is engine-native characters which are or interoperate with UTF-8. As such, when used with pdf\TeX\ only the Latin alphabet characters A–Z are case-folded (i.e. the ASCII range which coincides with UTF-8). Full UTF-8 support is available with both \XeTeX\ and \LuaTeX.
\str_foldcase:n \langle tokens \rangle
Converts the input \langle tokens \rangle to their string representation, as described for \tl_to_str:n, and then folds the case of the resulting \langle string \rangle to remove case information. The result of this process is left in the input stream.

String folding is a process used for material such as identifiers rather than for “text”. The folding provided by \str_foldcase:n follows the mappings provided by the Unicode Consortium, who state:

Case folding is primarily used for caseless comparison of text, such as identifiers in a computer program, rather than actual text transformation. Case folding in Unicode is based on the lowercase mapping, but includes additional changes to the source text to help make it language-insensitive and consistent. As a result, case-folded text should be used solely for internal processing and generally should not be stored or displayed to the end user.

The folding approach implemented by \str_foldcase:n follows the “full” scheme defined by the Unicode Consortium (e.g. SSfolds to SS). As case-folding is a language-insensitive process, there is no special treatment of Turkic input (i.e. İ always folds to i and not to ı).

Texhackers note: As with all expl3 functions, the input supported by \str_foldcase:n is engine-native characters which are or interoperate with utf-8. As such, when used with pdf\TeX only the Latin alphabet characters A–Z are case-folded (i.e. the ASCII range which coincides with utf-8). Full utf-8 support is available with both X\TeX and Lua\TeX, subject only to the fact that X\TeX in particular has issues with characters of code above hexadecimal 0xFFFF when interacting with \tl_to_str:n.

16.8 Viewing strings

\str_show:N \langle str var \rangle
Displays the content of the \langle str var \rangle on the terminal.

\str_log:N \langle str var \rangle
Writes the content of the \langle str var \rangle in the log file.
16.9 Constant strings

`\c_@_ampersand_str`  `\c_@_atsign_str`
`\c_@_backslash_str`  `\c_@_left_brace_str`
`\c_@_right_brace_str`  `\c_@_circumflex_str`
`\c_@_colon_str`  `\c_@_dollar_str`
`\c_@_hash_str`  `\c_@_percent_str`
`\c_@_tilde_str`  `\c_@_underscore_str`
`\c_@_zero_str`

New: 2015-09-19
Updated: 2020-12-22

16.10 Scratch strings

`\l_@tmpa_str`  `\l_@tmpb_str`

Scratch strings for local assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any \LaTeX3-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.

`\g_@tmpa_str`  `\g_@tmpb_str`

Scratch strings for global assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any \LaTeX3-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.
Chapter 17

The \texttt{l3str-convert} package: string encoding conversions

17.1 Encoding and escaping schemes

Traditionally, string encodings only specify how strings of characters should be stored as bytes. However, the resulting lists of bytes are often to be used in contexts where only a restricted subset of bytes are permitted (e.g., PDF string objects, URLs). Hence, storing a string of characters is done in two steps.

- The code points (“character codes”) are expressed as bytes following a given “encoding”. This can be UTF-16, ISO 8859-1, etc. See Table 1 for a list of supported encodings.\footnote{Encodings and escapings will be added as they are requested.}

- Bytes are translated to \TeX tokens through a given “escaping”. Those are defined for the most part by the PDF file format. See Table 2 for a list of escaping methods supported.\footnote{Encodings and escapings will be added as they are requested.}
Table 1: Supported encodings. Non-alphanumeric characters are ignored, and capital letters are lower-cased before searching for the encoding in this list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Encoding</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>utf8</td>
<td>UTF-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf16</td>
<td>UTF-16, with byte-order mark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf16be</td>
<td>UTF-16, big-endian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf16le</td>
<td>UTF-16, little-endian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf32</td>
<td>UTF-32, with byte-order mark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf32be</td>
<td>UTF-32, big-endian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utf32le</td>
<td>UTF-32, little-endian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso88591, latin1</td>
<td>ISO 8859-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso88592, latin2</td>
<td>ISO 8859-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso88593, latin3</td>
<td>ISO 8859-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso88594, latin4</td>
<td>ISO 8859-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso88595</td>
<td>ISO 8859-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso88596</td>
<td>ISO 8859-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso88597</td>
<td>ISO 8859-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso88598</td>
<td>ISO 8859-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso88599, latin5</td>
<td>ISO 8859-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso885910, latin6</td>
<td>ISO 8859-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso885911</td>
<td>ISO 8859-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso885913, latin7</td>
<td>ISO 8859-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso885914, latin8</td>
<td>ISO 8859-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso885915, latin9</td>
<td>ISO 8859-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iso885916, latin10</td>
<td>ISO 8859-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clist</td>
<td>Comma-list of integers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>empty</td>
<td>Native (Unicode) string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>default</td>
<td>Like utf8 with 8-bit engines, and like native with unicode-engines</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2: Supported escapings. Non-alphanumeric characters are ignored, and capital letters are lower-cased before searching for the escaping in this list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Escaping</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bytes, or empty</td>
<td>Arbitrary bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hex, hexadec</td>
<td>Byte = two hexadecimal digits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>See \pdfeventname</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>string</td>
<td>See \pdfeventstring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>url</td>
<td>Encoding used in URLs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
17.2 Conversion functions

\str_set_convert:Nnnn \str_gset_convert:Nnnn

This function converts the ⟨string⟩ from the encoding given by ⟨name 1⟩ to the encoding given by ⟨name 2⟩, and stores the result in the ⟨str var⟩. Each ⟨name⟩ can have the form ⟨encoding⟩ or ⟨encoding⟩/⟨escaping⟩, where the possible values of ⟨encoding⟩ and ⟨escaping⟩ are given in Tables 1 and 2, respectively. The default escaping is to input and output bytes directly. The special case of an empty ⟨name⟩ indicates the use of “native” strings, 8-bit for pdfTeX, and Unicode strings for the other two engines.

For example,

\str_set_convert:Nnnn \l_foo_str { Hello! } { } { utf16/hex }

results in the variable \l_foo_str holding the string FEFF00480065006C006F0021. This is obtained by converting each character in the (native) string Hello! to the UTF-16 encoding, and expressing each byte as a pair of hexadecimal digits. Note the presence of a (big-endian) byte order mark "FEFF, which can be avoided by specifying the encoding utf16be/hex.

An error is raised if the ⟨string⟩ is not valid according to the ⟨name 1⟩ encoding, or if it cannot be reencoded in the ⟨name 2⟩ encoding. For instance, if a character does not exist in the ⟨encoding 2⟩. Erroneous input is replaced by the Unicode replacement character "\FFFD, and characters which cannot be reencoded are replaced by either the replacement character "\FFFD if it exists in the ⟨encoding 2⟩, or an encoding-specific replacement character, or the question mark character.

\str_set_convert:NnnnTF \str_gset_convert:NnnnTF

As \str_set_convert:Nnnn, converts the ⟨string⟩ from the encoding given by ⟨name 1⟩ to the encoding given by ⟨name 2⟩, and assigns the result to ⟨str var⟩. Contrarily to \str_set_convert:Nnnn, the conditional variant does not raise errors in case the ⟨string⟩ is not valid according to the ⟨name 1⟩ encoding, or cannot be expressed in the ⟨name 2⟩ encoding. Instead, the ⟨false code⟩ is performed.

17.3 Conversion by expansion (for PDF contexts)

A small number of expandable functions are provided for use in PDF string/name contexts. These assume UTF-8 and no escaping in the input.

\str_convert_pdfname:n *

As \str_convert_pdfname:n, converts the ⟨string⟩ on a byte-by-byte basis with non-ASCII codepoints escaped using hashes.

17.4 Possibilities, and things to do

Encoding/escaping-related tasks.
• In Xe\TeX/Lua\TeX, would it be better to use the \ldots approach to build a string from a given list of character codes? Namely, within a group, assign 0–9a–f and all characters we want to category “other”, then assign ^ the category superscript, and use \texttt{\textbackslash scanthekins}.

• Change \texttt{\textbackslash str_set_convert:Nnnn} to expand its last two arguments.

• Describe the internal format in the code comments. Refuse code points in \texttt{[D800,DFFF]} in the internal representation?

• Add documentation about each encoding and escaping method, and add examples.

• The \texttt{hex} unescaping should raise an error for odd-token count strings.

• Decide what bytes should be escaped in the \texttt{url} escaping. Perhaps the characters !'()\*-.\/0123456789_ are safe, and all other characters should be escaped?

• Automate generation of 8-bit mapping files.

• Change the framework for 8-bit encodings: for decoding from 8-bit to Unicode, use 256 integer registers; for encoding, use a tree-box.

• More encodings (see Heiko’s \texttt{stringenc}). CESU?

• More escapings: ASCII85, shell escapes, lua escapes, \textit{etc}.


Chapter 18

The \texttt{\textsc{13quark}} package

Quarks

Two special types of constants in \LaTeX{} are “quarks” and “scan marks”. By convention all constants of type quark start out with \texttt{\textbackslash q}, and scan marks start with \texttt{\textbackslash s}.

18.1 Quarks

Quarks are control sequences (and in fact, token lists) that expand to themselves and should therefore never be executed directly in the code. This would result in an endless loop!

They are meant to be used as delimiter in weird functions, the most common use case being the ‘stop token’ (i.e. \texttt{\textbackslash q\_stop}). For example, when writing a macro to parse a user-defined date

\begin{verbatim}
\date_parse:n {19/June/1981}
\end{verbatim}

one might write a command such as

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \date_parse:n #1 { \date_parse_aux:w #1 \q_stop }
\cs_new:Npn \date_parse_aux:w #1 / #2 / #3 \q_stop
{ <do something with the date> }
\end{verbatim}

Quarks are sometimes also used as error return values for functions that receive erroneous input. For example, in the function \texttt{\textbackslash prop\_get:NnN} to retrieve a value stored in some key of a property list, if the key does not exist then the return value is the quark \texttt{\textbackslash q\_no\_value}. As mentioned above, such quarks are extremely fragile and it is imperative when using such functions that code is carefully written to check for pathological cases to avoid leakage of a quark into an uncontrolled environment.

Quarks also permit the following ingenious trick when parsing tokens: when you pick up a token in a temporary variable and you want to know whether you have picked up a particular quark, all you have to do is compare the temporary variable to the quark using \texttt{\textbackslash t1\_if\_eq:NNTF}. A set of special quark testing functions is set up below. All the quark testing functions are expandable although the ones testing only single tokens are much faster.
18.2 Defining quarks

\texttt{\textbackslash quark\_new:N} \quad \texttt{\textbackslash quark\_new:N \langle quark \rangle}

Creates a new \langle quark \rangle which expands only to \langle quark \rangle. The \langle quark \rangle is defined globally, and an error message is raised if the name was already taken.

\texttt{\textbackslash q\_stop}

Used as a marker for delimited arguments, such as

\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_set:Npn \textbackslash tmp:w \#1\#2 \textbackslash q\_stop \{\#1\}}

\texttt{\textbackslash q\_mark}

Used as a marker for delimited arguments when \texttt{\textbackslash q\_stop} is already in use.

\texttt{\textbackslash q\_nil}

Quark to mark a null value in structured variables or functions. Used as an end delimiter when this may itself need to be tested (in contrast to \texttt{\textbackslash q\_stop}, which is only ever used as a delimiter).

\texttt{\textbackslash q\_no\_value}

A canonical value for a missing value, when one is requested from a data structure. This is therefore used as a “return” value by functions such as \texttt{\textbackslash prop\_get:NnN} if there is no data to return.

18.3 Quark tests

The method used to define quarks means that the single token (N) tests are faster than the multi-token (n) tests. The latter should therefore only be used when the argument can definitely take more than a single token.

\texttt{\textbackslash quark\_if\_nil\_p:N} \quad \texttt{\textbackslash quark\_if\_nil\_p:N \langle token \rangle}

\texttt{\textbackslash quark\_if\_nil\_N:\textbackslash F} \quad \texttt{\textbackslash quark\_if\_nil\_N:\textbackslash F \langle token \rangle \{\langle true code \rangle\} \{\langle false code \rangle\}}

Tests if the \langle token \rangle is equal to \texttt{\textbackslash q\_nil}.

\texttt{\textbackslash quark\_if\_nil\_p:n} \quad \texttt{\textbackslash quark\_if\_nil\_p:n \langle token \rangle} \texttt{\{\langle true code \rangle\} \{\langle false code \rangle\}}

\texttt{\textbackslash quark\_if\_nil\_n:\textbackslash F} \quad \texttt{\textbackslash quark\_if\_nil\_n:\textbackslash F \langle token \rangle \{\langle true code \rangle\} \{\langle false code \rangle\}}

Tests if the \langle token \rangle contains only \texttt{\textbackslash q\_nil} (distinct from \langle token \rangle being empty or containing \texttt{\textbackslash q\_nil} plus one or more other tokens).

\texttt{\textbackslash quark\_if\_no\_value\_p:N} \quad \texttt{\textbackslash quark\_if\_no\_value\_p:N \langle token \rangle}

\texttt{\textbackslash quark\_if\_no\_value\_n:\textbackslash F} \quad \texttt{\textbackslash quark\_if\_no\_value\_n:\textbackslash F \langle token \rangle \{\langle true code \rangle\} \{\langle false code \rangle\}}

Tests if the \langle token \rangle is equal to \texttt{\textbackslash q\_no\_value}.

\texttt{\textbackslash quark\_if\_no\_value\_p:n} \quad \texttt{\textbackslash quark\_if\_no\_value\_p:n \langle token \rangle} \texttt{\{\langle true code \rangle\} \{\langle false code \rangle\}}

\texttt{\textbackslash quark\_if\_no\_value\_n:\textbackslash F} \quad \texttt{\textbackslash quark\_if\_no\_value\_n:\textbackslash F \langle token \rangle \{\langle true code \rangle\} \{\langle false code \rangle\}}

Tests if the \langle token \rangle contains only \texttt{\textbackslash q\_no\_value} (distinct from \langle token \rangle being empty or containing \texttt{\textbackslash q\_no\_value} plus one or more other tokens).
18.4 Recursion

This module provides a uniform interface to intercepting and terminating loops as when one is doing tail recursion. The building blocks follow below and an example is shown in Section 18.4.1.

\q_recursion_tail

This quark is appended to the data structure in question and appears as a real element there. This means it gets any list separators around it.

\q_recursion_stop

This quark is added after the data structure. Its purpose is to make it possible to terminate the recursion at any point easily.

\quark_if_recursion_tail_stop:N \token\quark_if_recursion_tail_stop:N \star

Tests if \token contains only the marker \q_recursion_tail, and if so uses \use_-none_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:w to terminate the recursion that this belongs to. The recursion input must include the marker tokens \q_recursion_tail and \q_recursion_stop as the last two items.

\quark_if_recursion_tail_stop:n {\token list}\quark_if_recursion_tail_stop:n \star \quark_if_recursion_tail_stop:o \star

Tests if the \token list contains only \q_recursion_tail, and if so uses \use_-none_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:w to terminate the recursion that this belongs to. The recursion input must include the marker tokens \q_recursion_tail and \q_recursion_stop as the last two items.

\quark_if_recursion_tail_stop_do:Nn \token\quark_if_recursion_tail_stop_do:Nn \star \quark_if_recursion_tail_stop_do:nn {\token list}\quark_if_recursion_tail_stop_do:nn \star \quark_if_recursion_tail_stop_do:on \star

Tests if the \token list contains only \q_recursion_tail, and if so uses \use_-i_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:w to terminate the recursion that this belongs to. The recursion input must include the marker tokens \q_recursion_tail and \q_recursion_stop as the last two items. The \token list code is then added to the input stream after the recursion has ended.
Tests if (token list) contains only \texttt{q\_recursion\_tail}, and if so terminates the recursion using \texttt{(type)\_map\_break}:. The recursion end should be marked by \texttt{prg\_break\_point}: \texttt{(type)\_map\_break}.

18.4.1 An example of recursion with quarks

Quarks are mainly used internally in the \texttt{expl3} code to define recursion functions such as \texttt{tl\_map\_inline:nn} and so on. Here is a small example to demonstrate how to use quarks in this fashion. We shall define a command called \texttt{my\_map\_dbl:nn} which takes a token list and applies an operation to every pair of tokens. For example, \texttt{my\_map\_dbl:nn \{abcd\}\{[-#1--#2--]\}~} would produce “[-a-b-] [-c-d-] “. Using quarks to define such functions simplifies their logic and ensures robustness in many cases.

Here’s the definition of \texttt{my\_map\_dbl:nn}. First of all, define the function that does the processing based on the inline function argument \texttt{#2}. Then initiate the recursion using an internal function. The token list \texttt{#1} is terminated using \texttt{q\_recursion\_tail}, with delimiters according to the type of recursion (here a pair of \texttt{q\_recursion\_tail}), concluding with \texttt{q\_recursion\_stop}. These quarks are used to mark the end of the token list being operated upon.

\begin{verbatim}
cs_new:Npn \my_map_dbl:nn \#1\#2 
{ 
    \cs_set:Npn \__my_map_dbl_fn:nn \##1 \##2 \#2
    \__my_map_dbl:nn \#1 \q_recursion_tail \q_recursion_tail
    \q_recursion_stop
}
\end{verbatim}

The definition of the internal recursion function follows. First check if either of the input tokens are the termination quarks. Then, if not, apply the inline function to the two arguments.

\begin{verbatim}
cs_new:Nn \__my_map_dbl:nn
{ 
    \quark_if_recursion_tail_stop:n \#1
    \quark_if_recursion_tail_stop:n \#2
    \__my_map_dbl_fn:nn \#1 \#2
}
\end{verbatim}

Finally, recurse:

\begin{verbatim}
\__my_map_dbl:nn
}
\end{verbatim}

Note that contrarily to \LaTeX X3 built-in mapping functions, this mapping function cannot be nested, since the second map would overwrite the definition of \texttt{\__my_map_dbl\_fn:nn}. 

140
18.5 Scan marks

Scan marks are control sequences set equal to \texttt{\scan_stop}; hence never expand in an expansion context and are (largely) invisible if they are encountered in a typesetting context.

Like quarks, they can be used as delimiters in weird functions and are often safer to use for this purpose. Since they are harmless when executed by \TeX in non-expandable contexts, they can be used to mark the end of a set of instructions. This allows to skip to that point if the end of the instructions should not be performed (see \texttt{l3regex}).

\begin{verbatim}
\scan_new:N \langle scan mark \rangle
\end{verbatim}

Creates a new \texttt{(scan mark)} which is set equal to \texttt{\scan_stop}: The \texttt{(scan mark)} is defined globally, and an error message is raised if the name was already taken by another scan mark.

\begin{verbatim}
\s_stop
\end{verbatim}

Used at the end of a set of instructions, as a marker that can be jumped to using \texttt{\use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w}.

\begin{verbatim}
\textbackslash use\_none\_delimit\_by\_s\_stop:w \texttt{\langle tokens \rangle} \s_stop
\end{verbatim}

Removes the \texttt{(tokens)} and \texttt{\s_stop} from the input stream. This leads to a low-level \TeX error if \texttt{\s_stop} is absent.
Chapter 19

The l3seq package
Sequences and stacks

\textit{\LaTeX}3 implements a “sequence” data type, which contain an ordered list of entries which may contain any \textit{(balanced text)}. It is possible to map functions to sequences such that the function is applied to every item in the sequence.

Sequences are also used to implement stack functions in \textit{\LaTeX}3. This is achieved using a number of dedicated stack functions.

19.1 Creating and initialising sequences

\begin{tabular}{ll}
\texttt{\seq_new:N} &Creating a new \textit{(sequence)} or raises an error if the name is already taken. The declaration is global. The \textit{(sequence)} initially contains no items. \\
\texttt{\seq_new:c} \\
\texttt{\seq_clear:N} &Clears all items from the \textit{(sequence)}. \\
\texttt{\seq_clear:c} \\
\texttt{\seq_gclear:N} &Ensures that the \textit{(sequence)} exists globally by applying \texttt{\seq_new:N} if necessary, then applies \texttt{\seq\_gclear:N} to leave the \textit{(sequence)} empty. \\
\texttt{\seq_gclear:c} \\
\texttt{\seq_set_eq:NN} &Sets the content of \textit{(sequence\textsubscript{1})} equal to that of \textit{(sequence\textsubscript{2})}. \\
\texttt{\seq_set_eq:(cN|Nc|cc)} \\
\texttt{\seq_get_eq:NN} \\
\texttt{\seq_get_eq:(cN|Nc|cc)}
\end{tabular}

142
\seq_set_from_clist:NN (sequence) \{comma-list\}
\seq_set_from_clist:NN (cN|Nc|cc)
\seq_set_from_clist:NN
\seq_set_from_clist:cn
\seq_gset_from_clist:NN
\seq_gset_from_clist:cn

New: 2014-07-17

Converts the data in the \{comma list\} into a \{sequence\}: the original \{comma list\} is unchanged.

\seq_set_split:Nnn (sequence) \{delimiter\} \{token list\}
\seq_set_split:NnV
\seq_gset_split:Nnn
\seq_gset_split:NnV

New: 2011-08-15
Updated: 2012-07-02

Splits the \{token list\} into \{items\} separated by \{delimiter\}, and assigns the result to the \{sequence\}. Spaces on both sides of each \{item\} are ignored, then one set of outer braces is removed (if any): this space trimming behaviour is identical to that of \texttt{l3clist} functions. Empty \{items\} are preserved by \seq_set_split:Nnn, and can be removed afterwards using \texttt{\seq_remove_all:Nn (sequence) \{\}}. The \{delimiter\} may not contain \{\,\}, \#, or \texttt{|} (assuming \TeX\‘s normal category code régime). If the \{delimiter\} is empty, the \{token list\} is split into \{items\} as a \{token list\}. See also \seq_set_split_keep_spaces:Nnn, which omits space stripping.

\seq_set_split_keep_spaces:Nnn (sequence) \{delimiter\} \{token list\}
\seq_set_split_keep_spaces:NnV
\seq_gset_split_keep_spaces:Nnn
\seq_gset_split_keep_spaces:NnV

New: 2021-03-24

Splits the \{token list\} into \{items\} separated by \{delimiter\}, and assigns the result to the \{sequence\}. One set of outer braces is removed (if any) but any surrounding spaces are retained: any braces inside one or more spaces are therefore kept. Empty \{items\} are preserved by \seq_set_split_keep_spaces:Nnn, and can be removed afterwards using \texttt{\seq_remove_all:Nn (sequence) \{\}}. The \{delimiter\} may not contain \{\,\}, \#, or \texttt{|} (assuming \TeX\‘s normal category code régime). If the \{delimiter\} is empty, the \{token list\} is split into \{items\} as a \{token list\}. See also \seq_set_split:Nnn, which removes spaces around the delimiters.

\seq_concat:NNN (sequence_1) (sequence_2) (sequence_3)
\seq_concat:NN
\seq_concat:ccc
\seq_gconcat:NN
\seq_gconcat:ccc

Concatenates the content of \{sequence_2\} and \{sequence_3\} together and saves the result in \{sequence_1\}. The items in \{sequence_2\} are placed at the left side of the new sequence.
\seq_if_exist_p:N \seq_if_exist_p:c \seq_if_exist:NTF \seq_if_exist:cTF

Tests whether the \DeclareRobustCommand\sequence is currently defined. This does not check that the \sequence really is a sequence variable.

19.2 Appending data to sequences

\seq_put_left:Nn \seq_put_left:\(NV|Nv|No|Nx|cn|cV|cv|co|cx\)
\seq_gput_left:Nn \seq_gput_left:\(NV|Nv|No|Nx|cn|cV|cv|co|cx\)

Appends the \item to the left of the \sequence.

\seq_put_right:Nn \seq_put_right:\(NV|Nv|No|Nx|cn|cV|cv|co|cx\)
\seq_gput_right:Nn \seq_gput_right:\(NV|Nv|No|Nx|cn|cV|cv|co|cx\)

Appends the \item to the right of the \sequence.

19.3 Recovering items from sequences

Items can be recovered from either the left or the right of sequences. For implementation reasons, the actions at the left of the sequence are faster than those acting on the right. These functions all assign the recovered material locally, i.e. setting the \token list variable used with \tl_set:Nn and never \tl_gset:Nn.

\seq_get_left:NN \seq_get_left:cN
\seq_get_left:NN \seq_get_left:cN

Stores the left-most item from a \sequence in the \token list variable without removing it from the \sequence. The \token list variable is assigned locally. If \sequence is empty the \token list variable is set to the special marker \q_no_value.

\seq_get_right:NN \seq_get_right:cN
\seq_get_right:NN \seq_get_right:cN

Stores the right-most item from a \sequence in the \token list variable without removing it from the \sequence. The \token list variable is assigned locally. If \sequence is empty the \token list variable is set to the special marker \q_no_value.

\seq_pop_left:NN \seq_pop_left:cN
\seq_pop_left:NN \seq_pop_left:cN

Pops the left-most item from a \sequence into the \token list variable, i.e. removes the item from the sequence and stores it in the \token list variable. Both of the variables are assigned locally. If \sequence is empty the \token list variable is set to the special marker \q_no_value.
\seq_gpop_left:NN (sequence) (token list variable)

Pops the left-most item from a \langle sequence \rangle into the (token list variable), i.e. removes the item from the sequence and stores it in the (token list variable). The \langle sequence \rangle is modified globally, while the assignment of the (token list variable) is local. If \langle sequence \rangle is empty the (token list variable) is set to the special marker \q_no_value.

\seq_pop_right:NN (sequence) (token list variable)

Pops the right-most item from a \langle sequence \rangle into the (token list variable), i.e. removes the item from the sequence and stores it in the (token list variable). Both of the variables are assigned locally. If \langle sequence \rangle is empty the (token list variable) is set to the special marker \q_no_value.

\seq_gpop_right:NN (sequence) (token list variable)

Pops the right-most item from a \langle sequence \rangle into the (token list variable), i.e. removes the item from the sequence and stores it in the (token list variable). The \langle sequence \rangle is modified globally, while the assignment of the (token list variable) is local. If \langle sequence \rangle is empty the (token list variable) is set to the special marker \q_no_value.

\seq_item:Nn \langle sequence \rangle \{ \langle integer expression \rangle \}

Indexing items in the \langle sequence \rangle from 1 at the top (left), this function evaluates the \langle integer expression \rangle and leaves the appropriate item from the sequence in the input stream. If the \langle integer expression \rangle is negative, indexing occurs from the bottom (right) of the sequence. If the \langle integer expression \rangle is larger than the number of items in the \langle sequence \rangle (as calculated by \seq_count:N) then the function expands to nothing.

\textbf{TeXhackers note:} The result is returned within the \unexpanded primitive (\exp_not:n), which means that the \langle item \rangle does not expand further when appearing in an x-type argument expansion.

\seq_rand_item:N \langle seq var \rangle

Selects a pseudo-random item of the \langle sequence \rangle. If the \langle sequence \rangle is empty the result is empty. This is not available in older versions of Xe\TeX.

\textbf{TeXhackers note:} The result is returned within the \unexpanded primitive (\exp_not:n), which means that the \langle item \rangle does not expand further when appearing in an x-type argument expansion.

19.4 Recovering values from sequences with branching

The functions in this section combine tests for non-empty sequences with recovery of an item from the sequence. They offer increased readability and performance over separate testing and recovery phases.
\seq_left
\seq_right

\seq_left:NTF (sequence) \langle \text{token list variable} \rangle \{\langle \text{true code} \rangle \} \{\langle \text{false code} \rangle \}

If the \langle \text{sequence} \rangle is empty, leaves the \langle \text{false code} \rangle in the input stream. The value of the \langle \text{token list variable} \rangle is not defined in this case and should not be relied upon. If the \langle \text{sequence} \rangle is empty, leaves the \langle \text{false code} \rangle in the input stream. The \langle \text{token list variable} \rangle without removing it from the \langle \text{sequence} \rangle, then leaves the \langle \text{true code} \rangle in the input stream. The \langle \text{token list variable} \rangle is assigned locally.

\seq_right
\seq_pop

\seq_right:NTF (sequence) \langle \text{token list variable} \rangle \{\langle \text{true code} \rangle \} \{\langle \text{false code} \rangle \}

If the \langle \text{sequence} \rangle is empty, leaves the \langle \text{false code} \rangle in the input stream. The value of the \langle \text{token list variable} \rangle is not defined in this case and should not be relied upon. If the \langle \text{sequence} \rangle is empty, leaves the \langle \text{false code} \rangle in the input stream. The \langle \text{token list variable} \rangle without removing it from the \langle \text{sequence} \rangle, then leaves the \langle \text{true code} \rangle in the input stream. The \langle \text{token list variable} \rangle is assigned locally.

\seq_pop
\seq_gpop

\seq_pop_left:NTF (sequence) \langle \text{token list variable} \rangle \{\langle \text{true code} \rangle \} \{\langle \text{false code} \rangle \}

If the \langle \text{sequence} \rangle is empty, leaves the \langle \text{false code} \rangle in the input stream. The value of the \langle \text{token list variable} \rangle is not defined in this case and should not be relied upon. If the \langle \text{sequence} \rangle is empty, leaves the \langle \text{false code} \rangle in the input stream. The \langle \text{token list variable} \rangle without removing it from the \langle \text{sequence} \rangle, then leaves the \langle \text{true code} \rangle in the input stream. Both the \langle \text{sequence} \rangle and the \langle \text{token list variable} \rangle are assigned locally.

\seq_gpop_left
\seq_gpop_right

\seq_gpop_left:NTF (sequence) \langle \text{token list variable} \rangle \{\langle \text{true code} \rangle \} \{\langle \text{false code} \rangle \}

If the \langle \text{sequence} \rangle is empty, leaves the \langle \text{false code} \rangle in the input stream. The value of the \langle \text{token list variable} \rangle is not defined in this case and should not be relied upon. If the \langle \text{sequence} \rangle is empty, leaves the \langle \text{false code} \rangle in the input stream. The \langle \text{token list variable} \rangle without removing it from the \langle \text{sequence} \rangle, then leaves the \langle \text{true code} \rangle in the input stream. Both the \langle \text{sequence} \rangle and the \langle \text{token list variable} \rangle are assigned locally.

\seq_gpop_right

\seq_gpop_right:NTF (sequence) \langle \text{token list variable} \rangle \{\langle \text{true code} \rangle \} \{\langle \text{false code} \rangle \}

If the \langle \text{sequence} \rangle is empty, leaves the \langle \text{false code} \rangle in the input stream. The value of the \langle \text{token list variable} \rangle is not defined in this case and should not be relied upon. If the \langle \text{sequence} \rangle is empty, leaves the \langle \text{false code} \rangle in the input stream. The \langle \text{token list variable} \rangle without removing it from the \langle \text{sequence} \rangle, then leaves the \langle \text{true code} \rangle in the input stream. The \langle \text{sequence} \rangle is modified globally, while the \langle \text{token list variable} \rangle is assigned locally.
19.5 Modifying sequences

While sequences are normally used as ordered lists, it may be necessary to modify the content. The functions here may be used to update sequences, while retaining the order of the unaffected entries.

```latex
\seq_remove_duplicates:N \seq_remove_duplicates:c
\seq_gremove_duplicates:N \seq_gremove_duplicates:c
```

Removes duplicate items from the (sequence), leaving the left most copy of each item in the (sequence). The (item) comparison takes place on a token basis, as for \texttt{tl_if_=eq:nnTF}.

\textbf{TeXhackers note}: This function iterates through every item in the (sequence) and does a comparison with the (items) already checked. It is therefore relatively slow with large sequences.

```latex
\seq_remove_all:Nn \seq_remove_all:cn
\seq_gremove_all:Nn \seq_gremove_all:cn
```

Removes every occurrence of (item) from the (sequence). The (item) comparison takes place on a token basis, as for \texttt{tl_if_=eq:nnTF}.

```latex
\seq_reverse:N \seq_reverse:c
\seq_greverse:N \seq_greverse:c
```

Reverses the order of the items stored in the (sequence).

```latex
\seq_sort:Nn \seq_sort:cn
\seq_gsort:Nn \seq_gsort:cn
```

Sorts the items in the (sequence) according to the (comparison code), and assigns the result to (sequence). The details of sorting comparison are described in Section 6.1.

```latex
\seq_shuffle:N \seq_shuffle:c
\seq_gshuffle:N \seq_gshuffle:c
```

Sets the (seq var) to the result of placing the items of the (seq var) in a random order. Each item is (roughly) as likely to end up in any given position.

\textbf{TeXhackers note}: For sequences with more than 13 items or so, only a small proportion of all possible permutations can be reached, because the random seed \texttt{sys_rand_seed} only has 28-bits. The use of \texttt{toks} internally means that sequences with more than 32767 or 65535 items (depending on the engine) cannot be shuffled.

19.6 Sequence conditionals

```latex
\seq_if_empty_p:N \seq_if_empty_p:c
\seq_if_empty:NTF \seq_if_empty:TF
```

Tests if the (sequence) is empty (containing no items).
Tests if the \langle item\rangle is present in the \langle sequence\rangle.

# 19.7 Mapping over sequences

All mappings are done at the current group level, \textit{i.e.} any local assignments made by the \langle function\rangle or \langle code\rangle discussed below remain in effect after the loop.

\seq_if_in:NnTF \langle sequence\rangle \langle item\rangle \{\langle true code\rangle\} \{\langle false code\rangle\}

\seq_if_in:⟨(NV|Nv|No|Nx|cn|cV|cv|co|cx)TF
Tests if the \langle item\rangle is present in the \langle sequence\rangle.

19.7 Mapping over sequences

All mappings are done at the current group level, \textit{i.e.} any local assignments made by the \langle function\rangle or \langle code\rangle discussed below remain in effect after the loop.

\seq_map_function:NN \langle sequence\rangle \langle function\rangle
Applies \langle function\rangle to every \langle item\rangle stored in the \langle sequence\rangle. The \langle function\rangle will receive one argument for each iteration. The \langle items\rangle are returned from left to right. To pass further arguments to the \langle function\rangle, see \seq_map_tokens:Nn. The function \seq_map_inline:Nn is faster than \seq_map_function:NN for sequences with more than about 10 items.

\seq_map_function:NN ✩ \seq_map_function:cN ✩
\seq_map_function:NN
Updated: 2012-06-29

\seq_map_inline:Nn \seq_map_inline:cn
Applies \langle inline function\rangle to every \langle item\rangle stored within the \langle sequence\rangle. The \langle inline function\rangle should consist of code which will receive the \langle item\rangle as \#1. The \langle items\rangle are returned from left to right.

\seq_map_tokens:Nn ✩ \seq_map_tokens:cn ✩
\seq_map_tokens:Nn
Updated: 2019-08-30

\seq_map_tokens:Nn \seq_map_tokens:cn
Analogue of \seq_map_function:NN which maps several tokens instead of a single function. The \langle code\rangle receives each item in the \langle sequence\rangle as a trailing brace group. For instance,

\seq_map_tokens:Nn \textbackslash l\_my\_seq \lbrace \textbackslash prg\_replicate:nn \lbrace 2 \rbrace \rbrace \textbackslash l\_my\_seq \lbrace \textbackslash prg\_replicate:nn \lbrace 2 \rbrace \rbrace

expands to twice each item in the \langle sequence\rangle: for each item in \textbackslash l\_my\_seq the function \textbackslash prg\_replicate:nn receives 2 and \langle item\rangle as its two arguments. The function \seq_map_inline:Nn is typically faster but it is not expandable.

\seq_map_variable:NNn \seq_map_variable:CNn
\seq_map_variable:CNn
\seq_map_variable:CNn
Updated: 2012-06-29

\seq_map_variable:NNn \seq_map_variable:CNn
Stores each \langle item\rangle of the \langle sequence\rangle in turn in the (token list) \langle variable\rangle and applies the \langle code\rangle. The \langle code\rangle will usually make use of the \langle variable\rangle, but this is not enforced. The assignments to the \langle variable\rangle are local. Its value after the loop is the last \langle item\rangle in the \langle sequence\rangle, or its original value if the \langle sequence\rangle is empty. The \langle items\rangle are returned from left to right.

\seq_map_indexed_function:NN
\seq_map_indexed_function:NN
\seq_map_indexed_function:NN
New: 2018-05-03

\seq_map_indexed_function:NN
Applies \langle function\rangle to every entry in the \langle sequence variable\rangle. The \langle function\rangle should have signature :nn. It receives two arguments for each iteration: the \langle index\rangle (namely 1 for the first entry, then 2 and so on) and the \langle item\rangle.
\seq_map_indexed_inline:Nn \seq_map_indexed_inline:Nn (seq var) {(inline function)}

Applies (inline function) to every entry in the (sequence variable). The (inline function) should consist of code which receives the (index) (namely 1 for the first entry, then 2 and so on) as #1 and the (item) as #2.

\seq_map_break: ✩

Updated: 2012-06-29

\seq_map_break:

Used to terminate a \seq_map... function before all entries in the (sequence) have been processed. This normally takes place within a conditional statement, for example

\seq_map_inline:Nn \l_my_seq
{
  \str_if_eq:nnTF { #1 } { bingo }
  { \seq_map_break: }
  { % Do something useful
  }
}

Use outside of a \seq_map... scenario leads to low level \TeX errors.

\TeXhackers note: When the mapping is broken, additional tokens may be inserted before further items are taken from the input stream. This depends on the design of the mapping function.

\seq_map_break:n ✩

Updated: 2012-06-29

\seq_map_break:n {(code)}

Used to terminate a \seq_map... function before all entries in the (sequence) have been processed, inserting the (code) after the mapping has ended. This normally takes place within a conditional statement, for example

\seq_map_inline:Nn \l_my_seq
{
  \str_if_eq:nnTF { #1 } { bingo }
  { \seq_map_break:n { <code> } }
  { % Do something useful
  }
}

Use outside of a \seq_map... scenario leads to low level \TeX errors.

\TeXhackers note: When the mapping is broken, additional tokens may be inserted before the (code) is inserted into the input stream. This depends on the design of the mapping function.
\seq_set_map:NNn \seq_gset_map:NNn\langle sequence_1 \rangle \langle sequence_2 \rangle \{ \langle \text{inline function} \rangle \} \\
Applies \langle \text{inline function} \rangle to every \langle \text{item} \rangle stored within the \langle sequence_2 \rangle. The \langle \text{inline function} \rangle should consist of code which will receive the \langle \text{item} \rangle as \#1. The sequence resulting applying \langle \text{inline function} \rangle to each \langle \text{item} \rangle is assigned to \langle sequence_1 \rangle.

\textbf{\TeXhacker note:} Contrarily to other mapping functions, \texttt{\seq_map_break:} cannot be used in this function, and would lead to low-level \TeX{} errors.

\seq_set_map_x:NNn \seq_gset_map_x:NNn \langle sequence_1 \rangle \langle sequence_2 \rangle \{ \langle \text{inline function} \rangle \} \\
Applies \langle \text{inline function} \rangle to every \langle \text{item} \rangle stored within the \langle sequence_2 \rangle. The \langle \text{inline function} \rangle should consist of code which will receive the \langle \text{item} \rangle as \#1. The sequence resulting from x-expanding \langle \text{inline function} \rangle applied to each \langle \text{item} \rangle is assigned to \langle sequence_1 \rangle. As such, the code in \langle \text{inline function} \rangle should be expandable.

\textbf{\TeXhacker note:} Contrarily to other mapping functions, \texttt{\seq_map_break:} cannot be used in this function, and would lead to low-level \TeX{} errors.

\seq_count:N \seq_count:c \times \times \\
Leaves the number of items in the \langle sequence \rangle in the input stream as an \langle \text{integer denotation} \rangle. The total number of items in a \langle sequence \rangle includes those which are empty and duplicates, \textit{i.e.} every item in a \langle sequence \rangle is unique.

19.8 Using the content of sequences directly

\seq_use:Nnnn \seq_use:cnnn \times \times \\
Places the contents of the \langle seq var \rangle in the input stream, with the appropriate \langle separator \rangle between the items. Namely, if the sequence has more than two items, the \langle separator between more than two \rangle is placed between each pair of items except the last, for which the \langle separator between final two \rangle is used. If the sequence has exactly two items, then they are placed in the input stream separated by the \langle separator between two \rangle. If the sequence has a single item, it is placed in the input stream, and an empty sequence produces no output. An error is raised if the variable does not exist or if it is invalid.

For example,

\seq_set_split:Nnn \l_tmpa_seq \{ \mid \} { a \mid b \mid c \mid \{ de \} \mid f } \\
\seq_use:Nnnn \l_tmpa_seq \{ \text{-and-} \} \{ , , } \{ \text{-and-} \}

inserts “a, b, c, de, and f” in the input stream. The first separator argument is not used in this case because the sequence has more than 2 items.

\textbf{\TeXhacker note:} The result is returned within the \texttt{\unexpanded} primitive \texttt{\exp_not:n}, which means that the \langle items \rangle do not expand further when appearing in an \texttt{x}-type argument expansion.
\seq_use:Nn \seq_use:cn \new: 2013-05-26

\seq_set_split:Nnn \l_tmpa_seq { | } { a | b | c | \{de\} | f }
\seq_use:Nn \l_tmpa_seq { ~and~ }

inserts "a and b and c and de and f" in the input stream.

\TeXhackers note: The result is returned within the \unexpanded primitive (\exp_not:n), which means that the \langle items\rangle do not expand further when appearing in an x-type argument expansion.

### 19.9 Sequences as stacks

Sequences can be used as stacks, where data is pushed to and popped from the top of the sequence. (The left of a sequence is the top, for performance reasons.) The stack functions for sequences are not intended to be mixed with the general ordered data functions detailed in the previous section: a sequence should either be used as an ordered data type or as a stack, but not in both ways.

\seq_get:NN \seq_get:cN \updated: 2012-05-14

\seq_pop:NN \seq_pop:cN \updated: 2012-05-14

\seq_gpop:NN \seq_gpop:cN \updated: 2012-05-14

\seq_get:NNTF \seq_get:cNTF \new: 2012-05-19

\seq_set:NN \seq_set:cl \new: 2012-05-14

\seq_pop:NN \seq_pop:cl \new: 2012-05-14

\seq_gpop:NN \seq_gpop:cl \new: 2012-05-14

\seq_get:NNTF \seq_get:clTF

If the \langle sequence\rangle is empty, leaves the \langle false code\rangle in the input stream. The value of the \langle token list variable\rangle is not defined in this case and should not be relied upon. If the \langle sequence\rangle is non-empty, stores the top item from a \langle sequence\rangle in the \langle token list variable\rangle without removing it from the \langle sequence\rangle. The \langle token list variable\rangle is assigned locally.
If the \langle sequence \rangle is empty, leaves the \langle false code \rangle in the input stream. The value of the \langle token list variable \rangle is not defined in this case and should not be relied upon. If the \langle sequence \rangle is non-empty, pops the top item from the \langle sequence \rangle in the \langle token list variable \rangle, i.e. removes the item from the \langle sequence \rangle. Both the \langle sequence \rangle and the \langle token list variable \rangle are assigned locally.

\seq_gpop:NTF \langle sequence \rangle \langle token list variable \rangle \{ \langle true code \rangle \} \{ \langle false code \rangle \}

If the \langle sequence \rangle is empty, leaves the \langle false code \rangle in the input stream. The value of the \langle token list variable \rangle is not defined in this case and should not be relied upon. If the \langle sequence \rangle is non-empty, pops the top item from the \langle sequence \rangle in the \langle token list variable \rangle, i.e. removes the item from the \langle sequence \rangle. The \langle sequence \rangle is modified globally, while the \langle token list variable \rangle is assigned locally.

\seq_gpop:NN \seq_gpop:cN

New: 2012-05-14  
Updated: 2012-05-19

19.10 Sequences as sets

Sequences can also be used as sets, such that all of their items are distinct. Usage of sequences as sets is not currently widespread, hence no specific set function is provided. Instead, it is explained here how common set operations can be performed by combining several functions described in earlier sections. When using sequences to implement sets, one should be careful not to rely on the order of items in the sequence representing the set.

Sets should not contain several occurrences of a given item. To make sure that a \langle sequence variable \rangle only has distinct items, use \seq_remove_duplicates:N \langle sequence variable \rangle. This function is relatively slow, and to avoid performance issues one should only use it when necessary.

Some operations on a set \langle seq var \rangle are straightforward. For instance, \seq_count:N \langle seq var \rangle expands to the number of items, while \seq_if_in:NnTF \langle seq var \rangle \{ \langle item \rangle \} tests if the \langle item \rangle is in the set.

Adding an \langle item \rangle to a set \langle seq var \rangle can be done by appending it to the \langle seq var \rangle if it is not already in the \langle seq var \rangle:

\seq_if_in:NnF \langle seq var \rangle \{ \langle item \rangle \}
\seq_put_right:Nn \langle seq var \rangle \{ \langle item \rangle \}

Removing an \langle item \rangle from a set \langle seq var \rangle can be done using \seq_remove_all:Nn,

\seq_remove_all:Nn \langle seq var \rangle \{ \langle item \rangle \}

The intersection of two sets \langle seq var_1 \rangle and \langle seq var_2 \rangle can be stored into \langle seq var_3 \rangle by collecting items of \langle seq var_1 \rangle which are in \langle seq var_2 \rangle.
\seq_clear:N \seq_var_3
\seq_map_inline:Nn \seq_var_1 { \seq_if_in:NnT \seq_var_2 {#1} { \seq_put_right:Nn \seq_var_3 {#1} } { } }

The code as written here only works if \seq_var_3 is different from the other two sequence variables. To cover all cases, items should first be collected in a sequence \l__\langle pkg\rangle__internal_seq, then \seq_var_3 should be set equal to this internal sequence.

The same remark applies to other set functions.

The union of two sets \seq_var_1 and \seq_var_2 can be stored into \seq_var_3 through
\seq_concat:NNN \seq_var_3 \seq_var_1 \seq_var_2
\seq_remove_duplicates:N \seq_var_3

or by adding items to (a copy of) \seq_var_1 one by one
\seq_set_eq:NN \seq_var_3 \seq_var_1
\seq_map_inline:Nn \seq_var_2 { \seq_if_in:NnF \seq_var_3 {#1} { \seq_put_right:Nn \seq_var_3 {#1} } { } }

The second approach is faster than the first when the \seq_var_2 is short compared to \seq_var_1.

The difference of two sets \seq_var_1 and \seq_var_2 can be stored into \seq_var_3 by removing items of the \seq_var_2 from (a copy of) the \seq_var_1 one by one.
\seq_set_eq:NN \seq_var_3 \seq_var_1
\seq_map_inline:Nn \seq_var_2 { \seq_remove_all:Nn \seq_var_3 {#1} } \seq_remove_all:Nn \seq_var_3 {#1}

The symmetric difference of two sets \seq_var_1 and \seq_var_2 can be stored into \seq_var_3 by computing the difference between \seq_var_1 and \seq_var_2 and storing the result as \l__\langle pkg\rangle__internal_seq, then the difference between \seq_var_2 and \seq_var_1, and finally concatenating the two differences to get the symmetric differences.
\seq_set_eq:NN \l__\langle pkg\rangle__internal_seq \seq_var_1
\seq_map_inline:Nn \seq_var_2 { \seq_remove_all:Nn \l__\langle pkg\rangle__internal_seq {#1} } \seq_remove_all:Nn \seq_var_2 {#1}
\seq_set_eq:NN \seq_var_3 \seq_var_2
\seq_map_inline:Nn \seq_var_1 { \seq_remove_all:Nn \seq_var_3 {#1} } \seq_remove_all:Nn \seq_var_3 {#1}
\seq_concat:NNN \seq_var_3 \seq_var_3 \l__\langle pkg\rangle__internal_seq

19.11 Constant and scratch sequences

\c_empty_seq
Constant that is always empty.

\seq: 2012-07-02

153
Scratch sequences for local assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any \LaTeX3-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.

\l_tmpa_seq \l_tmpb_seq

New: 2012-04-26

Scratch sequences for global assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any \LaTeX3-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.

\g_tmpa_seq \g_tmpb_seq

New: 2012-04-26

19.12 Viewing sequences

\seq_show:N \seq_show:c

Displays the entries in the \langle sequence\rangle in the terminal.

\seq_log:N \seq_log:c

Writes the entries in the \langle sequence\rangle in the log file.
Chapter 20

The l3int package
Integers

Calculation and comparison of integer values can be carried out using literal numbers, \texttt{int} registers, constants and integers stored in token list variables. The standard operators $+,-,\, /$ and $\ast$ and parentheses can be used within such expressions to carry arithmetic operations. This module carries out these functions on \textit{integer expressions} (“\texttt{intexpr}”).

20.1 Integer expressions

Throughout this module, (almost) all \texttt{n}-type argument allow for an \texttt{(intexpr)} argument with the following syntax. The \texttt{(integer expression)} should consist, after expansion, of $+, -, \ast, /,$ (,) and of course integer operands. The result is calculated by applying standard mathematical rules with the following peculiarities:

- $/$ denotes division rounded to the closest integer with ties rounded away from zero;
- there is an error and the overall expression evaluates to zero whenever the absolute value of any intermediate result exceeds $2^{31} - 1$, except in the case of scaling operations $a \ast b / c$, for which $a \ast b$ may be arbitrarily large (but the operands $a, b, c$ are still constrained to an absolute value at most $2^{31} - 1$);
- parentheses may not appear after unary $+$ or $-$, namely placing $+($ or $-($ at the start of an expression or after $+, -, \ast, /$ or $\,($ leads to an error.

Each integer operand can be either an integer variable (with no need for \texttt{\textbackslash int\_use:N}) or an integer denotation. For example both

\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{\textbackslash int\_show:n \{ 5 + 4 \ast 3 - ( 3 + 4 \ast 5 ) \}}
\end{verbatim}

and

\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{\textbackslash tl\_new:N \textbackslash l\_my\_tl}
\texttt{\textbackslash tl\_set:Nm \textbackslash l\_my\_tl \{ 5 \}}
\texttt{\textbackslash int\_new:N \textbackslash l\_my\_int}
\texttt{\textbackslash int\_set:Nn \textbackslash l\_my\_int \{ 4 \}}
\texttt{\textbackslash int\_show:n \{ \textbackslash l\_my\_tl + \textbackslash l\_my\_int \ast 3 - ( 3 + 4 \ast 5 ) \}}
\end{verbatim}
show the same result $-6$ because \_my_tl expands to the integer denotation $5$ while the integer variable \_my_int takes the value $4$. As the \textit{integer expression} is fully expanded from left to right during evaluation, fully expandable and restricted-expandable functions can both be used, and \texttt{exp_not:n} and its variants have no effect while \texttt{exp_not:N} may incorrectly interrupt the expression.

\textbf{\TeX/hackers note:} Exactly two expansions are needed to evaluate \texttt{int_eval:n}. The result is not an \texttt{internal integer}, and therefore should be terminated by a space if used in \texttt{int_value:w} or in a \TeX\-style integer assignment.

As all \TeX integers, integer operands can also be: \texttt{value{⟨LATEX2ε counter⟩}}; dimension or skip variables, converted to integers in \texttt{sp}; the character code of some character given as ‘⟨char⟩’ or ‘\langle char⟩’; octal numbers given as ‘ followed by digits from 0 to 7; or hexadecimal numbers given as ‘\ ’ followed by digits and upper case letters from A to F.

\begin{verbatim}
\int_eval:n \int_eval:w \int_sign:n \int_abs:n \int_div_round:nn \int_div_truncate:nn
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\int_eval:n \{⟨integer expression⟩\}}

Evaluates the \textit{integer expression} and leaves the result in the input stream as an integer denotation: for positive results an explicit sequence of decimal digits not starting with 0, for negative results $-$ followed by such a sequence, and 0 for zero.

\texttt{\int_eval:w \{⟨integer expression⟩\}}

Evaluates the \textit{integer expression} as described for \texttt{int_eval:n}. The end of the expression is the first token encountered that cannot form part of such an expression. If that token is \texttt{\scan_stop}: it is removed, otherwise not. Spaces do not terminate the expression. However, spaces terminate explicit integers, and this may terminate the expression: for instance, \texttt{\int_eval:w 1␣+␣1␣9} (with explicit space tokens inserted using \texttt{~} in a code setting) expands to 29 since the digit 9 is not part of the expression.

\texttt{\int_sign:n \{⟨intexpr⟩\}}

Evaluates the \textit{integer expression} then leaves $1$ or $0$ or $-1$ in the input stream according to the sign of the result.

\texttt{\int_abs:n \{⟨intexpr⟩\}}

Evaluates the \textit{integer expression} as described for \texttt{int_eval:n} and leaves the absolute value of the result in the input stream as an \texttt{integer denotation} after two expansions.

\texttt{\int_div_round:nn \{⟨intexpr⟩\} \{⟨intexpr⟩\}}

Evaluates the two \textit{integer expressions} as described earlier, then divides the first value by the second, and rounds the result to the closest integer. Ties are rounded away from zero. Note that this is identical to using / directly in an \textit{integer expression}. The result is left in the input stream as an \texttt{integer denotation} after two expansions.

\texttt{\int_div_truncate:nn \{⟨intexpr⟩\} \{⟨intexpr⟩\}}

Evaluates the two \textit{integer expressions} as described earlier, then divides the first value by the second, and rounds the result towards zero. Note that division using / rounds to the closest integer instead. The result is left in the input stream as an \texttt{integer denotation} after two expansions.
\int_max:nn \{\text{intexpr}_1\} \{\text{intexpr}_2\}
\int_min:nn \{\text{intexpr}_1\} \{\text{intexpr}_2\}

Updated: 2012-09-26

Evaluates the \textit{integer expressions} as described for \texttt{\int_eval:n} and leaves either the larger or smaller value in the input stream as an \textit{integer denotation} after two expansions.

\int_mod:nn \{\text{intexpr}_1\} \{\text{intexpr}_2\}

Updated: 2012-09-26

Evaluates the two \textit{integer expressions} as described earlier, then calculates the integer remainder of dividing the first expression by the second. This is obtained by subtracting \texttt{\int_div_truncate:nn \{\text{intexpr}_1\} \{\text{intexpr}_2\}} times \texttt{\intexpr_2} from \texttt{\intexpr_1}. Thus, the result has the same sign as \texttt{\intexpr_1} and its absolute value is strictly less than that of \texttt{\intexpr_2}. The result is left in the input stream as an \textit{integer denotation} after two expansions.

### 20.2 Creating and initialising integers

\int_new:N \langle integer \rangle
\int_new:c \langle integer \rangle

Creates a new \langle integer \rangle or raises an error if the name is already taken. The declaration is global. The \langle integer \rangle is initially equal to 0.

\int_const:Nn \langle integer \rangle \{\text{integer expression}\}
\int_const:cn \langle integer \rangle \{\text{integer expression}\}

Creates a new constant \langle integer \rangle or raises an error if the name is already taken. The value of the \langle integer \rangle is set globally to the \langle integer expression\rangle.

\int_zero:N \langle integer \rangle
\int_zero:c \langle integer \rangle
\int_gzero:N \langle integer \rangle
\int_gzero:c \langle integer \rangle

Sets \langle integer \rangle to 0.

\int_zero_new:N \langle integer \rangle
\int_zero_new:c \langle integer \rangle
\int_gzero_new:N \langle integer \rangle
\int_gzero_new:c \langle integer \rangle

Ensures that the \langle integer \rangle exists globally by applying \texttt{\int_new:N} if necessary, then applies \texttt{\int_(g)zero:N} to leave the \langle integer \rangle set to zero.

\int_set_eq:NN \langle integer_1 \rangle \langle integer_2 \rangle
\int_set_eq:NN \langle integer_2 \rangle \langle integer_1 \rangle
\int_gset_eq:NN \langle integer_1 \rangle \langle integer_2 \rangle
\int_gset_eq:NN \langle integer_2 \rangle \langle integer_1 \rangle

Sets the content of \langle integer_1 \rangle equal to that of \langle integer_2 \rangle.

\int_if_exist_p:N \langle int \rangle
\int_if_exist_p:c \langle int \rangle
\int_if_exist:NTF \langle int \rangle \{\text{true code}\} \{\text{false code}\}
\int_if_exist:NTF \langle int \rangle \{\text{false code}\} \{\text{true code}\}

Tests whether the \langle int \rangle is currently defined. This does not check that the \langle int \rangle really is an integer variable.
20.3 Setting and incrementing integers

\texttt{\textbackslash int\_add:Nn} \texttt{\textbackslash int\_add:cn}
\texttt{\textbackslash int\_gadd:Nn} \texttt{\textbackslash int\_gadd:cn}

\texttt{\int\_add:Nn} \texttt{(integer) \{(integer expression)\}}

Adds the result of the \texttt{(integer expression)} to the current content of the \texttt{(integer)}.

\texttt{\int\_decr:N} \texttt{\int\_decr:c}
\texttt{\int\_gdecr:N} \texttt{\int\_gdecr:c}

\texttt{\int\_decr:N} \texttt{(integer)}

Decreases the value stored in \texttt{\textit{integer}} by 1.

\texttt{\int\_incr:N} \texttt{\int\_incr:c}
\texttt{\int\_gincr:N} \texttt{\int\_gincr:c}

\texttt{\int\_incr:N} \texttt{(integer)}

 Increases the value stored in \texttt{(integer)} by 1.

\texttt{\int\_set:Nn} \texttt{\int\_set:cn}
\texttt{\int\_gset:Nn} \texttt{\int\_gset:cn}

\texttt{\int\_set:Nn} \texttt{(integer) \{(integer expression)\}}

Sets \texttt{(integer)} to the value of \texttt{(integer expression)}, which must evaluate to an integer (as described for \texttt{\int\_eval:n}).

\texttt{\int\_sub:Nn} \texttt{\int\_sub:cn}
\texttt{\int\_gsub:Nn} \texttt{\int\_gsub:cn}

\texttt{\int\_sub:Nn} \texttt{(integer) \{(integer expression)\}}

Subtracts the result of the \texttt{(integer expression)} from the current content of the \texttt{(integer)}.

20.4 Using integers

\texttt{\int\_use:N} \texttt{\int\_use:c}

\texttt{\int\_use:N} \texttt{(integer)}

Recovering the content of an \texttt{(integer)} and places it directly in the input stream. An error is raised if the variable does not exist or if it is invalid. Can be omitted in places where an \texttt{\textit{integer}} is required (such as in the first and third arguments of \texttt{\int\_compare:nNnTF}).

\textbf{\LaTeX}hackers note: \texttt{\int\_use:N} is the \LaTeX primitive \texttt{\the}: this is one of several \LaTeX3 names for this primitive.
20.5 Integer expression conditionals

\int_compare_p:nNn \int_compare_p:nNn \{\text{intexpr}_1\} \{\text{relation}\} \{\text{intexpr}_2\}
\int_compare:nNnTF \{\text{intexpr}_1\} \{\text{relation}\} \{\text{intexpr}_2\}
\{\text{true code}\} \{\text{false code}\}

This function first evaluates each of the \textit{integer expressions} as described for \texttt{\int_eval:n}. The two results are then compared using the \textit{relation}:

- Equal =
- Greater than >
- Less than <

This function is less flexible than \texttt{\int_compare:nTF} but around 5 times faster.

\int_compare_p:n \int_compare_p:n \{\text{intexpr}_1\} \{\text{relation}_1\}
\{\text{intexpr}_2\} \{\text{relation}_2\}
\{\text{intexpr}_3\} \{\text{relation}_3\}
\{\text{intexpr}_{N+1}\}
\int_compare:nTF \{\text{intexpr}_1\} \{\text{relation}_1\}
\{\text{intexpr}_2\} \{\text{relation}_2\}
\{\text{intexpr}_3\} \{\text{relation}_3\}
\{\text{intexpr}_{N+1}\}
\{\text{true code}\} \{\text{false code}\}

This function evaluates the \textit{integer expressions} as described for \texttt{\int_eval:n} and compares consecutive result using the corresponding \textit{relation}, namely it compares \textit{intexpr}_1 and \textit{intexpr}_2 using the \textit{relation}_1, then \textit{intexpr}_2 and \textit{intexpr}_3 using the \textit{relation}_2, until finally comparing \textit{intexpr}_N and \textit{intexpr}_{N+1} using the \textit{relation}_N. The test yields true if all comparisons are true. Each \textit{integer expression} is evaluated only once, and the evaluation is lazy, in the sense that if one comparison is false, then no other \textit{integer expression} is evaluated and no other comparison is performed. The \textit{relations} can be any of the following:

- Equal = or ==
- Greater than or equal to >=
- Greater than >
- Less than or equal to <=
- Less than <
- Not equal !=

This function is more flexible than \texttt{\int_compare:nNnTF} but around 5 times slower.
\int_case:nn \quad \int_case:nn \quad \int_case:nnTF \quad \int_case:nnTF

This function evaluates the \textit{(test integer expression)} and compares this in turn to each of the \textit{(integer expression cases)}. If the two are equal then the associated \textit{(code)} is left in the input stream and other cases are discarded. If any of the cases are matched, the \textit{(true code)} is also inserted into the input stream (after the code for the appropriate case), while if none match then the \textit{(false code)} is inserted. The function \texttt{\int_case:nn}, which does nothing if there is no match, is also available. For example

\begin{code}
\int_case:nnF
\{ 2 * 5 \}
{ 5 } \quad \{ \text{Small} \}
{ 4 + 6 } \quad \{ \text{Medium} \}
{ -2 * 10 } \quad \{ \text{Negative} \}
{ \text{No idea!} \}
\end{code}

leaves “Medium” in the input stream.

\int_if_odd_p:n \quad \int_if_odd:nTF \quad \int_if_odd:n \quad \int_if_odd:nTF

This function first evaluates the \textit{(integer expression)} as described for \texttt{\int_eval:n}. It then evaluates if this is odd or even, as appropriate.

\section*{20.6 Integer expression loops}

\int_do_until:nNnn \quad \int_do_until:nNmm \quad \int_do_until:nNmn \quad \int_do_until:nNnm

Places the \textit{(code)} in the input stream for \TeX\ to process, and then evaluates the relationship between the two \textit{(integer expressions)} as described for \texttt{\int_compare:nNnTF}. If the test is \texttt{false} then the \textit{(code)} is inserted into the input stream again and a loop occurs until the \textit{(relation)} is \texttt{true}.

\int_do_while:nNnn \quad \int_do_while:nNmm \quad \int_do_while:nNmn \quad \int_do_while:nNnm

Places the \textit{(code)} in the input stream for \TeX\ to process, and then evaluates the relationship between the two \textit{(integer expressions)} as described for \texttt{\int_compare:nNnTF}. If the test is \texttt{true} then the \textit{(code)} is inserted into the input stream again and a loop occurs until the \textit{(relation)} is \texttt{false}. 
\int_until_do:nNnn \star \int_until_do:nNnn \{\intexpr_1\} \{\relation\} \{\intexpr_2\} \{\code\}

Evaluates the relationship between the two \textit{integer expressions} as described for \texttt{\int_compare:nTF}, and then places the \texttt{\code} in the input stream if the \texttt{\relation} is \texttt{false}. After the \texttt{\code} has been processed by \TeX{} the test is repeated, and a loop occurs until the test is \texttt{true}.

\int_while_do:nNnn \star \int_while_do:nNnn \{\intexpr_1\} \{\relation\} \{\intexpr_2\} \{\code\}

Evaluates the relationship between the two \textit{integer expressions} as described for \texttt{\int_compare:nTF}, and then places the \texttt{\code} in the input stream if the \texttt{\relation} is \texttt{true}. After the \texttt{\code} has been processed by \TeX{} the test is repeated, and a loop occurs until the test is \texttt{false}.

\int_do_until:nn \star \int_do_until:nn \{\integer relation\} \{\code\}

Places the \texttt{\code} in the input stream for \TeX{} to process, and then evaluates the \texttt{\integer relation} as described for \texttt{\int_compare:nTF}. If the test is \texttt{false} then the \texttt{\code} is inserted into the input stream again and a loop occurs until the \texttt{\relation} is \texttt{true}.

\int_do_while:nn \star \int_do_while:nn \{\integer relation\} \{\code\}

Places the \texttt{\code} in the input stream for \TeX{} to process, and then evaluates the \texttt{\integer relation} as described for \texttt{\int_compare:nTF}. If the test is \texttt{true} then the \texttt{\code} is inserted into the input stream again and a loop occurs until the \texttt{\relation} is \texttt{false}.

\int_until_do:nn \star \int_until_do:nn \{\integer relation\} \{\code\}

Evaluates the \texttt{\integer relation} as described for \texttt{\int_compare:nTF}, and then places the \texttt{\code} in the input stream if the \texttt{\relation} is \texttt{false}. After the \texttt{\code} has been processed by \TeX{} the test is repeated, and a loop occurs until the test is \texttt{true}.

\int_while_do:nn \star \int_while_do:nn \{\integer relation\} \{\code\}

Evaluates the \texttt{\integer relation} as described for \texttt{\int_compare:nTF}, and then places the \texttt{\code} in the input stream if the \texttt{\relation} is \texttt{true}. After the \texttt{\code} has been processed by \TeX{} the test is repeated, and a loop occurs until the test is \texttt{false}.
20.7 Integer step functions

\begin{verbatim}
\int_step_function:nnN \int_step_function:nnN \int_step_function:nnN
\end{verbatim}

This function first evaluates the \langle initial value \rangle, \langle step \rangle and \langle final value \rangle, all of which should be integer expressions. Then for each \langle value \rangle from the \langle initial value \rangle to the \langle final value \rangle in turn (using \langle step \rangle between each \langle value \rangle). The \langle step \rangle must be non-zero. If the \langle step \rangle is positive, the loop stops when the \langle value \rangle becomes larger than the \langle final value \rangle. If the \langle step \rangle is negative, the loop stops when the \langle value \rangle becomes smaller than the \langle final value \rangle. The \langle function \rangle should absorb one numerical argument. For example

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_set:Npn \my_func:n #1 { \[I~saw~#1\] \quad }
\end{verbatim}

would print

\begin{verbatim}
[I saw 1] [I saw 2] [I saw 3] [I saw 4] [I saw 5]
\end{verbatim}

The functions \int_step_function:nnN and \int_step_function:nnN both use a fixed \langle step \rangle of 1, and in the case of \int_step_function:nnN the \langle initial value \rangle is also fixed as 1. These functions are provided as simple short-cuts for code clarity.

\begin{verbatim}
\int_step_inline:nn \int_step_inline:nn \int_step_inline:nn
\end{verbatim}

This function first evaluates the \langle initial value \rangle, \langle step \rangle and \langle final value \rangle, all of which should be integer expressions. Then for each \langle value \rangle from the \langle initial value \rangle to the \langle final value \rangle in turn (using \langle step \rangle between each \langle value \rangle), the \langle code \rangle is inserted into the input stream with \#1 replaced by the current \langle value \rangle. Thus the \langle code \rangle should define a function of one argument (\#1).

The functions \int_step_inline:nn and \int_step_inline:nn both use a fixed \langle step \rangle of 1, and in the case of \int_step_inline:nn the \langle initial value \rangle is also fixed as 1. These functions are provided as simple short-cuts for code clarity.

\begin{verbatim}
\int_step_variable:nN \int_step_variable:nN \int_step_variable:nNnN
\end{verbatim}

This function first evaluates the \langle initial value \rangle, \langle step \rangle and \langle final value \rangle, all of which should be integer expressions. Then for each \langle value \rangle from the \langle initial value \rangle to the \langle final value \rangle in turn (using \langle step \rangle between each \langle value \rangle), the \langle code \rangle is inserted into the input stream, with the \langle tl var \rangle defined as the current \langle value \rangle. Thus the \langle code \rangle should make use of the \langle tl var \rangle.

The functions \int_step_variable:nN and \int_step_variable:nNnN both use a fixed \langle step \rangle of 1, and in the case of \int_step_variable:nN the \langle initial value \rangle is also fixed as 1. These functions are provided as simple short-cuts for code clarity.
20.8 Formatting integers

Integers can be placed into the output stream with formatting. These conversions apply to any integer expressions.

\texttt{\textbackslash int\_to\_arabic:n \{integer expression\}}

Places the value of the \texttt{\{integer expression\}} in the input stream as digits, with category code 12 (other).

\texttt{\textbackslash int\_to\_alph:n \{integer expression\}}

Evaluates the \texttt{(integer expression)} and converts the result into a series of letters, which are then left in the input stream. The conversion rule uses the 26 letters of the English alphabet, in order, adding letters when necessary to increase the total possible range of representable numbers. Thus

\begin{verbatim}
\int_to_alph:n { 1 }
\end{verbatim}

places a in the input stream,

\begin{verbatim}
\int_to_alph:n { 26 }
\end{verbatim}

is represented as z and

\begin{verbatim}
\int_to_alph:n { 27 }
\end{verbatim}

is converted to aa. For conversions using other alphabets, use \texttt{\int_to\_symbols:nnn} to define an alphabet-specific function. The basic \texttt{\int_to\_alph:n} and \texttt{\int_to\_Alph:n} functions should not be modified. The resulting tokens are digits with category code 12 (other) and letters with category code 11 (letter).

\texttt{\textbackslash int\_to\_symbols:nnn \{integer expression\} \{total symbols\} \{value to symbol mapping\}}

This is the low-level function for conversion of an \texttt{(integer expression)} into a symbolic form (often letters). The \texttt{(total symbols)} available should be given as an integer expression. Values are actually converted to symbols according to the \texttt{(value to symbol mapping)}. This should be given as \texttt{(total symbols)} pairs of entries, a number and the appropriate symbol. Thus the \texttt{\int_to\_alph:n} function is defined as

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \int_to\_alph:n #1
{
  \int_to\_symbols:nnn \{#1\} {26}
  {
    {1} {a}
    {2} {b}
    ...
    {26} {z}
  }
}
\end{verbatim}
\int_to_bin:n \{\text{integer expression}\}

Calculates the value of the \textit{integer expression} and places the binary representation of the result in the input stream.

\int_to_hex:n \{\text{integer expression}\}

Calculates the value of the \textit{integer expression} and places the hexadecimal (base 16) representation of the result in the input stream. Letters are used for digits beyond 9: lower case letters for \texttt{int_to_hex:n} and upper case ones for \texttt{int_to_Hex:n}. The resulting tokens are digits with category code 12 (other) and letters with category code 11 (letter).

\int_to_oct:n \{\text{integer expression}\}

Calculates the value of the \textit{integer expression} and places the octal (base 8) representation of the result in the input stream. The resulting tokens are digits with category code 12 (other) and letters with category code 11 (letter).

\int_to_base:nn \{\text{integer expression}\} \{\text{base}\}

Calculates the value of the \textit{integer expression} and converts it into the appropriate representation in the \textit{base}; the later may be given as an integer expression. For bases greater than 10 the higher “digits” are represented by letters from the English alphabet: lower case letters for \texttt{int_to_base:n} and upper case ones for \texttt{int_to_Base:n}. The maximum \textit{base} value is 36. The resulting tokens are digits with category code 12 (other) and letters with category code 11 (letter).

\int_to_roman:n \{\text{integer expression}\}

Places the value of the \textit{integer expression} in the input stream as Roman numerals, either lower case \texttt{int_to_roman:n} or upper case \texttt{int_to_Roman:n}. If the value is negative or zero, the output is empty. The Roman numerals are letters with category code 11 (letter). The letters used are \texttt{mdclxvi}, repeated as needed: the notation with bars (such as \texttt{\textbar\ v} for 5000) is not used. For instance \texttt{\int_to_roman:n \{ 8249 \}} expands to \texttt{mnmnmnmccxlix}.

\int_from_alph:n \{\text{letters}\}

Converts the \textit{letters} into the integer (base 10) representation and leaves this in the input stream. The \textit{letters} are first converted to a string, with no expansion. Lower and upper case letters from the English alphabet may be used, with “\texttt{a}” equal to 1 through to “\texttt{z}” equal to 26. The function also accepts a leading sign, made of + and -. This is the inverse function of \texttt{\int_to_alph:n} and \texttt{\int_to_Alph:n}.

\textbf{20.9 Converting from other formats to integers}
\int_{\text{from bin}}:n \quad \int_{\text{from bin}}:n \{\langle \text{binary number} \rangle\}

Converts the \langle binary number \rangle into the integer (base 10) representation and leaves this in the input stream. The \langle binary number \rangle is first converted to a string, with no expansion. The function accepts a leading sign, made of + and -, followed by binary digits. This is the inverse function of \int_{\text{to bin}}:n.

\int_{\text{from hex}}:n \quad \int_{\text{from hex}}:n \{\langle \text{hexadecimal number} \rangle\}

Converts the \langle hexadecimal number \rangle into the integer (base 10) representation and leaves this in the input stream. Digits greater than 9 may be represented in the \langle hexadecimal number \rangle by upper or lower case letters. The \langle hexadecimal number \rangle is first converted to a string, with no expansion. The function also accepts a leading sign, made of + and -. This is the inverse function of \int_{\text{to hex}}:n and \int_{\text{to Hex}}:n.

\int_{\text{from oct}}:n \quad \int_{\text{from oct}}:n \{\langle \text{octal number} \rangle\}

Converts the \langle octal number \rangle into the integer (base 10) representation and leaves this in the input stream. The \langle octal number \rangle is first converted to a string, with no expansion. The function accepts a leading sign, made of + and -, followed by octal digits. This is the inverse function of \int_{\text{to oct}}:n.

\int_{\text{from roman}}:n \quad \int_{\text{from roman}}:n \{\langle \text{roman numeral} \rangle\}

Converts the \langle roman numeral \rangle into the integer (base 10) representation and leaves this in the input stream. The \langle roman numeral \rangle is first converted to a string, with no expansion. The \langle roman numeral \rangle may be in upper or lower case; if the numeral contains characters besides mdcclxvi or MDCLXVI then the resulting value is -1. This is the inverse function of \int_{\text{to roman}}:n and \int_{\text{to Roman}}:n.

\int_{\text{from base}}:nn \quad \int_{\text{from base}}:nn \{\langle \text{number} \rangle\} \{\langle \text{base} \rangle\}

Converts the \langle number \rangle expressed in \langle base \rangle into the appropriate value in base 10. The \langle number \rangle is first converted to a string, with no expansion. The \langle number \rangle should consist of digits and letters (either lower or upper case), plus optionally a leading sign. The maximum \langle base \rangle value is 36. This is the inverse function of \int_{\text{to base}}:nn and \int_{\text{to Base}}:nn.

20.10 Random integers

\int_{\text{rand}}:nn \quad \int_{\text{rand}}:nn \{\langle \text{intexpr}1 \rangle\} \{\langle \text{intexpr}2 \rangle\}

Evaluates the two \langle integer expressions \rangle and produces a pseudo-random number between the two (with bounds included). This is not available in older versions of X\LaTeX.

\int_{\text{rand}}:n \quad \int_{\text{rand}}:n \{\langle \text{intexpr} \rangle\}

Evaluates the \langle integer expression \rangle then produces a pseudo-random number between 1 and the \langle intexpr \rangle (included). This is not available in older versions of X\LaTeX.
20.11 Viewing integers

\int_show:N \int_show:C
\int_show:n
Displays the value of the \textit{integer} on the terminal.

\int_log:N \int_log:C
\int_log:n
Displays the result of evaluating the \textit{integer expression} on the terminal.

20.12 Constant integers

\c_zero_int \c_one_int
The maximum value that can be stored as an integer.

\c_max_int
Maximum number of registers.

\c_max_register_int
Maximum character code completely supported by the engine.

20.13 Scratch integers

\l_tmpa_int \l_tmpb_int
Scratch integer for local assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any \LaTeX3-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.

\g_tmpa_int \g_tmpb_int
Scratch integer for global assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any \LaTeX3-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.
20.14 Direct number expansion

\int_value:w * \int_value:w (integer)
\int_value:w (integer denotation) (optional space)

Expands the following tokens until an \langle integer \rangle is formed, and leaves a normalized form (no leading sign except for negative numbers, no leading digit 0 except for zero) in the input stream as category code 12 (other) characters. The \langle integer \rangle can consist of any number of signs (with intervening spaces) followed by

- an integer variable (in fact, any \TeX{} register except \texttt{\toks}) or
- explicit digits (or by \texttt{'octal digits'} or \texttt{"hexadecimal digits"} or \texttt{'\text{character}'}).

In this last case expansion stops once a non-digit is found; if that is a space it is removed as in \texttt{f}-expansion, and so \texttt{\exp_stop_f:} may be employed as an end marker. Note that protected functions are expanded by this process.

This function requires exactly one expansion to produce a value, and so is suitable for use in cases where a number is required “directly”. In general, \texttt{\int_eval:n} is the preferred approach to generating numbers.

\TeX{}hackers note: This is the \TeX{} primitive \texttt{\number}.

20.15 Primitive conditionals

\if_int_compare:w * \if_int_compare:w (integer_1) (relation) (integer_2)
  \langle true code \rangle
\else:
  \langle false code \rangle
\fi:

Compare two integers using \langle relation \rangle, which must be one of =, < or > with category code 12. The \texttt{else}: branch is optional.

\TeX{}hackers note: These are both names for the \TeX{} primitive \texttt{\ifnum}.

\if_case:w * \if_case:w (integer) (case_0)
  \or: (case_1)
  \or: ... 
 \else: (default)
\fi:

Selects a case to execute based on the value of the \langle integer \rangle. The first case (\langle case_0 \rangle) is executed if \langle integer \rangle is 0, the second (\langle case_1 \rangle) if the \langle integer \rangle is 1, etc. The \langle integer \rangle may be a literal, a constant or an integer expression (e.g. using \texttt{\int_eval:n}).

\TeX{}hackers note: These are the \TeX{} primitives \texttt{\ifcase} and \texttt{\or}.
\if_int_odd:w * \if_int_odd:w \langle tokens \rangle \langle optional space \rangle
\langle true code \rangle
\else:
\langle true code \rangle
\fi:

Expands \langle tokens \rangle until a non-numeric token or a space is found, and tests whether the resulting \langle integer \rangle is odd. If so, \langle true code \rangle is executed. The \texttt{\textbackslash else:} branch is optional.

\textbf{\LaTeX{}Xhackers note:} This is the \LaTeX{} primitive \texttt{\textbackslash ifodd}.
Chapter 21

The l3flag package: Expandable flags

Flags are the only data-type that can be modified in expansion-only contexts. This module is meant mostly for kernel use: in almost all cases, booleans or integers should be preferred to flags because they are very significantly faster.

A flag can hold any non-negative value, which we call its \langle height \rangle. In expansion-only contexts, a flag can only be “raised”: this increases the \langle height \rangle by 1. The \langle height \rangle can also be queried expandably. However, decreasing it, or setting it to zero requires non-expandable assignments.

Flag variables are always local. They are referenced by a \langle flag name \rangle such as str_missing. The \langle flag name \rangle is used as part of \use: c constructions hence is expanded at point of use. It must expand to character tokens only, with no spaces.

A typical use case of flags would be to keep track of whether an exceptional condition has occurred during expandable processing, and produce a meaningful (non-expandable) message after the end of the expandable processing. This is exemplified by l3str-convert, which for performance reasons performs conversions of individual characters expandably and for readability reasons produces a single error message describing incorrect inputs that were encountered.

Flags should not be used without carefully considering the fact that raising a flag takes a time and memory proportional to its height. Flags should not be used unless unavoidable.

21.1 Setting up flags

\flag_new:n \flag_new:n {\langle flag name \rangle}

Creates a new flag with a name given by \langle flag name \rangle, or raises an error if the name is already taken. The \langle flag name \rangle may not contain spaces. The declaration is global, but flags are always local variables. The \langle flag \rangle initially has zero height.

\flag_clear:n \flag_clear:n {\langle flag name \rangle}

The \langle flag \rangle’ s height is set to zero. The assignment is local.
\flag_clear_new:n \flag_clear_new:n \(\text{(flag name)}\)
Ensures that the \(\text{(flag)}\) exists globally by applying \flag_new:n if necessary, then applies \flag_clear:n, setting the height to zero locally.

\flag_show:n \flag_show:n \(\text{(flag name)}\)
Displays the \(\text{(flag)}\)'s height in the terminal.

\flag_log:n \flag_log:n \(\text{(flag name)}\)
Writes the \(\text{(flag)}\)'s height to the log file.

\flag_if_exist:n \flag_if_exist:n \(\text{(flag name)}\)
This function returns \textit{true} if the \(\text{(flag name)}\) references a flag that has been defined previously, and \textit{false} otherwise.

\flag_if_raised:n \flag_if_raised:n \(\text{(flag name)}\)
This function returns \textit{true} if the \(\text{(flag)}\) has non-zero height, and \textit{false} if the \(\text{(flag)}\) has zero height.

\flag_height:n \flag_height:n \(\text{(flag name)}\)
Expands to the height of the \(\text{(flag)}\) as an integer denotation.

\flag_raise:n \flag_raise:n \(\text{(flag name)}\)
The \(\text{(flag)}\)'s height is increased by 1 locally.

\section{21.2 Expandable flag commands}
Chapter 22

The \l3clist package
Comma separated lists

Comma lists (in short, \clist) contain ordered data where items can be added to the left or right end of the list. This data type allows basic list manipulations such as adding/removing items, applying a function to every item, removing duplicate items, extracting a given item, using the comma list with specified separators, and so on. Sequences (defined in \l3seq) are safer, faster, and provide more features, so they should often be preferred to comma lists. Comma lists are mostly useful when interfacing with \LaTeX or other code that expects or provides items separated by commas.

Several items can be added at once. To ease input of comma lists from data provided by a user outside an \ExplSyntaxOn \... \ExplSyntaxOff block, spaces are removed from both sides of each comma-delimited argument upon input. Blank arguments are ignored, to allow for trailing commas or repeated commas (which may otherwise arise when concatenating comma lists “by hand”). In addition, a set of braces is removed if the result of space-trimming is braced: this allows the storage of any item in a comma list. For instance,

\begin{verbatim}
\clist_new:N \l_my_clist
\clist_put_left:Nn \l_my_clist { -a- , -{b}- , c\textbackslash d } \\
\clist_put_right:Nn \l_my_clist { -{e-} , , {f} , }
\end{verbatim}

results in $\l_my_clist$ containing \texttt{a,b,c\textbackslash d,{e-},{f}} namely the five items \texttt{a, b, c\textbackslash d, e- and \{f\}. Comma lists normally do not contain empty or blank items so the following gives an empty comma list:

\begin{verbatim}
\clist_clear_new:N \l_my_clist
\clist_set:Nn \l_my_clist { , - , , }
\clist_if_empty:NTF \l_my_clist { true } { false }
\end{verbatim}

and it leaves \texttt{true} in the input stream. To include an “unsafe” item (empty, or one that contains a comma, or starts or ends with a space, or is a single brace group), surround it with braces.

Any n-type token list is a valid comma list input for \l3clist functions, which will split the token list at every comma and process the items as described above. On the other hand, \N-type functions expect comma list variables, which are particular token list variables in which this processing of items (and removal of blank items) has already
occurred. Because comma list variables are token list variables, expanding them once yields their items separated by commas, and \texttt{l3tl} functions such as \texttt{tl\_show:N} can be applied to them. (These functions often have \texttt{l3clist} analogues, which should be preferred.)

Almost all operations on comma lists are noticeably slower than those on sequences so converting the data to sequences using \texttt{\seq\_set\_from\_clist:Nn} (see \texttt{l3seq}) may be advisable if speed is important. The exception is that \texttt{\clist\_if\_in:NnTF} and \texttt{\clist\_remove\_duplicates:N} may be faster than their sequence analogues for large lists. However, these functions work slowly for “unsafe” items that must be braced, and may produce errors when their argument contains \{, \} or \# (assuming the usual \TeX{} category codes apply). The sequence data type should thus certainly be preferred to comma lists to store such items.

### 22.1 Creating and initialising comma lists

\begin{verbatim}
\clist_new:N \clist_new:c
\clist_const:Nn \clist_const:(N|cn|cx)
New: 2014-07-05
\clist_clear:N \clist_clear:c \clist_gclear:N \clist_gclear:c
\clist_clear_new:N \clist_clear_new:c \clist_gclear_new:N \clist_gclear_new:c
\clist_set_eq:NN \clist_set_eq: (cN|Nc|cc) \clist_gset_eq:NN \clist_gset_eq: (cN|Nc|cc)
\clist_set_from_seq:NN \clist_set_from_seq: (cN|Nc|cc) \clist_gset_from_seq:NN \clist_gset_from_seq: (cN|Nc|cc)
\end{verbatim}

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{\clist\_new:N \langle comma list \rangle} \texttt{\clist\_new:c} creates a new \langle comma list \rangle or raises an error if the name is already taken. The declaration is global. The \langle comma list \rangle initially contains no items.
\item \texttt{\clist\_const:Nn \langle list var \rangle \{\langle comma list \rangle\}} creates a new constant \langle list var \rangle or raises an error if the name is already taken. The value of the \langle list var \rangle is set globally to the \langle comma list \rangle.
\item \texttt{\clist\_clear:N \langle comma list \rangle} clears all items from the \langle comma list \rangle.
\item \texttt{\clist\_clear\_new:N \langle comma list \rangle} ensures that the \langle comma list \rangle exists globally by applying \texttt{\clist\_new:N} if necessary, then applies \texttt{\clist\_\(g\)clear:N} to leave the list empty.
\item \texttt{\clist\_set\_eq:NN \langle comma list \rangle \{\langle comma list \rangle\}} \texttt{\clist\_set\_eq: (cN|Nc|cc)} \texttt{\clist\_gset\_eq:NN \clist\_gset\_eq: (cN|Nc|cc)} \texttt{\clist\_set\_from\_seq:NN \langle comma list \rangle \{\langle sequence \rangle\}} \texttt{\clist\_set\_from\_seq: (cN|Nc|cc)} \texttt{\clist\_gset\_from\_seq:NN \clist\_gset\_from\_seq: (cN|Nc|cc)}
\end{itemize}

Converting the data in the \langle sequence \rangle into a \langle comma list \rangle: the original \langle sequence \rangle is unchanged. Items which contain either spaces or commas are surrounded by braces.
Concatenates the content of ⟨comma list₂⟩ and ⟨comma list₃⟩ together and saves the result in ⟨comma list₁⟩. The items in ⟨comma list₂⟩ are placed at the left side of the new comma list.

Tests whether the ⟨comma list⟩ is currently defined. This does not check that the ⟨comma list⟩ really is a comma list.

Sets ⟨comma list⟩ to contain the ⟨items⟩, removing any previous content from the variable. Blank items are omitted, spaces are removed from both sides of each item, then a set of braces is removed if the resulting space-trimmed item is braced. To store some ⟨tokens⟩ as a single ⟨item⟩ even if the ⟨tokens⟩ contain commas or spaces, add a set of braces: \clist_set:Nn ⟨comma list⟩ { ⟨tokens⟩ }.

Appends the ⟨items⟩ to the left of the ⟨comma list⟩. Blank items are omitted, spaces are removed from both sides of each item, then a set of braces is removed if the resulting space-trimmed item is braced. To append some ⟨tokens⟩ as a single ⟨item⟩ even if the ⟨tokens⟩ contain commas or spaces, add a set of braces: \clist_put_left:Nn ⟨comma list⟩ { ⟨tokens⟩ }.

Appends the ⟨items⟩ to the right of the ⟨comma list⟩. Blank items are omitted, spaces are removed from both sides of each item, then a set of braces is removed if the resulting space-trimmed item is braced. To append some ⟨tokens⟩ as a single ⟨item⟩ even if the ⟨tokens⟩ contain commas or spaces, add a set of braces: \clist_put_right:Nn ⟨comma list⟩ { ⟨tokens⟩ }.

22.2 Adding data to comma lists
22.3 Modifying comma lists

While comma lists are normally used as ordered lists, it may be necessary to modify the content. The functions here may be used to update comma lists, while retaining the order of the unaffected entries.

\clist_remove_duplicates:N \clist_remove_duplicates:N \clist_gremove_duplicates:N \clist_gremove_duplicates:c

Removes duplicate items from the \textit{comma list}, leaving the left most copy of each item in the \textit{comma list}. The \textit{item} comparison takes place on a token basis, as for \texttt{\tl_if_eq:nnTF}.

\textbf{\TeXhackers note:} This function iterates through every item in the \textit{comma list} and does a comparison with the \textit{items} already checked. It is therefore relatively slow with large comma lists. Furthermore, it may fail if any of the items in the \textit{comma list} contains \{, \}, or \# (assuming the usual \TeX{} category codes apply).

\clist_remove_all:Nn \clist_remove_all:Nn \clist_gremove_all:Nn \clist_gremove_all:c

Updated: 2011-09-06

Removes every occurrence of \textit{item} from the \textit{comma list}. The \textit{item} comparison takes place on a token basis, as for \texttt{\tl_if_eq:nnTF}.

\textbf{\TeXhackers note:} The function may fail if the \textit{item} contains \{, \}, or \# (assuming the usual \TeX{} category codes apply).

\clist_reverse:N \clist_reverse:N \clist_greverse:N \clist_greverse:c

New: 2014-07-18

Reverses the order of items stored in the \textit{comma list}.

\clist_reverse:n \clist_reverse:n

New: 2014-07-18

Leaves the items in the \textit{comma list} in the input stream in reverse order. Contrarily to other what is done for other n-type \textit{comma list} arguments, braces and spaces are preserved by this process.

\textbf{\TeXhackers note:} The result is returned within \texttt{\unexpanded}, which means that the comma list does not expand further when appearing in an x-type or e-type argument expansion.
\clist_sort:Nn \clist_sort:cn \clist_gsort:Nn \clist_gsort:cn

Sorts the items in the \clist var according to the \comparison code, and assigns the result to \clist var. The details of sorting comparison are described in Section 6.1.

\section{Comma list conditionals}

\clist_if_empty_p:N \clist_if_empty_p:cn \clist_if_empty:NTF \clist_if_empty:c

Tests if the \comma list is empty (containing no items). The rules for space trimming are as for other \n-type \comma list functions, hence the comma list \{~,-,-,\} (without outer braces) is empty, while \{-,\} (without outer braces) contains one element, which happens to be empty: the comma-list is not empty.

\clist_if_in:NnTF \clist_if_in:nTF \clist_if_in:NN \clist_if_in:nn

Tests if the \item is present in the \comma list. In the case of an \n-type \comma list, the usual rules of space trimming and brace stripping apply. Hence,

\clist_if_in:nnTF \{ a , {b}~ , {b} , c \} \{ b \} \{true\} \{false\}

yields \texttt{true}.

\TeXhackers note: The function may fail if the \item contains \{, \}, or \# (assuming the usual \TeX category codes apply).

\section{Mapping over comma lists}

The functions described in this section apply a specified function to each item of a comma list. All mappings are done at the current group level, \textit{i.e.} any local assignments made by the \texttt{function} or \texttt{code} discussed below remain in effect after the loop.

When the comma list is given explicitly, as an \n-type argument, spaces are trimmed around each item. If the result of trimming spaces is empty, the item is ignored. Otherwise, if the item is surrounded by braces, one set is removed, and the result is passed to the mapped function. Thus, if the comma list that is being mapped is \{a,\{b\},\}, then the arguments passed to the mapped function are \texttt{`a'}, \texttt{`b'}, an empty argument, and \texttt{c}.'
When the comma list is given as an N-type argument, spaces have already been trimmed on input, and items are simply stripped of one set of braces if any. This case is more efficient than using n-type comma lists.

\clist_map_function:NN \clist_map_function:CN \clist_map_function:nN
\clist_map_inline:Nn \clist_map_inline:cn \clist_map_inline:nn
\clist_map_variable:NNn \clist_map_variable:CNn \clist_map_variable:nNn
\clist_map_tokens:Nn \clist_map_tokens:cn \clist_map_tokens:nn
\clist_map_break:

\clist_map_function:NN ⟨comma list⟩ ⟨function⟩

Applies ⟨function⟩ to every ⟨item⟩ stored in the ⟨comma list⟩. The ⟨function⟩ receives one argument for each iteration. The ⟨items⟩ are returned from left to right. The function \clist_map_inline:Nn is in general more efficient than \clist_map_function:NN.

\clist_map_inline:Nn ⟨comma list⟩ \{⟨inline function⟩\}

Applies ⟨inline function⟩ to every ⟨item⟩ stored within the ⟨comma list⟩. The ⟨inline function⟩ should consist of code which receives the ⟨item⟩ as #1. The ⟨items⟩ are returned from left to right.

\clist_map_variable:NNn ⟨comma list⟩ ⟨variable⟩ \{⟨code⟩\}

Stores each ⟨item⟩ of the ⟨comma list⟩ in turn in the ⟨token list⟩ ⟨variable⟩ and applies the ⟨code⟩. The ⟨code⟩ will usually make use of the ⟨variable⟩, but this is not enforced. The assignments to the ⟨variable⟩ are local. Its value after the loop is the last ⟨item⟩ in the ⟨comma list⟩, or its original value if there were no ⟨item⟩. The ⟨items⟩ are returned from left to right.

\clist_map_tokens:Nn ⟨clist var⟩ \{⟨code⟩\}
\clist_map_tokens:nn ⟨comma list⟩ \{⟨code⟩\}

Calls ⟨code⟩ \{⟨item⟩\} for every ⟨item⟩ stored in the ⟨comma list⟩. The ⟨code⟩ receives each ⟨item⟩ as a trailing brace group. If the ⟨code⟩ consists of a single function this is equivalent to \clist_map_function:nN.

\clist_map_break:

Used to terminate a \clist_map_... function before all entries in the ⟨comma list⟩ have been processed. This normally takes place within a conditional statement, for example

\clist_map_inline:Nn \l_my_clist
{ \str_if_eq:nnTF { #1 } { bingo } { \clist_map_break: } % Do something useful }

Use outside of a \clist_map_... scenario leads to low level \TeX errors.

\TeX hackers note: When the mapping is broken, additional tokens may be inserted before further items are taken from the input stream. This depends on the design of the mapping function.
\clist_map_break:n \langle code \rangle

Used to terminate a \clist_map_... function before all entries in the \langle comma list \rangle have been processed, inserting the \langle code \rangle after the mapping has ended. This normally takes place within a conditional statement, for example

\clist_map_inline:Nn \l_my_clist
{ \str_if_eq:nnTF { #1 } { bingo } { \clist_map_break:n { <code> } } { % Do something useful } }

Use outside of a \clist_map_... scenario leads to low level \TeX errors.

\TeXhackers note: When the mapping is broken, additional tokens may be inserted before the \langle code \rangle is inserted into the input stream. This depends on the design of the mapping function.

\clist_count:N \langle comma list \rangle

Leaves the number of items in the \langle comma list \rangle in the input stream as an \langle integer denotation \rangle. The total number of items in a \langle comma list \rangle includes those which are duplicates, i.e. every item in a \langle comma list \rangle is counted.

\clist_use:Nnnn \langle clist var \rangle \{ \langle separator between two \rangle \}
\{ \langle separator between more than two \rangle \} \{ \langle separator between final two \rangle \}

Places the contents of the \langle clist var \rangle in the input stream, with the appropriate \langle separator \rangle between the items. Namely, if the comma list has more than two items, the \langle separator between more than two \rangle is placed between each pair of items except the last, for which the \langle separator between final two \rangle is used. If the comma list has exactly two items, then they are placed in the input stream separated by the \langle separator between two \rangle. If the comma list has a single item, it is placed in the input stream, and a comma list with no items produces no output. An error is raised if the variable does not exist or if it is invalid.

For example,

\clist_set:Nn \l_tmpa_clist { a , b , , c , , de , f } \clist_use:Nnnn \l_tmpa_clist { -and- } { , - } { , -and- }

inserts “a, b, c, de, and f” in the input stream. The first separator argument is not used in this case because the comma list has more than 2 items.

\TeXhackers note: The result is returned within the \texttt{unexpanded} primitive (\texttt{\exp_not:n}), which means that the \langle items \rangle do not expand further when appearing in an x-type argument expansion.
\clist_use:Nn \clist_use:cn
\texttt{\clist_use:Nn \clist var \{ \langle separator \rangle \}}
\texttt{\clist_use:Nn \clist var \{ \langle separator \rangle \}}
Places the contents of the \langle clist var \rangle in the input stream, with the \langle separator \rangle between the items. If the comma list has a single item, it is placed in the input stream, and a comma list with no items produces no output. An error is raised if the variable does not exist or if it is invalid.

For example,
\begin{verbatim}
\clist_set:Nn \l_tmpa_clist { a , b , , c , \{de\} , f }
\clist_use:Nn \l_tmpa_clist { ~and~ }
\end{verbatim}
inserts “a and b and c and de and f” in the input stream.

\textbf{\LaTeX}hackers \textit{note}: The result is returned within the \texttt{\unexpanded} primitive (\texttt{\exp_not:n}), which means that the \langle items \rangle do not expand further when appearing in an \texttt{x}-type argument expansion.

\clist_use:nnnn \clist_use:nn
\texttt{\clist_use:nnnn \langle comma list \rangle \{ \langle separator between two \rangle \}}
\texttt{\clist_use:nn \langle comma list \rangle \{ \langle separator \rangle \}}
\texttt{\clist_use:nn \langle comma list \rangle \{ \langle separator \rangle \}}
\texttt{\clist_use:nn \langle comma list \rangle \{ \langle separator \rangle \}}
\texttt{\clist_use:nn \langle comma list \rangle \{ \langle separator \rangle \}}
Places the contents of the \langle comma list \rangle in the input stream, with the appropriate \langle separator \rangle between the items. As for \texttt{\clist_set:Nn}, blank items are omitted, spaces are removed from both sides of each item, then a set of braces is removed if the resulting space-trimmed item is braced. The \langle separators \rangle are then inserted in the same way as for \texttt{\clist_use:Nnnn} and \texttt{\clist_use:Nn}, respectively.

### 22.7 Comma lists as stacks

Comma lists can be used as stacks, where data is pushed to and popped from the top of the comma list. (The left of a comma list is the top, for performance reasons.) The stack functions for comma lists are not intended to be mixed with the general ordered data functions detailed in the previous section: a comma list should either be used as an ordered data type or as a stack, but not in both ways.

\clist_get:NN \clist_get:cN
\texttt{\clist_get:NN \langle comma list \rangle \langle token list variable \rangle}
\texttt{\clist_get:cN \langle comma list \rangle \langle token list variable \rangle}
Stores the left-most item from a \langle comma list \rangle in the \langle token list variable \rangle without removing it from the \langle comma list \rangle. The \langle token list variable \rangle is assigned locally. In the non-branching version, if the \langle comma list \rangle is empty the \langle token list variable \rangle is set to the marker value \texttt{\q_no_value}.

\clist_pop:NN \clist_pop:cN
\texttt{\clist_pop:NN \langle comma list \rangle \langle token list variable \rangle}
\texttt{\clist_pop:cN \langle comma list \rangle \langle token list variable \rangle}
Pops the left-most item from a \langle comma list \rangle into the \langle token list variable \rangle, \textit{i.e.} removes the item from the comma list and stores it in the \langle token list variable \rangle. Both of the variables are assigned locally.
\clist_gpop:NN \clist_gpop:cN
Pops the left-most item from a \langle comma list \rangle into the \langle token list variable \rangle, i.e. removes the item from the comma list and stores it in the \langle token list variable \rangle. The \langle comma list \rangle is modified globally, while the assignment of the \langle token list variable \rangle is local.

\clist_gpop:NN \clist_gpop:cN
\clist_pop:NNTF \clist_pop:cN
\langle comma list \rangle \langle token list variable \rangle \{\langle true code \rangle\} \{\langle false code \rangle\}
If the \langle comma list \rangle is empty, leaves the \langle false code \rangle in the input stream. The value of the \langle token list variable \rangle is not defined in this case and should not be relied upon. If the \langle comma list \rangle is non-empty, pops the top item from the \langle comma list \rangle in the \langle token list variable \rangle, i.e. removes the item from the \langle comma list \rangle. Both the \langle comma list \rangle and the \langle token list variable \rangle are assigned locally.

\clist_gpush:Nn \clist_gpush:cN
\langle comma list \rangle \{\langle items \rangle\}
\langle comma list \rangle \{\langle integer expression \rangle\}
\Item Indexing items in the \langle comma list \rangle from 1 at the top (left), this function evaluates the \langle integer expression \rangle and leaves the appropriate item from the comma list in the input stream. If the \langle integer expression \rangle is negative, indexing occurs from the bottom (right) of the comma list. When the \langle integer expression \rangle is larger than the number of items in the \langle comma list \rangle (as calculated by \clist_count:N) then the function expands to nothing.

\LaTeXhackers note: The result is returned within the \unexpanded primitive (\exp_not:n), which means that the \langle item \rangle does not expand further when appearing in an x-type argument expansion.

\Item 22.8 Using a single item

\clist_item:Nn \clist_item:cn \clist_item:nn
\langle comma list \rangle \{\langle integer expression \rangle\}
Indexing items in the \langle comma list \rangle from 1 at the top (left), this function evaluates the \langle integer expression \rangle and leaves the appropriate item from the comma list in the input stream. If the \langle integer expression \rangle is negative, indexing occurs from the bottom (right) of the comma list. When the \langle integer expression \rangle is larger than the number of items in the \langle comma list \rangle (as calculated by \clist_count:N) then the function expands to nothing.

\LaTeXhackers note: The result is returned within the \unexpanded primitive (\exp_not:n), which means that the \langle item \rangle does not expand further when appearing in an x-type argument expansion.
\clist_rand_item:N \clist_rand_item:c \clist_rand_item:n 

Selects a pseudo-random item of the \langle comma list \rangle. If the \langle comma list \rangle has no item, the result is empty.

\textbf{\TeXhacks note:} The result is returned within the \unexpanded primitive (\exp_not:n), which means that the \langle item \rangle does not expand further when appearing in an x-type argument expansion.

\section{22.9 Viewing comma lists}

\clist_show:N \clist_show:c

Displays the entries in the \langle comma list \rangle in the terminal.

\clist_show:n

Displays the entries in the comma list in the terminal.

\clist_log:N \clist_log:c

 Writes the entries in the \langle comma list \rangle in the log file. See also \clist_show:N which displays the result in the terminal.

\clist_log:n

 Writes the entries in the comma list in the log file. See also \clist_show:n which displays the result in the terminal.

\section{22.10 Constant and scratch comma lists}

\c_empty_clist 

Constant that is always empty.

\l_tmpa_clist \l_tmpb_clist

Scratch comma lists for local assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any \LaTeX3-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.

\g_tmpa_clist \g_tmpb_clist

Scratch comma lists for global assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any \LaTeX3-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.
Chapter 23

The \texttt{l3token} package

Token manipulation

This module deals with tokens. Now this is perhaps not the most precise description so let’s try with a better description: When programming in \TeX, it is often desirable to know just what a certain token is: is it a control sequence or something else. Similarly one often needs to know if a control sequence is expandable or not, a macro or a primitive, how many arguments it takes etc. Another thing of great importance (especially when it comes to document commands) is looking ahead in the token stream to see if a certain character is present and maybe even remove it or disregard other tokens while scanning. This module provides functions for both and as such has two primary function categories: \texttt{token\_} for anything that deals with tokens and \texttt{peek\_} for looking ahead in the token stream.

Most functions we describe here can be used on control sequences, as those are tokens as well.

It is important to distinguish two aspects of a token: its “shape” (for lack of a better word), which affects the matching of delimited arguments and the comparison of token lists containing this token, and its “meaning”, which affects whether the token expands or what operation it performs. One can have tokens of different shapes with the same meaning, but not the converse.

For instance, \texttt{\if:w}, \texttt{\if_charcode:w}, and \texttt{\tex_if:D} are three names for the same internal operation of \TeX, namely the primitive testing the next two characters for equality of their character code. They have the same meaning hence behave identically in many situations. However, \TeX distinguishes them when searching for a delimited argument. Namely, the example function \texttt{\show_until_if:w} defined below takes everything until \texttt{\if:w} as an argument, despite the presence of other copies of \texttt{\if:w} under different names.

\begin{verbatim}
cs_new:Npn \show_until_if:w #1 \if:w { \tl_show:n {#1} }
\show_until_if:w \tex_if:D \if_charcode:w \if:w
\end{verbatim}

A list of all possible shapes and a list of all possible meanings are given in section 23.7.
23.1 Creating character tokens

\char_set_active_eq:NN \langle char \rangle \langle function \rangle
Sets the behaviour of the \langle char \rangle in situations where it is active (category code 13) to be equivalent to that of the \langle function \rangle. The category code of the \langle char \rangle is unchanged by this process. The \langle function \rangle may itself be an active character.

\char_set_active_eq:nN {\langle integer expression \rangle} \langle function \rangle
Sets the behaviour of the \langle char \rangle which has character code as given by the \langle integer expression \rangle in situations where it is active (category code 13) to be equivalent to that of the \langle function \rangle. The category code of the \langle char \rangle is unchanged by this process. The \langle function \rangle may itself be an active character.

\char_generate:nn {\langle charcode \rangle} {\langle catcode \rangle}
Generates a character token of the given \langle charcode \rangle and \langle catcode \rangle (both of which may be integer expressions). The \langle catcode \rangle may be one of

- 1 (begin group)
- 2 (end group)
- 3 (math toggle)
- 4 (alignment)
- 6 (parameter)
- 7 (math superscript)
- 8 (math subscript)
- 11 (letter)
- 12 (other)
- 13 (active)

and other values raise an error. The \langle charcode \rangle may be any one valid for the engine in use. Active characters cannot be generated in older versions of Xe\TeX. Another way to build token lists with unusual category codes is \regex_replace:nnN {.*} {\langle replacement \rangle} {tl \var}.

\TeXhackers note: Exactly two expansions are needed to produce the character.
\char_lowercase:N \char_uppercase:N \char_titlecase:N \char_foldcase:N \char_str_lowercase:N \char_str_uppercase:N \char_str_titlecase:N \char_str_foldcase:N

New: 2020-01-09

\c_catcode_other_space_tl
Deep: 2011-09-05

23.2 Manipulating and interrogating character tokens

\char_set_catcode_escape:N \char_set_catcode_letter:N \char_set_catcode_group_begin:N \char_set_catcode_group_end:N \char_set_catcode_math_toggle:N \char_set_catcode_alignment:N \char_set_catcode_end_line:N \char_set_catcode_parameter:N \char_set_catcode_math_superscript:N \char_set_catcode_math_subscript:N \char_set_catcode_ignore:N \char_set_catcode_space:N \char_set_catcode_letter:N \char_set_catcode_other:N \char_set_catcode_active:N \char_set_catcode_comment:N \char_set_catcode_invalid:N

Updated: 2015-11-11

Sets the category code of the \texttt{\langle character\rangle} to that indicated in the function name. Depending on the current category code of the \texttt{\langle token\rangle} the escape token may also be needed:

\char_set_catcode_other:N \%

The assignment is local.

Token list containing one character with category code 12, (“other”), and character code 32 (space).

\char_lowercase:N \langle \char \rangle

Converts the \texttt{\langle char\rangle} to the equivalent case-changed character as detailed by the function name (see \texttt{\str_foldcase:n} and \texttt{\text_titlecase:n} for details of these terms). The case mapping is carried out with no context-dependence (\textit{cf.} \texttt{\text_uppercase:n}, \textit{etc.}) The \texttt{str} versions always generate “other” (category code 12) characters, whilst the standard versions generate characters with the category code of the \texttt{\langle char\rangle} (i.e. only the character code changes).
Sets the category code of the \textit{character} which has character code as given by the \textit{integer expression}. This version can be used to set up characters which cannot otherwise be given (cf. the N-type variants). The assignment is local.

\texttt{\textbackslash char\_set\_catcode\_nn \{ \textlangle integer\ expression \rangle \} \{ \textlangle integer\ expression \rangle \}}

These functions set the category code of the \textit{character} which has character code as given by the \textit{integer expression}. The first \textit{integer expression} is the character code and the second is the category code to apply. The setting applies within the current \TeX{} group. In general, the symbolic functions \texttt{\char_set_catcode\_\langle type \rangle} should be preferred, but there are cases where these lower-level functions may be useful.

\texttt{\textbackslash char\_value\_catcode:n \{ \textlangle integer\ expression \rangle \}}

Expands to the current category code of the \textit{character} with character code given by the \textit{integer expression}.

\texttt{\char\_show\_value\_catcode:n \{ \textlangle integer\ expression \rangle \}}

Displays the current category code of the \textit{character} with character code given by the \textit{integer expression} on the terminal.

\texttt{\char\_set\_lccode:nn \{ \textlangle integer\ expression \rangle \} \{ \textlangle integer\ expression \rangle \}}

Sets up the behaviour of the \textit{character} when found inside \texttt{\text\_lowercase:n}, such that \textit{character\_1} will be converted into \textit{character\_2}. The two \textit{characters} may be specified using an \textit{integer expression} for the character code concerned. This may include the \TeX{} \texttt{'\text\_\langle character \rangle} method for converting a single character into its character code:

\texttt{\char\_set\_lccode:nn \{ ‘\text\_A \} \{ ‘\text\_a \} % Standard behaviour
\char\_set\_lccode:nn \{ ‘\text\_A \} \{ ‘\text\_a + 32 \}
\char\_set\_lccode:nn \{ 50 \} \{ 60 \}}

The setting applies within the current \TeX{} group.
\char_value_lccode:n \char_value_lccode:n \{\textbf{integer expression}\}

Expands to the current lower case code of the \langle character \rangle with character code given by the \langle integer expression \rangle.

\char_show_value_lccode:n \char_show_value_lccode:n \{\textbf{integer expression}\}

Displays the current lower case code of the \langle character \rangle with character code given by the \langle integer expression \rangle on the terminal.

\char_set_uccode:nn \char_set_uccode:nn \{\textbf{intexpr}1\} \{\textbf{intexpr}2\}

Sets up the behaviour of the \langle character \rangle when found inside \text{\texttt{text-uppercase:n}}, such that \langle character1 \rangle will be converted into \langle character2 \rangle. The two \langle characters \rangle may be specified using an \langle integer expression \rangle for the character code concerned. This may include the \TeX \langle character \rangle method for converting a single character into its character code:

\char_set_uccode:nn \{ ‘\a \} \{ ‘\A \} \% Standard behaviour
\char_set_uccode:nn \{ ‘\A \} \{ ‘\A - 32 \}
\char_set_uccode:nn \{ 60 \} \{ 50 \}

The setting applies within the current \TeX group.

\char_value_uccode:n \char_value_uccode:n \{\textbf{integer expression}\}

Expands to the current upper case code of the \langle character \rangle with character code given by the \langle integer expression \rangle.

\char_show_value_uccode:n \char_show_value_uccode:n \{\textbf{integer expression}\}

Displays the current upper case code of the \langle character \rangle with character code given by the \langle integer expression \rangle on the terminal.

\char_set_mathcode:nn \char_set_mathcode:nn \{\textbf{intexpr}1\} \{\textbf{intexpr}2\}

This function sets up the math code of \langle character \rangle. The \langle character \rangle is specified as an \langle integer expression \rangle which will be used as the character code of the relevant character. The setting applies within the current \TeX group.

\char_value_mathcode:n \char_value_mathcode:n \{\textbf{integer expression}\}

Expands to the current math code of the \langle character \rangle with character code given by the \langle integer expression \rangle.

\char_show_value_mathcode:n \char_show_value_mathcode:n \{\textbf{integer expression}\}

Displays the current math code of the \langle character \rangle with character code given by the \langle integer expression \rangle on the terminal.

\char_set_sfcode:nn \char_set_sfcode:nn \{\textbf{intexpr}1\} \{\textbf{intexpr}2\}

This function sets up the space factor for the \langle character \rangle. The \langle character \rangle is specified as an \langle integer expression \rangle which will be used as the character code of the relevant character. The setting applies within the current \TeX group.

185
\char_value_sfcode:n \star \char_show_value_sfcode:n

Expands to the current space factor for the ⟨character⟩ with character code given by the ⟨integer expression⟩.

Displays the current space factor for the ⟨character⟩ with character code given by the ⟨integer expression⟩ on the terminal.

\l_char_active_seq

Used to track which tokens may require special handling at the document level as they are (or have been at some point) of category ⟨active⟩ (catcode 13). Each entry in the sequence consists of a single escaped token, for example \-. Active tokens should be added to the sequence when they are defined for general document use.

\l_char_special_seq

Used to track which tokens will require special handling when working with verbatim-like material at the document level as they are not of categories ⟨letter⟩ (catcode 11) or ⟨other⟩ (catcode 12). Each entry in the sequence consists of a single escaped token, for example \ for the backslash or \ for an opening brace. Escaped tokens should be added to the sequence when they are defined for general document use.

23.3 Generic tokens

These are implicit tokens which have the category code described by their name. They are used internally for test purposes but are also available to the programmer for other uses.

These are implicit tokens which have the category code described by their name. They are used internally for test purposes and should not be used other than for category code tests.

A token list containing an active token. This is used internally for test purposes and should not be used other than in appropriately-constructed category code tests.
### 23.4 Converting tokens

\texttt{\textbackslash token\_to\_meaning:N} * \texttt{\textbackslash token\_to\_meaning:c} *

Inserts the current meaning of the \langle \texttt{token} \rangle into the input stream as a series of characters of category code 12 (other). This is the primitive \TeX\ description of the \langle \texttt{token} \rangle, thus for example both functions defined by \texttt{cs\_set\_nopar:Npn} and token list variables defined using \texttt{\tl\_new:N} are described as macros.

\textbf{\TeX\ hackers note:} This is the \TeX\ primitive \texttt{\meaning}. The \langle \texttt{token} \rangle can thus be an explicit space tokens or an explicit begin-group or end-group character token (\{ or \} when normal \TeX\ category codes apply) even though these are not valid \texttt{N}-type arguments.

\texttt{\textbackslash token\_to\_str:N} * \texttt{\textbackslash token\_to\_str:c} *

Converts the given \langle \texttt{token} \rangle into a series of characters with category code 12 (other). If the \langle \texttt{token} \rangle is a control sequence, this will start with the current escape character with category code 12 (the escape character is part of the \langle \texttt{token} \rangle). This function requires only a single expansion.

\textbf{\TeX\ hackers note:} \texttt{\token\_to\_str:N} is the \TeX\ primitive \texttt{\string} renamed. The \langle \texttt{token} \rangle can thus be an explicit space tokens or an explicit begin-group or end-group character token (\{ or \} when normal \TeX\ category codes apply) even though these are not valid \texttt{N}-type arguments.

### 23.5 Token conditionals

\texttt{\textbackslash token\_if\_group\_begin\_p:N} * \texttt{\textbackslash token\_if\_group\_begin\_p:N} \langle \texttt{token} \rangle

\texttt{\textbackslash token\_if\_group\_begin:NTF} *

\texttt{\textbackslash token\_if\_group\_begin:NTF} \langle \texttt{token} \rangle \{\langle \texttt{true code} \rangle\} \{\langle \texttt{false code} \rangle\}

Tests if \langle \texttt{token} \rangle has the category code of a begin group token (\{ when normal \TeX\ category codes are in force). Note that an explicit begin group token cannot be tested in this way, as it is not a valid \texttt{N}-type argument.

\texttt{\textbackslash token\_if\_group\_end\_p:N} * \texttt{\textbackslash token\_if\_group\_end\_p:N} \langle \texttt{token} \rangle

\texttt{\textbackslash token\_if\_group\_end:NTF} *

\texttt{\textbackslash token\_if\_group\_end:NTF} \langle \texttt{token} \rangle \{\langle \texttt{true code} \rangle\} \{\langle \texttt{false code} \rangle\}

Tests if \langle \texttt{token} \rangle has the category code of an end group token (\} when normal \TeX\ category codes are in force). Note that an explicit end group token cannot be tested in this way, as it is not a valid \texttt{N}-type argument.

\texttt{\textbackslash token\_if\_math\_toggle\_p:N} * \texttt{\textbackslash token\_if\_math\_toggle\_p:N} \langle \texttt{token} \rangle

\texttt{\textbackslash token\_if\_math\_toggle:NTF} *

\texttt{\textbackslash token\_if\_math\_toggle:NTF} \langle \texttt{token} \rangle \{\langle \texttt{true code} \rangle\} \{\langle \texttt{false code} \rangle\}

Tests if \langle \texttt{token} \rangle has the category code of a math shift token (\$ when normal \TeX\ category codes are in force).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>\token_if_alignment_p:N *</th>
<th>\token_if_alignment_p:N \token \token_if_alignment:NTF \token {{true code}} {{false code}}</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\token_if_alignment:NTF *</td>
<td>\token_if_alignment:NTF \token {{true code}} {{false code}}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tests if \token has the category code of an alignment token (&amp; when normal \TeX{} category codes are in force).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>\token_if_parameter_p:N *</th>
<th>\token_if_parameter_p:N \token \token_if_parameter:NTF \token {{true code}} {{false code}}</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\token_if_parameter:NTF *</td>
<td>\token_if_parameter:NTF \token {{true code}} {{false code}}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tests if \token has the category code of a macro parameter token (# when normal \TeX{} category codes are in force).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>\token_if_math_superscript_p:N *</th>
<th>\token_if_math_superscript_p:N \token \token_if_math_superscript:NTF \token {{true code}} {{false code}}</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\token_if_math_superscript:NTF *</td>
<td>\token_if_math_superscript:NTF \token {{true code}} {{false code}}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tests if \token has the category code of a superscript token (^ when normal \TeX{} category codes are in force).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>\token_if_math_subscript_p:N *</th>
<th>\token_if_math_subscript_p:N \token \token_if_math_subscript:NTF \token {{true code}} {{false code}}</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\token_if_math_subscript:NTF *</td>
<td>\token_if_math_subscript:NTF \token {{true code}} {{false code}}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tests if \token has the category code of a subscript token (_ when normal \TeX{} category codes are in force).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>\token_if_space_p:N *</th>
<th>\token_if_space_p:N \token \token_if_space:NTF \token {{true code}} {{false code}}</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\token_if_space:NTF *</td>
<td>\token_if_space:NTF \token {{true code}} {{false code}}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tests if \token has the category code of a space token. Note that an explicit space token with character code 32 cannot be tested in this way, as it is not a valid N-type argument.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>\token_if_letter_p:N *</th>
<th>\token_if_letter_p:N \token \token_if_letter:NTF \token {{true code}} {{false code}}</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\token_if_letter:NTF *</td>
<td>\token_if_letter:NTF \token {{true code}} {{false code}}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tests if \token has the category code of a letter token.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>\token_if_other_p:N *</th>
<th>\token_if_other_p:N \token \token_if_other:NTF \token {{true code}} {{false code}}</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\token_if_other:NTF *</td>
<td>\token_if_other:NTF \token {{true code}} {{false code}}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tests if \token has the category code of an “other” token.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>\token_if_active_p:N *</th>
<th>\token_if_active_p:N \token \token_if_active:NTF \token {{true code}} {{false code}}</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\token_if_active:NTF *</td>
<td>\token_if_active:NTF \token {{true code}} {{false code}}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tests if \token has the category code of an active character.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>\token_if_eq_catcode_p:NN *</th>
<th>\token_if_eq_catcode_p:NN \token_1 \token_2 \token_if_eq_catcode:NNTF \token_1 \token_2 {{true code}} {{false code}}</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\token_if_eq_catcode:NNTF *</td>
<td>\token_if_eq_catcode:NNTF \token_1 \token_2 {{true code}} {{false code}}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tests if the two \tokens have the same category code.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>\token_if_eq_charcode_p:NN *</th>
<th>\token_if_eq_charcode_p:NN \token_1 \token_2 \token_if_eq_charcode:NNTF \token_1 \token_2 {{true code}} {{false code}}</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\token_if_eq_charcode:NNTF *</td>
<td>\token_if_eq_charcode:NNTF \token_1 \token_2 {{true code}} {{false code}}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tests if the two \tokens have the same character code.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
\token_if_eq{NN}{token1}{token2} \token_if_eq{NNTF}{token1}{token2} \{true code\} \{false code\}

Tests if the two \textit{tokens} have the same meaning when expanded.

\token_if{N}{token} \token_if{NTF}{token} \{true code\} \{false code\}

Tests if the \textit{token} is a \TeX{} macro.

\token_if{N}{token} \token_if{NTF}{token} \{true code\} \{false code\}

Tests if the \textit{token} is a control sequence.

\token_if{N}{token} \token_if{NTF}{token} \{true code\} \{false code\}

Tests if the \textit{token} is expandable. This test returns \textit{false} for an undefined token.

\token_if{N}{token} \token_if{NTF}{token} \{true code\} \{false code\}

Tests if the \textit{token} is a long macro.

\token_if{N}{token} \token_if{NTF}{token} \{true code\} \{false code\}

Tests if the \textit{token} is a protected macro: for a macro which is both protected and long this returns \textit{false}.

\token_if{N}{token} \token_if{NTF}{token} \{true code\} \{false code\}

Tests if the \textit{token} is a long macro.

\token_if{N}{token} \token_if{NTF}{token} \{true code\} \{false code\}

Tests if the \textit{token} is defined to be a \texttt{chardef}.

\token_if{N}{token} \token_if{NTF}{token} \{true code\} \{false code\}

Tests if the \textit{token} is defined to be a \texttt{mathchardef}.

\TeX{}hackers note: Booleans, boxes and small integer constants are implemented as \texttt{chardefs}.
Tests if the \texttt{<token>} is defined to be a font selection command.

Tests if the \texttt{<token>} is defined to be a dimension register.

Tests if the \texttt{<token>} is defined to be a integer register.

\textbf{\TeX}hackers note: Constant integers may be implemented as integer registers, \texttt{\chardef}s, or \texttt{\mathchardef}s depending on their value.

Tests if the \texttt{<token>} is defined to be a muskip register.

Tests if the \texttt{<token>} is defined to be a skip register.

Tests if the \texttt{<token>} is defined to be a toks register (not used by \LaTeX3).

Tests if the \texttt{<token>} is an engine primitive. In \LuaTeX this includes primitive-like commands defined using \texttt{\token.set_lua}.

\texttt{\token_if_font_selection_p:N \token_if_font_selection:NTF \token \{true code\} \{false code\}}

\texttt{\token_if_dim_register_p:N \token_if_dim_register:NTF \token \{true code\} \{false code\}}

\texttt{\token_if_int_register_p:N \token_if_int_register:NTF \token \{true code\} \{false code\}}

\texttt{\token_if_muskip_register_p:N \token_if_muskip_register:NTF \token \{true code\} \{false code\}}

\texttt{\token_if_skip_register_p:N \token_if_skip_register:NTF \token \{true code\} \{false code\}}

\texttt{\token_if_toks_register_p:N \token_if_toks_register:NTF \token \{true code\} \{false code\}}

\texttt{\token_if_primitive_p:N \token_if_primitive:NTF \token \{true code\} \{false code\}}
This function compares the \textit{(test token)} in turn with each of the \textit{(token cases)}. If the two are equal (as described for \texttt{\token_if_eq_catcode:NNTF}, \texttt{\token_if_eq_charcode:NNTF} and \texttt{\token_if_eq_meaning:NNTF}, respectively) then the associated \textit{(code)} is left in the input stream and other cases are discarded. If any of the cases are matched, the \textit{(true code)} is also inserted into the input stream (after the code for the appropriate case), while if none match then the \textit{(false code)} is inserted. The functions \texttt{\token_case_catcode:Nn}, \texttt{\token_case_charcode:Nn}, and \texttt{\token_case_meaning:Nn}, which do nothing if there is no match, are also available.

### 23.6 Peeking ahead at the next token

There is often a need to look ahead at the next token in the input stream while leaving it in place. This is handled using the “peek” functions. The generic \texttt{\peek_after:Nw} is provided along with a family of predefined tests for common cases. As peeking ahead does not skip spaces the predefined tests include both a space-respecting and space-skipping version. In addition, using \texttt{\peek_analysis_map_inline:n}, one can map through the following tokens in the input stream and repeatedly perform some tests.

\begin{verbatim}
\peek_after:Nw \peek_after:Nw (function) \token
Locally sets the test variable \texttt{l_peek_token} equal to \textit{\token} (as an implicit token, not as a token list), and then expands the \texttt{(function)}. The \textit{\token} remains in the input stream as the next item after the \texttt{(function)}. The \textit{\token} here may be \texttt{\l}, \texttt{\{ or \} (assuming normal \TeX{} category codes), \textit{i.e.} it is not necessarily the next argument which would be grabbed by a normal function.

\peek_gafter:Nw \peek_gafter:Nw (function) \token
Globally sets the test variable \texttt{g_peek_token} equal to \textit{\token} (as an implicit token, not as a token list), and then expands the \texttt{(function)}. The \textit{\token} remains in the input stream as the next item after the \texttt{(function)}. The \textit{\token} here may be \texttt{l}, \texttt{\{ or \} (assuming normal \TeX{} category codes), \textit{i.e.} it is not necessarily the next argument which would be grabbed by a normal function.

\l_peek_token
Token set by \texttt{\peek_after:Nw} and available for testing as described above.

\g_peek_token
Token set by \texttt{\peek_gafter:Nw} and available for testing as described above.
\end{verbatim}
\peek_catcode:NTF \peek_catcode:NTF \test token \{\true code\} \{\false code\}
Tests if the next \test \token in the input stream has the same category code as the \test \token (as defined by the test \token_if_eq_catcode:NTF). Spaces are respected by the test and the \token is left in the input stream after the \true code or \false code (as appropriate to the result of the test).
\peek_catcode_remove:NTF \peek_catcode_remove:NTF \test token \{\true code\} \{\false code\}
Tests if the next \token in the input stream has the same category code as the \test \token (as defined by the test \token_if_eq_catcode:NTF). Spaces are respected by the test and the \token is removed from the input stream if the test is true. The function then places either the \true code or \false code in the input stream (as appropriate to the result of the test).
\peek_charcode:NTF \peek_charcode:NTF \test token \{\true code\} \{\false code\}
Tests if the next \token in the input stream has the same character code as the \test \token (as defined by the test \token_if_eq_charcode:NTF). Spaces are respected by the test and the \token is left in the input stream after the \true code or \false code (as appropriate to the result of the test).
\peek_charcode_remove:NTF \peek_charcode_remove:NTF \test token \{\true code\} \{\false code\}
Tests if the next \token in the input stream has the same character code as the \test \token (as defined by the test \token_if_eq_charcode:NTF). Spaces are respected by the test and the \token is removed from the input stream if the test is true. The function then places either the \true code or \false code in the input stream (as appropriate to the result of the test).
\peek_meaning:NTF \peek_meaning:NTF \test token \{\true code\} \{\false code\}
Tests if the next \token in the input stream has the same meaning as the \test \token (as defined by the test \token_if_eq_meaning:NTF). Spaces are respected by the test and the \token is left in the input stream after the \true code or \false code (as appropriate to the result of the test).
\peek_meaning_remove:NTF \peek_meaning_remove:NTF \test token \{\true code\} \{\false code\}
Tests if the next \token in the input stream has the same meaning as the \test \token (as defined by the test \token_if_eq_meaning:NTF). Spaces are respected by the test and the \token is removed from the input stream if the test is true. The function then places either the \true code or \false code in the input stream (as appropriate to the result of the test).
\peek_remove_spaces:n \peek_remove_spaces:n \{\code\}
Peeks ahead and detect if the following token is a space (category code 10 and character code 32). If so, removes the token and checks the next token. Once a non-space token is found, the \code will be inserted into the input stream. Typically this will contain a \peek operation, but this is not required.
\peek_remove_filler:n {\langle code\rangle}

Peeks ahead and detect if the following token is a space (category code 10) or has meaning equal to \scan_stop:. If so, removes the token and checks the next token. If neither of these cases apply, expands the next token using \f-type expansion, then checks the resulting leading token in the same way. If after expansion the next token is neither of the two test cases, the \langle code\rangle will be inserted into the input stream. Typically this will contain a \peek operation, but this is not required.

\TeXhackers note: This is essentially a macro-based implementation of how \TeX handles the search for a left brace after for example \everypar, except that any non-expandable token cleanly ends the \langle filler\rangle (i.e. it does not lead to a \TeX error).

In contrast to \TeX's filler removal, a construct \exp_not:N \foo will be treated in the same way as \foo.

\peek_N_type:TF {\langle true code\rangle} {\langle false code\rangle}

Tests if the next \langle token\rangle in the input stream can be safely grabbed as an \N-type argument. The test is \langle false\rangle if the next \langle token\rangle is either an explicit or implicit begin-group or end-group token (with any character code), or an explicit or implicit space character (with character code 32 and category code 10), or an outer token (never used in L\TeX3) and \langle true\rangle in all other cases. Note that a \langle true\rangle result ensures that the next \langle token\rangle is a valid \N-type argument. However, if the next \langle token\rangle is for instance \space_token, the test takes the \langle false\rangle branch, even though the next \langle token\rangle is in fact a valid \N-type argument. The \langle token\rangle is left in the input stream after the \langle true code\rangle or \langle false code\rangle (as appropriate to the result of the test).
\peek_analysis_map_inline:n \peek_analysis_map_inline:n \{\{inline function\}\} \{\{inline function\}\}

Repeatedly removes one (token) from the input stream and applies the (inline function) to it, until \peek_analysis_map_break: is called. The (inline function) receives three arguments for each (token) in the input stream:

- (tokens), which both o-expand and x-expand to the (token). The detailed form of (tokens) may change in later releases.
- (char code), a decimal representation of the character code of the (token), −1 if it is a control sequence.
- (catcode), a capital hexadecimal digit which denotes the category code of the (token)
  (0: control sequence, 1: begin-group, 2: end-group, 3: math shift, 4: alignment tab,
  6: parameter, 7: superscript, 8: subscript, A: space, B: letter, C: other, D: active).
  This can be converted to an integer by writing “(catcode).

These arguments are the same as for \tl_analysis_map_inline:nn defined in l3tl-analysis. The (char code) and (catcode) do not take the meaning of a control sequence or active character into account: for instance, upon encountering the token \c_group_begin_token in the input stream, \peek_analysis_map_inline:n calls the (inline function) with #1 being \exp_not:n \{ \c_group_begin_token \} (with the current implementation), #2 being −1, and #3 being 0, as for any other control sequence. In contrast, upon encountering an explicit begin-group token \{, the (inline function) is called with arguments \exp_after:wN \{ \if_false: \fi: \}, 123 and 1.

The mapping is done at the current group level, i.e. any local assignments made by the (inline function) remain in effect after the loop. Within the code, \l_peek_token is set equal (as a token, not a token list) to the token under consideration.

\peek_analysis_map_break:n \peek_analysis_map_break:n
\peek_analysis_map_inline:n
\{ ... \peek_analysis_map_break:n \{\{code\}\} \}

Stops the \peek_analysis_map_inline:n loop from seeking more tokens, and inserts (code) in the input stream (empty for \peek_analysis_map_break:).

\peek_regex:nTF \peek_regex:NTF \peek_regex:nTF \peek_regex:NTF
\peek_regex:nTF \peek_regex:NTF \peek_regex:nTF \peek_regex:NTF

Tests if the (tokens) that follow in the input stream match the (regular expression). Any (tokens) that have been read are left in the input stream after the (true code) or (false code) (as appropriate to the result of the test). See l3regex for documentation of the syntax of regular expressions. The (regular expression) is implicitly anchored at the start, so for instance \peek_regex:nTF \{ a \} is essentially equivalent to \peek_charcode:nTF a.

\peek_regex:nTF \peek_regex:nTF \peek_regex:nTF \peek_regex:nTF
\peek_regex:nTF \peek_regex:nTF \peek_regex:nTF \peek_regex:nTF
\peek_regex:nTF \peek_regex:nTF
\peek_regex:nTF

TpXhackers note: Implicit character tokens are correctly considered by \peek_regex:nTF as control sequences, while functions that inspect individual tokens (for instance \peek_charcode:nTF) only take into account their meaning.

The \peek_regex:nTF function only inspects as few tokens as necessary to determine whether the regular expression matches. For instance \peek_regex:nTF \{ abc | [a-z] \} \{ \} \{ \} \{ \} \{ \} \{ \} \{ \} abc will only inspect the first token a even though the first branch abc of the alternative is preferred in functions such as \peek_regex_remove_once:n. This may have an effect on tokenization if the input stream has not yet been tokenized and category codes are changed.
\peek_regex_remove_once:nTF \peek_regex_remove_once:nTF \{\langle\text{regex}\rangle\} \{\{\text{true code}\}\} \{\{\text{false code}\}\}
\peek_regex_remove_once:NTF

Tests if the \langle\text{tokens}\rangle that follow in the input stream match the \langle\text{regex}\rangle. If the test is true, the \langle\text{tokens}\rangle are removed from the input stream and the \langle\text{true code}\rangle is inserted, while if the test is false, the \langle\text{false code}\rangle is inserted followed by the \langle\text{tokens}\rangle that were originally in the input stream. See \l3\text{regex} for documentation of the syntax of regular expressions. The \langle\text{regular expression}\rangle is implicitly anchored at the start, so for instance \peek_regex_remove_once:nTF \{ a \} is essentially equivalent to \peek_charcode_remove:NTF a.

\text{\textsc{Texhackers note}}: Implicit character tokens are correctly considered by \peek_regex_remove_once:nTF as control sequences, while functions that inspect individual tokens (for instance \peek_charcode:NTF) only take into account their meaning.

\peek_regex_replace_once:nnTF \peek_regex_replace_once:nnTF \{\langle\text{regex}\rangle\} \{\langle\text{replacement}\rangle\} \{\{\text{true code}\}\} \{\{\text{false code}\}\}
\peek_regex_replace_once:nn
\peek_regex_replace_once:nn
\peek_regex_replace_once:Nn
\peek_regex_replace_once:Nn

If the \langle\text{tokens}\rangle that follow in the input stream match the \langle\text{regex}\rangle, replaces them according to the \langle\text{replacement}\rangle as for \regex_replace_once:nnN, and leaves the result in the input stream, after the \langle\text{true code}\rangle. Otherwise, leaves \langle\text{false code}\rangle followed by the \langle\text{tokens}\rangle that were originally in the input stream, with no modifications. See \l3\text{regex} for documentation of the syntax of regular expressions and of the \langle\text{replacement}\rangle: for instance \text\char\zero in the \langle\text{replacement}\rangle is replaced by the tokens that were matched in the input stream. The \langle\text{regular expression}\rangle is implicitly anchored at the start. In contrast to \regex_replace_once:nnN, no error arises if the \langle\text{replacement}\rangle leads to an unbalanced token list: the tokens are inserted into the input stream without issue.

\text{\textsc{Texhackers note}}: Implicit character tokens are correctly considered by \peek_regex_replace_once:nnTF as control sequences, while functions that inspect individual tokens (for instance \peek_charcode:NTF) only take into account their meaning.

\section{Description of all possible tokens}

Let us end by reviewing every case that a given token can fall into. This section is quite technical and some details are only meant for completeness. We distinguish the meaning of the token, which controls the expansion of the token and its effect on \TeX's state, and its shape, which is used when comparing token lists such as for delimited arguments. Two tokens of the same shape must have the same meaning, but the converse does not hold.

A token has one of the following shapes.

\begin{itemize}
  \item A control sequence, characterized by the sequence of characters that constitute its name: for instance, \text\char\use:n is a five-letter control sequence.
\end{itemize}
• An active character token, characterized by its character code (between 0 and 1114111 for LuaTeX and XeTeX and less for other engines) and category code 13.

• A character token, characterized by its character code and category code (one of 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 7, 8, 10, 11 or 12 whose meaning is described below).

There are also a few internal tokens. The following list may be incomplete in some engines.

• Expanding \textfont results in a token that looks identical to the command that was used to select the current font (such as \tenrm) but it differs from it in shape.

• A “frozen” \relax, which differs from the primitive in shape (but has the same meaning), is inserted when the closing \fi of a conditional is encountered before the conditional is evaluated.

• Expanding \noexpand \langle token \rangle (when the \langle token \rangle is expandable) results in an internal token, displayed (temporarily) as \notexpanded: \langle token \rangle, whose shape coincides with the \langle token \rangle and whose meaning differs from \relax.

• An \outer endtemplate: can be encountered when peeking ahead at the next token; this expands to another internal token, end of alignment template.

• Tricky programming might access a frozen \endwrite.

• Some frozen tokens can only be accessed in interactive sessions: \cr, \right, \endgroup, \fi, \inaccessible.

• In LuaLaTeX, there is also the strange case of “bytes” \texttt{1100xy} where x, y are any two lowercase hexadecimal digits, so that the hexadecimal number ranges from \texttt{110000}=1114112 to \texttt{1100ff}=1114367. These are used to output individual bytes to files, rather than UTF-8. For the purposes of token comparisons they behave like non-expandable primitive control sequences (not characters) whose \meaning is the \texttt{character} followed by the given byte. If this byte is in the range 80–ff this gives an “invalid utf-8 sequence” error: applying \token\to\str:N or \token\to\meaning:N to these tokens is unsafe. Unfortunately, they don’t seem to be detectable safely by any means except perhaps Lua code.

The meaning of a (non-active) character token is fixed by its category code (and character code) and cannot be changed. We call these tokens explicit character tokens. Category codes that a character token can have are listed below by giving a sample output of the \TeX primitive \meaning, together with their \LaTeX names and most common example:

1 begin-group character (\texttt{group_begin}, often \{),
2 end-group character (\texttt{group_end}, often \} ),
3 math shift character (\texttt{math\_toggle}, often $),
4 alignment tab character (\texttt{alignment}, often \&),
6 macro parameter character (\texttt{parameter}, often \#),
7 superscript character (\texttt{math\_superscript}, often ^),
8 subscript character (math_subscript, often _),
10 blank space (space, often character code 32),
11 the letter (letter, such as A),
12 the character (other, such as 0).

Category code 13 (active) is discussed below. Input characters can also have several other category codes which do not lead to character tokens for later processing: 0 (escape), 5 (end_line), 9 (ignore), 14 (comment), and 15 (invalid).

The meaning of a control sequence or active character can be identical to that of any character token listed above (with any character code), and we call such tokens implicit character tokens. The meaning is otherwise in the following list:

- a macro, used in \LaTeX{} for most functions and some variables (tl, fp, seq, ...),
- a primitive such as \def or \topmark, used in \LaTeX{} for some functions,
- a register such as \count123, used in \LaTeX{} for the implementation of some variables (int, dim, ...),
- a constant integer such as \char"56 or \mathchar"121,
- a font selection command,
- undefined.

Macros can be \protected or not, \long or not (the opposite of what \LaTeX{} calls nopar), and \outer or not (unused in \LaTeX{}). Their \meaning takes the form

\begin{verbatim}
(prefix) macro:(argument)->(replacement)
\end{verbatim}

where (prefix) is among \protected\long\outer, (argument) describes parameters that the macro expects, such as #1#2#3, and (replacement) describes how the parameters are manipulated, such as \int_eval:n{#2+#1*#3}.

Now is perhaps a good time to mention some subtleties relating to tokens with category code 10 (space). Any input character with this category code (normally, space and tab characters) becomes a normal space, with character code 32 and category code 10.

When a macro takes an undelimited argument, explicit space characters (with character code 32 and category code 10) are ignored. If the following token is an explicit character token with category code 1 (begin-group) and an arbitrary character code, then \TeX{} scans ahead to obtain an equal number of explicit character tokens with category code 1 (begin-group) and 2 (end-group), and the resulting list of tokens (with outer braces removed) becomes the argument. Otherwise, a single token is taken as the argument for the macro: we call such single tokens “N-type”, as they are suitable to be used as an argument for a function with the signature :N.

When a macro takes a delimited argument \TeX{} scans ahead until finding the delimiter (outside any pairs of begin-group/end-group explicit characters), and the resulting list of tokens (with outer braces removed) becomes the argument. Note that explicit space characters at the start of the argument are not ignored in this case (and they prevent brace-stripping).
Chapter 24

The \texttt{l3prop} package

Property lists

L3pX3 implements a “property list” data type, which contain an unordered list of entries each of which consists of a \langle key\rangle and an associated \langle value\rangle. The \langle key\rangle and \langle value\rangle may both be any \langle balanced text\rangle, the \langle key\rangle is processed using \texttt{tl_to_str:n}, meaning that category codes are ignored. It is possible to map functions to property lists such that the function is applied to every key–value pair within the list.

Each entry in a property list must have a unique \langle key\rangle: if an entry is added to a property list which already contains the \langle key\rangle then the new entry overwrites the existing one. The \langle keys\rangle are compared on a string basis, using the same method as \texttt{str_if_eq:nn}.

Property lists are intended for storing key-based information for use within code. This is in contrast to key–value lists, which are a form of \texttt{input} parsed by the \texttt{l3keys} module.

24.1 Creating and initialising property lists

\texttt{\prop_new:N} \langle property list\rangle

Creates a new \langle property list\rangle or raises an error if the name is already taken. The declaration is global. The \langle property list\rangle initially contains no entries.

\texttt{\prop_new:c} \langle property list\rangle

\texttt{\prop_clear:N} \langle property list\rangle

Clears all entries from the \langle property list\rangle.

\texttt{\prop_clear:c} \langle property list\rangle

\texttt{\prop_gclear:N} \langle property list\rangle

\texttt{\prop_gclear:c} \langle property list\rangle

Ensures that the \langle property list\rangle exists globally by applying \texttt{\prop_new:N} if necessary, then applies \texttt{\prop_(g)clear:N} to leave the list empty.
\prop_set_eq:NN \langle property list \rangle \langle property list \rangle

Sets the content of \langle property list \rangle equal to that of \langle property list \rangle.

\prop_set_eq:(cN|Nc|cc)
\prop_gset_eq:(cN|Nc|cc)

\prop_set_from_keyval:Nn \langle prop var \rangle \{ \langle key1 \rangle = \langle value1 \rangle , \langle key2 \rangle = \langle value2 \rangle , \ldots \}

Sets \langle prop var \rangle to contain key–value pairs given in the second argument. If duplicate keys appear only the last of the values is kept.

Spaces are trimmed around every \langle key \rangle and every \langle value \rangle, and if the result of trimming spaces consists of a single brace group then a set of outer braces is removed. This enables both the \langle key \rangle and the \langle value \rangle to contain spaces, commas or equal signs. The \langle key \rangle is then processed by \tl_to_str:n. This function correctly detects the = and , signs provided they have the standard category code 12 or they are active.

\prop_const_from_keyval:Nn
\prop_const_from_keyval:cn
\prop_gset_from_keyval:Nn
\prop_gset_from_keyval:cn

New: 2017-11-28
Updated: 2021-11-07

\prop_put:Nnn \langle property list \rangle \{ \langle key \rangle \} \{ \langle value \rangle \}
\prop_put:Nnn \prop_put:(NnV|Nno|Nnx|NVn|NVx|NVz|NNon|Noo|Nxx|cnn|cnV|cno|cnx|cVn|cVV|cvx|con|coo|cxx)
\prop_gput:Nnn \prop_gput:(NnV|Nno|Nnx|NVn|NVx|NVz|NNon|Noo|Nxx|cnn|cnV|cno|cnx|cVn|cVV|cvx|con|coo|cxx)

Updated: 2012-07-09

Add an entry to the \langle property list \rangle which may be accessed using the \langle key \rangle and which has \langle value \rangle. If the \langle key \rangle is already present in the \langle property list \rangle, the existing entry is overwritten by the new \langle value \rangle. Both the \langle key \rangle and \langle value \rangle may contain any \langle balanced text \rangle. The \langle key \rangle is stored after processing with \tl_to_str:n, meaning that category codes are ignored.

\prop_put_if_new:Nnn \langle property list \rangle \{ \langle key \rangle \} \{ \langle value \rangle \}
\prop_put_if_new:Nnn \prop_put_if_new:cn
\prop_gput_if_new:Nnn \prop_gput_if_new:cn

If the \langle key \rangle is present in the \langle property list \rangle then no action is taken. Otherwise, a new entry is added as described for \prop_put:Nnn.

24.2 Adding and updating property list entries
\prop_concat:NNN \prop_concat:ccc
\prop_gconcat:NNN \prop_gconcat:ccc

Updated: 2021-06-18

\prop_put_from_keyval:Nn \prop_gput_from_keyval:Nn \prop_put_from_keyval:cn \prop_gput_from_keyval:cn

New: 2021-06-18 Updated: 2011-08-18

\prop_gpop: \prop_gpop:NnN \prop_pop: \prop_pop:NnN

Updated: 2021-08-18 Updated: 2021-11-07

\prop_get: \prop_get:NnN \prop_get:NnNTF
\prop_get:{NVN|NvN|cnN|cvN|coN}

Updated: 2011-08-28

\prop_gconcat:ccc \prop_gconcat:NNN \prop_concat:ccc \prop_concat:NNN

New: 2021-05-16

\prop_gpop:
\prop_gpop:NnN
\prop_pop:
\prop_pop:NnN

Updated: 2021-08-18

\prop_get: \prop_get:NnN \prop_get:NnNTF
\prop_get:{NVN|NvN|cnN|cvN|coN}

Updated: 2011-08-28

\prop_gconcat:ccc \prop_gconcat:NNN \prop_concat:ccc \prop_concat:NNN

24.3 Recovering values from property lists

\prop_gconcat:ccc \prop_gconcat:NNN \prop_concat:ccc \prop_concat:NNN

Combined key–value pairs of \prop var\textsubscript{2} and \prop var\textsubscript{3} and saves the result in \prop var\textsubscript{1}. If a key appears in both \prop var\textsubscript{2} and \prop var\textsubscript{3} then the last value, namely the value in \prop var\textsubscript{3} is kept.

\prop_put_from_keyval:Nn \prop_gput_from_keyval:Nn \prop_put_from_keyval:cn \prop_gput_from_keyval:cn

Updated: 2021-06-18

\prop_gpop:
\prop_gpop:NnN \prop_pop:
\prop_pop:NnN

Updated: 2021-08-18

\prop_get: \prop_get:NnN \prop_get:NnNTF
\prop_get:{NVN|NvN|cnN|cvN|coN}

Updated: 2011-08-28

 THEY ARE ACTIVE.

CORRECTLY DETECTS THE SPACE-TRIMMED AND UNBRACED AS DESCRIBED IN \prop var. THIS FUNCTION CORRECTLY DETECTS THE = AND , SIGNS PROVIDED THEY HAVE THE STANDARD CATEGORY CODE 12 OR THEY ARE ACTIVE.

24.3 Recovering values from property lists

\prop_gconcat:ccc \prop_gconcat:NNN \prop_concat:ccc \prop_concat:NNN

Recover the (value) stored with (key) from the (property list), and places this in the (token list variable). If the (key) is not found in the (property list) then the (token list variable) is set to the special marker \q{no_value}. The (token list variable) is set within the current \TeX group. See also \prop get:NnNTF.

\prop_put_from_keyval:Nn \prop_gput_from_keyval:Nn \prop_put_from_keyval:cn \prop_gput_from_keyval:cn

New: 2021-06-18 Updated: 2021-08-18

\prop_gconcat:ccc \prop_gconcat:NNN \prop_concat:ccc \prop_concat:NNN

Recover the (value) stored with (key) from the (property list), and places this in the (token list variable). If the (key) is not found in the (property list) then the (token list variable) is set to the special marker \q{no_value}. The (key) and (value) are then deleted from the property list. Both assignments are local. See also \prop put:NNNTF.

\prop_gconcat:ccc \prop_gconcat:NNN \prop_concat:ccc \prop_concat:NNN

Recover the (value) stored with (key) from the (property list), and places this in the (token list variable). If the (key) is not found in the (property list) then the (token list variable) is set to the special marker \q{no_value}. The (key) and (value) are then deleted from the property list. The (property list) is modified globally, while the assignment of the (token list variable) is local. See also \prop_gput:NNNTF.
\prop_item:Nn \prop_item:cn

Expands to the \langle value\rangle corresponding to the \langle key\rangle in the \langle property list\rangle. If the \langle key\rangle is missing, this has an empty expansion.

\TeX{hackers note:} This function is slower than the non-expandable analogue \prop_get:Nn. The result is returned within the \unexpanded primitive (\exp_not:n), which means that the \langle value\rangle does not expand further when appearing in an \texttt{x} type argument expansion.

\prop_count:N \prop_count:c

Leaves the number of key–value pairs in the \langle property list\rangle in the input stream as an \langle integer denotation\rangle.

\prop_to_keyval:N \prop_to_keyval:c

Expands to the \langle property list\rangle in a key–value notation. Keep in mind that a \langle property list\rangle is unordered, while key–value interfaces don’t necessarily are, so this can’t be used for arbitrary interfaces.

\TeX{hackers note:} The result is returned within the \unexpanded primitive (\exp_not:n), which means that the key–value list does not expand further when appearing in an \texttt{x} type argument expansion. It also needs exactly two steps of expansion.

24.4 Modifying property lists

\prop_remove:Nn \prop_remove:NV \prop_remove:cn \prop_remove:cv

Removes the entry listed under \langle key\rangle from the \langle property list\rangle. If the \langle key\rangle is not found in the \langle property list\rangle no change occurs, \textit{i.e} there is no need to test for the existence of a key before deleting it.

24.5 Property list conditionals

\prop_if_exist_p:N \prop_if_exist_p:c \prop_if_exist_p:NTF \prop_if_exist_p:cTF

Tests whether the \langle property list\rangle is currently defined. This does not check that the \langle property list\rangle really is a property list variable.

\prop_if_empty_p:N \prop_if_empty_p:c \prop_if_empty_p:NTF \prop_if_empty_p:cTF

Tests if the \langle property list\rangle is empty (containing no entries).
Tests if the ⟨key⟩ is present in the ⟨property list⟩, making the comparison using the method described by \str_if_eq:nnTF.

\textbf{\TeXhackers note:} This function iterates through every key–value pair in the ⟨property list⟩ and is therefore slower than using the non-expandable \prop_get:NnNTF.

### 24.6 Recovering values from property lists with branching

The functions in this section combine tests for the presence of a key in a property list with recovery of the associated value. This makes them useful for cases where different cases follow dependent on the presence or absence of a key in a property list. They offer increased readability and performance over separate testing and recovery phases.

\begin{Verbatim}
\prop_get:NnNTF ⟨property list⟩ \{⟨key⟩\} \{⟨token list variable⟩\} \{⟨true code⟩\} \{⟨false code⟩\}
\end{Verbatim}

If the ⟨key⟩ is not present in the ⟨property list⟩, leaves the ⟨false code⟩ in the input stream. The value of the ⟨token list variable⟩ is not defined in this case and should not be relied upon. If the ⟨key⟩ is present in the ⟨property list⟩, stores the corresponding ⟨value⟩ in the ⟨token list variable⟩ without removing it from the ⟨property list⟩, then leaves the ⟨true code⟩ in the input stream. The ⟨token list variable⟩ is assigned locally.

\begin{Verbatim}
\prop_pop:NnNTF ⟨property list⟩ \{⟨key⟩\} \{⟨token list variable⟩\} \{⟨true code⟩\} \{⟨false code⟩\}
\end{Verbatim}

If the ⟨key⟩ is not present in the ⟨property list⟩, leaves the ⟨false code⟩ in the input stream. The value of the ⟨token list variable⟩ is not defined in this case and should not be relied upon. If the ⟨key⟩ is present in the ⟨property list⟩, pops the corresponding ⟨value⟩ in the ⟨token list variable⟩, i.e. removes the item from the ⟨property list⟩. Both the ⟨property list⟩ and the ⟨token list variable⟩ are assigned locally.

\begin{Verbatim}
\prop_gpop:NnNTF ⟨property list⟩ \{⟨key⟩\} \{⟨token list variable⟩\} \{⟨true code⟩\} \{⟨false code⟩\}
\end{Verbatim}

If the ⟨key⟩ is not present in the ⟨property list⟩, leaves the ⟨false code⟩ in the input stream. The value of the ⟨token list variable⟩ is not defined in this case and should not be relied upon. If the ⟨key⟩ is present in the ⟨property list⟩, pops the corresponding ⟨value⟩ in the ⟨token list variable⟩, i.e. removes the item from the ⟨property list⟩. The ⟨property list⟩ is modified globally, while the ⟨token list variable⟩ is assigned locally.
24.7 Mapping over property lists

All mappings are done at the current group level, i.e. any local assignments made by the \langle function ⟩ or \langle code ⟩ discussed below remain in effect after the loop.

\prop_map_function:NN \langle property list ⟩ \langle function ⟩
Applies \langle function ⟩ to every \langle entry ⟩ stored in the \langle property list ⟩. The \langle function ⟩ receives two arguments for each iteration: the \langle key ⟩ and associated \langle value ⟩. The order in which \langle entries ⟩ are returned is not defined and should not be relied upon. To pass further arguments to the \langle function ⟩, see \prop_map_tokens:Nn.

\prop_map_inline:Nn \langle property list ⟩ { \langle inline function ⟩ }
Applies \langle inline function ⟩ to every \langle entry ⟩ stored within the \langle property list ⟩. The \langle inline function ⟩ should consist of code which receives the \langle key ⟩ as \#1 and the \langle value ⟩ as \#2. The order in which \langle entries ⟩ are returned is not defined and should not be relied upon.

\prop_map_tokens:Nn \langle property list ⟩ { \langle code ⟩ }
Analogue of \prop_map_function:NN which maps several tokens instead of a single function. The \langle code ⟩ receives each key–value pair in the \langle property list ⟩ as two trailing brace groups. For instance,

\prop_map_tokens:Nn \l_my_prop { \str_if_eq:nnT { mykey } }
expands to the value corresponding to mykey: for each pair in \l_my_prop the function \str_if_eq:nnT receives mykey, the \langle key ⟩ and the \langle value ⟩ as its three arguments. For that specific task, \prop_item:Nn is faster.

\prop_map_break:
Used to terminate a \prop_map_... function before all entries in the \langle property list ⟩ have been processed. This normally takes place within a conditional statement, for example

\prop_map_inline:Nn \l_my_prop
{ \str_if_eq:nnTF { #1 } { bingo } { \prop_map_break: } { % Do something useful } }
Use outside of a \prop_map_... scenario leads to low level TEX errors.

\textbf{TExhackers note:} When the mapping is broken, additional tokens may be inserted before further items are taken from the input stream. This depends on the design of the mapping function.
\prop_map_break:n \(\langle\text{code}\rangle\)

Used to terminate a \prop_map_... function before all entries in the \(\langle\text{property list}\rangle\) have been processed, inserting the \(\langle\text{code}\rangle\) after the mapping has ended. This normally takes place within a conditional statement, for example

\prop_map_inline:Nn \l_my_prop
{
  \str_if_eq:nnTF { #1 } { bingo } { \prop_map_break:n { \langle\text{code}\rangle\} }
  { % Do something useful
  }
}

Use outside of a \prop_map_... scenario leads to low level \TeX{} errors.

\TeX{}hackers note: When the mapping is broken, additional tokens may be inserted before the \(\langle\text{code}\rangle\) is inserted into the input stream. This depends on the design of the mapping function.

### 24.8 Viewing property lists

\prop_show:N \prop_show:c

Displays the entries in the \(\langle\text{property list}\rangle\) in the terminal.

\prop_log:N \prop_log:c

Writes the entries in the \(\langle\text{property list}\rangle\) in the log file.

### 24.9 Scratch property lists

\l_tmpa_prop \l_tmpb_prop

Scratch property lists for local assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any \LaTeX{}-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.

\g_tmpa_prop \g_tmpb_prop

Scratch property lists for global assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any \LaTeX{}-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.
24.10 Constants

\texttt{\textbackslash c\_empty\_prop} A permanently-empty property list used for internal comparisons.
Chapter 25

The \texttt{l3skip} package

Dimensions and skips

\LaTeX{} provides two general length variables: \texttt{dim} and \texttt{skip}. Lengths stored as \texttt{dim} variables have a fixed length, whereas \texttt{skip} lengths have a rubber (stretch/shrink) component. In addition, the \texttt{muskip} type is available for use in math mode: this is a special form of \texttt{skip} where the lengths involved are determined by the current math font (in \texttt{mu}). There are common features in the creation and setting of length variables, but for clarity the functions are grouped by variable type.

25.1 Creating and initialising \texttt{dim} variables

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{\dim_new:N} \texttt{\dim_new:c}
    \begin{itemize}
      \item \texttt{\dim_new:N} \langle \texttt{dimension} \rangle
        \begin{itemize}
          \item Creates a new \langle \texttt{dimension} \rangle or raises an error if the name is already taken. The declaration is global. The \langle \texttt{dimension} \rangle is initially equal to 0 pt.
        \end{itemize}
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{\dim_new:c}
    \begin{itemize}
      \item \texttt{\dim_new:N} \langle \texttt{dimension} \rangle \{ \langle \texttt{dimension expression} \rangle \}
        \begin{itemize}
          \item Creates a new constant \langle \texttt{dimension} \rangle or raises an error if the name is already taken. The value of the \langle \texttt{dimension} \rangle is set globally to the \langle \texttt{dimension expression} \rangle.
        \end{itemize}
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{\dim_zero:N} \texttt{\dim_zero:c}
    \begin{itemize}
      \item \texttt{\dim_zero:N} \langle \texttt{dimension} \rangle
        \begin{itemize}
          \item Sets \langle \texttt{dimension} \rangle to 0 pt.
        \end{itemize}
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{\dim_zero_new:N} \texttt{\dim_zero_new:c}
    \begin{itemize}
      \item \texttt{\dim_zero_new:N} \langle \texttt{dimension} \rangle
        \begin{itemize}
          \item Ensures that the \langle \texttt{dimension} \rangle exists globally by applying \texttt{\dim_new:N} if necessary, then applies \texttt{\dim_(g)zero:N} to leave the \langle \texttt{dimension} \rangle set to zero.
        \end{itemize}
    \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}
Tests whether the \langle dimension \rangle is currently defined. This does not check that the \langle dimension \rangle really is a dimension variable.

25.2 Setting dim variables

\dim_if_exist_p:N \langle dimension \rangle \langle true code \rangle \langle false code \rangle

\dim_add:Nn \langle dimension \rangle \langle dimension expression \rangle

\dim_set:Nn \langle dimension \rangle \langle dimension expression \rangle

\dim_set_eq:NN \langle dimension \rangle_1 \langle dimension \rangle_2

\dim_sub:Nn \langle dimension \rangle \langle dimension expression \rangle

25.3 Utilities for dimension calculations

\dim_abs:n \langle dimexpr \rangle

\dim_max:nn \langle dimexpr_1 \rangle \langle dimexpr_2 \rangle

\dim_min:nn \langle dimexpr_1 \rangle \langle dimexpr_2 \rangle
\texttt{\textbackslash dim\_ratio:nn} ✤ \texttt{\textbackslash dim\_ratio:nn \{\textbackslash dimexpr_1\} \{\textbackslash dimexpr_2\}}

Parses the two \textit{dimension expressions} and converts the ratio of the two to a form suitable for use inside a \textit{dimension expression}. This ratio is then left in the input stream, allowing syntax such as

\begin{verbatim}
\dim_set:Nn \l_my_dim
{ 10 pt * \dim\_ratio:nn \{ 5 pt \} \{ 10 pt \} }
\end{verbatim}

The output of \texttt{\dim\_ratio:nn} on full expansion is a ratio expression between two integers, with all distances converted to scaled points. Thus

\begin{verbatim}
\tl_set:Nx \l_my_tl \{ \dim\_ratio:nn \{ 5 pt \} \{ 10 pt \} }
\tl_show:N \l_my_tl
\end{verbatim}

displays \texttt{327680/655360} on the terminal.

\section*{25.4 Dimension expression conditionals}

\texttt{\textbackslash dim\_compare_p:nNn} ✤ \texttt{\textbackslash dim\_compare\_p:nNn \{\textbackslash dimexpr_1\} \{\textbackslash relation\} \{\textbackslash dimexpr_2\}}

\texttt{\textbackslash dim\_compare:nNnTF}

\texttt{\textbackslash dim\_compare:nnTF \{\textbackslash dimexpr_1\} \{\textbackslash relation\} \{\textbackslash dimexpr_2\}}

\texttt{\{\texttt{true code}\} \{\texttt{false code}\}}

This function first evaluates each of the \textit{dimension expressions} as described for \texttt{\dim\_eval:n}. The two results are then compared using the \textit{relation}:

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{ll}
Equal & = \\
Greater than & > \\
Less than & <
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

This function is less flexible than \texttt{\dim\_compare:nTF} but around 5 times faster.
This function evaluates the (dimension expressions) as described for $\backslash$dim_eval:n and compares consecutive result using the corresponding (relation), namely it compares $\langle$dimexpr$_1$$\rangle$ and $\langle$dimexpr$_2$$\rangle$ using the (relation$_1$), then $\langle$dimexpr$_2$$\rangle$ and $\langle$dimexpr$_3$$\rangle$ using the (relation$_2$), until finally comparing $\langle$dimexpr$_N$$\rangle$ and $\langle$dimexpr$_{N+1}$$\rangle$ using the (relation$_N$). The test yields true if all comparisons are true. Each (dimension expression) is evaluated only once, and the evaluation is lazy, in the sense that if one comparison is false, then no other (dimension expression) is evaluated and no other comparison is performed. The (relations) can be any of the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Relation</th>
<th>Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Equal</td>
<td>= or ==</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater than or equal to</td>
<td>&gt;=</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater than</td>
<td>&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less than or equal to</td>
<td>&lt;=</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less than</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not equal</td>
<td>!=</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This function is more flexible than $\backslash$dim_compare:nNnTF but around 5 times slower.
\dim_case:nn \dim_case:nnTF { (test dimension expression) }
\dim_case:nnTF { }
{ (dimexpr case_1) { (code case_1) } }
{ (dimexpr case_2) { (code case_2) } }
{ (dimexpr case_n) { (code case_n) } }
{ (true code) }
{ (false code) }

This function evaluates the \textit{(test dimension expression)} and compares this in turn to each of the \textit{(dimension expression cases)}. If the two are equal then the associated \textit{(code)} is left in the input stream and other cases are discarded. If any of the cases are matched, the \textit{(true code)} is also inserted into the input stream (after the code for the appropriate case), while if none match then the \textit{(false code)} is inserted. The function \texttt{dim_case:nn}, which does nothing if there is no match, is also available. For example

\dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim { 5 pt }
\dim_case:nnF 
{ 2 \l_tmpa_dim }
{ 
{ 5 pt } \{ Small \}
{ 4 pt + 6 pt } \{ Medium \}
{ - 10 pt } \{ Negative \}
}
{ No idea! }

leaves “Medium” in the input stream.

\section{Dimension expression loops}

\dim_do_until:nNnn \dim_do_until:nNnnF \{ (dimexpr) \{ (relation) \{ (dimexpr) \{ (code) \} 

Places the \textit{(code)} in the input stream for \TeX to process, and then evaluates the relationship between the two \textit{(dimension expressions)} as described for \texttt{dim_compare:nNnTF}. If the test is \textit{false} then the \textit{(code)} is inserted into the input stream again and a loop occurs until the \textit{(relation)} is \textit{true}.

\dim_do_while:nNnn \dim_do_while:nNnnF \{ (dimexpr) \{ (relation) \{ (dimexpr) \{ (code) \} 

Places the \textit{(code)} in the input stream for \TeX to process, and then evaluates the relationship between the two \textit{(dimension expressions)} as described for \texttt{dim_compare:nNnTF}. If the test is \textit{true} then the \textit{(code)} is inserted into the input stream again and a loop occurs until the \textit{(relation)} is \textit{false}.

\dim_until_do:nNnn \dim_until_do:nNnnF \{ (dimexpr) \{ (relation) \{ (dimexpr) \{ (code) \} 

Evaluates the relationship between the two \textit{(dimension expressions)} as described for \texttt{dim_compare:nNnTF}, and then places the \textit{(code)} in the input stream if the \textit{(relation)} is \textit{false}. After the \textit{(code)} has been processed by \TeX the test is repeated, and a loop occurs until the test is \textit{true}.

210
\texttt{\textbackslash dim\_while\_do:nNnn} \texttt{\textbackslash dim\_while\_do:nNnn} \{(dimexpr_1)\} \{(relation)\} \{(dimexpr_2)\} \{(code)\}

Evaluates the relationship between the two \texttt{dimension expressions} as described for \texttt{dim\_compare:nNnTF}, and then places the \texttt{code} in the input stream if the \texttt{relation} is \texttt{true}. After the \texttt{code} has been processed by \TeX{} the test is repeated, and a loop occurs until the test is \texttt{false}.

\texttt{\textbackslash dim\_do\_until:nn} \texttt{\textbackslash dim\_do\_until:nn} \{(dimension\ relation)\} \{(code)\}

Places the \texttt{code} in the input stream for \TeX{} to process, and then evaluates the \texttt{dimension relation} as described for \texttt{dim\_compare:nNnTF}. If the test is \texttt{false} then the \texttt{code} is inserted into the input stream again and a loop occurs until the \texttt{relation} is \texttt{true}.

\texttt{\textbackslash dim\_while\_do:nn} \texttt{\textbackslash dim\_while\_do:nn} \{(dimension\ relation)\} \{(code)\}

Places the \texttt{code} in the input stream for \TeX{} to process, and then evaluates the \texttt{dimension relation} as described for \texttt{dim\_compare:nNnTF}. If the test is \texttt{true} then the \texttt{code} is inserted into the input stream again and a loop occurs until the \texttt{relation} is \texttt{false}.

\texttt{\textbackslash until\_do:nn} \texttt{\textbackslash until\_do:nn} \{(dimension\ relation)\} \{(code)\}

Evaluates the \texttt{dimension relation} as described for \texttt{dim\_compare:nNnTF}, and then places the \texttt{code} in the input stream if the \texttt{relation} is \texttt{false}. After the \texttt{code} has been processed by \TeX{} the test is repeated, and a loop occurs until the test is \texttt{true}.

\texttt{\textbackslash dim\_while\_do:nn} \texttt{\textbackslash dim\_while\_do:nn} \{(dimension\ relation)\} \{(code)\}

Evaluates the \texttt{dimension relation} as described for \texttt{dim\_compare:nNnTF}, and then places the \texttt{code} in the input stream if the \texttt{relation} is \texttt{true}. After the \texttt{code} has been processed by \TeX{} the test is repeated, and a loop occurs until the test is \texttt{false}.

25.6 Dimension step functions

\texttt{\textbackslash dim\_step\_function:nnnN} \texttt{\textbackslash dim\_step\_function:nnnN} \{(initial\ value)\} \{(step)\} \{(final\ value)\} \{(function)\}

This function first evaluates the \texttt{initial value}, \texttt{step} and \texttt{final value}, all of which should be dimension expressions. The \texttt{function} is then placed in front of each \texttt{value} from the \texttt{initial value} to the \texttt{final value} in turn (using \texttt{step} between each \texttt{value}). The \texttt{step} must be non-zero. If the \texttt{step} is positive, the loop stops when the \texttt{value} becomes larger than the \texttt{final value}. If the \texttt{step} is negative, the loop stops when the \texttt{value} becomes smaller than the \texttt{final value}. The \texttt{function} should absorb one argument.

\texttt{\textbackslash dim\_step\_inline:nnn} \texttt{\textbackslash dim\_step\_inline:nnn} \{(initial\ value)\} \{(step)\} \{(final\ value)\} \{(code)\}

This function first evaluates the \texttt{initial value}, \texttt{step} and \texttt{final value}, all of which should be dimension expressions. Then for each \texttt{value} from the \texttt{initial value} to the \texttt{final value} in turn (using \texttt{step} between each \texttt{value}), the \texttt{code} is inserted into the input stream with \texttt{#1} replaced by the current \texttt{value}. Thus the \texttt{code} should define a function of one argument (\texttt{#1}).
This function first evaluates the ⟨initial value⟩, ⟨step⟩ and ⟨final value⟩, all of which should be dimension expressions. Then for each ⟨value⟩ from the ⟨initial value⟩ to the ⟨final value⟩ in turn (using ⟨step⟩ between each ⟨value⟩), the ⟨code⟩ is inserted into the input stream, with the ⟨tl var⟩ defined as the current ⟨value⟩. Thus the ⟨code⟩ should make use of the ⟨tl var⟩.

### 25.7 Using dim expressions and variables

\texttt{\dim_step_variable:nnnNn}

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{\dim_step_variable:nnnNn}\texttt{\{\langle initial \ value \rangle\} \{\langle step \rangle\} \{\langle final \ value \rangle\} \{tl \ var\} \{\langle code\rangle\}}
\end{itemize}

\begin{itemize}
\item This function first evaluates the ⟨initial value⟩, ⟨step⟩ and ⟨final value⟩, all of which should be dimension expressions. Then for each ⟨value⟩ from the ⟨initial value⟩ to the ⟨final value⟩ in turn (using ⟨step⟩ between each ⟨value⟩), the ⟨code⟩ is inserted into the input stream, with the ⟨tl var⟩ defined as the current ⟨value⟩. Thus the ⟨code⟩ should make use of the ⟨tl var⟩.
\end{itemize}

\texttt{\dim_eval:n}

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{\dim_eval:n \{\langle dimension \ expression\rangle\}}
\end{itemize}

\begin{itemize}
\item Evaluates the ⟨dimension expression⟩, expanding any dimensions and token list variables within the ⟨expression⟩ to their content (without requiring \texttt{\dim_use:N/\tl_use:N}) and applying the standard mathematical rules. The result of the calculation is left in the input stream as a ⟨dimension denotation⟩ after two expansions. This is expressed in points (pt), and requires suitable termination if used in a \TeX-style assignment as it is not an ⟨internal dimension⟩.
\end{itemize}

\texttt{\dim_sign:n}

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{\dim_sign:n \{\langle dimexpr\rangle\}}
\end{itemize}

\begin{itemize}
\item Evaluates the ⟨dimexpr⟩ then leaves 1 or 0 or −1 in the input stream according to the sign of the result.
\end{itemize}

\texttt{\dim_use:N}

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{\dim_use:N \{\langle dimension\rangle\}}
\end{itemize}

\begin{itemize}
\item Recovers the content of a ⟨dimension⟩ and places it directly in the input stream. An error is raised if the variable does not exist or if it is invalid. Can be omitted in places where a ⟨dimension⟩ is required (such as in the argument of \texttt{\dim_eval:n}).
\end{itemize}

\texttt{\dim_to_decimal:n}

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{\dim_to_decimal:n \{\langle dimexpr\rangle\}}
\end{itemize}

\begin{itemize}
\item Evaluates the ⟨dimension expression⟩, and leaves the result, expressed in points (pt) in the input stream, with \texttt{no units}. The result is rounded by \TeX to four or five decimal places. If the decimal part of the result is zero, it is omitted, together with the decimal marker.

\texttt{For example}
\begin{verbatim}
\dim_to_decimal:n \{ 1bp \}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{leaves 1.00374 in the input stream, i.e. the magnitude of one “big point” when converted to (\TeX) points.}
\end{itemize}
\dim_to_decimal_in_bp:n \{ \textlangle \text{dimexpr} \textrangle \}\leftarrow \text{New: 2014-07-15}

Evaluates the \langle \text{dimension expression} \rangle, and leaves the result, expressed in big points (bp) in the input stream, with \textit{no units}. The result is rounded by \TeX to four or five decimal places. If the decimal part of the result is zero, it is omitted, together with the decimal marker.

For example

\begin{verbatim}
\dim_to_decimal_in_bp:n \{ 1pt \}
\end{verbatim}

leaves 0.99628 in the input stream, \textit{i.e.} the magnitude of one (\TeX) point when converted to big points.

\dim_to_decimal_in_sp:n \{ \textlangle \text{dimexpr} \textrangle \}\leftarrow \text{New: 2015-05-18}

Evaluates the \langle \text{dimension expression} \rangle, and leaves the result, expressed in scaled points (sp) in the input stream, with \textit{no units}. The result is necessarily an integer.

\dim_to_decimal_in_unit:nn \{ \textlangle \text{dimexpr} \textrangle \} \{ \textlangle \text{dimexpr} \textrangle \}\leftarrow \text{New: 2014-07-15}

Evaluates the \langle \text{dimension expressions} \rangle, and leaves the value of \langle \text{dimexpr} \rangle, expressed in a unit given by \langle \text{dimexpr} \rangle, in the input stream. The result is a decimal number, rounded by \TeX to four or five decimal places. If the decimal part of the result is zero, it is omitted, together with the decimal marker.

For example

\begin{verbatim}
\dim_to_decimal_in_unit:nn \{ 1bp \} \{ 1mm \}
\end{verbatim}

leaves 0.35277 in the input stream, \textit{i.e.} the magnitude of one big point when converted to millimetres.

Note that this function is not optimised for any particular output and as such may give different results to \dim_to_decimal_in_bp:n or \dim_to_decimal_in_sp:n. In particular, the latter is able to take a wider range of input values as it is not limited by the ability to calculate a ratio using \varepsilon-\TeX primitives, which is required internally by \dim_to_decimal_in_unit:nn.

\dim_to_fp:n \{ \textlangle \text{dimexpr} \textrangle \}\leftarrow \text{New: 2012-05-08}

Expands to an internal floating point number equal to the value of the \langle \text{dimexpr} \rangle in pt. Since dimension expressions are evaluated much faster than their floating point equivalent, \dim_to_fp:n can be used to speed up parts of a computation where a low precision and a smaller range are acceptable.

### 25.8 Viewing \textit{dim} variables

\dim_show:N \textlangle \text{dimension} \textrangle
\dim_show:c

Displays the value of the \langle \text{dimension} \rangle on the terminal.
\dim_show:n \dim_show:n \{ \langle \text{dimension expression} \rangle \}

Displays the result of evaluating the \( \langle \text{dimension expression} \rangle \) on the terminal.

\dim_log:N \dim_log:N \dim_log:N \dim_log:N \langle \text{dimension} \rangle

 Writes the value of the \( \langle \text{dimension} \rangle \) in the log file.

\dim_log:n \dim_log:n \dim_log:n \dim_log:n \dim_log:n \langle \text{dimension expression} \rangle

 Writes the result of evaluating the \( \langle \text{dimension expression} \rangle \) in the log file.

### 25.9 Constant dimensions

\c_{\text{max}} \dim

The maximum value that can be stored as a dimension. This can also be used as a component of a skip.

\c_{\text{zero}} \dim

A zero length as a dimension. This can also be used as a component of a skip.

### 25.10 Scratch dimensions

\l_{\text{tmpa}} \dim \l_{\text{tmpb}} \dim

Scratch dimension for local assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any \LaTeX\-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.

\g_{\text{tmpa}} \dim \g_{\text{tmpb}} \dim

Scratch dimension for global assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any \LaTeX\-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.

### 25.11 Creating and initialising skip variables

\skip_{\text{new}}:N \skip_{\text{new}}:N \{ \langle \text{skip} \rangle \}

Creates a new \( \langle \text{skip} \rangle \) or raises an error if the name is already taken. The declaration is global. The \( \langle \text{skip} \rangle \) is initially equal to 0 pt.
\skip_const:Nn \skip_const:cn
\textit{New: 2012-03-05}

Creates a new constant \textit{(skip)} or raises an error if the name is already taken. The value of the \textit{(skip)} is set globally to the \textit{(skip expression)}.

\skip_zero:N \skip_zero:c \skip_gzero:N \skip_gzero:c

\textit{New: 2012-01-07}

Ensures that the \textit{(skip)} exists globally by applying \texttt{\skip_new:N} if necessary, then applies \texttt{\skip_(g)zero:N} to leave the \textit{(skip)} set to zero.

\skip_if_exist_p:N \skip_if_exist_p:c \skip_if_exist:NTF \skip_if_exist:c
\textit{New: 2012-03-03}

Tests whether the \textit{(skip)} is currently defined. This does not check that the \textit{(skip)} really is a skip variable.

\skip_add:Nn \skip_add:cn \skip_gadd:Nn \skip_gadd:cn
\textit{Updated: 2011-10-22}

Adds the result of the \textit{(skip expression)} to the current content of the \textit{(skip)}.

\skip_set:Nn \skip_set:cn \skip_gset:Nn \skip_gset:cn
\textit{Updated: 2011-10-22}

Sets \textit{(skip)} to the value of \textit{(skip expression)}, which must evaluate to a length with units and may include a rubber component (for example 1 cm plus 0.5 cm).

\skip_set_eq:NN \texttt{(cN|Nc|cc)} \skip_gset_eq:NN \texttt{(cN|Nc|cc)}

Sets the content of \textit{(skip)} equal to that of \textit{(skip2)}.

\skip_sub:Nn \skip_sub:cn \skip_gsub:Nn \skip_gsub:cn
\textit{Updated: 2011-10-22}

Subtracts the result of the \textit{(skip expression)} from the current content of the \textit{(skip)}.

\section{25.12 Setting skip variables}

\skip_add:Nn \textit{(skip)} \textit{(skip expression)}

\skip_set:Nn \textit{(skip)} \textit{(skip expression)}

\skip_set_eq:NN \textit{(skip)} \textit{(skip2)}
25.13 Skip expression conditionals

\skip_if_eq_p:nn {\langle \text{skipexpr}_1 \rangle} {\langle \text{skipexpr}_2 \rangle}
\skip_if_eq:nnTF {\langle \text{skipexpr}_1 \rangle} {\langle \text{skipexpr}_2 \rangle} {{\langle \text{true code} \rangle}} {{\langle \text{false code} \rangle}}

This function first evaluates each of the \langle \text{skip expressions} \rangle as described for \skip_eval:n. The two results are then compared for exact equality, \text{i.e.} both the fixed and rubber components must be the same for the test to be true.

\skip_if_finite_p:n {\langle \text{skipexpr} \rangle}
\skip_if_finite:nTF {\langle \text{skipexpr} \rangle} {{\langle \text{true code} \rangle}} {{\langle \text{false code} \rangle}}

Evaluates the \langle \text{skip expression} \rangle as described for \skip_eval:n, and then tests if all of its components are finite.

25.14 Using skip expressions and variables

\skip_eval:n {\langle \text{skip expression} \rangle}

Evaluates the \langle \text{skip expression} \rangle, expanding any skips and token list variables within the \langle \text{expression} \rangle to their content (without requiring \skip_use:N/\tl_use:N) and applying the standard mathematical rules. The result of the calculation is left in the input stream as a \langle \text{glue denotation} \rangle after two expansions. This is expressed in points (pt), and requires suitable termination if used in a \TeX-style assignment as it is \textit{not} an \langle \text{internal glue} \rangle.

\skip_use:N \langle \text{skip} \rangle
\skip_use:c \langle \text{skip} \rangle

Recovers the content of a \langle \text{skip} \rangle and places it directly in the input stream. An error is raised if the variable does not exist or if it is invalid. Can be omitted in places where a \langle \text{dimension} \rangle or \langle \text{skip} \rangle is required (such as in the argument of \skip_eval:n).

\LaTeX{} hackers note: \skip_use:N is the \LaTeX{} primitive \the: this is one of several \LaTeX{} names for this primitive.

25.15 Viewing skip variables

\skip_show:N \langle \text{skip} \rangle
\skip_show:c

Displays the value of the \langle \text{skip} \rangle on the terminal.

\skip_show:n \langle \text{skip expression} \rangle

Displays the result of evaluating the \langle \text{skip expression} \rangle on the terminal.
\skip_log:N
\skip_log:c

New: 2014-08-22
Updated: 2015-08-03

\skip_log:n

New: 2014-08-22
Updated: 2015-08-07

Writes the value of the \( \langle \text{skip} \rangle \) in the log file.

Writes the result of evaluating the \( \langle \text{skip expression} \rangle \) in the log file.

\skip_horizontal:N
\skip_horizontal:c
\skip_horizontal:n

\TEXhackers note: \skip_horizontal:N is the \TeX\ primitive \hskip renamed.

25.16 Constant skips

\c_max_skip

Updated: 2012-11-02

The maximum value that can be stored as a skip (equal to \c_max_dim in length), with no stretch nor shrink component.

\c_zero_skip

Updated: 2012-11-01

A zero length as a skip, with no stretch nor shrink component.

25.17 Scratch skips

\l_tmpa_skip
\l_tmpb_skip

Scratch skip for local assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any \LaTeX3-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.

\g_tmpa_skip
\g_tmpb_skip

Scratch skip for global assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any \LaTeX3-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.

25.18 Inserting skips into the output

\skip_horizontal:N
\skip_horizontal:c
\skip_horizontal:n

Inserts a horizontal \( \langle \text{skip} \rangle \) into the current list. The argument can also be a \( \langle \text{dim} \rangle \).

\TEXhackers note: \skip_horizontal:N is the \TeX\ primitive \hskip renamed.
\skip_vertical:N \skip_vertical:c \skip_vertical:n

\skip_zero:N \skip_zero:c \skip_zero_new:N \skip_zero_new:c \skip_gzero:N \skip_gzero:c

\muskip_new:Nn \muskip_new:cn \muskip_zero:N \muskip_zero:c \muskip_zero_new:N \muskip_zero_new:c \muskip_gzero:N \muskip_gzero:c

\muskip_if_exist_p:N \muskip_if_exist_p:cn \muskip_if_exist:NTF \muskip_if_exist:cTF

\muskip_add:Nn \muskip_add:cn \muskip_gadd:Nn \muskip_gadd:cn

\muskip_const:Nn \muskip_const:cn

\tmfoot\vfill\newpage

25.19 Creating and initialising \emph{muskip} variables

\muskip_new:N \muskip_new:c

Creates a new \emph{muskip} or raises an error if the name is already taken. The declaration is global. The \emph{muskip} is initially equal to 0 \mu.

\muskip_const:Nn \muskip_const:cn

New: 2012-03-05

Creates a new constant \emph{muskip} or raises an error if the name is already taken. The value of the \emph{muskip} is set globally to the \emph{muskip expression}.

\muskip_zero:N \muskip_zero:c \muskip_zero_new:N \muskip_zero_new:c \muskip_gzero:N \muskip_gzero:c

New: 2012-01-07

Ensures that the \emph{muskip} exists globally by applying \muskip_new:N if necessary, then applies \muskip_(g)zero:N to leave the \emph{muskip} set to zero.

\muskip_if_exist_p:N \muskip_if_exist_p:cn \muskip_if_exist:NTF \muskip_if_exist:cTF

New: 2012-03-03

Tests whether the \emph{muskip} is currently defined. This does not check that the \emph{muskip} really is a muskip variable.

25.20 Setting \emph{muskip} variables

\muskip_add:Nn \muskip_add:cn \muskip_gadd:Nn \muskip_gadd:cn

Updated: 2011-10-22

\muskip_add:Nn \muskip_add:cn

Adds the result of the \emph{muskip expression} to the current content of the \emph{muskip}.
Sets \(\text{muskip}\) to the value of \(\text{muskip expression}\), which must evaluate to a math length with units and may include a rubber component (for example 1 \text{mu} plus 0.5 \text{mu}).

\text{Sets the content of} \(\text{muskip}_1\) equal to that of \(\text{muskip}_2\).

Subtracts the result of the \(\text{muskip expression}\) from the current content of the \(\text{muskip}\).

Evaluates the \(\text{muskip expression}\), expanding any skips and token list variables within the \(\text{expression}\) to their content (without requiring \verb|\muskip_use:N|/\verb|\tl_use:N|) and applying the standard mathematical rules. The result of the calculation is left in the input stream as a \(\text{muglue denotation}\) after two expansions. This is expressed in \text{mu}, and requires suitable termination if used in a \TeX-style assignment as it is not an \(\text{internal muglue}\).

Recovers the content of a \(\text{skip}\) and places it directly in the input stream. An error is raised if the variable does not exist or if it is invalid. Can be omitted in places where a \(\text{dimension}\) is required (such as in the argument of \verb|\muskip_eval:n|).

\TeXhackers note: \verb|\muskip_use:N| is the \TeX primitive \verb|\the|: this is one of several \LaTeX3 names for this primitive.

Displays the value of the \(\text{muskip}\) on the terminal.
\muskip\_show:n \{\muskip expression\}
Displays the result of evaluating the \textit{\muskip expression} on the terminal.

\muskip\_log:N \<\muskip>
\muskip\_log:c
Writes the value of the \textit{\muskip} in the log file.

\muskip\_log:n \{\muskip expression\}
Writes the result of evaluating the \textit{\muskip expression} in the log file.

### 25.23 Constant muskips

\c\_max\_muskip
The maximum value that can be stored as a muskip, with no stretch nor shrink component.

\c\_zero\_muskip
A zero length as a muskip, with no stretch nor shrink component.

### 25.24 Scratch muskips

\l\_tmpa\_muskip \l\_tmpb\_muskip
Scratch muskip for local assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any \LaTeX3-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.

\g\_tmpa\_muskip \g\_tmpb\_muskip
Scratch muskip for global assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any \LaTeX3-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.

### 25.25 Primitive conditional

\if\_dim:w \{dimen\} \{relation\} \{dimen\} \{true\ code\}
\else:
\{false\}
\fi:
Compare two dimensions. The \textit{\relation} is one of \texttt{<}, \texttt{=}, \texttt{or} \texttt{>} with category code 12.

\TeXhackers note: This is the \TeX primitive \texttt{\ifdim}.
Chapter 26

The l3keys package
Key–value interfaces

The key–value method is a popular system for creating large numbers of settings for controlling function or package behaviour. The system normally results in input of the form

\MyModuleSetup{
  key-one = value one,
  key-two = value two
}

or

\MyModuleMacro[
  key-one = value one,
  key-two = value two
]{argument}

for the user.

The high level functions here are intended as a method to create key–value controls. Keys are themselves created using a key–value interface, minimising the number of functions and arguments required. Each key is created by setting one or more properties of the key:

\keys_define:nn { mymodule }
{
  key-one .code:n = code including parameter #1,
  key-two .tl_set:N = \l_mymodule_store_tl
}

These values can then be set as with other key–value approaches:

\keys_set:nn { mymodule }
{
  key-one = value one,
  key-two = value two
}
At a document level, \( \texttt{\textbackslash keys\_set:nn} \) is used within a document function, for example

\begin{verbatim}
\DeclareDocumentCommand \MyModuleSetup { m }
{ \keys_set:nn { mymodule } { #1 } }
\DeclareDocumentCommand \MyModuleMacro { o m }
{ \group_begin:
  \keys_set:nn { mymodule } { #1 }
  % Main code for \MyModuleMacro
  \group_end:
}
\end{verbatim}

Key names may contain any tokens, as they are handled internally using \( \texttt{\textbackslash tl\_to\_str:n} \). As discussed in section 26.2, it is suggested that the character / is reserved for sub-division of keys into logical groups. Functions and variables are not expanded when creating key names, and so

\begin{verbatim}
\tl_set:Nn \l_mymodule_tmp_tl { key }
\keys_define:nn { mymodule }
{ \l_mymodule_tmp_tl .code:n = code }
\end{verbatim}

creates a key called \( \l_mymodule_tmp_tl \), and not one called key.

### 26.1 Creating keys

\begin{verbatim}
\keys_define:nn \{\langle module\rangle\} \{\langle keyval list\rangle\}
\end{verbatim}

Parses the \( \langle keyval list\rangle \) and defines the keys listed there for \( \langle module\rangle \). The \( \langle module\rangle \) name is treated as a string. In practice the \( \langle module\rangle \) should be chosen to be unique to the module in question (unless deliberately adding keys to an existing module).

The \( \langle keyval list\rangle \) should consist of one or more key names along with an associated key property. The properties of a key determine how it acts. The individual properties are described in the following text; a typical use of \( \texttt{\textbackslash keys\_define:nn} \) might read

\begin{verbatim}
\keys_define:nn { mymodule }
{ 
  keyname .code:n = Some\_code\_using\_-#1,
  keyname .value_required:n = true
}
\end{verbatim}

where the properties of the key begin from the . after the key name.

The various properties available take either no arguments at all, or require one or more arguments. This is indicated in the name of the property using an argument specification. In the following discussion, each property is illustrated attached to an arbitrary \( \langle key\rangle \), which when used may be supplied with a \( \langle value\rangle \). All key definitions are local.

Key properties are applied in the reading order and so the ordering is significant. Key properties which define "actions", such as \( .\texttt{code:n}, .\texttt{tl\_set:N} \), etc., override one another. Some other properties are mutually exclusive, notably \( .\texttt{value\_required:n} \) and
.value_forbidden:n, and so they replace one another. However, properties covering non-exclusive behaviours may be given in any order. Thus for example the following definitions are equivalent.

\keys_define:nn { mymodule }
  
  keyname .code:n = Some-code-using-#1,
  keyname .value_required:n = true

\keys_define:nn { mymodule }
  
  keyname .value_required:n = true,
  keyname .code:n = Some-code-using-#1

Note that with the exception of the special .undefine: property, all key properties define the key within the current \TeX{} scope.

\bool_set:N \bool_set:c \bool_gset:N \bool_gset:c
Updated: 2013-07-08

\bool_set_inverse:N \bool_set_inverse:c \bool_gset_inverse:N \bool_gset_inverse:c
New: 2011-08-28
Updated: 2013-07-08

\choice:

Sets \key{} to act as a choice key. Each valid choice for \key{} must then be created, as discussed in section 26.3.

\choices:nn \choices:(Vn|on|xn)
New: 2011-08-21
Updated: 2013-07-10

\clist_set:N \clist_set:c \clist_gset:N \clist_gset:c
New: 2011-09-11

\key{} .clist_set:N = \comma list variable
Defines \key{} to set \comma list variable to \value{} (which must be either “true” or “false”). If the variable does not exist, it will be created globally at the point that the key is set up.
\begin{verbatim}
\keys_define:nn { mymodule }
{
  key .code:n = Hello~#1,
  key .default:n = World
}
\keys_set:nn { mymodule }
{
  key = Fred, % Prints ‘Hello Fred’
  key, % Prints ‘Hello World’
  key = , % Prints ‘Hello ‘
}
\end{verbatim}

The default does not affect keys where values are required or forbidden. Thus a required value cannot be supplied by a default value, and giving a default value for a key which cannot take a value does not trigger an error.

\begin{verbatim}
\keys_define:nn { mymodule }
{
  key .dim_set:N = \texttt{dimension}
}
\keys_set:nn { mymodule }
{
  key .fp_set:N = \texttt{floating point}
}
\end{verbatim}

Defines \texttt{key} to set \texttt{dimension} to \texttt{value} (which must a dimension expression). If the variable does not exist, it is created globally at the point that the key is set up. The key will require a value at point-of-use unless a default is set.


\begin{verbatim}
\keys_define:nn { mymodule }
{
  key .groups:n = \texttt{groups}
}
\end{verbatim}

Defines \texttt{key} as belonging to the \texttt{groups} declared. Groups provide a “secondary axis” for selectively setting keys, and are described in Section 26.7.
\( \langle \text{key} \rangle .\text{inherit}:n = \{ \langle \text{parents} \rangle \} \)

Specifies that the \( \langle \text{key} \rangle \) path should inherit the keys listed as \( \langle \text{parents} \rangle \). For example, after setting

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{\texttt{\keys_define:nn} } & \text{ foo } \{ \text{ test .code:n} = \texttt{\tl_show:n} \{ \#1 \} \} \\
\text{\texttt{\keys_define:nn} } & \{ \} \{ \text{ bar .inherit:n } = \texttt{foo} \} 
\end{align*}
\]

setting

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{\texttt{\keys_set:nn} } & \text{ bar } \{ \text{ test } = \texttt{a} \} 
\end{align*}
\]

will be equivalent to

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{\texttt{\keys_set:nn} } & \text{ foo } \{ \text{ test } = \texttt{a} \} 
\end{align*}
\]
Sets \( \text{key} \) to act as a multiple choice key, and defines a series \( \langle \text{choices} \rangle \) which are implemented using the \( \langle \text{code} \rangle \). Inside \( \langle \text{code} \rangle \), \( \_\text{l_keys_choice_tl} \) will be the name of the choice made, and \( \_\text{l_keys_choice_int} \) will be the position of the choice in the list of \( \langle \text{choices} \rangle \) (indexed from 1). Choices are discussed in detail in section 26.3.

\[
\text{multichoices:nn} \langle \text{key} \rangle .\text{multichoices:nn} \{\langle \text{choices} \rangle\} \{\langle \text{code} \rangle\}
\]

Defines \( \langle \text{key} \rangle \) to set \( \langle \text{muskip} \rangle \) to \( \langle \text{value} \rangle \) (which must be a muskip expression). If the variable does not exist, it is created globally at the point that the key is set up. The key will require a value at point-of-use unless a default is set.

\[
\text{muskip_set:N} = \langle \text{muskip} \rangle
\]

\[
\text{prop_put:N} = \langle \text{property list} \rangle
\]

\[
\text{skip_set:N} = \langle \text{skip} \rangle
\]

\[
\text{str_set:N} = \langle \text{string variable} \rangle
\]

\[
\text{str_set_x:N} = \langle \text{string variable} \rangle
\]

\[
\text{tl_set:N} = \langle \text{token list variable} \rangle
\]

\[
\text{tl_set_x:N} = \langle \text{token list variable} \rangle
\]
.undefine: (key) .undefine:
Removes the definition of the (key) within the current scope.

.value_forbidden:n (key) .value_forbidden:n = true|false
Specifies that (key) cannot receive a (value) when used. If a (value) is given then an error will be issued. Setting the property “false” cancels the restriction.

.value_required:n (key) .value_required:n = true|false
Specifies that (key) must receive a (value) when used. If a (value) is not given then an error will be issued. Setting the property “false” cancels the restriction.

26.2 Sub-dividing keys

When creating large numbers of keys, it may be desirable to divide them into several sub-groups for a given module. This can be achieved either by adding a sub-division to the module name:

\keys_define:nn { mymodule / subgroup }
{ key .code:n = code }

or to the key name:

\keys_define:nn { mymodule }
{ subgroup / key .code:n = code }

As illustrated, the best choice of token for sub-dividing keys in this way is /. This is because of the method that is used to represent keys internally. Both of the above code fragments set the same key, which has full name mymodule/subgroup/key.

As illustrated in the next section, this subdivision is particularly relevant to making multiple choices.

26.3 Choice and multiple choice keys

The l3keys system supports two types of choice key, in which a series of pre-defined input values are linked to varying implementations. Choice keys are usually created so that the various values are mutually-exclusive: only one can apply at any one time. “Multiple” choice keys are also supported: these allow a selection of values to be chosen at the same time.

Mutually-exclusive choices are created by setting the .choice: property:

\keys_define:nn { mymodule }
{ key .choice: }

For keys which are set up as choices, the valid choices are generated by creating sub-keys of the choice key. This can be carried out in two ways.

In many cases, choices execute similar code which is dependant only on the name of the choice or the position of the choice in the list of all possibilities. Here, the keys can share the same code, and can be rapidly created using the .choices:nn property.
\keys_define:nn { mymodule }
{
  key .choices:nn =
    { choice-a, choice-b, choice-c }
    You gave choice \tl_use:N \l_keys_choice_tl',-
    which is in position \int_use:N \l_keys_choice_int \c_space_tl
    in-the-list.
}
}

The index \l_keys_choice_int in the list of choices starts at 1.

\l_keys_choice_int \l_keys_choice_tl

Inside the code block for a choice generated using .choices:nn, the variables \l_keys_choice_tl and \l_keys_choice_int are available to indicate the name of the current choice, and its position in the comma list. The position is indexed from 1. Note that, as with standard key code generated using .code:n, the value passed to the key (i.e. the choice name) is also available as #1.

On the other hand, it is sometimes useful to create choices which use entirely different code from one another. This can be achieved by setting the .choice: property of a key, then manually defining sub-keys.

\keys_define:nn { mymodule }
{
  key .choice:,
  key / choice-a .code:n = code-a,
  key / choice-b .code:n = code-b,
  key / choice-c .code:n = code-c,
}

It is possible to mix the two methods, but manually-created choices should not use \l_keys_choice_tl or \l_keys_choice_int. These variables do not have defined behaviour when used outside of code created using .choices:nn (i.e. anything might happen).

It is possible to allow choice keys to take values which have not previously been defined by adding code for the special unknown choice. The general behavior of the unknown key is described in Section 26.6. A typical example in the case of a choice would be to issue a custom error message:

\keys_define:nn { mymodule }
{
  key .choice:,
  key / choice-a .code:n = code-a,
  key / choice-b .code:n = code-b,
  key / choice-c .code:n = code-c,
  key / unknown .code:n =
    \msg_error:nnxxx { mymodule } { unknown-choice }
    { key } % Name of choice key
    { choice-a , choice-b , choice-c } % Valid choices
    { \exp_not:n {#1} } % Invalid choice given
Multiple choices are created in a very similar manner to mutually-exclusive choices, using the properties `.multichoice:` and `.multichoices:nn`. As with mutually exclusive choices, multiple choices are define as sub-keys. Thus both

\keys_define:nn { mymodule }
\{ 
  key .multichoices:nn = 
  \{ choice-a, choice-b, choice-c \} 
  \{ 
    You-gave-choice-’\texttt{tl_use:N \texttt{l_keys_choice_tl’},-}
      which-is-in-position-
    \texttt{\texttt{int_use:N \texttt{l_keys_choice_int \texttt{c_space_tl}}}}
    in-the-list.
  \}
\}

and

\keys_define:nn { mymodule }
\{ 
  key .multichoice:, 
  key / choice-a .code:n = code-a, 
  key / choice-b .code:n = code-b, 
  key / choice-c .code:n = code-c,
\}

are valid.

When a multiple choice key is set

\keys_set:nn { mymodule }
\{ 
  key = \{ a , b , c \} \% 'key' defined as a multiple choice
\}

each choice is applied in turn, equivalent to a clist mapping or to applying each value individually:

\keys_set:nn { mymodule }
\{ 
  key = a , 
  key = b , 
  key = c , 
\}

Thus each separate choice will have passed to it the \texttt{l_keys_choice_tl} and \texttt{l_keys_choice_int} in exactly the same way as described for \texttt{choices:nn}.
26.4 Key usage scope

Some keys will be used as settings which have a strictly limited scope of usage. Some will be only available once, others will only be valid until typesetting begins. To allow formats to support this in a structured way, \l3keys allows this information to be specified using the \usage:n property.

\usage:n \langle key \rangle .usage:n = \langle scope \rangle

Defines the \langle key \rangle to have usage within the \langle scope \rangle, which should be one of \texttt{general}, \texttt{preamble} or \texttt{load}.

\l3keys itself does \textit{not} attempt to redefine keys based on the usage scope. Rather, this information is made available with these two property lists. These hold an entry for each module (prefix); the value of each entry is a comma-separated list of the usage-restricted key(s).

26.5 Setting keys

\keys_set:nn \langle module \rangle \{ \langle keyval list \rangle \}

Parses the \langle keyval list \rangle, and sets those keys which are defined for \langle module \rangle. The behaviour on finding an unknown key can be set by defining a special \texttt{unknown} key: this is illustrated later.

\l_keys_usage_load_prop
\l_keys_usage_preamble_prop

For each key processed, information of the full \texttt{path} of the key, the \texttt{name} of the key and the \texttt{value} of the key is available within three token list variables. These may be used within the code of the key.

The \texttt{value} is everything after the \texttt{=}, which may be empty if no value was given. This is stored in \l_keys_value_tl, and is not processed in any way by \keys_set:nn.

The \texttt{path} of the key is a “full” description of the key, and is unique for each key. It consists of the module and full key name, thus for example

\keys_set:nn \{ mymodule \} \{ key-a = some-value \}

has path \texttt{mymodule/key-a} while

\keys_set:nn \{ mymodule \} \{ subset / key-a = some-value \}

has path \texttt{mymodule/subset/key-a}. This information is stored in \l_keys_path_str.

The \texttt{name} of the key is the part of the path after the last \texttt{/}, and thus is not unique. In the preceding examples, both keys have name \texttt{key-a} despite having different paths. This information is stored in \l_keys_key_str.
26.6 Handling of unknown keys

If a key has not previously been defined (is unknown), `\keys_set:nn` looks for a special unknown key for the same module, and if this is not defined raises an error indicating that the key name was unknown. This mechanism can be used for example to issue custom error texts.

\keys_define:nn { mymodule }
  \unknown .code:n = You-tried-to-set-key-`\l_keys_key_str'-to-`#1'.
\keys_set_known:nn { \langle module \rangle } { \langle keyval list \rangle }
\keys_set_known:nnN { \langle module \rangle } { \langle keyval list \rangle } { \langle tl \rangle }
\keys_set_known:nnnN { \langle module \rangle } { \langle keyval list \rangle } { \langle root \rangle } { \langle tl \rangle }

New: 2011-08-23
Updated: 2019-01-29

These functions set keys which are known for the ⟨module⟩, and simply ignore other keys. The `\keys_set_known:nn` function parses the ⟨keyval list⟩, and sets those keys which are defined for ⟨module⟩. Any keys which are unknown are not processed further by the parser. In addition, `\keys_set_known:nnN` stores the key–value pairs in the ⟨tl⟩ in comma-separated form (i.e. an edited version of the ⟨keyval list⟩). When a ⟨root⟩ is given ⟨\keys_set_known:nnnN⟩, the key–value entries are returned relative to this point in the key tree. When it is absent, only the key name and value are provided. The correct list is returned by nested calls.

26.7 Selective key setting

In some cases it may be useful to be able to select only some keys for setting, even though these keys have the same path. For example, with a set of keys defined using

\keys_define:nn { mymodule }
  \key-one .code:n = { \my_func:n {#1} } ,
  \key-two .tl_set:N = \l_my_a_tl ,
  \key-three .tl_set:N = \l_my_b_tl ,
  \key-four .fp_set:N = \l_my_a_fp ,

the use of `\keys_set:nn` attempts to set all four keys. However, in some contexts it may only be sensible to set some keys, or to control the order of setting. To do this, keys may be assigned to groups: arbitrary sets which are independent of the key tree. Thus modifying the example to read
\keys define:nn { mymodule }
{
  key-one .code:n = { \my_func:n {#1} },
  key-one .groups:n = { first },
  key-two .tl_set:N = \l_my_a_tl,
  key-two .groups:n = { first },
  key-three .tl_set:N = \l_my_b_tl,
  key-three .groups:n = { second },
  key-four .fp_set:N = \l_my_a_fp,
}

assigns key-one and key-two to group first, key-three to group second, while key-four is not assigned to a group.

Selective key setting may be achieved either by selecting one or more groups to be made “active”, or by marking one or more groups to be ignored in key setting.

\keys_set_filter:nnn
\keys_set_filter:(nnV|nnv|nno)
\keys_set_filter:nnnN
\keys_set_filter:nnnnN

Activates key filtering in an “opt-out” sense: keys assigned to any of the ⟨groups⟩ specified are ignored. The ⟨groups⟩ are given as a comma-separated list. Unknown keys are not assigned to any group and are thus always set. The key–value pairs for each key which is filtered out are stored in the ⟨tl⟩ in a comma-separated form (i.e. an edited version of the ⟨keyval list⟩). The \keys_set_filter:nnn version skips this stage.

Use of \keys_set_filter:nnnN can be nested, with the correct residual ⟨keyval list⟩ returned at each stage. In the version which takes a ⟨root⟩ argument, the key list is returned relative to that point in the key tree. In the cases without a ⟨root⟩ argument, only the key names and values are returned.

\keys_set_groups:nnn
\keys_set_groups:(nnV|nnv|nno)

Activates key filtering in an “opt-in” sense: only keys assigned to one or more of the ⟨groups⟩ specified are set. The ⟨groups⟩ are given as a comma-separated list. Unknown keys are not assigned to any group and are thus never set.
26.8 Utility functions for keys

\texttt{\textbackslash keys\_if\_exist\_p:nn \{\texttt{module}\} \{\texttt{key}\}}
\texttt{\textbackslash keys\_if\_exist\_p:ne \{\texttt{module}\} \{\texttt{key}\}}
\texttt{\textbackslash keys\_if\_exist:nnTF \{\texttt{module}\} \{\texttt{key}\} \{\texttt{true code}\} \{\texttt{false code}\}}

Tests if the \texttt{(key)} exists for \texttt{(module)}, \textit{i.e.} if any code has been defined for \texttt{(key)}.

\texttt{\textbackslash keys\_if\_choice\_exist\_p:nnn \{\texttt{module}\} \{\texttt{key}\} \{\texttt{choice}\}}
\texttt{\textbackslash keys\_if\_choice\_exist\_nnnTF \{\texttt{module}\} \{\texttt{key}\} \{\texttt{choice}\} \{\texttt{true code}\} \{\texttt{false code}\}}

Tests if the \texttt{(choice)} is defined for the \texttt{(key)} within the \texttt{(module)}, \textit{i.e.} if any code has been defined for \texttt{(key)/\texttt{choice}}. The test is \texttt{false} if the \texttt{(key)} itself is not defined.

\texttt{\textbackslash keys\_show:nn \{\texttt{module}\} \{\texttt{key}\}}

Displays in the terminal the information associated to the \texttt{(key)} for a \texttt{(module)}, including the function which is used to actually implement it.

\texttt{\textbackslash keys\_log:nn \{\texttt{module}\} \{\texttt{key}\}}

Writes in the log file the information associated to the \texttt{(key)} for a \texttt{(module)}. See also \texttt{\textbackslash keys\_show:nn} which displays the result in the terminal.

26.9 Low-level interface for parsing key–val lists

To re-cap from earlier, a key–value list is input of the form

\begin{verbatim}
KeyOne = ValueOne ,
KeyTwo = ValueTwo ,
KeyThree
\end{verbatim}

where each key–value pair is separated by a comma from the rest of the list, and each key–value pair does not necessarily contain an equals sign or a value! Processing this type of input correctly requires a number of careful steps, to correctly account for braces, spaces and the category codes of separators.

While the functions described earlier are used as a high-level interface for processing such input, in special circumstances you may wish to use a lower-level approach. The low-level parsing system converts a \texttt{(key–value list)} into \texttt{(keys)} and associated \texttt{(values)}. After the parsing phase is completed, the resulting keys and values (or keys alone) are available for further processing. This processing is not carried out by the low-level parser itself, and so the parser requires the names of two functions along with the key–value list. One function is needed to process key–value pairs (it receives two arguments), and a second function is required for keys given without any value (it is called with a single argument).

The parser does not double \# tokens or expand any input. Active tokens = and , appearing at the outer level of braces are converted to category “other” (12) so that the
parser does not “miss” any due to category code changes. Spaces are removed from the
ends of the keys and values. Keys and values which are given in braces have exactly one
set removed (after space trimming), thus

key = {value here},

and

key = value here,

are treated identically.

\texttt{\textbackslash keyval\_parse:nnn} \texttt{⟨code1⟩} \texttt{⟨code2⟩} \texttt{⟨key–value list⟩}

Parses the \texttt{⟨key–value list⟩} into a series of \texttt{⟨keys⟩} and associated \texttt{⟨values⟩}, or keys alone
(if no \texttt{⟨value⟩} was given). \texttt{⟨code1⟩} receives each \texttt{⟨key⟩} (with no \texttt{⟨value⟩}) as a trailing brace
group, whereas \texttt{⟨code2⟩} is appended by two brace groups, the \texttt{⟨key⟩} and \texttt{⟨value⟩}. The
order of the \texttt{⟨keys⟩} in the \texttt{⟨key–value list⟩} is preserved. Thus

\begin{verbatim}
\keyval_parse:nnn
 { \use_none:nn { code 1 } }
 { \use_none:nnn { code 2 } }
 { key1 = value1 , key2 = value2 , key3 = , key4 }
\end{verbatim}

is converted into an input stream

\begin{verbatim}
\use_none:nn { code 2 } { key1 } { value1 }
\use_none:nn { code 2 } { key2 } { value2 }
\use_none:nn { code 2 } { key3 } { }
\use_none:nn { code 1 } { key4 }
\end{verbatim}

Note that there is a difference between an empty value (an equals sign followed by noth-
ing) and a missing value (no equals sign at all). Spaces are trimmed from the ends of the
\texttt{⟨key⟩} and \texttt{⟨value⟩}, then one outer set of braces is removed from the \texttt{⟨key⟩} and \texttt{⟨value⟩} as
part of the processing. If you need exactly the output shown above, you’ll need to either
\texttt{x-type} or \texttt{e-type} expand the function.

\textbf{\LaTeX} hack notes: The result of each list element is returned within \texttt{\exp_not:n}, which
means that the converted input stream does not expand further when appearing in an \texttt{x-type} or
\texttt{e-type} argument expansion.
\texttt{keyval\_parse:NNn}\hspace{1cm}\texttt{keyval\_parse:NNn (function$_1$) (function$_2$) \{key–value list\}}

Parses the \texttt{key–value list} into a series of \texttt{keys} and associated \texttt{values}, or keys alone (if no \texttt{value} was given). \texttt{function$_1$} should take one argument, while \texttt{function$_2$} should absorb two arguments. After \texttt{keyval\_parse:NNn} has parsed the \texttt{key–value list}, \texttt{function$_1$} is used to process keys given with no value and \texttt{function$_2$} is used to process keys given with a value. The order of the \texttt{keys} in the \texttt{key–value list} is preserved. Thus

\begin{verbatim}
\keyval_parse:NNn \function:n \function:nn
\{ key1 = value1 , key2 = value2, key3 = , key4 \}
\end{verbatim}

is converted into an input stream

\begin{verbatim}
\function:nn \{ key1 \} \{ value1 \}
\function:nn \{ key2 \} \{ value2 \}
\function:nn \{ key3 \} \{}
\function:n \{ key4 \}
\end{verbatim}

Note that there is a difference between an empty value (an equals sign followed by nothing) and a missing value (no equals sign at all). Spaces are trimmed from the ends of the \texttt{key} and \texttt{value}, then one outer set of braces is removed from the \texttt{key} and \texttt{value} as part of the processing.

This shares the implementation of \texttt{keyval\_parse:nnn}, the difference is only semantically.

\texttt{\TeX}hackers note: The result is returned within \texttt{exp\_not:n}, which means that the converted input stream does not expand further when appearing in an \texttt{x}-type or \texttt{e}-type argument expansion.
Chapter 27

The \texttt{l3intarray} package: fast global integer arrays

27.1 \texttt{l3intarray} documentation

For applications requiring heavy use of integers, this module provides arrays which can be accessed in constant time (contrast \texttt{l3seq}, where access time is linear). These arrays have several important features

- The size of the array is fixed and must be given at point of initialisation
- The absolute value of each entry has maximum $2^{30} - 1$ (i.e. one power lower than the usual \texttt{c_max_int} ceiling of $2^{31} - 1$)

The use of \texttt{intarray} data is therefore recommended for cases where the need for fast access is of paramount importance.

\begin{verbatim}
\intarray_new:Nn \langle intarray \ var \rangle \{ \langle \ size \rangle \}
\end{verbatim}

Evaluates the integer expression \langle \size \rangle and allocates an \texttt{integer array variable} with that number of (zero) entries. The variable name should start with \texttt{g} because assignments are always global.

\begin{verbatim}
\intarray_count:N \langle intarray \ var \rangle
\end{verbatim}

Expands to the number of entries in the \texttt{integer array variable}. Contrarily to \texttt{\seq_count:N} this is performed in constant time.

\begin{verbatim}
\intarray_gset:Nnn \langle intarray \ var \rangle \{ \langle \ position \rangle \} \{ \langle \ value \rangle \}
\end{verbatim}

Stores the result of evaluating the integer expression \langle \value \rangle into the \texttt{integer array variable} at the (integer expression) \langle \position \rangle. If the \langle \position \rangle is not between 1 and the \texttt{\intarray_count:N}, or the \langle \value \rangle's absolute value is bigger than $2^{30} - 1$, an error occurs. Assignments are always global.
\intarray_const_from_clist:Nn \intarray_const_from_clist:cn
\intarray_const_from_clist:cn

Creates a new constant (integer array variable) or raises an error if the name is already taken. The (integer array variable) is set (globally) to contain as its items the results of evaluating each (integer expression) in the (comma list).

\intarray_gzero:N \intarray_gzero:c
\intarray_gzero:c

Sets all entries of the (integer array variable) to zero. Assignments are always global.

\intarray_item:Nn \intarray_item:cn \intarray_item:cn
\intarray_item:cn

Expands to the integer entry stored at the (integer expression) (position) in the (integer array variable). If the (position) is not between 1 and the \intarray_count:N, an error occurs.

\intarray_rand_item:N \intarray_rand_item:c \intarray_rand_item:c
\intarray_rand_item:c

Selects a pseudo-random item of the (integer array). If the (integer array) is empty, produce an error.

\intarray_show:N \intarray_show:c \intarray_log:N \intarray_log:c
\intarray_log:c

Displays the items in the (integer array variable) in the terminal or writes them in the log file.

27.1.1 Implementation notes

It is a wrapper around the \fontdimen primitive, used to store arrays of integers (with a restricted range: absolute value at most $2^{30} - 1$). In contrast to \l3seq sequences the access to individual entries is done in constant time rather than linear time, but only integers can be stored. More precisely, the primitive \fontdimen stores dimensions but the \intarray package transparently converts these from/to integers. Assignments are always global.

While Lua\TeX’s memory is extensible, other engines can “only” deal with a bit less than $4 \times 10^9$ entries in all \fontdimen arrays combined (with default \TeX Live settings).
Chapter 28

The l3fp package: Floating points

A decimal floating point number is one which is stored as a significand and a separate exponent. The module implements expandably a wide set of arithmetic, trigonometric, and other operations on decimal floating point numbers, to be used within floating point expressions. Floating point expressions support the following operations with their usual precedence.

- Basic arithmetic: addition $x + y$, subtraction $x - y$, multiplication $x \times y$, division $x/y$, square root $\sqrt{x}$, and parentheses.
- Comparison operators: $x < y$, $x \leq y$, $x > y$, $x! = y$ etc.
- Boolean logic: sign $\text{sign} x$, negation $\text{!} x$, conjunction $x \&\& y$, disjunction $x \mid\mid y$, ternary operator $x ? y : z$.
- Exponentials: $\exp x$, $\ln x$, $x^y$, $\log_b x$.
- Integer factorial: $\text{fact} x$.
- Trigonometry: $\sin x$, $\cos x$, $\tan x$, $\cot x$, $\sec x$, $\csc x$ expecting their arguments in radians, and $\sin d x$, $\cos d x$, $\tan d x$, $\cot d x$, $\sec d x$, $\csc d x$ expecting their arguments in degrees.
- Inverse trigonometric functions: $\arcsin x$, $\arccos x$, $\arctan x$, $\arccot x$, $\arcsec x$, $\arccsc x$ giving a result in radians, and $\arcsind x$, $\arccosd x$, $\arctand x$, $\arccotd x$, $\arcsecd x$, $\arcscd x$ giving a result in degrees.

(not yet) Hyperbolic functions and their inverse functions: $\sinh x$, $\cosh x$, $\tanh x$, $\coth x$, $\sech x$, $\csch$, and $\text{arsinh} x$, $\text{arccosh} x$, $\text{arctanh} x$, $\text{arccoth} x$, $\text{arcsech} x$, $\text{arccsch} x$.
- Extrema: $\text{max}(x_1, x_2, \ldots)$, $\text{min}(x_1, x_2, \ldots)$, $\text{abs}(x)$.
- Rounding functions, controlled by two optional values, $n$ (number of places, 0 by default) and $t$ (behavior on a tie, nan by default):
  - $\text{trunc}(x, n)$ rounds towards zero,
  - $\text{floor}(x, n)$ rounds towards $-\infty$,
(1) \( \text{ceil}(x, n) \) rounds towards \(+\infty\),
(2) \( \text{round}(x, n, t) \) rounds to the closest value, with ties rounded to an even value by default, towards zero if \( t = 0 \), towards \(+\infty\) if \( t > 0 \) and towards \(-\infty\) if \( t < 0 \).

And (not yet) modulo, and “quantize”.

- Random numbers: \( \text{rand}() \), \( \text{randint}(m, n) \).
- Constants: \( \pi \), \( \text{deg} \) (one degree in radians).
- Dimensions, automatically expressed in points, \( \text{e.g.}, \text{pc} \) is 12.
- Automatic conversion (no need for \( \langle \text{type}_\text{use}:N \rangle \)) of integer, dimension, and skip variables to floating point numbers, expressing dimensions in points and ignoring the stretch and shrink components of skips.
- Tuples: \((x_1, \ldots, x_n)\) that can be stored in variables, added together, multiplied or divided by a floating point number, and nested.

Floating point numbers can be given either explicitly (in a form such as \( 1.234\times10^{-34} \), or \( -.0001 \)), or as a stored floating point variable, which is automatically replaced by its current value. A “floating point” is a floating point number or a tuple thereof. See section 28.9.1 for a description of what a floating point is, section 28.9.2 for details about how an expression is parsed, and section 28.9.3 to know what the various operations do. Some operations may raise exceptions (error messages), described in section 28.7.

An example of use could be the following.

\texttt{\LaTeX} can now compute: $ \frac{\sin (3.5)}{2} + 2\cdot 10^{-3} = \ExplSyntaxOn \fp_to_decimal:n {sin(3.5)/2 + 2e-3} $.

The operation \texttt{round} can be used to limit the result’s precision. Adding \(+0\) avoids the possibly undesirable output \(-0\), replacing it by \(+0\). However, the \texttt{l3fp} module is mostly meant as an underlying tool for higher-level commands. For example, one could provide a function to typeset nicely the result of floating point computations.

\texttt{\documentclass{article}}
\usepackage{xparse, siunitx}
\ExplSyntaxOn
\NewDocumentCommand { \calcnum } { m } { \num { \fp_to_scientific:n {#1} } }\ExplSyntaxOff
\begin{document}
\calcnum { 2 \pi \times \sin ( 2.3 ^ 5 ) } 
\end{document}

See the documentation of \texttt{siunitx} for various options of \texttt{num}.

239
28.1 Creating and initialising floating point variables

\fp_new:N  \langle fp var \rangle
\fp_new:c  \langle fp var \rangle

Creates a new \textit{(fp var)} or raises an error if the name is already taken. The declaration is global. The \textit{(fp var)} is initially \textit{+0}.

\fp_const:Nn  \langle fp var \rangle  \{ \langle floating point expression \rangle \}
\fp_const:cn  \langle fp var \rangle

Creates a new constant \textit{(fp var)} or raises an error if the name is already taken. The \textit{(fp var)} is set globally equal to the result of evaluating the \textit{(floating point expression)}.

\fp_zero:N  \langle fp var \rangle
\fp_zero:c
\fp_gzero:N
\fp_gzero:c

Sets the \textit{(fp var)} to \textit{+0}.

\fp_zero_new:N  \langle fp var \rangle
\fp_zero_new:c
\fp_gzero_new:N
\fp_gzero_new:c

Ensures that the \textit{(fp var)} exists globally by applying \texttt{\fp_new:N} if necessary, then applies \texttt{\fp_(g)zero:N} to leave the \textit{(fp var)} set to \textit{+0}.

28.2 Setting floating point variables

\fp_set:Nn  \langle fp var \rangle  \{ \langle floating point expression \rangle \}
\fp_set:cn
\fp_gset:Nn
\fp_gset:cn

Sets \textit{(fp var)} equal to the result of computing the \textit{(floating point expression)}.

\fp_set_eq:NN  \langle fp var \rangle_1  \langle fp var \rangle_2
\fp_set_eq:(c|N|c|c)
\fp_gset_eq:NN  \langle fp var \rangle_1  \langle fp var \rangle_2
\fp_gset_eq:(c|N|c|c)

Sets the floating point variable \textit{(fp var}_1) equal to the current value of \textit{(fp var}_2).

\fp_add:Nn  \langle fp var \rangle  \{ \langle floating point expression \rangle \}
\fp_add:cn
\fp_gadd:Nn
\fp_gadd:cn

Adds the result of computing the \textit{(floating point expression)} to the \textit{(fp var)}. This also applies if \textit{(fp var)} and \textit{(floating point expression)} evaluate to tuples of the same size.
\texttt{\textbackslash fp\_sub:Nn} (fp var) \{\textit{floating point expression}\}

Subtracts the result of computing the \textit{floating point expression} from the (fp var). This also applies if (fp var) and \textit{floating point expression} evaluate to tuples of the same size.

\section*{28.3 Using floating points}

\texttt{\textbackslash fp\_eval:n} \{\textit{floating point expression}\}

Evaluates the \textit{floating point expression} and expresses the result as a decimal number with no exponent. Non-significant trailing zeros are trimmed, and integers are expressed without a decimal separator. The values $\pm \infty$ and \texttt{nan} trigger an “invalid operation” exception. For a tuple, each item is converted using \texttt{\textbackslash fp\_eval:n} and they are combined as $(\texttt{\langle fp1 \rangle}, \texttt{\langle fp2 \rangle}, \ldots, \texttt{\langle fp_n \rangle})$ if $n > 1$ and $(\texttt{\langle fp1 \rangle})$ or $\emptyset$ for fewer items. This function is identical to \texttt{\textbackslash fp\_to\_decimal:n}.

\texttt{\textbackslash fp\_sign:n} \{\textit{fpexpr}\}

Evaluates the \textit{fpexpr} and leaves its sign in the input stream using \texttt{\textbackslash fp\_eval:n}\{\texttt{\textbackslash sign(\langle result\rangle)}\}: $+1$ for positive numbers and for $+\infty$, $-1$ for negative numbers and for $-\infty$, $\pm 0$ for $\pm 0$. If the operand is a tuple or is \texttt{nan}, then “invalid operation” occurs and the result is 0.

\texttt{\textbackslash fp\_to\_decimal:N} \{\textit{fp var}\} \texttt{\textbackslash fp\_to\_decimal:n} \{\textit{floating point expression}\}

Evaluates the \textit{floating point expression} and expresses the result as a decimal number with no exponent. Leading or trailing zeros may be inserted to compensate for the exponent. Non-significant trailing zeros are trimmed, and integers are expressed without a decimal separator. The values $\pm \infty$ and \texttt{nan} trigger an “invalid operation” exception. For a tuple, each item is converted using \texttt{\textbackslash fp\_to\_decimal:n} and they are combined as $(\texttt{\langle fp1 \rangle}, \texttt{\langle fp2 \rangle}, \ldots, \texttt{\langle fp_n \rangle})$ if $n > 1$ and $(\texttt{\langle fp1 \rangle})$ or $\emptyset$ for fewer items.

\texttt{\textbackslash fp\_to\_int:N} \{\textit{fp var}\} \texttt{\textbackslash fp\_to\_int:n} \{\textit{floating point expression}\}

Evaluates the \textit{floating point expression} and rounds the result to the closest integer, rounding exact ties to an even integer. The result may be outside the range $[-2^{31} + 1; 2^{31} - 1]$ of valid \TeX{} integers, leading to overflow errors if used in an integer expression. Tuples, as well as the values $\pm \infty$ and \texttt{nan}, trigger an “invalid operation” exception.
\fp_to_scientific:N \fp_to_scientific:c \fp_to_scientific:n

Evaluates the \langle floating point expression \rangle and expresses the result in scientific notation:
\langle optional - \rangle \langle digit \rangle . \langle 15 digits \rangle \times \langle optional sign \rangle \langle exponent \rangle

The leading \langle digit \rangle is non-zero except in the case of ±0. The values ±∞ and nan trigger an “invalid operation” exception. Normal category codes apply: thus the e is category code 11 (a letter). For a tuple, each item is converted using \fp_to_scientific:n and they are combined as \langle fp_1 \rangle, \langle fp_2 \rangle, \ldots \langle fp_n \rangle if \( n > 1 \) and \langle fp_1 \rangle or \langle \rangle for fewer items.

\fp_to_tl:N \fp_to_tl:c \fp_to_tl:n

Evaluates the \langle floating point expression \rangle and expresses the result in (almost) the shortest possible form. Numbers in the ranges \((0, 10^{-3})\) and \([10^{16}, \infty)\) are expressed in scientific notation with trailing zeros trimmed and no decimal separator when there is a single significant digit (this differs from \fp_to_scientific:n). Numbers in the range \([10^{-3}, 10^{16})\) are expressed in a decimal notation without exponent, with trailing zeros trimmed, and no decimal separator for integer values (see \fp_to_decimal:n. Negative numbers start with -. The special values ±0, ±∞ and nan are rendered as 0, -0, inf, -inf, and nan respectively. Normal category codes apply and thus inf or nan, if produced, are made up of letters. For a tuple, each item is converted using \fp_to_tl:n and they are combined as \langle fp_1 \rangle, \langle fp_2 \rangle, \ldots \langle fp_n \rangle if \( n > 1 \) and \langle fp_1 \rangle or \langle \rangle for fewer items. This function is identical to \fp_to_decimal:n.

\fp_use:N \fp_use:c

Inserts the value of the \langle fp var \rangle into the input stream as a decimal number with no exponent. Leading or trailing zeros may be inserted to compensate for the exponent. Non-significant trailing zeros are trimmed. Integers are expressed without a decimal separator. The values ±∞ and nan trigger an “invalid operation” exception. For a tuple, each item is converted using \fp_to_decimal:n and they are combined as \langle fp_1 \rangle, \langle fp_2 \rangle, \ldots \langle fp_n \rangle if \( n > 1 \) and \langle fp_1 \rangle or \langle \rangle for fewer items. This function is identical to \fp_to_decimal:n.

28.4 Floating point conditionals

\fp_if_exist_p:N \fp_if_exist_p:c \fp_if_exist:NTF \fp_if_exist:cTF

Tests whether the \langle fp var \rangle is currently defined. This does not check that the \langle fp var \rangle really is a floating point variable.
\fp_compare:p:nNn * \fp_compare:p:nNn \{\textit{fpexpr}_1\} \{\textit{relation}\} \{\textit{fpexpr}_2\}
\fp_compare:nNnTF \{\textit{fpexpr}_1\} \{\textit{relation}\} \{\textit{fpexpr}_2\} \{\textit{true code}\} \{\textit{false code}\}

Compares the \textit{fpexpr}_1 and the \textit{fpexpr}_2, and returns \texttt{true} if the \textit{relation} is obeyed. Two floating points \texttt{x} and \texttt{y} may obey four mutually exclusive relations: \texttt{x < y}, \texttt{x = y}, \texttt{x > y}, or \texttt{x ? y} ("not ordered"). The last case occurs exactly if one or both operands is \texttt{nan} or is a tuple, unless they are equal tuples. Note that a \texttt{nan} is distinct from any value, even another \texttt{nan}, hence \texttt{x = x} is not true for a \texttt{nan}. To test if a value is \texttt{nan}, compare it to an arbitrary number with the "not ordered" relation.

\begin{verbatim}
\fp_compare:nNnTF \{<value>\} ? \{ 0 \}
{ } \% <value> is nan
{ } \% <value> is not nan
\end{verbatim}

Tuples are equal if they have the same number of items and items compare equal (in particular there must be no \texttt{nan}). At present any other comparison with tuples yields \texttt{?} (not ordered). This is experimental.

This function is less flexible than \texttt{\int_compare:nTF} but slightly faster. It is provided for consistency with \texttt{\int_compare:nNnTF} and \texttt{\dim_compare:nNnTF}.
\fp_compare_p:n \fp_compare:nTF

\fp_do_until:nNnn \fp_do_while:nNnn

28.5 Floating point expression loops

Evaluates the (floating point expressions) as described for \fp_eval:n and compares consecutive result using the corresponding (relation), namely it compares \( \langle \text{fpexpr}_1 \rangle \) and \( \langle \text{relation}_1 \rangle \), then \( \langle \text{fpexpr}_2 \rangle \) and \( \langle \text{relation}_2 \rangle \), until finally comparing \( \langle \text{fpexpr}_N \rangle \) and \( \langle \text{relation}_N \rangle \) using the \( \langle \text{relation}_N \rangle \). The test yields true if all comparisons are true. Each (floating point expression) is evaluated only once. Contrarily to \int_compare:nTF, all (floating point expressions) are computed, even if one comparison is false. Two floating points \( x \) and \( y \) may obey four mutually exclusive relations: \( x < y \), \( x = y \), \( x > y \), or \( x ? y \) (“not ordered”). The last case occurs exactly if one or both operands is \texttt{nan} or is a tuple, unless they are equal tuples. Each (relation) can be any (non-empty) combination of \( < \), \( = \), \( > \), and \( ? \), plus an optional leading \( ! \) (which negates the (relation)), with the restriction that the (relation) may not start with \( ? \), as this symbol has a different meaning (in combination with \( : \)) within floating point expressions. The comparison \( x \langle \text{relation} \rangle y \) is then true if the (relation) does not start with \( ! \) and the actual relation \( (x, y) \) between \( x \) and \( y \) appears within the (relation), or on the contrary if the (relation) starts with \( ! \) and the relation between \( x \) and \( y \) does not appear within the (relation). Common choices of (relation) include \( >= \) (greater or equal), \( != \) (not equal), \( != \) (not equal). This function is more flexible than \fp_compare:nNnTF and only slightly slower.
\fp_until_do:nNnn \{fexpr_1\} \{relation\} \{fexpr_2\} \{\texttt{code}\}

Evaluates the relationship between the two \textit{floating point expressions} as described for \texttt{fp_compare:nNnTF}, and then places the \texttt{code} in the input stream if the \texttt{relation} is \texttt{false}. After the \texttt{code} has been processed by \TeX{} the test is repeated, and a loop occurs until the test is \texttt{true}.

\texttt{fp_until_do:nNnn} ✩

\texttt{New: 2012-08-16}

\texttt{Updated: 2013-12-14}

\fp_while_do:nNnn \{fexpr_1\} \{relation\} \{fexpr_2\} \{\texttt{code}\}

Evaluates the relationship between the two \textit{floating point expressions} as described for \texttt{fp_compare:nNnTF}, and then places the \texttt{code} in the input stream if the \texttt{relation} is \texttt{true}. After the \texttt{code} has been processed by \TeX{} the test is repeated, and a loop occurs until the test is \texttt{false}.

\texttt{fp_while_do:nNnn} ✩

\texttt{New: 2012-08-16}

\texttt{Updated: 2013-12-14}

\fp_do_until:nn \{fexpr_1\} \{relation\} \{fexpr_2\} \{\texttt{code}\}

Places the \texttt{code} in the input stream for \TeX{} to process, and then evaluates the relationship between the two \textit{floating point expressions} as described for \texttt{fp_compare:nNnTF}. If the test is \texttt{false} then the \texttt{code} is inserted into the input stream again and a loop occurs until the \texttt{relation} is \texttt{true}.

\texttt{fp_do_until:nn} ✩

\texttt{New: 2012-08-16}

\texttt{Updated: 2013-12-14}

\fp_do_while:nn \{fexpr_1\} \{relation\} \{fexpr_2\} \{\texttt{code}\}

Places the \texttt{code} in the input stream for \TeX{} to process, and then evaluates the relationship between the two \textit{floating point expressions} as described for \texttt{fp_compare:nNnTF}. If the test is \texttt{true} then the \texttt{code} is inserted into the input stream again and a loop occurs until the \texttt{relation} is \texttt{false}.

\texttt{fp_do_while:nn} ✩

\texttt{New: 2012-08-16}

\texttt{Updated: 2013-12-14}

\fp_until_do:nn \{fexpr_1\} \{relation\} \{fexpr_2\} \{\texttt{code}\}

Evaluates the relationship between the two \textit{floating point expressions} as described for \texttt{fp_compare:nNnTF}, and then places the \texttt{code} in the input stream if the \texttt{relation} is \texttt{false}. After the \texttt{code} has been processed by \TeX{} the test is repeated, and a loop occurs until the test is \texttt{true}.

\texttt{fp_until_do:nn} ✩

\texttt{New: 2012-08-16}

\texttt{Updated: 2013-12-14}

\fp_while_do:nn \{fexpr_1\} \{relation\} \{fexpr_2\} \{\texttt{code}\}

Evaluates the relationship between the two \textit{floating point expressions} as described for \texttt{fp_compare:nNnTF}, and then places the \texttt{code} in the input stream if the \texttt{relation} is \texttt{true}. After the \texttt{code} has been processed by \TeX{} the test is repeated, and a loop occurs until the test is \texttt{false}.

\texttt{fp_while_do:nn} ✩

\texttt{New: 2012-08-16}

\texttt{Updated: 2013-12-14}
This function first evaluates the ⟨initial value⟩, ⟨step⟩ and ⟨final value⟩, each of which should be a floating point expression evaluating to a floating point number, not a tuple. The ⟨function⟩ is then placed in front of each ⟨value⟩ from the ⟨initial value⟩ to the ⟨final value⟩ in turn (using ⟨step⟩ between each ⟨value⟩). The ⟨step⟩ must be non-zero. If the ⟨step⟩ is positive, the loop stops when the ⟨value⟩ becomes larger than the ⟨final value⟩. If the ⟨step⟩ is negative, the loop stops when the ⟨value⟩ becomes smaller than the ⟨final value⟩. The ⟨function⟩ should absorb one numerical argument. For example

\cs_set:Npn \my_func:n \#1 { \[I saw \#1\] \quad }
\fp_step_function:nnnN { 1.0 } { 0.1 } { 1.5 } \my_func:n

would print

[I saw 1.0] [I saw 1.1] [I saw 1.2] [I saw 1.3] [I saw 1.4] [I saw 1.5]

\textbf{\TeX} hackers note: Due to rounding, it may happen that adding the ⟨step⟩ to the ⟨value⟩ does not change the ⟨value⟩; such cases give an error, as they would otherwise lead to an infinite loop.

This function first evaluates the ⟨initial value⟩, ⟨step⟩ and ⟨final value⟩, all of which should be floating point expressions evaluating to a floating point number, not a tuple. Then for each ⟨value⟩ from the ⟨initial value⟩ to the ⟨final value⟩ in turn (using ⟨step⟩ between each ⟨value⟩), the ⟨code⟩ is inserted into the input stream with ⟨tl var⟩ defined as the current ⟨value⟩. Thus the ⟨code⟩ should define a function of one argument (#1).

This function first evaluates the ⟨initial value⟩, ⟨step⟩ and ⟨final value⟩, all of which should be floating point expressions evaluating to a floating point number, not a tuple. Then for each ⟨value⟩ from the ⟨initial value⟩ to the ⟨final value⟩ in turn (using ⟨step⟩ between each ⟨value⟩), the ⟨code⟩ is inserted into the input stream, with the ⟨tl var⟩ defined as the current ⟨value⟩. Thus the ⟨code⟩ should make use of the ⟨tl var⟩.

### 28.6 Some useful constants, and scratch variables

Zero, with either sign.

One as an \texttt{fp}: useful for comparisons in some places.
Infinity, with either sign. These can be input directly in a floating point expression as inf and -inf.

The value of the base of the natural logarithm, \( e = \exp(1) \).

The value of \( \pi \). This can be input directly in a floating point expression as pi.

The value of \( 1^\circ \) in radians. Multiply an angle given in degrees by this value to obtain a result in radians. Note that trigonometric functions expecting an argument in radians or in degrees are both available. Within floating point expressions, this can be accessed as deg.

Scratch floating points for local assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any \LaTeX3-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.

Scratch floating points for global assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any \LaTeX3-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.

28.7 Floating point exceptions

The functions defined in this section are experimental, and their functionality may be altered or removed altogether.

“Exceptions” may occur when performing some floating point operations, such as \( 0 / 0 \), or \( 10 \times 10^{9999} \). The relevant IEEE standard defines 5 types of exceptions, of which we implement 4.

- **Overflow** occurs whenever the result of an operation is too large to be represented as a normal floating point number. This results in \( \pm\infty \).

- **Underflow** occurs whenever the result of an operation is too close to 0 to be represented as a normal floating point number. This results in \( \pm0 \).

- **Invalid operation** occurs for operations with no defined outcome, for instance \( 0/0 \) or \( \sin(\infty) \), and results in a nan. It also occurs for conversion functions whose target type does not have the appropriate infinite or nan value (e.g., \( \texttt{\textbackslash fp\_to\_dim:n} \)).

- **Division by zero** occurs when dividing a non-zero number by 0, or when evaluating functions at poles, e.g., \( \ln(0) \) or \( \cot(0) \). This results in \( \pm\infty \).
Inexact occurs whenever the result of a computation is not exact, in other words, almost always. At the moment, this exception is entirely ignored in \TeX3.

To each exception we associate a “flag”: \texttt{fp\_overflow}, \texttt{fp\_underflow}, \texttt{fp\_invalid\_operation} and \texttt{fp\_division\_by\_zero}. The state of these flags can be tested and modified with commands from \texttt{l3flag}.

By default, the “invalid operation” exception triggers an (expandable) error, and raises the corresponding flag. Other exceptions raise the corresponding flag but do not trigger an error. The behaviour when an exception occurs can be modified (using \texttt{\fp\_trap:nn}) to either produce an error and raise the flag, or only raise the flag, or do nothing at all.

\begin{verbatim}
\fp\_trap:nn {⟨exception⟩} {⟨trap type⟩}
\end{verbatim}

All occurrences of the \texttt{(exception)} (overflow, underflow, invalid\_operation or division\_by\_zero) within the current group are treated as \texttt{(trap type)}, which can be

- \textbf{none}: the \texttt{(exception)} will be entirely ignored, and leave no trace;
- \textbf{flag}: the \texttt{(exception)} will turn the corresponding flag on when it occurs;
- \textbf{error}: additionally, the \texttt{(exception)} will halt the \TeX run and display some information about the current operation in the terminal.

This function is experimental, and may be altered or removed.

\begin{verbatim}
\fp\_show:N⟨fp var⟩
\fp\_show:c⟨floating point expression⟩
\fp\_show:n⟨floating point expression⟩
\end{verbatim}

Evaluates the \texttt{(floating point expression)} and displays the result in the terminal.

\begin{verbatim}
\fp\_log:N⟨fp var⟩
\fp\_log:c⟨floating point expression⟩
\fp\_log:n⟨floating point expression⟩
\end{verbatim}

Evaluates the \texttt{(floating point expression)} and writes the result in the log file.

28.8 Viewing floating points
28.9 Floating point expressions

28.9.1 Input of floating point numbers

We support four types of floating point numbers:

- \( \pm m \cdot 10^n \), a floating point number, with integer \( 1 \leq m \leq 10^{16} \), and \( -10000 \leq n \leq 10000 \);
- \( \pm 0 \), zero, with a given sign;
- \( \pm \infty \), infinity, with a given sign;
- \( \text{nan} \), is “not a number”, and can be either quiet or signalling (not yet: this distinction is currently unsupported);

Normal floating point numbers are stored in base 10, with up to 16 significant figures.

On input, a normal floating point number consists of:

- \( \langle \text{sign} \rangle \): a possibly empty string of + and - characters;
- \( \langle \text{significand} \rangle \): a non-empty string of digits together with zero or one dot;
- \( \langle \text{exponent} \rangle \) optionally: the character \( e \) or \( E \), followed by a possibly empty string of + and - tokens, and a non-empty string of digits.

The sign of the resulting number is + if \( \langle \text{sign} \rangle \) contains an even number of -, and - otherwise, hence, an empty \( \langle \text{sign} \rangle \) denotes a non-negative input. The stored significand is obtained from \( \langle \text{significand} \rangle \) by omitting the decimal separator and leading zeros, and rounding to 16 significant digits, filling with trailing zeros if necessary. In particular, the value stored is exact if the input \( \langle \text{significand} \rangle \) has at most 16 digits. The stored \( \langle \text{exponent} \rangle \) is obtained by combining the input \( \langle \text{exponent} \rangle \) (0 if absent) with a shift depending on the position of the significand and the number of leading zeros.

A special case arises if the resulting \( \langle \text{exponent} \rangle \) is either too large or too small for the floating point number to be represented. This results either in an overflow (the number is then replaced by \( \pm \infty \)), or an underflow (resulting in \( \pm 0 \)).

The result is thus \( \pm 0 \) if and only if \( \langle \text{significand} \rangle \) contains no non-zero digit (i.e., consists only in characters 0, and an optional period), or if there is an underflow. Note that a single dot is currently a valid floating point number, equal to +0, but that is not guaranteed to remain true.

The \( \langle \text{significand} \rangle \) must be non-empty, so \( e1 \) and \( e-1 \) are not valid floating point numbers. Note that the latter could be mistaken with the difference of “e” and 1. To avoid confusions, the base of natural logarithms cannot be input as \( e \) and should be input as \( \text{exp}(1) \) or \( \text{\_e\_fp} \) (which is faster).

Special numbers are input as follows:

- \text{inf} represents \( +\infty \), and can be preceded by any \( \langle \text{sign} \rangle \), yielding \( \pm \infty \) as appropriate.
- \text{nan} represents a (quiet) non-number. It can be preceded by any sign, but that sign is ignored.
- Any unrecognizable string triggers an error, and produces a \text{nan}.
- Note that commands such as \text{\_inf\_}, \text{\_pi}, or \text{\_sin} do not work in floating point expressions. They may silently be interpreted as completely unexpected numbers, because integer constants (allowed in expressions) are commonly stored as mathematical characters.
28.9.2 Precedence of operators

We list here all the operations supported in floating point expressions, in order of decreasing precedence: operations listed earlier bind more tightly than operations listed below them.

- Function calls ($\sin$, $\ln$, etc).
- Binary ** and ~ (right associative).
- Unary +, −, !.
- Implicit multiplication by juxtaposition (2pi) when neither factor is in parentheses.
- Binary * and /, implicit multiplication by juxtaposition with parentheses (for instance 3(4+5)).
- Binary + and −.
- Comparisons $\geq$, $\neq$, $<$, $>$, etc.
- Logical and, denoted by $\&\&$.
- Logical or, denoted by $\|\|$$\&\&$.
- Ternary operator $?:$ (right associative).
- Comma (to build tuples).

The precedence of operations can be overridden using parentheses. In particular, the precedence of juxtaposition implies that

$$1/2\pi = 1/(2\pi),$$
$$1/2\pi(\pi + \pi) = (2\pi)^{-1}(\pi + \pi) \simeq 1,$$
$$\sin2\pi = \sin(2)\pi \neq 0,$$
$$2^{-2\max(3,5)} = 2^2 \max(3,5) = 20,$$
$$\text{i}n/\text{cm} = (\text{i}n)/(\text{cm}) = 2.54.$$ 

Functions are called on the value of their argument, contrarily to \TeX macros.

28.9.3 Operations

We now present the various operations allowed in floating point expressions, from the lowest precedence to the highest. When used as a truth value, a floating point expression is \texttt{false} if it is $\pm 0$, and \texttt{true} otherwise, including when it is \texttt{nan} or a tuple such as (0, 0).

Tuples are only supported to some extent by operations that work with truth values (?:, $\|\|$, $\&\&$, !), by comparisons (!$\equiv$?), and by +, −, *, /). Unless otherwise specified, providing a tuple as an argument of any other operation yields the “invalid operation” exception and a \texttt{nan} result.
The ternary operator `?:` results in \langle operand_2 \rangle if \langle operand_1 \rangle is true (not ±0), and \langle operand_3 \rangle if \langle operand_1 \rangle is false (±0). All three \langle operands \rangle are evaluated in all cases; they may be tuples. The operator is right associative, hence

\begin{verbatim}
\fp_eval:n { \langle operand_1 \rangle ? \langle operand_2 \rangle : \langle operand_3 \rangle }
\end{verbatim}

first tests whether 1 + 3 > 4; since this isn’t true, the branch following : is taken, and 2 + 4 > 5 is compared; since this is true, the branch before : is taken, and everything else is (evaluated then) ignored. That allows testing for various cases in a concise manner, with the drawback that all computations are made in all cases.

\begin{verbatim}
\fp_eval:n { \langle operand_1 \rangle || \langle operand_2 \rangle }
\end{verbatim}

If \langle operand_1 \rangle is true (not ±0), use that value, otherwise the value of \langle operand_2 \rangle. Both \langle operands \rangle are evaluated in all cases; they may be tuples. In \langle operand_1 \rangle || \langle operand_2 \rangle || ... || \langle operand_n \rangle, the first true (nonzero) \langle operand \rangle is used and if all are zero the last one (±0) is used.

\begin{verbatim}
\fp_eval:n { \langle operand_1 \rangle && \langle operand_2 \rangle }
\end{verbatim}

If \langle operand_1 \rangle is false (equal to ±0), use that value, otherwise the value of \langle operand_2 \rangle. Both \langle operands \rangle are evaluated in all cases; they may be tuples. In \langle operand_1 \rangle && \langle operand_2 \rangle && ... && \langle operand_n \rangle, the first false (±0) \langle operand \rangle is used and if none is zero the last one is used.

Each \langle relation \rangle consists of a non-empty string of <, =, >, and ?, optionally preceded by !, and may not start with ?. This evaluates to +1 if all comparisons \langle operand_i \rangle \langle relation_i \rangle \langle operand_{i+1} \rangle are true, and +0 otherwise. All \langle operands \rangle are evaluated (once) in all cases. See \fp_compare:nTF for details.

\begin{verbatim}
\fp_eval:n { \langle operand_1 \rangle + \langle operand_2 \rangle }
\fp_eval:n { \langle operand_1 \rangle - \langle operand_2 \rangle }
\end{verbatim}

Computes the sum or the difference of its two \langle operands \rangle. The “invalid operation” exception occurs for ∞ − ∞. “Underflow” and “overflow” occur when appropriate. These operations supports the itemwise addition or subtraction of two tuples, but if they have a different number of items the “invalid operation” exception occurs and the result is nan.
* \( \langle \text{operand}1 \rangle \ast \langle \text{operand}2 \rangle \) 
/ \( \langle \text{operand}1 \rangle / \langle \text{operand}2 \rangle \) 

Computes the product or the ratio of its two \( \langle \text{operands} \rangle \). The “invalid operation” exception occurs for \( \infty/\infty \), 0/0, or 0 * \( \infty \). “Division by zero” occurs when dividing a finite non-zero number by ±0. “Underflow” and “overflow” occur when appropriate. When \( \langle \text{operand}1 \rangle \) is a tuple and \( \langle \text{operand}2 \rangle \) is a floating point number, each item of \( \langle \text{operand}1 \rangle \) is multiplied or divided by \( \langle \text{operand}2 \rangle \). Other combinations yield an “invalid operation” exception and a \text{n}a\text{n} result.

+ \( \langle \text{operand} \rangle \) 
- \( \langle \text{operand} \rangle \) 
! \( \langle \text{operand} \rangle \) 

The unary + does nothing, the unary - changes the sign of the \( \langle \text{operand} \rangle \) (for a tuple, of all its components), and ! \( \langle \text{operand} \rangle \) evaluates to 1 if \( \langle \text{operand} \rangle \) is false (is ±0) and 0 otherwise (this is the \text{not} boolean function). Those operations never raise exceptions.

** \( \langle \text{operand}1 \rangle \ast \langle \text{operand}2 \rangle \) 
- \( \langle \text{operand}1 \rangle \) 

Raising \( \langle \text{operand} \rangle \) to the power \( \langle \text{operand}2 \rangle \). This operation is right associative, hence 2 ** 2 ** 3 equals \( 2^2 = 2^3 = 2^6 = 256 \). If \( \langle \text{operand}1 \rangle \) is negative or −0 then: the result’s sign is + if the \( \langle \text{operand}2 \rangle \) is infinite and \((-1)^p \) if the \( \langle \text{operand}2 \rangle \) is \( p/5^q \) with \( p, q \) integers; the result is +0 if \( \text{abs}(\langle \text{operand}1 \rangle) \ast \langle \text{operand}2 \rangle \) evaluates to zero; in other cases the “invalid operation” exception occurs because the sign cannot be determined. “Division by zero” occurs when raising ±0 to a finite strictly negative power. “Underflow” and “overflow” occur when appropriate. If either operand is a tuple, “invalid operation” occurs.

abs \( \text{abs}(\langle \text{fpexpr} \rangle) \) 

Computes the absolute value of the \( \langle \text{fpexpr} \rangle \). If the operand is a tuple, “invalid operation” occurs. This operation does not raise exceptions in other cases. See also \text{abs}. 

exp \( \text{exp}(\langle\text{fpexpr}\rangle) \) 

Computes the exponential of the \( \langle \text{fpexpr} \rangle \). “Underflow” and “overflow” occur when appropriate. If the operand is a tuple, “invalid operation” occurs.

fact \( \text{fact}(\langle \text{fpexpr} \rangle) \) 

Computes the factorial of the \( \langle \text{fpexpr} \rangle \). If the \( \langle \text{fpexpr} \rangle \) is an integer between −0 and 3248 included, the result is finite and correctly rounded. Larger positive integers give +\( \infty \) with “overflow”, while \text{fact}(+\( \infty \)) = +\( \infty \) and \text{fact}(\text{nan}) = \text{nan} with no exception. All other inputs give \text{nan} with the “invalid operation” exception.

ln \( \text{ln}(\langle \text{fpexpr} \rangle) \) 

Computes the natural logarithm of the \( \langle \text{fpexpr} \rangle \). Negative numbers have no (real) logarithm, hence the “invalid operation” is raised in that case, including for \text{ln}(−0). “Division by zero” occurs when evaluating \text{ln}(+0) = −\( \infty \). “Underflow” and “overflow” occur when appropriate. If the operand is a tuple, “invalid operation” occurs.
Determines the exponent of the \langle fpexpr \rangle, namely the floor of the base-10 logarithm of its absolute value. "Division by zero" occurs when evaluating $\log_{10}(\pm0) = -\infty$. Other special values are $\log_{10}(\pm\infty) = +\infty$ and $\log_{10}(\text{nan}) = \text{nan}$. If the operand is a tuple or is \text{nan}, then "invalid operation" occurs and the result is \text{nan}.

\begin{verbatim}
\fp_eval:n \{ \logb ( \langle fpexpr \rangle ) \}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\fp_eval:n \{ max ( \langle fpexpr \rangle , \langle fpexpr2 \rangle , \ldots ) \}
\fp_eval:n \{ min ( \langle fpexpr \rangle , \langle fpexpr2 \rangle , \ldots ) \}
\end{verbatim}

Evaluates each \langle fpexpr \rangle and computes the largest (smallest) of those. If any of the \langle fpexpr \rangle is a \text{nan} or tuple, the result is \text{nan}. If any operand is a tuple, "invalid operation" occurs; these operations do not raise exceptions in other cases.

\begin{verbatim}
\fp_eval:n \{ round ( \langle fpexpr \rangle ) \}
\fp_eval:n \{ round ( \langle fpexpr1 \rangle , \langle fpexpr2 \rangle ) \}
\fp_eval:n \{ round ( \langle fpexpr1 \rangle , \langle fpexpr2 \rangle , \langle fpexpr3 \rangle ) \}
\end{verbatim}

Only \text{round} accepts a third argument. Evaluates \langle fpexpr1 \rangle = x and \langle fpexpr2 \rangle = n and \langle fpexpr3 \rangle = t then rounds $x$ to $n$ places. If $n$ is an integer, this rounds $x$ to a multiple of $10^{-n}$; if $n = +\infty$, this always yields $x$; if $n = -\infty$, this yields one of $\pm0$, $\pm\infty$, or \text{nan}; if $n = \text{nan}$, this yields \text{nan}; if $n$ is neither $\pm\infty$ nor an integer, then an "invalid operation" exception is raised. When \langle fpexpr3 \rangle is omitted, $n = 0$, i.e., \langle fpexpr1 \rangle is rounded to an integer. The rounding direction depends on the function.

- \text{round} yields the multiple of $10^{-n}$ closest to $x$, with ties ($x$ half-way between two such multiples) rounded as follows. If $t$ is \text{nan} (or not given) the even multiple is chosen ("ties to even"), if $t = \pm0$ the multiple closest to 0 is chosen ("ties to zero"), if $t$ is positive/negative the multiple closest to $\infty/\mp\infty$ is chosen ("ties towards positive/negative infinity").

- \text{floor} yields the largest multiple of $10^{-n}$ smaller or equal to $x$ ("round towards negative infinity");

- \text{ceil} yields the smallest multiple of $10^{-n}$ greater or equal to $x$ ("round towards positive infinity");

- \text{trunc} yields a multiple of $10^{-n}$ with the same sign as $x$ and with the largest absolute value less than that of $x$ ("round towards zero").

"Overflow" occurs if $x$ is finite and the result is infinite (this can only happen if $\langle fpexpr2 \rangle < -9984$). If any operand is a tuple, "invalid operation" occurs.

\begin{verbatim}
\fp_eval:n \{ sign ( \langle fpexpr \rangle ) \}
\end{verbatim}

Evaluates the \langle fpexpr \rangle and determines its sign: $+1$ for positive numbers and for $+\infty$, $-1$ for negative numbers and for $-\infty$, $\pm0$ for $\pm0$, and \text{nan} for \text{nan}. If the operand is a tuple, "invalid operation" occurs. This operation does not raise exceptions in other cases.

253
\fp_eval:n \{ \sin( \langle \text{fpexpr} \rangle ) \} \\
\fp_eval:n \{ \cos( \langle \text{fpexpr} \rangle ) \} \\
\fp_eval:n \{ \tan( \langle \text{fpexpr} \rangle ) \} \\
\fp_eval:n \{ \cot( \langle \text{fpexpr} \rangle ) \} \\
\fp_eval:n \{ \csc( \langle \text{fpexpr} \rangle ) \} \\
\fp_eval:n \{ \sec( \langle \text{fpexpr} \rangle ) \} \\

Computes the sine, cosine, tangent, cotangent, cosecant, or secant of the \langle \text{fpexpr} \rangle given in radians. For arguments given in degrees, see \text{sind}, \text{cosd}, etc. Note that since \pi is irrational, \sin(8\pi) is not quite zero, while its analogue \text{sind}(8 \times 180) is exactly zero. The trigonometric functions are undefined for an argument of \pm \infty, leading to the “invalid operation” exception. Additionally, evaluating tangent, cotangent, cosecant, or secant at one of their poles leads to a “division by zero” exception. “Underflow” and “overflow” occur when appropriate. If the operand is a tuple, “invalid operation” occurs.

\fp_eval:n \{ \sind( \langle \text{fpexpr} \rangle ) \} \\
\fp_eval:n \{ \cosd( \langle \text{fpexpr} \rangle ) \} \\
\fp_eval:n \{ \tand( \langle \text{fpexpr} \rangle ) \} \\
\fp_eval:n \{ \cotd( \langle \text{fpexpr} \rangle ) \} \\
\fp_eval:n \{ \cscd( \langle \text{fpexpr} \rangle ) \} \\
\fp_eval:n \{ \secd( \langle \text{fpexpr} \rangle ) \} \\

Computes the sine, cosine, tangent, cotangent, cosecant, or secant of the \langle \text{fpexpr} \rangle given in degrees. For arguments given in radians, see \text{sin}, \text{cos}, \text{etc}. Note that since \pi is irrational, \sin(8\pi) is not quite zero, while its analogue \text{sind}(8 \times 180) is exactly zero. The trigonometric functions are undefined for an argument of \pm \infty, leading to the “invalid operation” exception. Additionally, evaluating tangent, cotangent, cosecant, or secant at one of their poles leads to a “division by zero” exception. “Underflow” and “overflow” occur when appropriate. If the operand is a tuple, “invalid operation” occurs.

\fp_eval:n \{ \asin( \langle \text{fpexpr} \rangle ) \} \\
\fp_eval:n \{ \acos( \langle \text{fpexpr} \rangle ) \} \\
\fp_eval:n \{ \acsc( \langle \text{fpexpr} \rangle ) \} \\
\fp_eval:n \{ \asec( \langle \text{fpexpr} \rangle ) \} \\

Computes the arcsine, arccosine, arccosecant, or arccosecant of the \langle \text{fpexpr} \rangle and returns the result in radians, in the range \([-\pi/2, \pi/2]\) for \text{asin} and \text{acsc} and \([0, \pi]\) for \text{acos} and \text{asec}. For a result in degrees, use \text{asind}, \text{etc}. If the argument of \text{asin} or \text{acos} lies outside the range \([-1, 1]\), or the argument of \text{acsc} or \text{asec} inside the range \((-1, 1)\), an “invalid operation” exception is raised. “Underflow” and “overflow” occur when appropriate. If the operand is a tuple, “invalid operation” occurs.

\fp_eval:n \{ \asind( \langle \text{fpexpr} \rangle ) \} \\
\fp_eval:n \{ \acosd( \langle \text{fpexpr} \rangle ) \} \\
\fp_eval:n \{ \acscd( \langle \text{fpexpr} \rangle ) \} \\
\fp_eval:n \{ \asecd( \langle \text{fpexpr} \rangle ) \} \\

Computes the arcsine, arccosine, arccosecant, or arccosecant of the \langle \text{fpexpr} \rangle and returns the result in degrees, in the range \([-90, 90]\) for \text{asin} and \text{acsc} and \([0, 180]\) for \text{acos} and \text{asec}. For a result in radians, use \text{asind}, \text{etc}. If the argument of \text{asin} or \text{acos} lies outside the range \([-1, 1]\), or the argument of \text{acsc} or \text{asec} inside the range \((-1, 1)\), an “invalid operation” exception is raised. “Underflow” and “overflow” occur when appropriate. If the operand is a tuple, “invalid operation” occurs.
Those functions yield an angle in radians: \texttt{atan} and \texttt{acot} are their analogs in degrees. The one-argument versions compute the arctangent or arccotangent of the \langle \texttt{fexpr} \rangle: arctangent takes values in the range \([-\pi/2, \pi/2]\), and arccotangent in the range \([0, \pi]\). The two-argument arctangent computes the angle in polar coordinates of the point with Cartesian coordinates \((\texttt{fexpr}_2, \texttt{fexpr}_1)\): this is the arctangent of \((\texttt{fexpr}_1)/\texttt{fexpr}_2\), possibly shifted by \(\pi\) depending on the signs of \(\texttt{fexpr}_1\) and \(\texttt{fexpr}_2\). The two-argument arccotangent computes the angle in polar coordinates of the point \((\texttt{fexpr}_1, \texttt{fexpr}_2)\), equal to the arccotangent of \((\texttt{fexpr}_1)/\texttt{fexpr}_2\), possibly shifted by \(\pi\). Both two-argument functions take values in the wider range \([-\pi, \pi]\). The ratio \((\texttt{fexpr}_1)/\texttt{fexpr}_2\) need not be defined for the two-argument arctangent: when both expressions yield \pm 0, or when both yield \pm \infty, the resulting angle is one of \{\pm \pi/4, \pm 3\pi/4\} depending on signs. The “underflow” exception can occur. If any operand is a tuple, “invalid operation” occurs.

Those functions yield an angle in degrees: \texttt{atand} and \texttt{acotd} are their analogs in radians. The one-argument versions compute the arctangent or arccotangent of the \langle \texttt{fexpr} \rangle: arctangent takes values in the range \([-90, 90]\), and arccotangent in the range \([0, 180]\). The two-argument arctangent computes the angle in polar coordinates of the point with Cartesian coordinates \((\texttt{fexpr}_2, \texttt{fexpr}_1)\): this is the arctangent of \((\texttt{fexpr}_1)/\texttt{fexpr}_2\), possibly shifted by 180 depending on the signs of \(\texttt{fexpr}_1\) and \(\texttt{fexpr}_2\). The two-argument arccotangent computes the angle in polar coordinates of the point \((\texttt{fexpr}_1, \texttt{fexpr}_2)\), equal to the arccotangent of \((\texttt{fexpr}_1)/\texttt{fexpr}_2\), possibly shifted by 180. Both two-argument functions take values in the wider range \([-180, 180]\). The ratio \((\texttt{fexpr}_1)/\texttt{fexpr}_2\) need not be defined for the two-argument arctangent: when both expressions yield \pm 0, or when both yield \pm \infty, the resulting angle is one of \{\pm 45, \pm 135\} depending on signs. The “underflow” exception can occur. If any operand is a tuple, “invalid operation” occurs.

Computes the square root of the \langle \texttt{fexpr} \rangle. The “invalid operation” is raised when the \langle \texttt{fexpr} \rangle is negative or is a tuple; no other exception can occur. Special values yield \(\sqrt{-0} = -0\), \(\sqrt{+0} = +0\), \(\sqrt{-\infty} = +\infty\) and \(\sqrt{\texttt{nann}} = \texttt{nann}\).
\fp_eval:n \{ \rand() \}

\textbf{New: 2016-12-05}

Produces a pseudo-random floating-point number (multiple of $10^{-16}$) between 0 included and 1 excluded. This is not available in older versions of \TeX. The random seed can be queried using \texttt{\sys_rand_seed:} and set using \texttt{\sys_gset_rand_seed:n}.

\textbf{\TeXhackers note:} This is based on pseudo-random numbers provided by the engine’s primitive \texttt{\pdfuniformdeviate} in \pdfTeX, \pdftex, \upTeX and \texttt{\uniformdeviate} in \luatex and \xeTeX. The underlying code is based on Metapost, which follows an additive scheme recommended in Section 3.6 of “The Art of Computer Programming, Volume 2”.

While we are more careful than \texttt{\uniformdeviate} to preserve uniformity of the underlying stream of 28-bit pseudo-random integers, these pseudo-random numbers should of course not be relied upon for serious numerical computations nor cryptography.

\fp_eval:n \{ \randint(\langle fpexpr \rangle) \}

\fp_eval:n \{ \randint(\langle fpexpr \rangle_1, \langle fpexpr \rangle_2) \}

\textbf{New: 2016-12-05}

Produces a pseudo-random integer between 1 and \langle fpexpr \rangle or between \langle fpexpr_1 \rangle and \langle fpexpr_2 \rangle inclusive. The bounds must be integers in the range $(-10^{16}, 10^{16})$ and the first must be smaller or equal to the second. See \texttt{\rand} for important comments on how these pseudo-random numbers are generated.

\texttt{\inf, \nan}

The special values $+\infty$, $-\infty$, and \texttt{\nan} are represented as \texttt{\inf}, \texttt{\minus\inf} and \texttt{\nan} (see \texttt{\c_-\inf_fp}, \texttt{\c_minus\inf_fp} and \texttt{\c\nan_fp}).

\pi

The value of $\pi$ (see \texttt{\c\pi_fp}).

\texttt{\deg}

The value of $1^\circ$ in radians (see \texttt{\c_one\degree_fp}).
Those units of measurement are equal to their values in pt, namely

\[ 1 \text{ in} = 72.27 \text{ pt} \]
\[ 1 \text{ pt} = 1 \text{ pt} \]
\[ 1 \text{ pc} = 12 \text{ pt} \]
\[ 1 \text{ cm} = \frac{1}{2.54} \text{ in} = 28.45275590551181 \text{ pt} \]
\[ 1 \text{ mm} = \frac{1}{25.4} \text{ in} = 2.845275590551181 \text{ pt} \]
\[ 1 \text{ dd} = 0.376065 \text{ mm} = 1.07000856496063 \text{ pt} \]
\[ 1 \text{ cc} = 12 \text{ dd} = 12.84010277952756 \text{ pt} \]
\[ 1 \text{ nd} = 0.375 \text{ mm} = 1.066978346456693 \text{ pt} \]
\[ 1 \text{ nc} = 12 \text{ nd} = 12.80374015748031 \text{ pt} \]
\[ 1 \text{ bp} = \frac{1}{72} \text{ in} = 1.00375 \text{ pt} \]
\[ 1 \text{ sp} = 2^{-16} \text{ pt} = 1.52587890625 \times 10^{-5} \text{ pt} . \]

The values of the (font-dependent) units \texttt{em} and \texttt{ex} are gathered from \TeX when the surrounding floating point expression is evaluated.

\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|c|c|c|c|c|c|c|c|c|}
\hline
em & ex & in & pt & pc & cm & mm & dd & cc & nd & nc & bp & sp \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

Other names for 1 and +0.

\[ \texttt{\textbackslash fp\_abs:n \{floating point expression\}} \]
\begin{description}
\item[New: 2012-05-14]
\end{description}
\begin{description}
\item[Updated: 2012-07-08]
\end{description}

Evaluates the \texttt{\{floating point expression\}} as described for \texttt{\textbackslash fp\_eval:n} and leaves the absolute value of the result in the input stream. If the argument is \(\pm \infty\), \texttt{nan} or a tuple, “invalid operation” occurs. Within floating point expressions, \texttt{abs()} can be used; it accepts \(\pm \infty\) and \texttt{nan} as arguments.

\[ \texttt{\textbackslash fp\_max:nn \{fp expression 1\} \{fp expression 2\}} \]
\begin{description}
\item[New: 2012-09-26]
\end{description}

Evaluates the \texttt{\{floating point expressions\}} as described for \texttt{\textbackslash fp\_eval:n} and leaves the resulting larger (\texttt{max}) or smaller (\texttt{min}) value in the input stream. If the argument is a tuple, “invalid operation” occurs, but no other case raises exceptions. Within floating point expressions, \texttt{max()} and \texttt{min()} can be used.

### 28.10 Disclaimer and roadmap

The package may break down if the escape character is among \texttt{0123456789_+}, or if it receives a \TeX primitive conditional affected by \texttt{\exp_not:N}.

The following need to be done. I’ll try to time-order the items.

- Function to count items in a tuple (and to determine if something is a tuple).
- Decide what exponent range to consider.
• Support signalling \texttt{nan}.

• Modulo and remainder, and rounding function \texttt{quantize} (and its friends analogous to \texttt{trunc}, \texttt{ceil}, \texttt{floor}).

• \cmd{\fp_format:nn}{\langle\texttt{fpxpr}\rangle}{\langle\texttt{format}\rangle}, but what should \langle\texttt{format}\rangle be? More general pretty printing?

• Add \texttt{and}, \texttt{or}, \texttt{xor}? Perhaps under the names \texttt{all}, \texttt{any}, and \texttt{xor}?

• Add $\log(x,b)$ for logarithm of $x$ in base $b$.

• \texttt{hypot} (Euclidean length). Cartesian-to-polar transform.

• Hyperbolic functions \texttt{cosh}, \texttt{sinh}, \texttt{tanh}.

• Inverse hyperbolics.

• Base conversion, input such as \texttt{0xAB.CDEF}.

• Factorial (not with \texttt{!}), gamma function.

• Improve coefficients of the \texttt{sin} and \texttt{tan} series.

• Treat upper and lower case letters identically in identifiers, and ignore underscores.

• Add an \texttt{array(1,2,3)} and \texttt{i=complex(0,1)}.

• Provide an experimental \texttt{map} function? Perhaps easier to implement if it is a single character, \texttt{@sin(1,2)}?

• Provide an \texttt{isnan} function analogue of \cmd{\fp_if_nan:nTF}?

• Support keyword arguments?

\texttt{Pgfmath} also provides box-measurements (depth, height, width), but boxes are not possible expandably.

Bugs, and tests to add.

• Check that functions are monotonic when they should.

• Add exceptions to ?:, !<=?, &&, ||, and !.

• Logarithms of numbers very close to 1 are inaccurate.

• When rounding towards $-\infty$, \cmd{\dim_to_fp:n}{0pt} should return $-0$, not $+0$.

• The result of $(\pm0) + (\pm0)$, of $x + (-x)$, and of $(-x) + x$ should depend on the rounding mode.

• \texttt{0e9999999999} gives a \TeX{} “number too large” error.

• Subnormals are not implemented.

Possible optimizations/improvements.

• Document that \texttt{l3trial/l3fp-types} introduces tools for adding new types.

• In subsection 28.9.1, write a grammar.

\end{itemize}
• It would be nice if the \texttt{parse} auxiliaries for each operation were set up in the corresponding module, rather than centralizing in \texttt{l3fp-parse}.

• Some functions should get an \_\_\_o ending to indicate that they expand after their result.

• More care should be given to distinguish expandable/restricted expandable (auxiliary and internal) functions.

• The code for the \texttt{ternary} set of functions is ugly.

• There are many - missing in the doc to avoid bad line-breaks.

• The algorithm for computing the logarithm of the significand could be made to use a 5 terms Taylor series instead of 10 terms by taking $c = 2000/(\lfloor 200x \rfloor + 1) \in [10, 95]$ instead of $c \in [1, 10]$. Also, it would then be possible to simplify the computation of $t$. However, we would then have to hard-code the logarithms of 44 small integers instead of 9.

• Improve notations in the explanations of the division algorithm (\texttt{l3fp-basics}).

• Understand and document \texttt{\_\_fp\_\_fp\_\_fp\_\_fp\_\_fp\_\_fp\_\_fp\_\_basis\_pack\_\_low:NNNNw} and \texttt{\_\_fp\_\_fp\_\_fp\_\_fp\_\_fp\_\_fp\_\_fp\_\_fp\_\_fp\_\_fp\_\_fp\_\_basis\_pack\_\_high:NNNNNNNNNNw} better. Move the other \texttt{basis\_pack} auxiliaries to \texttt{l3fp-aux} under a better name.

• Find out if underflow can really occur for trigonometric functions, and redoc as appropriate.

• Add bibliography. Some of Kahan’s articles, some previous \texttt{TEX} fp packages, the international standards,…

• Also take into account the “inexact” exception?

• Support multi-character prefix operators (\textit{e.g.}, \texttt{@/} or whatever)?
Chapter 29

The \texttt{l3fparray} package: fast global floating point arrays

29.1 \texttt{l3fparray} documentation

For applications requiring heavy use of floating points, this module provides arrays which can be accessed in constant time (contrast \texttt{l3seq}, where access time is linear). The interface is very close to that of \texttt{l3intarray}. The size of the array is fixed and must be given at point of initialisation.

\begin{verbatim}
\fparray_new:Nn \fparray_new:Nn \langle fparray var \rangle \{\langle size \rangle\}
\end{verbatim}

Evaluates the integer expression \texttt{\langle size \rangle} and allocates an \texttt{\langle floating point array variable \rangle} with that number of (zero) entries. The variable name should start with \texttt{\g_} because assignments are always global.

\begin{verbatim}
\fparray_count:N \fparray_count:N \langle fparray var \rangle
\end{verbatim}

Expands to the number of entries in the \texttt{\langle floating point array variable \rangle}. This is performed in constant time.

\begin{verbatim}
\fparray_gset:Nnn \fparray_gset:Nnn \langle fparray var \rangle \{\langle position \rangle\} \{\langle value \rangle\}
\end{verbatim}

Stores the result of evaluating the floating point expression \texttt{\langle value \rangle} into the \texttt{\langle floating point array variable \rangle} at the (integer expression) \texttt{\langle position \rangle}. If the \texttt{\langle position \rangle} is not between 1 and the \texttt{\fparray_count:N}, an error occurs. Assignments are always global.

\begin{verbatim}
\fparray_gzero:N \fparray_gzero:N \langle fparray var \rangle
\end{verbatim}

Sets all entries of the \texttt{\langle floating point array variable \rangle} to +0. Assignments are always global.

\begin{verbatim}
\fparray_item:Nn \fparray_item_to_tl:Nn \langle fparray var \rangle \{\langle position \rangle\}
\end{verbatim}

Applies \texttt{\fp_use:N} or \texttt{\fp_to_tl:N} (respectively) to the floating point entry stored at the (integer expression) \texttt{\langle position \rangle} in the \texttt{\langle floating point array variable \rangle}. If the \texttt{\langle position \rangle} is not between 1 and the \texttt{\fparray_count:N}, an error occurs.
Chapter 30

The l3cctab package

Category code tables

A category code table enables rapid switching of all category codes in one operation. For \LaTeXe, this is possible over the entire Unicode range. For other engines, only the 8-bit range (0–255) is covered by such tables.

30.1 Creating and initialising category code tables

\cctab_new:N \cctab_new:c

Creates a new \langle category code table \rangle variable or raises an error if the name is already taken. The declaration is global. The \langle category code table \rangle is initialised with the codes as used by ini\TeX.

\cctab_const:Nn \cctab_const:cn

Creates a new \langle category code table \rangle, applies (in a group) the \langle category code set up \rangle on top of ini\TeX settings, then saves them globally as a constant table. The \langle category code set up \rangle can include a call to \cctab_select:N.

\cctab_gset:Nn \cctab_gset:cn

Starting from the ini\TeX category codes, applies (in a group) the \langle category code set up \rangle, then saves them globally in the \langle category code table \rangle. The \langle category code set up \rangle can include a call to \cctab_select:N.

30.2 Using category code tables

\cctab_begin:N \cctab_begin:c

Switches locally the category codes in force to those stored in the \langle category code table \rangle. The prevailing codes before the function is called are added to a stack, for use with \cctab_end:. This function does not start a \TeX group.
\cctab_end:

Ends the scope of a \langle category code table \rangle started using \cctab_begin:N, returning the codes to those in force before the matching \cctab_begin:N was used. This must be used within the same \TeX group (and at the same \TeX group level) as the matching \cctab_begin:N.

\cctab_select:N \cctab_select:c

Updated: 2020-05-19

Selects the \langle category code table \rangle for the scope of the current group. This is in particular useful in the \langle setup \rangle arguments of \tl_set_rescan:Nnn, \tl_rescan:nn, \cctab_const:Nn, and \cctab_gset:Nn.

\cctab_item:Nn \cctab_item:cn

Updated: 2021-05-10

\begin{itemize}
\item \cctab_item:Nn \{integer expression\}
\end{itemize}

Determines the \langle character \rangle with character code given by the \langle integer expression \rangle and expands to its category code specified by the \langle category code table \rangle.

30.3 Category code table conditionals

\cctab_if_exist_p:N \cctab_if_exist_p:c \cctab_if_exist:NTF \cctab_if_exist:c

Tests whether the \langle category code table \rangle is currently defined. This does not check that the \langle category code table \rangle really is a category code table.

30.4 Constant category code tables

\begin{itemize}
\item \c_code_cctab
\item \c_document_cctab
\item \c_initex_cctab
\item \c_other_cctab
\item \c_str_cctab
\end{itemize}

Category code table for the expl3 code environment; this does not include Φ, which is retained as an “other” character.

Category code table for a standard \LaTeX document, as set by the \LaTeX kernel. In particular, the upper-half of the 8-bit range will be set to “active” with pd\LaTeX only. No babel shorthands will be activated.

Category code table as set up by ini\TeX.

Category code table where all characters have category code 12 (other).

Category code table where all characters have category code 12 (other) with the exception of spaces, which have category code 10 (space).
Part V
Text manipulation
Chapter 31

The l3unicode package: Unicode support functions

This module provides Unicode-specific functions along with loading data from a range of Unicode Consortium files. At present, it provides no public functions.
Chapter 32
The l3text package: text processing

This module deals with manipulation of (formatted) text; such material is comprised of a restricted set of token list content. The functions provided here concern conversion of textual content for example in case changing, generation of bookmarks and extraction to tags. All of the major functions operate by expansion. Begin-group and end-group tokens in the ⟨text⟩ are normalized and become { and }, respectively.

32.1 Expanding text

\textexpand:n \* \textexpand:n ⟨⟨text⟩⟩
New: 2020-01-02

Takes user input ⟨⟨text⟩⟩ and expands the content. Protected commands (typically formatting) are left in place, and no processing takes place of math mode material (as delimited by pairs given in \l_text_math_delims_tl or as the argument to commands listed in \l_text_math_arg_tl). Commands which are neither engine- nor \LaTeXY protected are expanded exhaustively. Any commands listed in \l_text_expand_exclude_tl, \l_text_accents_tl and \l_text_letterlike_tl are excluded from expansion.

\textdeclare_expand_equivalent:Nn \textdeclare_expand_equivalent:cn
New: 2020-01-22

Declares that the ⟨replacement⟩ tokens should be used whenever the ⟨cmd⟩ (a single token) is encountered. The ⟨replacement⟩ tokens should be expandable.
32.2 Case changing

\text_lowercase:n \{ \text{tokens} \} \new:2019-11-20
\text_uppercase:n \{ \text{tokens} \} \updated:2020-02-24
\text_titlecase:n \{ \text{tokens} \} \new:2019-11-20
\text_titlecase_first:n \{ \text{tokens} \} \updated:2020-02-24
\text_lowercasen:nn \{ \text{language} \} \{ \text{tokens} \} \new:2019-11-20
\text_uppercasen:nn \{ \text{tokens} \} \updated:2020-02-24
\text_titlecasen:nn \{ \text{tokens} \} \new:2019-11-20
\text_titlecasen:nn \{ \text{language} \} \{ \text{tokens} \} \updated:2020-02-24

Takes user input \text{text} first applies \text{text_expand}, then transforms the case of character tokens as specified by the function name. The category code of letters are not changed by this process (at least where they can be represented by the engine as a single token: 8-bit engines may require active characters).

Upper- and lowercase have the obvious meanings. Titlecasing may be regarded informally as converting the first character of the \text{tokens} to uppercase and the rest to lowercase. However, the process is more complex than this as there are some situations where a single lowercase character maps to a special form, for example ij in Dutch which becomes IJ. The \text{titlecase_first} variant does not attempt any case changing at all after the first letter has been processed.

Importantly, notice that these functions are intended for working with user text for \text{typesetting}. For case changing programmatic data see the \text{l3str} module and discussion there of \text{str_lowercase:n}, \text{str_uppercase:n} and \text{str_foldcase:n}.

Case changing does not take place within math mode material so for example

\text_uppercase:n \{ Some-text-$y = mx + c$-with-{Braces} \}

becomes

\text{\text{SOME TEXT $y = mx + c$ WITH \{BRACES\}}} \new:2019-11-20
\text_uppercasen:nn \{ \text{tokens} \} \updated:2020-02-24
\text_titlecasen:nn \{ \text{tokens} \} \new:2019-11-20
\text_titlecasen:nn \{ \text{language} \} \{ \text{tokens} \} \updated:2020-02-24

The arguments of commands listed in \text{l_text_case_exclude_arg_tl} are excluded from case changing; the latter are entirely non-textual content (such as labels).

As is generally true for expl3, these functions are designed to work with Unicode input only. As such, UTF-8 input is assumed for all engines. When used with Xe\TeX{} or \LaTeX{} a full range of Unicode transformations are enabled. Specifically, the standard mappings here follow those defined by the Unicode Consortium in \text{UnicodeData.txt} and \text{SpecialCasing.txt}. In the case of 8-bit engines, mappings are provided for characters which can be represented in output typeset using the T1, T2 and LGR font encodings. Thus for example \text{ä} can be case-changed using \text{pdf\TeX{}}. For \text{\LaTeX} only the ASCII range is covered as the engine treats input outside of this range as east Asian.

Language-sensitive conversions are enabled using the \text{\langle language\rangle} argument, and follow Unicode Consortium guidelines. Currently, the languages recognised for special handling are as follows.

- Azeri and Turkish (az and tr). The case pairs I/i-dotless and I-dot/i are activated for these languages. The combining dot mark is removed when lowercasing I-dot and introduced when upper casing i-dotless.

- German (de-alt). An alternative mapping for German in which the lowercase Eszett maps to a großes Eszett. Since there is a T1 slot for the \text{großes Eszett} in T1, this tailoring is available with \text{pdf\TeX} as well as in the Unicode \TeX engines.
• Greek (el). Removes accents from Greek letters when uppercasing; titlecasing leaves accents in place. (At present this is implemented only for Unicode engines.)

• Lithuanian (lt). The lowercase letters i and j should retain a dot above when the accents grave, acute or tilde are present. This is implemented for lowercasing of the relevant uppercase letters both when input as single Unicode codepoints and when using combining accents. The combining dot is removed when uppercasing in these cases. Note that only the accents used in Lithuanian are covered: the behaviour of other accents are not modified.

• Dutch (nl). Capitalisation of ij at the beginning of titlecased input produces IJ rather than Ij. The output retains two separate letters, thus this transformation is available using pdftex.

For titlecasing, note that there are two functions available. The function \text_titlecase:n applies (broadly) uppercasing to the first letter of the input, then lowercasing to the remainder. In contrast, \text_titlecase_first:n only carries out the uppercasing operation, and leaves the balance of the input unchanged. Determining whether non-letter characters at the start of text should switch from upper- to lowercasing is controllable. When \l_text_titlecase_check_letter_bool is true, characters which are not letters (category code 11) are left unchanged and “skipped”: the first letter is uppercased. (With 8-bit engines, this is extended to active characters which form part of a multi-byte letter codepoint.) When \l_text_titlecase_check_letter_bool is false, the first character is uppercased, and the rest lowercased, irrespective of the nature of the character.

\text_purify:n \text_purify:n \langle text \rangle Takes user input \langle text \rangle and expands as described for \text_expand:n, then removes all functions from the resulting text. Math mode material (as delimited by pairs given in \l_text_math_delims_tl or as the argument to commands listed in \l_text_math_arg_tl) is left contained in a pair of $ delimiters. Non-expandable functions present in the \langle text \rangle must either have a defined equivalent (see \text_declare_purify_equivalent:Nn) or will be removed from the result. Implicit tokens are converted to their explicit equivalent.

\text_declare_purify_equivalent:Nn \text_declare_purify_equivalent:Nx \text_declare_purify_equivalent:Nx \langle cmd \rangle \{ \langle replacement \rangle \} Declares that the \langle replacement \rangle tokens should be used whenever the \langle cmd \rangle (a single token) is encountered. The \langle replacement \rangle tokens should be expandable.

\l_text_accents_tl Lists commands which represent accents, and which are left unchanged by expansion. (Defined only for the \LaTeX package.)
\l_text_letterlike_tl  Lists commands which represent letters; these are left unchanged by expansion. (Defined only for the \LaTeX\ package.)

\l_text_math_arg_tl  Lists commands present in the \langle text \rangle where the argument of the command should be treated as math mode material. The treatment here is similar to \l_text_math_delims_tl but for a command rather than paired delimiters.

\l_text_math_delims_tl  Lists pairs of tokens which delimit (in-line) math mode content; such content may be excluded from processing.

\l_text_case_exclude_arg_tl  Lists commands which are excluded from case changing.

\l_text_expand_exclude_tl  Lists commands which are excluded from expansion.

\l_text_titlecase_check_letter_bool  Controls how the start of titlecasing is handled: when true, the first letter in text is considered. The standard setting is true.
Part VI
Typesetting
Chapter 33

The \texttt{l3box} package

Boxes

Box variables contain typeset material that can be inserted on the page or in other boxes. Their contents cannot be converted back to lists of tokens. There are three kinds of box operations: horizontal mode denoted with prefix \texttt{\hbox\_}, vertical mode with prefix \texttt{\vbox\_}, and the generic operations working in both modes with prefix \texttt{\box\_}. For instance, a new box variable containing the words “Hello, world!” (in a horizontal box) can be obtained by the following code.

\begin{verbatim}
\box_new:N \l_hello_box
\hbox_set:Nn \l_hello_box { Hello, ~ world! }
\end{verbatim}

The argument is typeset inside a \TeX group so that any variables assigned during the construction of this box restores its value afterwards.

Box variables from \texttt{l3box} are compatible with those of \LaTeX\texttt{2e} and plain \TeX and can be used interchangeably. The \texttt{l3box} commands to construct boxes, such as \texttt{\hbox:n} or \texttt{\hbox_set:Nn}, are “color-safe”, meaning that

\begin{verbatim}
\hbox:n { \color_select:n { blue } Hello, } ~ world!
\end{verbatim}

will result in “Hello,” taking the color blue, but “world!” remaining with the prevailing color outside the box.

### 33.1 Creating and initialising boxes

\begin{verbatim}
\box_new:N \box_new:c
\box_clear:N \box_clear:c \box_gclear:N \box_gclear:c
\end{verbatim}

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{\box_new:N \box_new:c}
    Creates a new \langle box \rangle or raises an error if the name is already taken. The declaration is global. The \langle box \rangle is initially void.
  \item \texttt{\box_clear:N \box_clear:c \box_gclear:N \box_gclear:c}
    Clears the content of the \langle box \rangle by setting the box equal to \texttt{\c_empty_box}.
\end{itemize}
\box_clear_new:N
\box_clear_new:c
\box_gclear_new:N
\box_gclear_new:c

\box_set_eq:NN
\box_set_eq:cnNc|Nc|cc
\box_gset_eq:NN
\box_gset_eq:cnNc|Nc|cc

\box_if_exist_p:N
\box_if_exist:NTF
\box_if_exist:c
\box_if_exist:p:N *
\box_if_exist:p:c *
\box_if_exist:NTF *
\box_if_exist:c *

New: 2012-03-03

\box_use:N
\box_use:c

\box_move_right:nn
\box_move_left:nn
\box_move_up:nn
\box_move_down:nn

\box_move_right:nn \{dimexpr\} \{\(\text{box function}\)\}
\box_move_left:nn \{dimexpr\} \{\(\text{box function}\)\}
\box_move_up:nn \{dimexpr\} \{\(\text{box function}\)\}
\box_move_down:nn \{dimexpr\} \{\(\text{box function}\)\}

Ensures that the \textit{\texttt{\(\text{box}\)}} exists globally by applying \texttt{\\(\text{box}\_new\):N} if necessary, then applies \texttt{\\(\text{box}\_\(\text{g}\)clear:N} to leave the \textit{\texttt{\(\text{box}\)}} empty.

\texttt{\\(\text{box}\_set_eq:NN} \textit{\texttt{\(\text{box}\_1\)} \textit{\texttt{\(\text{box}\_2\)}}
\texttt{\\(\text{box}\_gset_eq:NN} \textit{\texttt{\(\text{box}\_1\)} \textit{\texttt{\(\text{box}\_2\)}}

Tests whether the \textit{\texttt{\(\text{box}\)}} is currently defined. This does not check that the \textit{\texttt{\(\text{box}\)}} really is a box.

33.2 Using boxes

\texttt{\\(\text{box}\_use:NN} \textit{\texttt{\(\text{box}\)}}
\texttt{\\(\text{box}\_use:cnNc|Nc|cc}

Inserts the current content of the \textit{\texttt{\(\text{box}\)}} onto the current list for typesetting. An error is raised if the variable does not exist or if it is invalid.

\textbf{\texttt{TExhacker\, note:}} This is the \LaTeX\ primitive \texttt{\\(\text{copy}\).}

\texttt{\\(\text{box}\_move_right:nn} \{dimexpr\} \{\(\text{box function}\)\}
\texttt{\\(\text{box}\_move_left:nn} \{dimexpr\} \{\(\text{box function}\)\}
\texttt{\\(\text{box}\_move_up:nn} \{dimexpr\} \{\(\text{box function}\)\}
\texttt{\\(\text{box}\_move_down:nn} \{dimexpr\} \{\(\text{box function}\)\}

This function operates in vertical mode, and inserts the material specified by the \textit{\texttt{\(\text{box function}\)}} such that its reference point is displaced horizontally by the given \texttt{\(\text{dimexpr}\)} from the reference point for typesetting, to the right or left as appropriate. The \textit{\texttt{\(\text{box function}\)}} should be a box operation such as \texttt{\\(\text{box}\_use:NN} \texttt{\{\(\text{box}\)\}} or a “raw” box specification such as \texttt{\\(\text{vbox:nn} \{ \texttt{xyz} \)\}}.

This function operates in horizontal mode, and inserts the material specified by the \textit{\texttt{\(\text{box function}\)}} such that its reference point is displaced vertically by the given \texttt{\(\text{dimexpr}\)} from the reference point for typesetting, up or down as appropriate. The \textit{\texttt{\(\text{box function}\)}} should be a box operation such as \texttt{\\(\text{box}\_use:NN} \texttt{\{\(\text{box}\)\}} or a “raw” box specification such as \texttt{\\(\text{vbox:nn} \{ \texttt{xyz} \)\}}.
33.3 Measuring and setting box dimensions

\box_dp:N \box_dp:c
\box_dp:N \box_dp:c
Calculates the depth (below the baseline) of the \textit{<box>} in a form suitable for use in a \textit{dimension expression}.

\textbf{TeXhackers note:} This is the \TeX{} primitive \texttt{dp}.

\box_ht:N \box_ht:c
\box_ht:N \box_ht:c
Calculates the height (above the baseline) of the \textit{<box>} in a form suitable for use in a \textit{dimension expression}.

\textbf{TeXhackers note:} This is the \TeX{} primitive \texttt{ht}.

\box_wd:N \box_wd:c
\box_wd:N \box_wd:c
Calculates the width of the \textit{<box>} in a form suitable for use in a \textit{dimension expression}.

\textbf{TeXhackers note:} This is the \TeX{} primitive \texttt{wd}.

\box_ht_plus_dp:N \box_ht_plus_dp:c
\box_ht_plus_dp:N \box_ht_plus_dp:c
Calculates the total vertical size (height plus depth) of the \textit{<box>} in a form suitable for use in a \textit{dimension expression}.

\box_set_dp:Nn \box_set_dp:cn
\box_gset_dp:Nn \box_gset_dp:cn
Set the depth (below the baseline) of the \textit{<box>} to the value of the \textit{<dimension expression>}.

\textbf{Updated: 2019-01-22}

\box_set_ht:Nn \box_set_ht:cn
\box_gset_ht:Nn \box_gset_ht:cn
Set the height (above the baseline) of the \textit{<box>} to the value of the \textit{<dimension expression>}.

\textbf{Updated: 2019-01-22}

\box_set_wd:Nn \box_set_wd:cn
\box_gset_wd:Nn \box_gset_wd:cn
Set the width of the \textit{<box>} to the value of the \textit{<dimension expression>}.

\textbf{Updated: 2019-01-22}
33.4 Box conditionals

\texttt{\textbackslash box\_if\_empty\_p:N} \star \texttt{\textbackslash box\_if\_empty\_p:c} \star \texttt{\textbackslash box\_if\_empty:NTF} \star \texttt{\textbackslash box\_if\_empty:cTF} \star

\texttt{\textbackslash box\_if\_empty\_p:N} \texttt{(box)} \texttt{\box\_if\_empty\_p:N} \texttt{\textbackslash box\_if\_empty:NTF} \texttt{(box)} \texttt{\{true code\}} \texttt{\{false code\}}

Tests if \texttt{(box)} is a empty (equal to \texttt{\c\_empty\_box}).

\texttt{\textbackslash box\_if\_horizontal\_p:N} \star \texttt{\textbackslash box\_if\_horizontal\_p:c} \star \texttt{\textbackslash box\_if\_horizontal:NTF} \star \texttt{\textbackslash box\_if\_horizontal:cTF} \star

\texttt{\textbackslash box\_if\_horizontal\_p:N} \texttt{(box)} \texttt{\box\_if\_horizontal\_p:N} \texttt{\textbackslash box\_if\_horizontal:NTF} \texttt{(box)} \texttt{\{true code\}} \texttt{\{false code\}}

Tests if \texttt{(box)} is a horizontal box.

\texttt{\textbackslash box\_if\_vertical\_p:N} \star \texttt{\textbackslash box\_if\_vertical\_p:c} \star \texttt{\textbackslash box\_if\_vertical:NTF} \star \texttt{\textbackslash box\_if\_vertical:cTF} \star

\texttt{\textbackslash box\_if\_vertical\_p:N} \texttt{(box)} \texttt{\box\_if\_vertical\_p:N} \texttt{\textbackslash box\_if\_vertical:NTF} \texttt{(box)} \texttt{\{true code\}} \texttt{\{false code\}}

Tests if \texttt{(box)} is a vertical box.

33.5 The last box inserted

\texttt{\textbackslash box\_set\_to\_last:N} \star \texttt{\textbackslash box\_set\_to\_last:c} \star \texttt{\textbackslash box\_gset\_to\_last:N} \star \texttt{\textbackslash box\_gset\_to\_last:c} \star

\texttt{\textbackslash box\_set\_to\_last:N} \texttt{(box)} \texttt{\box\_set\_to\_last:N} \texttt{\textbackslash box\_set\_to\_last:NTF} \texttt{(box)} \texttt{\{true code\}} \texttt{\{false code\}}

Sets the \texttt{(box)} equal to the last item (box) added to the current partial list, removing the item from the list at the same time. When applied to the main vertical list, the \texttt{(box)} is always void as it is not possible to recover the last added item.

33.6 Constant boxes

\texttt{\textbackslash c\_empty\_box}

This is a permanently empty box, which is neither set as horizontal nor vertical.

\textbf{\TeXhacksnote}: At the \TeX level this is a void box.

33.7 Scratch boxes

\texttt{\textbackslash l\_tmpa\_box} \star \texttt{\textbackslash l\_tmpb\_box} \star

\texttt{\textbackslash g\_tmpa\_box} \star \texttt{\textbackslash g\_tmpb\_box} \star

Scratch boxes for local assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any \emph{EM\TeX}-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.

Scratch boxes for global assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any \emph{EM\TeX}-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.
33.8 Viewing box contents

\box_show:N \{\box\}

Shows full details of the content of the \{\box\} in the terminal.

\box_show:Nn \{\box\} \{\intexpr\} \{\intexpr\}

Display the contents of \{\box\} in the terminal, showing the first \{\intexpr\} items of the box, and descending into \{\intexpr\} group levels.

\box_log:N \{\box\}

Writes full details of the content of the \{\box\} to the log.

\box_log:Nn \{\box\} \{\intexpr\} \{\intexpr\}

Writes the contents of \{\box\} to the log, showing the first \{\intexpr\} items of the box, and descending into \{\intexpr\} group levels.

33.9 Boxes and color

All \LaTeX3 boxes are “color safe”: a color set inside the box stops applying after the end of the box has occurred.

33.10 Horizontal mode boxes

\hbox:n \{\contents\}

Typesets the \{\contents\} into a horizontal box of natural width and then includes this box in the current list for typesetting.

\hbox_to_wd:nn \{\dimexpr\} \{\contents\}

Typesets the \{\contents\} into a horizontal box of width \{\dimexpr\} and then includes this box in the current list for typesetting.

\hbox_to_zero:n \{\contents\}

Typesets the \{\contents\} into a horizontal box of zero width and then includes this box in the current list for typesetting.

\hbox_set:Nn \{\box\} \{\contents\}

Typesets the \{\contents\} at natural width and then stores the result inside the \{\box\}.
\hbox_set_to_wd:Nnn \hbox_set_to_wd:cn \hbox_gset_to_wd:Nnn \hbox_gset_to_wd:cn

Updated: 2017-04-05

\hbox_overlap_center:n \{\contents\}
Typesets the \{\contents\} into a horizontal box of zero width such that material protrudes equally to both sides of the insertion point.

\hbox_overlap_right:n \{\contents\}
Updated: 2017-04-05

Typesets the \{\contents\} into a horizontal box of zero width such that material protrudes to the right of the insertion point.

\hbox_overlap_left:n \{\contents\}
Updated: 2017-04-05

Typesets the \{\contents\} into a horizontal box of zero width such that material protrudes to the left of the insertion point.

\hbox_set:Nw \hbox_set:cw \hbox_gset:Nw \hbox_gset:cw

Updated: 2017-04-05

\hbox_set_to_wd:Nnw \hbox_set_to_wd:cnw \hbox_gset_to_wd:Nnw \hbox_gset_to_wd:cnw

New: 2017-06-08

\hbox_unpack:N \hbox_unpack:c

Unpacks the content of the horizontal \{box\}, retaining any stretching or shrinking applied when the \{box\} was set.

\TeXhackers note: This is the \TeX{} primitive \unhcopy{}.

\section{Vertical mode boxes}

Vertical boxes inherit their baseline from their contents. The standard case is that the baseline of the box is at the same position as that of the last item added to the box. This means that the box has no depth unless the last item added to it had depth. As a result, most vertical boxes have a large height value and small or zero depth. The exception are
_top boxes, where the reference point is that of the first item added. These tend to have a large depth and small height, although the latter is typically non-zero.

\vbox:n \{\langle contents\rangle\}
Updated: 2017-04-05
Typesets the \langle contents\rangle into a vertical box of natural height and includes this box in the current list for typesetting.

\vbox_top:n \{\langle contents\rangle\}
Updated: 2017-04-05
Typesets the \langle contents\rangle into a vertical box of natural height and includes this box in the current list for typesetting. The baseline of the box is equal to that of the first item added to the box.

\vbox_to_ht:nn \{\langle dimexpr\rangle\} \{\langle contents\rangle\}
Updated: 2017-04-05
Typesets the \langle contents\rangle into a vertical box of height \langle dimexpr\rangle and then includes this box in the current list for typesetting.

\vbox_to_zero:n \{\langle contents\rangle\}
Updated: 2017-04-05
Typesets the \langle contents\rangle into a vertical box of zero height and then includes this box in the current list for typesetting.

\vbox_set:Nn \langle box\rangle \{\langle contents\rangle\}
\vbox_set:cn
\vbox_gset:Nn
\vbox_gset:cn
Updated: 2017-04-05
Typesets the \langle contents\rangle at natural height and then stores the result inside the \langle box\rangle.

\vbox_set_top:Nn \langle box\rangle \{\langle contents\rangle\}
\vbox_set_top:cn
\vbox_gset_top:Nn
\vbox_gset_top:cn
Updated: 2017-04-05
Typesets the \langle contents\rangle at natural height and then stores the result inside the \langle box\rangle. The baseline of the box is equal to that of the first item added to the box.

\vbox_set_to_ht:Nnn \langle box\rangle \{\langle dimexpr\rangle\} \{\langle contents\rangle\}
\vbox_set_to_ht:cnn
\vbox_gset_to_ht:Nnn
\vbox_gset_to_ht:cnn
Updated: 2017-04-05
Typesets the \langle contents\rangle to the height given by the \langle dimexpr\rangle and then stores the result inside the \langle box\rangle.

\vbox_set:Nw \langle box\rangle \{\langle contents\rangle\} \vbox_set_end:
\vbox_set:cw
\vbox_set_end:
\vbox_gset:Nw
\vbox_gset:cw
\vbox_gset_end:
Updated: 2017-04-05
Typesets the \langle contents\rangle at natural height and then stores the result inside the \langle box\rangle. In contrast to \vbox_set:Nn this function does not absorb the argument when finding the \langle content\rangle, and so can be used in circumstances where the \langle content\rangle may not be a simple argument.
\vbox_set_to_ht:Nnw \vbox_set_to_ht:cnw \vbox_gset_to_ht:Nnw \vbox_gset_to_ht:cnw

New: 2017-06-08

\vbox_set_split_to_ht:NNn \vbox_set_split_to_ht:(cNn|Ncn|ccn) \vbox_gset_split_to_ht:NNn \vbox_gset_split_to_ht:(cNn|Ncn|ccn)

Updated: 2018-12-29

Sets \( \langle \text{box}_1 \rangle \) to contain material to the height given by the \( \langle \text{dimexpr} \rangle \) by removing content from the top of \( \langle \text{box}_2 \rangle \) (which must be a vertical box).

\vbox_unpack:N \vbox_unpack:c

Unpacks the content of the vertical \( \langle \text{box} \rangle \), retaining any stretching or shrinking applied when the \( \langle \text{box} \rangle \) was set.

\TeXhackers note: This is the \TeX{} primitive \texttt{unvcopy}.

### 33.12 Using boxes efficiently

The functions above for using box contents work in exactly the same way as for any other expl3 variable. However, for efficiency reasons, it is also useful to have functions which \texttt{drop} box contents on use. When a box is dropped, the box becomes empty at the group level \textit{where the box was originally set} rather than necessarily \textit{at the current group level}. For example, with

\begin{verbatim}
\hbox_set:Nn \l_tmpa_box \{ A \}
\group_begin:
\hbox_set:Nn \l_tmpa_box \{ B \}
\group_begin:
\box_use_drop:N \l_tmpa_box
\group_end:
\box_show:N \l_tmpa_box
\group_end:
\box_show:N \l_tmpa_box
\end{verbatim}

the first use of \texttt{\box\_show:N} will show an entirely cleared (void) box, and the second will show the letter \texttt{A} in the box.

These functions should be preferred when the content of the box is no longer required after use. Note that due to the unusual scoping behaviour of \texttt{drop} functions they may be applied to both local and global boxes: the latter will naturally be set and thus cleared at a global level.
\box_use_drop:N \box_use_drop:C

Inserts the current content of the \textit{box} onto the current list for typesetting then drops the box content. An error is raised if the variable does not exist or if it is invalid. This function may be applied to local or global boxes.

\textbf{\TeXhackers note:} This is the \texttt{\box} primitive.

\box_set_eq_drop:NN \box_set_eq_drop:(\texttt{cN}\texttt{cN}\texttt{cC})

Sets the content of \textit{\texttt{box}_1} equal to that of \textit{\texttt{box}_2}, then drops \textit{\texttt{box}_2}.

\box_gset_eq_drop:NN \box_gset_eq_drop:(\texttt{cN}\texttt{cN}\texttt{cC})

Sets the content of \textit{\texttt{box}_1} globally equal to that of \textit{\texttt{box}_2}, then drops \textit{\texttt{box}_2}.

\hbox_unpack_drop:N \hbox_unpack_drop:C

Unpacks the content of the horizontal \textit{\texttt{box}}, retaining any stretching or shrinking applied when the \textit{\texttt{box}} was set. The original \textit{\texttt{box}} is then dropped.

\textbf{\TeXhackers note:} This is the \TeX primitive \texttt{\unhbox}.

\vbox_unpack_drop:N \vbox_unpack_drop:C

Unpacks the content of the vertical \textit{\texttt{box}}, retaining any stretching or shrinking applied when the \textit{\texttt{box}} was set. The original \textit{\texttt{box}} is then dropped.

\textbf{\TeXhackers note:} This is the \TeX primitive \texttt{\unvbox}.

\section{Affine transformations}

Affine transformations are changes which (informally) preserve straight lines. Simple translations are affine transformations, but are better handled in \TeX by doing the translation first, then inserting an unmodified box. On the other hand, rotation and resizing of boxed material can best be handled by modifying boxes. These transformations are described here.
Resizes the ⟨box⟩ to fit within the given ⟨x-size⟩ (horizontally) and ⟨y-size⟩ (vertically); both of the sizes are dimension expressions. The ⟨y-size⟩ is the height only; it does not include any depth. The updated ⟨box⟩ is an hbox, irrespective of the nature of the ⟨box⟩ before the resizing is applied. The final size of the ⟨box⟩ is the smaller of ⟨x-size⟩ and ⟨y-size⟩, i.e. the result fits within the dimensions specified. Negative sizes cause the material in the ⟨box⟩ to be reversed in direction, but the reference point of the ⟨box⟩ is unchanged. Thus a negative ⟨y-size⟩ results in the ⟨box⟩ having a depth dependent on the height of the original and vice versa.

Resizes the ⟨box⟩ to fit within the given ⟨x-size⟩ (horizontally) and ⟨y-size⟩ (vertically); both of the sizes are dimension expressions. The ⟨y-size⟩ is the total vertical size (height plus depth). The updated ⟨box⟩ is an hbox, irrespective of the nature of the ⟨box⟩ before the resizing is applied. The final size of the ⟨box⟩ is the smaller of ⟨x-size⟩ and ⟨y-size⟩, i.e. the result fits within the dimensions specified. Negative sizes cause the material in the ⟨box⟩ to be reversed in direction, but the reference point of the ⟨box⟩ is unchanged. Thus a negative ⟨y-size⟩ results in the ⟨box⟩ having a depth dependent on the height of the original and vice versa.

Resizes the ⟨box⟩ to ⟨y-size⟩ (vertically), scaling the horizontal size by the same amount; ⟨y-size⟩ is a dimension expression. The ⟨y-size⟩ is the height only; it does not include any depth. The updated ⟨box⟩ is an hbox, irrespective of the nature of the ⟨box⟩ before the resizing is applied. A negative ⟨y-size⟩ causes the material in the ⟨box⟩ to be reversed in direction, but the reference point of the ⟨box⟩ is unchanged. Thus a negative ⟨y-size⟩ results in the ⟨box⟩ having a depth dependent on the height of the original and vice versa.
Resizes the ⟨box⟩ to ⟨y-size⟩ (vertically), scaling the horizontal size by the same amount: ⟨y-size⟩ is a dimension expression. The ⟨y-size⟩ is the total vertical size (height plus depth). The updated ⟨box⟩ is an hbox, irrespective of the nature of the ⟨box⟩ before the resizing is applied. A negative ⟨y-size⟩ causes the material in the ⟨box⟩ to be reversed in direction, but the reference point of the ⟨box⟩ is unchanged. Thus a negative ⟨y-size⟩ results in the ⟨box⟩ having a depth dependent on the height of the original and vice versa.

Resizes the ⟨box⟩ to ⟨x-size⟩ (horizontally), scaling the vertical size by the same amount: ⟨x-size⟩ is a dimension expression. The updated ⟨box⟩ is an hbox, irrespective of the nature of the ⟨box⟩ before the resizing is applied. A negative ⟨x-size⟩ causes the material in the ⟨box⟩ to be reversed in direction, but the reference point of the ⟨box⟩ is unchanged. Thus a negative ⟨x-size⟩ results in the ⟨box⟩ having a depth dependent on the height of the original and vice versa.

Resizes the ⟨box⟩ to ⟨x-size⟩ (horizontally) and ⟨y-size⟩ (vertically): both of the sizes are dimension expressions. The ⟨y-size⟩ is the height only and does not include any depth. The updated ⟨box⟩ is an hbox, irrespective of the nature of the ⟨box⟩ before the resizing is applied. Negative sizes cause the material in the ⟨box⟩ to be reversed in direction, but the reference point of the ⟨box⟩ is unchanged. Thus a negative ⟨y-size⟩ results in the ⟨box⟩ having a depth dependent on the height of the original and vice versa.

Resizes the ⟨box⟩ to ⟨x-size⟩ (horizontally) and ⟨y-size⟩ (vertically): both of the sizes are dimension expressions. The ⟨y-size⟩ is the total vertical size (height plus depth). The updated ⟨box⟩ is an hbox, irrespective of the nature of the ⟨box⟩ before the resizing is applied. Negative sizes cause the material in the ⟨box⟩ to be reversed in direction, but the reference point of the ⟨box⟩ is unchanged. Thus a negative ⟨y-size⟩ results in the ⟨box⟩ having a depth dependent on the height of the original and vice versa.
\texttt{\textbackslash box\_rotate:Nn} \texttt{\textbackslash box\_rotate:cn} \texttt{\textbackslash box\_grotate:Nn} \texttt{\textbackslash box\_grotate:cn} \\
Updated: 2019-01-22

\texttt{\textbackslash box\_scale:Nnn} \texttt{\textbackslash box\_scale:cn} \texttt{\textbackslash box\_gscale:Nnn} \texttt{\textbackslash box\_gscale:cn} \\
Updated: 2019-01-22

Rotates the \texttt{\textlangle box\textrangle} by \texttt{\textlangle angle\textrangle} (in degrees) anti-clockwise about its reference point. The reference point of the updated box is moved horizontally such that it is at the left side of the smallest rectangle enclosing the rotated material. The updated \texttt{\textlangle box\textrangle} is an \texttt{hbox}, irrespective of the nature of the \texttt{\textlangle box\textrangle} before the rotation is applied.

Scales the \texttt{\textlangle box\textrangle} by factors \texttt{\textlangle x-scale\textrangle} and \texttt{\textlangle y-scale\textrangle} in the horizontal and vertical directions, respectively (both scales are integer expressions). The updated \texttt{\textlangle box\textrangle} is an \texttt{hbox}, irrespective of the nature of the \texttt{\textlangle box\textrangle} before the scaling is applied. Negative scalings cause the material in the \texttt{\textlangle box\textrangle} to be reversed in direction, but the reference point of the \texttt{\textlangle box\textrangle} is unchanged. Thus a negative \texttt{\textlangle y-scale\textrangle} results in the \texttt{\textlangle box\textrangle} having a depth dependent on the height of the original and \textit{vice versa}.

### 33.14 Primitive box conditionals

\texttt{\textbackslash if\_hbox:N \textasteriskcentered} \texttt{\textbackslash if\_hbox:N \textlangle box\textrangle} \texttt{\textbackslash else:\textlangle false code\textrangle} \texttt{\textbackslash fi:\textlangle true code\textrangle} \texttt{\textbackslash fi:\textlangle false code\textrangle} \\
Tests is \texttt{\textlangle box\textrangle} is a horizontal box.

\textbf{T\TeXhackers note:} This is the \TeX{} primitive \texttt{\textbackslash ifhbox}.

\texttt{\textbackslash if\_vbox:N \textasteriskcentered} \texttt{\textbackslash if\_vbox:N \textlangle box\textrangle} \texttt{\textbackslash else:\textlangle false code\textrangle} \texttt{\textbackslash fi:\textlangle true code\textrangle} \texttt{\textbackslash fi:\textlangle false code\textrangle} \\
Tests is \texttt{\textlangle box\textrangle} is a vertical box.

\textbf{T\TeXhackers note:} This is the \TeX{} primitive \texttt{\textbackslash ifvbox}.

\texttt{\textbackslash if\_box\_empty:N \textasteriskcentered} \texttt{\textbackslash if\_box\_empty:N \textlangle box\textrangle} \texttt{\textbackslash else:\textlangle false code\textrangle} \texttt{\textbackslash fi:\textlangle true code\textrangle} \texttt{\textbackslash fi:\textlangle false code\textrangle} \\
Tests is \texttt{\textlangle box\textrangle} is an empty (void) box.

\textbf{T\TeXhackers note:} This is the \TeX{} primitive \texttt{\textbackslash ifvoid}.

281
Chapter 34

The \texttt{l3coffins} package
Coffin code layer

The material in this module provides the low-level support system for coffins. For details about the design concept of a coffin, see the \texttt{xcoffins} module (in the \texttt{l3experimental} bundle).

34.1 Creating and initialising coffins

\begin{Verbatim}
\texttt{\textbackslash \coffin\_new:N} \texttt{\coffin} \texttt{(coffin)}
\texttt{\coffin\_new:c}
\texttt{\coffin\_clear:N} \texttt{\coffin\_clear:c}
\texttt{\coffin\_gclear:N} \texttt{\coffin\_gclear:c}
\end{Verbatim}

\texttt{\coffin\_clear:N} \texttt{\coffin} \texttt{(coffin)}
Clears the content of the \texttt{\coffin}.

\begin{Verbatim}
\texttt{\coffin\_set\_eq:NN} \texttt{\coffin\_set\_eq:(Nc|N|cc)} \texttt{\coffin\_gset\_eq:NN} \texttt{\coffin\_gset\_eq:(Nc|N|cc)}
\end{Verbatim}

\texttt{\coffin\_if\_exist_p:N} \texttt{\coffin\_if\_exist_p:c} \texttt{\coffin\_if\_exist:NTF} \texttt{\coffin\_if\_exist:cTF}
Tests whether the \texttt{\coffin} is currently defined.


\ifnum\count0=0
\setcounter{page}{1}
\fi

34.2 Setting coffin content and poles

\hcoffin_set:Nn \{\textit{coffin}\} \{\textit{material}\}

Typesets the \textit{material} in horizontal mode, storing the result in the \textit{coffin}. The standard poles for the \textit{coffin} are then set up based on the size of the typeset material.

\hcoffin_set:Nw \{\textit{coffin}\} \{\textit{material}\} \hcoffin_set_end:

Typesets the \textit{material} in horizontal mode, storing the result in the \textit{coffin}. The standard poles for the \textit{coffin} are then set up based on the size of the typeset material. These functions are useful for setting the entire contents of an environment in a coffin.

\vcoffin_set:Nnn \{\textit{coffin}\} \{\textit{width}\} \{\textit{material}\}

Typesets the \textit{material} in vertical mode constrained to the given \textit{width} and stores the result in the \textit{coffin}. The standard poles for the \textit{coffin} are then set up based on the size of the typeset material.

\vcoffin_set:Nnw \{\textit{coffin}\} \{\textit{width}\} \{\textit{material}\} \vcoffin_set_end:

Typesets the \textit{material} in vertical mode constrained to the given \textit{width} and stores the result in the \textit{coffin}. The standard poles for the \textit{coffin} are then set up based on the size of the typeset material. These functions are useful for setting the entire contents of an environment in a coffin.

\coffin_set_horizontal_pole:Nnn \{\textit{coffin}\} \{\textit{pole}\} \{\textit{offset}\}

Sets the \textit{pole} to run horizontally through the \textit{coffin}. The \textit{pole} is placed at the \textit{offset} from the baseline of the \textit{coffin}. The \textit{offset} should be given as a dimension expression.
Sets the \(\textit{pole}\) to run vertically through the \(\textit{coffin}\). The \(\textit{pole}\) is placed at the \(\textit{offset}\) from the left-hand edge of the bounding box of the \(\textit{coffin}\). The \(\textit{offset}\) should be given as a dimension expression.

## 34.3 Coffin affine transformations

Resized the \(\textit{coffin}\) to \(\textit{width}\) and \(\textit{total-height}\), both of which should be given as dimension expressions.

Rotates the \(\textit{coffin}\) by the given \(\textit{angle}\) (given in degrees counter-clockwise). This process rotates both the coffin content and poles. Multiple rotations do not result in the bounding box of the coffin growing unnecessarily.

Scales the \(\textit{coffin}\) by a factors \(\textit{x-scale}\) and \(\textit{y-scale}\) in the horizontal and vertical directions, respectively. The two scale factors should be given as real numbers.

### 34.4 Joining and using coffins

This function attaches \(\textit{coffin}_2\) to \(\textit{coffin}_1\) such that the bounding box of \(\textit{coffin}_1\) is not altered, \textit{i.e.} \(\textit{coffin}_2\) can protrude outside of the bounding box of the coffin. The alignment is carried out by first calculating \(\textit{handle}_1\), the point of intersection of \(\textit{coffin}_1\)-pole\(_1\) and \(\textit{coffin}_1\)-pole\(_2\), and \(\textit{handle}_2\), the point of intersection of \(\textit{coffin}_2\)-pole\(_1\) and \(\textit{coffin}_2\)-pole\(_2\). \(\textit{coffin}_2\) is then attached to \(\textit{coffin}_1\) such that the relationship between \(\textit{handle}_1\) and \(\textit{handle}_2\) is described by the \(\textit{x-offset}\) and \(\textit{y-offset}\). The two offsets should be given as dimension expressions.

284
This function joins \(\text{coffin}_1\) to \(\text{coffin}_2\) such that the bounding box of \(\text{coffin}_1\) may expand. The new bounding box covers the area containing the bounding boxes of the two original coffins. The alignment is carried out by first calculating \(\text{handle}_1\), the point of intersection of \(\text{coffin}_1\text{-pole}_1\) and \(\text{coffin}_1\text{-pole}_2\), and \(\text{handle}_2\), the point of intersection of \(\text{coffin}_2\text{-pole}_1\) and \(\text{coffin}_2\text{-pole}_2\). \(\text{coffin}_2\) is then attached to \(\text{coffin}_1\) such that the relationship between \(\text{handle}_1\) and \(\text{handle}_2\) is described by the \(\langle x\text{-offset}\rangle\) and \(\langle y\text{-offset}\rangle\). The two offsets should be given as dimension expressions.

Typesetting is carried out by first calculating \(\text{handle}\), the point of intersection of \(\text{pole}_1\) and \(\text{pole}_2\). The coffin is then typeset in horizontal mode such that the relationship between the current reference point in the document and the \(\text{handle}\) is described by the \(\langle x\text{-offset}\rangle\) and \(\langle y\text{-offset}\rangle\). The two offsets should be given as dimension expressions. Typesetting a coffin is therefore analogous to carrying out an alignment where the "parent" coffin is the current insertion point.

### 34.5 Measuring coffins

\begin{align*}
&\text{\textbackslash coffin\_dp:N} \langle\text{coffin}\rangle \\
&\text{\textbackslash coffin\_dp:c} \\
\end{align*}

Calculates the depth (below the baseline) of the \(\langle\text{coffin}\rangle\) in a form suitable for use in a \langle dimension expression\rangle.

\begin{align*}
&\text{\textbackslash coffin\_ht:N} \langle\text{coffin}\rangle \\
&\text{\textbackslash coffin\_ht:c} \\
\end{align*}

Calculates the height (above the baseline) of the \(\langle\text{coffin}\rangle\) in a form suitable for use in a \langle dimension expression\rangle.

\begin{align*}
&\text{\textbackslash coffin\_wd:N} \langle\text{coffin}\rangle \\
&\text{\textbackslash coffin\_wd:c} \\
\end{align*}

Calculates the width of the \(\langle\text{coffin}\rangle\) in a form suitable for use in a \langle dimension expression\rangle.

### 34.6 Coffin diagnostics

\begin{align*}
&\text{\textbackslash coffin\_display\_handles:Nn} \langle\text{coffin}\rangle \{(\text{color})\} \\
&\text{\textbackslash coffin\_display\_handles:cn} \\
\end{align*}

This function first calculates the intersections between all of the \(\langle\text{poles}\rangle\) of the \(\langle\text{coffin}\rangle\) to give a set of \(\langle\text{handles}\rangle\). It then prints the \(\langle\text{coffin}\rangle\) at the current location in the source, with the position of the \(\langle\text{handles}\rangle\) marked on the coffin. The \(\langle\text{handles}\rangle\) are labelled as part of this process: the locations of the \(\langle\text{handles}\rangle\) and the labels are both printed in the \(\langle\text{color}\rangle\) specified.
This function first calculates the \langle handle \rangle for the \langle coffin \rangle as defined by the intersection of \langle pole_1 \rangle and \langle pole_2 \rangle. It then marks the position of the \langle handle \rangle on the \langle coffin \rangle. The \langle handle \rangle are labelled as part of this process: the location of the \langle handle \rangle and the label are both printed in the \langle color \rangle specified.

This function shows the structural information about the \langle coffin \rangle in the terminal. The width, height and depth of the typeset material are given, along with the location of all of the poles of the coffin.

Notice that the poles of a coffin are defined by four values: the \( x \) and \( y \) co-ordinates of a point that the pole passes through and the \( x \)- and \( y \)-components of a vector denoting the direction of the pole. It is the ratio between the later, rather than the absolute values, which determines the direction of the pole.

This function writes the structural information about the \langle coffin \rangle in the log file. See also \texttt{\coffin_show_structure:N} which displays the result in the terminal.

Shows full details of poles and contents of the \langle coffin \rangle in the terminal or log file. See \texttt{\coffin_show_structure:N} and \texttt{\box_show:N} to show separately the pole structure and the contents.

Shows poles and contents of the \langle coffin \rangle in the terminal or log file, showing the first \langle intexpr_1 \rangle items in the coffin, and descending into \langle intexpr_2 \rangle group levels. See \texttt{\coffin_show_structure:N} and \texttt{\box_show:N} to show separately the pole structure and the contents.

34.7 Constants and variables

A permanently empty coffin.

Scratch coffins for local assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any \LaTeX-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.
\g_tmpa_coffin
\g_tmpb_coffin

Scratch coffins for global assignment. These are never used by the kernel code, and so are safe for use with any \LaTeX3-defined function. However, they may be overwritten by other non-kernel code and so should only be used for short-term storage.
Chapter 35

The \texttt{l3color} package

Color support

35.1 Color in boxes

Controlling the color of text in boxes requires a small number of control functions, so that the boxed material uses the color at the point where it is set, rather than where it is used.

\begin{verbatim}
\color_group_begin: \color_group_end: \color_group_end:
\end{verbatim}

New: 2011-09-03

Creates a color group: one used to “trap” color settings. This grouping is built in to for example \texttt{hbox_set:Nn}.

\begin{verbatim}
\color_ensure_current: \color_ensure_current: \color_ensure_current:
\end{verbatim}

New: 2011-09-03

Ensures that material inside a box uses the foreground color at the point where the box is set, rather than that in force when the box is used. This function should usually be used within a \texttt{\color_group_begin: \ldots \color_group_end:} group.

35.2 Color models

A color \emph{model} is a way to represent sets of colors. Different models are particularly suitable for different output methods, \textit{e.g.} screen or print. Parameter-based models can describe a very large number of unique colors, and have a varying number of \emph{axes} which define a color space. In contrast, various proprietary models are available which define \emph{spot} colors (more formally separations).

Core models are used to pass color information to output; these are “native” to \texttt{l3color}. Core models use real numbers in the range $[0, 1]$ to represent values. The core models supported here are

- \texttt{gray} Grayscale color, with a single axis running from 0 (fully black) to 1 (fully white)
- \texttt{rgb} Red-green-blue color, with three axes, one for each of the components
• cmyk Cyan-magenta-yellow-black color, with four axes, one for each of the components

There are also interface models: these are convenient for users but have to be manipulated before storing/passing to the backend. Interface models are primarily integer-based: see below for more detail. The supported interface models are

• Gray Grayscale color, with a single axis running from 0 (fully black) to 15 (fully white)

• hsb Hue-saturation-brightness color, with three axes, all real values in the range \([0, 1]\) for hue saturation and brightness

• Hsb Hue-saturation-brightness color, with three axes, integer in the range \([0, 360]\) for hue, real values in the range \([0, 1]\) for saturation and brightness

• HSB Hue-saturation-brightness color, with three axes, integers in the range \([0, 240]\) for hue, saturation and brightness

• HTML HTML format representation of RGB color given as a single six-digit hexadecimal number

• RGB Red-green-blue color, with three axes, one for each of the components, values as integers from 0 to 255

• wave Light wavelength, a real number in the range 380 to 780 (nanometres)

All interface models are internally stored as rgb.

To allow parsing of data from xcolor, any leading model up the first : will be discarded; the approach of selecting an internal form for data is not used in \texttt{l3color}.

Additional models may be created to allow mixing of separation colors with each other or with those from other models. See Section 35.9 for more detail of color support for additional models.

When color is selected by model, the \(\langle\texttt{values}\rangle\) given are specified as a comma-separated list. The length of the list will therefore be determined by the detail of the model involved.

Color models (and interconversion) are complex, and more details are given in the manual to the \LaTeX{} \texttt{xcolor} package and in the \texttt{PostScript Language Reference Manual}, published by Addison–Wesley.

### 35.3 Color expressions

In addition to allowing specification of color by model and values, \texttt{l3color} also supports color expressions. These are created by combining one or more color names, with the amount of each specified as a percentage. The latter is given between \texttt{!} symbols in the expression. Thus for example

\begin{verbatim}
red!50!green
\end{verbatim}

is a mixture of 50\% red and 50\% green. A trailing percentage is interpreted as implicitly followed by \texttt{white}, and so

\begin{verbatim}
red!25
\end{verbatim}
specifies 25% red mixed with 75% white.

Where the models for the mixed colors are different, the model of the first color is used. Thus

\texttt{red!50!cyan}

will result in a color specification using the \texttt{rgb} model, made up of 50% red and 50% of cyan \textit{expressed in rgb}. This may be important as color model interconversion is not exact.

The one exception to the above is where the first model in an expression is \texttt{gray}. In this case, the order of mixing is “swapped” internally, so that for example

\texttt{black!50!red}

has the same result as

\texttt{red!50!black}

(the predefined colors \texttt{black} and \texttt{white} use the \texttt{gray} model).

Where more than two colors are mixed in an expression, evaluation takes place in a stepwise fashion. Thus in

\texttt{cyan!50!magenta!10!yellow}

the sub-expression

\texttt{cyan!50!magenta}

is first evaluated to give an intermediate color specification, before the second step

\texttt{<intermediate>!10!yellow}

where \texttt{<intermediate>} represents this transitory calculated value.

Within a color expression, \texttt{.} may be used to represent the color active for typesetting (the current color). This allows for example

\texttt{.!50}

to mean a mixture of 50% of current color with white.

(Color expressions supported here are a subset of those provided by the \LaTeX \texttt{2ε xcolor} package. At present, only such features as are clearly useful have been added here.)

### 35.4 Named colors

Color names are stored in a single namespace, which makes them accessible as part of color expressions. Whilst they are not reserved in a technical sense, the names \texttt{black, white, red, green, blue, cyan, magenta} and \texttt{yellow} have special meaning and should not be redefined. Color names should be made up of letters, numbers and spaces only: other characters are reserved for use in color expressions. In particular, \texttt{.} represents the current color at the start of a color expression.

\begin{verbatim}
\color_set:nn \{\texttt{name}\} \{\texttt{color expression}\}
\end{verbatim}

Evaluates the \texttt{(color expression)} and stores the resulting color specification as the \texttt{(name)}.
Stores the color specification equivalent to the \langle model(s) \rangle and \langle values \rangle as the \langle name \rangle.

Copies the color specification in \langle name2 \rangle to \langle name1 \rangle. The special name . may be used to represent the current color, allowing it to be saved to a name.

Displays the color specification stored in the \langle name \rangle on the terminal or log file.

### 35.5 Selecting colors

General selection of color is safe when split across pages: a stack is used to ensure that the correct color is re-selected on the new page. These commands set the current color (.); other more specialised functions such as fill and stroke selectors do not adjust this value.

Parses the \langle color expression \rangle and then activates the resulting color specification for typeset material.

Activates the color specification equivalent to the \langle model(s) \rangle and \langle value(s) \rangle for typeset material.

When this is set to a non-empty value, colors will be converted to the specified model when they are selected. Note that included images and similar are not influenced by this setting.

### 35.6 Colors for fills and strokes

Colors for drawing operations and so forth are split into strokes and fills (the latter may also be referred to as non-stroke color). The fill color is used for text under normal circumstances. Depending on the backend, stroke color may use a stack, in which case it exhibits the same page breaking behavior as general color. However, \texttt{dvips/dvisvgm} do not support this, and so color will need to be contained within a scope, such as \texttt{\draw_begin:/\draw_end:}.

Parses the \langle color expression \rangle and then activates the resulting color specification for filling or stroking.
\color_fill:nn \color_fill \{\textit{model(s)}\} \{\textit{value(s)}\}
Activates the color specification equivalent to the \textit{model(s)} and \textit{value(s)} for filling or stroking.

\color_stroke:nn
When using \texttt{dvips}, this PostScript variables hold the stroke color.

\texttt{color.sc}

35.6.1 Coloring math mode material

Coloring math mode material using \texttt{color_select:nn(n)} has some restrictions and often leads to spacing issues and/or poor input syntax. Avoiding generating \texttt{\mathord} atoms whilst coloring only those parts of the input which are required needs careful handling. The functionality here covers this important use case.

\color_math:nn \{\textit{color expression}\}\{\textit{content}\}
\color_math:nnn \{\textit{model(s)}\} \{\textit{value(s)}\} \{\textit{content}\}
Works as for \texttt{color_select:nn(n)} but applies color only to the math mode \textit{content}. The function does not generate a group and the \textit{content} therefore retains its math atom states. Sub/superscripts are also properly handled.

\l_color_math_active_tl
This list controls which tokens are considered as math active and should therefore be replaced by their definition during searching for sub/superscripts.

35.7 Multiple color models

When selecting or setting a color with an explicit model, it is possible to give values for more than one model at one time. This is particularly useful where automated conversion between models does not give the desired outcome. To do this, the list of models and list of values are both subdivided using / characters (as for the similar function in \texttt{xcolor}). For example, to save a color with explicit \texttt{cmyk} and \texttt{rgb} values, one could use

\color_set:nn { foo } { \texttt{cmyk} / \texttt{rgb} }
\{ 0.1 , 0.2 , 0.3 , 0.4 / 0.1, 0.2, 0.3 \}
The manually-specified conversion will be used in preference to automated calculation whenever the model(s) listed are used: both in expressions and when a fixed model is active.

Similarly, the same syntax can be applied to directly selecting a color.

\color_select:nn { \texttt{cmyk} / \texttt{rgb} }
\{ 0.1 , 0.2 , 0.3 , 0.4 / 0.1, 0.2 , 0.3 \}
Again, this list is used when a fixed model is active: the first entry is used unless there is a fixed model matching one of the other entries.
35.8 Exporting color specifications

The major use of color expressions is in setting typesetting output, but there are other places in which some form of color information is required. These may need data in a different format or using a different model to the internal representation. Thus a set of functions are available to export colors in different formats.

Valid export targets are

- **backend** Two brace groups: the first containing the model, the second containing space-separated values appropriate for the model; this is the format required by backend functions of expl3
- **comma-sep-cmyk** Comma-separated cyan-magenta-yellow-black values
- **comma-sep-rgb** Comma-separated red-green-blue values suitable for use as a PDF annotation color
- **HTML** Uppercase two-digit hexadecimal values, expressing a red-green-blue color; the digits are not separated
- **space-sep-cmyk** Space-separated cyan-magenta-yellow-black values
- **space-sep-rgb** Space-separated red-green-blue values suitable for use as a PDF annotation color

\color_export:nnN \{\langle color expression\rangle\} {\langle format\rangle} {\langle tl\rangle}

 Parses the \langle color expression\rangle as described earlier, then converts to the \langle format\rangle specified and assigns the data to the \langle tl\rangle.

\color_export:nnN \{\langle model\rangle\} {\langle value(s)\rangle} {\langle format\rangle} {\langle tl\rangle}

 Expresses the combination of \langle model\rangle and \langle value(s)\rangle in an internal representation, then converts to the \langle format\rangle specified and assigns the data to the \langle tl\rangle.

35.9 Creating new color models

Additional color models are required to support specialist workflows, for example those involving separations (see https://helpx.adobe.com/indesign/using/spot-process-colors.html for details of the use of separations in print). Color models may be split into families; for the standard device-based color models (DeviceCMYK, DeviceRGB, DeviceGray), these are synonymous. This is not generally the case: see the PDF reference for more details. (Note that l3color uses the shorter names cmyk, etc.)
\color_model_new:nnn \color_model_new:nnn \{\langle model\rangle \} \{\langle family\rangle \} \{\langle params\rangle \}

Creates a new \langle model\rangle which is derived from the color model \langle family\rangle. The latter should be one of

- DeviceN
- ICCBased
- Separation

(The \langle family\rangle may be given in mixed case as-in the PDF reference: internally, case of these strings is folded.) Depending on the \langle family\rangle, one or more \langle params\rangle are mandatory or optional.

For a Separation space, there are three compulsory keys.

- \textbf{name} The name of the Separation, for example the formal name of a spot color ink. Such a \langle name\rangle may contain spaces, etc., which are not permitted in the \langle model\rangle.
- \textbf{alternative-model} An alternative device colorspace, one of cmyk, rgb, gray or CIELAB. The three parameter-based models work as described above; see below for details of CIELAB colors.
- \textbf{alternative-values} A comma-separated list of values appropriate to the \langle alternative-model\rangle. This information is used by the PDF application if the Separation is not available.

CIELAB color separations are created using the \langle alternative-model\rangle = CIELAB setting. These colors must also have an \textbf{illuminant} key, one of a, c, e, d50, d55, d65 or d75. The \langle alternative-values\rangle in this case are the three parameters $L^*$, $a^*$ and $b^*$ of the CIELAB model. Full details of this device-independent color approach are given in the \texttt{colorspace} package.

CIELAB colors cannot be converted into other device-dependent color spaces, and as such, mixing can only occur if colors set up using the CIELAB model are also given with an alternative parameter-based model. If that is not the case, \texttt{l3color} will fallback to using black as the colorant in any mixing.

For a DeviceN space, there is one compulsory key.

- \textbf{names} The names of the components of the DeviceN space. Each should be either the \langle name\rangle of a Separation model, a process color name (cyan, etc.) or the special name \texttt{none}.

For a ICCBased space, there is one compulsory key.

- \textbf{file} The name of the file containing the profile.

### 35.9.1 Color profiles

Color profiles are used to ensure color accuracy by linking to collaboration. Applying a profile can be used to standardise color which is otherwise device-dependence.

\color_profile_apply:nn \color_profile_apply:nn \{\langle profile\rangle \} \{\langle model\rangle \}

This function applies a \langle profile\rangle to one of the device \langle models\rangle. The profile will then apply to all color of the selected \langle model\rangle. The \langle profile\rangle should specify an ICC profile file. The \langle model\rangle has to be one the standard device models: cmyk, gray or rgb.
Chapter 36

The \texttt{l3pdf} package

Core PDF support

36.1 Objects

\texttt{\texttt{pdf\_object\_new:nn}} \hfill \texttt{\texttt{\texttt{\{object\}}} \{\texttt{\{type\}\}}}

Declares \texttt{\{object\}} as a PDF object of \texttt{\{type\}}, which should be one of

- array
- dict
- fstream
- stream

The object may be referenced from this point on, and written later using \texttt{\texttt{pdf\_object\_write:nn}}.

\texttt{\texttt{\texttt{\texttt{pdf\_object\_if\_exist\_p:n}}}} \hfill \texttt{\texttt{\texttt{\{object\}}} \}}

\texttt{\texttt{\texttt{\texttt{pdf\_object\_if\_exist:nTF}}}} \hfill \texttt{\texttt{\texttt{\{object\}}} \}}

Tests whether an object with name \texttt{\{object\}} has been defined.

\texttt{\texttt{\texttt{\texttt{pdf\_object\_write:nn}}}} \hfill \texttt{\texttt{\texttt{\{object\}}} \{\texttt{\{content\}\}}}

\texttt{\texttt{\texttt{\texttt{pdf\_object\_write:nx}}}} \hfill \texttt{\texttt{\texttt{\{object\}}} \}}

Writes the \texttt{\{content\}} as content of the \texttt{\{object\}}. Depending on the \texttt{\{type\}} declared for the object, the format required for the \texttt{\{data\}} will vary

array A space-separated list of values

dict Key–value pairs in the form /\texttt{\{key\}} \texttt{\{value\}}

fstream Two brace groups: \texttt{\{file name\}} and \texttt{\{file content\}}

stream Two brace groups: \texttt{\{attributes (dictionary)\}} and \texttt{\{stream contents\}}
\pdf_object_ref:n \pdf_object_ref:n \{object\}

Inserts the appropriate information to reference the \{object\} in for example page resource allocation

\pdf_object_unnamed_write:nn \pdf_object_unnamed_write:nn \{type\} \{content\}
\pdf_object_unnamed_write:nx

New: 2021-02-10

Writes the \{content\} as content of an anonymous object. Depending on the \{type\}, the format required for the \{data\} will vary

array A space-separated list of values

dict Key–value pairs in the form \{/key\} \{value\}

fstream Two brace groups: \{attributes (dictionary)\} and \{file name\}

stream Two brace groups: \{attributes (dictionary)\} and \{stream contents\}

\pdf_object_ref_last: \pdf_object_ref_last:

New: 2021-02-10

Inserts the appropriate information to reference the last \{object\} created. This is particularly useful for anonymous objects.

\pdf_pageobject_ref:n \pdf_pageobject_ref:n \{pageobject\}

New: 2021-02-10

Inserts the appropriate information to reference the \{pageobject\}.

36.2 Version

\pdf_version_compare_p:Nn \pdf_version_compare:NnTF \{comparator\} \{\{version\}\} \{\{true code\}\} \{\{false code\}\}

New: 2021-02-10

Compares the version of the PDF being created with the \{version\} string specified, using the \{comparator\}. Either the \{true code\} or \{false code\} will be left in the output stream.

\pdf_version_gset:n \pdf_version_min_gset:n

New: 2021-02-10

Sets the \{version\} of the PDF being created. The min version will not alter the output version unless it is currently lower than the \{version\} requested.

This function may only be used up to the point where the PDF file is initialised. With dvips it sets \pdf_version_major: and \pdf_version_minor: and allows to compare the values with \pdf_version_compare:Nn, but the PDF version itself still has to be set with the command line option -dCompatibilityLevel of ps2pdf.

\pdf_version: \pdf_version_major: \pdf_version_minor:

New: 2021-02-10

Expands to the currently-active PDF version.
36.3 Compression

\pdf_uncompress:
Disables any compression of the PDF, where possible.
This function may only be used up to the point where the PDF file is initialised.

36.4 Destinations

Destinations are the places a link jumped too. Unlike the name may suggest they don’t described an exact location in the PDF. Instead a destination contains a reference to a page along with an instruction how to display this page. The normally used “XYZ top left zoom” for example instructs the viewer to show the page with the given zoom and the top left corner at the top left coordinates—which then gives the impression that there is an anchor at this position.

If an instruction takes a coordinate, it is calculated by the following commands relative to the location the command is issued. So to get a specific coordinate one has to move the command to the right place.

\pdf_destination:nn {
  ⟨name⟩} {⟨type or integer⟩}
This creates a destination. {⟨type or integer⟩} can be one of fit, fith, fitv, fitb, fitbh, fitbv, fitr, xyz or an integer representing a scale factor in percent. fitr here gives only a lightweight version of /FitR: The backend code defines fitr so that it will with pdfLaTEX and LuaLaTEX use the coordinates of the surrounding box, with dvips and dvipdfmx it falls back to fit. For full control use \pdf_destination:nnnn.

The keywords match to the PDF names as described in the following tabular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Keyword</th>
<th>PDF</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fit</td>
<td>/Fit</td>
<td>Fits the page to the window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fith</td>
<td>/FitH top</td>
<td>Fits the width of the page to the window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fitv</td>
<td>/FitV left</td>
<td>Fits the height of the page to the window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fitb</td>
<td>/FitB</td>
<td>Fits the page bounding box to the window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fitbh</td>
<td>/FitBH top</td>
<td>Fits the width of the page bounding box to the window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fitbv</td>
<td>/FitBV left</td>
<td>Fits the height of the page bounding box to the window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fitr</td>
<td>/FitR left bottom right top</td>
<td>Fits the rectangle specified by the four coordinates to the window (see above for the restrictions)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xyz</td>
<td>/XYZ left top null</td>
<td>Sets a coordinate but doesn’t change the zoom.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| {⟨integer⟩} | /XYZ left top zoom | Sets a coordinate and a zoom meaning {⟨integer⟩}\%.
This creates a destination with `/FitR` type with the given dimensions relative to the current location. The destination is in a box of size zero, but it doesn’t switch to horizontal mode.
Part VII

Additions and removals
Chapter 37

The \texttt{l3candidates} package
Experimental additions to \texttt{l3kernel}

37.1 Important notice

This module provides a space in which functions can be added to \texttt{l3kernel} (\texttt{expl3}) while still being experimental.

As such, the functions here may not remain in their current form, or indeed at all, in \texttt{l3kernel} in the future.

In contrast to the material in \texttt{l3experimental}, the functions here are all small additions to the kernel. We encourage programmers to test them out and report back on the \LaTeX-L mailing list.

Thus, if you intend to use any of these functions from the candidate module in a public package offered to others for productive use (e.g., being placed on CTAN) please consider the following points carefully:

- Be prepared that your public packages might require updating when such functions are being finalized.

- Consider informing us that you use a particular function in your public package, e.g., by discussing this on the \LaTeX-L mailing list. This way it becomes easier to coordinate any updates necessary without issues for the users of your package.

- Discussing and understanding use cases for a particular addition or concept also helps to ensure that we provide the right interfaces in the final version so please give us feedback if you consider a certain candidate function useful (or not).

We only add functions in this space if we consider them being serious candidates for a final inclusion into the kernel. However, real use sometimes leads to better ideas, so functions from this module are not necessarily stable and we may have to adjust them!
37.2 Additions to \texttt{l3box}

\begin{verbatim}
\box_clip:N \box_clip:c \box_gclip:N \box_gclip:c
Updated: 2019-01-23
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\box_clip:N \⟨\box⟩} Clips the \⟨\box⟩ in the output so that only material inside the bounding box is displayed in the output. The updated \⟨\box⟩ is an hbox, irrespective of the nature of the \⟨\box⟩ before the clipping is applied.

These functions require the \LaTeX{} native drivers: they do not work with the \LaTeX{} e graphics drivers!

\textbf{T\!e\!Xhackers note:} Clipping is implemented by the driver, and as such the full content of the box is placed in the output file. Thus clipping does not remove any information from the raw output, and hidden material can therefore be viewed by direct examination of the file.

\begin{verbatim}
\box_set_trim:Nnnnn \box_set_trim:cnnnn \box_gset_trim:Nnnnn \box_gset_trim:cnnnn
New: 2019-01-23
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\box_set_trim:Nnnnn \⟨\box⟩ \{\langle\left\rangle\} \{\langle\bottom\rangle\} \{\langle\right\rangle\} \{\langle\top\rangle\}} Adjusts the bounding box of the \langle\box⟩ \langle\left\rangle is removed from the left-hand edge of the bounding box, \langle\right\rangle from the right-hand edge and so forth. All adjustments are \langle\dimension expressions\rangle. Material outside of the bounding box is still displayed in the output unless \texttt{\box_clip:N} is subsequently applied. The updated \langle\box⟩ is an hbox, irrespective of the nature of the \langle\box⟩ before the trim operation is applied. The behavior of the operation where the trims requested is greater than the size of the box is undefined.

\begin{verbatim}
\box_set_viewport:Nnnnn \box_set_viewport:cnnnn \box_gset_viewport:Nnnnn \box_gset_viewport:cnnnn
New: 2019-01-23
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\box_set_viewport:Nnnnn \⟨\box⟩ \{\langle\llx\rangle\} \{\langle\lly\rangle\} \{\langle\urx\rangle\} \{\langle\ury\rangle\}} Adjusts the bounding box of the \langle\box⟩ such that it has lower-left co-ordinates (\langle\llx\rangle, \langle\lly\rangle) and upper-right co-ordinates (\langle\urx\rangle, \langle\ury\rangle). All four co-ordinate positions are \langle\dimension expressions\rangle. Material outside of the bounding box is still displayed in the output unless \texttt{\box_clip:N} is subsequently applied. The updated \langle\box⟩ is an hbox, irrespective of the nature of the \langle\box⟩ before the viewport operation is applied.

37.3 Additions to \texttt{l3expan}

\begin{verbatim}
\exp_args_generate:n
New: 2018-04-04
Updated: 2019-02-08
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\exp_args_generate:n \{\langle\variant argument specifiers\rangle\}}

Defines \texttt{\exp_args:N\langle\variant\rangle} functions for each \langle\variant\rangle given in the comma list \{\langle\variant argument specifiers\rangle\}. Each \langle\variant\rangle should consist of the letters N, c, n, V, v, o, f, e, x, p and the resulting function is protected if the letter x appears in the \langle\variant\rangle. This is only useful for cases where \texttt{\cs_generate_variant:Nn} is not applicable.

37.4 Additions to \texttt{l3fp}

\begin{verbatim}
\fp_if_nan:n \fp_if_nan:n\star \fp_if_nan:n\star
New: 2019-08-25
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\fp_if_nan:n \{\langle\fpexpr\rangle\}} Evaluates the \langle\fpexpr\rangle and tests whether the result is exactly \texttt{nan}. The test returns \texttt{false} for any other result, even a tuple containing \texttt{nan}.

301
37.5 Additions to l3file

\ior_term:nN \ior_str_get_term:nN  
New: 2019-03-23

Function that reads one or more lines (until an equal number of left and right braces are found) from the terminal and stores the result locally in the \langle token list variable \rangle. Tokenization occurs as described for \ior_get:NN or \ior_str_get:NN, respectively. When the \langle prompt \rangle is empty, \TeX{} will wait for input without any other indication: typically the programmer will have provided a suitable text using e.g. \ior_term:n.

Where the \langle prompt \rangle is given, it will appear in the terminal followed by an =, e.g.

\begin{verbatim}
prompt=\ior_get_term:nN \ior_str_get_term:nN
\end{verbatim}

New: 2019-05-08

\ior_shell_open:Nn \ior_shell_open:Nn \langle stream \rangle \{⟨shell command⟩\}

Opens the pseudo-file created by the output of the \langle shell command \rangle for reading using \langle stream \rangle as the control sequence for access. If the \langle stream \rangle was already open it is closed before the new operation begins. The \langle stream \rangle is available for access immediately and will remain allocated to \langle shell command \rangle until a \ior_close:N instruction is given or the \TeX{} run ends. If piped system calls are disabled an error is raised.

For details of handling of the \langle shell command \rangle, see \sys_get_shell:nnNTF.

37.6 Additions to l3flag

\flag_raise_if_clear:n \flag_raise_if_clear:n \langle flag name \rangle

Ensures the \langle flag \rangle is raised by making its height at least 1, locally.

37.7 Additions to l3intarray

\intarray_gset_rand:Nnn \intarray_gset_rand:cn \intarray_gset_rand:Nn \intarray_gset_rand:cn  
New: 2018-06-05

Evaluates the integer expressions \langle minimum \rangle and \langle maximum \rangle then sets each entry (independently) of the \langle integer array variable \rangle to a pseudo-random number between the two (with bounds included). If the absolute value of either bound is bigger than $2^{30} - 1$, an error occurs. Entries are generated in the same way as repeated calls to \int_rand:nn or \int_rand:n respectively, in particular for the second function the \langle minimum \rangle is 1.

Assignments are always global. This is not available in older versions of \TeX{}.

\intarray_to_clist:N \intarray_to_clist:N \langle intarray var \rangle

Converts the \langle intarray \rangle to integer denotations separated by commas. All tokens have category code other. If the \langle intarray \rangle has no entry the result is empty; otherwise the result has one fewer comma than the number of items.
37.8 Additions to \texttt{l3msg}

\begin{verbatim}
\msg_show_eval:Nn \msg_log_eval:Nn

Rev: 2017-12-04
\end{verbatim}

Shows or logs the \langle expression\rangle (turned into a string), an equal sign, and the result of applying the \langle function\rangle to the \{expression\} (with f-expansion). For instance, if the \langle function\rangle is \texttt{\int_eval:n} and the \langle expression\rangle is \texttt{1+2} then this logs \texttt{> 1+2=3}.

\begin{verbatim}
\msg_show_item:n \msg_show_item:nn \msg_show_item_unbraced:n \msg_show_item_unbraced:nn

Rev: 2017-12-04
\end{verbatim}

Used in the text of messages for \texttt{\msg_show:nnxxxx} to show or log a list of items or key–value pairs. The one-argument functions are used for sequences, clist or token lists and the others for property lists. These functions turn their arguments to strings.

37.9 Additions to \texttt{l3prg}

\begin{verbatim}
\bool_set_inverse:N \bool_set_inverse:c \bool_gset_inverse:N \bool_gset_inverse:c

Rev: 2018-05-10
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\bool_set_inverse:N \bool_set_inverse:c
\end{verbatim}

Toggles the \langle boolean\rangle from \texttt{true} to \texttt{false} and conversely: sets it to the inverse of its current value.
\bool_case_true:n \bool_case_true:nTF \bool_case_false:n \bool_case_false:nTF

\prop_rand_key_value:N \prop_rand_key_value:c

37.10 Additions to l3prop

\prop_rand_key_value:N \prop_rand_key_value:c

\TeXhackers note: The result is returned within the \unexpanded primitive (\exp_not:n), which means that the (value) does not expand further when appearing in an x-type argument expansion.

304
37.11 Additions to \texttt{l3seq}

\texttt{\seq_mapthread_function:NNN} \quad \star \hspace{1em} \texttt{\seq_mapthread_function:NNN} \langle \texttt{seq}_1 \rangle \langle \texttt{seq}_2 \rangle \langle \texttt{function} \rangle

Applies \langle \texttt{function} \rangle to every pair of items \langle \texttt{seq}_1\texttt{-item} \rangle–\langle \texttt{seq}_2\texttt{-item} \rangle from the two sequences, returning items from both sequences from left to right. The \langle \texttt{function} \rangle receives two \texttt{n}-type arguments for each iteration. The mapping terminates when the end of either sequence is reached (\textit{i.e.} whichever sequence has fewer items determines how many iterations occur).

\texttt{\seq_set_filter:NNn} \quad \texttt{\seq_set_filter:NNn} \langle \texttt{sequence}_1 \rangle \langle \texttt{sequence}_2 \rangle \{ \langle \texttt{inline boolexpr} \rangle \}

Evaluates the \langle \texttt{inline boolexpr} \rangle for every \langle \texttt{item} \rangle stored within the \langle \texttt{sequence}_2 \rangle. The \langle \texttt{inline boolexpr} \rangle receives the \langle \texttt{item} \rangle as \#1. The sequence of all \langle \texttt{items} \rangle for which the \langle \texttt{inline boolexpr} \rangle evaluated to \texttt{true} is assigned to \langle \texttt{sequence}_1 \rangle.

\texttt{\texttt{T\!e\kern-.1667em Xhacker\kern-.125em s note:}} Contrarily to other mapping functions, \texttt{\seq_map_break}: cannot be used in this function, and would lead to low-level \texttt{\texttt{T\!e\kern-.1667em X}} errors.

\texttt{\seq_set_from_function:NNn} \quad \texttt{\seq_gset_from_function:NNn} \langle \texttt{loop code} \rangle \langle \texttt{function} \rangle

Sets the \langle \texttt{seq var} \rangle equal to a sequence whose items are obtained by \texttt{x}-expanding \langle \texttt{loop code} \rangle \langle \texttt{function} \rangle. This expansion must result in successive calls to the \langle \texttt{function} \rangle with no nonexpandable tokens in between. More precisely the \langle \texttt{function} \rangle is replaced by a wrapper function that inserts the appropriate separators between items in the sequence. The \langle \texttt{loop code} \rangle must be expandable; it can be for example \texttt{\tl_map_function:NN} \langle \texttt{tl var} \rangle or \texttt{\clist_map_function:nN} \{ \langle \texttt{clist} \rangle \} or \texttt{\int_step_function:nnnN} \{ \langle \texttt{initial value} \rangle \} \{ \langle \texttt{step} \rangle \} \{ \langle \texttt{final value} \rangle \}.

\texttt{\seq_set_from_inline_x:Nnn} \quad \texttt{\seq_gset_from_inline_x:Nnn} \langle \texttt{loop code} \rangle \langle \texttt{inline code} \rangle

Sets the \langle \texttt{seq var} \rangle equal to a sequence whose items are obtained by \texttt{x}-expanding \langle \texttt{loop code} \rangle applied to a \langle \texttt{function} \rangle derived from the \langle \texttt{inline code} \rangle. A \langle \texttt{function} \rangle is defined, that takes one argument, \texttt{x}-expands the \langle \texttt{inline code} \rangle with that argument as \#1, then adds appropriate separators to turn the result into an item of the sequence. The \texttt{x}-expansion of \langle \texttt{loop code} \rangle \langle \texttt{function} \rangle must result in successive calls to the \langle \texttt{function} \rangle with no nonexpandable tokens in between. The \langle \texttt{loop code} \rangle must be expandable; it can be for example \texttt{\tl_map_function:NN} \langle \texttt{tl var} \rangle or \texttt{\clist_map_function:nN} \{ \langle \texttt{clist} \rangle \} or \texttt{\int_step_function:nnnN} \{ \langle \texttt{initial value} \rangle \} \{ \langle \texttt{step} \rangle \} \{ \langle \texttt{final value} \rangle \}, but not the analogous “inline” mappings.

305
\seq_set_item:Nnn \seq_set_item:cnn \seq_set_item:NnnTF \seq_set_item:cnn \seq_gset_item:Nnn \seq_gset_item:cnn \seq_gset_item:NnnTF \seq_gset_item:cnn

Removes the item of \langle sequence \rangle at the position given by evaluating the \langle integer expression \rangle and replaces it by \langle item \rangle. Items are indexed from 1 on the left/top of the \langle sequence \rangle, or from –1 on the right/bottom. If the \langle integer expression \rangle is zero or is larger (in absolute value) than the number of items in the sequence, the \langle sequence \rangle is not modified. In these cases, \seq_set_item:Nnn raises an error while \seq_set_item:NnnTF runs the \langle false code \rangle. In cases where the assignment was successful, \langle true code \rangle is run afterwards.

\seq_pop_item:NnN \seq_pop_item:cnN \seq_pop_item:NnNTF \seq_pop_item:cnN \seq_gpop_item:NnN \seq_gpop_item:cnN \seq_gpop_item:NnNTF \seq_gpop_item:cnN

Removes the \langle item \rangle at position \langle integer expression \rangle in the \langle sequence \rangle, and places it in the \langle token list variable \rangle. Items are indexed from 1 on the left/top of the \langle sequence \rangle, or from –1 on the right/bottom. If the position is zero or is larger (in absolute value) than the number of items in the sequence, the \langle seq var \rangle is not modified, the \langle token list \rangle is set to the special marker \q_no_value, and the \langle false code \rangle is left in the input stream; otherwise the \langle true code \rangle is. The \langle token list \rangle assignment is local while the \langle sequence \rangle is assigned locally for pop or globally for gpop functions.

37.12 Additions to l3sys

The version string of the current engine, in the same form as given in the banner issued when running a job. For pdfTeX and LuaTeX this is of the form

\langle major \rangle.\langle minor \rangle.\langle revision \rangle

For XeTeX, the form is

\langle major \rangle.\langle minor \rangle

For pTeX and upTeX, only releases since T_{E}X Live 2018 make the data available, and the form is more complex, as it comprises the pTeX version, the upTeX version and the e-pTeX version.

p\langle major \rangle.\langle minor \rangle.\langle revision \rangle-u\langle major \rangle.\langle minor \rangle-<e TeX>

where the u part is only present for upTeX.

\sys_if_rand_exist_p: \sys_if_rand_exist:TF

Tests if the engine has a pseudo-random number generator. Currently this is the case in pdfTeX, LuaTeX, pTeX, upTeX and recent releases of XeTeX.
37.13 Additions to \l3tl

Leaves in the input stream the items from the \langle start index \rangle to the \langle end index \rangle inclusive, using the same indexing as \l_range:nnn. Spaces are ignored. Regardless of whether items appear with or without braces in the \langle token list \rangle, the \tl_range_braced:nnn function wraps each item in braces, while \tl_range_unbraced:nnn does not (overall it removes an outer set of braces). For instance,

\iow_term:x \{ \tl_range_braced:nnn { abcd-{e{}}f } { 2 } { 5 } \}
\iow_term:x \{ \tl_range_braced:nnn { abcd-{e{}}f } { -4 } { -1 } \}
\iow_term:x \{ \tl_range_braced:nnn { abcd-{e{}}f } { -2 } { -1 } \}
\iow_term:x \{ \tl_range_braced:nnn { abcd-{e{}}f } { 0 } { -1 } \}

prints \{b{c}{d}{e{}}\}, \{c{d}{e{}}\}{f}, \{e{\}}\{f\}, and an empty line to the terminal, while

\iow_term:x \{ \tl_range_unbraced:nnn { abcd-{e{}}f } { 2 } { 5 } \}
\iow_term:x \{ \tl_range_unbraced:nnn { abcd-{e{}}f } { -4 } { -1 } \}
\iow_term:x \{ \tl_range_unbraced:nnn { abcd-{e{}}f } { -2 } { -1 } \}
\iow_term:x \{ \tl_range_unbraced:nnn { abcd-{e{}}f } { 0 } { -1 } \}

prints bcde{}, cde{f}, e{f}, and an empty line to the terminal. Because braces are removed, the result of \tl_range_unbraced:nnn may have a different number of items as for \tl_range:nnn or \tl_range_braced:nnn. In cases where preserving spaces is important, consider the slower function \tl_range:nnn.

\TeXhackers note: The result is returned within the \unexpanded primitive (\exp_not:n), which means that the \langle item \rangle does not expand further when appearing in an \texttt{x}-type argument expansion.

\tl_build_begin:N \begin{itemize}
  \item \tl_build_begin:N \langle tl var \rangle
  \begin{itemize}
    \item \tl_build_clear:N \langle tl var \rangle
    \\begin{itemize}
      \end{itemize}
  \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}
\begin{itemize}
  \item \tl_build_gbegin:N \langle tl var \rangle
  \begin{itemize}
    \item \tl_build_gclear:N \langle tl var \rangle
    \\begin{itemize}
      \end{itemize}
  \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

Clears the \langle tl var \rangle and sets it up to support other \tl_build_\ldots functions, which allow accumulating large numbers of tokens piece by piece much more efficiently than standard \l3tl functions. Until \tl_build_end:N \langle tl var \rangle is called, applying any function from \l3tl other than \tl_build_\ldots will lead to incorrect results. The \begin and \gbegin functions must be used for local and global (\langle tl var \rangle) respectively.

\tl_build_clear:N \langle tl var \rangle
\tl_build_gclear:N \langle tl var \rangle

Clears the (\langle tl var \rangle) and sets it up to support other \tl_build_\ldots functions. The \texttt{clear} and \texttt{gclear} functions must be used for local and global (\langle tl var \rangle) respectively.

307
\tl_build_put_left:Nn
\tl_build_put_left:Nx
\tl_build_gput_left:Nn
\tl_build_gput_left:Nx
\tl_build_put_right:Nn
\tl_build_put_right:Nx
\tl_build_gput_right:Nn
\tl_build_gput_right:Nx

New: 2018-04-01

\tl_build_put_left:Nn \tl_build_put_left:Nx \tl_build_gput_left:Nn \tl_build_gput_left:Nx \tl_build_put_right:Nn \tl_build_put_right:Nx \tl_build_gput_right:Nn \tl_build_gput_right:Nx

Adds \tokens to the left or right side of the current contents of \var. The \var must have been set up with \tl_build_begin:N or \tl_build_gbegin:N. The put and gput functions must be used for local and global \var respectively. The right functions are about twice faster than the left functions.

\tl_build_get:N \tl_build_get:NN

New: 2018-04-01

Stores the contents of the \var in the \var. The \var must have been set up with \tl_build_begin:N or \tl_build_gbegin:N. The \var is a “normal” token list variable, assigned locally using \tl_set:Nn.

\tl_build_end:N \tl_build_gend:N

New: 2018-04-01

Gets the contents of \var and stores that into the \var using \tl_set:Nn or \tl_gset:Nn. The \var must have been set up with \tl_build_begin:N or \tl_build_gbegin:N. The end and gend functions must be used for local and global \var respectively. These functions completely remove the setup code that enabled \var to be used for other \tl_build_... functions.

37.14 Additions to \l3token

Token list containing one character with category code 13, (“active”), and character code 32 (space).

\char_to_utfviii_bytes:n

New: 2020-01-09

Converting the (Unicode) codepoint to UTF-8 bytes. The expansion of this function comprises four brace groups, each of which will contain a hexadecimal value: the appropriate byte. As UTF-8 is a variable-length, one or more of the groups may be empty: the bytes read in the logical order, such that a two-byte codepoint will have groups #1 and #2 filled and #3 and #4 empty.

\char_to_nfd:N

New: 2020-01-02

Converting the \char to the Unicode Normalization Form Canonical Decomposition. The category code of the generated character is the same as the \char. With 8-bit engines, no change is made to the character.
Collects and removes tokens from the input stream until finding a token that does not match the \textit{(test token)} (as defined by the test `\texttt{\textbackslash token\_if\_eq\_catcode:NNTF}` or `\texttt{\textbackslash token\_if\_eq\_charcode:NNTF}` or `\texttt{\textbackslash token\_if\_eq\_meaning:NNTF}`). The collected tokens are passed to the \textit{(inline code)} as \#1. When begin-group or end-group tokens (usually `{ ` or `}`) are collected they are replaced by implicit `\texttt{\textbackslash c\_group\_begin\_token}` and `\texttt{\textbackslash c\_group\_end\_token}`, and when spaces (including `\texttt{\textbackslash c\_space\_token}`) are collected they are replaced by explicit spaces.

For example the following code prints “Hello” to the terminal and leave “, world!” in the input stream.

\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{\textbackslash peek\_catcode\_collect\_inline:NN}\ A \ { \ iow\_term:n \ (#1) \ } \texttt{Hello,-world!}
\end{verbatim}

Another example is that the following code tests if the next token is *, ignoring intervening spaces, but putting them back using \#1 if there is no *.

\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{\textbackslash peek\_meaning\_collect\_inline:NN} \texttt{\textbackslash c\_space\_token}
\ { \texttt{\textbackslash peek\_charcode:NTF \ * \ { \texttt{\textbackslash star} \} \ { \texttt{\textbackslash no\_star} \ #1} \} \}
\end{verbatim}
Part VIII
Implementation
Chapter 38

\texttt{l3bootstrap} implementation

\section*{38.1 Lua\TeX{}-specific code}

Depending on the versions available, the \texttt{\LaTeX{}} format may not have the raw \texttt{U}mathtext primitive names available. We fix that globally: it should cause no issues. Older Lua\TeX{} versions do not have a pre-built table of the primitive names here so sort one out ourselves. These end up globally-defined but at that is true with a newer format anyway and as they all start \texttt{U} this should be reasonably safe.

\begin{verbatim}
\begingroup\expandafter\ifx\csname directlua\endcsname\relax
\else
\directlua{%
local i
local t = { }
for _,i in pairs(tex.extraprimitives("luatex")) do
  if string.match(i, "^U") then
    if not string.match(i, "^Uchar$") then %$
      table.insert(t,i)
    end
  end
end
 tex.enableprimitives("", t)
}%
\fi
\endgroup
\end{verbatim}

\section*{38.2 The \texttt{pdfstrcmp} primitive in \texttt{Xe\TeX{}}}

Only \texttt{pdf\TeX{}} has a primitive called \texttt{pdfstrcmp}. The \texttt{Xe\TeX{}} version is just \texttt{strcmp}, so there is some shuffling to do. As this is still a real primitive, using the \texttt{pdf\TeX{}} name is “safe”.

\begin{verbatim}
\begingroup\expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\endgroup
\expandafter\ifx\csname pdfstrcmp\endcsname\relax
\let\pdfstrcmp\strcmp
\fi
\end{verbatim}
38.3 Loading support Lua code

When LuaTeX is used there are various pieces of Lua code which need to be loaded. The code itself is defined in \texttt{l3luatex} and is extracted into a separate file. Thus here the task is to load the Lua code both now and (if required) at the start of each job.

\begin{verbatim}
\begingroup\expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\endgroup
\expandafter\ifx\csname directlua\endcsname\relax
\else
\ifnum\luatexversion<110 \%
\else
For LuaTeX we make sure the basic support is loaded: this is only necessary in plain.
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\begingroup\expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\endgroup
\expandafter\ifx\csname newcatcodetable\endcsname\relax
\input{ltluatex}\%
\fi
\ifdefined\newluabytecode\newluabytecode\@expl@luadata@bytecode\fi
\directlua{require("expl3")}\%
\end{verbatim}

As the user might be making a custom format, no assumption is made about matching package mode with only loading the Lua code once. Instead, a query to Lua reveals what mode is in operation.

\begin{verbatim}
\ifnum 0 \%
\directlua{
if status.ini_version then
  tex.write("1")
end
}>0 \%
\everyjob\expandafter{%
  \the\expandafter\everyjob
  \csname\detokenize{lua_now:n}\endcsname{require("expl3")}}%
\}%
\fi
\fi
\fi
\end{verbatim}

38.4 Engine requirements

The code currently requires \TeX and functionality equivalent to \texttt{pdfstrcmp}, and also driver and Unicode character support. This is available in a reasonably-wide range of engines.

For LuaTeX, we require at least Lua 5.3 and the \texttt{token.set_lua} function. This is available at least since LuaTeX 1.10.

\begin{verbatim}
\begingroup
\def\next{\endgroup}%
\def\ShortText{Required primitives not found}%
\def\LongText{The L3 programming layer requires the \TeX primitives and additional functionality as described in the README file.}
\end{verbatim}
These are available in the engines
- pdfTeX v1.40.0
- XeTeX v0.99992
- LuaTeX v1.10
- e-(u)pTeX mid-2012 or later.

38.5 Extending allocators

The ability to extend \TeX’s allocation routine to allow for \LaTeX{} has been around since 1997 in the etex package. Loading this support is delayed until here as we are now sure that the \LaTeX{} extensions and \texttt{pdfstrcmp} or equivalent are available. Thus there is no danger of an “uncontrolled” error if the engine requirements are not met.

For \LaTeX{} we need to make sure that the extended pool is being used: \texttt{expl3} uses a lot of registers. For formats from 2015 onward there is nothing to do as this is automatic. For older formats, the etex package needs to be loaded to do the job. In that case, some inserts are reserved also as these have to be from the standard pool. Note that \texttt{\reserveinserts} is \texttt{\outer} and so is accessed here by csname. In earlier versions, loading etex was done directly and so \texttt{\reserveinserts} appeared in the code: this then
required a \relax after \RequirePackage to prevent an error with “unsafe” definitions as seen for example with \capoptions. The optional loading here is done using a group and \ifx test as we are not quite in the position to have a single name for \pdfstrcmp just yet.

\begingroup
\def\@tempa{LaTeX2e}\def\next{}\ifx\fmtname\@tempa\expandafter\ifx\csname extrafloats\endcsname\relax\def\next{%\RequirePackage{etex}\csname reserveinserts\endcsname{32} }\fi\expandafter\endgroup
\next

38.6 The \LaTeX{} code environment

The code environment is now set up.

\ExplSyntaxOff
Before changing any category codes, in package mode we need to save the situation before loading. Note the set up here means that once applied \ExplSyntaxOff becomes a “do nothing” command until \ExplSyntaxOn is used.

\protected\edef\ExplSyntaxOff{%\protected\def\noexpand\ExplSyntaxOff{}\catcode 9 = \the\catcode 9\relax\catcode 32 = \the\catcode 32\relax\catcode 34 = \the\catcode 34\relax\catcode 38 = \the\catcode 38\relax\catcode 58 = \the\catcode 58\relax\catcode 94 = \the\catcode 94\relax\catcode 95 = \the\catcode 95\relax\catcode 124 = \the\catcode 124\relax\catcode 126 = \the\catcode 126\relax\endlinechar = \the\endlinechar\relax\chardef\csname l__kernel_expl_bool\endcsname = 0\relax\%\%\}(End definition for \ExplSyntaxOff. This function is documented on page 9.)

The code environment is now set up.

\catcode 9 = 9\relax\catcode 32 = 9\relax\catcode 34 = 12\relax\catcode 38 = 4\relax\catcode 58 = 11\relax\catcode 94 = 7\relax\catcode 95 = 11\relax\catcode 124 = 12\relax
\texttt{\l__kernel_expl_bool} The status for code syntax: this is on at present.
\texttt{\chardef\l__kernel_expl_bool = 1}\relax

(End definition for \l__kernel_expl_bool.)

\texttt{\ExplSyntaxOn} The idea here is that multiple \ExplSyntaxOn\ calls are not going to mess up category codes, and that multiple calls to \ExplSyntaxOff\ are also not wasting time. Applying \ExplSyntaxOn alters the definition of \ExplSyntaxOff and so in package mode this function should not be used until after the end of the loading process!

\texttt{\protected \def \ExplSyntaxOn \{ \bool_if:NF \l__kernel_expl_bool
\{ \cs_set_protected:Npx \ExplSyntaxOff \}}

\texttt{\char_set_catcode:nn \{ 9 \} \{ \char_value_catcode:n \{ 9 \} \}}
\texttt{\char_set_catcode:nn \{ 32 \} \{ \char_value_catcode:n \{ 32 \} \}}
\texttt{\char_set_catcode:nn \{ 34 \} \{ \char_value_catcode:n \{ 34 \} \}}
\texttt{\char_set_catcode:nn \{ 38 \} \{ \char_value_catcode:n \{ 38 \} \}}
\texttt{\char_set_catcode:nn \{ 38 \} \{ \char_value_catcode:n \{ 38 \} \}}
\texttt{\char_set_catcode:nn \{ 58 \} \{ \char_value_catcode:n \{ 58 \} \}}
\texttt{\char_set_catcode:nn \{ 58 \} \{ \char_value_catcode:n \{ 58 \} \}}
\texttt{\char_set_catcode:nn \{ 64 \} \{ \char_value_catcode:n \{ 64 \} \}}
\texttt{\char_set_catcode:nn \{ 64 \} \{ \char_value_catcode:n \{ 64 \} \}}
\texttt{\char_set_catcode:nn \{ 94 \} \{ \char_value_catcode:n \{ 94 \} \}}
\texttt{\char_set_catcode:nn \{ 94 \} \{ \char_value_catcode:n \{ 94 \} \}}
\texttt{\char_set_catcode:nn \{ 95 \} \{ \char_value_catcode:n \{ 95 \} \}}
\texttt{\char_set_catcode:nn \{ 95 \} \{ \char_value_catcode:n \{ 95 \} \}}
\texttt{\char_set_catcode:nn \{ 124 \} \{ \char_value_catcode:n \{ 124 \} \}}
\texttt{\char_set_catcode:nn \{ 124 \} \{ \char_value_catcode:n \{ 124 \} \}}
\texttt{\char_set_catcode:nn \{ 126 \} \{ \char_value_catcode:n \{ 126 \} \}}
\texttt{\char_set_catcode:nn \{ 126 \} \{ \char_value_catcode:n \{ 126 \} \}}
\texttt{\tex_endlinechar:D = \tex_the:D \tex_endlinechar:D \scan_stop:}
\texttt{\bool_set_false:N \l__kernel_expl_bool \cs_set_protected:Npn \ExplSyntaxOff \{}
\texttt{\char_set_catcode:ignore:n \{ 9 \} \% tab}
\texttt{\char_set_catcode:ignore:n \{ 32 \} \% space}
\texttt{\char_set_catcode:other:n \{ 34 \} \% double quote}
\texttt{\char_set_catcode:alignment:n \{ 38 \} \% ampersand}
\texttt{\char_set_catcode:letter:n \{ 58 \} \% colon}
\texttt{\char_set_catcode:math_superscript:n \{ 94 \} \% circumflex}
\texttt{\char_set_catcode:letter:n \{ 95 \} \% underscore}
\texttt{\char_set_catcode:other:n \{ 124 \} \% pipe}
\texttt{\char_set_catcode:space:n \{ 126 \} \% tilde}
\texttt{\tex_endlinechar:D = 32 \scan_stop:}
\texttt{\bool_set_true:N \l__kernel_expl_bool \}}

(End definition for \ExplSyntaxOn. This function is documented on page 9.)

\langle \texttt{/package} \rangle
Chapter 39

\texttt{l3names} implementation

The prefix here is \texttt{kernel}. A few places need \texttt{@@} to be left as is; this is obtained as \texttt{@@@@}. The code here simply renames all of the primitives to new, internal, names. The \texttt{\let} primitive is renamed by hand first as it is essential for the entire process to follow. This also uses \texttt{\global}, as that way we avoid leaving an unneeded csname in the hash table.

\begin{verbatim}
\let \tex_global:D \global
\let \tex_let:D \let

Everything is inside a (rather long) group, which keeps \texttt{\__kernel_primitive:NN} trapped.
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\begingroup
\__kernel_primitive:NN
A temporary function to actually do the renaming.
\long \def \__kernel_primitive:NN #1#2
{ \tex_global:D \tex_let:D #2 #1 }
(End definition for \__kernel_primitive:NN.)
To allow extracting "just the names", a bit of DocStrip fiddling.
\end{verbatim}

In the current incarnation of this package, all \TeX primitives are given a new name of the form \texttt{\tex\_oldname:D}. But first three special cases which have symbolic original names. These are given modified new names, so that they may be entered without catcode tricks.

\begin{verbatim}
\__kernel_primitive:NN \tex\_space:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \texttt{/} \tex\_italiccorrection:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \texttt{-} \tex\_hyphen:D

Now all the other primitives.
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\__kernel_primitive:NN \texttt{above} \tex\_above:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \texttt{abovedisplayshortskip} \tex\_abovedisplayshortskip:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \texttt{abovedisplayskip} \tex\_abovedisplayskip:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \texttt{abovewithdelims} \tex\_abovewithdelims:D
\end{verbatim}
\__kernel_primitive:NN \parskip \tex_parskip:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \patterns \tex_patterns:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \pausing \tex_pausing:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \penalty \tex_penalty:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \postdisplaypenalty \tex_postdisplaypenalty:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \predisplaypenalty \tex_predisplaypenalty:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \predisplaysize \tex_predisplaysize:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \pretolerance \tex_pretolerance:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \prevdepth \tex_prevdepth:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \prevgraf \tex_prevgraf:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \radical \tex_radical:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \raise \tex_raise:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \read \tex_read:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \relax \tex_relax:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \relpenalty \tex_relpenalty:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \right \tex_right:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \righthyphenmin \tex_righthyphenmin:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \rightskip \tex_rightskip:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \roman\numeral \tex_roman\numeral:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \scriptfont \tex_scriptfont:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \scriptsize \tex_scriptsize:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \scriptstyle \tex_scriptstyle:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \scrollmode \tex_scrollmode:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \setbox \tex_setbox:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \setlanguage \tex_setlanguage:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \sfcode \tex_sfcode:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \show \tex_show:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \showbox \tex_showbox:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \showboxbreadth \tex_showboxbreadth:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \showboxdepth \tex_showboxdepth:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \showlists \tex_showlists:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \showthe \tex_showthe:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \skewchar \tex_skewchar:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \skip \tex_skip:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \skipdef \tex_skipdef:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \spacefactor \tex_spacefactor:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \spaceskip \tex_spaceskip:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \span \tex_span:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \special \tex_special:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \splitbotmark \tex_splitbotmark:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \splitfirstmark \tex_splitfirstmark:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \splitmaxdepth \tex_splitmaxdepth:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \splittopskip \tex_splittopskip:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \string \tex_string:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \tabsize \tex_tabsize:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \textfont \tex_textfont:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \textstyle \tex_textstyle:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \time \tex_time:D
Primitives introduced by \TeX.

\beginL
\beginR
\botmarks
\clubpenalties
\currentgrouplevel
\wd
\widowpenalty
\write
\xdef
\xleaders
\xspaceskip
\year
\beginL
\beginR
\botmarks
\clubpenalties
\currentgrouplevel
Post-ε-TeX primitives do not always end up with the same name in all engines, if indeed they are available cross-engine anyway. We therefore take the approach of preferring the shortest name that makes sense. First, we deal with the primitives introduced by pdfTeX which directly relate to PDF output: these are copied with the names unchanged.
These are not related to PDF output and either already appear in other engines without the `pdf` prefix, or might reasonably do so at some future stage. We therefore drop the leading `pdf` here.
The version primitives are not related to PDF mode but are pdftex-specific, so again are carried forward unchanged.

These ones appear in pdftex but don’t have pdf in the name at all: no decisions to make.

Post pdftex primitive availability gets more complex. Both XeTeX and LuaTeX have varying names for some primitives from pdftex. Particularly for LuaTeX tracking all of that would be hard. Instead, we now check that we only save primitives if they actually exist.

Some pdftex primitives are handled here because they got dropped in LuaTeX but the corresponding internal names are emulated later. The Lua code is already loaded at this point, so we shouldn’t overwrite them.
Xe\TeX-specific primitives. Note that \TeX's \strcmp is handled earlier and is “rolled up” into \pdfstrcmp. A few cross-compatibility names which lack the pdf of the original are handled later.
Primitives from pdfTeX that XeTeX renames: also helps with LuaTeX.

Primitives from LuaTeX, some of which have been ported back to XeTeX.

328
Primitives from pdfTeX that LuaTeX renames.

\__kernel_primitive:NN \mathsurroundmode \tex_mathsurroundmode:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \mathsurroundskip \tex_mathsurroundskip:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \nohrule \tex_nohrule:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \nokerns \tex_nokerns:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \noligs \tex_noligs:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \nospaces \tex_nospaces:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \novrule \tex_novrule:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \outputbox \tex_outputbox:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \pagebottomoffset \tex_pagebottomoffset:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \pagedir \tex_pagedir:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \pagedirection \tex_pagedirection:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \pageleftoffset \tex_pageleftoffset:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \pagerightoffset \tex_pagerightoffset:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \pagetopoffset \tex_pagetopoffset:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \pardir \tex_pardir:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \pardirection \tex_pardirection:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \pdfextension \tex_pdfextension:D
\__kernelPrimitive:NN \pdffeedback \tex_pdffeedback:D
\__kernelPrimitive:NN \pdfvariable \tex_pdfvariable:D
\__kernelPrimitive:NN \postexhyphenchar \tex_postexhyphenchar:D
\__kernelPrimitive:NN \posthyphenchar \tex_posthyphenchar:D
\__kernelPrimitive:NN \prebinoppenalty \tex_prebinoppenalty:D
\__kernelPrimitive:NN \predisplaygapfactor \tex_predisplaygapfactor:D
\__kernelPrimitive:NN \preexhyphenchar \tex_preexhyphenchar:D
\__kernelPrimitive:NN \prehyphenchar \tex_prehyphenchar:D
\__kernelPrimitive:NN \prerelpenalty \tex_prerelpenalty:D
\__kernelPrimitive:NN \rightghost \tex_rightghost:D
\__kernelPrimitive:NN \savecatcodetable \tex_savecatcodetable:D
\__kernelPrimitive:NN \scantextokens \tex_scantextokens:D
\__kernelPrimitive:NN \setfontid \tex_setfontid:D
\__kernelPrimitive:NN \shapemode \tex_shapemode:D
\__kernelPrimitive:NN \suppressifcsnameerror \tex_suppressifcsnameerror:D
\__kernelPrimitive:NN \suppresslongerror \tex_suppresslongerror:D
\__kernelPrimitive:NN \suppressmathparerror \tex_suppressmathparerror:D
\__kernelPrimitive:NN \suppressoutererror \tex_suppressoutererror:D
\__kernelPrimitive:NN \suppressprimitiveerror \tex_suppressprimitiveerror:D
\__kernelPrimitive:NN \textdir \tex_textdir:D
\__kernelPrimitive:NN \textdirection \tex_textdirection:D
\__kernelPrimitive:NN \toksapp \tex_toksapp:D
\__kernelPrimitive:NN \tokspre \tex_tokspre:D
\__kernelPrimitive:NN \tpack \tex_tpack:D
\__kernelPrimitive:NN \vpack \tex_vpack:D

Primitives from pdiT\TeX{} that LuaTi\TeX{} renames.
The set of Unicode math primitives were introduced by \texttt{Xe\TeX} and \texttt{Lua\TeX} in a somewhat complex fashion: a few first as \texttt{Xe\TeX}... which were then renamed with \texttt{Lua\TeX} having a lot more. These names now all start \texttt{U}... and mainly \texttt{Umath}...
\text{mathcloseinnerspacing:D}
\text{mathcloseopenspacing:D}
\text{mathclosespacing:D}
\text{mathclosereelspacing:D}
\text{mathcodenum:D}
\text{mathconnectoroverlapmin:D}
\text{mathfractiondelsize:D}
\text{mathfractionnumup:D}
\text{mathfractionnumvgap:D}
\text{mathfractionrule:D}
\text{mathinnerbinspacing:D}
\text{mathinnerclosespacing:D}
\text{mathinnerinnerspacing:D}
\text{mathinneropenspacing:D}
\text{mathinnerordspacing:D}
\text{mathinnerpunctspacing:D}
\text{mathinnerrelspacing:D}
\text{mathlimitsubfactor:D}
\text{mathopbinspacing:D}
\text{mathopclosespacing:D}
\text{mathopenbinspacing:D}
\text{mathopenclosespacing:D}
\text{mathopeninnerspacing:D}
\text{mathopenordspacing:D}
\text{mathopenpunctspacing:D}
\text{mathopordspacing:D}
\text{mathoppunctspacing:D}
\text{mathpunctspacing:D}
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathprelspacing \tex_Umathprelspacing:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathordbinspacing \tex_Umathordbinspacing:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathordclosespacing \tex_Umathordclosespacing:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathordinnerspacing \tex_Umathordinnerspacing:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathordopenspacing \tex_Umathordopenspacing:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathordopspacing \tex_Umathordopspacing:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathordordspacing \tex_Umathordordspacing:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathordpunctspacing \tex_Umathordpunctspacing:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathordrelspacing \tex_Umathordrelspacing:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathoverbarkern \tex_Umathoverbarkern:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathoverbarrule \tex_Umathoverbarrule:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathoverbarvgap \tex_Umathoverbarvgap:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathoverdelimiterbgap \text_Umathoverdelimiterbgap:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathoverdelimitervgap \text_Umathoverdelimitervgap:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathpunctbinspacing \text_Umathpunctbinspacing:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathpunctclosespacing \text_Umathpunctclosespacing:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathpunctinnerspacing \text_Umathpunctinnerspacing:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathpunctopenspacing \text_Umathpunctopenspacing:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathpunctpunctspacing \text_Umathpunctpunctspacing:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathpunctrelspacing \text_Umathpunctrelspacing:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathquad \tex_Umathquad:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathradicaldegreeafter \text_Umathradicaldegreeafter:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathradicaldegreebefore \text_Umathradicaldegreebefore:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathradicaldegreeraise \text_Umathradicaldegreeraise:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathradicalkern \text_Umathradicalkern:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathradicalrule \text_Umathradicalrule:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathradicalvgap \text_Umathradicalvgap:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathrelbinspacing \text_Umathrelbinspacing:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathrelclosespacing \text_Umathrelclosespacing:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathrelinnerspacing \text_Umathrelinnerspacing:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathrelopenspacing \text_Umathrelopenspacing:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathrelordspacing \text_Umathrelordspacing:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathrelpunctspacing \text_Umathrelpunctspacing:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathrelrelspacing \text_Umathrelrelspacing:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathskewedfractionhgap \text_Umathskewedfractionhgap:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathskewedfractionvgap \text_Umathskewedfractionvgap:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathspaceafterscript \text_Umathspaceafterscript:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathstackdenomdown \text_Umathstackdenomdown:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathstacknumup \text_Umathstacknumup:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathstackvgap \text_Umathstackvgap:D
\__kernel_primitive:NN \Umathsubshiftdown \text_Umathsubshiftdown:D
Primitives from \LaTeX.

\autospacing \text{\autospacing:D}

\autoxspacing \text{\autoxspacing:D}

\currentcjktoken \text{\currentcjktoken:D}

\currentspacing \text{\currentspacing:D}

\currentxspacing \text{\currentxspacing:D}

\disinhibitglue \text{\disinhibitglue:D}

\dtou \text{\dtou:D}

\epTeXinputencoding \text{\epTeXinputencoding:D}

\epTeXversion \text{\epTeXversion:D}

\euc \text{\euc:D}

\hfi \text{\hfi:D}

\ifdbox \text{\ifdbox:D}

\ifddir \text{\ifddir:D}

\ifjfont \text{\ifjfont:D}

\ifmbox \text{\ifmbox:D}

\ifmdir \text{\ifmdir:D}

\iftbox \text{\iftbox:D}

\iftfont \text{\iftfont:D}

\iftdir \text{\iftdir:D}

\ifybox \text{\ifybox:D}

\ifydir \text{\ifydir:D}

\inhibitglue \text{\inhibitglue:D}
Primitives from \texttt{upTEX}.

Omega primitives provided by \texttt{pTEX} (listed separately mainly to allow understanding of their source).
Newer cross-engine primitives.

End of the “just the names” part of the source.

The job is done: close the group (using the primitive \textendgroup).

\LaTeX\moves a few primitives, so these are sorted out. In newer versions of \LaTeX, \expl is loaded rather early, so only some primitives are already renamed, so we need two tests here. At the beginning of the \LaTeX\ format, the primitives \textend and \textinput are renamed, and only later on the other ones.

If \texthyph is defined, we are loading \expl in a pre-2020/10/01 release of \LaTeX, so a few other primitives have to be tested as well.

The \textshipout primitive is particularly tricky as a number of packages want to hook in here. First, we see if a sufficiently-new kernel has saved a copy: if it has, just use that. Otherwise, we need to check each of the possible packages/classes that might move it: here, we are looking for those which do not delay action to the \textatbegindocument hook. (We cannot use \primitivetheas that doesn’t allow us to make a direct copy of the primitive itself.) As we know that \LaTeX is in use, we use it’s \textatfor loop here.
Some tidying up is needed for \(\texttítdlingfonts\). Newer \LaTeX{} has this simply as \texttt{tracingfonts}, but that is overwritten by the \LaTeX2ε\ kernel. So any spurious definition has to be removed, then the real version saved either from the pdf\TeX{} name or from \LaTeX{}X. In the latter case, we leave \texttt{@@tracingfonts} available: this might be useful and almost all \LaTeX2ε users will have expl3 loaded by fontspec. (We follow the usual kernel convention that \texttt{@@} is used for saved primitives.)

That is also true for the \LaTeX{}\ X primitives under \LaTeX2ε (depending on the format-building date). There are a few primitives that get the right names anyway so are missing here!

```
\mem@oldshipout
\opem@shipout
\pgfpages@originalshipout
\pr@shipout
\Shipout
\verso@orig@shipout
\do
\{
\tex_eedef:D \l_tmpb_tl
\{ \tex_expandafter:D \tex_meaning:D \@tempa \}
\tex_ifx:D \l_tmpa_tl \l_tmpb_tl
\tex_global:D \tex_expandafter:D \tex_let:D
\tex_expandafter:D \tex_shipout:D \@tempa
\tex_fi:D
\}
\tex_fi:D
\tex_endgroup:D
\def\tracingfonts{\pdftracingfonts}
\ifdefined:D \pdftracingfonts
\let\tracingfonts=\pdftracingfonts
\else:
\ifdefined:D \tex_directlua:D
\tex_directlua:D { \enableprimitives("@@", \{"tracingfonts"\}) }
\let\tracingfonts=\@@tracingfonts
\fi:
\fi:
\fi:
\fi:
\fi:
\fi:
\fi:
\fi:
\fi:
\fi:
\fi:
\let\tracingfonts=\undefined:D
\let\tracingfonts=\pdftracingfonts
\else:
\fi:
\fi:
\fi:
\fi:
\fi:
\fi:
\fi:
\fi:
\fi:
\fi:
\fi:
\fi:
\fi:
```

337
Which also covers those slightly odd ones.

Only \TeX{} and \LaTeX{} define \pdfmapfile{} and \pdfmapline{}: Tidy up the fact that some format-building processes leave a couple of questionable decisions about that!
A few packages do unfortunate things to date-related primitives.

\begin{verbatim}
\begingroup
\edef \l_tmpa_tl { \meaning \time } \edef \l_tmpb_tl { \string \time } \ifx \l_tmpa_tl \l_tmpb_tl \global \let \time \undefined \fi
\edef \l_tmpa_tl { \meaning \day } \edef \l_tmpb_tl { \string \day } \ifx \l_tmpa_tl \l_tmpb_tl \global \let \day \undefined \fi
\edef \l_tmpa_tl { \meaning \month } \edef \l_tmpb_tl { \string \month } \ifx \l_tmpa_tl \l_tmpb_tl \global \let \month \undefined \fi
\edef \l_tmpa_tl { \meaning \year } \edef \l_tmpb_tl { \string \year } \ifx \l_tmpa_tl \l_tmpb_tl \global \let \year \undefined \fi
\endgroup
\end{verbatim}

Up to v0.80, Lua\TeX defined the pdf\TeX version data: rather confusing. Removing them means that \texttt{\pdftexversion} is a marker for pdf\TeX alone: useful in engine-dependent code later.

\begin{verbatim}
\ifdefined \lualatexversion \let \pdftexbanner \undefined \let \pdftexrevision \undefined \let \pdftexversion \undefined \fi
\end{verbatim}

csl\LaTeX moves a couple of primitives which we recover here; as there is no other marker, we can only work by looking for the names.

\begin{verbatim}
\ifdefined \orieveryjob \let \everyjob \orieveryjob \fi
\ifdefined \oripdfoutput \let \pdfoutput \oripdfoutput \fi
\end{verbatim}

For Con\TeXt, two tests are needed. Both Mark II and Mark IV move several primitives: these are all covered by the first test, again using \texttt{\end} as a marker. For Mark IV, a few more primitives are moved: they are implemented using some Lua code in the current Con\TeXt.

\begin{verbatim}
\ifdefined \normalend \let \end \normalend \let \everyjob \normaleveryjob \let \input \normalinput \fi
\end{verbatim}
\text\let:D \text\_language:D \normal\language
\text\let:D \text\_mathop:D \normal\mathop
\text\let:D \text\_month:D \normal\month
\text\let:D \text\_outer:D \normal\outer
\text\let:D \text\_over:D \normal\over
\text\let:D \text\_vcenter:D \normal\vcenter
\text\let:D \text\_unexpanded:D \normal\unexpanded
\text\let:D \text\_expanded:D \normal\expanded
\text\fi:D
\text\ifdefined:D \normal\italic\correction
\text\let:D \text\_hoffset:D \normal\hoffset
\text\let:D \text\_italic\correction:D \normal\italic\correction
\text\let:D \text\_voffset:D \normal\voffset
\text\let:D \text\_show\tokens:D \normal\show\tokens
\text\let:D \text\_body\dir:D \spac\directions\normal\body\dir
\text\let:D \text\_page\dir:D \spac\directions\normal\page\dir
\text\fi:D
\text\ifdefined:D \normal\left
\text\let:D \text\_left:D \normal\left
\text\let:D \text\_middle:D \normal\middle
\text\let:D \text\_right:D \normal\right
\text\fi:D

⟨/text⟩

In L\text\TeX{}, we additionally emulate some primitives using Lua code.

\text\strcmp:D Compare two strings, expanding to 0 if they are equal, -1 if the first one is smaller and 1 if the second one is smaller. Here “smaller” refers to codepoint order which does not correspond to the user expected order for most non-ASCII strings.

local minus_tok = token.new(string.byte’-’, 12)
local zero_tok = token.new(string.byte’0’, 12)
local one_tok = token.new(string.byte’1’, 12)
luacmd(’\tex\strcmp:D’, function()
local first = scan\_string()
local second = scan\_string()
if first < second then
  put\_next(minus\_tok, one\_tok)
else
  put\_next(first == second and zero\_tok or one\_tok)
end
end)

(End definition for \text\strcmp:D. This function is documented on page ??.)

\text\Uchar\cat:D Creating arbitrary chars using tex\_cprint. The alternative approach using token\_put\_next(token\_create(...)) would be about 10% slower.

local cprint = tex\_cprint
luacmd(’\tex\Uchar\cat:D’, function()
local char\_code = scan\_int()
local cat\_code = scan\_int()
cprint(cat\_code, utf8\_char(char\_code))
end, ’global’)

340
\text[size: D]

Wrap the function from \text{ltxutils}.

\begin{verbatim}
local size = filesize(scan_string())
if size then write(size) end
end, 'global')
\end{verbatim}

\text[mdfivesum: D]

There are two cases: Either hash a file or a string. Both are already implemented in \text{\LaTeX} or built-in.

\begin{verbatim}
local hash
if scan_keyword"file" then
  hash = filemd5sum(scan_string())
else
  hash = md5_HEX(scan_string())
end
if hash then write(hash) end
end, 'global')
\end{verbatim}

\text[filmoddate: D]

A primitive for getting the modification date of a file.

\begin{verbatim}
local date = filemoddate(scan_string())
if date then write(date) end
end, 'global')
\end{verbatim}

\text[filedump: D]

An emulated primitive for getting a hexdump from a (partial) file. The length has a default of 0. This is consistent with \text{pdf\LaTeX}, but it effectively makes the primitive useless without an explicit \text{length}. Therefore we allow the keyword \text{whole} to be used instead of a \text{length}, indicating that the whole remaining file should be read.

\begin{verbatim}
local offset = scan_keyword"offset" and scan_int() or nil
local length = scan_keyword"length" and scan_int()
  or not scan_keyword"whole" and 0 or nil
local data = filedump(scan_string(), offset, length)
if data then write(data) end
end, 'global')
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \text{\LaTeX}. This function is documented on page ??.)
Chapter 40

l3kernel-functions: kernel-reserved functions

40.1 Internal kernel functions

\__kernel_chk_cs_exist:N \__kernel_chk_cs_exist:N \langle cs \rangle

This function is only created if debugging is enabled. It checks that \langle cs \rangle exists according to the criteria for \cs_if_exist:p:N, and if not raises a kernel-level error.

\__kernel_chk_exist:c

\__kernel_chk_defined:NT \langle variable \rangle \{ \langle true code \rangle \}

If \langle variable \rangle is not defined (according to \cs_if_exist:NTF), this triggers an error, otherwise the \langle true code \rangle is run.

\__kernel_chk_expr:nNnN \langle expr \rangle \langle eval \rangle \langle convert \rangle \langle caller \rangle

This function is only created if debugging is enabled. By default it is equivalent to \use_i:nnnn. When expression checking is enabled, it leaves in the input stream the result of \tex_the:D \langle eval \rangle \langle expr \rangle \tex_relax:D after checking that no token was left over. If any token was not taken as part of the expression, there is an error message displaying the result of the evaluation as well as the \langle caller \rangle. For instance \langle eval \rangle can be \__int_eval:w and \langle caller \rangle can be \int_eval:n or \int_set:Nn. The argument \langle convert \rangle is empty except for mu expressions where it is \tex_mutoglue:D, used for internal purposes.

\__kernel_chk_tl_type:NnnT \langle control sequence \rangle \{ \langle specific type \rangle \}

\{ \langle reconstruction \rangle \} \{ \langle true code \rangle \}

Helper to test that the \langle control sequence \rangle is a variable of the given \langle specific type \rangle of token list. Produces suitable error messages if the \langle control sequence \rangle does not exist, or if it is not a token list variable at all, or if the \langle control sequence \rangle differs from the result of x-expanding \langle reconstruction \rangle. If all of these tests succeed then the \langle true code \rangle is run.
\_kernel_cs_parm_from_arg_count:nnF \_kernel_cs_parm_from_arg_count:nnF \{(follow-on)\} \{\{args\}\} \{\{false\ \text{code}\}\}

Evaluates the number of \{\text{args}\} and leaves the \{\text{follow-on}\} code followed by a brace group containing the required number of primitive parameter markers (\#1, etc.). If the number of \{\text{args}\} is outside the range \([0, 9]\), the \{\text{false}\ \text{code}\} is inserted instead of the \{\text{follow-on}\}.

\_kernel_dependency_version_check:Nn \_kernel_dependency_version_check:Nn \{(date)\} \{\{file\}\}
\_kernel_dependency_version_check:nn \_kernel_dependency_version_check:nn \{(date)\} \{\{file\}\}

Checks if the loaded version of the expl3 kernel is at least \{date\}, required by \{file\}. If the kernel date is older than \{date\}, the loading of \{file\} is aborted and an error is raised.

\_kernel_deprecation_code:nn \_kernel_deprecation_code:nn \{\{error\ \text{code}\}\} \{\{working\ \text{code}\}\}

Stores both an \{\text{error}\} and \{\text{working}\} definition for given material such that they can be exchanged by \texttt{\debug_on:} and \texttt{\debug_off:}.

\_kernel_exp_not:w \_kernel_exp_not:w \{expandable\ \text{tokens}\} \{\{content\}\}

Carries out expansion on the \{expandable\ \text{tokens}\} before preventing further expansion of the \{content\} as for \texttt{\exp_not:n}. Typically, the \{expandable\ \text{tokens}\} will alter the nature of the \{content\}, \text{i.e.} allow it to be generated in some way.

\l__kernel_expl_bool

A boolean which records the current code syntax status: \texttt{true} if currently inside a code environment. This variable should only be set by \texttt{\ExplSyntaxOn/\ExplSyntaxOff}.

(End definition for \l__kernel_expl_bool.)

\c__kernel_expl_date_tl

A token list containing the release date of the l3kernel preloaded in \LaTeX2\epsilon used to check if dependencies match.

(End definition for \c__kernel_expl_date_tl.)

\_kernel_file_missing:n \_kernel_file_missing:n \{\{name\}\}

Expands the \{name\} as per \_kernel_file_name_sanitize:n then produces an error message indicating that this file was not found.

\_kernel_file_name_sanitize:n \_kernel_file_name_sanitize:n \{\{name\}\}

Expands the file name using a \csname-based approach, and relies on active characters (for example from UTF-8 characters) being properly set up to expand to a expansion-safe version using \texttt{\ifcsname}. This is less conservative than the token-by-token approach used before, but it is much faster.

\_kernel_file_input_push:n \_kernel_file_input_push:n \{\{name\}\}
\_kernel_file_input_pop:
\_kernel_file_input_pop:

Used to push and pop data from the internal file stack: needed only in package mode, where interfacing with the \LaTeX2\epsilon kernel is necessary.
\__kernel_int_add:nnn

\__kernel_int_add:nnn \{integer_1\} \{integer_2\} \{integer_3\}

Expands to the result of adding the three \langle integers \rangle (which must be suitable input for \int_eval:w), avoiding intermediate overflow. Overflow occurs only if the overall result is outside \{-2^{31}+1, 2^{31}−1\}. The \langle integers \rangle may be of the form \int_eval:w \ldots \scan_stop: but may be evaluated more than once.

\__kernel_intarray_gset:Nnn

\__kernel_intarray_gset:Nnn \{intarray\} \{index\} \{value\}

Faster version of \intarray_gset:Nnn. Stores the \langle value \rangle into the \langle integer array variable \rangle at the \langle position \rangle. The \langle index \rangle and \langle value \rangle must be suitable for a direct assignment to a \TeX\ count register, for instance expanding to an integer denotation or obtained through the primitive \numexpr (which may be un-terminated). No bound checking is performed: the caller is responsible for ensuring that the \langle position \rangle is between 1 and the \intarray_count:N, and the \langle value \rangle's absolute value is at most 2^{30}−1. Assignments are always global.

\__kernel_intarray_item:Nn

\__kernel_intarray_item:Nn \{intarray\} \{index\}

Faster version of \intarray_item:Nn. Expands to the integer entry stored at the \langle index \rangle in the \langle integer array variable \rangle. The \langle index \rangle must be suitable for a direct assignment to a \TeX\ count register and must be between 1 and the \intarray_count:N, lest a low-level \TeX\ error occur.

\__kernel_intarray_range_to_clist:Nnn

\__kernel_intarray_range_to_clist:Nnn \{intarray\} \{start index\} \{end index\}

Converts to integer denotations separated by commas the entries of the \langle intarray \rangle from positions \langle start index \rangle to \langle end index \rangle included. The \langle start index \rangle and \langle end index \rangle must be suitable for a direct assignment to a \TeX\ count register, must be between 1 and the \intarray_count:N, and be suitably ordered. All tokens have category code other.

\__kernel_intarray_gset_range_from_clist:Nnn

\__kernel_intarray_gset_range_from_clist:Nnn \{intarray\} \{start index\} \{integer clist\}

Stores the entries of the \langle clist \rangle as entries of the \langle intarray\rangle starting from the \langle start index \rangle, upwards. This is done without any bound checking. The \langle start index \rangle and all entries of the \langle integer comma list \rangle (which do not undergo space trimming and brace stripping as in normal clist mappings) must be suitable for a direct assignment to a \TeX\ count register. An empty entry may stop the loop.

\__kernel_ior_open:Nn
\__kernel_ior_open:No

This function has identical syntax to the public version. However, it does not take precautions against active characters in the \langle file name \rangle, and it does not attempt to add a \langle path \rangle to the \langle file name \rangle: it is therefore intended to be used by higher-level functions which have already fully expanded the \langle file name \rangle and which need to perform multiple open or close operations. See for example the implementation of \file_get_full_name:nN.
\_\_kernel_iow_with:Nnn \_\_kernel_iow_with:Nnn \texttt{(integer)} \{\texttt{(value)}\} \{\texttt{(code)}\}

If the \texttt{(integer)} is equal to the \texttt{(value)} then this function simply runs the \texttt{(code)}. Otherwise it saves the current value of the \texttt{(integer)}, sets it to the \texttt{(value)}, runs the \texttt{(code)}, and restores the \texttt{(integer)} to its former value. This is used to ensure that the \texttt{\newlinechar} is 10 when writing to a stream, which lets \texttt{\iownewline} work, and that \texttt{\errorcontextlines} is $-1$ when displaying a message.

\_\_kernel_kern:n \_\_kernel_kern:n \{\texttt{(length)}\}

Inserts a kern of the specified \texttt{(length)}, a dimension expression.

(End definition for \_\_kernel_kern:n.)

\g\_\_kernel_prg_map_int

This integer is used by non-expandable mapping functions to track the level of nesting in force. The functions \texttt{\(\texttt{\type\_map\_1:w}\), \(\texttt{\type\_map\_2:w}\), etc.}, labelled by \texttt{\g\_\_kernel_prg_map_int} hold functions to be mapped over various list datatypes in inline and variable mappings.

(End definition for \_\_kernel_prg_map_int.)
\_kernel_quark_new_test:N \kernel_quark_new_test:N \token{\texttt{\textbackslash (arg spec)}}\texttt{\textbackslash (arg spec)}

Defines a quark-test function $\langle \texttt{name} \rangle:(\texttt{arg spec})$ which tests if its argument is $\langle \texttt{namespace} \rangle$\_\texttt{recursion_tail}, then acts accordingly, as described below for each possible $\langle \texttt{arg spec} \rangle$.

The $\langle \texttt{name} \rangle$ is determined as the first (nonempty) \-delimited word in $\langle \texttt{name} \rangle$ and is used internally in the definition of auxiliaries. The function $\langle \texttt{name} \rangle$\_\texttt{recursion_tail} does not define the $\langle \texttt{namespace} \rangle$\_\texttt{recursion_tail} and $\langle \texttt{namespace} \rangle$\_\texttt{recursion_stop} quarks. They should be manually defined with $\texttt{\textbackslash quark-\_new:N}$.

There are 6 different types of quark-test functions. Which one is defined depends on the $\langle \texttt{arg spec} \rangle$, which must be one of the options listed now. Four of them are modeled after $\texttt{\textbackslash quark_if_recursion_tail:(N|n)}$ and $\texttt{\textbackslash quark_if_recursion_tail_do:(N|n)n}$.

n defines $\langle \texttt{name} \rangle:n$ such that it checks if \#1 contains only $\langle \texttt{namespace} \rangle$\_\texttt{recursion_tail}, and if so consumes all tokens up to $\langle \texttt{namespace} \rangle$\_\texttt{recursion_stop} (c.f. $\texttt{\textbackslash quark_if_recursion_tail\_stop:n}$).

nn defines $\langle \texttt{name} \rangle:nn$ such that it checks if \#1 contains only $\langle \texttt{namespace} \rangle$\_\texttt{recursion_tail}, and if so consumes all tokens up to $\langle \texttt{namespace} \rangle$\_\texttt{recursion_stop}, then executes the code \#2 after that (c.f. $\texttt{\textbackslash quark_if_recursion_tail\_stop_do:nn}$).

N defines $\langle \texttt{name} \rangle:N$ such that it checks if \#1 is $\langle \texttt{namespace} \rangle$\_\texttt{recursion_tail}, and if so consumes all tokens up to $\langle \texttt{namespace} \rangle$\_\texttt{recursion_stop} (c.f. $\texttt{\textbackslash quark_if_recursion_tail\_stop:N}$).

Nn defines $\langle \texttt{name} \rangle:Nn$ such that it checks if \#1 is $\langle \texttt{namespace} \rangle$\_\texttt{recursion_tail}, and if so uses the $\langle \texttt{type} \rangle$\_\texttt{map_break:} function \#2.

The last two are modeled after $\texttt{\textbackslash quark_if_recursion_tail_break:(n|N)N}$, and in those cases the quark $\langle \texttt{namespace} \rangle$\_\texttt{recursion_stop}$ is not used (and thus needs not be defined).

nN defines $\langle \texttt{name} \rangle:nN$ such that it checks if \#1 contains only $\langle \texttt{namespace} \rangle$\_\texttt{recursion_tail}, and if so uses the $\langle \texttt{type} \rangle$\_\texttt{map_break:} function \#2.

NN defines $\langle \texttt{name} \rangle:NN$ such that it checks if \#1 is $\langle \texttt{namespace} \rangle$\_\texttt{recursion_tail}, and if so uses the $\langle \texttt{type} \rangle$\_\texttt{map_break:} function \#2.

Any other signature, as well as a function without signature are errors, and in such case the definition is aborted.
\_kernel_quark_new_conditional:Nn  \_kernel_quark_new_conditional:Nn  \_\langle namespace\rangle_quark_if_\langle name\rangle:\langle arg spec\rangle \{\langle conditions\rangle\}

Defines a collection of quark conditionals that test if their argument is the quark \_\_\langle namespace\rangle_\langle name\rangle and perform suitable actions. The \langle conditions\rangle are a comma-separated list of one or more of \texttt{p}, \texttt{T}, \texttt{F}, and \texttt{TF}, and one conditional is defined for each \langle condition\rangle in the list, as described for \prg_new_conditional:Npnn. The conditionals are defined using \prg_new_conditional:Npnn, so that their name is obtained by adding \texttt{p}, \texttt{T}, \texttt{F}, or \texttt{TF} to the base name \_\_\langle namespace\rangle_quark_if_\langle name\rangle:\langle arg spec\rangle.

The first argument of \_\_\kernel_quark_new_conditional:Nn must contain \texttt{quark_if} and \texttt{;}, as these markers are used to determine the \langle name\rangle of the quark \_\_\langle namespace\rangle_\langle name\rangle to be tested. This quark should be manually defined with \texttt{quark_new:N}, as \_\_\kernel_quark_new_conditional:Nn does not define it.

The function \_\_\kernel_quark_new_conditional:Nn can define 2 different types of quark conditionals. Which one is defined depends on the \langle arg spec\rangle, which \textit{must} be one of the following options, modeled after \texttt{quark_if_nil:(N|n)(TF)}.

\texttt{n} defines \_\_\langle namespace\rangle_quark_if_\langle name\rangle:n(TF) such that it checks if \#1 contains only \_\_\langle namespace\rangle_\langle name\rangle, and executes the proper conditional branch.

\texttt{N} defines \_\_\langle namespace\rangle_quark_if_\langle name\rangle:N(TF) such that it checks if \#1 is \_\_\langle namespace\rangle_\langle name\rangle, and executes the proper conditional branch.

Any other signature, as well as a function without signature are errors, and in such case the definition is aborted.

\c__kernel_randint_max_int  Maximal allowed argument to \_\_\kernel_randint:n. Equal to $2^{17} - 1$.

\texttt{(End definition for \c__kernel_randint_max_int.)}

\_\_\kernel_randint:n  \_\_\kernel_randint:n \{\langle max\rangle\}

Used in an integer expression this gives a pseudo-random number between 1 and \langle max\rangle included. One must have \langle max\rangle \leq 2^{17} - 1. The \langle max\rangle must be suitable for \texttt{int_value:w} (and any \texttt{int_eval:w} must be terminated by \texttt{scan_stop:} or equivalent).

\_\_\kernel_randint:nn  \_\_\kernel_randint:nn \{\langle min\rangle\} \{\langle max\rangle\}

Used in an integer expression this gives a pseudo-random number between \langle min\rangle and \langle max\rangle included. The \langle min\rangle and \langle max\rangle must be suitable for \texttt{int_value:w} (and any \texttt{int_eval:w} must be terminated by \texttt{scan_stop:} or equivalent). For small ranges \( R = \langle max\rangle - \langle min\rangle + 1 \leq 2^{17} - 1, \langle min\rangle - 1 + \_\_\kernel_randint:n\{R\} \) is faster.

\_\_\kernel_register_show:N  \_\_\kernel_register_show:N \{\langle register\rangle\}

Used to show the contents of a \TeX register at the terminal, formatted such that internal parts of the mechanism are not visible.

\_\_\kernel_register_log:N  \_\_\kernel_register_log:N \{\langle register\rangle\}

Used to write the contents of a \TeX register to the log file in a form similar to \_\_\kernel_register_show:N.
\_\text{kernel\_str\_to\_other}:n \quad \_\text{kernel\_str\_to\_other}:n \ {(token\ list)}

Converts the \{token\ list\} to a \{other\ string\}, where spaces have category code “other”. This function can be \texttt{f}-expanded without fear of losing a leading space, since spaces do not have category code 10 in its result. It takes a time quadratic in the character count of the string.

\_\text{kernel\_str\_to\_other\_fast}:n \quad \_\text{kernel\_str\_to\_other\_fast}:n \ {(token\ list)}

Same behaviour \_\text{kernel\_str\_to\_other}:n but only restricted-expandable. It takes a time linear in the character count of the string.

\_\text{kernel\_tl\_to\_str}:w \quad \_\text{kernel\_tl\_to\_str}:w \ (expandable\ tokens) \ {(tokens)}

Carries out expansion on the \{expandable\ tokens\} before conversion of the \{tokens\} to a string as describe for \texttt{\_\text{tl\_to\_str}:n}. Typically, the \{expandable\ tokens\} will alter the nature of the \{tokens\}, \textit{i.e.} allow it to be generated in some way. This function requires only a single expansion.

\_\text{kernel\_tl\_set}:Nx \quad \_\text{kernel\_tl\_set}:Nx \ (tl\ var) \ {(tokens)}
\_\text{kernel\_tl\_gset}:Nx

Fully expands \{tokens\} and assigns the result to \{tl\ var\}. \{tokens\} must be given in braces and there must be no token between \{tl\ var\} and \{tokens\}.

### 40.2 Kernel backend functions

These functions are required to pass information to the backend. The nature of these means that they are defined only when the relevant backend is in use.

\_\text{kernel\_backend\_literal}:n \quad \_\text{kernel\_backend\_literal}:n \ {\texttt{\{content\}}}
\_\text{kernel\_backend\_literal}:e\texttt{x}

Adds the \{content\} literally to the current vertical list as a whatsit. The nature of the \{content\} will depend on the backend in use.

\_\text{kernel\_backend\_literal\_postscript}:n \quad \_\text{kernel\_backend\_literal\_postscript}:n \ {\texttt{\{PostScript\}}}
\_\text{kernel\_backend\_literal\_postscript}:x

Adds the \{PostScript\} literally to the current vertical list as a whatsit. No positioning is applied.

\_\text{kernel\_backend\_literal\_pdf}:n \quad \_\text{kernel\_backend\_literal\_pdf}:n \ {\texttt{\{PDF\ instructions\}}}
\_\text{kernel\_backend\_literal\_pdf}:x

Adds the \{PDF\ instructions\} literally to the current vertical list as a whatsit. No positioning is applied.

\_\text{kernel\_backend\_literal\_svg}:n \quad \_\text{kernel\_backend\_literal\_svg}:n \ {\texttt{\{SVG\ instructions\}}}
\_\text{kernel\_backend\_literal\_svg}:x

Adds the \{SVG\ instructions\} literally to the current vertical list as a whatsit. No positioning is applied.
\_kernel_backend_postscript:n \_kernel_backend_postscript:n {⟨PostScript⟩}

Adds the ⟨PostScript⟩ to the current vertical list as a whatsis. The PostScript reference point is adjusted to match the current position. The PostScript is inserted inside a SDict begin/end pair.

\_kernel_backend_align_begin: \_kernel_backend_align_begin:
\_kernel_backend_align_end: \_kernel_backend_align_end:

⟨PostScript literals⟩

Arranges to align the PostScript and DVI current positions and scales.

\_kernel_backend_scope_begin: \_kernel_backend_scope_begin:
\_kernel_backend_scope_end: \_kernel_backend_scope_end:

⟨content⟩

Creates a scope for instructions at the backend level.

\_kernel_backend_matrix:n \_kernel_backend_matrix:n {⟨matrix⟩}

\_kernel_backend_matrix:x

Applies the ⟨matrix⟩ to the current transformation matrix.

\g__kernel_backend_header_bool

Specifies whether to write headers for the backend.

\l__kernel_color_stack_int

The color stack used in pdfTeX and LuaTeX for the main color.
Chapter 41

\texttt{l3basics implementation}

41.1 Renaming some \TeX{} primitives (again)

Having given all the \TeX{} primitives a consistent name, we need to give sensible names to the ones we actually want to use. These will be defined as needed in the appropriate modules, but we do a few now, just to get started.\footnote{This renaming gets expensive in terms of csname usage, an alternative scheme would be to just use the \texttt{\tex...
odeak{D} name in the cases where no good alternative exists.}

Then some conditionals.

\begin{verbatim}
\if_true:
  \if_false:
  \or:
  \else:
  \fi:
\reverse_if:N
\if:w
  \if_charcode:w
  \if_catcode:w
  \if_meaning:w
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for $\if_true$: and others. These functions are documented on page 27.)

\begin{verbatim}
\if_mode_math:
  \if_mode_horizontal:
  \if_mode_vertical:
  \if_mode_inner:
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for $\if_mode_math$: and others. These functions are documented on page 28.)

Building csnames and testing if control sequences exist.

\begin{verbatim}
\if_cs_exist:N
  \if_cs_exist:w
  \cs:w
  \cs_end:
\end{verbatim}

\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{Chapter 41: \texttt{l3basics implementation}}

350
The five \exp_ functions are used in the \texttt{l3expan} module where they are described.

\begin{verbatim}
\exp_after:wN \exp_not:N \exp_not:n \exp:w \exp_romannumeral:D \exp_chardef:D \exp_end: \exp_after:wN \exp_not:N \exp_noexpand:D \exp_not:n \exp_unexpanded:D \exp:w \exp_romannumeral:D \exp_chardef:D \exp_end: = 0 ~
\end{verbatim}

Examining a control sequence or token.

\begin{verbatim}
\token_to_meaning:N \cs_meaning:N \__kernel_tl_to_str:w \token_to_str:N \__kernel_tl_to_str:w \text_detokenize:D \token_to_meaning:N \cs_meaning:N \__kernel_tl_to_str:w \text_detokenize:D \__kernel_tl_to_str:w \token_to_str:N \__kernel_tl_to_str:w \text_detokenize:D
\end{verbatim}

Making strings.

The next three are basic functions for which there also exist versions that are safe inside alignments. These safe versions are defined in the \texttt{l3prg} module.

\begin{verbatim}
\scan_stop: \group_begin: \group_end: \scan_stop: \group_begin: \group_end: \__int_compare:w \__int_to_roman:w \__int_compare:w \__int_to_roman:w
\end{verbatim}

For integers.

\begin{verbatim}
\__kernel_tl_to_str:w \token_to_str:n \token_to_str:N \__kernel_tl_to_str:w \token_to_str:n \token_to_str:N \text_detokenize:D \token_to_str:n \token_to_str:N \__kernel_tl_to_str:w \token_to_str:n \token_to_str:N \__kernel_tl_to_str:w \token_to_str:n \token_to_str:N \text_detokenize:D
\end{verbatim}

Adding material after the end of a group.

\begin{verbatim}
\group_insert_after:N \text_aftergroup:D \group_insert_after:N \text_aftergroup:D \group_insert_after:N \text_aftergroup:D \group_insert_after:N \text_aftergroup:D \group_insert_after:N \text_aftergroup:D
\end{verbatim}

Discussed in \texttt{l3expan}, but needed much earlier.

\begin{verbatim}
\__int_to_roman:w \if_int_compare:w \__int_to_roman:w \if_int_compare:w \__int_to_roman:w
\end{verbatim}

\section{351}
A small number of variants defined by hand. Some of the necessary functions (\use_i:nn, \use_ii:nn, and \exp_args:NNc) are not defined at that point yet, but will be defined before those variants are used. The \cs_meaning:c command must check for an undefined control sequence to avoid defining it mistakenly.

\begin{verbatim}
\tex_def:D \token_to_str:c { \exp_args:Nc \token_to_str:N }
\tex_long:D \tex_def:D \cs_meaning:c #1
{
  \if_cs_exist:w #1 \cs_end:
    \exp_after:wN \use_i:nn
  \else:
    \exp_after:wN \use_ii:nn
  \fi:
  { \exp_args:Nc \cs_meaning:N {#1} }
  { \tl_to_str:n {undefined} }
}
\tex_let:D \token_to_meaning:c = \cs_meaning:c
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \token_to_meaning:N. This function is documented on page 187.)

41.2 Defining some constants

\c_zero_int We need the constant \c_zero_int which is used by some functions in the \l3alloc module. The rest are defined in the \l3int module – at least for the ones that can be defined with \tex_chardef:D or \tex_mathchardef:D. For other constants the \l3int module is required but it can’t be used until the allocation has been set up properly!

\begin{verbatim}
\tex_chardef:D \c_zero_int = 0
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \c_zero_int. This variable is documented on page 166.)

\c_max_register_int This is here as this particular integer is needed both in package mode and to bootstrap \l3alloc, and is documented in \l3int. Lua\TeX and those which contain parts of the Omega extensions have more registers available than \e-\TeX.

\begin{verbatim}
\tex_ifdefined:D \tex_luatexversion:D
\tex_chardef:D \c_max_register_int = 65 535
\else:D
\tex_ifdefined:D \tex_omathchardef:D
\tex_omathchardef:D \c_max_register_int = 65535
\else:D
\tex_mathchardef:D \c_max_register_int = 32767
\fi:D
\fi:D
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \c_max_register_int. This variable is documented on page 166.)

41.3 Defining functions

We start by providing functions for the typical definition functions. First the local ones.

All assignment functions in \BF\TeX\ should be naturally protected; after all, the \TeX\ primitives for assignments are and it can be a cause of problems if others aren’t.

\begin{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}

352
Global versions of the above functions.

\cs_gset_nopar:Npn
\cs_gset_nopar:Npx
\cs_gset:Npn
\cs_gset:Npx
\cs_gset_protected_nopar:Npn
\cs_gset_protected_nopar:Npx
\cs_gset_protected:Npn
\cs_gset_protected:Npx

(End definition for \cs_gset_nopar:Npn and others. These functions are documented on page 16.)

41.4 Selecting tokens

\l__exp_internal_tl
Scratch token list variable for \texttt{l3expansion}, used by \texttt{\use:x}, used in defining conditionals. We don’t use \texttt{tl} methods because \texttt{l3basics} is loaded earlier.

\cs_set_nopar:Npn \l__exp_internal_tl { }

(End definition for \l__exp_internal_tl.)

\use:c
This macro grabs its argument and returns a csname from it.

\cs_set:Npn \use:c #1 { \cs:w #1 \cs_end: }

(End definition for \use:c. This function is documented on page 20.)

\use:x
Fully expands its argument and passes it to the input stream. Uses the reserved \texttt{\_\_\_exp_internal_tl} which we’ve set up above.

\cs_set_protected:Npn \use:x #1
{ \cs_set_nopar:Npn \l__exp_internal_tl {#1} \l__exp_internal_tl }

353
\use:e In non-L\textTeXengines older than 2019, \texttt{\expanded} is emulated.
\begin{verbatim}
\cs_set:Npn \use:e #1 { \tex\expanded:D {#1} }
\tex_ifdefined:D \tex\expanded:D \tex_else:D
\cs_set:Npn \use:e #1 { \exp_args:Ne \use:n {#1} }
\tex\fi:D
\end{verbatim}
(End definition for \texttt{\use:e}. This function is documented on page 25.)

\use:n These macros grab their arguments and return them back to the input (with outer braces removed).
\begin{verbatim}
\cs_set:Npn \use:n #1 {#1}
\cs_set:Npn \use:nn #1#2 {#1#2}
\cs_set:Npn \use:nnn #1#2#3 {#1#2#3}
\cs_set:Npn \use:nnn #1#2#3#4 {#1#2#3#4}
\end{verbatim}
(End definition for \texttt{\use:n} and others. These functions are documented on page 23.)

\use_i:nn The equivalent to L\textTeX2\epsilon’s \texttt{\@firstoftwo} and \texttt{\@secondoftwo}.
\begin{verbatim}
\cs_set:Npn \use_i:nn #1#2 {#1}
\cs_set:Npn \use_i:nn #1#2 {#2}
\end{verbatim}
(End definition for \texttt{\use_i:nn} and \texttt{\use_i:nn}. These functions are documented on page 24.)

\use_i:nnn We also need something for picking up arguments from a longer list.
\begin{verbatim}
\cs_set:Npn \use_i:nnn #1#2#3 {#1}
\cs_set:Npn \use_i:nnn #1#2#3 {#2}
\cs_set:Npn \use_i:nnn #1#2#3 {#3}
\cs_set:Npn \use_i:nnn #1#2#3 {#1#2} 
\cs_set:Npn \use_i:nnn #1#2#3 {#1#2#3} 
\cs_set:Npn \use_i:nnn #1#2#3 {#1#2#3#4} 
\cs_set:Npn \use_i:nnn #1#2#3 {#2#1} 
\cs_set:Npn \use_i:nnn #1#2#3 {#2#1#2} 
\cs_set:Npn \use_i:nnn #1#2#3 {#2#1#2#3} 
\cs_set:Npn \use_i:nnn #1#2#3 {#2#1#2#3#4} 
\end{verbatim}
(End definition for \texttt{\use_i:nnn} and others. These functions are documented on page 24.)

\use_i_ii:nn We finally need something for picking up arguments from a longer list.
\begin{verbatim}
\cs_set:Npn \use_i_ii:nn #1#2 {#2 #1}
\end{verbatim}
(End definition for \texttt{\use_i_ii:nn}. This function is documented on page 24.)

\use_none_delimit_by_q_nil:w Functions that gobble everything until they see either \texttt{\q_nil}, \texttt{\q_stop}, or \texttt{\q_recursion_stop}, respectively.
\begin{verbatim}
\cs_set:Npn \use_none_delimit_by_q_nil:w #1 \q_nil { }
\cs_set:Npn \use_none_delimit_by_q_stop:w #1 \q_stop { }
\cs_set:Npn \use_none_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:w #1 \q_recursion_stop { }
\end{verbatim}
(End definition for \texttt{\use_none_delimit_by_q_nil:w}, \texttt{\use_none_delimit_by_q_stop:w}, and \texttt{\use_none_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:w}. These functions are documented on page 25.)
Same as above but execute first argument after gobbling. Very useful when you need to skip the rest of a mapping sequence but want an easy way to control what should be expanded next.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_set:Npn \use_i_delimit_by_q_nil:nw #1#2 \q_nil {#1}
\cs_set:Npn \use_i_delimit_by_q_stop:nw #1#2 \q_stop {#1}
\cs_set:Npn \use_i_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:nw #1#2 \q_recursion_stop {#1}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \use_i_delimit_by_q_nil:nw, \use_i_delimit_by_q_stop:nw, and \use_i_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:nw. These functions are documented on page 25.)

41.5 Gobbling tokens from input

To gobble tokens from the input we use a standard naming convention: the number of tokens gobbled is given by the number of n's following the ; in the name. Although we could define functions to remove ten arguments or more using separate calls of \use_none:nnnnnnnnn, this is very non-intuitive to the programmer who will assume that expanding such a function once takes care of gobbling all the tokens in one go.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_set:Npn \use_none:n #1 { }
\cs_set:Npn \use_none:nn #1#2 { }
\cs_set:Npn \use_none:nnn #1#2#3 { }
\cs_set:Npn \use_none:nnnn #1#2#3#4 { }
\cs_set:Npn \use_none:nnnnn #1#2#3#4#5 { }
\cs_set:Npn \use_none:nnnnnn #1#2#3#4#5#6 { }
\cs_set:Npn \use_none:nnnnnnn #1#2#3#4#5#6#7 { }
\cs_set:Npn \use_none:nnnnnnnn #1#2#3#4#5#6#7#8 { }
\cs_set:Npn \use_none:nnnnnnnnn #1#2#3#4#5#6#7#8#9 { }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \use_none:n and others. These functions are documented on page 25.)

41.6 Debugging and patching later definitions

\begin{verbatim}
\__kernel_if_debug:TF
\end{verbatim}

A more meaningful test of whether debugging is enabled than messing up with guards. We can also more easily change the logic in one place then. This is needed primarily for deprecations.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__kernel_if_debug:TF #1#2 {#2}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__kernel_if_debug:TF.)

\begin{verbatim}
\debug_on:n
\debug_off:n
\end{verbatim}

Stubs.
Some commands were more recently deprecated and not yet removed; only make these into errors if the user requests it. This relies on two token lists, filled up in l3deprecation.

\prg_return_true:
\prg_return_false:

The idea here is that \verb!\exp:w! expands fully any \verb!\else!: and \verb!\fi!: that are waiting to be discarded, before reaching the \verb!\exp_end!: which leaves an empty expansion. The code can then leave either the first or second argument in the input stream. This means that all of the branching code has to contain at least two tokens: see how the logical tests are actually implemented to see this.

41.7 Conditional processing and definitions

Underneath any predicate function (\_p) or other conditional forms (TF, etc.) is a built-in logic saying that it after all of the testing and processing must return the \langle state\rangle this leaves \TeX{} in. Therefore, a simple user interface could be something like

\verb!\if_meaning:w #1#2 \prg_return_true: \else: \if_meaning:w #1#3 \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi: \fi:!

Usually, a \TeX{} programmer would have to insert a number of \verb!\exp_after:wN!s to ensure the state value is returned at exactly the point where the last conditional is finished. However, that obscures the code and forces the \TeX{} programmer to prove that he/she knows the $2^n - 1$ table. We therefore provide the simpler interface.

\verb!\exp:w! expands fully any \verb!\else!: and \verb!\fi!: that are waiting to be discarded, before reaching the \verb!\exp_end!: which leaves an empty expansion. The code can then leave either the first or second argument in the input stream. This means that all of the branching code has to contain at least two tokens: see how the logical tests are actually implemented to see this.
An extended state space could be implemented by including a more elaborate function in place of \texttt{use\_i:nn}/\texttt{use\_ii:nn}. Provided two arguments are absorbed then the code would work.

(End definition for \texttt{prg\_return\_true} and \texttt{prg\_return\_false}: These functions are documented on page 64.)

Private version of \texttt{use\_none\_delimit\_by\_q\_recursion\_stop:w}.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_set:Npn \__prg_use_none_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:w #1 \q__prg_recursion_stop { }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \_\_\texttt{prg\_use\_none\_delimit\_by\_q\_recursion\_stop:w}.)

The user functions for the types using parameter text from the programmer. The various functions only differ by which function is used for the assignment. For those \texttt{Npnn} type functions, we must grab the parameter text, reading everything up to a left brace before continuing. Then split the base function into name and signature, and feed \{\langle\text{name}\rangle\} \{\langle\text{signature}\rangle\} \{\langle\text{boolean}\rangle\} \{\langle\text{set or new}\rangle\} \{\langle\text{maybe protected}\rangle\} \{\langle\text{parameters}\rangle\} \{\text{TF,...}\} \{\langle\text{code}\rangle\} to the auxiliary function responsible for defining all conditionals. Note that \texttt{e} stands for expandable and \texttt{p} for protected.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_set_protected:Npn \prg_set_conditional:Npnn { \__prg_generate_conditional_parm:NNNpnn \cs_set:Npn e }
\cs_set_protected:Npn \prg_new_conditional:Npnn { \__prg_generate_conditional_parm:NNNpnn \cs_new:Npn e }
\cs_set_protected:Npn \prg_set_protected_conditional:Npnn { \__prg_generate_conditional_parm:NNNpnn \cs_set_protected:Npn p }
\cs_set_protected:Npn \prg_new_protected_conditional:Npnn { \__prg_generate_conditional_parm:NNNpnn \cs_new_protected:Npn p }
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__prg_generate_conditional_count:NNNnn
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__prg_generate_conditional_count:nnNNNnn
\end{verbatim}

The user functions for the types automatically inserting the correct parameter text based on the signature. The various functions only differ by which function is used for the assignment. Split the base function into name and signature. The second auxiliary generates the parameter text from the number of letters in the signature. Then feed \{\langle\text{name}\rangle\} \{\langle\text{signature}\rangle\} \{\langle\text{boolean}\rangle\} \{\langle\text{set or new}\rangle\} \{\langle\text{maybe protected}\rangle\} \{\langle\text{parameters}\rangle\} \{\text{TF,...}\} \{\langle\text{code}\rangle\} to the auxiliary function responsible for defining all conditionals. If the \langle\text{signature}\rangle has more than 9 letters, the definition is aborted since \TeX{} macros have at most 9 arguments. The erroneous case where the function name contains no colon is captured later.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_set_protected:Npn \prg_set_conditional:Nnn { \__prg_generate_conditional_parm:NNNnn }
\cs_set_protected:Npn \prg_new_conditional:Nnn { \__prg_generate_conditional_parm:NNNnn }
\cs_set_protected:Npn \prg_set_protected_conditional:Nnn { \__prg_generate_conditional_parm:NNNnn }
\cs_set_protected:Npn \prg_new_protected_conditional:Nnn { \__prg_generate_conditional_parm:NNNnn }
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__prg_generate_conditional_count:NNNnn
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__prg_generate_conditional_count:nnNNNnn
\end{verbatim}
\cs_set_protected:Npn \prg_set_protected_conditional:Nnn
{ \__prg_generate_conditional_count:NNNnn \cs_set_protected:Npn p }

\cs_set_protected:Npn \prg_new_protected_conditional:Nnn
{ \__prg_generate_conditional_count:NNNnn \cs_new_protected:Npn p }

\cs_set_protected:Npn \__prg_generate_conditional_count:NNNnn #1#2#3
{ \use:x
  { \__prg_generate_conditional_count:nnNNNnn
    \cs_split_function:N #3
  }
  #1 #2
}

\cs_set_protected:Npn \__prg_generate_conditional_count:nnNNNnn #1#2#3#4#5
{ \__kernel_cs_parm_from_arg_count:nnF
  { \__prg_generate_conditional:nnNNNnnn {#1} {#2} #3 #4 #5 }
  { \tl_count:n {#2} }
  { \msg_error:nnx { kernel } { bad-number-of-arguments }
    \{ \token_to_str:c { #1 : #2 } \}
    { \tl_count:n {#2} }
    \use_none:nn
  }
}

The workhorse here is going through a list of desired forms, \textit{i.e.}, \( p \), \( TF \), \( T \) and \( F \). The first three arguments come from splitting up the base form of the conditional, which gives the name, signature and a boolean to signal whether or not there was a colon in the name. In the absence of a colon, we throw an error and don’t define any conditional. The fourth and fifth arguments build up the defining function. The sixth is the parameters to use (possibly empty), the seventh is the list of forms to define, the eighth is the replacement text which we will augment when defining the forms. The use of \( \tl_to_str:n \) makes the later loop more robust.

A large number of our low-level conditionals look like \( \langle \text{code} \rangle \prg_return_true: \) \else: \prg_return_false: \fi: so we optimize this special case by calling \( \__prg_generate_conditional_fast:nw \{\langle \text{code} \rangle \}. This passes \use_i:nn instead of \use_i_i:nnn to functions such as \( \__prg_generate_p_form:wNNnnNNn \).

\cs_set_protected:Npn \__prg_generate_conditional:nnNNNnnn #1#2#3#4#5#6#7#8
{ \if_meaning:w \c_false_bool #3
  \msg_error:nxx { kernel } { missing-colon }
  \{ \token_to_str:c { #1 } \}
  \\exp_after:wN \use_none:nn
  \fi:
  \\exp_not:N \__prg_generate_conditional:NNnnnn #1#2#3#4#5#6#7#8
  \\exp_not:n { #4 #5 {#1} {#2} {#6} }
  \__prg_generate_conditional_test:w
}
The code snippet provided is a fragment of LaTeX code. It seems to be part of a larger document discussing LaTeX commands and their implementation. The code is related to conditional logic in LaTeX, possibly for generating macros or conditional statements. The snippet includes macros and conditional logic constructs, which are used to create various forms of conditionals in LaTeX documents.

The snippet includes the following key points:

1. **Conditional Logic Functions**: The code snippet defines functions for generating different types of conditionals, such as T, F, TF, Tp, and Fp forms. These functions take arguments that include the condition name, signature, parameter text, and replacement text.

2. **Conditional Test Functions**: There are separate functions for generating conditional tests, such as `\__prg_generate_conditional_test:w`. These functions are called with the desired form and other arguments.

3. **Error Handling**: The code includes error handling for cases where a form is not known or does not exist. The `\msg_error:nnxx` command is used to display an error message.

4. **Conditional Logic Construction**: The code snippet shows how the conditional logic is constructed using `\cs_set:Npn`, `\exp_not:n`, and other LaTeX commands.

5. **Error Cleanup**: After generating the conditional, the code uses `\use:none:nnnnnnn` to clean up any error messages that might have been displayed.

6. **Optimization Tips**: The code snippet includes tips on optimizing the conditional logic, such as avoiding the use of `\exp_after:wN` and instead using macros like `\__prg_TF_true:w` to swap out macros.

The full context and documentation of these commands would be in a larger section or in the LaTeX documentation itself. The snippet is part of a larger discussion on how to generate various conditional forms in LaTeX, which is crucial for creating dynamic and flexible documents.
The setting-equal functions. Split both functions and feed \{⟨name1⟩\} \{⟨signature1⟩\} ⟨boolean1⟩ \{⟨name2⟩\} \{⟨signature2⟩\} ⟨boolean2⟩ ⟨copying function⟩ ⟨conditions⟩ , \q__-prg_recursion_tail , \q__prg_recursion_stop to a first auxiliary.
\seteqconditional \cs_set_eq:cc
\seteqconditional \cs_set_protected:Npn \prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn
\seteqconditional \cs_set_protected:Npn \__prg_set_eq_conditional:NNNn #1#2#3#4
\seteqconditional \use:x \exp_not:N \__prg_set_eq_conditional:nnNnnNNw
\split_function:N #2 \split_function:N #3 \exp_not:N #1
\tl_to_str:n {#4} \exp_not:n { , \q__prg_recursion_tail , \q__prg_recursion_stop }
\end definition for \prg_set_eq_conditional:NNn, \prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn, and \__prg_set_eq_conditional:NNNn. These functions are documented on page 64.)

Split the function to be defined, and setup a manual clist loop over argument #6 of the first auxiliary. The second auxiliary receives twice three arguments coming from splitting the function to be defined and the function to copy. Make sure that both functions contained a colon, otherwise we don’t know how to build conditionals, hence abort. Call the looping macro, with arguments \{(name)\} \{(signature)\} \{(name)\} \{(signature)\} \{copying function\} and followed by the comma list. At each step in the loop, make sure that the conditional form we copy is defined, and copy it, otherwise abort.

\cs_set_protected:Npn \__prg_set_eq_conditional_loop:nnnnNw #1#2#3#4#5#6 , \cs_set_protected:w \__prg_set_eq_conditional_loop:nnnnNw \__prg_set_eq_conditional_loop:nnnnNw \__prg_set_eq_conditional_loop:nnnnNw \__prg_set_eq_conditional_loop:nnnnNw \__prg_set_eq_conditional_loop:nnnnNw \__prg_set_eq_conditional_loop:nnnnNw

(361)
### 41.8 Dissecting a control sequence

\( \langle \texttt{cs} \rangle \)

\_{\text{cs}}\text{-}\text{count}\_\text{signature}:\text{N} \quad \_{\text{cs}}\text{-}\text{get}\_\text{function}\_\text{name}:\text{N} \quad \_{\text{cs}}\text{-}\text{get}\_\text{function}\_\text{signature}:\text{N} \quad \_{\text{cs}}\text{-}\text{tmp}:\text{w}

Splits the \( \langle \text{function} \rangle \) into the \( \langle \text{name} \rangle \) \((i.e.\) the part before the colon\) and the \( \langle \text{signature} \rangle \) \((i.e.\) after the colon\). The \( \langle \text{number} \rangle \) of tokens in the \( \langle \text{signature} \rangle \) is then left in the input stream. If there was no \( \langle \text{signature} \rangle \) then the result is the marker value \(-1\).

\_{\text{cs}}\text{-}\text{get}\_\text{function}\_\text{signature}:\text{N} \quad \_{\text{cs}}\text{-}\text{tmp}:\text{w}

Splits the \( \langle \text{function} \rangle \) into the \( \langle \text{name} \rangle \) \((i.e.\) the part before the colon\) and the \( \langle \text{signature} \rangle \) \((i.e.\) after the colon\). The \( \langle \text{name} \rangle \) is then left in the input stream without the escape character present made up of tokens with category code 12 (other).

\_{\text{cs}}\text{-}\text{tmp}:\text{w}

Function used for various short-term usages, for instance defining functions whose definition involves tokens which are hard to insert normally (spaces, characters with category other).
This converts a control sequence into the character string of its name, removing the leading escape character. This turns out to be a non-trivial matter as there are different cases:

- The usual case of a printable escape character;
- the case of a non-printable escape characters, e.g., when the value of the \escapechar is negative;
- when the escape character is a space.

One approach to solve this is to test how many tokens result from \token_to_str:N \textbackslash a. If there are two tokens, then the escape character is printable, while if it is non-printable then only one is present.

However, there is an additional complication: the control sequence itself may start with a space. Clearly that should not be lost in the process of converting to a string. So the approach adopted is a little more intricate still. When the escape character is printable, \token_to_str:N \textbackslash a yields the escape character itself and a space. The character codes are different, thus the \if:w test is false, and \TeX reads \__cs_to_str:N \textbackslash a after turning the following control sequence into a string; this auxiliary removes the escape character, and stops the expansion of the initial \text_romannumeral:D. The second case is that the escape character is not printable. Then the \if:w test is unfinished after reading a the space from \token_to_str:N \textbackslash a, and the auxiliary \__cs_to_str:w is expanded, feeding - as a second character for the test; the test is false, and \TeX skips to \fi:, then performs \token_to_str:N \textbackslash a, and stops the \text_romannumeral:D with \c_zero_int. The last case is that the escape character is itself a space. In this case, the \if:w test is true, and the auxiliary \__cs_to_str:w comes into play, inserting -\int_value:w, which expands \c_zero_int to the character 0. The initial \text_romannumeral:D then sees 0, which is not a terminated number, followed by the escape character, a space, which is removed, terminating the expansion of \text_romannumeral:D. In all three cases, \cs_to_str:N takes two expansion steps to be fully expanded.

We implement the expansion scheme using \text_romannumeral:D terminating it with \c_zero_int rather than using \exp:w and \exp_end: as we normally do. The reason is that the code heavily depends on terminating the expansion with \c_zero_int so we make this dependency explicit.

If speed is a concern we could use \csstring in Lua\TeX. For the empty csname that primitive gives an empty result while the current \cs_to_str:N gives incorrect results in all engines (this is impossible to fix without huge performance hit).

(End definition for \cs_to_str:N, \__cs_to_str:N, and \__cs_to_str:w. This function is documented on page 21.)
This function takes a function name and splits it into name with the escape char removed and argument specification. In addition to this, a third argument, a boolean \texttt{⟨true⟩} or \texttt{⟨false⟩} is returned with \texttt{⟨true⟩} for when there is a colon in the function and \texttt{⟨false⟩} if there is not.

We cannot use \texttt{⟨:⟩} directly as it has the wrong category code so an \texttt{x}-type expansion is used to force the conversion.

First ensure that we actually get a properly evaluated string by expanding \texttt{\cs_to_str:N} twice. If the function contained a colon, the auxiliary takes as \texttt{#1} the function name, delimited by the first colon, then the signature \texttt{#2}, delimited by \texttt{\s__cs_mark}, then \texttt{\c_true_bool} as \texttt{#3}, and \texttt{#4} cleans up until \texttt{\s__cs_stop}. Otherwise, the \texttt{#1} contains the function name and \texttt{\s__cs_mark \c_true_bool}, \texttt{#2} is empty, \texttt{#3} is \texttt{\c_false_bool}, and \texttt{#4} cleans up. The second auxiliary trims the trailing \texttt{\s__cs_mark} from the function name if present (that is, if the original function had no colon).

\begin{verbatim}
\exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \__cs_split_function_auxi:w \cs_to_str:N ##1 \s__cs_mark \c_true_bool \#1 \s__cs_mark \c_false_bool \s__cs_stop
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\exp_after:wN \__cs_split_function_auxii:w \cs_to_str:N \s__cs_mark \c_true_bool \#1 \s__cs_mark \c_false_bool \s__cs_stop
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\exp_after:wN \__cs_split_function_\_auxii:w \cs_to_str:N \s__cs_mark \c_true_bool \#1 \s__cs_mark \c_false_bool \s__cs_stop
\end{verbatim}

41.9 \textbf{Exist or free}

A control sequence is said to \textit{exist} (to be used) if has an entry in the hash table and its meaning is different from the primitive \texttt{\relax} token. A control sequence is said to be \textit{free} (to be defined) if it does not already exist.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_if_exist_p:N \cs_if_exist_p:c \cs_if_exist:N \cs_if_exist:c\_TF \cs_if_exist_p\_\_TF
\end{verbatim}

Two versions for checking existence. For the \texttt{\_\_TF} form we firstly check for \texttt{\scan_stop:} and then if it is in the hash table. There is no problem when inputting something like \texttt{\else:} or \texttt{\fi:} as \texttt{\ifX} will only ever skip input in case the token tested against is \texttt{\scan_stop:}.

\begin{verbatim}
\prg_set_conditional:Npnn \cs_if_exist:N #1 { p , T , F , TF }
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\if_meaning:w #1 \scan_stop: \prg_return_false: \else: \if\cs_exist:N #1 \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi:
\end{verbatim}
For the `c` form we firstly check if it is in the hash table and then for \texttt{scan\_stop}: so that we do not add it to the hash table unless it was already there. Here we have to be careful as the text to be skipped if the first test is false may contain tokens that disturb the scanner. Therefore, we ensure that the second test is performed after the first one has concluded completely.

\begin{verbatim}
\prg_set_conditional:Npnn \cs_if_exist:c #1 { p , T , F , TF } 
\{
  \if_cs_exist:w #1 \cs_end:
  \exp_after:wN \use_i:nn
  \else:
  \exp_after:wN \use_ii:nn
  \fi:
  \exp_after:wN \if_meaning:w \cs:w #1 \cs_end: \scan_stop:
  \prg_return_false:
  \else:
    \prg_return_true:
  \fi:
  \prg_return_false:
\}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\cs_if_exist:NTF}. This function is documented on page 27.)

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_if_free_p:N \cs_if_free_p:c \cs_if_free:N \cs_if_free:cTF
\prg_set_conditional:Npnn \cs_if_exist:c #1 { p , T , F , TF } 
\{
  \if_meaning:w #1 \scan_stop:
  \prg_return_true:
  \else:
    \if_cs_exist:N #1
    \prg_return_false:
  \else:
    \prg_return_true:
  \fi:
  \if:
  \fi:
  \prg_set_conditional:Npnn \cs_if_free:c #1 { p , T , F , TF } 
  \{
    \if_cs_exist:w #1 \cs_end:
    \exp_after:wN \use_i:nn
    \else:
      \exp_after:wN \use_ii:nn
      \fi:
      \exp_after:wN \if_meaning:w \cs:w #1 \cs_end: \scan_stop:
      \prg_return_true:
      \else:
        \prg_return_false:
      \fi:
  }
\end{verbatim}

The logical reversal of the above.
41.10 Preliminaries for new functions

We provide two kinds of functions that can be used to define control sequences. On the one hand we have functions that check if their argument doesn’t already exist, they are called \..._new. The second type of defining functions doesn’t check if the argument is already defined.

Before we can define them, we need some auxiliary macros that allow us to generate error messages. The next few definitions here are only temporary, they will be redefined later on.

If an internal error occurs before \LaTeX{} has loaded \l3msg{} then the code should issue a usable if terse error message and halt. This can only happen if a coding error is made by the team, so this is a reasonable response. Setting the \newlinechar{} is needed, to turn \^J{} into a proper line break in plain \TeX{}.

```
\cs_set_protected:Npn \msg_error:nnnx #1#2#3#4
  \{
    \tex_newlinechar:D = \'\^^J \scan_stop:
    \tex_errmessage:D
  \}
```

(End definition for \cs_if_exist_use:NTF. This function is documented on page 21.)
1871 \tex_end:D
1872 }
1873 \}
1874 \cs_set_protected:Npn \msg_error:nxx \#1\#2\#3
1875 { \msg_error:nxxx \{\#1\} \{\#2\} \{\#3\} \{\} }
1876 \cs_set_protected:Npn \msg_error:nn \#1\#2
1877 { \msg_error:nnxx \{\#1\} \{\#2\} \{\} }

(End definition for \msg_error:nxxx, \msg_error:nxx, and \msg_error:nn. These functions are documented on page 77.)

\msg_line_context: Another one from l3msg which will be altered later.
1875 \cs_set:Npn \msg_line_context:
1876 { on-line- \tex_the:D \tex_inputlineno:D }

(End definition for \msg_line_context:. This function is documented on page 78.)

\iow_log:x \iow_term:x We define a routine to write only to the log file. And a similar one for writing to both
the log file and the terminal. These will be redefined later by l3io.
1880 \cs_set_protected:Npn \iow_log:x
1881 { \tex_immediate:D \tex_write:D -1 }
1882 \cs_set_protected:Npn \iow_term:x
1883 { \tex_immediate:D \tex_write:D 16 }

(End definition for \iow_log:x. This function is documented on page 90.)

\_kernel_chk_if_free_cs:N \_kernel_chk_if_free_cs:c This command is called by \cs_new_nopar:Npn and \cs_new_eq:NN etc. to make sure
that the argument sequence is not already in use. If it is, an error is signalled. It checks
if ⟨csname⟩ is undefined or \scan_stop:. Otherwise an error message is issued. We have
to make sure we don’t put the argument into the conditional processing since it may be
an if... type function!
1884 \cs_set_protected:Npn \_kernel.chk_if_free_cs:N \#1
1885 {
1886 \cs_if_free:NF \#1
1887 { \msg_error:nxx \{ kernel \} \{ command-already-defined \}
1888 { \token_to_str:N \#1 \} \{ \token_to_meaning:N \#1 \}
1890 }
1891 }
1892 \cs_set_protected:Npn \_kernel.chk_if_free_cs:c
1893 { \exp_args:Nc \_kernel.chk_if_free_cs:N }

(End definition for \_kernel_chk_if_free_cs:N)

41.11 Defining new functions

\cs_new_nopar:Npn \cs_new_nopar:Npx \cs_new:Npn \cs_new:Npx \cs_new_protected_nopar:Npn \cs_new_protected_nopar:Npx \cs_new_protected:Npn \cs_new_protected:Npx \_cs_tmp:w Function which check that the control sequence is free before defining it.
1894 \cs_set:Npn \_cs_tmp:w \#1\#2
1895 { \cs_set_protected:Npn \#1 \#1
1896 { \_kernel.chk_if_free_cs:N \#1
1897 \_kernel.chk_if_free_cs:c \#1
367
The functions provided are as follows:

- \cs_set_nopar:cpn \cs_set_nopar:cpx \cs_gset_nopar:cpn \cs_gset_nopar:cpx \cs_new_nopar:cpn \cs_new_nopar:cpx

Like \cs_set_nopar:Npn and \cs_new_nopar:Npn, except that the first argument consists of the sequence of characters that should be used to form the name of the desired control sequence (the \textit{c} stands for \textit{csname} argument, see the expansion module). Global versions are also provided.


Variants of the \cs_set_protected_nopar:Npn versions which make a \textit{csname} out of the first arguments. We may also do this globally.

(End definition for \cs_new_nopar:Npn and others. These functions are documented on page 15.)

- \cs_set_nopar:cpn \cs_set_nopar:Npn \cs_set_nopar:cpx \cs_set_nopar:Npx \cs_gset_nopar:cpn \cs_gset_nopar:Npn \cs_gset_nopar:cpx \cs_gset_nopar:Npx \cs_new_nopar:cpn \cs_new_nopar:Npn \cs_new_nopar:cpx \cs_new_nopar:Npx

Variants of the \cs_new_nopar:Npn versions which make a \textit{csname} out of the first arguments. We may also do this globally.

(End definition for \cs_set_nopar:Npn. This function is documented on page 16.)

- \cs_set:cpn \cs_set:cppx \cs_gset:cppn \cs_gset:cppx \cs_new:cppn \cs_new:cppx

Variants of the \cs_set:Npn versions which make a \textit{csname} out of the first arguments. We may also do this globally.

(End definition for \cs_set:Npn. This function is documented on page 16.)

- \cs_set_protected_nopar:cppn \cs_set_protected_nopar:cppx \cs_gset_protected_nopar:cppn \cs_gset_protected_nopar:cppx \cs_new_protected_nopar:cppn \cs_new_protected_nopar:cppx

Variants of the \cs_set_protected_nopar:Npn versions which make a \textit{csname} out of the first arguments. We may also do this globally.

(End definition for \cs_set_protected_nopar:Npn. This function is documented on page 16.)
Variants of the \cs_set_protected:Npn versions which make a csname out of the first arguments. We may also do this globally.

\__cs_tmp:w \cs_set_protected:cpn \cs_set_protected:Npn
\__cs_tmp:w \cs_set_protected:cpx \cs_set_protected:Npx
\__cs_tmp:w \cs_gset_protected:cpn \cs_gset_protected:Npn
\__cs_tmp:w \cs_gset_protected:cpx \cs_gset_protected:Npx
\__cs_tmp:w \cs_new_protected:cpn \cs_new_protected:Npn
\__cs_tmp:w \cs_new_protected:cpx \cs_new_protected:Npx

(End definition for \cs_set_protected:Npn. This function is documented on page 16.)

41.12 Copying definitions

\cs_set_eq:NN \cs_set_eq:cN \cs_set_eq:Nc \cs_set_eq:cc
\cs_gset_eq:NN \cs_gset_eq:cN \cs_gset_eq:Nc \cs_gset_eq:cc
\cs_new_eq:NN \cs_new_eq:cN \cs_new_eq:Nc \cs_new_eq:cc

These macros allow us to copy the definition of a control sequence to another control sequence. The = sign allows us to define funny char tokens like = itself or \ with this function. For the definition of \c_space_char{~} to work we need the ~ after the =. \cs_set_eq:NN is long to avoid problems with a literal argument of \par. While \cs_new_eq:NN will probably never be correct with a first argument of \par, define it long in order to throw an “already defined” error rather than “runaway argument”.

41.13 Undefining functions

\cs_undefine:N \cs_undefine:c

The following function is used to free the main memory from the definition of some function that isn’t in use any longer. The c variant is careful not to add the control sequence to the hash table if it isn’t there yet, and it also avoids nesting \TeX conditionals in case #1 is unbalanced in this matter.

(End definition for \cs_set_eq:NN, \cs_gset_eq:NN, and \cs_new_eq:NN. These functions are documented on page 19.)
41.14 Generating parameter text from argument count

\__kernel_cs_parm_from_arg_count:nF \__cs_parm_from_arg_count_test:nF

\LaTeX{} provides shorthands to define control sequences and conditionals with a simple parameter text, derived directly from the signature, or more generally from knowing the number of arguments, between 0 and 9. This function expands to its first argument, untouched, followed by a brace group containing the parameter text \{#1\ldots#n\}, where n is the result of evaluating the second argument (as described in \texttt{\int_eval:n}). If the second argument gives a result outside the range \[0,9\], the third argument is returned instead, normally an error message. Some of the functions use here are not defined yet, but will be defined before this function is called.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__kernel_cs_parm_from_arg_count:nF #1#2
\{ \exp_args:Nx \__cs_parm_from_arg_count_test:nF
\exp_after:wN \exp_not:n \if_case:w \int_eval:n {#2} { } \or: { ##1 } \or: { ##1##2 } \or: { ##1##2##3 } \or: { ##1##2##3##4 } \or: { ##1##2##3##4##5 } \or: { ##1##2##3##4##5##6 } \or: { ##1##2##3##4##5##6##7 } \or: { ##1##2##3##4##5##6##7##8 } \or: { ##1##2##3##4##5##6##7##8##9 } \else: { \c_false_bool } \fi:
\} {#1}
\}
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__cs_parm_from_arg_count_test:nF #1#2
\{ \if_meaning:w \c_false_bool #1 \exp_after:wN \use_ii:nn \else: \exp_after:wN \use_i:nn \fi:
\} { #2 {#1} }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\cs_undefine:N}. This function is documented on page 20.)
41.15 Defining functions from a given number of arguments

Counting the number of tokens in the signature, \( i.e. \), the number of arguments the function should take. Since this is not used in any time-critical function, we simply use \texttt{tl_count:n} if there is a signature, otherwise \(-1\) arguments to signal an error. We need a variant form right away.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__cs_count_signature:N #1 { \exp_args:Nf \__cs_count_signature:n { \cs_split_function:N #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__cs_count_signature:n #1 { \int_eval:n { \__cs_count_signature:nnN #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__cs_count_signature:nnN #1#2#3 {
\if_meaning:w \c_true_bool #3 \tl_count:n {#2} \else: -1 \fi: }
\cs_new:Npn \__cs_count_signature:c { \exp_args:Nc \__cs_count_signature:N }
\end{verbatim}

We provide a constructor function for defining functions with a given number of arguments. For this we need to choose the correct parameter text and then use that when defining. Since \texttt{TeX} supports from zero to nine arguments, we use a simple switch to choose the correct parameter text, ensuring the result is returned after finishing the conditional. If it is not between zero and nine, we throw an error.

1: function to define, 2: with what to define it, 3: the number of args it requires and 4: the replacement text

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \cs_generate_from_arg_count:NNnn #1#2#3#4 {
\__kernel_cs_parm_from_arg_count:nnF { \use:nnn #2 #1 } {#3}
\msg_error:nnxx { kernel } { bad-number-of-arguments } { \token_to_str:N #1 } { \int_eval:n {#3} }
\use_none:n
}
\end{verbatim}

A variant form we need right away, plus one which is used elsewhere but which is most logically created here.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \cs_generate_from_arg_count:cNnn {
\exp_args:Nc \cs_generate_from_arg_count:NNnn }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \cs_generate_from_arg_count:Ncnn {
\exp_args:NNc \cs_generate_from_arg_count:NNnn }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\_cs_count_signature:N}, \texttt{\_cs_count_signature:n}, and \texttt{\_cs_count_signature:nnN}.)
41.16 Using the signature to define functions

We can now combine some of the tools we have to provide a simple interface for defining functions, where the number of arguments is read from the signature. For instance, \texttt{\cs_set:Nn \foo_bar:nn {#1,#2}}.

We want to define \texttt{\cs_set:Nn} as

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_set:Nn \cs_set:Nx \cs_set_protected:Nn \cs_set_protected:Nx \cs_set_protected_nopar:Nn \cs_set_protected_nopar:Nx \cs_gset:Nn \cs_gset:Nx \cs_gset_nopar:Nn \cs_gset_nopar:Nx \cs_gset_protected:Nn \cs_gset_protected:Nx \cs_gset_protected_nopar:Nn \cs_gset_protected_nopar:Nx
\end{verbatim}

We want to define \texttt{\cs_set:Nn} as

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_set_protected:Npn \cs_set:Nn #1#2
{ \cs_generate_from_arg_count:NNnn #1 \cs_set:Npn { \@@_count_signature:N #1 } {#2} }
\end{verbatim}

In short, to define \texttt{\cs_set:Nn} we need just use \texttt{\cs_set:Npn}, everything else is the same for each variant. Therefore, we can make it simpler by temporarily defining a function to do this for us.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_set:Npn \__cs_tmp:w #1#2#3
{ \cs_new_protected:cpx { cs_ #1 : #2 } \exp_not:N \__cs_generate_from_signature:NNn \exp_after:wN \exp_not:N \cs:w cs_ #1 : #3 \cs_end: }
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__cs_generate_from_signature:NNn #1#2
{ \use:x { \__cs_generate_from_signature:nnNNNn \cs_split_function:N #2 } #1 #2 }
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__cs_generate_from_signature:nnNNNn #1#2#3#4#5#6
{ \bool_if:NTF #3
  { \cs_set_nopar:Npx \__cs_tmp:w \tl_map_function:nN {#2} \__cs_generate_from_signature:n }
  \tl_if_empty:oF \__cs_tmp:w
   { \msg_error:nnxxx { kernel } { non-base-function } { #3 } \__cs_tmp:w }
  \cs_generate_from_arg_count:NNnn #5 #4 \tl_count:n {#2} \__cs_tmp:w }
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_set_nopar:Nx \__cs_tmp:w \tl_map_function:nN {#2} \__cs_generate_from_signature:n
\tl_if_empty:oF \__cs_tmp:w
   { \msg_error:nnxx { kernel } { missing-colon } { \token_to_str:N #5 } \__cs_tmp:w }
\end{verbatim}

372
Then we define the 24 variants beginning with \texttt{N}.

\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ set \} \{ Nn \} \{ Npn \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ set \} \{ Nx \} \{ Npx \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ set\_nopar \} \{ Nn \} \{ Npn \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ set\_nopar \} \{ Nx \} \{ Npx \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ set\_protected \} \{ Nn \} \{ Npn \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ set\_protected \} \{ Nx \} \{ Npx \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ set\_protected\_nopar \} \{ Nn \} \{ Npn \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ set\_protected\_nopar \} \{ Nx \} \{ Npx \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ gset \} \{ Nn \} \{ Npn \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ gset \} \{ Nx \} \{ Npx \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ gset\_nopar \} \{ Nn \} \{ Npn \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ gset\_nopar \} \{ Nx \} \{ Npx \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ gset\_protected \} \{ Nn \} \{ Npn \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ gset\_protected \} \{ Nx \} \{ Npx \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ gset\_protected\_nopar \} \{ Nn \} \{ Npn \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ gset\_protected\_nopar \} \{ Nx \} \{ Npx \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ new \} \{ Nn \} \{ Npn \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ new \} \{ Nx \} \{ Npx \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ new\_nopar \} \{ Nn \} \{ Npn \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ new\_nopar \} \{ Nx \} \{ Npx \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ new\_protected \} \{ Nn \} \{ Npn \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ new\_protected \} \{ Nx \} \{ Npx \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ new\_protected\_nopar \} \{ Nn \} \{ Npn \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ new\_protected\_nopar \} \{ Nx \} \{ Npx \}}

\textbf{(End definition for \texttt{cs\_set:Nn} and others. These functions are documented on page 17.)}

The 24 \texttt{c} variants simply use \texttt{\exp_args:Nc}.

\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ set \} \{ n \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ set \} \{ x \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ set\_nopar \} \{ n \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ set\_nopar \} \{ x \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ set\_protected \} \{ n \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ set\_protected \} \{ x \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ set\_protected\_nopar \} \{ n \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ set\_protected\_nopar \} \{ x \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ gset \} \{ n \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ gset \} \{ x \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ gset\_nopar \} \{ n \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ gset\_nopar \} \{ x \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ gset\_protected \} \{ n \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ gset\_protected \} \{ x \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ gset\_protected\_nopar \} \{ n \}}
\texttt{\_\_cs_tmp:w \{ gset\_protected\_nopar \} \{ x \}}
41.17 Checking control sequence equality

Check if two control sequences are identical.

\cs_if_eq_p:NN
\cs_if_eq_p:cN
\cs_if_eq_p:cc
\cs_if_eq:NNTF
\cs_if_eq:NcTF
\cs_if_eq:NcT
\cs_if_eq:NcF
\cs_if_eq:p:cc
\cs_if_eq:ccTF
\cs_if_eq:ccT
\cs_if_eq:ccF

(End definition for \cs_set:Nn. This function is documented on page 17.)

41.18 Diagnostic functions

\__kernel_chk_defined:NT

Error if the variable #1 is not defined.

(End definition for \cs_if_eq:NNTF. This function is documented on page 27.)
Simply using the `\showthe` primitive does not allow for line-wrapping, so instead use `\tl_show:N` and `\tl_log:n` (defined in `l3tl` and that performs line-wrapping). This displays `(variable)=(value)`. We expand the value before-hand as otherwise some integers (such as `\currentgrouplevel` or `\currentgrouptype`) altered by the line-wrapping code would show wrong values.

Some control sequences have a very long name or meaning. Thus, simply using \TeX’s primitive `\show` could lead to overlong lines. The output of this primitive is mimicked to some extent, then the re-built string is given to `\tl_show:n` or `\tl_log:n` for line-wrapping. We must expand the meaning before passing it to the wrapping code as otherwise we would wrongly see the definitions that are in place there. To get correct escape characters, set the `\escapechar` in a group; this also localizes the assignment performed by `\x patched`. The `\cs_show:N` and `\cs_log:N` commands convert their argument to a control sequence within a group to avoid showing `\relax` for undefined control sequences.
Wrapper around \texttt{showgroups}. Getting \TeX{} to write to the log without interruption the run is done by altering the interaction mode.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Nn \group_show_list: \use_none:n 1
\cs_new_protected:Nn \group_log_list: \int_zero:N 0
\cs_new_protected:Nn \__kernel_group_show:NN \#1\#2
{
 \use:x
  {
    \int_set:Nn \tex_tracingonline:D {#2}
    \int_set:Nn \tex_errorcontextlines:D { -1 }
    \exp_not:N \exp_after:wN \scan_stop:
    \tex_showgroups:D
    \int_set:Nn \tex_interactionmode:D { \int_use:N \tex_interactionmode:D }
    \int_set:Nn \tex_tracingonline:D { \int_use:N \tex_tracingonline:D }
    \int_set:Nn \tex_errorcontextlines:D { \int_use:N \tex_errorcontextlines:D }
  }
}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{group_show_list:}, \texttt{group_log_list:}, and \texttt{__kernel_group_show:NN}. These functions are documented on page 14.)

\section{Decomposing a macro definition}

We sometimes want to test if a control sequence can be expanded to reveal a hidden value. However, we cannot just expand the macro blindly as it may have arguments and none might be present. Therefore we define these functions to pick either the prefix(es), the argument specification, or the replacement text from a macro. All of this information is returned as characters with catcode 12. If the token in question isn't a macro, the token \texttt{\scan_stop:} is returned instead.

\begin{verbatim}
\use:x
{ \exp_not:n \cs_new:Nn \__kernel_prefix_arg_replacement:wN \#1
  \tl_to_str:n { macro : } \exp_not:n \{} #2 \rfm #3 \s__kernel_stop #4
}
\cs_new:Npn \cs_prefix_spec:N #1
{ \token_if_macro:NTF #1
  { \exp_not:n \{ \cs_new:Nn \__kernel_prefix_arg_replacement:wN \#1
    \tl_to_str:n { macro : } \exp_not:n \{ #2 \rfm #3 \s__kernel_stop #4
  } \rfm #4 \rfm \s__kernel_stop #5
}
\cs_new:Npn \cs_argument_spec:N #1
{ \token_if_macro:NTF #1
  { \exp_not:n \{ \cs_new:Nn \__kernel_prefix_arg_replacement:wN \#1
    \tl_to_str:n { macro : } \exp_not:n \{ #2 \rfm #3 \s__kernel_stop #4
  } \rfm #4 \rfm \s__kernel_stop #5
}
\cs_new:Npn \cs_replacement_spec:N #1
{ \token_if_macro:NTF #1
  { \exp_not:n \{ \cs_new:Nn \__kernel_prefix_arg_replacement:wN \#1
    \tl_to_str:n { macro : } \exp_not:n \{ #2 \rfm #3 \s__kernel_stop #4
  } \rfm #4 \rfm \s__kernel_stop #5
}
\end{verbatim}

376
41.20 Doing nothing functions

\prg_do_nothing: This does not fit anywhere else!
\par

(End definition for \cs_prefix_spec:N and others. These functions are documented on page 22.)

41.21 Breaking out of mapping functions

\prg_break_point:Nn \prg_map_break:Nn

In inline mappings, the nesting level must be reset at the end of the mapping, even when
the user decides to break out. This is done by putting the code that must be performed
as an argument of \__prg_break_point:Nn. The breaking functions are then defined to
jump to that point and perform the argument of \__prg_break_point:Nn, before the
user’s code (if any). There is a check that we close the correct loop, otherwise we continue
breaking.

(End definition for \prg_break_point:Nn and \prg_map_break:Nn. These functions are documented on
page 70.)

\prg_break_point: \prg_break: \prg_break:n

Very simple analogues of \prg_break_point:Nn and \prg_map_break:Nn, for use in fast
short-term recursions which are not mappings, do not need to support nesting, and in
which nothing has to be done at the end of the loop.

(End definition for \prg_break_point:Nn and \prg_map_break:Nn. These functions are documented on
page 70.)
41.22 Starting a paragraph

\mode_leave_vertical: The approach here is different to that used by \TeX{} or plain \TeX{}, which unbox a void box to force horizontal mode. That inserts the \texttt{\everypar} tokens \textit{before} the re-inserted unboxing tokens. The approach here uses either the \texttt{\quitvmode} primitive or the equivalent protected macro. In vertical mode, the \texttt{\indent} primitive is inserted: this will switch to horizontal mode and insert \texttt{\everypar} tokens and nothing else. Unlike the \LaTeX{} version, the availability of \TeX{} means using a mode test can be done at for example the start of an \texttt{\halign}.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \mode_leave_vertical: 
  { 
    \if_mode_vertical: 
      \exp_after:wN \tex_indent:D 
    \fi: 
  }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\mode_leave_vertical}: This function is documented on page 28.)
Chapter 42

\l3expan implementation

The \exp_ module has its private variable to temporarily store the result of x-type argument expansion. This is done to avoid interference with other functions using temporary variables.

(*End definition for \l__exp_internal_tl.*)

These are defined in \l3basics, as they are needed “early”. This is just a reminder of that fact!

(*End definition for \exp_after:wN, \exp_not:N, and \exp_not:n. These functions are documented on page 38.*)

42.1 General expansion

In this section a general mechanism for defining functions that handle arguments is defined. These general expansion functions are expandable unless x is used. (Any version of x is going to have to use one of the \TeX\names for \cs_set:Npx at some point, and so is never going to be expandable.)

The definition of expansion functions with this technique happens in section 42.8. In section 42.2 some common cases are coded by a more direct method for efficiency, typically using calls to \exp_after:wN.

(*End definition for \l__exp_internal_tl.*)

This scratch token list variable is defined in \l3basics.

(*End definition for \l__exp_internal_tl.*)

This code uses internal functions with names that start with \:: to perform the expansions. All macros are long since the tokens undergoing expansion may be arbitrary user input.

An argument manipulator \::(Z) always has signature #1:::#2#3 where #1 holds the remaining argument manipulations to be performed, \::: serves as an end marker for the list of manipulations, #2 is the carried over result of the previous expansion steps and #3 is the argument about to be processed. One exception to this rule is \:::p, which has to grab an argument delimited by a left brace.
\_\_exp_arg_next:nnn

#1 is the result of an expansion step, #2 is the remaining argument manipulations and #3 is the current result of the expansion chain. This auxiliary function moves #1 back after #3 in the input stream and checks if any expansion is left to be done by calling #2. In by far the most cases we need to add a set of braces to the result of an argument manipulation so it is more effective to do it directly here. Actually, so far only the c of the final argument manipulation variants does not require a set of braces.

\cs_new:Npn \__exp_arg_next:nnn { #2 \::: { #3 {#1} } }
\cs_new:Npn \__exp_arg_next:Nnn { #2 \::: { #3 #1 } }

\end{definition}

\:::\ The end marker is just another name for the identity function.
\cs_new:Npn \::: {#1} \end{definition}

\::n

This function is used to skip an argument that doesn’t need to be expanded.
\cs_new:Npn \::n #1 \::: #2#3 { #1 \::: {#2 {#3} } }
\end{definition}

\::N

This function is used to skip an argument that consists of a single token and doesn’t need to be expanded.
\cs_new:Npn \::N #1 \::: #2#3 { #1 \::: {#2#3} }
\end{definition}

\::p

This function is used to skip an argument that is delimited by a left brace and doesn’t need to be expanded. It is not wrapped in braces in the result.
\cs_new:Npn \::p #1 \::: #2#3# { #1 \::: {#2#3} }
\end{definition}

\::c

This function is used to skip an argument that is turned into a control sequence without expansion.
\cs_new:Npn \::c #1 \::: #2#3 \begin{definition}
\{ \exp_after:wN \__exp_arg_next:Nnn \cs:w #3 \cs_end: {#1} {#2} \}
\end{definition}

\::o

This function is used to expand an argument once.
\cs_if_exist:NTF \tex_expanded:D
\begin{definition}
\{ \exp_after:wN \__exp_arg_next:nnn \exp_after:wN {#3} {#1} {#2} \}
\end{definition}
\begin{else}
\begin{definition}
\{ \exp_args:Ne \__exp_arg_next:nnn {#3} {#1} {#2} \}
\end{definition}
\end{else}

\::e

With the \texttt{\expanded} primitive available, just expand. Otherwise defer to \texttt{\exp_args:Ne} implemented later.
\cs_if_exist:NTF \tex_expanded:D
\begin{definition}
\{ \exp_after:wN \__exp_arg_next:nnn \cs:w #3 \cs_end: {#1} {#2} \}
\end{definition}
\begin{else}
\begin{definition}
\{ \exp_args:Ne \__exp_arg_next:nnn {#3} {#1} {#2} \}
\end{definition}
\end{else}
\exp_stop_f: This function is used to expand a token list until the first unexpandable token is found. This is achieved through \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w that expands everything in its way following it. This scanning procedure is terminated once the expansion hits something non-expandable (if that is a space it is removed). We introduce \exp_stop_f: to mark such an end-of-expansion marker. For example, f-expanding \cs_set_eq:Nc \aaa { b \l_tmpa_tl b } where \l_tmpa_tl contains the characters lur gives \tex_let:D \aaa = \blurb which then turns out to start with the non-expandable token \tex_let:D. Since the expansion of \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w is empty, we wind up with a fully expanded list, only \TeX has not tried to execute any of the non-expandable tokens. This is what differentiates this function from the \texttt{x} argument type.

\use:nn { \cs_new_eq:NN \exp_stop_f: } { ~ }

\exp_stop_f: This function is used to expand an argument fully. We build in the expansion of \__exp_arg_next:nnn.

\cs_new:Npn \::v #1 \::: #2#3
{ 
  \exp_after:wN \__exp_arg_next:nnn
  { \exp:w \__exp_eval_register:c {#3} }
  {#1} {#2}
}

\exp_stop_f: This function is used to expand an argument fully. We build in the expansion of \__exp_arg_next:nnn.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \::x #1 \::: #2#3
{ 
  \cs_set_nopar:Npx \l__exp_internal_tl
  { \exp_not:n { #1 \::: } { \exp_not:n {#2} {#3} } }
  \l__exp_internal_tl
}

\exp_stop_f: These functions return the value of a register, i.e., one of \texttt{tl}, \texttt{clist}, \texttt{int}, \texttt{skip}, \texttt{dim}, \texttt{muskip}, or built-in \TeX register. The \texttt{V} version expects a single token whereas \texttt{v} like \texttt{c} creates a csname from its argument given in braces and then evaluates it as if it was a \texttt{V}. The \\exp:w sets off an expansion similar to an \texttt{f}-type expansion, which we terminate using \\exp_end:. The argument is returned in braces.

\cs_new:Npn \::v #1 \::: #2#3
{ 
  \exp_after:wN \__exp_arg_next:nnn
  { \exp:w \__exp_eval_register:c {#3} }
  {#1} {#2}
}

\cs_new:Npn \::V #1 \::: #2#3
{ 
  \exp_after:wN \__exp_arg_next:nnn
  { \exp:w \__exp_eval_register:N #3 }
  {#1} {#2}
}

\exp_stop_f: These functions are documented on page 42.

\exp_stop_f: These functions are documented on page 42.

\exp_stop_f: These functions are documented on page 42.

\exp_stop_f: These functions are documented on page 42.

\exp_stop_f: These functions are documented on page 42.

\exp_stop_f: These functions are documented on page 42.

381
This function evaluates a register. Now a register might exist as one of two things: A parameter-less macro or a built-in \TeX register such as \texttt{\count}. For the \TeX registers we have to utilize a \texttt{\the} whereas for the macros we merely have to expand them once. The trick is to find out when to use \texttt{\the} and when not to. What we want here is to find out whether the token expands to something else when hit with \texttt{\exp_after:wN}. The technique is to compare the meaning of the token in question when it has been prefixed with \texttt{\exp_not:N} and the token itself. If it is a macro, the prefixed \texttt{\exp_not:N} temporarily turns it into the primitive \texttt{\scan_stop:].

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__exp_eval_register:N #1
\exp_after:wN \if_meaning:w \exp_not:N #1 #1
\fi:
\exp_after:wN \exp_end: \tex_the:D #1
\else:
\exp_after:wN \use_i_ii:nnn \exp_end: \tex_the:D #1
\fi:
\end{verbatim}

If the token was not a macro it may be a malformed variable from a \texttt{c} expansion in which case it is equal to the primitive \texttt{\scan_stop:]. In that case we throw an error. We could let \TeX do it for us but that would result in the rather obscure

\texttt{! You can't use 'relax' after \the.}

which while quite true doesn’t give many hints as to what actually went wrong. We provide something more sensible.

\begin{verbatim}
\if_meaning:w \scan_stop: #1
\__exp_eval_error_msg:w
\fi:
\end{verbatim}

The next bit requires some explanation. The function must be initiated by \texttt{\exp:w} and we want to terminate this expansion chain by inserting the \texttt{\exp_end:} token. However, we have to expand the register \#1 before we do that. If it is a \TeX register, we need to expand the sequence \texttt{\exp_after:wN \exp_end: \tex_the:D \#1} and if it is a macro we need to execute \texttt{\exp_after:wN \exp_end: \#1}. We therefore issue the longer of the two sequences and if the register is a macro, we remove the \texttt{\tex_the:D}.

\begin{verbatim}
\else:
\exp_after:wN \use_i_ii:nnn \exp_end: \tex_the:D \#1
\fi:
\end{verbatim}

Clean up nicely, then call the undefined control sequence. The result is an error message looking like this:

\texttt{! Undefined control sequence. \<argument> \LaTeX3 error: \texttt{Erroneous variable used! \[1.55 \tl_set:Nv \l_tmpa_tl \{undefined_tl\]}}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__exp_eval_error_msg:w #1 \tex_the:D \#2
\fi:
\fi:
\msg_expandable_error:nnn \{ \kernel \} \{ bad-variable \} \{\#2\}
\exp_end:
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\__exp_eval_register:N} and \texttt{\__exp_eval_error_msg:w})
42.2 Hand-tuned definitions

One of the most important features of these functions is that they are fully expandable.

\begin{verbatim}
\exp_args:Nc \exp_args:cc
In l3basics.
(End definition for \exp_args:Nc and \exp_args:cc. These functions are documented on page 34.)
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\exp_args:NNc \exp_args:Ncc \exp_args:Nccc
Here are the functions that turn their argument into csnames but are expandable.
2322 \cs_new:Npn \exp_args:NNc #1#2#3 { \exp_after:wN #1 \exp_after:wN #2 \cs:w # 3\cs_end: }
2323 \cs_new:Npn \exp_args:Ncc #1#2#3 { \exp_after:wN #1 \cs:w #2 \exp_after:wN \cs_end: \cs:w #3 \cs_end: }
2324 \cs_new:Npn \exp_args:Nccc #1#2#3#4 { \exp_after:wN #1 \cs:w #2 \exp_after:wN \cs_end: \cs:w #3 \exp_after:wN \cs_end: \cs:w #4 \cs_end: }
(End definition for \exp_args:NNc, \exp_args:Ncc, and \exp_args:Nccc. These functions are documented on page 36.)
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\exp_args:No \exp_args:NNo \exp_args:NNNo
Those lovely runs of expansion!
2333 \cs_new:Npn \exp_args:No #1#2 { \exp_after:wN #1 \exp_after:wN {#2} }
2334 \cs_new:Npn \exp_args:NNo #1#2#3 { \exp_after:wN #1 \exp_after:wN #2 \exp_after:wN {#3} }
2335 \cs_new:Npn \exp_args:NNNo #1#2#3#4 { \exp_after:wN #1 \exp_after:wN #2 \exp_after:wN #3 \exp_after:wN \cs_end: }
(End definition for \exp_args:No, \exp_args:NNo, and \exp_args:NNNo. These functions are documented on page 35.)
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\exp_args:Ne
When the \exped primitive is available, use it. Otherwise use \dosfunc{\texttt{\_\_exp_e:nn}}, defined later, to fully expand tokens.
2338 \cs_if_exist:NTF \tex_expanded:D
2339 { \exp_after:wN #1 \exp_after:wN \dosfunc{\texttt{\_\_exp_e:nn}} {#2} }
2340 \cs_new:Npn \exp_args:Ne #1#2 { \exp_after:wN #1 \tex_expanded:D { {#2} } }
(End definition for \exp_args:Ne. This function is documented on page 35.)
\end{verbatim}
\exp_args:Nf
\exp_args:NV
\exp_args:Nv
\cs_new:Npn \exp_args:Nf #1#2
\cs_new:Npn \exp_args:NV #1#2
\exp_after:wN #1 \exp_after:wN { \exp:w \__exp_eval_register:c {#2} }
\cs_new:Npn \exp_args:Nv #1#2
\exp_after:wN #1 \exp_after:wN { \exp:w \__exp_eval_register:N #2 }

(End definition for \exp_args:Nf, \exp_args:NV, and \exp_args:Nv. These functions are documented on page 35.)

\exp_args:NNV
\exp_args:NNv
\exp_args:NNe
\exp_args:NNe
\exp_args:Ncf
\exp_args:NVV
\cs_if_exist:NTF \tex_expanded:D
\cs_new:Npn \exp_args:NNe #1#2#3
\exp_after:wN #1 \exp_after:wN #2 \exp_after:wN { \exp:w \__exp_eval_register:c {#3} }
\cs_new:Npn \exp_args:NNf #1#2#3
\exp_after:wN #1 \exp_after:wN #2 \exp_after:wN { \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w #3 }
\cs_new:Npn \exp_args:Nco #1#2#3
\exp_after:wN #1 \cs:w #2 \exp_after:wN \cs_end: \exp_after:wN {#3}

Some more hand-tuned function with three arguments. If we forced that an o argument always has braces, we could implement \exp_args:Nco with less tokens and only two arguments.
A few more that we can hand-tune.

\exp_args:NNV
\exp_args:NNv
\exp_args:NcNc
\exp_args:Ncco

(End definition for \exp_args:NNV and others. These functions are documented on page 36.)
42.3 Last-unbraced versions

There are a few places where the last argument needs to be available unbraced. First
some helper macros.

\cs_new:Npn \__exp_arg_last_unbraced:nn #1#2 { #2#1 }
\cs_new:Npn \::o_unbraced \::: #1#2 { \exp_after:wN \__exp_arg_last_unbraced:nn \exp_after:wN {#2} {#1} }
\cs_new:Npn \::V_unbraced \::: #1#2 { \exp_after:wN \__exp_arg_last_unbraced:nn \exp_after:wN { \exp:w \__exp_eval_register:N #2 } {#1} }
\cs_new:Npn \::v_unbraced \::: #1#2 { \exp_after:wN \__exp_arg_last_unbraced:nn \exp_after:wN { \exp:w \__exp_eval_register:c {#2} } {#1} }
\cs_if_exist:NTF \tex_expanded:D { \cs_new:Npn \::e_unbraced \::: #1#2 { \tex_expanded:D { \exp_not:n {#1} #2 } } { \exp:w \__exp_e:nn {#2} {#1} } }
\cs_new:Npn \::f_unbraced \::: #1#2 { \exp_after:wN \__exp_arg_last_unbraced:nn \exp_after:wN { \exp:w \__exp_register:N #2 \exp_not:N } {#1} }
\cs_new:Npn \::x_unbraced \::: #1#2 { \cs_set_nopar:Npx \l__exp_internal_tl { \exp_not:n {#1} #2 } }
Now the business end: most of these are hand-tuned for speed, but the general system is in place.

\begin{verbatim}
\exp_last_unbraced:No \exp_last_unbraced:NV \exp_last_unbraced:Nv \exp_last_unbraced:Nf \exp_last_unbraced:NNe \exp_last_unbraced:NNf \exp_last_unbraced:Nco \exp_last_unbraced:NcV \exp_last_unbraced:NNNo \exp_last_unbraced:NNNV \exp_last_unbraced:NNf \exp_last_unbraced:Nco \exp_last_unbraced:NcV \exp_last_unbraced:NNNo \exp_last_unbraced:NNNV \exp_last_unbraced:NNf \exp_last_unbraced:Nco \exp_last_unbraced:NcV
\end{verbatim}
\exp_after:wN \#1
\exp_after:wN \#2
\exp_after:wN \#3
\exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w \#4
\} }
\cs_new:Npn \exp_last_unbraced:Nno { \::n \::o_unbraced \::: }
\cs_new:Npn \exp_last_unbraced:Noo { \::o \::o_unbraced \::: }
\cs_new:Npn \exp_last_unbraced:Nfo { \::f \::o_unbraced \::: }
\cs_new:Npn \exp_last_unbraced:NnNo { \::n \::N \::o_unbraced \::: }
\cs_new:Npn \exp_last_unbraced:NNNNo #1#2#3#4#5
{ \exp_after:wN #1 \exp_after:wN #2 \exp_after:wN #3 \exp_after:wN #4 #5 }
\cs_new:Npn \exp_last_unbraced:NNNNf #1#2#3#4#5
{ \exp_after:wN #1 \exp_after:wN #2 \exp_after:wN #3 \exp_after:wN #4 \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w #5 }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \exp_last_unbraced:Nx { \::x_unbraced \::: }
(End definition for \exp_last_unbraced:No and others. These functions are documented on page 38.)
\exp_last_two_unbraced:Noo \__exp_last_two_unbraced:noN
If \#2 is a single token then this can be implemented as
\cs_new:Npn \exp_last_two_unbraced:Noo #1 #2 #3
{ \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN #1 \exp_after:wN #2 #3 }
However, for robustness this is not suitable. Instead, a bit of a shuffle is used to ensure that \#2 can be multiple tokens.
\cs_new:Npn \exp_last_two_unbraced:Noo \__exp_last_two_unbraced:noN \exp_after:wN {#3} {#2} #1
\cs_new:Npn \__exp_last_two_unbraced:noN #1#2#3
{ \exp_after:wN #3 #2 #1 }
(End definition for \exp_last_two_unbraced:Noo and \__exp_last_two_unbraced:noN. This function is documented on page 38.)

42.4 Preventing expansion
\__kernel_exp_not:w
At the kernel level, we need the primitive behaviour to allow expansion before the brace group.
\cs_new_eq:NN \__kernel_exp_not:w \tex_unexpanded:DN
(End definition for \__kernel_exp_not:w.)
\exp_not:c All these except \exp_not:c call the kernel-internal \__kernel_exp_not:w namely
\exp_not:o \tex_unexpanded:D.
\exp_not:e \cs_new:Npn \exp_not:e #1 \{ \exp_after:wN \exp_not:N \cs:w #1 \cs_end: \}
\exp_not:f \cs_new:Npn \exp_not:o #1 \{ \__kernel_exp_not:w \exp_after:wN {#1} \}
\exp_not:V \cs_if_exist:NTF \tex_expanded:D
\exp_not:v \cs_new:Npn \exp_not:v #1
{ \__kernel_exp_not:w \tex_expanded:D \{ {#1} \} }
388
controlled expansion

To trigger a sequence of “arbitrarily” many expansions we need a method to invoke \TeX’s expansion mechanism in such a way that (a) we are able to stop it in a controlled manner and (b) the result of what triggered the expansion in the first place is null, i.e., that we do not get any unwanted side effects. There aren’t that many possibilities in \TeX; in fact the one explained below might well be the only one (as normally the result of expansion is not null).

The trick here is to make use of the fact that \texttt{\tex_romannumeral:D} expands the tokens following it when looking for a number and that its expansion is null if that number turns out to be zero or negative. So we use that to start the expansion sequence: \texttt{\exp:w} is set equal to \texttt{\tex_romannumeral:D} in \texttt{l3basics}. To stop the expansion sequence in a controlled way all we need to provide is a constant integer zero as part of expanded tokens. As this is an integer constant it immediately stops \texttt{\tex_romannumeral:D}'s search for a number. Again, the definition of \texttt{\exp_end:} as the integer constant zero is in \texttt{l3basics}. (Note that according to our specification all tokens we expand initiated by \texttt{\exp:w} are supposed to be expandable (as well as their replacement text in the expansion) so we will not encounter a “number” that actually result in a roman numeral being generated. Or if we do then the programmer made a mistake.)

If on the other hand we want to stop the initial expansion sequence but continue with an f-type expansion we provide the alphabetic constant \texttt{\^\@} that also represents 0 but this time \TeX’s syntax for a \texttt{⟨number⟩} continues searching for an optional space (and it continues expansion doing that) — see \TeXbook page 269 for details.

If the above definition ever appears outside its proper context the active character \texttt{\^\@} will be executed so we turn this into an error. The test for existence covers the (unlikely) case that some other code has already defined \texttt{\^\@}: this is true for example for \texttt{xmltex.tex}.

\begin{verbatim}
\group_begin:
\tex_catcode:D '\^\@ = 13
\cs_new_protected:Npn \exp_end_continue_f:w \ifcs_exist:N '\^\@ \else:
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\exp_not:c} and others. These functions are documented on page 39.)
The same but grabbing an argument to remove spaces and braces.

\cs_new:Npn \exp_end_continue_f:nw #1 \{ '^^@ #1 \}
\group_end:

(End definition for $\exp:w$ and others. These functions are documented on page 41.)

### 42.6 Emulating e-type expansion

When the $\expanded$ primitive is available it is used to implement e-type expansion; otherwise we emulate it.

\cs_if_exist:NF \tex_expanded:D
\{\
\_exp_e:nn
\_exp_e_end:nn
Repeatedly expand tokens, keeping track of fully-expanded tokens in the second argument to $\_\exp_e:nn$; this function eventually calls $\_\exp_e:nn$ to leave $\exp_end$: in the input stream, followed by the result of the expansion. There are many special cases: spaces, brace groups, $\noexpand$, $\unexpanded$, $\the$, $\primitive$. While we use brace tricks $\if_false: \{ \fi:$, the expansion of this function always triggered by $\exp:w$ so brace balance is eventually restored after that is hit with a single step of expansion. Otherwise we could not nest e-type expansions within each other.

\cs_new:Npn \_\exp_e:nn #1
\{\n  \tl_if_head_is_N_type:nTF {#1}
  \{ \_exp_e:N \}
  {\n    \tl_if_head_is_group:nTF {#1}
    \{ \_exp_e_group:n \}
    {\n      \tl_if_empty:nTF {#1}
      \{ \exp_after:wN \_\exp_e_end:nn \}
      \exp_after:wN \_\exp_e_space:nn \}
      \exp_after:wN \{ \if_false: \} \fi: \}
  }\n  \}
\_\exp_e_end:nn #1
\}
\cs_new:Npn \_\exp_e_end:nn #1 #2 \{ \exp_end: #2 \}
(End definition for $\_\exp_e:nn$ and $\_\exp_e_end:nn$.)

$\_\exp_e_space:nn$ For an explicit space character, remove it by f-expansion and put it in the (future) output.

\cs_new:Npn \_\exp_e_space:nn #1
\{ \exp_args:Nf \_\exp_e:nn {#1} { #2 - } \}
(End definition for $\_\exp_e_space:nn$.)
For a group, expand its contents, wrap it in two pairs of braces, and call \texttt{\__exp_e_group:n}. This function places the first item (the double-brace wrapped result) into the output. Importantly, \texttt{\tl_head:n} works even if the input contains quarks.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__exp_e_group:n #1
 { \exp_after:wN \__exp_e_put:nn
 \exp_after:wN { \exp_after:wN { \exp_after:wN { 
 \exp:w \if_false: } \fi: \__exp_e:nn {#1} { } } } }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\__exp_e_group:n}, \texttt{\__exp_e_put:nn}, and \texttt{\__exp_e_put:nnn}.)

For an N-type token, call \texttt{\__exp_e:Nnn} with arguments the \texttt{⟨first token⟩}, the remaining tokens to expand and what's already been expanded. If the \texttt{⟨first token⟩} is non-expandable, including \texttt{\protected} (\texttt{\long} or not) macros, it is put in the result by \texttt{\_exp_e_protected:Nnn}. The four special primitives \texttt{\unexpanded}, \texttt{\noexpand}, \texttt{\the}, \texttt{\primitive} are detected; otherwise the token is expanded by \texttt{\_exp_e_expandable:Nnn}.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_exp_e:N #1
 { \exp_after:wN \_exp_e:Nnn #1 } \cs_new:Npn \_exp_e:Nnn #1#2#3
 { \exp_after:wN \_exp_e:nn { #2 } { #3 #1 } }
\end{verbatim}
We don’t try hard to make sensible error recovery since the error recovery of `\text_primitive:D` when followed by something else than a primitive depends on the engine. The only valid case is when what follows is `N`-type. Then distinguish special primitives `\unexpanded`, `\noexpand`, `\the`, `\primitive` from other primitives. In the “other” case, the only reasonable way to check if the primitive that follows `\text_primitive:D` is expandable is to expand and compare the before-expansion and after-expansion results. If they coincide then probably the primitive is non-expandable and should be put in the output together with `\text_primitive:D` (one can cook up contrived counter-examples where the true `\expanded` would have an infinite loop), and otherwise one should continue expanding.

```latex
\cs_new:Npn \__exp_e_primitive:Nnn #1#2
\begin{verbatim}
\if_false: \fi:
\tl_if_head_is_N_type:nTF {#2}
\{ \__exp_e_primitive_aux:NNw #1 \}
\{ \msg_error:nn { kernel } { e-type }
\{ Missing-primitive-name \}
\__exp_e_primitive_aux:NNw #1 \c_empty_tl
\} #2
\}
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__exp_e_primitive_aux:NNw #1#2
\begin{verbatim}
\exp_after:wN \__exp_e_primitive_aux:NNnn
\exp_after:wN #1
\exp_after:wN #2
\exp_after:wN { \if_false: } \fi:
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__exp_e_primitive_aux:NNnn #1#2#3
\begin{verbatim}
\exp_args:No \__exp_e_primitive_other_aux:nNNnn
{ #1 #2 {#3}}
\end{verbatim}
```

(End definition for `\__exp_e:N` and others.)
\cs_new:Npn \__exp_e_primitive_other_aux:nNNnn \#1\#2\#3\#4\#5
\{
  \str_if_eq:nnTF {\#1} { #2 #3 #4 }
  { \__exp_e:nn {\#4} { #5 #2 #3 } }
  { \__exp_e:nn {\#1} {\#5} }
\}

(End definition for \__exp_e_primitive:Nnn and others.)

\__exp_e_noexpand:Nnn
\noexpand
The \noexpand primitive has no effect when followed by a token that is not N-type; otherwise \__exp_e_put:nn can grab the next token and put it in the result unchanged.

\cs_new:Npn \__exp_e_noexpand:Nnn #1#2
\{
  \tl_if_head_is_N_type:nTF {#2}
  { \__exp_e_put:nn } { \__exp_e:nn } {#2}
\}

(End definition for \__exp_e_noexpand:Nnn.)

\__exp_e_unexpanded:Nnn
\__exp_e_unexpanded:nn
\__exp_e_unexpanded:nN
\__exp_e_unexpanded:N

The \unexpanded primitive expands and ignores any space, \scan_stop:, or token affected by \exp_not:N, then expects a brace group. Since we only support brace-balanced token lists it is impossible to support the case where the argument of \unexpanded starts with an implicit brace. Even though we want to expand and ignore spaces we cannot blindly f-expand because tokens affected by \exp_not:N should discarded without being expanded further.

As usual distinguish four cases: brace group (the normal case, where we just put the item in the result), space (just f-expand to remove the space), empty (an error), or N-type \langle\text{token}\rangle. In the last case call \__exp_e_unexpanded:nN triggered by an f-expansion. Having a non-expandable \langle\text{token}\rangle after \unexpanded is an error (we recover by passing {} to \unexpanded: this is different from \TeX{} because the error recovery of \unexpanded changes the balance of braces), unless that \langle\text{token}\rangle is \scan_stop: or a space (recall that we don’t implement the case of an implicit begin-group token). An expandable \langle\text{token}\rangle is instead expanded, unless it is \noexpand. The latter primitive can be followed by an expandable N-type token (removed), by a non-expandable one (kept and later causing an error), by a space (removed by f-expansion), or by a brace group or nothing (later causing an error).

\cs_new:Npn \__exp_e_unexpanded:Nnn #1 { \__exp_e_unexpanded:nn }
\cs_new:Npn \__exp_e_unexpanded:nn #1
\{
  \tl_if_head_is_N_type:nTF {#1}
  \exp_args:Nf \__exp_e_unexpanded:nn
  { \__exp_e_unexpanded:nN {#1} \#1 }
  \}
\{
  \tl_if_head_is_group:nTF {#1}
  { \__exp_e_put:nn }
  \}
\{
  \tl_if_empty:nTF {#1}
  { \msg_expandable_error:nnn { kernel } { e-type } { \unexpanded~missing~brace } }
  \}
\_\_exp_e_thenn
\_\_exp_e_then
\_\_exp_e_the_toks_reg:N

Finally implement the. Followed by anything other than an N-type \langle token\rangle this causes an error (we just let \TeX make one), otherwise we test the \langle token\rangle. If the \langle token\rangle is expandable, expand it. Otherwise it could be any kind of register, or things like \numexpr, so there is no way to deal with all cases. Thankfully, only \toks data needs to be protected from expansion since everything else gives a string of characters. If the \langle token\rangle is \toks we find a number and unpack using the the_toks functions. If it is a token register we unpack it in a brace group and call \_\_exp_e_put:nn to move it to
the result. Otherwise we unpack and continue expanding (useless but safe) since it is
basically impossible to have a handle on where the result of \texttt{the} ends.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__exp_e_the:Nnn #1#2
\tl_if_head_is_N_type:nTF {#2}
  { \iffalse: { \fi: \__exp_e_the:N #2 } }
  { \exp_argso:No \__exp_e:nn { \tex_the:D #2 } }
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__exp_e_the:N #1
{ \exp_after:wN \if_meaning:w \exp_not:N #1 #1 \exp_after:wN \use_i:nn \else: \exp_after:wN \use_ii:nn \fi: }
\exp_after:wN \__exp_e_the:Nnn \exp_after:wN ? \exp_after:wN \exp_end: #1}
\end{verbatim}

The calling function has applied \texttt{\int_value:w} so we collect digits with \texttt{\__exp_e_the_toks:w} (which gets the token list as an argument) and \texttt{\__exp_e_the_toks:n} (which gets the first token in case it is \texttt{N}-type). The digits are themselves collected into an \texttt{\int_value:w} argument to \texttt{\__exp_e_the_toks:w}. Then that function unpacks the \texttt{\toks<number>} into the result. We include \texttt{?} because \texttt{\__exp_e_put:nnn} removes one item from its second argument. Note that our approach is rather crude: in cases like \texttt{\the\toks12-34} the first \texttt{\int_value:w} removes the space and we will incorrectly unpack the \texttt{\the\toks1234}.

395
\cs_new:Npn \__exp_e_the_toks:wnn #1; #2
{
\exp_args:No \__exp_e_put:nnn
{ \tex_the:D \tex_toks:D #1 } { ? #2 }
}
\cs_new:Npn \__exp_e_the_toks:n #1
{
\tl_if_head_is_N_type:nTF {#1}
{ \exp_after:wN \__exp_e_the_toks:N \if_false: { \if: #1 } }
{ ; {#1} }
}
\cs_new:Npn \__exp_e_the_toks:N #1
{
\if_int_compare:w 10 < 9 \token_to_str:N #1 \exp_stop_f:
\exp_after:wN \use_i:nn
\else:
\exp_after:wN \use_ii:nn
\fi:
{ #1 }
\exp_after:wN \__exp_e_the_toks:n
\exp_after:wN { \if_false: } \fi:
{ \exp_after:wN ; \exp_after:wN { \if_false: } \fi: #1 }
}

(End definition for \__exp_e_the_toks:wnn, \__exp_e_the_toks:n, and \__exp_e_the_toks:N.)
\__exp_if_toks_register:NTF
\__exp_e_the_XeTeXinterchartoks:
\__exp_e_the_errhelp:
\__exp_e_the_everycr:
\__exp_e_the_everydisplay:
\__exp_e_the_everyeof:
\__exp_e_the_everyjob:
\__exp_e_the_everymath:
\__exp_e_the_everypar:
\__exp_e_the_pdfpageattr:
\__exp_e_the_pdfpagesattr:
\__exp_e_the_pdfpkmode:

We need to detect both \toks registers like \toks@ in \LaTeX2ε and parameters such as \everypar, as the result of unpacking the register should not expand further. Registers are found by \token_if_toks_register:NTF by inspecting the meaning. The list of parameters is finite so we just use a \cs_if_exist:cTF test to look up in a table. We abuse \cs_to_str:N’s ability to remove a leading escape character whatever it is.
\prg_new_conditional:Npn \__exp_e_if_toks_register:N #1 { TF }
{
\token_if_toks_register:NTF #1 { \prg_return_true: }
{ \cs_if_exist:cTF
\__exp_e_the_
\exp_after:wN \cs_to_str:N
\token_to_meaning:N #1
:
} { \prg_return_true: } { \prg_return_false: }
}
\prg_new_eq:NN \__exp_e_the_XeTeXinterchartoks: ?
\prg_new_eq:NN \__exp_e_the_errhelp: ?
\prg_new_eq:NN \__exp_e_the_everycr: ?
\prg_new_eq:NN \__exp_e_the_everydisplay: ?
\prg_new_eq:NN \__exp_e_the_everyeof: ?
2859 \cs_new_eq:NN \__exp_e_the_every hbox: ?
2860 \cs_new_eq:NN \__exp_e_the_every job: ?
2861 \cs_new_eq:NN \__exp_e_the_every math: ?
2862 \cs_new_eq:NN \__exp_e_the_every par: ?
2863 \cs_new_eq:NN \__exp_e_the_every box: ?
2864 \cs_new_eq:NN \__exp_e_the_output: ?
2865 \cs_new_eq:NN \__exp_e_the_pdfpageattr: ?
2866 \cs_new_eq:NN \__exp_e_the_pdfpageresources: ?
2867 \cs_new_eq:NN \__exp_e_the_pdfpagesattr: ?
2868 \cs_new_eq:NN \__exp_e_the_pdfpkmode: ?
(End definition for \__exp_e_if_toks_register:NTF and others.)

We are done emulating e-type argument expansion when \expanded is unavailable.

}\}

42.7 Defining function variants

\s__cs_mark Internal scan marks. No l3quark yet, so do things by hand.
\s__cs_stop

\s__cs_recursion_stop Internal recursion quarks. No l3quark yet, so do things by hand.
\cs_new:Npn \q__cs_recursion_stop { \q__cs_recursion_stop }
(End definition for \s__cs_mark and \s__cs_stop.)

\__cs_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w \__cs_use_i_delimit_by_s_stop:nw \__cs_use_none_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:w
Internal scan marks.
\cs_new:Npm \__cs_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w #1 \s__cs_stop { }
\cs_new:Npm \__cs_use_i_delimit_by_s_stop:nw #1 \s__cs_stop {#1}
\cs_new:Npm \__cs_use_none_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:w
\__cs_recursion_stop { }
(End definition for \__cs_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w, \__cs_use_i_delimit_by_s_stop:nw, and \__cs_use_none_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:w.)

\cs_generate_variant:Nn \cs_generate_variant:cn #1 : Base form of a function; e.g., \tl_set:Nn
\cs_generate_variant:cm #2 : One or more variant argument specifiers; e.g., \{Nx,c,cx\}

After making sure that the base form exists, test whether it is protected or not and define \__cs_tmp:w as either \cs_new:Npx or \cs_new_protected:Npx, which is then used to define all the variants (except those involving \x-expansion, always protected). Split up the original base function only once, to grab its name and signature. Then we wish to iterate through the comma list of variant argument specifiers, which we first convert to a string; the reason is explained later.
\cs_new_protected:Npm \cs_generate_variant:Nn #1#2
{ }
\__cs_generate_variant:N #1
\use:x
{ }
\__cs_generate_variant:nnNN
\cs_split_function:N #1

397
The goal here is to pick up protected parent functions. There are four cases: the parent function can be a primitive or a macro, and can be expandable or not. For non-expandable primitives, all variants should be protected; skipping the \else: branch is safe because non-expandable primitives cannot be \TeX conditionals.

The other case where variants should be protected is when the parent function is a protected macro: then \texttt{protected} appears in the meaning before the first occurrence of \texttt{macro}. The \texttt{ww} auxiliary removes everything in the meaning string after the first \texttt{ma}. We use \texttt{ma} rather than the full \texttt{macro} because the meaning of the \texttt{\_\firstmark} primitive (and four others) can contain an arbitrary string after a leading \texttt{firstmark}. Then, look for \texttt{pr} in the part we extracted: no need to look for anything longer: the only strings we can have are an empty string, \texttt{\_\long\_\protected\_\protected\_\_\long\_\firstmark}, \texttt{\top}, \texttt{\bot}, \texttt{\splittop}, or \texttt{\splitbot}, with \ replaced by the appropriate escape character. If \texttt{pr} appears in the part before \texttt{ma}, the first \texttt{s\_\_cs\_mark} is taken as an argument of the \texttt{wwNw} auxiliary, and \texttt{#3} is \texttt{\_\cs\_new\_protected\_Np}, otherwise it is \texttt{\_\cs\_new\_protected\_N}.
#3: Boolean.
#4: Base function.

If the boolean is \texttt{\_c\_false\_bool}, the base function has no colon and we abort with an error; otherwise, set off a loop through the desired variant forms. The original function is retained as #4 for efficiency.

```latex
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_cs\_generate\_variant:nnNN #1#2#3#4
\{ 
\if_meaning:w \c_false_bool #3 
\msg_error:nnx { kernel } { missing-colon } 
\token_to_str:c {#1} } 
\exp_after:wN \_\_cs\_use\_none\_delimit\_by_q\_recursion\_stop:w 
\fi:
\_\_cs\_generate\_variant:Nnnw #4 {#1}{#2}
\}
```

(End definition for \_\_cs\_generate\_variant:nnNN.)

\_\_cs\_generate\_variant:Nnnw

#1: Base function.
#2: Base name.
#3: Base signature.
#4: Beginning of variant signature.

First check whether to terminate the loop over variant forms. Then, for each variant form, construct a new function name using the original base name, the variant signature consisting of \(l\) letters and the last \(k - l\) letters of the base signature (of length \(k\)). For example, for a base function \texttt{\_prop\_put:Nnn} which needs a \texttt{cV} variant form, we want the new signature to be \texttt{cVn}.

There are further subtleties:

- In \texttt{\_cs\_generate\_variant:NN \_foo:nnTF \{xxTF\}}, we must define \texttt{\_foo:xxTF} using \texttt{\texttt{\exp\_args:Nxx}} rather than a hypothetical \texttt{\exp\_args:NxxTF}. Thus, we wish to trim a common trailing part from the base signature and the variant signature.

- In \texttt{\_cs\_generate\_variant:NN \_foo:on \{ox\}}, the function \texttt{\_foo:ox} must be defined using \texttt{\exp\_args:Nxx}, not \texttt{\exp\_args:Nox}, to avoid double \texttt{o} expansion.

- Lastly, \texttt{\_cs\_generate\_variant:NN \_foo:on \{xn\}} must trigger an error, because we do not have a means to replace \texttt{o}-expansion by \texttt{x}-expansion. More generally, we can only convert \texttt{N} to \texttt{c}, or convert \texttt{n} to \texttt{V}, \texttt{v}, \texttt{o}, \texttt{f}, \texttt{x}.

All this boils down to a few rules. Only \texttt{n} and \texttt{N}-type arguments can be replaced by \texttt{\_cs\_generate\_variant:NN}. Other argument types are allowed to be passed unchanged from the base form to the variant: in the process they are changed to \texttt{n} except for \texttt{N} and \texttt{p}-type arguments. A common trailing part is ignored.

We compare the base and variant signatures one character at a time within \texttt{x}-expansion. The result is given to \_\_cs\_generate\_variant:wwNN (defined later) in the form \texttt{(processed variant signature) \_s\_\_cs\_mark \{errors\} \_s\_\_cs\_stop \{base function\} \{new function\}}. If all went well, \texttt{\{errors\}} is empty; otherwise, it is a kernel error message and some clean-up code.

Note the space after #3 and after the following brace group. Those are ignored by \texttt{TeX} when fetching the last argument for \_\_cs\_generate\_variant_loop:nNwN, but can be used as a delimiter for \_\_cs\_generate\_variant_loop_end:nwNNNNn.

```latex
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_cs\_generate\_variant:Nnnw #1#2#3#4 ,
```
\if_meaning:w \scan_stop: #4
\exp_after:wN \__cs_use_none_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:w
\fi:
\use:x
\exp_not:N \__cs_generate_variant:wwNN
\__cs_generate_variant_same:w
\__cs_generate_variant_loop_nwNwN
\s__cs_mark
#3 -
\{ - \{ \fi: \__cs_generate_variant_loop_long:wNNnn \} -
\}
\s__cs_stop
\exp_not:N #1 {#2} {#4}
\}
\__cs_generate_variant:Nnnw #1 {#2} {#3}
\)

(End definition for \__cs_generate_variant:Nnw.)

\__cs_generate_variant_loop:nwW
\__cs_generate_variant_loop_base:N
\__cs_generate_variant_loop_same:w
\__cs_generate_variant_loop_end:nwWNn
\__cs_generate_variant_loop_long:wWNn
\__cs_generate_variant_loop_invalid:NNwNNnn
\__cs_generate_variant_loop_special:NNwNNnn

#1: Last few consecutive letters common between the base and variant (more precisely,
\__cs_generate_variant_same:N \langle letter \rangle for each letter).
#2: Next variant letter.
#3: Remainder of variant form.
#4: Next base letter.

The first argument is populated by \__cs_generate_variant_loop_same:w when
a variant letter and a base letter match. It is flushed into the input stream whenever the
two letters are different: if the loop ends before, the argument is dropped, which means
that trailing common letters are ignored.

The case where the two letters are different is only allowed if the base is N and the
variant is c, or when the base is n and the variant is o, V, v, f or x. Otherwise, call
\__cs_generate_variant_loop_invalid:NNwWNn to remove the end of the loop, get
arguments at the end of the loop, and place an appropriate error message as a second
argument of \__cs_generate_variant:wwNN. If the letters are distinct and the base
letter is indeed n or N, leave in the input stream whatever argument #1 was collected, and
the next variant letter #2, then loop by calling \__cs_generate_variant_loop:nwW.

The loop can stop in three ways.

- If the end of the variant form is encountered first, #2 is \__cs_generate_variant_loop_end:nwWNn (expanded by the conditional \if:w), which inserts some to-
kens to end the conditional; grabs the \langle base name \rangle as #7, the \langle variant signature \rangle
#8, the \langle next base letter \rangle #1 and the part #3 of the base signature that wasn’t read
yet; and combines those into the \langle new function \rangle to be defined.
- If the end of the base form is encountered first, #4 is \{\fi: which ends the condi-
tional (with an empty expansion), followed by \__cs_generate_variant_loop_long:wWNnn, which places an error as the second argument of \__cs_generate_variant:wWN.
- The loop can be interrupted early if the requested expansion is unavailable, namely
when the variant and base letters differ and the base is not the right one (n or N to
support the variant). In that case too an error is placed as the second argument of \_\cs_generate_variant:wwNN.

Note that if the variant form has the same length as the base form, \#2 is as described in the first point, and \#4 as described in the second point above. The \_\cs_generate_variant_loop_end:nwwwNNnn breaking function takes the empty brace group in \#4 as its first argument: this empty brace group produces the correct signature for the full variant.

\begin{verbatim}
2945 \cs_new:Npn \_cs_generate_variant_loop:nNwN \#1\#2\#3 \s__cs_mark \#4 
2946 { \if:w \#2 \#4 
2947   \exp_after:wN \_cs_generate_variant_loop_same:w 
2948 \else: \n2949   \if:w \#4 \_cs_generate_variant_loop_base:N \#2 \else: 
2950     \if:w 0 
2951       \if:w N \#4 \else: \if:w n \#4 \else: 1 \fi: \fi: 
2952       \if:w \scan_stop: \_cs_generate_variant_loop_base:N \#2 1 \fi: 
2953     0 
2954     \_cs_generate_variant_loop_special:NNwNNnn \#4\#2 
2955 \else: 
2956     \_cs_generate_variant_loop_invalid:NNwNNnn \#4\#2 
2957 \fi: 
2958 \fi: 
2959 \fi: 
2960 \prg_do_nothing: \#1 
2961 \_cs_generate_variant_loop:nwwwNNnn \{ } \#3 \s__cs_mark 
2962 \cs_new:Npn \_cs_generate_variant_loop_base:N \#1 
2963 { \if:w c \#1 N \else: 
2964   \if:w o \#1 n \else: 
2965     \if:w V \#1 n \else: 
2966       \if:w v \#1 n \else: 
2967         \if:w f \#1 n \else: 
2968           \if:w e \#1 n \else: 
2969             \if:w x \#1 n \else: 
2970               \if:w n \#1 n \else: 
2971                 \if:w N \#1 N \else: 
2972                   \scan_stop: 
2973                   \fi: 
2974               \fi: 
2975             \fi: 
2976           \fi: 
2977         \fi: 
2978       \fi: 
2979     \fi: 
2980   \fi: 
2981 \fi: 
2982 \fi: 
2983 \fi: 
2984 \fi: 
2985 \fi: 
2986 \fi: 
2987 } 
2988 \cs_new:Npn \_cs_generate_variant_loop_same:w \#1 \prg_do_nothing: \#2\#3\#4 
2989 { \#3 \#1 \_cs_generate_variant_same:N \#2 } 

401
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__cs_generate_variant_loop_end:nwwwNNnn #1#2 \s__cs_mark #3 - #4 \s__cs_stop #5#6#7#8
{
\scan_stop: \scan_stop: \fi:
\s__cs_mark \s__cs_stop
\exp_not:N \#6
\exp_not:c \{ \#7 : \#8 \#1 \#3 \}
}
\cs_new:Npn \__cs_generate_variant_loop_long:wNNnn #1 \s__cs_stop #2#3#4#5
{
\exp_not:n
{\s__cs_mark \msg_error:nnxx { kernel } { variant-too-long }
\{\#5\} \{ \token_to_str:N \#3 \}
\use_none:nn \s__cs_stop \#3 \#3}
}
\cs_new:Npn \__cs_generate_variant_loop_invalid:NNwNNnn #1#2 \fi: \fi: \fi: \fi: \#3 \s__cs_stop #4#5#6#7
{
\fi: \fi: \fi: \fi:
\exp_not:n
{\s__cs_mark \msg_error:nnxxxx { kernel } { invalid-variant }
\{\#7\} \{ \token_to_str:N \#5 \} \{\#1\} \{\#2\}
\use_none:nn \s__cs_stop \#5 \#5}
}
\cs_new:Npn \__cs_generate_variant_loop_special:NNwNNnn #1#2#3 \s__cs_stop #4#5#6#7
{
\#3 \s__cs_stop #4 \#5 \{\#6\} \{\#7\}
\exp_not:n
{\msg_error:nnxxxx
\{ kernel \} \{ deprecated-variant \}
\{\#7\} \{ \token_to_str:N \#5 \} \{\#1\} \{\#2\}}
}

(End definition for \__cs_generate_variant_loop:nNwN and others.)

When the base and variant letters are identical, don’t do any expansion. For most argument types, we can use the $n$-type no-expansion, but the $N$ and $p$ types require a slightly different behaviour with respect to braces. For $V$-type this function could output $N$ to avoid adding useless braces but that is not a problem.
\cs_new:Npn \__cs_generate_variant_same:N #1
{
    \if:w N #1 \else:
        \if:w p #1 \else:
            \token_to_str:N n
            \if:w n #1 \else:
                \__cs_generate_variant_loop_special:NNwNNnn #1#1
            \fi:
        \fi:
    \fi:
}
\__cs_generate_variant:wwNN
\__cs_generate_internal_variant:n
\__cs_generate_internal_variant_loop:n
\__cs_generate_internal_variant:w
\__cs_generate_internal_variant_loop:w

If the variant form has already been defined, log its existence (provided \log\-functions is active). Otherwise, make sure that the \exp_args:N #3 form is defined, and if it contains \texttt{x}, change \texttt{\__cs_tmp:w} locally to \cs_new_protected:Npx. Then define the variant by combining the \exp_args:N #3 variant and the base function.

\cs_new_protected:Npx \__cs_generate_internal_variant:n #1
{
    \exp_not:N \__cs_generate_internal_variant:wwnNwn
    #1 \s__cs_mark { \cs_set_eq:NN \exp_not:N \__cs_tmp:w \cs_new_protected:Npx }
    \cs_new_protected:cpn \use:x \token_to_str:N x \s__cs_mark { } \cs_new:cpn \tex_expanded:D
}
\__cs_generate_internal_variant:w
\__cs_generate_internal_variant_loop:w
\__cs_generate_internal_variant:n
\__cs_generate_internal_variant_loop:n

First test for the presence of \texttt{x} (this is where working with strings makes our lives easier), as the result should be protected, and the next variant to be defined using that internal variant should be protected (done by setting \texttt{\__cs_tmp:w}). Then call \texttt{\__cs_generate_internal_variant:NNn} with arguments \cs_new_protected:cpn \use:x (for protected) or \texttt{\cs_new:cpn \tex_expanded:D} (expandable) and the signature. If \texttt{p} appears in the signature, or if the function to be defined is expandable and the primitive \texttt{\expanded} is not available, or if there are more than 8 arguments, call some fall-back code that just puts the appropriate \texttt{\::} commands. Otherwise, call \texttt{\__cs_generate_internal_one_go:NNn} to construct the \exp_args:N\ldots function as a macro taking up to 9 arguments and expanding them using \texttt{\use:x} or \texttt{\tex_expanded:D}.

\cs_new_protected:Npx \__cs_generate_internal_variant:n #1
{
    \exp_not:N \__cs_generate_internal_variant:wnNwNwNwNw
    #1 \s__cs_mark
    { \cs_set_eq:NN \exp_not:N \__cs_tmp:w \cs_new_protected:Npx }
    \cs_new_protected:cpn
    \use:x
    \token_to_str:N x \s__cs_mark
    { }
\cs_new:cpn
This command grabs char by char outputting \::#1 (not expanded further). We avoid tests by putting a trailing : :\use_i:nn, which leaves \cs_end: and removes the looping.
macro. The colon is in fact also turned into \::: so that the required structure for
\exp_args:N... commands is correctly terminated.

(End definition for \cs_generate_internal_variant:n and \cs_generate_internal_variant_loop:n)

\cs_new_protected:Npn \prg_generate_conditional_variant:Nnn
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__cs_generate_variant_p_form:nnn
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__cs_generate_variant_T_form:nnn
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__cs_generate_variant_F_form:nnn
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__cs_generate_variant_TF_form:nnn
Some of these could be done more efficiently, but the complexity of coding then becomes an issue. Notice that the auto-generated functions actually take no arguments themselves.

Here are the actual function definitions, using the helper functions above. The group is used because \cs_generate_variant:n redefines \_cs_tmp:w locally.

\exp_args:Nnc
\exp_args:Nno
\exp_args:NnV
\exp_args:Nnv
\exp_args:Nne
\exp_args:Nnf
\exp_args:Noc
\exp_args:Noo
\exp_args:Nof
\exp_args:NVo
\exp_args:Nfo
\exp_args:Nff
\exp_args:Nee
\exp_args:Nee
\exp_args:Nnx
\exp_args:Ncx
\exp_args:Nxx
\exp_args:Nxo
\exp_args:Nxx
\exp_args:NNcf
\exp_args:NNno
\exp_args:NNnV
\exp_args:NNoo
\exp_args:NNVV
\exp_args:Ncno
\exp_args:NcnV
\exp_args:Ncoo
\exp_args:NcVV
\exp_args:Nnnc
\exp_args:Nnno
\exp_args:Nnnf
\exp_args:Nnff
\exp_args:Nooo
\exp_args:Noof
\exp_args:Nffo
\exp_args:Neee
\exp_args:NNNx
\exp_args:NnNx
\exp_args:NNox
\exp_args:Nccx
\exp_args:Ncnx
\exp_args:Nnnx
\exp_args:Nnxx
\exp_args:Nnox
\exp_args:Noox

(End definition for \exp_args:mac and others. These functions are documented on page 36.)

\exp_args:Ncf
\exp_args:Nno
\exp_args:NnV
\exp_args:NNcV
\exp_args:Nnnc
\exp_args:Nnno
\exp_args:Nnnf
\exp_args:Nnff
\exp_args:Nooo
\exp_args:Noof
\exp_args:Nffo
\exp_args:Neee
\exp_args:NNNx
\exp_args:NnNx
\exp_args:NNox
\exp_args:Nccx
\exp_args:Ncnx
\exp_args:Nnnx
\exp_args:Nnxx
\exp_args:Nnox
\exp_args:Noox

(End definition for \exp_args:mf and others. These functions are documented on page 37.)
Chapter 43

\texttt{l3sort} implementation

43.1 Variables

Sorting happens in a group; the result is stored in those global variables before being copied outside the group to the proper places. For seq and tl this is more efficient than using \texttt{\use:x} (or some \texttt{\exp_args:NNNx}) to smuggle the definition outside the group since \TeX{} does not need to re-read tokens. For clist we don’t gain anything since the result is converted from seq to clist anyways.

\begin{verbatim}
\seq_new:N \g__sort_internal_seq
\tl_new:N \g__sort_internal_tl
\end{verbatim}

The sequence has \texttt{\l__sort_length_int} items and is stored from \texttt{\l__sort_min_int} to \texttt{\l__sort_top_int} - 1. While reading the sequence in memory, we check that \texttt{\l__sort_top_int} remains at most \texttt{\l__sort_max_int}, precomputed by \texttt{\__sort_-compute_range}. That bound is such that the merge sort only uses \texttt{\toks} registers less than \texttt{\l__sort_true_max_int}, namely those that have not been allocated for use in other code: the user’s comparison code could alter these.

\begin{verbatim}
\int_new:N \l__sort_length_int
\int_new:N \l__sort_min_int
\int_new:N \l__sort_top_int
\int_new:N \l__sort_max_int
\int_new:N \l__sort_true_max_int
\end{verbatim}

Merge sort is done in several passes. In each pass, blocks of size \texttt{\l__sort_block_int} are merged in pairs. The block size starts at 1, and, for a length in the range $[2^k + 1, 2^{k+1}]$, reaches $2^k$ in the last pass.

\begin{verbatim}
\int_new:N \l__sort_block_int
\end{verbatim}
When merging two blocks, \texttt{\_sort_begin_int} marks the lowest index in the two blocks, and \texttt{\_sort_end_int} marks the highest index, plus 1.

\begin{verbatim}
\int_new:N \l__sort_begin_int
\int_new:N \l__sort_end_int
(End definition for \_sort_begin_int and \_sort_end_int.)
\end{verbatim}

When merging two blocks (whose end-points are \texttt{beg} and \texttt{end}), \texttt{A} starts from the high end of the low block, and decreases until reaching \texttt{beg}. The index \texttt{B} starts from the top of the range and marks the register in which a sorted item should be put. Finally, \texttt{C} points to the copy of the high block in the interval of registers starting at \texttt{\_sort_length_int}, upwards. \texttt{C} starts from the upper limit of that range.

\begin{verbatim}
\int_new:N \l__sort_A_int
\int_new:N \l__sort_B_int
\int_new:N \l__sort_C_int
(End definition for \_sort_A_int, \_sort_B_int, and \_sort_C_int.)
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\scan_new:N \s__sort_mark
\scan_new:N \s__sort_stop
(End definition for \_sort_mark and \_sort_stop.)
\end{verbatim}

### 43.2 Finding available \texttt{toks} registers

After \texttt{\_sort_compute_range}, (defined below) determines that \texttt{toks} registers between \texttt{\_sort_min_int} (included) and \texttt{\_sort_true_max_int} (excluded) have not yet been assigned, \texttt{\_sort_shrink_range} computes \texttt{\_sort_max_int} to reflect the need for a buffer when merging blocks in the merge sort. Given $2^n \leq A \leq 2^n + 2^{n-1}$ registers we can sort $\lfloor A/2 \rfloor + 2^{n-1}$ items while if we have $2^n + 2^{n-1} \leq A \leq 2^{n+1}$ registers we can sort $A - 2^{n-1}$ items. We first find out a power $2^n$ such that $2^n \leq A \leq 2^{n+1}$ by repeatedly halving \texttt{\_sort_block_int}, starting at $2^{16}$ or $2^{14}$ namely half the total number of registers, then we use the formulas and set \texttt{\_sort_max_int}.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_sort_shrink_range:
\_sort_shrink_range_loop:
\begin{verbatim}
\int_set:Nn \l__sort_A_int
\{ \l__sort_true_max_int - \l__sort_min_int + 1 \}
\int_set:Nn \l__sort_block_int \{ \c_max_register_int / 2 \}
\_sort_shrink_range_loop:
\int_set:Nn \l__sort_max_int
\{ \int_compare:nNnTF \{ \l__sort_block_int * 3 \} / 2 \} > \l__sort_A_int
\{ \l__sort_min_int
+ ( \l__sort_A_int - 1 ) / 2
+ \l__sort_block_int / 4
- 1
\}
\{ \l__sort_true_max_int - \l__sort_block_int / 2 \}
\}
\end{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}
First find out what \toks have not yet been assigned. There are many cases. In \LaTeX2ε with no package, available \toks range from \count15 + 1 to \c_max_register_int included (this was not altered despite the 2015 changes). When \loctoks is defined, namely in plain (e)\TeX, or when the package etex is loaded in \LaTeX2ε, redefine \__sort_compute_range: to use the range \count265 to \count275−1. The ealloc package also defines \loctoks but uses yet another number for the upper bound, namely \e@alloc@top (minus one). We must check for \loctoks every time a sorting function is called, as etex or ealloc could be loaded.

In Con\TeX MkIV the range is from \c_syst_last_allocated_toks+1 to \c_max_register_int, and in MkII it is from lastallocatedtoks+1 to \c_max_register_int. In all these cases, call \__sort_shrink_range:.

\__sort_shrink_range:
\__sort_redefine_compute_range:
\c__sort_max_length_int

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__sort_shrink_range_loop:
\{  
  \if_int_compare:w \l__sort_A_int < \l__sort_block_int  
  \tex_divide:D \l__sort_block_int 2 \exp_stop_f:  
  \exp_after:wN \__sort_shrink_range_loop:
  \fi:  
\}

(End definition for \__sort_shrink_range: and \__sort_shrink_range_loop:.)

\__sort_compute_range:  
\__sort_redefine_compute_range:  

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__sort_compute_range:  
\{  
  \int_set:Nn \l__sort_min_int { \tex_count:D 15 + 1 }  
  \int_set:Nn \l__sort_true_max_int { \c_max_register_int + 1 }  
  \__sort_shrink_range:  
  \if_meaning:w \loctoks \tex_undefined:D \else:  
    \if_meaning:w \loctoks \scan_stop: \else:  
      \__sort_redefine_compute_range:  
      \__sort_compute_range:  
    \fi:  
  \fi:  
\}

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__sort_redefine_compute_range:  
\{  
  \cs_if_exist:cTF { ver@elocalloc.sty }  
  \{  
    \cs_gset_protected:Npn \__sort_compute_range:  
    \{  
      \int_set:Nn \l__sort_min_int { \tex_count:D 265 }  
      \int_set_eq:NN \l__sort_true_max_int \e@alloc@top  
      \__sort_shrink_range:  
    \}
  \}  
  \}

\cs_gset_protected:Npn \__sort_compute_range:  
\{  
  \int_set:Nn \l__sort_min_int { \tex_count:D 265 }  
  \int_set:Nn \l__sort_true_max_int { \tex_count:D 275 }  
  \__sort_shrink_range:  
\}  

411
\cs_if_exist:NT \loctoks { \__sort_redefine_compute_range: }
\tl_map_inline:nn { \lastallocatedtoks \c_syst_last_allocated_toks }
\cs_if_exist:NT #1
\cs_gset_protected:Npn \__sort_compute_range:
\int_set:Nn \l__sort_min_int { #1 + 1 }
\int_set:Nn \l__sort_true_max_int { \c_max_register_int + 1 }
\__sort_shrink_range:
\}
\]
(End definition for \__sort_compute_range:, \__sort_redefine_compute_range:, and \c__sort_max_length_int.)

### 43.3 Protected user commands

Sorting happens in three steps. First store items in \toks registers ranging from $\l__sort_min_int$ to $\l__sort_top_int - 1$, while checking that the list is not too long. If we reach the maximum length, that’s an error; exit the group. Secondly, sort the array of \toks registers, using the user-defined sorting function: \__sort_level: calls \__sort_compare:nn as needed. Finally, unpack the \toks registers (now sorted) into the target \tl, or into $\g__sort_internal_seq$ for seq and clist. This is done by \__sort_seq:NNNNn and \__sort_tl:NNn.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__sort_main:NNNn #1#2#3#4
\__sort_disable_toksdef:
\__sort_compute_range:
\int_set_eq:NN \l__sort_top_int \l__sort_min_int
#1 #3
\int_compare:w \l__sort_top_int = \l__sort_max_int
\__sort_too_long_error:NNw #2 #3
\fi:
\tex_toks:D \l__sort_top_int {##1}
\int_incr:N \l__sort_top_int
\]
(End definition for \__sort_main:NNNn.)

\tl_sort:Nn \tl_sort:cn \tl_gsort:Nn \tl_gsort:cn
\__sort_tl:NNn \__sort_tl_toks:w

Call the main sorting function then unpack \toks registers outside the group into the target token list. The unpacking is done by \__sort_tl_toks:w; registers are numbered from $\l__sort_min_int$ to $\l__sort_top_int - 1$. For expansion behaviour we need
a couple of primitives. The \textbackslash _gclear:N reduces memory usage. The \textbackslash prg\_break\_point: is used by \textbackslash _\textbackslash __sort\_main:NNNn when the list is too long.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \tl_sort:Nn { \__sort_tl:NNn \tl_set_eq:NN }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_sort:Nn { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \tl_gsort:Nn { \__sort_tl:NNn \tl_gset_eq:NN }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_gsort:Nn { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__sort_tl:NNn #1#2#3
\group_begin:
\__sort_main:NNNn \tl_map_inline:Nn \tl_map_break:n #2 {#3}
\__kernel_tl_gset:Nx \g__sort_internal_tl { \__sort_tl_toks:w \_\_sort_min_int ;}
\group_end:
#1 #2 \g__sort_internal_tl
\tl_gclear:N \g__sort_internal_tl
\textbackslash prg\_break\_point:
\cs_new:Npn \__sort_tl_toks:w #1 ;
\{\if_int_compare:w #1 < \_\_sort_top_int
\{ \tex_the:D \tex_toks:D #1 \}
\exp_after:wN \_\_sort_tl_toks:w
\int_value:w \int_eval:n { #1 + 1 } \exp_after:wN ;
\fi:\}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \textbackslash \_\textbackslash tl\_sort:Nn and others. These functions are documented on page 116.)
43.4 Merge sort

\_\_sort_level:\ This function is called once blocks of size \_\_sort_block_int (initially 1) are each sorted. If the whole list fits in one block, then we are done (this also takes care of the case of an empty list or a list with one item). Otherwise, go through pairs of blocks starting from 0, then double the block size, and repeat.

\_\_sort_merge_blocks:\ This function is called to merge a pair of blocks, starting at the last value of \_\_sort_end_int (end-point of the previous pair of blocks). If shifting by one block to the right we reach the end of the list, then this pass has ended: the end of the list is sorted already. Otherwise, store the result of that shift in A, which indexes the first block starting from the top end. Then locate the end-point (maximum) of the second block: shift end upwards by one more block, but keeping it ≤ top. Copy this upper block of \toks registers in registers above length, indexed by C: this is covered by \_\_sort_copy_block:. Once this is done we are ready to do the actual merger using \_\_sort_merge_blocks_aux:, after shifting A, B and C so that they point to the largest index in their respective ranges rather than pointing just beyond those ranges. Of course, once that pair of blocks is merged, move on to the next pair.
\_\_sort\_copy\_block: We wish to store a copy of the “upper” block of \toks registers, ranging between the initial value of \l\_sort\_B\_int (included) and \l\_sort\_end\_int (excluded) into a new range starting at the initial value of \l\_sort\_C\_int, namely \l\_sort\_top\_int.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_sort\_copy\_block: 
{
  \tex_toks:D \l\_sort\_C\_int \tex_toks:D \l\_sort\_B\_int
  \int_incr:N \l\_sort\_C\_int
  \int_incr:N \l\_sort\_B\_int
  \if_int_compare:w \l\_sort\_B\_int = \l\_sort\_end\_int
    \use_i:nn
  \fi:
  \_\_sort\_copy\_block:
}

(End definition for \_\_sort\_copy\_block:.)

\_\_sort\_merge\_blocks\_aux: At this stage, the first block starts at \l\_sort\_begin\_int, and ends at \l\_sort\_A\_int, and the second block starts at \l\_sort\_top\_int and ends at \l\_sort\_C\_int. The result of the merger is stored at positions indexed by \l\_sort\_B\_int, which starts at \l\_sort\_end\_int − 1 and decreases down to \l\_sort\_begin\_int, covering the full range of the two blocks. In other words, we are building the merger starting with the largest values. The comparison function is defined to return either swapped or same. Of course, this means the arguments need to be given in the order they appear originally in the list.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_sort\_merge\_blocks\_aux: 
{
  \exp_after:wN \__sort_compare:nn \exp_after:wN
  \{ \tex_the:D \tex_toks:D \exp_after:wN \l\_sort\_A\_int \exp_after:wN \}
  \exp_after:wN \{ \tex_the:D \tex_toks:D \l\_sort\_C\_int \}
  \prg_do_nothing:
  \_\_sort\_return\_mark:w
  \_\_sort\_return\_mark:w
  \s\_sort\_mark
  \_\_sort\_return\_none\_error:
}

(End definition for \_\_sort\_merge\_blocks\_aux:.)
Each comparison should call \texttt{\sort_return_same}: or \texttt{\sort_return_swapped}: exactly once. If neither is called, \texttt{\sort_return_none_error}: is called, since the return-\texttt{mark} removes tokens until \texttt{\_sort_return_mark:w}. If one is called, the return\texttt{mark} auxiliary removes everything except \texttt{\_sort_return_same:w} (or its swapped analogue) followed by \texttt{\sort_return_none_error}:. Finally if two or more are called, \texttt{\sort_return_two_error}: ends up before any \texttt{\_sort_return_mark:w}, so that it produces an error.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \sort_return_same: #1 \__sort_return_mark:w #2 \s__sort_mark {
  #1 #2 \__sort_return_two_error:
  \__sort_return_mark:w \s__sort_mark \__sort_return_same:w
}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \sort_return_swapped: #1 \__sort_return_mark:w #2 \s__sort_mark {
  #1 #2 \__sort_return_two_error:
  \__sort_return_mark:w \s__sort_mark \__sort_return_swapped:w
}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__sort_return_mark:w #1 \s__sort_mark { }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__sort_return_none_error: {
  \msg_error:nnxx { sort } { return-none }
  \tex_the:D \tex_toks:D \l__sort_A_int
  \tex_the:D \tex_toks:D \l__sort_C_int
  \__sort_return_same:w \__sort_return_none_error:
}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__sort_return_two_error: {
  \msg_error:nnxx { sort } { return-two }
  \tex_the:D \tex_toks:D \l__sort_A_int
  \tex_the:D \tex_toks:D \l__sort_C_int
}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\sort_return_same}: and others. These functions are documented on page 44.)

\texttt{\_sort_return_same:w} If the comparison function returns \texttt{same}, then the second argument fed to \texttt{\_sort_compare:mm} should remain to the right of the other one. Since we build the merger starting from the right, we copy that \texttt{toks} register into the allotted range, then shift the pointers \texttt{B} and \texttt{C}, and go on to do one more step in the merger, unless the second block has been exhausted: then the remainder of the first block is already in the correct registers and we are done with merging those two blocks.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_sort_return_same:w #1 \_sort_return_none_error: {
  \__sort_toks:D \l__sort_B_int \tex_toks:D \l__sort_C_int
  \int_decr:N \l__sort_B_int
\end{verbatim}
\_\_sort\_return\_swapped:w If the comparison function returns \texttt{swapped}, then the next item to add to the merger is the first argument, contents of the \texttt{\toks} register \texttt{A}. Then shift the pointers \texttt{A} and \texttt{B} to the left, and go for one more step for the merger, unless the left block was exhausted (\texttt{A} goes below the threshold). In that case, all remaining \texttt{\toks} registers in the second block, indexed by \texttt{C}, are copied to the merger by \_\_sort\_merge\_blocks\_end:.

\_\_sort\_merge\_blocks\_end: This function’s task is to copy the \texttt{\toks} registers in the block indexed by \texttt{C} to the merger indexed by \texttt{B}. The end can equally be detected by checking when \texttt{B} reaches the threshold \texttt{begin}, or when \texttt{C} reaches \texttt{top}.

43.5 Expandable sorting

Sorting expandably is very different from sorting and assigning to a variable. Since tokens cannot be stored, they must remain in the input stream, and be read through at every step. It is thus necessarily much slower (at best $O(n^2 \ln n)$) than non-expandable sorting functions ($O(n \ln n)$).

A prototypical version of expandable quicksort is as follows. If the argument has no item, return nothing, otherwise partition, using the first item as a pivot (argument \texttt{#4} of \_\_sort:nnNnn). The arguments of \_\_sort:nnNnn are 1. items less than \texttt{#4}, 2. items greater or equal to \texttt{#4}, 3. comparison, 4. pivot, 5. next item to test. If \texttt{#5} is the tail of
the list, call \tl_sort:nN on \#1 and on \#2, placing \#4 in between; \use:ff expands the parts to make \tl_sort:nN f-expandable. Otherwise, compare \#4 and \#5 using \#3. If they are ordered, place \#5 amongst the “greater” items, otherwise amongst the “lesser” items, and continue partitioning.

\cs_new:Npn \tl_sort:nN \#1\#2
\{%\tl_if_blank:nF {\#1}\{% \__sort:nnNnn { } { } \#2 \#1 \q__sort_recursion_tail \q__sort_recursion_stop \}%\}
\cs_new:Npn \q__sort_recursion_stop\#1\#2\#3\#4\#5
\{% \use:ff \{ \tl_sort:nN {\#1} {\#3} {\#4} \} \{ \tl_sort:nN {\#2} \} \}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \use:nn { ff }

There are quite a few optimizations available here: the code below is less legible, but more than twice as fast.

In the simple version of the code, \__sort:nnNnn is called \(O(n \ln n)\) times on average (the number of comparisons required by the quicksort algorithm). Hence most of our focus is on optimizing that function.

The first speed up is to avoid testing for the end of the list at every call to \__sort:nnNnn. For this, the list is prepared by changing each ⟨item⟩ of the original token list into ⟨command⟩ {⟨item⟩}, just like sequences are stored. We arrange things such that the ⟨command⟩ is the ⟨conditional⟩ provided by the user: the loop over the ⟨prepared tokens⟩ then looks like

\cs_new:Npn \__sort_loop:wNn ... \#6\#7
\{% \#6 {⟨pivot⟩} \#7 ⟨loop big⟩ ⟨loop small⟩ ⟨extra arguments⟩ \}
\__sort_loop:wNn ... ⟨prepared tokens⟩
⟨end-loop⟩ \{\} \s__sort_stop

In this example, which matches the structure of \__sort_quick_split_i:NnnnnNn and a few other functions below, the \__sort_loop:wNn auxiliary normally receives the user’s ⟨conditional⟩ as \#6 and an ⟨item⟩ as \#7. This is compared to the ⟨pivot⟩ (the argument \#5, not shown here), and the ⟨conditional⟩ leaves the ⟨loop big⟩ or ⟨loop small⟩ auxiliary, which both have the same form as \__sort_loop:wNn, receiving the next pair ⟨conditional⟩ ⟨⟨item⟩⟩ as \#6 and \#7. At the end, \#6 is the ⟨end-loop⟩ function, which terminates the loop.

The second speed up is to minimize the duplicated tokens between the true and false branches of the conditional. For this, we introduce two versions of \__sort:nnNnn,
which receive the new item as \( \#1 \) and place it either into the list \( \#2 \) of items less than the pivot \( \#4 \) or into the list \( \#3 \) of items greater or equal to the pivot.

\[
\texttt{\cs_new:Npn \_\_sort\_i:nnnnNn #1#2#3#4#5#6}
\{\texttt{\#5 {#4} {#6} \_\_sort\_ii:nnnnNn \_\_sort\_i:nnnnNn}
\{#6\} \{#2 \{#1\} \{#3\} \{#4\}\}
\}
\]

\[
\texttt{\cs_new:Npn \_\_sort\_ii:nnnnNn #1#2#3#4#5#6}
\{\texttt{\#5 {#4} {#6} \_\_sort\_ii:nnnnNn \_\_sort\_i:nnnnNn}
\{#6\} \{#2\} \{ #3 \{#1\} \} \{#4\}\}
\]

Note that the two functions have the form of \_\_sort\_loop:wNn above, receiving as \( \#5 \) the conditional or a function to end the loop. In fact, the lists \( \#2 \) and \( \#3 \) must be made of pairs \langle\text{conditional}\rangle \{\langle\text{item}\rangle\}, so we have to replace \{\#6\} above by \{ \#5 \{\#6\} \}, and \{\#1\} by \#1. The actual functions have one more argument, so all argument numbers are shifted compared to this code.

The third speed up is to avoid \use:ff using a continuation-passing style: \_\_sort\_quick\_split:NnNn expects a list followed by \s\_\_sort\_mark \langle\text{code}\rangle, and expands to \langle\text{code}\rangle \langle\text{sorted list}\rangle. Sorting the two parts of the list around the pivot is done with

\[
\texttt{\_\_sort\_quick\_split:NnNn #2 ... \_\_sort\_mark}
\{\texttt{\_\_sort\_quick\_split:NnNn #1 ... \_\_sort\_mark} \{\text{code}\}\}
\{\langle\text{pivot}\rangle\}
\]

Items which are larger than the \langle\text{pivot}\rangle are sorted, then placed after code that sorts the smaller items, and after the (braced) \langle\text{pivot}\rangle.

The fourth speed up is avoid the recursive call to \tl_sort:nN with an empty first argument. For this, we introduce functions similar to the \_\_sort\_i:nnnnNn of the last example, but aware of whether the list of \langle\text{conditional}\rangle \{\langle\text{item}\rangle\} read so far that are less than the pivot, and the list of those greater or equal, are empty or not: see \_\_sort\_quick\_split:NnNn and functions defined below. Knowing whether the lists are empty or not is useless if we do not use distinct ending codes as appropriate. The splitting auxiliaries communicate to the \langle\text{end-loop}\rangle function (that is initially placed after the “prepared” list) by placing a specific ending function, ignored when looping, but useful at the end. In fact, the \langle\text{end-loop}\rangle function does nothing but place the appropriate ending function in front of all its arguments. The ending functions take care of sorting non-empty sublists, placing the pivot in between, and the continuation before.

The final change in fact slows down the code a little, but is required to avoid memory issues: schematically, when \TeX\ encounters

\[
\texttt{\use:n \{ \use:n \{ \use:n \{ ... \} ... \} ... \}}
\]

the argument of the first \use:n is not completely read by the second \use:n, hence must remain in memory; then the argument of the second \use:n is not completely read when grabbing the argument of the third \use:n, hence must remain in memory, and so on. The memory consumption grows quadratically with the number of nested \use:n. In
practice, this means that we must read everything until a trailing \texttt{\_sort\_stop} once in a while, otherwise sorting lists of more than a few thousand items would exhaust a typical \TeX's memory.

The code within the \texttt{\exp_not:f} sorts the list, leaving in most cases a leading \texttt{\exp_not:n}, which stops the expansion, letting the result be return within \texttt{\exp_not:n}. We filter out the case of a list with no item, which would otherwise cause problems. Then prepare the token list \#1 by inserting the conditional \#2 before each item. The \texttt{prepare} auxiliary receives the conditional as \#1, the prepared token list so far as \#2, the next prepared item as \#3, and the item after that as \#4. The loop ends when \#4 contains \texttt{\prg_break_point:}, then the \texttt{prepare\_end} auxiliary finds the prepared token list as \#4. The scene is then set up for \texttt{\_sort\_quick\_split:NnN}, which sorts the prepared list and perform the post action placed after \texttt{\_sort\_mark}, namely removing the trailing \texttt{\_sort\_stop} and \texttt{\_sort\_stop} and leaving \texttt{\exp_stop_f:} to stop \texttt{\_exp\textunderscore f} expansion.

\begin{verbatim}
3573 \cs_new:Npn \tl_sort:nN #1#2
3574 { \exp_not:f
3575 { \tl_if_blank:nF {#1} { \__sort\_quick\_prepare:Nnnn #2 { } { } \#1 { } \{ \prg\_break\_point: \__sort\_quick\_prepare\_end:NNNnw } \_sort\_stop } { } \}
3574 }
3575 \cs_new:Npn \__sort\_quick\_prepare:Nnnn #1#2#3#4 #5 \_sort\_stop
3576 { \prg\_break: #4 \prg\_break\_point:
3577 \__sort\_quick\_prepare:Nnnn #1 \{ #2 \#3 \} \{ #1 \#4 \} #5 \_sort\_stop
3578 \cs_new:Npn \__sort\_quick\_prepare\_end:NNNnw #1#2#3 \_sort\_stop
3579 { \__sort\_quick\_split:NnN #4 \__sort\_quick\_end:nnTFNn { } \_sort\_mark \{ \__sort\_quick\_cleanup:w \exp\_stop\_f: \} \_sort\_mark \_sort\_stop
3580 \cs_new:Npn \__sort\_quick\_cleanup:w #1 \_sort\_mark \_sort\_stop {#1}
3581 \end{verbatim}

This function is documented on page 116.)

The \texttt{\_sort\_quick\_split:NnN}, \texttt{\_sort\_quick\_only\_i:NnN}, \texttt{\_sort\_quick\_split\_i:NnnN}, \texttt{\_sort\_quick\_split\_ii:NnnN}, \texttt{\_sort\_quick\_only\_ii:NnnNnN}, \texttt{\_sort\_quick\_split\_ii:NnnNnN}, \texttt{\_sort\_quick\_split\_ii:NnnNnN} auxiliaries receive a useless first argument, the new item \#2 (that they append to either one of the next two arguments), the list \#3 of items less than the pivot, bigger items \#4, the pivot \#5, a ⟨function⟩ \#6, and an item \#7. The ⟨function⟩ is the user's ⟨conditional⟩ except at the end of the list where it is \texttt{\_sort\_quick\_end:nnTFNn}. The comparison is applied to the ⟨pivot⟩ and the ⟨item⟩, and calls the \texttt{\_sort\_quick\_only\_i} or \texttt{\_sort\_split\_i} auxiliaries if the ⟨item⟩ is smaller, and the \texttt{\_sort\_quick\_only\_ii} or \texttt{\_sort\_split\_ii} auxiliaries otherwise. In both cases, the next auxiliary goes to work right away, with no intermediate expansion that would slow down operations. Note that the argument \#2 left for the next call has the form ⟨conditional⟩ {⟨item⟩}, so that the lists \#3 and \#4 keep the right form to be fed to the next sorting function. The \texttt{\_sort\_split\_i} auxiliary
differs from these in that it is missing three of the arguments, which would be empty, and its first argument is always the user’s (conditional) rather than an ending function.

\cs_new:Npn \__sort_quick_split:NnNn #1#2#3#4
\begin{verbatim}
  { #3 {#2} {#4} \__sort_quick_only_i:NNnnNNn
    \__sort_quick_only_i:NNnnNNn
    \__sort_quick_single_end:nnnnN
    { #3 {#4} } { } { } {#2} }
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__sort_quick_only_i:NNnnNNn #1#2#3#4#5#6#7
\begin{verbatim}
  { #6 {#5} {#7} \__sort_quick_split_ii:NNnnNNn
    \__sort_quick_split_i:NNnnNNn
    \__sort_quick_only_i_end:nnnnN
    { #6 {#7} } { #3 #2 } { } {#5} }
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__sort_quick_only_ii:NNnnNNn #1#2#3#4#5#6#7
\begin{verbatim}
  { #6 {#5} {#7} \__sort_quick_split_ii:NNnnNNn
    \__sort_quick_split_i:NNnnNNn
    \__sort_quick_only_ii_end:nnnnN
    { #6 {#7} } { #3 } { #4 #2 } {#5} }
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__sort_quick_split_ii:NNnnNNn #1#2#3#4#5#6#7
\begin{verbatim}
  { #6 {#5} {#7} \__sort_quick_split_ii:NNnnNNn
    \__sort_quick_split_i:NNnnNNn
    \__sort_quick_split_end:nnnnN
    { #6 {#7} } {#3} { #4 #2 } {#5} }
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__sort_quick_split_i:NNnnNNn #1#2#3#4#5#6#7
\begin{verbatim}
  { #6 {#5} {#7} \__sort_quick_split_i:NNnnNNn
    \__sort_quick_split_i_end:nnnnN
    { #6 {#7} } {#3 #2 } {#4} {#5} }
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__sort_quick_split_end:i:NNnnNNn #1#2#3#4#5#6#7
\begin{verbatim}
  { #6 {#5} {#7} \__sort_quick_split_ii:NNnnNNn
    \__sort_quick_split_i:NNnnNNn
    \__sort_quick_split_end:nnnnN
    { #6 {#7} } {#3} {#4 #2 } {#5} }
\end{verbatim}
\__sort_end:nnTFNn \__sort_single_end:nnnnN
\__sort_only_i_end:nnnnN
\__sort_only_ii_end:nnnnN
\__sort_split_end:nnnnN

(End definition for \__sort_quick_split:NnNn and others.)

The \__sort_end:nnTFNn appears instead of the user’s conditional, and receives as its arguments the pivot \#1, a fake item \#2, a true and a false branches \#3 and \#4, followed by an ending function \#5 (one of the four auxiliaries here) and another copy \#6 of the fake item. All those are discarded except the function \#5. This function receives lists \#1 and \#2 of items less than or greater than the pivot \#3, then a continuation code \#5 just after \s__sort_mark. To avoid a memory problem described earlier, all of the ending functions read \#6 until \ss__sort_stop and place \#6 back into the input stream. When the lists \#1 and \#2 are empty, the single auxiliary simply places the continuation \#5 before the pivot \{#3\}. When \#2 is empty, \#1 is sorted and placed before the pivot \{#3\}, taking care to feed the continuation \#5 as a continuation for the function sorting \#1. When \#1 is empty, \#2 is sorted, and the continuation argument is used to place the continuation \#5 and the pivot \{#3\} before the sorted result. Finally, when both
lists are non-empty, items larger than the pivot are sorted, then items less than the pivot, and the continuations are done in such a way to place the pivot in between.

(End definition for \__sort_quick_end:nnTFNn and others.)

43.6 Messages

\__sort_error: Bailing out of the sorting code is a bit tricky. It may not be safe to use a delimited argument, so instead we redefine many \texttt{l3sort} commands to be trivial, with \__sort_level: jumping to the break point. This error recovery won't work in a group.

(End definition for \__sort_error:.)

\__sort_disable_toksdef: While sorting, \texttt{toksdef} is locally disabled to prevent users from using \texttt{newtoks} or similar commands in their comparison code: the \texttt{toks} registers that would be assigned are in use by \texttt{l3sort}. In format mode, none of this is needed since there is no \texttt{toks} allocator.

(End definition for \__sort_disable_toksdef:n.)
When there are too many items in a sequence, this is an error, and we clean up properly
the mapping over items in the list: break using the type-specific breaking function #1.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__sort_too_long_error:NNw #1#2 \fi:
  \msg_error:nnxxx { sort } { too-large }
  { \token_to_str:N \l__sort_true_max_int - \l__sort_min_int } }
  { \token_to_str:N \l__sort_top_int - \l__sort_min_int } }
  #1 \__sort_error:

\msg_new:nnnn { sort } { too-large }
{ The-list=#1-is-too-long-to-be-sorted-by-TeX. }

\msg_new:nnnn { sort } { return-none }
{ The-comparison-code-did-not-return. }

\msg_new:nnnn { sort } { return-two }
{ The-comparison-code-returned-multiple-times. }

(End definition for \__sort_disable_toksdef: and \__sort_disabled_toksdef:n.)
3727  ⟨/package⟩
Chapter 44

\textbf{l3tl-analysis implementation}

\section*{44.1 Internal functions}

\texttt{\textbackslash s\_tl}\quad The format used to store token lists internally uses the scan mark \texttt{\textbackslash s\_tl} as a delimiter.

\textit{(End definition for \texttt{\textbackslash s\_tl}.)}

\section*{44.2 Internal format}

The task of the \texttt{l3tl-analysis} module is to convert token lists to an internal format which allows us to extract all the relevant information about individual tokens (category code, character code), as well as reconstruct the token list quickly. This internal format is used in \texttt{l3regex} where we need to support arbitrary tokens, and it is used in conversion functions in \texttt{l3str-convert}, where we wish to support clusters of characters instead of single tokens.

We thus need a way to encode any \langle\textit{token}\rangle (even begin-group and end-group character tokens) in a way amenable to manipulating tokens individually. The best we can do is to find \langle\textit{tokens}\rangle which both \textit{o}-expand and \textit{x}-expand to the given \langle\textit{token}\rangle. Collecting more information about the category code and character code is also useful for regular expressions, since most regexes are catcode-agnostic. The internal format thus takes the form of a succession of items of the form

\langle\textit{tokens}\rangle \texttt{\textbackslash s\_tl} \langle\textit{catcode}\rangle \langle\textit{char code}\rangle \texttt{\textbackslash s\_tl}

The \langle\textit{tokens}\rangle \textit{o}- and \textit{x}-expand to the original token in the token list or to the cluster of tokens corresponding to one Unicode character in the given encoding (for \texttt{l3str-convert}). The \langle\textit{catcode}\rangle is given as a single hexadecimal digit, 0 for control sequences. The \langle\textit{char code}\rangle is given as a decimal number, -1 for control sequences.

Using delimited arguments lets us build the \langle\textit{tokens}\rangle progressively when doing an encoding conversion in \texttt{l3str-convert}. On the other hand, the delimiter \texttt{\textbackslash s\_tl} may not appear unbraced in \langle\textit{tokens}\rangle. This is not a problem because we are careful to wrap control sequences in braces (as an argument to \texttt{\textbackslash exp\_not:n}) when converting from a general token list to the internal format.

The current rule for converting a \langle\textit{token}\rangle to a balanced set of \langle\textit{tokens}\rangle which both \textit{o}-expands and \textit{x}-expands to it is the following.
• A control sequence \cs becomes \exp_not:n { \cs } \s__tl 0 \nobreakdash-1 \s__tl.

• A begin-group character \{ becomes \exp_after:wN { \if_false: } \fi: \s__tl 1 (\textit{char code}) \s__tl.

• An end-group character } becomes \if_false: { \fi: } \s__tl 2 (\textit{char code}) \s__tl.

• A character with any other category code becomes \exp_not:n { \langle \textit{character} \rangle } \s__tl.

\section*{44.3 Variables and helper functions}

\s__tl

The scan mark \s__tl is used as a delimiter in the internal format. This is more practical
than using a quark, because we would then need to control expansion much more carefully:
compare \int_value:w '#1 \s__tl with \int_value:w '41 \exp_stop_f: \exp_not:N \q_mark to extract a character code followed by the delimiter in an \texttt{x}-expansion.

\begin{Verbatim}
\scan_new:N \s__tl
\end{Verbatim}

(The \texttt{scan} function is used for \s__tl.)

\l__tl_analysis_token
\l__tl_analysis_char_token
\l__tl_analysis_next_token

The tokens in the token list are probed with the \TeX{} primitive \futurelet. We use
\l__tl_analysis_token in that construction. In some cases, we convert the following
token to a string before probing it: then the token variable used is \l__tl_analysis_char_token. When getting tokens from the input stream we may need to look two tokens
ahead, for which we use \l__tl_analysis_next_token.

\begin{Verbatim}
\cs_new_eq:NN \l__tl_analysis_token ?
\cs_new_eq:NN \l__tl_analysis_char_token ?
\cs_new_eq:NN \l__tl_analysis_next_token ?
\end{Verbatim}

(End definition for \l__tl_analysis_token, \l__tl_analysis_char_token, and \l__tl_analysis_next_token.)

\l__tl_peek_code_tl

Holds some code to be run once the next token has been fully analysed in \peek_analysis_map_inline:n.

\begin{Verbatim}
\tl_new:N \l__tl_peek_code_tl
\end{Verbatim}

(End definition for \l__tl_peek_code_tl.)

\c__tl_peek_catcodes_tl

A token list containing the character number 32 (space) with all possible category codes
except 1 and 2 (begin-group and end-group). Why 32? Because some Lua\TeX{} versions
only allow creation of catecode 10 (space) tokens with this character code, and because
even in other engines it is much easier to produce since \texttt{char_generate:nn} refuses to
produce spaces.

\begin{Verbatim}
\group_begin:
\char_set_active_eq:NN \scan_stop:
\tl_const:Nx \c__tl_peek_catcodes_tl
\
{ \char_generate:nn { 32 } { 3 } 3
\char_generate:nn { 32 } { 4 } 4
\char_generate:nn { 32 } { 6 } 6
}
\end{Verbatim}
\_tl_analysis_normal_int The number of normal (N-type argument) tokens since the last special token.
\int_new:N \l__tl_analysis_normal_int
(End definition for \l__tl_analysis_normal_int.)

\_tl_analysis_index_int During the first pass, this is the index in the array being built. During the second pass, it is equal to the maximum index in the array from the first pass.
\int_new:N \l__tl_analysis_index_int
(End definition for \l__tl_analysis_index_int.)

\_tl_analysis_nesting_int Nesting depth of explicit begin-group and end-group characters during the first pass. This lets us detect the end of the token list without a reserved end-marker.
\int_new:N \l__tl_analysis_nesting_int
(End definition for \l__tl_analysis_nesting_int.)

\_tl_analysis_type_int When encountering special characters, we record their “type” in this integer.
\int_new:N \l__tl_analysis_type_int
(End definition for \l__tl_analysis_type_int.)

\tl_analysis_result_tl The result of the conversion is stored in this token list, with a succession of items of the form ⟨tokens⟩ \s__tl ⟨catcode⟩ ⟨char code⟩ \s__tl
\tl_new:N \g__tl_analysis_result_tl
(End definition for \g__tl_analysis_result_tl.)

\tl_analysis_extract_charcode: Extracting the character code from the meaning of \l__tl_analysis_token. This has no error checking, and should only be assumed to work for begin-group and end-group character tokens. It produces a number in the form ‘⟨char⟩’.
\cs_new:Npn \__tl_analysis_extract_charcode: { \exp_after:wN \__tl_analysis_extract_charcode_aux:w \token_to_meaning:N \l__tl_analysis_token } \cs_new:Npn \__tl_analysis_extract_charcode_aux:w #1 - #2 - { ‘ }
(End definition for \__tl_analysis_extract_charcode: and \__tl_analysis_extract_charcode_aux:w.)
Counts the number of spaces in the string representation of its second argument, as well as the number of characters following the last space in that representation, and feeds the two numbers as semicolon-delimited arguments to the first argument. When this function is used, the escape character is printable and non-space.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__tl_analysis_cs_space_count:NN #1 #2
\{\exp_after:wN #1 \\int_value:w \\int_eval:w 0 \exp_after:wN \\__tl_analysis_cs_space_count:w \token_to_str:N #2 \fi: \__tl_analysis_cs_space_count_end:w \ ; \ - ! \}
\cs_new:Npn \__tl_analysis_cs_space_count:w #1 ~
\{\if_false: #1 \fi: + 1 \__tl_analysis_cs_space_count:w \}
\cs_new:Npn \__tl_analysis_cs_space_count_end:w \ ; \ #1 \fi: \ #2 ! \{ \exp_after:wN ; \\int_value:w \\str_count_ignore_spaces:n \{#1\} ; \}
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{End definition for }\__tl_analysis_cs_space_count:NN, \__tl_analysis_cs_space_count:w, \textit{and }\__tl_analysis_cs_space_count_end:w.

\subsection*{44.4 Plan of attack}

Our goal is to produce a token list of the form roughly

\[
\langle \text{token 1} \rangle \ \text{s__tl} \ \langle \text{catcode 1} \rangle \ \langle \text{char code 1} \rangle \ \text{s__tl} \\
\langle \text{token 2} \rangle \ \text{s__tl} \ \langle \text{catcode 2} \rangle \ \langle \text{char code 2} \rangle \ \text{s__tl} \\
\ldots \ \langle \text{token N} \rangle \ \text{s__tl} \ \langle \text{catcode N} \rangle \ \langle \text{char code N} \rangle \ \text{s__tl}
\]

Most but not all tokens can be grabbed as an undelimited (N-type) argument by \TeX. The plan is to have a two pass system. In the first pass, locate special tokens, and store them in various \texttt{toks} registers. In the second pass, which is done within an \texttt{x}-expanding assignment, normal tokens are taken in as N-type arguments, and special tokens are retrieved from the \texttt{toks} registers, and removed from the input stream by some means. The whole process takes linear time, because we avoid building the result one item at a time.

We make the escape character printable (backslash, but this later oscillates between slash and backslash): this allows us to distinguish characters from control sequences.

A token has two characteristics: its \texttt{\meaning}, and what it looks like for \TeX{} when it is in scanning mode (\textit{e.g.}, when capturing parameters for a macro). For our purposes, we distinguish the following meanings:

\begin{itemize}
  \item begin-group token (category code 1), either space (character code 32), or non-space;
  \item end-group token (category code 2), either space (character code 32), or non-space;
  \item space token (category code 10, character code 32);
  \item anything else (then the token is always an \texttt{N}-type argument).
\end{itemize}

The token itself can “look like” one of the following.
• a non-active character, in which case its meaning is automatically that associated
to its character code and category code, we call it “true” character;
• an active character;
• a control sequence.

The only tokens which are not valid \( N \)-type arguments are true begin-group characters,
true end-group characters, and true spaces. We detect those characters by scanning
ahead with \futurelet, then distinguishing true characters from control sequences set
equal to them using the \string representation.

The second pass is a simple exercise in expandable loops.

\_\_tl_analysis:n

Everything is done within a group, and all definitions are local. We use \group_align_safe\_begin/end: to avoid problems in case \_\_tl_analysis:n is used within an align-
ment and its argument contains alignment tab tokens.

3767 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_tl_analysis:n #1
3768 \{ \group_begin:
3769 \group_align_safe_begin:
3770 \_\_tl_analysis_a:n {#1}
3771 \_\_tl_analysis_b:n {#1}
3772 \group_align_safe_end:
3773 \group_end:
3774 \}

(End definition for \_\_tl_analysis:n.)

\_\_tl_analysis_disable:n

Active characters can cause problems later on in the processing, so we provide a way to
disable them, by setting them to \undefined. Since Unicode contains too many characters
to loop over all of them, we instead do this whenever we encounter a character. For p\TeX
and up\TeX we skip characters beyond [0, 255] because \lccode only allows those values.

3776 \group_begin:
3777 \char_set_catcode_active:N \^^@
3778 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_tl_analysis_disable:n #1
3779 \{ \group_begin:
3780 \tex_lccode:D 0 = #1 \exp_stop_f:
3781 \tex_lowercase:D { \tex_let:D \^^@ } \tex_undefined:D
3782 \}
3783 \bool_lazy_or:nnT
3784 \{ \sys_if_engine_ptex_p: \}
3785 \{ \sys_if_engine_uptex_p: \}
3786 \{ \cs_gset_protected:Npn \_\_tl_analysis_disable:n #1
3787 \{ \if_int_compare:w 256 > #1 \exp_stop_f:
3788 \tex_lccode:D 0 = #1 \exp_stop_f:
3789 \tex_lowercase:D { \tex_let:D \^^@ } \tex_undefined:D
3790 \fi: \}
3791 \}
3792 \group_end:

44.5 Disabling active characters
44.6 First pass

The goal of this pass is to detect special (non-N-type) tokens, and count how many N-type tokens lie between special tokens. Also, we wish to store some representation of each special token in a \toks register.

We have 11 types of tokens:

1. a true non-space begin-group character;
2. a true space begin-group character;
3. a true non-space end-group character;
4. a true space end-group character;
5. a true space blank space character;
6. an active character;
7. any other true character;
8. a control sequence equal to a begin-group token (category code 1);
9. a control sequence equal to an end-group token (category code 2);
10. a control sequence equal to a space token (character code 32, category code 10);
11. any other control sequence.

Our first tool is \futurelet. This cannot distinguish case 8 from 1 or 2, nor case 9 from 3 or 4, nor case 10 from case 5. Those cases are later distinguished by applying the \string primitive to the following token, after possibly changing the escape character to ensure that a control sequence’s string representation cannot be mistaken for the true character.

In cases 6, 7, and 11, the following token is a valid N-type argument, so we grab it and distinguish the case of a character from a control sequence: in the latter case, \str_tail:n \{token\} is non-empty, because the escape character is printable.

We read tokens one by one using \futurelet. While performing the loop, we keep track of the number of true begin-group characters minus the number of true end-group characters in \tl_analysis_nesting_int. This reaches −1 when we read the closing brace.
Read one character and check its type.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__tl_analysis_a_loop:w
\{ \tex_futurelet:D \l__tl_analysis_token \__tl_analysis_a_type:w \}

At this point, \l__tl_analysis_token holds the meaning of the following token. We store in \l__tl_analysis_type_int information about the meaning of the token ahead:

- 0 space token;
- 1 begin-group token;
- -1 end-group token;
- 2 other.

The values 0, 1, -1 correspond to how much a true such character changes the nesting level (2 is used only here, and is irrelevant later). Then call the auxiliary for each case. Note that nesting conditionals here is safe because we only skip over \l__tl_analysis_token if it matches with one of the character tokens (hence is not a primitive conditional).

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__tl_analysis_a_type:w
\begin{verbatim}
\l__tl_analysis_type_int =
  \if_meaning:w \l__tl_analysis_token \c_space_token 0
  \else:
    \if_catcode:w \exp_not:N \l__tl_analysis_token \c_group_begin_token 1
      \else:
        \if_catcode:w \exp_not:N \l__tl_analysis_token \c_group_end_token -1
          \else:
            2
          \fi:
        \fi:
      \fi:
    \fi:
  \fi:
\exp_stop_f:
\if_case:w \l__tl_analysis_type_int
  \exp_after:wN \__tl_analysis_a_space:w
  \or: \exp_after:wN \__tl_analysis_a_bgroup:w
  \or: \exp_after:wN \__tl_analysis_a_safe:N
  \else: \exp_after:wN \__tl_analysis_a_egroup:w
\fi:
\end{verbatim}

In this branch, the following token's meaning is a blank space. Apply \texttt{string} to that token: a true blank space gives a space, a control sequence gives a result starting with the escape character, an active character gives something else than a space since we disabled the space. We grab as \l__tl_analysis_char_token the first character of the string representation then test it in \__tl_analysis_a_space_test:w. Also, since
\__tl_analysis_a_store: expects the special token to be stored in the relevant \toks register, we do that. The extra \exp_not:n is unnecessary of course, but it makes the treatment of all tokens more homogeneous. If we discover that the next token was actually a control sequence or an active character instead of a true space, then we step the counter of normal tokens. We now have in front of us the whole string representation of the control sequence, including potential spaces; those will appear to be true spaces later in this pass. Hence, all other branches of the code in this first pass need to consider the string representation, so that the second pass does not need to test the meaning of tokens, only strings.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__tl_analysis_a_space:w
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__tl_analysis_a_space_test:w
\__tl_analysis_a_bgroup:w
\__tl_analysis_a_egroup:w
\__tl_analysis_a_group:nw
\__tl_analysis_a_group_aux:w
\__tl_analysis_a_group_auxii:w
\__tl_analysis_a_group_test:w
\__tl_analysis_a_loop:w
\__tl_analysis_extract_charcode:
\__tl_analysis_index_int
\if_meaning:w \l__tl_analysis_char_token \c_space_token
\int_incr:N \l__tl_analysis_normal_int
\__tl_analysis_a_loop:w
\text_toks:D \l__tl_analysis_index_int { \exp_not:n { ~ } }
\__tl_analysis_a_store:
\__tl_analysis_a_loop:w
\if_int_compare:w \tex_lccode:D 0 = \tex_escapechar:D
\int_set:Nn \tex_escapechar:D { 139 - \tex_escapechar:D }
\end{definition for \__tl_analysis_a_space:w and \__tl_analysis_a_space_test:w.}

The token is most likely a true character token with catcode 1 or 2, but it might be a control sequence, or an active character. Optimizing for the first case, we store in a toks register some code that expands to that token. Since we will turn what follows into a string, we make sure the escape character is different from the current character code (by switching between solidus and backslash). To detect the special case of an active character let to the catcode 1 or 2 character with the same character code, we disable the active character with that character code and re-test: if the following token has become undefined we can in fact safely grab it. We are finally ready to turn what follows to a string and test it. This is one place where we need \l__tl_analysis_char_token to be a separate control sequence from \l__tl_analysis_token, to compare them.

\group_begin:
\char_set_catcode_group_begin:N "\% { \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tl_analysis_a_bgroup:w
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__tl_analysis_a_egroup:w
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__tl_analysis_a_group:nw
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__tl_analysis_a_group Aux:w
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__tl_analysis_a_group_test:w
\group_end:
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__tl_analysis_a_group:nw #1
\if_int_compare:w \tex_lccode:D 0 = \__tl_analysis_extract_charcode: \scan_stop:
\tex_lowercase:D { \tex_toks:D \l__tl_analysis_index_int {#1} }
\if_int_compare:w \tex_lccode:D 0 = \tex_escapechar:D
\int_set:Nn \tex_escapechar:D { 139 - \tex_escapechar:D }

432
\_\_tl_analysis_disable:n \{ tex_lrcode:D 0 \}
\tex_futurelet:D \_\_tl_analysis_token \_\_tl_analysis_a_group_aux:w
\}
cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_tl_analysis_a_group_aux:w
\{
  \if_meaning:w \_\_tl_analysis_token tex_undefined:D
    \exp_after:wN \_\_tl_analysis_a_safe:N
  \else:
    \exp_after:wN \_\_tl_analysis_a_group_auxii:w
  \fi:
\}
cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_tl_analysis_a_group_auxii:w
\{
  \tex_afterassignment:D \_\_tl_analysis_a_group_test:w
  \exp_after:wN \cs_set_eq:NN \exp_after:wN \l\_\_tl_analysis_char_token
token_to_str:N
\}
cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_tl_analysis_a_group_test:w
\{
  \if_charcode:w \_\_tl_analysis_token \_\_tl_analysis_char_token
    \_\_tl_analysis_a_store:
  \else:
    \int_incr:N \_\_tl_analysis_normal_int
  \fi:
  \_\_tl_analysis_a_loop:w
\}
(End definition for \_\_tl_analysis_a_bgroup:w and others.)
\_\_tl_analysis_a_store:
This function is called each time we meet a special token; at this point, the \toks register \_\_tl_analysis_index_int holds a token list which expands to the given special token. Also, the value of \_\_tl_analysis_type_int indicates which case we are in:

- -1 end-group character;
- 0 space character;
- 1 begin-group character.

We need to distinguish further the case of a space character (code 32) from other character codes, because those behave differently in the second pass. Namely, after testing the \lrcode of 0 (which holds the present character code) we change the cases above to

- -2 space end-group character;
- -1 non-space end-group character;
- 0 space blank space character;
- 1 non-space begin-group character;
- 2 space begin-group character.
This has the property that non-space characters correspond to odd values of \_tl\_analysis\_type\_int. The number of normal tokens until here and the type of special token are packed into a \skip register. Finally, we check whether we reached the last closing brace, in which case we stop by disabling the looping function (locally).

\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_tl\_analysis\_a\_store:
\begin{verbatim}
	\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_tl\_analysis\_a\_store:
\end{verbatim}

\_tl\_analysis\_safe:N
\_tl\_analysis\_a\_cs:ww

This should be the simplest case: since the upcoming token is safe, we can simply grab it in a second pass. If the token is a single character (including space), the \if_charcode:w test yields true; we disable a potentially active character (that could otherwise masquerade as the true character in the next pass) and we count one “normal” token. On the other hand, if the token is a control sequence, we should replace it by its string representation for compatibility with other code branches. Instead of slowly looping through the characters with the main code, we use the knowledge of how the second pass works: if the control sequence name contains no space, count that token as a number of normal tokens equal to its string length. If the control sequence contains spaces, they should be registered as special characters by increasing \_tl\_analysis\_index\_int (no need to carefully count character between each space), and all characters after the last space should be counted in the following sequence of “normal” tokens.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_tl\_analysis\_a\_safe:N #1
\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_tl\_analysis\_a\_safe:N #1
\end{verbatim}

434
44.7 Second pass

The second pass is an exercise in expandable loops. All the necessary information is stored in \texttt{skip} and \texttt{toks} registers.

Start the loop with the index 0. No need for an end-marker: the loop stops by itself when the last index is read. We repeatedly oscillate between reading long stretches of normal tokens, and reading special tokens.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_tl_analysis_b:n #1
    { \__kernel_tl_gset:Nx \g__tl_analysis_result_tl
        { \_tl_analysis_b_loop:w 0; #1
            \prg_break_point: } }
\cs_new:Npn \_tl_analysis_b_loop:w #1;
    { \exp_after:wN \_tl_analysis_b_normals:ww
        \int_value:w \tex_skip:D #1 ; #1 ; }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \_tl_analysis_a_safe:N and \_tl_analysis_a_cs:ww.)

\begin{verbatim}
\_tl_analysis_b_normals:ww \_tl_analysis_b_normal:wwN
The first argument is the number of normal tokens which remain to be read, and the second argument is the index in the array produced in the first step. A character’s string representation is always one character long, while a control sequence is always longer (we have set the escape character to a printable value). In both cases, we leave \texttt{\exp_not:n \{\texttt{token}\}} \texttt{s\textunderscore tl} in the input stream (after \texttt{x-expansion}). Here, \texttt{\exp_not:n} is used rather than \texttt{\exp_not:N} because \#3 could be a macro parameter character or could be \texttt{s\textunderscore tl} (which must be hidden behind braces in the result).
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_tl_analysis_b_normals:ww #1;
    { \if_int_compare:w #1 \c_zero_int
        \_tl_analysis_b_special:w
        \fi:
        \_tl_analysis_b_normal:wwN #1; }
\cs_new:Npn \_tl_analysis_b_normal:wwN #1; #2; #3
    { \exp_not:n \{ \exp_not:n \{ #3 \} \} \s\_tl
\end{verbatim}

435
\if_charcode:w
\scan_stop:
\exp_after:wN \use_none:n \token_to_str:N #3 \prg_do_nothing:
\scan_stop:
\exp_after:wN \__tl_analysis_b_char:Nww
\else:
\exp_after:wN \__tl_analysis_b_char:Nww
\fi:
#3 #1; #2;
}

(End definition for \__tl_analysis_b_normals:ww and \__tl_analysis_b_normal:ww.)

\__tl_analysis_b_char:Nww
If the normal token we grab is a character, leave \langle catcode \rangle \langle charcode \rangle followed by \s\_tl in the input stream, and call \__tl_analysis_b_normals:ww with its first argument decremented.

\cs_new:Npx \__tl_analysis_b_char:Nww #1
{\exp_not:N \if_meaning:w #1 \exp_not:N \tex_undefined:D
\token_to_str:N D \exp_not:N \else:
\exp_not:N \if_catcode:w #1 \c_catcode_other_token
\token_to_str:N C \exp_not:N \else:
\exp_not:N \if_catcode:w #1 \c_catcode_letter_token
\token_to_str:N B \exp_not:N \else:
\exp_not:N \if_catcode:w #1 \c_math_toggle_token 3
\exp_not:N \else:
\exp_not:N \if_catcode:w #1 \c_alignment_token 4
\exp_not:N \else:
\exp_not:N \if_catcode:w #1 \c_math_superscript_token 7
\exp_not:N \else:
\exp_not:N \if_catcode:w #1 \c_math_subscript_token 8
\exp_not:N \else:
\exp_not:N \if_catcode:w #1 \c_space_token
\token_to_str:N A \exp_not:N \else:
6
\exp_not:n { \fi: \fi: \fi: \fi: \fi: \fi: \fi: }
\exp_not:N \int_value:w '#1 \s\_tl
\exp_not:N \exp_after:wN \exp_not:N \__tl_analysis_b_normals:ww
\exp_not:N \int_value:w \exp_not:N \int_eval:w - 1 +}

(End definition for \__tl_analysis_b_char:Nww.)

\__tl_analysis_b_cs:Nww
\__tl_analysis_b_cs_test:ww
If the token we grab is a control sequence, leave 0 -1 (as category code and character code) in the input stream, and call \__tl_analysis_b_normals:ww with updated arguments.

\cs_new:Npx \__tl_analysis_b_cs:Nww \__tl_analysis_b_cs_test:ww #1
{0 -1 \s\_tl
\__tl_analysis_cs_space_count:NN \__tl_analysis_b_cs_test:ww #1}
\cs_new:Npx \__tl_analysis_b_cs_test:ww #1 ; #2 ; #3 ; #4 ;
{\exp_after:wN \__tl_analysis_b_normals:ww

436
Here, \#1 is the current index in the array built in the first pass. Check now whether we reached the end (we shouldn’t keep the trailing end-group character that marked the end of the token list in the first pass). Unpack the \toks register: when x-expanding again, we will get the special token. Then leave the category code in the input stream, followed by the character code, and call \_\_tl_analysis_b_loop:w with the next index.

\group_begin
\char_set_catcode_other:N A
\cs_new:Npn \_\_tl_analysis_b_special:w \_\_tl_analysis_b_special_char:w \_\_tl_analysis_b_special_space:w
\fi: \_\_tl_analysis_b_normal:wwN 0 ; \#1 ;}
{\fi: \_\_tl_analysis_b_normal:wwN \#1 ; 
{\fi:}
\char_set_catcode_other:N A
\cs_new:Npn \_\_tl_analysis_b_special:w \_\_tl_analysis_b_special_char:w \_\_tl_analysis_b_special_space:w

(End definition for \_\_tl_analysis_b_cs:Nww and \_\_tl_analysis_b_cs_test:ww.)
44.8 Mapping through the analysis

First obtain the analysis of the token list into \texttt{\_\_tl_analysis_result_tl}. To allow nested mappings, increase the nesting depth \texttt{\_\_kernel_prg_map_int} (shared between all modules), then define the looping macro, which has a name specific to that nesting depth. That looping grabs the \texttt{⟨tokens⟩}, \texttt{⟨catcode⟩} and \texttt{⟨char code⟩}; it checks for the end of the loop with \texttt{\use{none}{##2}}, normally empty, but which becomes \texttt{\tl_map_break:} at the end; it then performs the user’s code \texttt{#2}, and loops by calling itself. When the loop ends, remember to decrease the nesting depth.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \tl_analysis_map_inline:nn #1
\{ \__tl_analysis:n {#1} \int_gincr:N \g__kernel_prg_map_int \exp_args:Nc \__tl_analysis_map_inline_aux:Nn \{ \_tl_analysis_map_inline_ \int_use:N \g__kernel_prg_map_int :wNw \} \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \tl_analysis_map_inline:Nn #1
{ \exp_args:No \tl_analysis_map_inline:nn #1 }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__tl_analysis_map_inline_aux:Nn #1#2
{ \cs_gset_protected:Npn #1 ##1 \s__tl ##2 ##3 \s__tl
\{ \use{none}{##2} \__tl_analysis_map_inline_aux:nnn {##1} {##3} {##2} \}
\cs_gset_protected:Npn \__tl_analysis_map_inline_aux:nnn ##1##2##3
{ \#2 \#1 \exp_after:wN #1 \g__tl_analysis_result_tl \s__tl { ? \tl_map_break: } \s__tl \prg_break_point:Nn \tl_map_break: \{ \int_gdecr:N \g__kernel_prg_map_int \} \}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\_\_tl_analysis_map_inline:nn} and others. These functions are documented on page 45.)

44.9 Showing the results

Add to \texttt{\_\_tl_analysis:n} a third pass to display tokens to the terminal. If the token list variable is not defined, throw the same error as \texttt{\tl_show:N} by simply calling that function.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npm \tl_analysis_show:N
\{ \_\_tl_analysis_show:N \msg_show:nnxxxx \tl_show:N \}
\cs_new_protected:Npm \tl_analysis_log:N
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\_\_tl_analysis_map_inline:nn} and others. These functions are documented on page 45.)
\tl_analysis_show:n
\tl_analysis_log:n
__tl_analysis_show:Nn

Here, \#1 o- and x-expands to the token; \#2 is the category code (one uppercase hexadecimal digit), 0 for control sequences; \#3 is the character code, which we ignore. In the cases of control sequences and active characters, the meaning may overflow one line, and we want to truncate it. Those cases are thus separated out.
\__tl_analysis_show_loop:wNw

(End definition for \__tl_analysis_show: and \__tl_analysis_show_loop:wNw.)

\__tl_analysis_show_normal:n

Non-active characters are a simple matter of printing the character, and its meaning. Our test suite checks that begin-group and end-group characters do not mess up \TeX’s alignment status.

\cs_new:Npn \__tl_analysis_show_normal:n #1
\exp_after:wN \token_to_str:N #1 ~
( \exp_after:wN \token_to_meaning:N #1 )

(End definition for \__tl_analysis_show_normal:n.)

\__tl_analysis_show_value:N

This expands to the value of #1 if it has any.

\cs_new:Npn \__tl_analysis_show_value:N #1
\token_if_expandable:NF #1
{ \token_if_chardef:NTF #1 \prg_break: { }
\token_if_mathchardef:NTF #1 \prg_break: { }
\token_if_dim_register:NTF #1 \prg_break: { }
\token_if_int_register:NTF #1 \prg_break: { }
\token_if_skip_register:NTF #1 \prg_break: { }
\token_if_toks_register:NTF #1 \prg_break: { }
\use_none:nnn
\prg_break_point:
\use:n { \exp_after:wN = \tex_the:D #1 }
}

(End definition for \__tl_analysis_show_value:N.)

\__tl_analysis_show_cs:n
\__tl_analysis_show_active:n
\__tl_analysis_show_long:nn
\__tl_analysis_show_long_aux:nnnn

Control sequences and active characters are printed in the same way, making sure not to go beyond the \l_iow_line_count_int. In case of an overflow, we replace the last characters by \c__tl_analysis_show_etc_str.

\cs_new:Npn \__tl_analysis_show_cs:n #1
\exp_args:No \__tl_analysis_show_long:nn {#1} { control~sequence= }
\cs_new:Npn \__tl_analysis_show_active:n #1
\exp_args:No \__tl_analysis_show_long:nn {#1} { active~character= }
\cs_new:Npn \__tl_analysis_show_long:nn #1
\cs_new:Npn \__tl_analysis_show_long_aux:nnnn #1#2#3#4
{ \int_compare:nNnTF
\str_count:n { #1 - ( #4 #2 #3 ) } > { \l_iow_line_count_int - 3 }

440
44.10 Peeking ahead

The break statements use the general \prg_map_break:Nn.

\peek_analysis_map_break:
\peek_analysis_map_break:n

After a call to \futurelet \l__tl_analysis_token followed by a stringified character token (either explicit space or catcode other character), grab the argument and pass it to #1. We only need to do anything in the case of a space.

\peek_analysis_map_inline:n
\peek_analysis_map_loop:NNN
\peek_analysis_map_test:
\peek_analysis_map_normal:N
\peek_analysis_map_char:N
\peek_analysis_map_char_aux:N
\peek_analysis_map_special:
\peek_analysis_map_retest:
\peek_analysis_map_next:
\peek_analysis_map_str:w
\peek_analysis_map_str:n
\peek_analysis_map_active_str:n
\peek_analysis_map_explicit:n
\peek_analysis_map_escape:
\peek_analysis_map_collect:w
\peek_analysis_map_collect:n
\peek_analysis_map_collect_loop:
\peek_analysis_map_collect_test:
\peek_analysis_map_collect_end:NNN

Save the user’s code in a control sequence that is suitable for nested maps. We may wish to pass to this function an \outer control sequence or active character; for this we will undefine potentially-\outer tokens within a group, closed after the function receives its arguments. This user’s code function also calls the loop auxiliary, and includes the trailing \prg_break_point:Nn for when the user wants to stop the loop. The loop auxiliary must remove that break point because it must look at the input stream.

\peek_analysis_map_inline:n
\peek_analysis_map_loop:NNN
\peek_analysis_map_test:
\peek_analysis_map_normal:N
\peek_analysis_map_char:N
\peek_analysis_map_char_aux:N
\peek_analysis_map_special:
\peek_analysis_map_retest:
\peek_analysis_map_next:
\peek_analysis_map_str:w
\peek_analysis_map_str:n
\peek_analysis_map_active_str:n
\peek_analysis_map_explicit:n
\peek_analysis_map_escape:
\peek_analysis_map_collect:w
\peek_analysis_map_collect:n
\peek_analysis_map_collect_loop:
\peek_analysis_map_collect_test:
The loop starts a group (closed by the user-code function defined above) with a normalized escape character, and checks if the next token is special or \texttt{N}-type.

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__tl_peek_analysis_loop:NNn \#1 \#2 \#3
{
    \group_begin:
    \tl_set:Nx \l__tl_peek_code_tl
    \exp_not:c
    { \__tl_analysis_map_ \int_use:N \g__kernel_prg_map_int :nnN }
    \int_set:Nn \tex_escapechar:D { \char 34 }
    \peek_after:Nw \__tl_peek_analysis_test:
}
```

Normal tokens are not too hard, but can be \texttt{\textbackslash outer}, hence the \texttt{\exp_not:N} in the code above. If the token is expandable then it might be an \texttt{\textbackslash outer} or a TeX conditional, so to be safe we set it to \texttt{\scan_stop:} (the assignment is local and stopped by the \texttt{\group_end:} upon calling the user’s code). Then distinguish characters (including active ones and macro parameter characters) from control sequences (whose string representation is more than one character because the escape character is printable). For a control sequence call the user code with suitable arguments.

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__tl_peek_analysis_normal:N \#1
{
    \if_int_odd:w \if_catcode:w \exp_not:N \l_peek_token \c_zero_int \fi:
        \if_catcode:w \exp_not:N \l_peek_token \c_zero_int \fi:
        \if_meaning:w \l_peek_token \c_space_token \c_zero_int \fi:
        \c_one_int
        \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \__tl_peek_analysis_normal:N
    \else:
        \exp_after:wN \__tl_peek_analysis_special:
        \fi:
}
```
For special characters the idea is to eventually act with `\token_to_str:N`, then pick up one by one the characters of this string representation until hitting the token that follows. First determine the character code of (the meaning of) the ⟨token⟩ (which we know is a special token), make sure the escape character is different from it, normalize the meanings of two active characters and the empty control sequence, and filter out these cases in `\__tl_peak_analysis_retest:`.

At this point we know the meaning of the ⟨token⟩ in the input stream is `\l_peek_`
token, either a space (32, 10) or a begin-group or end-group token (catcode 1 or 2),
and we excluded a few cases that would be difficult later (empty control sequence, active
character with the same character code as its meaning or as the escape character). Now
look at the (next token) following it using a combination of \afterassignment and \futurelet. The syntax of this primitive is \futurelet (peek token) (first token) (next
token), and it sets (peek token) equal to (next token). Traditionally, one takes (first
token) to be some macro that regains control of the code and, e.g., analyses (peek token).
Here, both (first token) and (next token) are mostly unknown tokens in the input stream
(but we know the (first token) has catcode 1, 2 or 10), where (first token) was already
stored as \l_peek_token, and we regain control using \afterassignment, which inserts
its argument after the assignment, hence after (peek token) but before (first token).

4270 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tl_peek_analysis_next:
4271 { \tl_if_empty:oT { \tex_the:D \tex_everyeof:D }
4272 { \tex_everyeof:D { \scan_stop: } }
4273 \tex_afterassignment:D \_tl_peek_analysis_str:
4274 \tex_futurelet:D \_tl_peek_analysis_next_token
4275 }
4276
4277 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tl_peek_analysis_str:
4278 { \exp_after:wN \tex_futurelet:D
4279 \exp_after:wN \l__tl_analysis_token
4280 \exp_after:wN \_tl_peek_analysis_str:w
4281 \token_to_str:N
4282 }
4283 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tl_peek_analysis_str:w #1
4284 { \__tl_analysis_char_arg:Nw \__tl_peek_analysis_str:n #1
4285 }
4286 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tl_peek_analysis_str:n #1
4287 { \int_case:nnF { '#1 }
4288 { \l__tl_peek_charcode_int }
4289 { \_tl_peek_analysis_explicit:n {#1} }
4290 { \tex_escapechar:D } { \_tl_peek_analysis_escape: }
4291 }
4292 \_tl_peek_analysis_active_str:n {#1} }
4293 }
4294
4295 When #1 is a stringified active character we pass appropriate arguments to the user’s
code; thankfully \char_generate:nn can make active characters.

4296 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tl_peek_analysis_active_str:n #1
4297 { \tl_put_right:Nx \l__tl_peek_code_tl
4298 { \char_generate:nn { '#1 } { 13 } }
4299 { \int_value:w '#1 }
When \#1 matches the character we had extracted from the meaning of \l_{\text{peek_token}},
the token was an explicit character, which can be a standard space, or a begin-group or
end-group character with some character code. In the latter two cases we call \texttt{char\_generate:nn}
with suitable arguments and put suitable \texttt{if\_false: \fi:} constructions
to make the result balanced and such that o-expanding or x-expanding gives back a single
(unbalanced) begin-group or end-group character.

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__tl_peek_analysis_explicit:n \#1
\tl_put_right:Nx \l__tl_peek_code_tl
\{\if_meaning:w \l_{\text{peek_token}} \c{\text{space_token}}
\else:\if_catcode:w \l_{\text{peek_token}} \c{\text{group_begin_token}}
\exp_not:N \exp_after:wN
\char_generate:nn { \#1 } { 1 }
\exp_not:N \if\_false: \fi:
\exp_not:N \fi:
\{ \int_value:w \#1 \}
1 \else:
\exp_not:N \if\_false:
\exp_not:N \fi:
\exp_not:N \fi:
\char_generate:nn { \#1 } { 2 }
\}
\{ \int_value:w \#1 \}
2 \fi:
\fi:
\}
\l__tl_peek_code_tl
```

Finally there is the case of a special token whose string representation starts with an
escape character, namely the token was a control sequence. In that case we could have
grabbed the token directly as an \texttt{N}-type argument, but of course we couldn’t know that
until we had run all the various tests including stringifying the token. We are thus
left with the hard work of picking up one by one the characters in the \texttt{csname} (being
careful about spaces), until finding a token that matches the \texttt{⟨next token⟩} picked up
earlier (which was not stringified), such that the control sequence that we found so far
indeed has the expected meaning \l_{\text{peek_token}}. This comparison with \l_{\text{peek\_token}}
catches a reasonably common case like \texttt{\c{\text{group_begin_token}} _} in which the
trailing \_ has category code other: without comparison of the constructed \texttt{csname} with
The token list would stop at \c, which is wrong.

44.11 Messages

When a control sequence (or active character) and its meaning are too long to fit in one line of the terminal, the end is replaced by this token list.

(End definition for \peek_analysis_map_inline:n and others. This function is documented on page 194.)
(End definition for \c_tl_analysis_show_etc_str.)
\msg_new:nnn { tl } { show-analysis }
\{
\begin{Verbatim}
\The-token-list- \tl_if_empty:nF {#1} { #1 ~ }
\tl_if_empty:nTF {#2}
\{ is-empty \}
\{ contains-the-tokens: #2 \}
\}
\end{Verbatim}
\end{Verbatim}
\}
Chapter 45

l3regex implementation

45.1 Plan of attack

Most regex engines use backtracking. This allows to provide very powerful features (back-references come to mind first), but it is costly, and raises the problem of catastrophic backtracking. Since \TeX is not first and foremost a programming language, complicated code tends to run slowly, and we must use faster, albeit slightly more restrictive, techniques, coming from automata theory.

Given a regular expression of \( n \) characters, we do the following:

• (Compiling.) Analyse the regex, finding invalid input, and convert it to an internal representation.

• (Building.) Convert the compiled regex to a non-deterministic finite automaton (NFA) with \( O(n) \) states which accepts precisely token lists matching that regex.

• (Matching.) Loop through the query token list one token (one “position”) at a time, exploring in parallel every possible path (“active thread”) through the NFA, considering active threads in an order determined by the quantifiers’ greediness.

We use the following vocabulary in the code comments (and in variable names).

• Group: index of the capturing group, \(-1\) for non-capturing groups.

• Position: each token in the query is labelled by an integer \( \langle \text{position} \rangle \), with \( \minpos - 1 \leq \langle \text{position} \rangle \leq \maxpos \). The lowest and highest positions \( \minpos - 1 \) and \( \maxpos \) correspond to imaginary begin and end markers (with non-existent category code and character code). \( \maxpos \) is only set quite late in the processing.

• Query: the token list to which we apply the regular expression.

• State: each state of the NFA is labelled by an integer \( \langle \text{state} \rangle \) with \( \minstate \leq \langle \text{state} \rangle < \maxstate \).

• Active thread: state of the NFA that is reached when reading the query token list for the matching. Those threads are ordered according to the greediness of quantifiers.
• **Step**: used when matching, starts at 0, incremented every time a character is read, and is not reset when searching for repeated matches. The integer `\_\_\_regex_step_int` is a unique id for all the steps of the matching algorithm.

We use \texttt{l3intarray} to manipulate arrays of integers. We also abuse \TeX’s \texttt{toks} registers, by accessing them directly by number rather than tying them to control sequence using the \texttt{\newtoks} allocation functions. Specifically, these arrays and \texttt{toks} are used as follows. When building, \texttt{toks(state)} holds the tests and actions to perform in the \texttt{⟨state⟩} of the NFA. When matching,

- \texttt{\_\_\_regex_state_active_intarray} holds the last \texttt{⟨step⟩} in which each \texttt{⟨state⟩} was active.
- \texttt{\_\_\_regex_thread_info_intarray} consists of blocks for each \texttt{⟨thread⟩} (with \texttt{min_thread ≤ ⟨thread⟩ < max_thread}). Each block has \texttt{1+2\_\_\_regex_capturing_group_int} entries: the \texttt{⟨state⟩} in which the \texttt{⟨thread⟩} currently is, followed by the beginnings of all submatches, and then the ends of all submatches. The \texttt{⟨threads⟩} are ordered starting from the best to the least preferred.
- \texttt{\_\_\_regex_submatch_prev_intarray}, \texttt{\_\_\_regex_submatch_begin_intarray} and \texttt{\_\_\_regex_submatch_end_intarray} hold, for each submatch (as would be extracted by \texttt{\regex_extract_all:nnN}), the place where the submatch started to be looked for and its two end-points. For historical reasons, the minimum index is twice \texttt{max_state}, and the used registers go up to \texttt{\_\_\_regex_submatch_int}. They are organized in blocks of \texttt{\_\_\_regex_capturing_group_int} entries, each block corresponding to one match with all its submatches stored in consecutive entries.

When actually building the result,

- \texttt{toks⟨position⟩} holds \texttt{⟨tokens⟩} which \texttt{o-} and \texttt{x}-expand to the \texttt{⟨position⟩}-th token in the query.
- \texttt{\_\_\_regex_balance_intarray} holds the balance of begin-group and end-group character tokens which appear before that point in the token list.

The code is structured as follows. Variables are introduced in the relevant section. First we present some generic helper functions. Then comes the code for compiling a regular expression, and for showing the result of the compilation. The building phase converts a compiled regex to NFA states, and the automaton is run by the code in the following section. The only remaining brick is parsing the replacement text and performing the replacement. We are then ready for all the user functions. Finally, messages, and a little bit of tracing code.

### 45.2 Helpers

\texttt{\_\_\_regex_int_eval:w} Access the primitive: performance is key here, so we do not use the slower route via \texttt{\int_eval:n}.

```
\cs_new_eq:NN \_\_\_regex_int_eval:w \tex_numexpr:D
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\_\_\_regex_int_eval:w}.)

\texttt{\_\_\_regex_standard_escapechar} Make the \texttt{\escapechar} into the standard backslash.

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_\_regex_standard_escapechar:
\{ \int_set:Nn \tex_escapechar:D \{ \textbackslash \}\}
```

449
\__regex_toks_use:w

Unpack a \toks given its number.

\cs_new:Npn \__regex_toks_use:w { \tex_the:D \tex_toks:D }

\__regex_toks_clear:N \__regex_toks_set:Nn \__regex_toks_set:No

Empty a \toks or set it to a value, given its number.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_toks_clear:N #1

\cs_new_eq:NN \__regex_toks_set:Nn \tex_toks:D
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_toks_set:No #1

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_toks_memcpy:NNn #1#2#3

Copy #3 \toks registers from #2 onwards to #1 onwards, like C’s memcpy.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_toks_memcpy:NNn #1#2#3
\prg_replicate:nn {#3}
{\tex_toks:D #1 = \tex_toks:D #2
\int_incr:N #1
\int_incr:N #2}

\__regex_toks_put_left:Nx \__regex_toks_put_right:Nx \__regex_toks_put_right:Nn

During the building phase we wish to add x-expanded material to \toks, either to the left or to the right. The expansion is done “by hand” for optimization (these operations are used quite a lot). The \texttt{Nn} version of \__regex_toks_put_right:Nx is provided because it is more efficient than x-expanding with \texttt{exp_not:n}.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_toks_put_left:Nx #1#2
{\cs_set_nopar:Npx \__regex_tmp:w {#3}
{\tex_toks:D #1 = \tex_toks:D #2
\int_incr:N #1
\int_incr:N #2}
}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_toks_put_right:Nx #1#2
{\cs_set_nopar:Npx \__regex_tmp:w {#2}
\tex_toks:D #1 \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN
{\exp_after:wN \__regex_tmp:w \tex_the:D \tex_toks:D #1}
}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_toks_put_right:Nn #1#2
{\tex_toks:D #1 \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN
{\tex_the:D \tex_toks:D \exp_after:wN #1 \__regex_tmp:w}
}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_toks_put_left:Nx \__regex_toks_put_right:Nn \__regex_toks_put_right:Nn
\__regex_curr_cs_to_str:

Expands to the string representation of the token (known to be a control sequence) at the current position \l__regex_curr_pos_int. It should only be used in x-expansion to avoid losing a leading space.
\__regex_intarray_item:NnF \__regex_intarray_item_aux:nNF

Item of intarray, with a default value.

\cs_new:Npn \__regex_intarray_item:NnF #1#2
{ \exp_args:Nf \__regex_intarray_item_aux:nNF { \int_eval:n {#2} } #1 }

(End definition for \__regex_intarray_item:NnF and \__regex_intarray_item_aux:nNF.)

\__regex_maplike_break:

Analogous to \tl_map_break:, this correctly exits \tl_map_inline:nn and similar constructions and jumps to the matching \prg_break_point:Nn \__regex_maplike_break: \{ \}.

\cs_new:Npn \__regex_maplike_break:
{ \prg_map_break:Nn \__regex_maplike_break: { } }

(End definition for \__regex_maplike_break:.)

\__regex_tl_odd_items:n \__regex_tl_even_items:n \__regex_tl_even_items_loop:nn

Map through a token list one pair at a time, leaving the odd-numbered or even-numbered items (the first item is numbered 1).

\cs_new:Npn \__regex_tl_odd_items:n #1 \__regex_tl_even_items:n \__regex_tl_even_items_loop:nn
{ \__regex_tl_even_items_loop:nn #1 \q__regex_nil \q__regex_nil
  \prg_break_point:
}

(End definition for \__regex_tl_odd_items:n, \__regex_tl_even_items:n, and \__regex_tl_even_items_loop:nn.)

45.2.1 Constants and variables

\__regex_tmp:w

Temporary function used for various short-term purposes.

\cs_new:Npn \__regex_tmp:w \{ \}

(End definition for \__regex_tmp:w.)
Temporary variables used for various purposes.

\l__regex_internal_a_tl
\l__regex_internal_b_tl
\l__regex_internal_a_int
\l__regex_internal_b_int
\l__regex_internal_c_int
\l__regex_internal_bool
\l__regex_internal_seq
\g__regex_internal_tl
\l__regex_build_tl
\l__regex_no_match_regex
\c__regex_balance_int

This temporary variable is specifically for use with the \tl_build machinery.

\l__regex_build_tl

(End definition for \l__regex_build_tl.)

This regular expression matches nothing, but is still a valid regular expression. We could use a failing assertion, but I went for an empty class. It is used as the initial value for regular expressions declared using \regex_new:N.

\c__regex_no_match_regex

During this phase, \l__regex_balance_int counts the balance of begin-group and end-group character tokens which appear before a given point in the token list. This variable is also used to keep track of the balance in the replacement text.

\l__regex_balance_int

(End definition for \l__regex_balance_int.)

45.2.2 Testing characters

\c__regex_ascii_min_int
\c__regex_ascii_max_control_int
\c__regex_ascii_max_int

(End definition for \c__regex_ascii_min_int, \c__regex_ascii_max_control_int, and \c__regex_ascii_max_int.)

\c__regex_ascii_lower_int

(End definition for \c__regex_ascii_lower_int.)
45.2.3 Internal auxiliaries

\texttt{\textbackslash q\_regex\_recursion\_stop}

Internal recursion quarks.

\texttt{\textbackslash quark\_new:N \textbackslash q\_regex\_recursion\_stop}

(End definition for \texttt{\textbackslash q\_regex\_recursion\_stop}.)

\texttt{\textbackslash q\_regex\_nil}

Internal quarks.

\texttt{\textbackslash quark\_new:N \textbackslash q\_regex\_nil}

(End definition for \texttt{\textbackslash q\_regex\_nil}.)

Functions to gobble up to a quark.

\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_new:Npn \textbackslash __regex\_use\_none\_delimit\_by\_q\_recursion\_stop:w #1 \textbackslash q\_regex\_recursion\_stop { } \textbackslash __regex\_break\_point:TF #1 \textbackslash __regex\_break\_true:w}

(End definition for \texttt{\textbackslash __regex\_use\_none\_delimit\_by\_q\_recursion\_stop:w}, \texttt{\textbackslash __regex\_use\_i\_delimit\_by\_q\_recursion\_stop:nw}, and \texttt{\textbackslash __regex\_use\_none\_delimit\_by\_q\_nil:w}.)

\texttt{\textbackslash __regex\_quark\_if\_nil:p:n}

Branching quark conditional.

\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash kernel\_quark\_new\_conditional:Nn \textbackslash __regex\_quark\_if\_nil:N \{ F \}}

(End definition for \texttt{\textbackslash __regex\_quark\_if\_nil:p:n}.)

\texttt{\textbackslash __regex\_break\_point:TF \textbackslash __regex\_break\_true:w}

When testing whether a character of the query token list matches a given character class in the regular expression, we often have to test it against several ranges of characters, checking if any one of those matches. This is done with a structure like

\[
\langle \text{test1} \rangle \ldots \langle \text{test}_n \rangle \\
\text{\textbackslash __regex\_break\_point:TF} \{ \langle \text{true code} \rangle \} \{ \langle \text{false code} \rangle \}
\]

If any of the tests succeeds, it calls \texttt{\textbackslash __regex\_break\_true:w}, which cleans up and leaves \langle \text{true code} \rangle in the input stream. Otherwise, \texttt{\textbackslash __regex\_break\_point:TF} leaves the \langle \text{false code} \rangle in the input stream.

\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_new\_protected:Npn \textbackslash __regex\_break\_true:w #1 \textbackslash __regex\_break\_point:TF \#2 \#3 \{\#2\} \textbackslash __regex\_break\_point:TF \#1 \#2 \{ \#2 \}}

(End definition for \texttt{\textbackslash __regex\_break\_point:TF} and \texttt{\textbackslash __regex\_break\_true:w}.)

\texttt{\textbackslash __regex\_item\_reverse:n}

This function makes showing regular expressions easier, and lets us define \texttt{\textbackslash D} in terms of \texttt{\textbackslash d} for instance. There is a subtlety: the end of the query is marked by \texttt{-2}, and thus matches \texttt{\textbackslash D} and other negated properties; this case is caught by another part of the code.

\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_new\_protected:Npn \textbackslash __regex\_item\_reverse:n #1 \{ #1 \textbackslash __regex\_break\_point:TF \} \textbackslash __regex\_break\_true:w}

(End definition for \texttt{\textbackslash __regex\_item\_reverse:n}.)

453
Simple comparisons triggering \_\_regex_break_true:w when true.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_regex_item_caseful_equal:n #1
\{\if_int_compare:w #1 = \l__regex_curr_char_int
\exp_after:wN \_\_regex_break_true:w
\fi: \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_regex_item_caseful_range:nn #1 #2
\{\reverse_if:N \if_int_compare:w #1 > \l__regex_curr_char_int
\reverse_if:N \if_int_compare:w #2 < \l__regex_curr_char_int
\exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \_\_regex_break_true:w
\fi: \}
(End definition for \_\_regex_item_caseful_equal:n and \_\_regex_item_caseful_range:nn.)

For caseless matching, we perform the test both on the curr_char and on the case_changed_char. Before doing the second set of tests, we make sure that case_changed_char has been computed.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_regex_item_caseless_equal:n #1
\{\if_int_compare:w #1 = \l__regex_curr_char_int
\exp_after:wN \_\_regex_break_true:w
\fi:
\_\_regex_maybe_compute_ccc:
\if_int_compare:w #1 = \l__regex_case_changed_char_int
\exp_after:wN \_\_regex_break_true:w
\fi: \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_regex_item_caseless_range:nn #1 #2
\{\reverse_if:N \if_int_compare:w #1 > \l__regex_curr_char_int
\reverse_if:N \if_int_compare:w #2 < \l__regex_curr_char_int
\exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \_\_regex_break_true:w
\fi: \}
\_\_regex_maybe_compute_ccc:
\if_int_compare:w #1 > \l__regex_case_changed_char_int
\_\_regex_break_true:w
\fi:
\_\_regex_maybe_compute_ccc:
\if_int_compare:w #1 > \l__regex_case_changed_char_int
\_\_regex_break_true:w
\fi:
(End definition for \_\_regex_item_caseless_equal:n and \_\_regex_item_caseless_range:nn.)

\_\_regex_compute_case_changed_char: This function is called when \l__regex_case_changed_char_int has not yet been computed. If the current character code is in the range \[65,90\] (upper-case), then add 32, making it lowercase. If it is in the lower-case letter range \[97,122\], subtract 32.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_regex_compute_case_changed_char:
\{\int_set_eq:NN \l__regex_case_changed_char_int \l__regex_curr_char_int

Those must always be defined to expand to a caseful (default) or caseless version, and not be protected: they must expand when compiling, to hard-code which tests are caseless or caseful.

The argument is a sum of powers of 4 with exponents given by the allowed category codes (between 0 and 13). Dividing by a given power of 4 gives an odd result if and only if that category code is allowed. If the catcode does not match, then skip the character code tests which follow.
This matches an exact \textit{category}-\textit{character code} pair, or an exact control sequence, more precisely one of several possible control sequences, separated by \texttt{\scan_stop:}.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_item_exact:nn #1#2
  \if_int_compare:w #1 = \l__regex_curr_catcode_int
    \if_int_compare:w #2 = \l__regex_curr_char_int
      \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \__regex_break_true:w
    \fi:
  \fi:
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_item_exact_cs:n #1
  \int_compare:nNnTF \l__regex_curr_catcode_int = 0
    { \tl_if_in:noTF { \scan_stop: #1 \scan_stop: } \l__regex_internal_a_tl
      \l__regex_build_for_cs:n {#1} } { }
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_item_cs:n #1
  \int_compare:nNnT \l__regex_curr_catcode_int = 0
    { \group_begin:
      \__regex_single_match:
      \__regex_disable_submatches:
      \__regex_build_for_cs:n {#1}
      \bool_set_eq:NN \l__regex_saved_success_bool
        \g__regex_success_bool
      \exp_args:Nx \__regex_match_cs:n { \__regex_curr_cs_to_str: }
      \if_meaning:w \c_true_bool \g__regex_success_bool
        \group_insert_after:N \__regex_break_true:w
      \fi:
      \bool_gset_eq:NN \g__regex_success_bool
        \l__regex_saved_success_bool
      \group_end:
    }
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__regex_item_exact:nn and \__regex_item_exact_cs:n.)

\begin{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__regex_item_cs:n.)

\subsection*{45.2.4 Character property tests}

Character property tests for \texttt{\d}, \texttt{\W}, \textit{etc.} These character properties are not affected by the \texttt{(?!)} option. The characters recognized by each one are as follows: \texttt{\d}=[0-9],

\begin{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}
\w=[0-9A-Z_a-z], \s=[\n\t\r\v\f], \h=[\n\t\r], \v=[\f\v\n\t], and the upper case counterparts match anything that the lower case does not match. The order in which the various tests appear is optimized for usual mostly lower case letter text.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_prop_d:n { \__regex_item_caseful_range:nn { '0' } { '9' } }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_prop_h:n { \__regex_item_caseful_equal:n { '\' } \__regex_item_caseful_equal:n { '\'^^I } }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_prop_s:n { \__regex_item_caseful_equal:n { '\' } \__regex_item_caseful_equal:n { '\'^^I } \__regex_item_caseful_equal:n { '\'^^J } \__regex_item_caseful_equal:n { '\'^^L } \__regex_item_caseful_equal:n { '\'^^M } }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_prop_v:n { \__regex_item_caseful_range:nn { '\'^^J } { '\'^^M } } % lf, vtab, ff, cr
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_prop_w:n { \__regex_item_caseful_range:nn { 'a' } { 'z' } \__regex_item_caseful_range:nn { 'A' } { 'Z' } \__regex_item_caseful_range:nn { '0' } { '9' } \__regex_item_caseful_equal:n { '_' } }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_prop_N:n { \__regex_item_reverse:n { \__regex_item_caseful_equal:n { '\'^^J } } }

(End definition for \__regex_prop_d: and others.)

\__regex_posix_alnum: POSIX properties. No surprise.
\__regex_posix_alpha: \cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_posix_alnum: { \__regex_posix_alpha: \__regex_posix_digit: }
\__regex_posix_ascii: \cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_posix_ascii: { \__regex_item_caseful_range:nn \c__regex_ascii_min_int \c__regex_ascii_max_int }
\__regex_posix_blank: \cs_new_eq:NN \__regex_posix_blank: \__regex_prop_h:
\__regex_posix_cntrl: \cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_posix_cntrl: { \__regex_item_caseful_range:nn \c__regex_ascii_min_int \c__regex_ascii_max_control_int \__regex_item_caseful_equal:n \c__regex_ascii_max_int }
\__regex_posix_digit: \cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_posix_digit: { \__regex_posix_alpha: \__regex_posix_digit: }
\__regex_posix_graph: \cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_posix_graph: { \__regex_item_caseful_range:nn { 'a' } { 'z' } \__regex_item_caseful_range:nn { 'A' } { 'Z' } \__regex_item_caseful_range:nn { '0' } { '9' } \__regex_item_caseful_equal:n { '_' } }
\__regex_posix_lower: \cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_posix_lower: \__regex_posix_upper: \__regex_posix_ascii: \cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_posix_ascii: { }
\__regex_posix_punct: \cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_posix_punct: \c__regex_ascii_min_int \c__regex_ascii_max_int
\__regex_posix_print: \cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_posix_print: \c__regex_ascii_min_int \c__regex_ascii_max_int
\__regex_posix_space: \cs_new_eq:NN \__regex_posix_blank: \__regex_prop_h:
\__regex_posix_upper: \cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_posix_upper: \__regex_posix_cntrl: \cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_posix_cntrl: { }
\__regex_posix_word: \cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_posix_word: \c__regex_ascii_min_int \c__regex_ascii_max_int \c__regex_ascii_max_control_int \c__regex_ascii_max_int \__regex_item_caseful_equal:n \c__regex_ascii_max_int

\__regex_posix_xdigit: \cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_posix_xdigit: { }

457
45.2.5 Simple character escape

Before actually parsing the regular expression or the replacement text, we go through
them once, converting \n to the character 10, etc. In this pass, we also convert any special
caracter (*, ?, {, etc.) or escaped alphanumeric character into a marker indicating that
this was a special sequence, and replace escaped special characters and non-escaped
alphanumeric characters by markers indicating that those were “raw” characters. The
rest of the code can then avoid caring about escaping issues (those can become quite
complex to handle in combination with ranges in character classes).

Usage: __regex_escape_use:nnnn ⟨inline 1⟩⟨inline 2⟩⟨inline 3⟩{⟨token list⟩}
The ⟨token list⟩ is converted to a string, then read from left to right, interpreting back-
slashes as escaping the next character. Unescaped characters are fed to the function
⟨inline 1⟩, and escaped characters are fed to the function ⟨inline 2⟩ within an x-expansion
context (typically those functions perform some tests on their argument to decide how
to output them). The escape sequences \a, \e, \f, \n, \r, \t and \x are recognized, and
those are replaced by the corresponding character, then fed to ⟨inline 3⟩. The result is
then left in the input stream. Spaces are ignored unless escaped.

The conversion is done within an x-expanding assignment.

__regex_escape_use:nnnn

The result is built in \l__regex_internal_a_tl, which is then left in the input stream.
Tracing code is added as appropriate inside this token list. Go through #4 once, applying
#1, #2, or #3 as relevant to each character (after de-escaping it).
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_regex_escape_use:mm #1#2#3#4 
{
  \group_begin:
  \tl_clear:N \l__regex_internal_a_tl
  \cs_set:Npn \_regex_escape_unescaped:N \l__regex_internal_tl
  \cs_set:Npn \_regex_escape_escaped:N \l__regex_internal_tl
  \cs_set:Npn \_regex_escape_raw:N \l__regex_internal_tl
  \__regex_standard_escapechar:
    \__kernel_tl_gset:Nx \g__regex_internal_tl { \__kernel_str_to_other_fast:n {#4} }
    \tl_put_right:Nx \l__regex_internal_a_tl 
    { \exp_after:wN \_regex_escape_loop:N \g__regex_internal_tl 
      \scan_stop: \prg_break_point:
    }
  \exp_after:wN 
  \group_end:
  \l__regex_internal_a_tl
}(End definition for \_regex_escape_use:mm.)

\_regex_escape_loop:N \_regex_escape_\::w \_regex_escape_loop:N \_regex_escape_/\scan_stop::w \_regex_escape_/a:w \_regex_escape_/e:w \_regex_escape_/f:w \_regex_escape_/n:w \_regex_escape_/r:w \_regex_escape_/t:w \_regex_escape_\:w The loop is ended upon seeing the end-marker “break”, with an error if the string ended in a backslash. Spaces are ignored, and \a, \e, \f, \n, \r, \t take their meaning here.

\cs_new:Npn \_regex_escape_loop:N \_regex_escape_unescaped:N \_regex_escape_escaped:N \_regex_escape_raw:N \_regex_escape_loop:N \_regex_escape_/\scan_stop::w \_regex_escape_/\scan_stop::w \_regex_escape_/\:w \_regex_escape_/\:w \_regex_escape_/\:w \_regex_escape_/\:w \_regex_escape_/\:w \_regex_escape_/\:w

Those functions are never called before being given a new meaning, so their definitions here don’t matter.

\cs_new_eq:NN \_regex_escape_unescaped:N ? \cs_new_eq:NN \_regex_escape_escaped:N ? \cs_new_eq:NN \_regex_escape_raw:N ?
(End definition for \_regex_escape_unescaped:N, \_regex_escape_escaped:N, and \_regex_escape_-
raw:N.)
When `\x` is encountered, `__regex_escape_x_test:N` is responsible for grabbing some hexadecimal digits, and feeding the result to `__regex_escape_x_end:w`. If the number is too big interrupt the assignment and produce an error, otherwise call `__regex_escape_raw:N` on the corresponding character token.

```
cs_new:cpn { __regex_escape_/x:w } \__regex_escape_loop:N
\exp_after:wN \__regex_escape_x_end:w
\int_value:w "0 \__regex_escape_x_test:N
\use:n
```

(End definition for `__regex_escape_/x:w` and others.)

Find out whether the first character is a left brace (allowing any number of hexadecimal digits), or not (allowing up to two hexadecimal digits). We need to check for the end-of-string marker. Eventually, call either `__regex_escape_x_loop:N` or `__regex_escape_x:N`.

```
cs_new:Npn \__regex_escape_x_test:N #1
\if_meaning:w \scan_stop: #1
\exp_after:wN \use_i:nnn \exp_after:wN ;
\fi:
\use:n
```

(End definition for `__regex_escape_/x:w`, `__regex_escape_x_end:w`, and `__regex_escape_x_large:n`.)
This looks for the second digit in the unbraced case.

\__regex_escape_x:N
\cs_new:Npn \__regex_escape_x:N #1
{\if_meaning:w \scan_stop: #1 \exp_after:wN \use_i:nnn \exp_after:wN ; \fi:\use:n
 { \__regex_hexadecimal_use:NTF #1 \__regex_escape_x_loop:N
 { ; \__regex_escape_loop:N #1 } } }

\__regex_escape_x_loop:N
\__regex_escape_x_loop_error:

\cs_new:Npn \__regex_escape_x_loop:N #1
{\if_meaning:w \scan_stop: #1 \exp_after:wN \use_ii:nnn \fi:\use_ii:nn
 { ; \__regex_escape_x_loop_error:n { } {#1} } }

\__regex_escape_x_loop_error:
\cs_new:Npn \__regex_escape_x_loop_error:n #1
TEX detects uppercase hexadecimal digits for us but not the lowercase letters, which we
need to detect and replace by their uppercase counterpart.

These two tests are used in the first pass when parsing a regular expression. That pass is
responsible for finding escaped and non-escaped characters, and recognizing which ones
have special meanings and which should be interpreted as “raw” characters. Namely,

- alphanumerics are “raw” if they are not escaped, and may have a special meaning
  when escaped;
- non-alphanumeric printable ascii characters are “raw” if they are escaped, and may
  have a special meaning when not escaped;
- characters other than printable ascii are always “raw”.

(End definition for \__regex_hexadecimal_use:NTF.)

(End definition for \__regex_hexadecimal_use:NTF.)
The code is ugly, and highly based on magic numbers and the ascii codes of characters. This is mostly unavoidable for performance reasons. Maybe the tests can be optimized a little bit more. Here, “alphanumeric” means 0–9, A–Z, a–z; “special” character means non-alphanumeric but printable ascii, from space (hex 20) to del (hex 7E).

\begin{verbatim}
\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \__regex_char_if_special:N #1 { TF }
\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \__regex_char_if_alphanumeric:N #1 { TF }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__regex_char_if_alphanumeric:NTF and \__regex_char_if_special:NTF.)

45.3 Compiling

A regular expression starts its life as a string of characters. In this section, we convert it to internal instructions, resulting in a “compiled” regular expression. This compiled
expression is then turned into states of an automaton in the building phase. Compiled regular expressions consist of the following:

- \(__regex_class:NnnnN\ ⟨boolean⟩\{⟨tests⟩\}{⟨min⟩}{⟨more⟩}{lazyness}\)
- \(__regex_group:nnnN\{⟨branches⟩\}{⟨min⟩}{⟨more⟩}{lazyness}, also \(__regex_group_no_capture:nnnN\ and \(__regex_group_resetting:nnnN\ with the same syntax.\)
- \(__regex_branch:n\{⟨contents⟩\}
- \(__regex_command_K:\)
- \(__regex_assertion:Nn\ ⟨boolean⟩\{⟨assertion test⟩\}
Tests can be the following:

- \(__regex_item_caseful_equal:n\{⟨char code⟩\}
- \(__regex_item_caseless_equal:n\{⟨char code⟩\}
- \(__regex_item_caseful_range:nn\{⟨min⟩\} {⟨max⟩}\)
- \(__regex_item_caseless_range:nn\{⟨min⟩\} {⟨max⟩}\)
- \(__regex_item_catcode:nT\{⟨catcode bitmap⟩\} {⟨tests⟩}\)
- \(__regex_item_catcode_reverse:nT\{⟨catcode bitmap⟩\} {⟨tests⟩}\)
- \(__regex_item_reverse:n\{⟨tests⟩\}
- \(__regex_item_exact:nn\{⟨catcode⟩\} {⟨char code⟩}\)
- \(__regex_item_exact_cs:n\{⟨csnames⟩\}, more precisely given as ⟨csname⟩ \scan_stop: ⟨csname⟩ \scan_stop: ⟨csname⟩ and so on in a brace group.\)
- \(__regex_item_cs:n\{⟨compiled regex⟩\}

45.3.1 Variables used when compiling

We make sure to open the same number of groups as we close.

\(\int_new:N \l__regex_group_level_int\)

(End definition for \l__regex_group_level_int.)

While compiling, ten modes are recognized, labelled \(-63, -23, -6, -2, 0, 2, 3, 6, 23, 63\). See section 45.3.3. We only define some of these as constants.

\(\int_new:N \l__regex_mode_int\)
\(\int_const:Nn \c__regex_cs_in_class_mode_int \{-6\}\)
\(\int_const:Nn \c__regex_cs_mode_int \{-2\}\)
\(\int_const:Nn \c__regex_outer_mode_int \{0\}\)
\(\int_const:Nn \c__regex_catcode_mode_int \{2\}\)
\(\int_const:Nn \c__regex_class_mode_int \{3\}\)
\(\int_const:Nn \c__regex_catcode_in_class_mode_int \{6\}\)
We wish to allow constructions such as \texttt{\c[^BE] (. .\texttt{\cL[a-z]} . .)}, where the outer catcode test applies to the whole group, but is superseded by the inner catcode test. For this to work, we need to keep track of lists of allowed category codes: \texttt{\l__regex_catcodes_int} and \texttt{\l__regex_default_catcodes_int} are bitmaps, sums of $4^c$, for all allowed catcodes $c$. The latter is local to each capturing group, and we reset \texttt{\l__regex_catcodes_int} to that value after each character or class, changing it only when encountering a \texttt{\c} escape. The boolean records whether the list of categories of a catcode test has to be inverted: compare \texttt{\c[^BE]} and \texttt{\c[BE]}.

\begin{verbatim}
\int_new:N \l__regex_catcodes_int
\int_new:N \l__regex_default_catcodes_int
\bool_new:N \l__regex_catcodes_bool
\end{verbatim}

Constants: $4^c$ for each category, and the sum of all powers of 4.

\begin{verbatim}
\int_const:Nn \c__regex_catcode_C_int { "1 } \int_const:Nn \c__regex_catcode_B_int { "4 } \int_const:Nn \c__regex_catcode_E_int { "10 } \int_const:Nn \c__regex_catcode_M_int { "40 } \int_const:Nn \c__regex_catcode_T_int { "100 } \int_const:Nn \c__regex_catcode_P_int { "1000 } \int_const:Nn \c__regex_catcode_U_int { "4000 } \int_const:Nn \c__regex_catcode_D_int { "10000 } \int_const:Nn \c__regex_catcode_S_int { "100000 } \int_const:Nn \c__regex_catcode_L_int { "400000 } \int_const:Nn \c__regex_catcode_O_int { "1000000 } \int_const:Nn \c__regex_catcode_A_int { "4000000 } \int_const:Nn \c__regex_all_catcodes_int { "5515155 }
\end{verbatim}

The compilation step stores its result in this variable.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_eq:NN \l__regex_internal_regex \c__regex_no_match_regex
\end{verbatim}

This sequence holds the prefix that makes up the line displayed to the user. The various items must be removed from the right, which is tricky with a token list, hence we use a sequence.

\begin{verbatim}
\seq_new:N \l__regex_show_prefix_seq
\end{verbatim}

A hack. To know whether a given class has a single item in it or not, we count the number of lines when showing the class.

\begin{verbatim}
\int_new:N \l__regex_show_lines_int
\end{verbatim}
45.3.2 Generic helpers used when compiling

\_\_regex\_two\_if\_eq:NNNNTF

Used to compare pairs of things like __regex\_compile\_special:N ? together. It’s often inconvenient to get the catcodes of the character to match so we just compare the character code. Besides, the expanding behaviour of \if:w is very useful as that means we can use \c\_left\_brace\_str and the like.

```
\prg\_new\_conditional:Npnn \_\_regex\_two\_if\_eq:NNN #1#2#3#4 { TF }
{ 
 \if\_meaning:w #1 #3 
 \if:w #2 #4 
 \prg\_return\_true:
 \else:
 \prg\_return\_false:
 \fi:
 \else:
 \prg\_return\_false:
 \fi:
}
```

(End definition for \_\_regex\_two\_if\_eq:NNNNTF.)

\_\_regex\_get\_digits:NTFw
\_\_regex\_get\_digits\_loop:w

If followed by some raw digits, collect them one by one in the integer variable #1, and take the \texttt{true} branch. Otherwise, take the \texttt{false} branch.

```
\cs\_new\_protected:Npn \_\_regex\_get\_digits:NTFw #1#2#3#4#5 
{ 
 \_\_regex\_if\_raw\_digit:NNTF #4 #5 
 { #1 = #5 \_\_regex\_get\_digits\_loop:nw {#2} } 
 { #3 #4 #5 } 
}
\cs\_new:Npn \_\_regex\_get\_digits\_loop:nw #1#2#3 
{ 
 \_\_regex\_if\_raw\_digit:NNTF #2 #3 
 { #3 \_\_regex\_get\_digits\_loop:nw {#1} } 
 { \scan\_stop: #1 #2 #3 } 
}
```

(End definition for \_\_regex\_get\_digits:NTFw and \_\_regex\_get\_digits\_loop:w.)

\_\_regex\_if\_raw\_digit:NNTF

Test used when grabbing digits for the \{m,n\} quantifier. It only accepts non-escaped digits.

```
\prg\_new\_conditional:Npnn \_\_regex\_if\_raw\_digit:NN #1#2 { TF }
{ 
 \if\_meaning:w \_\_regex\_compile\_raw:N #1 
 \if\_int\_compare:w 1 < 1 #2 \exp\_stop\_f: 
 \prg\_return\_true:
 \else:
 \prg\_return\_false:
 \fi:
 \else:
 \prg\_return\_false:
 \fi:
}
```

(End definition for \_\_regex\_if\_raw\_digit:NNTF.)
45.3.3 Mode

When compiling the NFA corresponding to a given regex string, we can be in ten distinct modes, which we label by some magic numbers:

-6 \[c\{\ldots\}\] control sequence in a class,
-2 \c{\ldots} control sequence,
0 \ldots outer,
2 \c\ldots catcode test,
6 \[c\ldots\] catcode test in a class,
-63 \[c\{\{\ldots\}\}\] class inside mode −6,
-23 \c\{\{\ldots\}\} class inside mode −2,
3 \{\ldots\} class inside mode 0,
23 \c\{\ldots\} class inside mode 2,
63 \[c\{\ldots\}\] class inside mode 6.

This list is exhaustive, because \c escape sequences cannot be nested, and character classes cannot be nested directly. The choice of numbers is such as to optimize the most useful tests, and make transitions from one mode to another as simple as possible.

- Even modes mean that we are not directly in a character class. In this case, a left bracket appends 3 to the mode. In a character class, a right bracket changes the mode as \( m \rightarrow (m - 15)/13 \), truncated.

- Grouping, assertion, and anchors are allowed in non-positive even modes (0, −2, −6), and do not change the mode. Otherwise, they trigger an error.

- A left bracket is special in even modes, appending 3 to the mode; in those modes, quantifiers and the dot are recognized, and the right bracket is normal. In odd modes (within classes), the left bracket is normal, but the right bracket ends the class, changing the mode from \( m \) to \( (m - 15)/13 \), truncated; also, ranges are recognized.

- In non-negative modes, left and right braces are normal. In negative modes, however, left braces trigger a warning; right braces end the control sequence, going from −2 to 0 or −6 to 3, with error recovery for odd modes.

- Properties (such as the \d character class) can appear in any mode.

\_regex_if_in_class:TF Test whether we are directly in a character class (at the innermost level of nesting). There, many escape sequences are not recognized, and special characters are normal. Also, for every raw character, we must look ahead for a possible raw dash.

```
cs_new:Npn \_regex_if_in_class:TF
  {\if_int_odd:w \l__regex_mode_int
    \exp_after:wN \use_i:nn
  \else:
    \exp_after:wN \use_ii:nn
  \fi:}
```

467
Right braces are special only directly inside control sequences (at the inner-most level of nesting, not counting groups).

```
cs_new:Npn __regex_if_in_cs:TF
{
  \if_int_odd:w \l__regex_mode_int
  \exp_after:wN \use_i:nn
  \else:
  \if_int_compare:w \l__regex_mode_int < \c__regex_outer_mode_int
  \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \use_i:nn
  \else:
    \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \use_ii:nn
  \fi:
  \fi:
}
```

Assertions are only allowed in modes 0, −2, and −6, i.e., even, non-positive modes.

```
cs_new:Npn __regex_if_in_class_or_catcode:TF
{
  \if_int_odd:w \l__regex_mode_int
  \exp_after:wN \use_i:nn
  \else:
  \if_int_compare:w \l__regex_mode_int > \c__regex_outer_mode_int
  \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \use_i:nn
  \else:
    \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \use_ii:nn
  \fi:
  \fi:
}
```

This test takes the true branch if we are in a catcode test, either immediately following it (modes 2 and 6) or in a class on which it applies (modes 23 and 63). This is used to tweak how left brackets behave in modes 2 and 6.

```
cs_new:Npn __regex_if_within_catcode:TF
{
  \if_int_compare:w \l__regex_mode_int > \c__regex_outer_mode_int
  \exp_after:wN \use_i:nn
  \else:
    \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \use_ii:nn
  \fi:
  \fi:
}
```

The \c escape sequence is only allowed in modes 0 and 3, i.e., not within any other \c escape sequence.

```
cs_new_protected:Npn __regex_chk_c_allowed:T
{
  \if_int_compare:w \l__regex_mode_int = \c__regex_outer_mode_int
```

468
4981 \exp_after:wN \use:n
4982 \else:
4983 \if_int_compare:w \l__regex_mode_int = \c__regex_class_mode_int
4984 \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \use:n
4985 \else:
4986 \msg_error:nn { regex } { c-bad-mode }
4987 \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \use_none:n
4988 \fi:
4989 \fi:
4990 \}

(End definition for \regex_chk_c_allowed:T)

\_regex_mode_quit_c: This function changes the mode as it is needed just after a catcode test.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_regex_mode_quit_c:
  \if_int_compare:w \l__regex_mode_int = \c__regex_catcode_mode_int
  \int_set_eq:NN \l__regex_mode_int \c__regex_outer_mode_int
  \else:
  \if_int_compare:w \l__regex_mode_int = \c__regex_catcode_in_class_mode_int
    \int_set_eq:NN \l__regex_mode_int \c__regex_class_mode_int
  \fi:
  \fi:
\}

(End definition for \_regex_mode_quit_c:)

45.3.4 Framework

\_regex_compile:w \_regex_compile_end: Used when compiling a user regex or a regex for the \c{...} escape sequence within another regex. Start building a token list within a group (with x-expansion at the outset), and set a few variables (group level, catcodes), then start the first branch. At the end, make sure there are no dangling classes nor groups, close the last branch: we are done building \l__regex_internal_regex.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_regex_compile:w
  \group_begin:
    \tl_build_begin:N \l__regex_build_tl
    \int_zero:N \l__regex_group_level_int
    \int_set_eq:NN \l__regex_default_catcodes_int \c__regex_all_catcodes_int
    \int_set_eq:NN \l__regex_catcodes_int \l__regex_default_catcodes_int
    \cs_set:Npn \_regex_item_equal:n { \_regex_item_caseful_equal:n }
    \cs_set:Npn \_regex_item_range:nn { \_regex_item_caseful_range:nn }
    \tl_build_put_right:Nn \l__regex_build_tl { \_regex_branch:n { \if_false: } \fi: }
  \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_regex_compile_end:
  \_regex_if_in_class:TF
    \msg_error:nn { regex } { missing-rbrack }
    \use:c { \_regex_compile_ }:

469
\__regex_compile:n

The compilation is done between \__regex_compile:w and \__regex_compile_end:, starting in mode 0. Then \__regex_escape_use:nnnn distinguishes special characters, escaped alphanumerics, and raw characters, interpreting \a, \x and other sequences. The 4 trailing \prg_do_nothing: are needed because some functions defined later look up to 4 tokens ahead. Before ending, make sure that any \c {...} is properly closed. No need to check that brackets are closed properly since \__regex_compile_end: does that. However, catch the case of a trailing \cL construction.
\prg_do_nothing: \prg_do_nothing:
\int_compare:nNnT \l__regex_mode_int = \c__regex_catcode_mode_int
\{ \msg_error:nn \{ \regex \} \{ \c-trailing \} \}
\int_compare:nNnT \l__regex_mode_int < \c__regex_outer_mode_int
\{ \msg_error:nn \{ \regex \} \{ \c-missing-rbrace \}
\__regex_compile_end_cs:
\prg_do_nothing: \prg_do_nothing:
\prg_do_nothing: \prg_do_nothing:
\}
\__regex_compile_end:
\}

(End definition for \__regex_compile:n.)

\__regex_compile_use:n
Use a regex, regardless of whether it is given as a string (in which case we need to compile) or as a regex variable. This is used for \regex_match_case:nn and related functions to allow a mixture of explicit regex and regex variables.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_compile_use:n #1
\{ \tl_if_single_token:nT {#1} \}
\exp_after:wN \__regex_compile_use_aux:w \token_to_meaning:N #1 ~ \q__regex_nil
\__regex_compile:n {#1} \l__regex_internal_regex
\}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_compile_use_aux:w #1 ~ #2 \q__regex_nil
\str_if_eq:nnT { #1 ~ } { macro:->\__regex_branch:n } \{ \use_ii:nnn \}
\}

(End definition for \__regex_compile_use:n.)

\__regex_compile_escaped:N \__regex_compile_special:N
If the special character or escaped alphanumeric has a particular meaning in regexes, the corresponding function is used. Otherwise, it is interpreted as a raw character. We distinguish special characters from escaped alphanumeric characters because they behave differently when appearing as an end-point of a range.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_compile_escaped:N #1
\{ \cs_if_exist_use:cF { \__regex_compile_/#1: } \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_compile_special:N #1
\{ \cs_if_exist_use:cF { \__regex_compile_#1: } \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_compile_raw:N #1
\}

(End definition for \__regex_compile_escaped:N and \__regex_compile_special:N.)

\__regex_compile_one:n
This is used after finding one “test”, such as \d, or a raw character. If that followed a catcode test (\eg, \cL), then restore the mode. If we are not in a class, then the test is
“standalone”, and we need to add \_\_regex_class:NnnnN and search for quantifiers. In any case, insert the test, possibly together with a catcode test if appropriate.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_regex_compile_one:n #1
\{ \_\_regex_mode_quit_c:
\_\_regex_if_in_class:TF \{ \}
\{ \tl_build_put_right:Nn \l__regex_build_tl
\{ \_\_regex_class:NnnnN \c_true_bool \{ \if_false: \} \fi: \}
\}
\tl_build_put_right:Nx \l__regex_build_tl
\{ \if_int_compare:w \l__regex_catcodes_int < \c__regex_all_catcodes_int
\_\_regex_item_catcode:nT \{ \int_use:N \l__regex_catcodes_int \}
\{ \exp_not:N \exp_not:n \{#1\} \}
\else: \exp_not:N \exp_not:n \{#1\}
\fi: \}
\int_set_eq:NN \l__regex_catcodes_int \l__regex_default_catcodes_int
\_\_regex_if_in_class:TF \{ \} \_\_regex_compile_quantifier:w \}
\}
\(\text{End definition for } \_\_regex_compile_one:n.\)

\_\_regex_compile_abort_tokens:n\_\_regex_compile_abort_tokens:x
This function places the collected tokens back in the input stream, each as a raw character. Spaces are not preserved.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_regex_compile_abort_tokens:n #1
\{ \use:x
\{ \exp_args:No \tl_map_function:nN \{ \tl_to_str:n \{#1\} \}
\_\_regex_compile_raw:N
\}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \_\_regex_compile_abort_tokens:n { x }
\(\text{End definition for } \_\_regex_compile_abort_tokens:n.\)

45.3.5 Quantifiers
This looks ahead and checks whether there are any quantifier (special character equal to either of \?\*\{\). This is useful for the \a and \ur escape sequences.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_regex_compile_if_quantifier:TFw \#1\#2\#3\#4
\{ \token_if_eq_meaning:NNTF \#3 \_\_regex_compile_special:N
\{ \cs_if_exist:cTF \_\_regex_compile_quantifier_\#4:w \}
\{ \use_ii:nn \}
\{ \#1 \} \{ \#2 \} \#3 \#4
\}
\(\text{End definition for } \_\_regex_compile_if_quantifier:TFw.\)
This looks ahead and finds any quantifier (special character equal to either of `?*`).

Those functions are called whenever there is no quantifier, or a braced construction is invalid (equivalent to no quantifier, and whatever characters were grabbed are left raw).

Once the “main” quantifier (`?`, `*`, `+` or a braced construction) is found, we check whether it is lazy (followed by a question mark). We then add to the compiled regex a closing brace (ending `\_regex_class:NnnnN` and friends), the start-point of the range, its end-point, and a boolean, `true` for lazy and `false` for greedy operators.

For each “basic” quantifier, `?`, `*`, `+`, feed the correct arguments to `\_regex_compile_quantifier_lazyness:nnNN`.

\_regex_compile_quantifier:w

\_regex_compile_quantifier:?:w
\_regex_compile_quantifier:*:w
\_regex_compile_quantifier:+:w
Three possible syntaxes: \( \langle \text{int} \rangle \), \( \langle \text{int} \rangle , \) or \( \langle \text{int} \rangle , \langle \text{int} \rangle \). Any other syntax causes us to abort and put whatever we collected back in the input stream, as raw characters, including the opening brace. Grab a number into \( \l_{\text{regex internal a int}} \). If the number is followed by a right brace, the range is \([a, a] \). If followed by a comma, grab one more number, and call the \_ii or \_iii auxiliary. Those auxiliaries check for a closing brace, leading to the range \([a, \infty) \) or \([a, b] \), encoded as \( \{a\}(-1) \) and \( \{a\}(b-a) \).
45.3.6 Raw characters

Within character classes, and following catcode tests, some escaped alphanumeric sequences such as \b do not have any meaning. They are replaced by a raw character, after spitting out an error.

\__regex_compile_raw:N

If we are in a character class and the next character is an unescaped dash, this denotes a range. Otherwise, the current character \#1 matches itself.

\__regex_compile_braced:NNNw #1#2#3

475
We have just read a raw character followed by a dash; this should be followed by an end-point for the range. Valid end-points are: any raw character; any special character, except a right bracket. In particular, escaped characters are forbidden.

```latex
\prg_new_protected_conditional:Nppnn \__regex_if_end_range:NN #1#2 { TF }
{ }
\if_meaning:w \__regex_compile_raw:N #1 
\prg_return_true:
\else:
\if_meaning:w \__regex_compile_special:N #1 
\__regex_item_equal:n { \int_value:w '#1 } 
\else:
\__regex_item_range:nn { \int_value:w '#1 } 
\fi:
\else:
\prg_return_false:
\fi:
\fi:
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_compile_range:Nw #1#2#3 
{ }
\__regex_if_end_range:NNTF #2 #3
{ }
\if_int_compare:w '#1 > '#3 \exp_stop_f:
\msg_error:nnxx { regex } { range-backwards } {#1} {#3}
\else:
\tl_build_put_right:Nx \l__regex_build_tl
{ }
\__regex_item_equal:n
\else:
\__regex_item_range:nn { \int_value:w '#1 } 
\fi:
\__regex_item_equal:n
\fi:
\msg_warning:nnxx { regex } { range-missing-end } {#1} { \c_backslash_str #3 }
\msg_warning:nnxx { regex } { range-missing-end } {#1} { \c_backslash_str #3 }
\end{document}
```

The constants \__regex_prop_d: etc. hold a list of tests which match the corresponding character class, and jump to the \__regex_break_point:TF marker. As for a normal character, we check for quantifiers.

\cs_set_protected:Npn \__regex_tmp:w #1#2
\cs_new_protected:cpx { \__regex_compile_/#1: }
\cs_new_protected:cpx { \__regex_compile_/#2: }
\__regex_tmp:w d D
\__regex_tmp:w h H
\__regex_tmp:w s S
\__regex_tmp:w v V
\__regex_tmp:w w W
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \__regex_compile_/N: }
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \__regex_compile_/H: }
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \__regex_compile_/N: }

(End definition for \__regex_compile_/d: and others.)
45.3.8 Anchoring and simple assertions

In modes where assertions are forbidden, anchors such as \A produce an error (\A is invalid in classes); otherwise they add an \__regex_assertion:Nn test as appropriate (the only negative assertion is \B). The test functions are defined later. The implementation for $ and ^ is only different from \A etc because these are valid in a class.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_compile_anchor_letter:NNN #1#2#3
\begin{verbatim}
\__regex_if_in_class_or_catcode:TF { \__regex_compile_raw_error:N #1 }
\else
\tl_build_put_right:Nn \l__regex_build_tl { \__regex_assertion:Nn \c_true_bool {#2} }
\fi
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:cpn { __regex_compile_/A: }
\begin{verbatim}
\__regex_compile_anchor_letter:NNN A \c_true_bool \__regex_A_test: 
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:cpn { __regex_compile_/G: }
\begin{verbatim}
\__regex_compile_anchor_letter:NNN G \c_true_bool \__regex_G_test: 
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:cpn { __regex_compile_/Z: }
\begin{verbatim}
\__regex_compile_anchor_letter:NNN Z \c_true_bool \__regex_Z_test: 
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:cpn { __regex_compile_/z: }
\begin{verbatim}
\__regex_compile_anchor_letter:NNN z \c_true_bool \__regex_Z_test: 
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:cpn { __regex_compile_/b: }
\begin{verbatim}
\__regex_compile_anchor_letter:NNN b \c_true_bool \__regex_b_test: 
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:cpn { __regex_compile_/B: }
\begin{verbatim}
\__regex_compile_anchor_letter:NNN B \c_false_bool \__regex_b_test: 
\end{verbatim}
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__regex_tmp:w #1#2
\begin{verbatim}
\__regex_if_in_class_or_catcode:TF { \__regex_compile_/#1: }
\else
\tl_build_put_right:Nn \l__regex_build_tl { \__regex_assertion:Nn \c_true_bool {#2} }
\fi
\end{verbatim}
\exp_args:Nx \__regex_tmp:w { \iow_char:N \^ } { \__regex_A_test: }
\exp_args:Nx \__regex_tmp:w { \iow_char:N $ } { \__regex_Z_test: }

(End definition for \__regex_compile_anchor_letter:NNN and others.)

45.3.9 Character classes

Outside a class, right brackets have no meaning. In a class, change the mode \( m \rightarrow (m - 15)/13 \), truncated) to reflect the fact that we are leaving the class. Look for quantifiers, unless we are still in a class after leaving one (the case of \[\ldots c L \ldots \ldots \ldots \]).

\cs_new_protected:cpn { __regex_compile_/]: }
\begin{verbatim}
\__regex_if_in_class:TF {
\tl_build_put_right:Nn \l__regex_build_tl { \__regex_assertion:Nn \c_true_bool {#2} }
\}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__regex_compile_/]: )

\cs_new_protected:cpn { __regex_compile_/]: }
\begin{verbatim}
\__regex_if_in_class:TF
\{
\tl_build_put_right:Nn \l__regex_build_tl { \__regex_assertion:Nn \c_true_bool {#2} }
\}
\end{verbatim}

478
In a class, left brackets might introduce a POSIX character class, or mean nothing. Immediately following \c ⟨ category ⟩, we must insert the appropriate catcode test, then parse the class; we pre-expand the catcode as an optimization. Otherwise (modes 0, −2 and −6) just parse the class. The mode is updated later.

\__regex_compile_class_normal:w

In the “normal” case, we insert \__regex_class:NnnnN \c ⟨ boolean ⟩ in the compiled code. The \c ⟨ boolean ⟩ is true for positive classes, and false for negative classes, characterized by a leading \c ^ . The auxiliary \__regex_compile_class:TFNN also checks for a leading \c ] which has a special meaning.

\__regex_compile_class_catcode:w

This function is called for a left bracket in modes 2 or 6 (catcode test, and catcode test within a class). In mode 2 the whole construction needs to be put in a class (like single character). Then determine if the class is positive or negative, inserting \__regex__item_catcode:nT or the reverse variant as appropriate, each with the current catcodes bitmap #1 as an argument, and reset the catcodes.

(End definition for \__regex_compile_*.)

(End definition for \__regex_compile_class_normal:w.)

(End definition for \__regex_compile_class_catcode:w.)
If the first character is `^`, then the class is negative (use `#2`), otherwise it is positive (use `#1`). If the next character is a right bracket, then it should be changed to a raw one.

Here we check for a syntax such as `[:alpha:]`. We also detect `=` and `.` which have a meaning in POSIX regular expressions, but are not implemented in l3regex. In case we see `[:`, grab raw characters until hopefully reaching `:]`. If that’s missing, or the POSIX class is unknown, abort. If all is right, add the test to the current class, with an extra \__regex_item_reverse:n for negative classes.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_regex_compile_class_posix:NNNNw \#1\#2\#3\#4\#5\#6
  {\_regex_two_if_eq:NNNNTF \#5 \#6 \_regex_compile_special:N \^}
  {\bool_set_false:N \l__regex_internal_bool
    \_kernel_tl_set:Nx \l__regex_internal_a_tl {\if_false:} \fi:
    \_regex_compile_class_posix_loop:w}
  {
    \bool_set_true:N \l__regex_internal_bool
    \_kernel_tl_set:Nx \l__regex_internal_a_tl {\if_false:} \fi:
    \_regex_compile_class_posix_loop:w \#5 \#6}
\cs_new:Npn \_regex_compile_class_posix_loop:w \#1\#2
  {\token_if_eq_meaning:NNTF \_regex_compile_raw:N \#1
    \_regex_compile_class_posix_loop:w \#2
    {\if_false:} \_regex_compile_class_posix_end:w \#1 \#2}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_regex_compile_class_posix_end:w \#1\#2\#3\#4
  {\_regex_two_if_eq:NNNNTF \#1 \#2 \_regex_compile_special:N :}
  {\_regex_two_if_eq:NNNNTF \#3 \#4 \_regex_compile_special:N \]]}
  {\use_ii:nn}
  {\cs_if_exist:cTF {__regex_posix_\l__regex_internal_a_tl :}
    {\_regex_compile_one:n
      {\bool_if:NF \l__regex_internal_bool \_regex_item_reverse:n
        \exp_not:c {__regex_posix_\l__regex_internal_a_tl :}}
    }
    {\msg_warning:nnx {regex} {posix-unknown}}
    {\_regex_internal_a_tl}
    \_regex_compile_abort_tokens:x {[: \bool_if:NF \l__regex_internal_bool {^} \l__regex_internal_a_tl :]}
  }
  {\msg_error:nnxx {regex} {posix-missing-close}}
  {[: \l__regex_internal_a_tl \#2 \#4 \_regex_compile_abort_tokens:x {[: \l__regex_internal_a_tl :] \#1 \#2 \#3 \#4}}}
}
45.3.10 Groups and alternations

The contents of a regex group are turned into compiled code in \_\_regex_compile_class_posix_test:w, which ends up with items of the form \_\_regex_branch:n \{(concatenation)\}. This construction is done using \tl_build... functions within a \TeX{} group, which automatically makes sure that options (case-sensitivity and default catcode) are reset at the end of the group. The argument \#1 is \_\_regex_group:nnnN or a variant thereof. A small subtlety to support \texttt{\La(abc)} as a shorthand for \texttt{\La\La\La}: exit any pending catcode test, save the category code at the start of the group as the default catcode for that group, and make sure that the catcode is restored to the default outside the group.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_regex_compile_group_begin:N #1
\{\tl_build_put_right:Nn \l__regex_build_tl { #1 { \if_false: } \fi: } \__regex_mode_quit_c:
\group_begin:
\tl_build_begin:N \l__regex_build_tl
\int_set_eq:NN \l__regex_default_catcodes_int \l__regex_catcodes_int
\int_incr:N \l__regex_group_level_int
\tl_build_put_right:Nn \l__regex_build_tl
{ \__regex_branch:n { \if_false: } \fi: }
\}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_regex_compile_group_end:
\{\if_int_compare:w \l__regex_group_level_int > \c_zero_int
\tl_build_put_right:Nn \l__regex_build_tl { \if_false: \{ \fi: } \tl_build_end:N \l__regex_build_tl
\exp_args:NNNx \group_end:
\tl_build_put_right:Nn \l__regex_build_tl
{ \l__regex_build_tl }
\int_set_eq:NN \l__regex_catcodes_int \l__regex_default_catcodes_int
\exp_after:wN \_\_regex_compile_quantifier:w
\else:
\msg_warning:nn { regex } { extra-rparen }
\exp_after:wN \_\_regex_compile_raw:N \exp_after:wN ) \fi:
\}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \_\_regex_compile_group_begin:N and \_\_regex_compile_group_end:.)

\_\_regex_compile_(:: In a class, parentheses are not special. In a catcode test inside a class, a left parenthesis gives an error, to catch \texttt{\La\La\La(bcd)e)}. Otherwise check for a ?, denoting special groups, and run the code for the corresponding special group.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \_\_regex_compile_(:: }
\{ \_\_regex_if_in_class:TF { \_\_regex_compile_raw:N \{ \}
{ \if_int_compare:w \l__regex_mode_int = \c__regex_catcode_in_class_mode_int
\c__regex_catcode_in_class_mode_int_int
\end{verbatim}

482
\_regex_compile|(\end{definition}
\_regex_compile|): In a class, the pipe is not special. Otherwise, end the current branch and open another one.

\_regex_compile|:\end{definition}
\_regex_compile|): Within a class, parentheses are not special. Outside, close a group.

\_regex_compile|:\end{definition}
\_regex_compile_special_group::w Non-capturing, and resetting groups are easy to take care of during compilation; for those groups, the harder parts come when building.

\_regex_compile_special_group::w \_regex_compile_special_group|:w
The match can be made case-insensitive by setting the option with (?i); the original behaviour is restored by (?-i). This is the only supported option.

45.3.11 Catcodes and csnames

The \c escape sequence can be followed by a capital letter representing a character category, by a left bracket which starts a list of categories, or by a brace group holding a regular expression for a control sequence name. Otherwise, raise an error.
\int_if_exist:cTF { c__regex_catcode_#2_int }
{
\int_set_eq:Nc \l__regex_catcodes_int
{ c__regex_catcode_#2_int }
\l__regex_mode_int
= \if_case:w \l__regex_mode_int
\c__regex_catcode_mode_int
\else:
\c__regex_catcode_in_class_mode_int
\fi:
\token_if_eq_charcode:NNT C #2 { \_regex_compile_C:NN }
}
\cs_if_exist_use:cF { __regex_compile_c_#2:w }
{
\msg_error:nnx { regex } { c-missing-category } {#2}
#1 #2
}
\token_if_eq_charcode:NNT C #2 { \_regex_compile_c_C:NN }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_compile_c_C:NN #1#2
{
\token_if_eq_meaning:NNTF #1 \__regex_compile_special:N
{
\token_if_eq_charcode:NNTF #2 .
{ \use_none:n }
{ \token_if_eq_charcode:NNF #2 ( ) % }
\use:n
{ \msg_error:nnn { regex } { c-C-invalid } {#2} }
#1 #2
}
\cs_new_protected:cpn { __regex_compile_c_lbrack_add:N
\__regex_compile_c_lbrack_loop:NN
\__regex_compile_c_lbrack_end:

When encountering \cC, the task is to collect uppercase letters representing character categories. First check for ^ which negates the list of category codes.
\cs_new_protected:cpn { __regex_compile_c_lbrack_add:N
\__regex_compile_c_lbrack_loop:NN
\__regex_compile_c_lbrack_end:

(End definition for \_regex_compile_c:C and \_regex_compile_c_test:NN.)

\_regex_compile_c:C:NN
If \cC is not followed by . or (...) then complain because that construction cannot match anything, except in cases like \cC\c[\cC[\ldots]], where it has no effect.
\cs_new_protected:Npm \_regex_compile_c:C:NN \#1#2
{
\token_if_eq_meaning:NNTF #1 \_regex_compile_special:N
{
\token_if_eq_charcode:NNTF #2 .
{ \use_none:n }
\token_if_eq_charcode:NNF #2 ( ) % }
\use:n
{ \msg_error:nnn { regex } { c-C-invalid } {#2} }
#1 #2
}

(End definition for \_regex_compile_c:C:NN.)

\_regex_compile_c_lbrack_loop:NN
\_regex_compile_c_lbrack_add:N
\_regex_compile_c_lbrack_end:
The case of a left brace is easy, based on what we have done so far: in a group, compile the regular expression, after changing the mode to forbid nesting \c. Additionally, disable submatch tracking since groups don’t escape the scope of \c{...}.

```
\__regex_compile_c_{
```

(End definition for \__regex_compile_c{:w and others.)}
\_\_regex_compile_\{:

We forbid unescaped left braces inside a \texttt{\{...\}} escape because they otherwise lead to the confusing question of whether the first right brace in \texttt{\{x\}} should end \texttt{\{ or whether one should match braces.

\cs_new_protected:cpn { __regex_compile_ \left_brace_str : }
\{
\__regex_if_in_cs:TF
{ \msg_error:nnn { regex } { cu-lbrace } { c } }
{ \exp_after:wN \__regex_compile_raw:N \left_brace_str }
\}

(\textit{End definition for \_\_regex_compile_c\{:)})

\_\_regex_compile_\}:

Non-escaped right braces are only special if they appear when compiling the regular expression for a csname, but not within a class: \texttt{\{[]} matches the control sequences \texttt{\{} and \texttt{\}}. So, end compiling the inner regex (this closes any dangling class or group). Then insert the corresponding test in the outer regex. As an optimization, if the control sequence test simply consists of several explicit possibilities (branches) then use \texttt{\_\_regex_item_exact_cs:n} with an argument consisting of all possibilities separated by \texttt{\scan_stop:}.

\flag_new:n { __regex_cs }
\cs_new_protected:cpn { __regex_compile_ \right_brace_str : }
\{
\__regex_if_in_cs:TF
{ \__regex_compile_end_cs: }
{ \exp_after:wN \__regex_compile_raw:N \right_brace_str }
\}

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_compile_end_cs:
\{
\__regex_compile_end:
\flag_clear:n { __regex_cs }
\__kernel_tl_set:Nx \l__regex_internal_a_tl
{ \exp_after:wN \__regex_compile_cs_aux:Nn \l__regex_internal_regex
\q__regex_nil \q__regex_recursion_stop }
\exp_args:Nx \__regex_compile_one:n
{ \flag_if_raised:nTF { __regex_cs }
{ \__regex_item_cs:n { \exp_not:o \l__regex_internal_regex } }
{ \__regex_item_exact_cs:n
{ \tl_tail:N \l__regex_internal_a_tl }
} }
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__regex_compile_cs_aux:Nn #1#2

\end{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\cs_if_eq:NNTF #1 \__regex_branch:n
  { 
    \scan_stop:
    \__regex_compile_cs_aux:NNnnnN #2
    \q__regex_nil \q__regex_nil \q__regex_nil \q__regex_nil \q__regex_recursion_stop
    \__regex_compile_cs_aux:Nn
  }

  { 
    \__regex_quark_if_nil:NF #1 { \flag_raise_if_clear:n { \__regex_cs } }
    \__regex_use_none_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:w
  }

\cs_new:Nnpn \__regex_compile_cs_aux:NNnnnN #1#2#3#4#5#6
{ \bool_lazy_all:nTF
  { 
    \cs_if_eq_p:NN #1 \__regex_class:NnnnN }
  {#2}
  {\tl_if_head_eq_meaning_p:nN {#3} \__regex_item_caseful_equal:n }
  { \int_compare_p:nNn { \tl_count:n {#3} } = { 2 } }
  { \int_compare_p:nNn {#5} = { 0 } }
}

  { 
    \__regex_quark_if_nil:NF #1
    { \flag_raise_if_clear:n { \__regex_cs }
      \__regex_use_i_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:nw
    }
    \__regex_use_none_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:w
  }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__regex_compile Cs: and others.)

\subsection*{45.3.12 Raw token lists with \textbackslash u}

\textbackslash u escape is invalid in classes and directly following a catcode test. Otherwise test for a following \texttt{r} (for \texttt{ur}), and call an auxiliary responsible for finding the variable name.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \__regex_compile_/u: } #1#2

\cs_if_in_class_or_catcode:TF
{ \__regex_compile_raw_error:N u #1 #2 }
\__regex_compile_raw:N r

\cs_if_eq:NNNNTF #1 #2 \__regex_compile_raw:N r
{ \__regex_compile_u_brace:Nnn \__regex_compile_ur_end: }
{ \__regex_compile_u_brace:Nnn \__regex_compile_u_end: #1 #2 }
\end{verbatim}

488
This enforces the presence of a left brace, then starts a loop to find the variable name.

We collect the characters for the argument of \u within an x-expanding assignment. In principle we could just wait to encounter a right brace, but this is unsafe: if the right brace was missing, then we would reach the end-markers of the regex, and continue, leading to obscure fatal errors. Instead, we only allow raw and special characters, and stop when encountering a special right brace, any escaped character, or the end-marker.
For the \texttt{\ur{...}} construction, once we have extracted the variable's name, we replace all groups by non-capturing groups in the compiled regex (passed as the argument of \texttt{\__regex_compile_u:n}). If that has a single branch (namely \texttt{\tl_if_empty:oTF} is false) and there is no quantifier, then simply insert the contents of this branch (obtained by \texttt{\use_i:nn}, which is expanded later). In all other cases, insert a non-capturing group and look for quantifiers to determine the number of repetition etc.

\begin{verbatim}
cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_compile_u_end:
{
  \cs_set:Npn \__regex_group:nnnN { \__regex_group_no_capture:nnnN }
  \cs_set:Npn \__regex_group_resetting:nnnN { \__regex_group_no_capture:nnnN }
  \exp_args:NNx
  \__regex_compile_u_end:
  \__regex_group:nnnN { \use:c { \l__regex_internal_a_tl } }
}
cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_compile_u:n #1
{
  \tl_if_empty:oTF { \__regex_compile_u_aux:w #1 {} ? ? \q__regex_nil }
  \__regex_compile_if_quantifier:TFw
  { \use_i:nn }
  { \tl_build_put_right:Nn \l__regex_build_tl { \__regex_group_no_capture:nnnN { \if_false: } \fi: #1 } }
  \__regex_compile_quantifier:w
}
cs_new:Npn \__regex_compile_u_aux:w \__regex_branch:n #1#2#3 \q__regex_nil
{(End definition for \_regex_compile_u_loop:NN.)
\begin{verbatim}
\__regex_compile_u_end:
\__regex_compile_u:n \__regex_compile_u_aux:w
\__regex_compile_u_end:
\__regex_compile_u_payload:
\end{verbatim}
(End definition for \_regex_compile_u_end:, \_regex_compile_u:n, and \_regex_compile_u_aux:w.)
\begin{verbatim}
cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_compile_u_end:
{
  \__regex_compile_if_quantifier:TFw
  { \tl_build_put_right:Nn \l__regex_build_tl { \__regex_group_no_capture:nnnN { \if_false: } \fi: #1 } }
  \__regex_compile_u_payload:
  \tl_build_put_right:Nn \l__regex_build_tl { \__regex_group_no_capture:nnnN { \if_false: } \fi: }
  \__regex_compile_quantifier:w
}
\end{verbatim}

490
\_\_regex_compile_u\_payload: \]
{ \__regex_compile_u\_payload: }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_regex_compile_u\_payload:
{ \tl_set:Nv \l__regex_internal_a_tl \{ \l__regex_internal_a_tl \}
\if_int_compare:w \l__regex_mode_int = \c__regex_outer_mode_int
\_\_regex_compile_u\_not\_cs:
\else:
\_\_regex_compile_u\_in\_cs:
\fi:
}
(End definition for \_\_regex_compile_u\_end: and \_\_regex_compile_u\_payload.)
\_\_regex_compile_u\_in\_cs: When \u appears within a control sequence, we convert the variable to a string with escaped spaces. Then for each character insert a class matching exactly that character, once.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_regex_compile_u\_in\_cs:
{ \__kernel_tl_gset:Nx \g__regex_internal_tl
\exp_args:No \__kernel_str_to_other_fast:n
\{ \l__regex_internal_a_tl \}
\tl_build_put_right:Nx \l__regex_build_tl
\tl_map_function:NN \g__regex_internal_tl \__regex_compile_u\_in\_cs\_aux:n
}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_regex_compile_u\_in\_cs\_aux:n #1
{ \__regex_class:NnnnN \c_true_bool
\{ \__regex_item_caseful_equal:n \{ \int_value:w '#1 \} \}
\{ 1 \} \{ 0 \} \c_false_bool
}
(End definition for \_\_regex_compile_u\_in\_cs.)
\_\_regex_compile_u\_not\_cs: In mode 0, the \u escape adds one state to the NFA for each token in \l__regex\_internal_a_tl. If a given (token) is a control sequence, then insert a string comparison test, otherwise, \__regex_item_exact:nn which compares catcode and character code.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_regex_compile_u\_not\_cs:
{ \tl_analysis_map_inline:Nn \l__regex\_internal_tl
\{ \tl_build_put_right:Nx \l__regex\_build_t1
\{ \tl_map_function:NN \g__regex\_internal_t1
\_\_regex_compile_u\_in\_cs\_aux:n
\}
\}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_regex_compile_u\_in\_cs\_aux:n #1
{ \__regex_class:NnnnN \c_true_bool
\{ \__regex_item_caseful_equal:n \{ \int_value:w '#1 \} \}
\{ 1 \} \{ 0 \} \c_false_bool
}
\}
(End definition for \_\_regex_compile_u\_not\_cs.)

491
45.3.13 Other

The \textbackslash K control sequence is currently the only “command”, which performs some action, rather than matching something. It is allowed in the same contexts as \textbackslash b. At the compilation stage, we leave it as a single control sequence, defined later.

45.3.14 Showing regexes

Before showing a regex we check that it is “clean” in the sense that it has the correct internal structure. We do this (in the implementation of \texttt{\regex_show:N} and \texttt{\regex_log:N}) by comparing it with a cleaned-up version of the same regex. Along the way we also need similar functions for other types: all \texttt{\__regex_clean_{\langle \text{type} \rangle}:n} functions produce valid \texttt{\langle \text{type} \rangle} tokens (bool, explicit integer, etc.) from arbitrary input, and the output coincides with the input if that was valid.
\quark_if_recursion_tail_stop:n \{#1\}
\scan_stop: \tl_to_str:n \{#1\}
\__regex_clean_exact_cs:w
\}

(End definition for \__regex_clean_bool:n and others.)

\__regex_show:N

Within a group and within \tl_build_begin:N ... \tl_build_end:N we redefine all the function that can appear in a compiled regex, then run the regex. The result stored in \l__regex_internal_a_tl is then meant to be shown.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_show:N #1
\{
\group_begin:
\tl_build_begin:N \l__regex_build_tl
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__regex_branch:n
\{
\seq_pop_right:NN \l__regex_show_prefix_seq
\l__regex_internal_a_tl
\__regex_show_one:n { +-branch }
\seq_put_right:No \l__regex_show_prefix_seq
\l__regex_internal_a_tl
\use:n
\}
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__regex_group:nnnN { \__regex_show_group_aux:nnnnN { } }
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__regex_group_no_capture:nnnN { \__regex_show_group_aux:nnnnN { ~(no~capture) } }
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__regex_group_resetting:nnnN { \__regex_show_group_aux:nnnnN { ~(resetting) } }
\cs_set_eq:NN \__regex_class:NnnnN \__regex_show_class:NnnnN
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__regex_command_K: { \__regex_show_one:n { reset~match~start~(\iow_char:N\K) } }
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__regex_assertion:Nn ##1##2
\{ \__regex_show_one:n { \bool_if:NF ##1 { negative~ } assertion:~##2 } \}
\cs_set:Npn \__regex_b_test: { word~boundary }
\cs_set:Npn \__regex_Z_test: { anchor~at~end~(\iow_char:N\Z) }
\cs_set:Npn \__regex_A_test: { anchor~at~start~(\iow_char:N\A) }
\cs_set:Npn \__regex_G_test: { anchor~at~start~of~match~(\iow_char:N\G) }
\cs_set_protected:Npn \\__regex_item_caseful_equal:n ##1
\{ \__regex_show_one:n { char~code~\__regex_show_char:n{##1} } \}
\cs_set_protected:Npn \\__regex_item_caseful_range:nn ##1##2
\{ \__regex_show_one:n { Range~\[\__regex_show_char:n{##1}, \__regex_show_char:n{##2}\] } \}
\cs_set_protected:Npn \\__regex_item_caseless_equal:n ##1
\{ \__regex_show_one:n { char~code~\__regex_show_char:n{##1}~(caseless) } \}
\cs_set_protected:Npn \\__regex_item_caseless_range:nn ##1##2
\{ \__regex_show_one:n { Range~\[\__regex_show_char:n{##1}, \__regex_show_char:n{##2}\]~(caseless) } \}

495
\__regex_show_char:n  Show a single character, together with its ascii representation if available. This could be extended to beyond ascii. It is not ideal for parentheses themselves.
\__regex_show_one:n  Every part of the final message go through this function, which adds one line to the output, with the appropriate prefix.
\__regex_show_push:n Enter and exit levels of nesting. The \texttt{scope} function prints its first argument as an “introduction”, then performs its second argument in a deeper level of nesting.

(End definition for \__regex_show:N.)
We display all groups in the same way, simply adding a message, (no capture) or (resetting), to special groups. The odd \use_ii:nn avoids printing a spurious +-branch for the first branch.

\begin{Verbatim}
\cs_set:Npn \__regex_show_class:NnnnN \{#1\} \{#2\} \{#3\} \{#4\} \{#5\}
\{ \__regex_build_begin:N \l__regex_build_tl \int_zero:N \l__regex_show_lines_int \__regex_show_push:n \{-\} \__regex_show_one:n \{-\} \__regex_msg_repeated:nnnN \#3 \#4 \#5 \}
\end{Verbatim}

I’m entirely unhappy about this function: I couldn’t find a way to test if a class is a single test. Instead, collect the representation of the tests in the class. If that had more than one line, write Match or Don’t match on its own line, with the repeating information if any. Then the various tests on lines of their own, and finally a line. Otherwise, we need to evaluate the representation of the tests again (since the prefix is incorrect). That’s clunky, but not too expensive, since it’s only one test.

\begin{Verbatim}
\cs_set:Npn \__regex_show_class:NnnnN \{#1\} \{#2\} \{#3\} \{#4\} \{#5\}
\{ \__regex_build_begin:N \l__regex_build_tl \int_zero:N \l__regex_show_lines_int \__regex_show_push:n \{-\} \__regex_show_one:n \{-\} \__regex_msg_repeated:nnnN \#3 \#4 \#5 \}
\end{Verbatim}
45.4 Building

45.4.1 Variables used while building

\l__regex_min_state_int
\l__regex_max_state_int

The last state that was allocated is \l__regex_max_state_int − 1, so that \l__regex_max_state_int always points to a free state. The min_state variable is 1 to begin with, but gets shifted in nested calls to the matching code, namely in \c{...} constructions.
Alternatives are implemented by branching from a left state into the various choices, then merging those into a right state. We store information about those states in two sequences. Those states are also used to implement group quantifiers. Most often, the left and right pointers only differ by 1.

\l__regex_capturing_group_int is the next ID number to be assigned to a capturing group. This starts at 0 for the group enclosing the full regular expression, and groups are counted in the order of their left parenthesis, except when encountering resetting groups.

45.4.2 Framework

This phase is about going from a compiled regex to an NFA. Each state of the NFA is stored in a \toks. The operations which can appear in the \toks are

- **\__regex_action_start_wildcard:**N \langle boolean \rangle inserted at the start of the regular expression, where a true \langle boolean \rangle makes it unanchored.

- **\__regex_action_success:** marks the exit state of the NFA.

- **\__regex_action_cost:**N \langle shift \rangle is a transition from the current \langle state \rangle to \langle state \rangle + \langle shift \rangle, which consumes the current character: the target state is saved and will be considered again when matching at the next position.

- **\__regex_action_free:**N \langle shift \rangle, and **\__regex_action_free_group:**N \langle shift \rangle are free transitions, which immediately perform the actions for the state \langle state \rangle + \langle shift \rangle of the NFA. They differ in how they detect and avoid infinite loops. For now, we just need to know that the group variant must be used for transitions back to the start of a group.

- **\__regex_action_submatch:**N \langle group \rangle \langle key \rangle where the \langle key \rangle is < or > for the beginning or end of group numbered \langle group \rangle. This causes the current position in the query to be stored as the \langle key \rangle submatch boundary.

- One of these actions, within a conditional.

We strive to preserve the following properties while building.

- The current capturing group is **capturing_group** − 1, and if a group opened now it would be labelled **capturing_group**.
The last allocated state is $\max_{state} - 1$, so $\max_{state}$ is a free state.

The $left_{state}$ points to a state to the left of the current group or of the last class.

The $right_{state}$ points to a newly created, empty state, with some transitions leading to it.

The $left/right$ sequences hold a list of the corresponding end-points of nested groups.

The $n$-type function first compiles its argument. Reset some variables. Allocate two states, and put a wildcard in state 0 (transitions to state 1 and 0 state). Then build the regex within a (capturing) group numbered 0 (current value of $capturing_{group}$). Finally, if the match reaches the last state, it is successful. A $false$ boolean for argument #1 for the auxiliaries will suppress the wildcard and make the match anchored: used for $\peek_{regex}:n$ and similar.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_build:n \__regex_build_aux:Nn \c_true_bool
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_build:N \__regex_build_aux:NN \c_true_bool
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_build_aux:Nn \c_true_bool
\__regex_compile:n {#2}
\__regex_build_aux:NN #1 \l__regex_internal_regex
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_build_aux:NN \c_false_bool
\__regex_standard_escapechar:
\int_zero:N \l__regex_capturing_group_int
\int_set_eq:NN \l__regex_max_state_int \l__regex_min_state_int
\__regex_build_new_state:
\__regex_toks_put_right:Nn \l__regex_left_state_int { \__regex_action_start_wildcard:N #1 }
\__regex_group:nnnN {#2} { 1 } { 0 } \c_false_bool
\__regex_toks_put_right:Nn \l__regex_right_state_int { \__regex_action_success: }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__regex_build:n and others.)

$\g_{regex_case_int}$ Case number that was successfully matched in $\regex_match_case:nn$ and related functions.

(End definition for $\g_{regex_case_int}$.)

$\l_{regex_case_max_group_int}$ The largest group number appearing in any of the $\langle regex \rangle$ in the argument of $\regex_match_case:nn$ and related functions.

(End definition for $\l_{regex_case_max_group_int}$.)
\_\_regex_case_build:n See \_\_regex_build:n but with a loop.
\_\_regex_case_build:x
\_\_regex_case_build_aux:Nn
\_\_regex_case_build_loop:n

\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_regex_case_build:n #1\{\_\_regex_case_build_aux:Nn \c_true_bool \{ #1 \}\cs_gzero:N \g__regex_case_int\}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \_\_regex_case_build:n { x }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_regex_case_build_aux:Nn #1#2
\__regex_standard_escapechar:
\int_set_eq:NN \l__regex_max_state_int \l__regex_min_state_int
\_\_regex_build_new_state:
\_\_regex_build_new_state:
\_\_regex_toks_put_right:Nn \l__regex_left_state_int \__regex_action_start_wildcard:N #1
\% \\
\_\_regex_build_new_state:
\_\_regex_toks_put_left:Nx \l__regex_left_state_int \__regex_action_submatch:nN \{ 0 \} < \\
\_\_regex_push_lr_states:
\int_zero:N \l__regex_case_max_group_int
\int_gzero:N \g__regex_case_int
\tl_map_inline:nn {#2}
\{ \__regex_action_success: \}
\__regex_toks_clear:N \l__regex_max_state_int
\seq_push:No \l__regex_max_state_int \int_incr:N \l__regex_max_state_int

\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_regex_case_build_loop:n #1\{\int_set:Nn \l__regex_capturing_group_int { 1 } \_\_regex_compile_use:n { #1 } \int_set:Nn \l__regex_case_max_group_int \int_max:nn { \l__regex_case_max_group_int } \l__regex_capturing_group_int \_\_regex_pop_lr_states:
\}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_regex_case_build_loop:n #1\{\int_set:Nn \l__regex_capturing_group_int { 1 } \_\_regex_compile_use:n { #1 } \int_set:Nn \l__regex_case_max_group_int \int_max:nn { \l__regex_case_max_group_int } \l__regex_capturing_group_int \_\_regex_pop_lr_states:
\}
\seq_pop:NN \l__regex_right_state_seq \l__regex_internal_a_tl \int_set:Nn \l__regex_right_state_int \l__regex_internal_a_tl \_\_regex_toks_put_left:Nx \l__regex_right_state_int \\
\{ \_\_regex_action_submatch:nN \{ 0 \} > \int_gset:Nn \g__regex_case_int \{ \int_use:N \g__regex_case_int \} \_\_regex_action_success: \}
\_\_regex_toks_clear:N \l__regex_max_state_int \seq_push:No \l__regex_right_state_seq \int_incr:N \l__regex_max_state_int

501
The matching code relies on some global intarray variables, but only uses a range of their entries. Specifically,

- \texttt{\_\_regex_state_active\_intarray} from \texttt{\l__regex\_min\_state\_int} to \texttt{\l__regex\_max\_state\_int}.

Here, in this nested call to the matching code, we need the new versions of this range to involve completely new entries of the intarray variables, so we begin by setting (the new) \texttt{\l__regex\_min\_state\_int} to (the old) \texttt{\l__regex\_max\_state\_int} to use higher entries.

When using a regex to match a cs, we don’t insert a wildcard, we anchor at the end, and since we ignore submatches, there is no need to surround the expression with a group. However, for branches to work properly at the outer level, we need to put the appropriate left and right states in their sequence.

When building the regular expression, we keep track of pointers to the left-end and right-end of each group without help from \TeX’s grouping.
Add a transition from #2 to #3 using the function #1. The \texttt{left} function is used for higher priority transitions, and the \texttt{right} function for lower priority transitions (which should be performed later). The signatures differ to reflect the differing usage later on. Both functions could be optimized.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_build_transition_left:NNN #1#2#3
\{ \__regex_toks_put_left:Nx #2 { #1 { \int_eval:n { #3 - #2 } } } \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_build_transition_right:nNn #1#2#3
\{ \__regex_toks_put_right:Nx #2 { #1 { \int_eval:n { #3 - #2 } } } \}
\end{verbatim}

Add a new empty state to the \texttt{nfa}. Then update the \texttt{left}, \texttt{right}, and \texttt{max} states, so that the \texttt{right} state is the new empty state, and the \texttt{left} state points to the previously “current” state.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_build_new_state:
\{ \__regex_toks_clear:N \l__regex_max_state_int
\int_set_eq:NN \l__regex_left_state_int \l__regex_right_state_int
\int_set_eq:NN \l__regex_right_state_int \l__regex_max_state_int
\int_incr:N \l__regex_max_state_int \}
\end{verbatim}

This function creates a new state, and puts two transitions starting from the old current state. The order of the transitions is controlled by #1, true for lazy quantifiers, and false for greedy quantifiers.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_build_transitions_lazyness:NNNNN #1#2#3#4#5
\{ \__regex_build_new_state:
\__regex_toks_put_right:Nx \l__regex_left_state_int
\if_meaning:w \c_true_bool #1
\#2 { \int_eval:n { #3 - \l__regex_left_state_int } } \}
\#4 { \int_eval:n { #5 - \l__regex_left_state_int } } \}
\else:
\#4 { \int_eval:n { #5 - \l__regex_left_state_int } } \}
\#2 { \int_eval:n { #3 - \l__regex_left_state_int } } \}
\fi:
\}
\end{verbatim}

\section*{45.4.4 Building classes}

The arguments are: \langle \texttt{boolean} \rangle \{\langle \texttt{tests} \rangle \} \{\langle \texttt{min} \rangle \} \{\langle \texttt{more} \rangle \} \{\texttt{lazyness} \rangle. First store the tests with a trailing \texttt{\__regex_action_cost:n}, in the true branch of \texttt{\__regex_break-point:TF} for positive classes, or the false branch for negative classes. The integer \langle \texttt{more} \rangle is 0 for fixed repetitions, -1 for unbounded repetitions, and \langle \texttt{max} \rangle - \langle \texttt{min} \rangle for a range of repetitions.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_class:NnnnN #1#2#3#4#5
\cs_set:Npx \__regex_tests_action_cost:n ##1
\exp_not:n \exp_not:n \{ \exp_not:n \{ #2 \}
\bool_if:NTF #1
\__regex_break_point:TF \{ \__regex_action_cost:n \{#1\} \} \{ \}
\__regex_break_point:TF \{ \} \{ \__regex_action_cost:n \{#1\} \}
\if_case:w - #4 \exp_stop_f:
\__regex_class_repeat:n \{#3\} \or: \__regex_class_repeat:nN \{#3\} \{#4\} \#5\fi:
\cs_new:Npn \__regex_tests_action_cost:n \{ \__regex_action_cost:n \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_class_repeat:n #1
\prg_replicate:nn {#1}
\__regex_build_new_state:
\__regex_build_transition_right:nNn \__regex_tests_action_cost:n \l__regex_left_state_int \l__regex_right_state_int
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_class_repeat:nN #1#2
\if_int_compare:w #1 = \c_zero_int
\__regex_build_transitions_lazyness:NNNNN #2 \__regex_action_free:n \l__regex_right_state_int \__regex_tests_action_cost:n \l__regex_left_state_int
\else:
\__regex_class_repeat:n \{#1\}
\int_set_eq:NN \l__regex_internal_a_int \l__regex_left_state_int \__regex_build_transitions_lazyness:NNNNN #2 \__regex_action_free:n \l__regex_right_state_int \l__regex_left_state_int
\__regex_tests_action_cost:n \l__regex_internal_a_int \fi:
\end{definition}

\__regex_class_repeat:n This is used for a fixed number of repetitions. Build one state for each repetition, with a transition controlled by the tests that we have collected. That works just fine for #1 = 0 repetitions: nothing is built.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_class_repeat:n #1
\prg_replicate:nn {#1}
\__regex_build_new_state:
\__regex_build_transition_right:nNn \__regex_tests_action_cost:n \l__regex_left_state_int \l__regex_right_state_int
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_class_repeat:nN #1#2
\if_int_compare:w #1 = \c_zero_int
\__regex_build_transitions_lazyness:NNNNN #2 \__regex_action_free:n \l__regex_right_state_int \__regex_tests_action_cost:n \l__regex_left_state_int
\else:
\__regex_class_repeat:n \{#1\}
\int_set_eq:NN \l__regex_internal_a_int \l__regex_left_state_int \__regex_build_transitions_lazyness:NNNNN #2 \__regex_action_free:n \l__regex_right_state_int \l__regex_left_state_int
\__regex_tests_action_cost:n \l__regex_internal_a_int \fi:
\end{definition}

\__regex_class_repeat:nN This implements unbounded repetitions of a single class (e.g. the * and + quantifiers). If the minimum number #1 of repetitions is 0, then build a transition from the current state to itself governed by the tests, and a free transition to a new state (hence skipping the tests). Otherwise, call \__regex_class_repeat:n for the code to match #1 repetitions, and add free transitions from the last state to the previous one, and to a new one. In both cases, the order of transitions is controlled by the lazyness boolean #2.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_class_repeat:nN #1#2
\if_int_compare:w #1 = \c_zero_int
\__regex_build_transitions_lazyness:NNNNN #2 \__regex_action_free:n \l__regex_right_state_int \l__regex_tests_action_cost:n \l__regex_left_state_int
\else:
\__regex_class_repeat:n \{#1\}
\int_set_eq:NN \l__regex_internal_a_int \l__regex_left_state_int \__regex_build_transitions_lazyness:NNNNN #2 \__regex_action_free:n \l__regex_right_state_int \l__regex_left_state_int
\__regex_tests_action_cost:n \l__regex_internal_a_int \fi:
We want to build the code to match from \#1 to \#1 + \#2 repetitions. Match \#1 repetitions (can be 0). Compute the final state of the next construction as a. Build \#2 > 0 states, each with a transition to the next state governed by the tests, and a transition to the final state a. The computation of a is safe because states are allocated in order, starting from max_state.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_class_repeat:nnN #1#2#3
\__regex_class_repeat:n {#1}
\int_set:Nn \l__regex_internal_a_int
{ \l__regex_max_state_int + #2 - 1 }
\prg_replicate:nn { #2 }
{
\__regex_build_transitions_lazyness:NNNNN #3
\__regex_action_free:n \l__regex_internal_a_int
\__regex_tests_action_cost:n \l__regex_right_state_int
}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__regex_class_repeat:nnN.)

\subsection*{45.4.5 Building groups}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_group_aux:nnnnN #1#2#3#4#5
\if_int_compare:w #3 = \c_zero_int
\__regex_build_new_state:
\__regex_build_transition_right:nNn \__regex_action_free_group:n
\l__regex_left_state_int \l__regex_right_state_int
\else:
\__regex_group_repeat:nnnN {#1} {#3} {#4} #5
\fi:
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__regex_group_aux:nnnnN.)

Arguments: \{⟨label⟩\} \{⟨contents⟩\} \{⟨min⟩\} \{⟨more⟩\} \{lazyness⟩\}. If \{⟨min⟩\} is 0, we need to add a state before building the group, so that the thread which skips the group does not also set the start-point of the submatch. After adding one more state, the left_state is the left end of the group, from which all branches stem, and the right_state is the right end of the group, and all branches end their course in that state. We store those two integers to be queried for each branch, we build the NFA states for the contents \#2 of the group, and we forget about the two integers. Once this is done, perform the repetition: either exactly \#3 times, or \#3 or more times, or between \#3 and \#3 + \#4 times, with lazyness \#5. The ⟨label⟩ \#1 is used for submatch tracking. Each of the three auxiliaries expects left_state and right_state to be set properly.
\__regex_group:nnnN \__regex_group_no_capture:nnnN

Hand to \__regex_group_aux:nnnnN the label of that group (expanded), and the group itself, with some extra commands to perform.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_group:nnnN #1
{ \exp_args:No \__regex_group_aux:nnnnN
{ \int_use:N \l__regex_capturing_group_int }
\int_incr:N \l__regex_capturing_group_int #1
}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_group_no_capture:nnnN
{ \__regex_group_aux:nnnnN { -1 } }

(End definition for \__regex_group:nnnN and \__regex_group_no_capture:nnnN.)

\__regex_group_resetting:nnnN \__regex_group_resetting_loop:nnnN

Again, hand the label −1 to \__regex_group_aux:nnnnN, but this time we work a little bit harder to keep track of the maximum group label at the end of any branch, and to reset the group number at each branch. This relies on the fact that a compiled regex always is a sequence of items of the form \__regex_branch:n \{ (branch) \}.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_group_resetting:nnnN #1
{ \__regex_group_aux:nnnnN { -1 }
{ \exp_args:Noo \__regex_group_resetting_loop:nnnN
{ \int_use:N \l__regex_capturing_group_int }
{ \int_use:N \l__regex_capturing_group_int }
#1
{ ?? \prg_break:n } { }
\prg_break_point:
}
}\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_group_resetting_loop:nnnNn #1#2#3#4
{ \use_none:nn #3 { \int_set:Nn \l__regex_capturing_group_int {#1} }
\int_set:Nn \l__regex_capturing_group_int {#2}
\int_max:nn {#1} { \l__regex_capturing_group_int }
{#2}
}

(End definition for \__regex_group_resetting:nnnN and \__regex_group_resetting_loop:nnnNn.)

\__regex_branch:n

Add a free transition from the left state of the current group to a brand new state, starting point of this branch. Once the branch is built, add a transition from its last state to the right state of the group. The left and right states of the group are extracted from the relevant sequences.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_branch:n #1
{ \__regex_build_new_state:
\seq_get:NN \l__regex_left_state_seq \l__regex_internal_a_tl
\int_set:Nn \l__regex_left_state_int \l__regex_internal_a_tl
\__regex_build_transition_right:nNn \__regex_action_free:n

506
\__regex_group_repeat:nn

This function is called to repeat a group a fixed number of times \#2; if this is 0 we remove the group altogether (but don’t reset the capturing group label). Otherwise, the auxiliary \__regex_group_repeat_aux:n \#1 \toks \times \#2 times the \toks for the group, and leaves internal_a pointing to the left end of the last repetition. We only record the submatch information at the last repetition. Finally, add a state at the end (the transition to it has been taken care of by the replicating auxiliary).

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_group_repeat:nn \#1\#2
\{
  \if_int_compare:w \#2 = \c_zero_int
  \int_set:Nn \l__regex_max_state_int
  \{ \l__regex_left_state_int - 1 \}
  \__regex_build_new_state:
  \else:
  \__regex_group_repeat_aux:n \{\#2\}
  \__regex_group_submatches:nNN \{\#1\}
  \__regex_toks_put_left:Nx \#2 \{ \__regex_action_submatch:nN \{\#1\} < \}
  \__regex_toks_put_left:Nx \#3 \{ \__regex_action_submatch:nN \{\#1\} > \}
  \fi:
\}

(End definition for \__regex_group_repeat:nn.)

\__regex_group_submatches:nNN

This inserts in states \#2 and \#3 the code for tracking submatches of the group \#1, unless inhibited by a label of −1.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_group_submatches:nNN \#1\#2\#3
\{
  \if_int_compare:w \#1 > - \c_one_int
  \__regex_toks_put_left:Nx \#2 \{ \__regex_action_submatch:nN \{\#1\} < \}
  \__regex_toks_put_left:Nx \#3 \{ \__regex_action_submatch:nN \{\#1\} > \}
  \fi:
\}

(End definition for \__regex_group_submatches:nNN.)

\__regex_group_repeat_aux:n

Here we repeat \toks ranging from \texttt{left_state} to \texttt{max_state}, \#1 > 0 times. First add a transition so that the copies “chain” properly. Compute the shift \(c\) between the original copy and the last copy we want. Shift the \texttt{right_state} and \texttt{max_state} to their final values. We then want to perform \(c\) copy operations. At the end, \(b\) is equal to the \texttt{max_state}, and \(a\) points to the left of the last copy of the group.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_group_repeat_aux:n \#1
\{
  \__regex_build_transition_right:nNn \__regex_action_free:n
  \l__regex_right_state_int \l__regex_max_state_int
  \int_set_eq:NN \l__regex_max_state_int \l__regex_left_state_int
  \int_set_eq:NN \l__regex_left_state_int \l__regex_max_state_int
\}
This function is called to repeat a group at least \( n \) times; the case \( n = 0 \) is very different from \( n > 0 \). Assume first that \( n = 0 \). Insert submatch tracking information at the start and end of the group, add a free transition from the right end to the “true” left state \( a \) (remember: in this case we had added an extra state before the left state). This forms the loop, which we break away from by adding a free transition from \( a \) to a new state.

Now consider the case \( n > 0 \). Repeat the group \( n \) times, chaining various copies with a free transition. Add submatch tracking only to the last copy, then add a free transition from the right end back to the left end of the last copy, either before or after the transition to move on towards the rest of the NFA. This transition can end up before submatch tracking, but that is irrelevant since it only does so when going again through the group, recording new matches. Finally, add a state; we already have a transition pointing to it from \( \_\text{regex}_{-}\text{group}_{-}\text{repeat}_{-}\text{aux}:\text{n} \).

\( \_\text{regex}_{-}\text{group}_{-}\text{repeat}_{-}:\text{nn}:\text{N} \)
We wish to repeat the group between \#2 and \#2 + \#3 times, with a laziness controlled by \#4. We insert submatch tracking up front: in principle, we could avoid recording submatches for the first \#2 copies of the group, but that forces us to treat specially the case \#2 = 0. Repeat that group with submatch tracking \#2 + \#3 times (the maximum number of repetitions). Then our goal is to add \#3 transitions from the end of the \#2-th group, and each subsequent groups, to the end. For a lazy quantifier, we add those transitions to the left states, before submatch tracking. For the greedy case, we add the transitions to the right states, after submatch tracking and the transitions which go on with more repetitions. In the greedy case with \#2 = 0, the transition which skips over all copies of the group must be added separately, because its starting state does not follow the normal pattern: we had to add it “by hand” earlier.

\begin{lstlisting}[language=TeX]
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_group_repeat:nnnN \#1#2#3#4
\{
  \__regex_group_submatches:nNN {#1}
  \l__regex_left_state_int \l__regex_right_state_int
  \__regex_group_repeat_aux:n { #2 + #3 }
  \if_meaning:w \c_true_bool #4
  \int_set_eq:NN \l__regex_left_state_int \l__regex_max_state_int
  \prg_replicate:nn { #3 }
    \int_sub:Nn \l__regex_left_state_int
    \{ \l__regex_internal_b_int - \l__regex_internal_a_int \}
  \__regex_build_transition_left:NNN \__regex_action_free:n
    \l__regex_left_state_int \l__regex_max_state_int
  \}
\else:
  \prg_replicate:nn { #3 - 1 }
    \int_sub:Nn \l__regex_right_state_int
      \{ \l__regex_internal_b_int - \l__regex_internal_a_int \}
  \__regex_build_transition_right:nNn \__regex_action_free:n
    \l__regex_right_state_int \l__regex_max_state_int
\fi:
\}
\end{lstlisting}
45.4.6 Others

Usage: \__regex_assertion:Nn (boolean) \{\langle test\rangle\}, where the \langle test\rangle is either of the two other functions. Add a free transition to a new state, conditionally to the assertion test. The \__regex_b_test: test is used by the \b and \B escape: check if the last character was a word character or not, and do the same to the current character. The boundary-markers of the string are non-word characters for this purpose.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_assertion:Nn #1#2
\__regex_build_new_state:
\__regex_toks_put_right:Nx \l__regex_left_state_int
\{ \exp_not:n {#2} \__regex_break_point:TF \bool_if:NF #1 { { } } \}
\__regex_action_free:n
\{ \int_eval:n { \l__regex_right_state_int - \l__regex_left_state_int } \}
\bool_if:NT #1 { { } }
\}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_b_test:
\group_begin: \int_set_eq:NN \l__regex_curr_char_int \l__regex_last_char_int \__regex_prop_w: \__regex_break_point:TF \{ \group_end: \__regex_item_reverse:n \__regex_prop_w: \}
\{ \group_end: \__regex_prop_w: \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_Z_test:
\if_int_compare:w -2 = \l__regex_curr_char_int \exp_after:wN \__regex_break_true:w \fi:
\}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_A_test:
\if_int_compare:w -2 = \l__regex_last_char_int \exp_after:wN \__regex_break_true:w \fi:
\}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_G_test:
\if_int_compare:w \l__regex_curr_pos_int = \l__regex_start_pos_int \exp_after:wN \__regex_break_true:w \fi:
\}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_G_test:
\texttt{\_\_regex\_command\_K:}\ Change the starting point of the \texttt{0}\textsuperscript{-th} submatch (full match), and transition to a new state, pretending that this is a fresh thread.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_command_K: {
  \__regex_build_new_state:
  \__regex_toks_put_right:Nx \l__regex_left_state_int
  \__regex_action_submatch:nN { 0 } <
  \bool_set_true:N \l__regex_fresh_thread_bool
  \__regex_action_free:n
  {
    \int_eval:n { \l__regex_right_state_int - \l__regex_left_state_int }
    \bool_set_false:N \l__regex_fresh_thread_bool
  }
}
\end{verbatim}

\textit{(End definition for \_\_regex\_assertion:Nn and others.)}

\subsection*{45.5 Matching}

We search for matches by running all the execution threads through the \texttt{NFA} in parallel, reading one token of the query at each step. The \texttt{NFA} contains “free” transitions to other states, and transitions which “consume” the current token. For free transitions, the instruction at the new state of the \texttt{NFA} is performed immediately. When a transition consumes a character, the new state is appended to a list of “active states”, stored in \texttt{\g__regex\_thread\_info\_intarray} (together with submatch information): this thread is made active again when the next token is read from the query. At every step (for each token in the query), we unpack that list of active states and the corresponding submatch props, and empty those.

If two paths through the \texttt{NFA} “collide” in the sense that they reach the same state after reading a given token, then they only differ in how they previously matched, and any future execution would be identical for both. (Note that this would be wrong in the presence of back-references.) Hence, we only need to keep one of the two threads: the thread with the highest priority. Our \texttt{NFA} is built in such a way that higher priority actions always come before lower priority actions, which makes things work.

The explanation in the previous paragraph may make us think that we simply need to keep track of which states were visited at a given step: after all, the loop generated when matching \texttt{(a?)\*} against \texttt{a} is broken, isn’t it? No. The group first matches \texttt{a}, as it should, then repeats; it attempts to match \texttt{a} again but fails; it skips \texttt{a}, and finds out that this state has already been seen at this position in the query: the match stops. The capturing group is (wrongly) \texttt{a}. What went wrong is that a thread collided with itself, and the later version, which has gone through the group one more times with an empty match, should have a higher priority than not going through the group.
We solve this by distinguishing “normal” free transitions \_\regex_action_free:n from transitions \_\regex_action_free_group:n which go back to the start of the group. The former keeps threads unless they have been visited by a “completed” thread, while the latter kind of transition also prevents going back to a state visited by the current thread.

45.5.1 Variables used when matching

The tokens in the query are indexed from min_pos for the first to max_pos − 1 for the last, and their information is stored in several arrays and \toks registers with those numbers. We match without backtracking, keeping all threads in lockstep at the curr_pos in the query. The starting point of the current match attempt is start_pos, and success_pos, updated whenever a thread succeeds, is used as the next starting position.

\l__regex_min_pos_int
\l__regex_max_pos_int
\l__regex_curr_pos_int
\l__regex_start_pos_int
\l__regex_success_pos_int

The tokens in the query are indexed from min_pos for the first to max_pos − 1 for the last, and their information is stored in several arrays and \toks registers with those numbers.

We match without backtracking, keeping all threads in lockstep at the curr_pos in the query. The starting point of the current match attempt is start_pos, and success_pos, updated whenever a thread succeeds, is used as the next starting position.

\l__regex_curr_char_int
\l__regex_curr_catcode_int
\l__regex_curr_token_tl
\l__regex_last_char_int
\l__regex_last_char_success_int
\l__regex_case_changed_char_int

The character and category codes of the token at the current position and a token list expanding to that token; the character code of the token at the previous position; the character code of the token just before a successful match; and the character code of the result of changing the case of the current token (A-Z↔a-z). This last integer is only computed when necessary, and is otherwise \c_max_int. The curr_char variable is also used in various other phases to hold a character code.

\l__regex_curr_state_int

For every character in the token list, each of the active states is considered in turn. The variable \l__regex_curr_state_int holds the state of the NFA which is currently considered: transitions are then given as shifts relative to the current state.

\l__regex_curr_submatches_tl
\l__regex_success_submatches_tl

The submatches for the thread which is currently active are stored in the curr_submatches list, which is almost a comma list, but ends with a comma. This list is stored by \_\regex_store_state:n into an intarray variable, to be retrieved when matching at the next position. When a thread succeeds, this list is copied to \l__regex_success_submatches_tl: only the last successful thread remains there.
This integer, always even, is increased every time a character in the query is read, and not reset when doing multiple matches. We store in \l__regex_state_active_intarray the last step in which each \langle state \rangle in the NFA was encountered. This lets us break infinite loops by not visiting the same state twice in the same step. In fact, the step we store is equal to \texttt{step} when we have started performing the operations of \texttt{toks\langle state \rangle}, but not finished yet. However, once we finish, we store \texttt{step} + 1 in \g__regex_state_active_intarray. This is needed to track submatches properly (see building phase). The \texttt{step} is also used to attach each set of submatch information to a given iteration (and automatically discard it when it corresponds to a past step).

\begin{verbatim}
\int_new:N \l__regex_step_int
\end{verbatim}

All the currently active threads are kept in order of precedence in \g__regex_thread_info_intarray together with the corresponding submatch information. Data in this intarray is organized as blocks from \texttt{min_thread} (included) to \texttt{max_thread} (excluded). At the start of every step, the whole array is unpacked, so that the space can immediately be reused, and \texttt{max_thread} is reset to \texttt{min_thread}, effectively clearing the array.

\begin{verbatim}
\int_new:N \l__regex_min_thread_int
\int_new:N \l__regex_max_thread_int
\end{verbatim}

The list \l__regex_matched_analysis_tl consists of a brace group containing three brace groups corresponding to the current token, with the same syntax as \texttt{tl_analysis_map_inline:nn}. The list \l__regex_curr_analysis_tl (constructed under the \texttt{tl_build} machinery) has one item for each token that has already been treated so far in a given match attempt: each item consists of three brace groups with the same syntax as \texttt{tl_analysis_map_inline:nn}.

\begin{verbatim}
\tl_new:N \l__regex_matched_analysis_tl
\tl_new:N \l__regex_curr_analysis_tl
\end{verbatim}

Every time a match is found, this token list is used. For single matching, the token list is empty. For multiple matching, the token list is set to repeat the matching, after performing some operation which depends on the user function. See \texttt{\__regex_single_match:} and \texttt{\__regex_multi_match:n}.

\begin{verbatim}
\tl_new:N \l__regex_every_match_tl
\end{verbatim}

When doing multiple matches, we need to avoid infinite loops where each iteration matches the same empty token list. When an empty token list is matched, the next successful match of the same empty token list is suppressed. We detect empty matches by setting \_\_regex\_fresh\_thread\_bool to \texttt{true} for threads which directly come from the start of the regex or from the \texttt{\K} command, and testing that boolean whenever a thread succeeds. The function \_\_regex\_if\_two\_empty\_matches:F is redefined at every match attempt, depending on whether the previous match was empty or not: if it was, then the function must cancel a purported success if it is empty and at the same spot as the previous match; otherwise, we definitely don’t have two identical empty matches, so the function is \texttt{\use:n}.

\begin{verbatim}
\bool_new:N \l__regex_fresh_thread_bool
\bool_new:N \l__regex_empty_success_bool
\cs_new_eq:NN \__regex_if_two_empty_matches:F \use:n
\end{verbatim}

The boolean \_\_regex\_match\_success\_bool is true if the current match attempt was successful, and \_\_regex\_success\_bool is true if there was at least one successful match. This is the only global variable in this whole module, but we would need it to be local when matching a control sequence with \texttt{\c{...}}. This is done by saving the global variable into \_\_regex\_saved\_success\_bool, which is local, hence not affected by the changes due to inner regex functions.

\begin{verbatim}
\bool_new:N \g__regex_success_bool
\bool_new:N \l__regex_saved_success_bool
\bool_new:N \l__regex_match_success_bool
\end{verbatim}

\subsection{5.5.2 Matching: framework}

Initialize the variables that should be set once for each user function (even for multiple matches). Namely, the overall matching is not yet successful; none of the states should be marked as visited (\_\_regex\_state\_active\_intarray), and we start at step \texttt{0}; we pretend that there was a previous match ending at the start of the query, which was not empty (to avoid smothering an empty match at the start). Once all this is set up, we are ready for the ride. Find the first match.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Np \__regex_match:n \_\_regex_match:nn #1
\cs_new_protected:Np \__regex_match_cs:n \_\_regex_match:nn {#1}
\cs_new_protected:Np \__regex_match_init:
\cs_new_protected:Np \__regex_match_once_init:
\cs_new_protected:Np \__regex_match_one_token:nn {##1} {##2} {##3}
\cs_new_protected:Np \__regex_match_one_token:nnN {##1} {##2} {##3}
\cs_new_protected:Np \__regex_maplike_break: { }
\cs_new_protected:Np \__regex_match_min_thread_int \_\_regex_min_thread_int
\cs_new_protected:Np \__regex_match_max_thread_int \_\_regex_max_thread_int
\end{verbatim}
\str_map_inline:nn {#1}
{
  \tl_if_blank:nTF {#1}
  { \__regex_match_one_token:nnN {#1} {‘#1} A }
  { \__regex_match_one_token:nnN {#1} {‘#1} C }
}
\__regex_match_one_token:nnN { } {-2} F
\prg_break_point:Nn \__regex_maplike_break: { }
\}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_match_init:
{
  \bool_gset_false:N \g__regex_success_bool
  \int_step_inline:nnn \l__regex_min_state_int { \l__regex_max_state_int - 1 }
  { \__kernel_intarray_gset:Nnn \g__regex_state_active_intarray {##1} { 1 } }
  \int_zero:N \l__regex_step_int
  \int_set:Nn \l__regex_min_pos_int { 2 }
  \int_set_eq:NN \l__regex_success_pos_int \l__regex_min_pos_int
  \int_set_eq:NN \l__regex_last_char_success_int { -2 }
  \tl_build_begin:N \l__regex_matched_analysis_tl
  \tl_clear:N \l__regex_curr_analysis_tl
  \int_set:NN \l__regex_min_submatch_int { 1 }
  \int_set_eq:NN \l__regex_submatch_int \l__regex_min_submatch_int
  \bool_set_false:N \l__regex_empty_success_bool
}

(End definition for \__regex_match:n, \__regex_match_cs:n, and \__regex_match_init::)

\__regex_match_once_init: This function resets various variables used when finding one match. It is called before the loop through characters, and every time we find a match, before searching for another match (this is controlled by the every_match token list).

First initialize some variables: set the conditional which detects identical empty matches; this match attempt starts at the previous success_pos, is not yet successful, and has no submatches yet; clear the array of active threads, and put the starting state 0 in it. We are then almost ready to read our first token in the query, but we actually start one position earlier than the start because \__regex_match_one_token:nnN increments \l__regex_curr_pos_int and saves \l__regex_curr_char_int as the last_char so that word boundaries can be correctly identified.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_match_once_init:
{
  \if_meaning:w \c_true_bool \l__regex_empty_success_bool
    \cs_set:Npn \__regex_if_two_empty_matches:F
    { \int_compare:nNnF \l__regex_start_pos_int = \l__regex_curr_pos_int }
  \else:
    \cs_set_eq:NN \__regex_if_two_empty_matches:F \use:n
  \fi:
  \int_set:NN \l__regex_start_pos_int \l__regex_success_pos_int
  \bool_set_false:N \l__regex_matching_success_bool

\texttt{\_\_regex_single_match:} For a single match, the overall success is determined by whether the only match attempt is a success. When doing multiple matches, the overall matching is successful as soon as any match succeeds. Perform the action \#1, then find the next match.

\texttt{\_\_regex_multi_match:n} At each new position, set some variables and get the new character and category from the query. Then unpack the array of active threads, and clear it by resetting its length (max_thread). This results in a sequence of \texttt{\_\_regex_use_state_and_submatches:w\langle\text{state}\rangle,\langle\text{submatch-clist}\rangle}; and we consider those states one by one in order. As soon

516
as a thread succeeds, exit the step, and, if there are threads to consider at the next position, and we have not reached the end of the string, repeat the loop. Otherwise, the last thread that succeeded is the match. We explain the fresh_thread business when describing \_\_regex_action_wildcard:

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_match_one_token:nnN #1#2#3
\begin{verbatim}
\int_add:Nn \l__regex_step_int { 2 }
\int_incr:N \l__regex_curr_pos_int
\int_set_eq:NN \l__regex_last_char_int \l__regex_curr_char_int
\tl_set:Nn \l__regex_curr_token_tl {#1}
\int_set:Nn \l__regex_curr_catcode_int { #3 }
\tl_build_put_right:Nx \l__regex_matched_analysis_tl
{ \exp_not:o \l__regex_curr_analysis_tl }
\tl_set:Nn \l__regex_curr_analysis_tl { { {#1} {#2} #3 } }
\use:x
\int_set_eq:NN \l__regex_max_thread_int \l__regex_min_thread_int
\int_step_function:nnN { \l__regex_min_thread_int }
{ \l__regex_max_thread_int - 1 }
\__regex_match_one_active:n
\prg_break_point:
\bool_set_false:N \l__regex_fresh_thread_bool
\if_int_compare:w \l__regex_max_thread_int > \l__regex_min_thread_int
\if_int_compare:w -2 < \l__regex_curr_char_int
\exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \use_none:n
\fi:
\fi:
\l__regex_every_match_tl
\cs_new:Npn \__regex_match_one_active:n #1
\begin{verbatim}
\__regex_use_state_and_submatches:w
\__kernel_intarray_range_to_clist:Nnn \g__regex_thread_info_intarray
{ 1 + #1 * (\l__regex_capturing_group_int * 2 + 1) }
{ (1 + #1) * (\l__regex_capturing_group_int * 2 + 1) }
\end{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}
(End definition for \_\_regex_match_one_token:nnN and \_\_regex_match_one_active:n.)

45.5.3 Using states of the nfa

\_\_regex_use_state: Use the current NFA instruction. The state is initially marked as belonging to the current step: this allows normal free transition to repeat, but group-repeating transitions won’t. Once we are done exploring all the branches it spawned, the state is marked as step + 1: any thread hitting it at that point will be terminated.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_use_state:
\begin{verbatim}

This function is called as one item in the array of active threads after that array has been unpacked for a new step. Update the \texttt{curr\_state} and \texttt{curr\_submatches} and use the state if it has not yet been encountered at this step.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_regex_use_state_and_submatches:w #1, #2 ;
\int_set:Nn \l__regex_curr_state_int {#1}
\if_int_compare:w \__kernel_intarray_item:Nn \g__regex_state_active_intarray \l__regex_curr_state_int < \l__regex_step_int
\tl_set:Nn \l__regex_curr_submatches_tl { #2, }\exp_after:wN \__regex_use_state:
\fi:
\scan_stop:
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \_regex\_use\_state:)}

45.5.4 Actions when matching

\_regex\_action\_start\_wildcard:N

For an unanchored match, state 0 has a free transition to the next and a costly one to itself, to repeat at the next position. To catch repeated identical empty matches, we need to know if a successful thread corresponds to an empty match. The instruction resetting \texttt{\l__regex\_fresh\_thread\_bool} may be skipped by a successful thread, hence we had to add it to \_regex\_match\_one\_token:nnN too.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_regex\_action\_start\_wildcard:N #1 \l__regex\_fresh\_thread\_bool
\bool_set_true:N \l__regex\_fresh\_thread\_bool
\_regex\_action\_free:n {1}
\bool_set_false:N \l__regex\_fresh\_thread\_bool
\bool_if:NT #1 { \_regex\_action\_cost:n {0} }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \_regex\_action\_start\_wildcard:N)

\_regex\_action\_free:n
\_regex\_action\_free\_group:n
\_regex\_action\_free\_aux:nn

These functions copy a thread after checking that the NFA state has not already been used at this position. If not, store submatches in the new state, and insert the instructions for that state in the input stream. Then restore the old value of \texttt{\l__regex\_curr\_state\_int} and of the current submatches. The two types of free transitions differ by how they test that the state has not been encountered yet: the group version is stricter, and will not use a state if it was used earlier in the current thread, hence forcefully breaking the loop, while the “normal” version will revisit a state even within the thread itself.
\__regex_action_free_aux:nn \ { \ l__regex_curr_state_int \ \else: \ } \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_action_free_group:n \ { \ __regex_action_free_aux:nn \ { \ < \ l__regex_step_int \ } \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_action_free_aux:nn \ #1#2 \{
    \use:x
    \ {
        \int_add:Nn \ l__regex_curr_state_int \ (#2)
        \exp_not:n
        \ {\if_int_compare:w
            \__kernel_intarray_item:Nn \ g__regex_state_active_intarray
            \ { \ l__regex_curr_state_int \ }
            \ #1
            \exp_after:wN \ __regex_use_state:
        \fi:}
        \int_set:Nn \ l__regex_curr_state_int
        \ {\int_use:N \ l__regex_curr_state_int}
        \tl_set:Nn \ exp_not:N \ l__regex_curr_submatches_tl
        \ {\exp_not:o \ l__regex_curr_submatches_tl}
    \}
\}

(End definition for \__regex_action_free:n, \__regex_action_free_group:n, and \__regex_action_free_aux:nn.)

\__regex_action_cost:n A transition which consumes the current character and shifts the state by \#1. The resulting state is stored in the appropriate array for use at the next position, and we also store the current submatches.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_action_cost:n \ #1 \{
    \exp_args:Nx \__regex_store_state:n
    \ { \int_eval:n \ { \ l__regex_curr_state_int + \ #1 \} \}
\}

(End definition for \__regex_action_cost:n.)

\__regex_store_state:n \__regex_store_submatches: Put the given state and current submatch information in \g__regex_thread_info_intarray, and increment the length of the array.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_store_state:n \ #1 \{
    \exp_args:No \__regex_store_submatches:nn
    \ { \l__regex_curr_submatches_tl \ (#1) \}
    \int_incr:N \ l__regex_max_thread_int
\}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_store_submatches:nn \ #1#2 \{
\__kernel_intarray_gset_range_from_clist:Nnn \ g__regex_thread_info_intarray
\ {\__regex_int_eval:w
    1 + \ l__regex_max_thread_int * (\l__regex_capturing_group_int * 2 + 1)
\}

519
\__regex_disable_submatches:

Some user functions don't require tracking submatches. We get a performance improvement by simply defining the relevant functions to remove their argument and do nothing with it.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_disable_submatches:
\begin{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__regex_disable_submatches:)

\__regex_action_submatch:nN

Update the current submatches with the information from the current position. Maybe a bottleneck.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_action_submatch:nN #1#2
\begin{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__regex_action_submatch:nN and others.)

\__regex_action_success:

There is a successful match when an execution path reaches the last state in the NFA, unless this marks a second identical empty match. Then mark that there was a successful match; it is empty if it is "fresh"; and we store the current position and submatches. The current step is then interrupted with \texttt{prg\_break}; and only paths with higher precedence are pursued further. The values stored here may be overwritten by a later success of a path with higher precedence.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_action_success:
\begin{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}
\bool_set_eq:NN \l__regex_empty_success_bool
\l__regex_fresh_thread_bool
\int_set_eq:NN \l__regex_success_pos_int \l__regex_curr_pos_int
\int_set_eq:NN \l__regex_last_char_success_int \l__regex_last_char_int
\tl_build_clear:N \l__regex_matched_analysis_tl
\tl_set_eq:NN \l__regex_success_submatches_tl \l__regex_curr_submatches_tl
\prg_break:
}
}

(End definition for \__regex_action_success:.)

45.6 Replacement

45.6.1 Variables and helpers used in replacement

\l__regex_replacement_csnames_int

The behaviour of closing braces inside a replacement text depends on whether a sequence \c{ or \u{ has been encountered. The number of “open” such sequences that should be closed by } is stored in \l__regex_replacement_csnames_int, and decreased by 1 by each }.

\int_new:N \l__regex_replacement_csnames_int

(End definition for \l__regex_replacement_csnames_int.)

\l__regex_replacement_category_tl \l__regex_replacement_category_seq

This sequence of letters is used to correctly restore categories in nested constructions such as \cL(abc\cD(\_)d).

\tl_new:N \l__regex_replacement_category_tl
\seq_new:N \l__regex_replacement_category_seq

(End definition for \l__regex_replacement_category_tl and \l__regex_replacement_category_seq.)

\g__regex_balance_tl

This token list holds the replacement text for \__regex_replacement_balance_one_match:n while it is being built incrementally.

\tl_new:N \g__regex_balance_tl

(End definition for \g__regex_balance_tl.)

\__regex_replacement_balance_one_match:n

This expects as an argument the first index of a set of entries in \g__regex_submatch_begin_intarray (and related arrays) which hold the submatch information for a given match. It can be used within an integer expression to obtain the brace balance incurred by performing the replacement on that match. This combines the braces lost by removing the match, braces added by all the submatches appearing in the replacement, and braces appearing explicitly in the replacement. Even though it is always redefined before use, we initialize it as for an empty replacement. An important property is that concatenating several calls to that function must result in a valid integer expression (hence a leading + in the actual definition).

\cs_new:Npn \__regex_replacement_balance_one_match:n #1
\{ - \__regex_submatch_balance:n (#1) \}

(End definition for \__regex_replacement_balance_one_match:n.)
The input is the same as \_\_regex\_replacement\_balance\_one\_match:n. This function is redefined to expand to the part of the token list from the end of the previous match to a given match, followed by the replacement text. Hence concatenating the result of this function with all possible arguments (one call for each match), as well as the range from the end of the last match to the end of the string, produces the fully replaced token list. The initialization does not matter, but (as an example) we set it as for an empty replacement.

\__regex\_replacement\_do\_one\_match:n

\cs_new:Npn \__regex\_replacement\_do\_one\_match:n #1
{ \__regex\_query\_range:nn{\__kernel\_intarray\_item:Nn \g__regex\_submatch\_prev\_intarray {#1}}
\{ \__kernel\_intarray\_item:Nn \g__regex\_submatch\_begin\_intarray {#1} \}
}

(End definition for \__regex\_replacement\_do\_one\_match:n.)

\__regex\_replacement\_exp\_not:N

This function lets us navigate around the fact that the primitive \exp\_not:n requires a braced argument. As far as I can tell, it is only needed if the user tries to include in the replacement text a control sequence set equal to a macro parameter character, such as \c\_parameter\_token. Indeed, within an x-expanding assignment, \exp\_not:N # behaves as a single #, whereas \exp\_not:n {#} behaves as a doubled ##.

\cs_new:Npn \__regex\_replacement\_exp\_not:N #1 { \exp\_not:n {#1} }

(End definition for \__regex\_replacement\_exp\_not:N.)

\__regex\_replacement\_exp\_not:V

This is used for the implementation of \u, and it gets redefined for \peek\_regex\_replace\_once:nnTF.

\cs_new_eq:NN \__regex\_replacement\_exp\_not:V \exp\_not:V

(End definition for \__regex\_replacement\_exp\_not:V.)

45.6.2 Query and brace balance

When it is time to extract submatches from the token list, the various tokens are stored in \toks registers numbered from \_\_regex\_min\_pos\_int inclusive to \_\_regex\_max\_pos\_int exclusive. The function \_\_regex\_query\_range:nn \{\langle min\rangle\} \{\langle max\rangle\} unpacks registers from the position \langle min\rangle to the position \langle max\rangle − 1 included. Once this is expanded, a second x-expansion results in the actual tokens from the query. That second expansion is only done by user functions at the very end of their operation, after checking (and correcting) the brace balance first.
\_\_regex_query_submatch:n

Find the start and end positions for a given submatch (of a given match).

\cs_new:Npn \_\_regex_query_submatch:n #1
\{  
  \_\_regex_query_range:nn { \__kernel_intarray_item:Nn \g__regex_submatch_begin_intarray {#1} }  
  \_\_kernel_intarray_item:Nn \g__regex_submatch_end_intarray {#1}  
\}

(End definition for \_\_regex_query_submatch:n.)

\_\_regex_submatch_balance:n

Every user function must result in a balanced token list (unbalanced token lists cannot be stored by TeX). When we unpacked the query, we kept track of the brace balance, hence the contribution from a given range is the difference between the brace balances at the \textlangle max pos \textrangle and \textlangle min pos \textrangle. These two positions are found in the corresponding “submatch” arrays.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_regex_submatch_balance:n #1
\{  
  \int_eval:n  
  \{  
    \_\_regex_intarray_item:NnF \g__regex_balance_intarray  
    \_\_kernel_intarray_item:Nn \g__regex_submatch_begin_intarray {#1}  
    \{ 0 \}  
  \}  
  \_\_regex_intarray_item:NnF \g__regex_balance_intarray  
  \_\_kernel_intarray_item:Nn \g__regex_submatch_end_intarray {#1}  
  \{ 0 \}  
\}

(End definition for \_\_regex_submatch_balance:n.)

45.6.3 Framework

The replacement text is built incrementally. We keep track in \_\_regex_balance_int of the balance of explicit begin- and end-group tokens and we store in \_\_regex_balance_tl some code to compute the brace balance from submatches (see its description). Detect unescaped right braces, and escaped characters, with trailing \texttt{\textbackslash prg\_do\_nothing}; because some of the later function look-ahead. Once the whole replacement text has been parsed, make sure that there is no open csname. Finally, define the balance_one_match and do_one_match functions.

523
\newcommand*{\__regex_replacement:n}{\__regex_replacement_apply:Nn \__regex_replacement_set:n}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_replacement_apply:Nn #1#2{
  \group_begin:
  \tl_build_begin:N \l__regex_build_tl
  \int_zero:N \l__regex_balance_int
  \tl_gclear:N \g__regex_balance_tl
  \__regex_escape_use:nnnn
  \if_charcode:w \c_right_brace_str ##1\__regex_replacement_rbrace:N
  \else:
    \if_charcode:w \c_left_brace_str ##1\__regex_replacement_lbrace:N
    \else:
      \__regex_replacement_normal:n
    \fi:
  \fi:
  \fi:
  \tl_build_end:N \l__regex_build_tl
  \exp_args:NNo
  \group_end:#1 \l__regex_build_tl
}\cs_generate_variant:Nn \__regex_replacement:n { x }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_replacement_set:n #1{
  \cs_set:Npn \__regex_query_range:nn
  \__kernel_intarray_item:Nn \g__regex_submatch_prev_intarray {#1}
}
{ \_kernel_intarray_item:Nn \g__regex_submatch_begin_intarray {##1} }
\__regex_submatch_balance:n {##1}

\exp_args:Nno \use:n { \cs_gset:Npn \__regex_replacement_balance_one_match:n ##1 }
\g__regex_balance_tl - \__regex_submatch_balance:n {##1}
}

(End definition for \__regex_replacement:n, \__regex_replacement_apply:Nn, and \__regex_replacement_set:n.)

\__regex_case_replacement:n \__regex_case_replacement:x
\tl_new:N \g__regex_case_replacement_tl
\tl_new:N \g__regex_case_balance_tl\cs_new_protected:Npm \__regex_case_replacement:n \#1
{ \tl_gset:Nn \g__regex_case_balance_tl
{ \if_case:w \_kernel_intarray_item:Nn \g__regex_submatch_case_intarray {##1} }
\tl_gset_eq:NN \g__regex_case_replacement_tl \g__regex_case_balance_tl
\tl_map_tokens:nn {#1}{ \__regex_replacement_apply:Nn \__regex_case_replacement_aux:n }
\tl_gset:No \g__regex_case_balance_tl \fi: }
\exp_args:No \__regex_case_replacement_set:n { \g__regex_case_replacement_tl \fi: }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \__regex_case_replacement:n { x }
\cs_new_protected:Npm \__regex_case_replacement:n \#1
{ \tl_gput_right:Nn \g__regex_case_replacement_tl { \or: \#1 }
\tl_gput_right:No \g__regex_case_balance_tl
{ \exp_after:wN \or: \g__regex_case_replacement_tl
\fi: }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \__regex_case_replacement:n { x }
\cs_new_protected:Npm \__regex_case_replacement:n \#1
{ \tl_gput_right:Nn \g__regex_case_replacement_tl { \or: \#1 }
\tl_gput_right:No \g__regex_case_balance_tl
{ \exp_after:wN \or: \g__regex_case_replacement_tl
\fi: }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \__regex_case_replacement:n { x }
\cs_new_protected:Npm \__regex_case_replacement:n \#1
{ \tl_gput_right:Nn \g__regex_case_replacement_tl { \or: \#1 }
\tl_gput_right:No \g__regex_case_balance_tl
{ \exp_after:wN \or: \g__regex_case_replacement_tl
\fi: }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \__regex_case_replacement:n { x }
\cs_new_protected:Npm \__regex_case_replacement:n \#1
{ \tl_gput_right:Nn \g__regex_case_replacement_tl { \or: \#1 }
\tl_gput_right:No \g__regex_case_balance_tl
{ \exp_after:wN \or: \g__regex_case_replacement_tl
\fi: }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \__regex_case_replacement:n { x }
\cs_new_protected:Npm \__regex_case_replacement:n \#1
{ \tl_gput_right:Nn \g__regex_case_replacement_tl { \or: \#1 }
\tl_gput_right:No \g__regex_case_balance_tl
{ \exp_after:wN \or: \g__regex_case_replacement_tl
\fi: }
(End definition for \__regex_case_replacement:n.)

\__regex_replacement_put:n
This gets redefined for \peek_regex_replace_once:nnTF.
\cs_new_protected:Npm \__regex_replacement_put:n \tl_build_put_right:Nn \tl_regex_build_tl

(End definition for \__regex_replacement_put:n.)

\__regex_replace_normal:n \__regex_replace_normal_aux:N
Most characters are simply sent to the output by \tl_build_put_right:Nn, unless a particular category code has been requested: then \__regex_replace_c_A:w or a similar auxiliary is called. One exception is right parentheses, which restore the category
code in place before the group started. Note that the sequence is non-empty there: it
contains an empty entry corresponding to the initial value of \l__regex_replacement_category_tl. The argument #1 is a single character (including the case of a catcode-
other space). In case no specific catcode is requested, we take into account the current
catcode regime (at the time the replacement is performed) as much as reasonable, with
all impossible catcodes (escape, newline, etc.) being mapped to “other”.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_replacement_normal:n #1
\int_compare:nNnTF { \l__regex_replacement_csnames_int } > 0
\exp_args:No \__regex_replacement_put:n { \token_to_str:N #1 } }
\tl_if_empty:NTF \l__regex_replacement_category_tl
\__regex_replacement_normal_aux:N #1
\use:c { \l__regex_replacement_category_tl :w }
? #1
\seq_pop:NN \l__regex_replacement_category_seq
\l__regex_replacement_category_tl
\use:c { \l__regex_replacement_category_tl :w }
? #1
\use:c { \l__regex_replacement_category_tl :w }
? #1
\exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN
\if_case:w \tex_catcode:D '#1 \exp_stop_f:
\__regex_replacement_c_0:w
\__regex_replacement_c_B:w
\__regex_replacement_c_E:w
\__regex_replacement_c_M:w
\__regex_replacement_c_T:w
\__regex_replacement_c_0:w
\__regex_replacement_c_P:w
\__regex_replacement_c_U:w
\__regex_replacement_c_D:w
\__regex_replacement_c_C:w
\__regex_replacement_c_L:w
\__regex_replacement_c_A:w
\__regex_replacement_c_0:w
\fi:
? #1
)

(End definition for \__regex_replacement_normal:n and \__regex_replacement_normal_aux:N.)
As in parsing a regular expression, we use an auxiliary built from \#1 if defined. Otherwise, check for escaped digits (standing from submatches from 0 to 9): anything else is a raw character.

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_replacement_escaped:N #1
\cs_if_exist_use:cF { __regex_replacement_#1:w }
\{ 
\if_int_compare:w 1 < #1 \exp_stop_f:
\__regex_replacement_put_submatch:n {#1}
\else:
\__regex_replacement_normal:n {#1}
\fi:
\}
```

(End definition for \__regex_replacement_escaped:N.)

45.6.4 Submatches

Insert a submatch in the replacement text. This is dropped if the submatch number is larger than the number of capturing groups. Unless the submatch appears inside a \c{...} or \u{...} construction, it must be taken into account in the brace balance. Later on, ##1 will be replaced by a pointer to the 0-th submatch for a given match. There is an \exp_not:N here as at the point-of-use of \g__regex_balance_tl there is an \x-type expansion which is needed to get ##1 in correctly.

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_replacement_put_submatch:n #1
\{ 
\if_int_compare:w #1 < \l__regex_capturing_group_int
\__regex_replacement_put_submatch_aux:n {#1}
\else:
\msg_expandable_error:nnff { regex } { submatch-too-big }
\{#1\} \{ \int_eval:n { \l__regex_capturing_group_int - 1 } \}
\fi:
\}
```

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_replacement_put_submatch_aux:n #1
\{ 
\tl_build_put_right:Nn \l__regex_build_tl \l__regex_build_tl
\{ \__regex_query_submatch:n \{ \int_eval:n { #1 + ##1 } \} \}
\if_int_compare:w \l__regex_replacement_csnames_int = \c_zero_int
\tl_gput_right:Nn \g__regex_balance_tl \g__regex_balance_tl
\{ + \__regex_submatch_balance:n \{ \int_eval:n { #1 + ##1 } \} \}
\fi:
\}
```

(End definition for \__regex_replacement_put_submatch:n and \__regex_replacement_put_submatch_aux:n.)

\__regex_replacement_g:w
\__regex_replacement_g_digits:N
Grab digits for the \g escape sequence in a primitive assignment to the integer \l__regex_internal_a_int. At the end of the run of digits, check that it ends with a right brace.

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_replacement_g:w #1\#
\{ 
\token_if_eq_meaning:NNTF #1 \__regex_replacement_lbrace:N
```

527
\__regex_replacement_g_digits:NN #1 #2
}
\cs_new:Npn \__regex_replacement_g_digits:NN #1 #2
{
  \token_if_eq_meaning:NNTF #1 \__regex_replacement_normal:n
  {
    \if_int_compare:w 1 < 1#2 \exp_stop_f:
      #2
      \exp_after:wN \use_i:nn
      \exp_after:wN \__regex_replacement_g_digits:NN
    \else:
      \exp_stop_f:
      \exp_after:wN \__regex_replacement_error:NNN
      \exp_after:wN g
    \fi:
  }
  {\exp_stop_f:
    \if_meaning:w \__regex_replacement_rbrace:N #1
    \exp_args:No \__regex_replacement_put_submatch:n
    { \int_use:N \l__regex_internal_a_int }
    \exp_after:wN \use_none:nn
    \else:
      \exp_after:wN \__regex_replacement_error:NNN
      \exp_after:wN g
    \fi:
  }
#1 #2
}

(End definition for \__regex_replacement_g:w and \__regex_replacement_g_digits:NN.)

45.6.5 Csnames in replacement
\__regex_replacement_c:w \c may only be followed by an unescaped character. If followed by a left brace, start a
control sequence by calling an auxiliary common with \u. Otherwise test whether the
category is known; if it is not, complain.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_replacement_c:w #1 #2
{
  \token_if_eq Meaning:NNTF #1 \__regex_replacement_normal:n
  {
    \cs_if_exist:cTF { \__regex_replacement_c_#2:w }
    { \__regex_replacement_cat:NNN #2 }
    { \__regex_replacement_error:NNN c #1 #2 }
  }
  {
    \exp_stop_f:
    \if_meaning:w \__regex_replacement_rbrace:N #1
    \exp_args:No \__regex_replacement_put_submatch:n
    { \int_use:N \l__regex_internal_a_int }
    \exp_after:wN \use_none:nn
    \else:
      \exp_after:wN \__regex_replacement_error:NNN
      \exp_after:wN g
    \fi:
  }
#1 #2
}

(End definition for \__regex_replacement_c:w.)
Start a control sequence with `\cs:w`, protected from expansion by `#1` (either `\__regex_replacement_exp_not:N` or `\exp_not:V`), or turned to a string by `\tl_to_str:V` if inside another csname construction \c{...} or \u{...}. We use `\tl_to_str:V` rather than `\tl_to_str:N` to deal with integers and other registers.

```latex
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_replacement_cu_aux:Nw #1
\begin{verbatim}
\if_case:w \l__regex_replacement_csnames_int
\tl_build_put_right:Nn \l__regex_build_tl\cs:w
\else:
\tl_build_put_right:Nn \l__regex_build_tl\tl_to_str:V\cs:w
\fi:
\int_incr:N \l__regex_replacement_csnames_int
\end{verbatim}
(End definition for `\__regex_replacement_cu_aux:Nw`.)
```

Check that \u{...} is followed by a left brace. If so, start a control sequence with `\cs:w`, which is then unpacked either with `\exp_not:V` or `\tl_to_str:V` depending on the current context.

```latex
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_replacement_u:w #1#2
\begin{verbatim}
\token_if_eq_meaning:NNTF #1 \__regex_replacement_lbrace:N
{\__regex_replacement_cu_aux:Nw \__regex_replacement_exp_not:V}
{\__regex_replacement_error:NNN u #1#2}
\end{verbatim}
(End definition for `\__regex_replacement_u:w`.)
```

Within a \c{...} or \u{...} construction, end the control sequence, and decrease the brace count. Otherwise, this is a raw right brace.

```latex
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_replacement_rbrace:N #1
\begin{verbatim}
\if_int_compare:w \l__regex_replacement_csnames_int > \c_zero_int
\tl_build_put_right:Nn \l__regex_build_tl { \cs_end: }
\int_decr:N \l__regex_replacement_csnames_int
\else:
\__regex_replacement_normal:n {#1}
\fi:
\end{verbatim}
(End definition for `\__regex_replacement_rbrace:N`.)
```

Within a \c{...} or \u{...} construction, this is forbidden. Otherwise, this is a raw left brace.

```latex
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_replacement_lbrace:N #1
\begin{verbatim}
\if_int_compare:w \l__regex_replacement_csnames_int > \c_zero_int
\msg_error:nnn { regex } { cu-lbrace } { u }
\else:
\__regex_replacement_normal:n {#1}
\fi:
\end{verbatim}
(End definition for `\__regex_replacement_lbrace:N`.)
45.6.6 Characters in replacement

Here, #1 is a letter among BEMTPUDSLOA and #2#3 denote the next character. Complain if we reach the end of the replacement or if the construction appears inside \c{...} or \u{...}, and detect the case of a parenthesis. In that case, store the current category in a sequence and switch to a new one.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_replacement_cat:NNN #1#2#3
\begin{verbatim}
\token_if_eq_meaning:NNTF \prg_do_nothing: #3
{ \msg_error:nn { regex } { replacement-catcode-end } }
{ \int_compare:nNnTF { \l__regex_replacement_csnames_int } > 0
{ \msg_error:nnnn
{ regex } { replacement-catcode-in-cs } {#1} {#3}
#2 #3
}
{ \__regex_two_if_eq:NNNNTF #2 #3 \__regex_replacement_normal:n (}
{ \seq_push:NV \l__regex_replacement_category_seq
\l__regex_replacement_category_tl
\tl_set:Nn \l__regex_replacement_category_tl {#1}
}
{ \token_if_eq_meaning:NNT #2 \__regex_replacement_escaped:N
{ \__regex_char_if_alphanumeric:NTF #3
{ \msg_error:nnnn
{ regex } { replacement-catcode-escaped }
{#1} {#3}
}
{ }
\use:c { \__regex_replacement_c_#1:w } #2 #3
}
}
)
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__regex_replacement_cat:NNN.)

We now need to change the category code of the null character many times, hence work in a group. The catcode-specific macros below are defined in alphabetical order; if you are trying to understand the code, start from the end of the alphabet as those categories are simpler than active or begin-group.

\group_begin:

\__regex_replacement_char:nNN

The only way to produce an arbitrary character–catcode pair is to use the \texttt{\lowercase} or \texttt{\uppercase} primitives. This is a wrapper for our purposes. The first argument is the null character with various catcodes. The second and third arguments are grabbed from the input stream: #3 is the character whose character code to reproduce. We could use
\char_generate:nn but only for some catcodes (active characters and spaces are not supported).

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_replacement_char:nNN \#1\#2\#3
\{
\tex_lccode:D 0 = '\#3 \scan_stop:
\tex_lowercase:D \{ \__regex_replacement_put:n \{\#1\} \}
\}

(End definition for \__regex_replacement_char:nNN.)

\__regex_replacement_c_A:w
For an active character, expansion must be avoided, twice because we later do two x-expansions, to unpack \toks for the query, and to expand their contents to tokens of the query.
\char_set_catcode_active:N \^^@
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_replacement_c_A:w
\{ \__regex_replacement_char:nNN \{ \exp_not:n \{ \exp_not:N \^^@ \} \} \}

(End definition for \__regex_replacement_c_A:w.)

\__regex_replacement_c_B:w
An explicit begin-group token increases the balance, unless within a \c{...} or \u{...} construction. Add the desired begin-group character, using the standard \if_false: trick. We eventually x-expand twice. The first time must yield a balanced token list, and the second one gives the bare begin-group token. The \exp_after:wN is not strictly needed, but is more consistent with l3tl-analysis.
\char_set_catcode_group_begin:N \^^@
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_replacement_c_B:w
\{ \if_int_compare:w \l__regex_replacement_csnames_int = \c_zero_int
\int_incr:N \l__regex_balance_int
\fi:
\__regex_replacement_char:nNN
\{ \exp_not:n \{ \exp_after:wN \^^@ \if_false: \} \fi: \}
\}

(End definition for \__regex_replacement_c_B:w.)

\__regex_replacement_c_C:w
This is not quite catcode-related: when the user requests a character with category “control sequence”, the one-character control symbol is returned. As for the active character, we prepare for two x-expansions.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_replacement_c_C:w \#1\#2
\{
\tl_build_put_right:Nn \l__regex_build_tl \{ \exp_not:N \__regex_replacement_exp_not:N \exp_not:c \{\#2\} \}
\}

(End definition for \__regex_replacement_c_C:w.)

\__regex_replacement_c_D:w
Subscripts fit the mould: \lowercase the null byte with the correct category.
\char_set_catcode_math_subscript:N \^^@
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_replacement_c_D:w
\{ \__regex_replacement_char:nNN \{ \^^@ \} \}

(End definition for \__regex_replacement_c_D:w.)
Similar to the begin-group case, the second x-expansion produces the bare end-group token.

```latex
\char_set_catcode_group_end:N \^^@
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_replacement_c_E:w
{ \if_int_compare:w \l__regex_replacement_c_names_int = \c_zero_int
  \int_decr:N \l__regex_balance_int
  \fi:
  \__regex_replacement_char:nNN
  \exp_not:n \{ \iffalse: { \fi: \^^@ } \}
}
```

(End definition for \__regex_replacement_c_E:w.)

Simply \lowercase a letter null byte to produce an arbitrary letter.

```latex
\char_set_catcode_letter:N \^^@
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_replacement_c_L:w
{ \__regex_replacement_char:nNN \{ \^^@ \}
}
```

(End definition for \__regex_replacement_c_L:w.)

No surprise here, we lowercase the null math toggle.

```latex
\char_set_catcode_math_toggle:N \^^@
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_replacement_c_M:w
{ \__regex_replacement_char:nNN \{ \^^@ \}
}
```

(End definition for \__regex_replacement_c_M:w.)

Lowercase an other null byte.

```latex
\char_set_catcode_other:N \^^@
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_replacement_c_O:w
{ \__regex_replacement_char:nNN \{ \^^@ \}
}
```

(End definition for \__regex_replacement_c_O:w.)

For macro parameters, expansion is a tricky issue. We need to prepare for two x-expansions and passing through various macro definitions. Note that we cannot replace one \exp_not:n by doubling the macro parameter characters because this would misbehave if a mischievous user asks for \c\{\cP\#}, since that macro parameter character would be doubled.

```latex
\char_set_catcode_parameter:N \^^@
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_replacement_c_P:w
{ \__regex_replacement_char:nNN
  \exp_not:n \{ \exp_not:n \{ \^^@\^^@\^^@\^^@ \} \}
}
```

(End definition for \__regex_replacement_c_P:w.)

Spaces are normalized on input by \TeX to have character code 32. It is in fact impossible to get a token with character code 0 and category code 10. Hence we use 32 instead of 0 as our base character.

```latex
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_replacement_c_S:w \#1\#2
{ }
```
No surprise for alignment tabs here. Those are surrounded by the appropriate braces whenever necessary, hence they don’t cause trouble in alignment settings.

Simple call to \_\_regex_replacement_char:nNN which lowers the math superscript ~@.

45.6.7 An error

Simple error reporting by calling one of the messages replacement-c, replacement-g, or replacement-u.

45.7 User functions

Before being assigned a sensible value, a regex variable matches nothing.

The usual scratch space.
\regex_set:Nn  Compile, then store the result in the user variable with the appropriate assignment function.
\regex_gset:Nn  
\regex_const:Nn

\regex_show:n User functions: the \e{\texttt{n}} variant requires compilation first. Then show the variable with some appropriate text. The auxiliary \texttt{\_regex_show:N} is defined in a different section.
\regex_log:n
\_regex_show:N
\regex_log:N
\_regex_show:NN

\regex_match:nn \regex_match:Nn Those conditionals are based on a common auxiliary defined later. Its first argument builds the NFA corresponding to the regex, and the second argument is the query token
\regex_match:nnTF
\regex_match:NnTF
list. Once we have performed the match, convert the resulting boolean to \texttt{true} or \texttt{false}.

```latex
\begin{verbatim}
\prg_new_protected_conditionall:npnn \regex_match:nn \#1#2 \{ T , F , TF \}
\{
\__regex_if_match:nn \{ \__regex_build:n \{#1\} \} \{#2\}
\__regex_return:
\}
\prg_new_protected_conditionall:npnn \regex_match:Nn \#1#2 \{ T , F , TF \}
\{
\__regex_if_match:nn \{ \__regex_build:N \#1 \} \{#2\}
\__regex_return:
\}
\end{verbatim}
```

(End definition for \texttt{\regex_match:nnTF} and \texttt{\regex_match:NnTF}. These functions are documented on page 55.)

Again, use an auxiliary whose first argument builds the NFA.

```latex
\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \regex_count:nnNN \#1 \{ \__regex_count:nnN \{ \__regex_build:n \{#1\} \} \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \regex_count:NnNN \#1 \{ \__regex_count:nnN \{ \__regex_build:N \#1 \} \}
\end{verbatim}
```

(End definition for \texttt{\regex_count:nnN} and \texttt{\regex_count:NnN}. These functions are documented on page 55.)

The auxiliary errors if \#1 has an odd number of items, and otherwise it sets \texttt{\g__regex_case_int} according to which case was found (zero if not found). The \texttt{true} branch leaves the corresponding code in the input stream.

```latex
\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \regex_match_case:nnNF \#1#2 \{ \regex_match_case:nnTF \{#1\} {#2} \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \regex_match_case:nnTF \#1#2#3 \{ \regex_match_case:nnTF \{#1\} {#2} {#3} \}
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__regex_tmp:w \#1#2#3 \{
\cs_new_protected:Npn \#2 ##1 { \#1 { \__regex_build:n \{##1\} } }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \#3 ##1 { \#1 { \__regex_build:N \##1 } }
\}
\end{verbatim}
```

(End definition for \texttt{\regex_match_case:nnTF}. This function is documented on page 55.)

We define here 40 user functions, following a common pattern in terms of \texttt{:nnN} auxiliaries, defined in the coming subsections. The auxiliary is handed \texttt{\__regex_build:n} or \texttt{\__regex_build:N} with the appropriate regex argument, then all other necessary arguments (replacement text, token list, etc.) The conditionals call \texttt{\__regex_return:} to return either \texttt{true} or \texttt{false} once matching has been performed.

```latex
\begin{verbatim}
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__regex_tmp:w \#1#2#3 \{
\cs_new_protected:Npn \#2 \#1 \{ \#1 \{ \__regex_build:n \{\#1\} \} \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \#3 \#1 \{ \#1 \{ \__regex_build:N \#1 \} \}
\cs_set_protected:Nnn \regex_extract_once:nnN \regex_extract_once:nnNT \regex_extract_once:nnNF \regex_extract_all:nnN \regex_extract_all:nnNT \regex_extract_all:nnNF \regex_replace_once:nnN \regex_replace_once:nnNT \regex_replace_once:nnNF \regex_replace_all:nnN \regex_replace_all:nnNT \regex_replace_all:nnNF \regex_split:nnN \regex_split:nnNT \regex_split:nnNF
\end{verbatim}
```

535
If the input is bad (odd number of items) then take the false branch. Otherwise, use the same auxiliary as \texttt{\regex_replace_all:nnN}, but with more complicated code to build the automaton, and to find what replacement text to use.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \regex_replace_case_all:nNTF #1#2
{ \regex_replace_case_all:nNTF {#1} {#2} { } }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\regex_replace_case_all:nNTF}. This function is documented on page 58.)
Variables and helpers for user functions

The number of matches found so far is stored in \l__regex_match_count_int. This is only used in the \regex_count:nnNT functions.

Those flags are raised to indicate begin-group or end-group tokens that had to be added when extracting submatches.

The end-points of each submatch are stored in two arrays whose index (submatch) ranges from \l__regex_min_submatch_int (inclusive) to \l__regex_submatch_int (exclusive). Each successful match comes with a 0-th submatch (the full match), and one match for each capturing group: submatches corresponding to the last successful match are labelled starting at zeroth_submatch. The entry \l__regex_zeroth_submatch_int in \g__regex_submatch_prev_intarray holds the position at which that match attempt started: this is used for splitting and replacements.
Hold the place where the match attempt begun, the end-points of each submatch, and which regex case the match corresponds to, respectively.

\intarray_new:Nn \g__regex_submatch_prev_intarray { 65536 }
\intarray_new:Nn \g__regex_submatch_begin_intarray { 65536 }
\intarray_new:Nn \g__regex_submatch_end_intarray { 65536 }
\intarray_new:Nn \g__regex_submatch_case_intarray { 65536 }

(End definition for \g__regex_submatch_prev_intarray and others.)

The first thing we do when matching is to store the balance of begin-group/end-group characters into \g__regex_balance_intarray.

\intarray_new:Nn \g__regex_balance_intarray { 65536 }

(End definition for \g__regex_balance_intarray.)

Keep track of the number of left/right braces to add when performing a regex operation such as a replacement.

\int_new:N \l__regex_added_begin_int
\int_new:N \l__regex_added_end_int

(End definition for \l__regex_added_begin_int and \l__regex_added_end_int.)

This function triggers either \prg_return_false: or \prg_return_true: as appropriate to whether a match was found or not. It is used by all user conditionals.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_return: 
  { 
    \if_meaning:w \c_true_bool \g__regex_success_bool 
      \prg_return_true: 
    \else: 
      \prg_return_false: 
    \fi: 
  }

(End definition for \__regex_return.)

To easily extract subsets of the input once we found the positions at which to cut, store the input tokens one by one into successive \toks registers. Also store the brace balance (used to check for overall brace balance) in an array.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_query_set:n #1
  { 
    \int_zero:N \l__regex_balance_int 
    \int_zero:N \l__regex_curr_pos_int 
\tl_analysis_map_inline:nn {#1} 
    \tl_analysis_map_inline:nn {##1} ##3 
    \__kernel_intarray_gset:Nnn \g__regex_balance_intarray { \l__regex_curr_pos_int } { \l__regex_balance_int } 
  }

(End definition for \__regex_query_set:n.)
45.7.2 Matching

We don’t track submatches, and stop after a single match. Build the NFA with \#1, and perform the match on the query \#2.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_if_match:nn #1#2
\group_begin:
\__regex_disable_submatches:
\__regex_single_match:
#1
\__regex_match:n {#2}
\group_end:

(End definition for \__regex_if_match:nn and \__regex_query_set:nN.)

\__regex_match_case:nnTF \__regex_match_case_aux:nn

The code would get badly messed up if the number of items in \#1 were not even, so we catch this case, then follow the same code as \regex_match:nnTF but using \__regex_case_build:n and without returning a result.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_count:nnN #1#2#3
\group_begin:
\int_if_odd:nTF { \tl_count:n {#1} } {mag_error:nxxxx { regex } { case-odd }
\{ \token_to_str:N \regex_match_case:nn(TF) } { code }
\{ \tl_count:n {#1} } { \tl_to_str:n {#1} }
\use_ii:nn
}

\__regex_if_match:nn
\__regex_case_build:x { \__regex_tl_odd_items:n {#1} } {#2}
\bool_if:NTF \g__regex_success_bool
}
\cs_new:Npn \__regex_match_case_aux:nn #1#2 { \exp_not:n { {#1} } }

(End definition for \__regex_match_case:nnTF and \__regex_match_case_aux:nn.)

Again, we don’t care about submatches. Instead of aborting after the first “longest match” is found, we search for multiple matches, incrementing \l__regex_match_count_int every time to record the number of matches. Build the NFA and match. At the end, store the result in the user’s variable.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_count:nnN #1#2#3
\group_begin:
45.7.3 Extracting submatches

Match once or multiple times. After each match (or after the only match), extract the submatches using \_regex_extract:. At the end, store the sequence containing all the submatches into the user variable #3 after closing the group.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \_regex_extract_once:nnN #1#2#3
\group_begin:
\_regex_single_match:
#1
\_regex_match:n (#2)
\_regex_extract:
\_regex_query_set:n (#2)
\_regex_group_end_extract_seq:N #3
\group_end:
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_regex_extract_all:nnN #1#2#3
\group_begin:
\_regex_multi_match:n { \_regex_extract: }
#1
\_regex_match:n (#2)
\_regex_query_set:n (#2)
\_regex_group_end_extract_seq:N #3
\group_end:

(End definition for \_regex_extract_once:nnN and \_regex_extract_all:nnN.)

\_regex_split:nnN

Splitting at submatches is a bit more tricky. For each match, extract all submatches, and replace the zeroth submatch by the part of the query between the start of the match attempt and the start of the zeroth submatch. This is inhibited if the delimiter matched an empty token list at the start of this match attempt. After the last match, store the last part of the token list, which ranges from the start of the match attempt to the end of the query. This step is inhibited if the last match was empty and at the very end: decrement \l__regex_submatch_int, which controls which matches will be used.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \_regex_split:nnN #1#2#3
\group_begin:
\_regex_multi_match:n
{ \_regex_count:nnN 1\l__regex_match_count_int
\int_zero:N \l__regex_match_count_int
\_regex_multi_match:n { \int_incr:N \l__regex_match_count_int } #1
\_regex_match:n (#2)
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
\int_set:Nn #3 { \int_use:N \l__regex_match_count_int }
\exp_args:NNNo
\group_end:
The end-points of submatches are stored as entries of two arrays from `\_regex_min_submatch_int` to `\_regex_submatch_int` (exclusive). Extract the relevant ranges into `\g__regex_internal_tl`, separated by `\__regex_tmp:w {}`. We keep track in the two flags `\__regex_begin` and `\__regex_end` of the number of begin-group or end-group tokens added to make each of these items overall balanced. At this step, `\Y` is counted as being balanced (same number of begin-group and end-group tokens). This problem is caught by `\__regex_extract_check:w`, explained later. After complaining about any begin-group or end-group tokens we had to add, we are ready to construct the user’s sequence outside the group.
\_\_regex_tmp:w
}
\int_set:Nn \l__regex_added_begin_int
 { \flag_height:n { __regex_begin } }
\int_set:Nn \l__regex_added_end_int
 { \flag_height:n { __regex_end } }
\tex_afterassignment:D \_\_regex_extract_check:w
\_\_kernel_tl_gset:Nx \g__regex_internal_tl
 { \g__regex_internal_tl \if_false: { \fi: } }
\int_compare:nNnT
 { \l__regex_added_begin_int + \l__regex_added_end_int } > 0
{ \msg_error:nnxxx { regex } { result-unbalanced }
 { splitting-or-extracting-submatches }
 { \int_use:N \l__regex_added_begin_int }
 { \int_use:N \l__regex_added_end_int }
 }
\group_end:
\cs_set_eq:NN \__regex_tmp:w \__regex_extract_map_loop:w
\seq_set_from_function:NnN \l__regex_extract_map:w \exp_not:n
\exp_after:wN \__regex_extract_seq_aux:n
\__regex_extract_seq_aux:ww
The \_auxiliary builds one item of the sequence of submatches. First compute the brace balance of the submatch, then extract the submatch from the query, adding the appropriate braces and raising a flag if the submatch is not balanced.
\cs_new:Npn \__regex_extract_seq_aux:n #1
{ \_\_regex_tmp:w { }
 \exp_after:wN \_\_regex_extract_seq_aux:ww
 \int_value:w \_\_regex_submatch_balance:n {#1} ; #1; }
\cs_new:Npn \_\_regex_extract_seq_aux:ww #1; #2;
{ \if_int_compare:w #1 < \c_zero_int
 \prg_replicate:nn {-#1}
 { \flag_raise:n { __regex_begin }
 \exp_not:n { \if_false: { \fi: } }
 }
 \fi: }
\cs_new:Npn \_\_regex_query_submatch:n {#2}
{ \if_int_compare:w #1 > \c_zero_int
 \prg_replicate:nn {#1}
 { \flag_raise:n { __regex_end }
 \exp_not:n { \if_false: { \fi: } }
 }
 \fi: }
(End definition for \_\_regex_group_end_extract_seq:N.)

(End definition for \_\_regex_extract_seq_aux:n and \_\_regex_extract_seq_aux:ww.)
In \__regex_group_end_extract_seq:N we had to expand \g__regex_internal_tl to turn \iffalse: constructions into actual begin-group and end-group tokens. This is done with a \__kernel_tl_gset:Nx assignment, and \__regex_extract_check:w is run immediately after this assignment ends, thanks to the \afterassignment primitive. If all of the items were properly balanced (enough begin-group tokens before end-group tokens, so \} is not) then \__regex_extract_check:w is called just before the closing brace of the \__kernel_tl_gset:Nx (thanks to our sneaky \false: \fi: construction), and finds that there is nothing left to expand. If any of the items is unbalanced, the assignment gets ended early by an extra end-group token, and our check finds more tokens needing to be expanded in a new \__kernel_tl_gset:Nx assignment. We need to add a begin-group and an end-group tokens to the unbalanced item, namely to the last item found so far, which we reach through a loop.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_extract_check:w
\exp_after:wN \__regex_extract_check:n
\exp_after:wN \iffalse: \fi:
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_extract_check:n #1
\tl_if_empty:nF {#1}
\int_incr:N \l__regex_added_begin_int
\int_incr:N \l__regex_added_end_int
\tex_afterassignment:D \__regex_extract_check:w
\__kernel_tl_gset:Nx \g__regex_internal_tl
\exp_after:wN \__regex_extract_check_loop:w
\g__regex_internal_tl
\__regex_tmp:w \__regex_extract_check_end:w #1
\__regex_tmp:w
\cs_new:Npn \__regex_extract_check_loop:w #2 \__regex_tmp:w #3 \__regex_extract_check_end:w
{ \exp_not:o {#1} }
\__regex_tmp:w \prg_do_nothing:
\cs_new:Npn \__regex_extract_check_end:w \exp_not:o #1 #2 \__regex_extract_check_loop:w #1 \__regex_tmp:w #2
{ #2 \exp_not:o {#1} \__regex_tmp:w { } \__regex_extract_check_loop:w \prg_do_nothing:
\cs_new:Npn \__regex_extract_check_end:w \exp_not:o #1 \__regex_extract_check_loop:w #1 \__regex_tmp:w
{ \exp_not:o {#1} }
\cs_new:Npn \__regex_extract_check_end:w \exp_not:o #1 \__regex_extract_check_loop:w #1 \__regex_tmp:w
{ \exp_not:o {#1} }
#3

Arguments of \__regex_extract_check_end:w are: #1 is the part of the item before the extra end-group token; #2 is junk; #3 is \prg_do_nothing: followed by the not-yet-expanded part of the item after the extra end-group token. In the replacement text, the first brace and the \false: \fi: construction are the added begin-group and end-group tokens (the latter being not-yet expanded, just like #3), while the closing brace after \exp_not:o {#1} replaces the extra end-group token that had ended the assignment early. In particular this means that the character code of that end-group token is lost.
This receives a seq internal function and maps it over all items in \texttt{\g__regex_internal_tl}. This token list takes the form \texttt{\__regex_tmp:w \{} \texttt{\__regex_tmp:w \{} \texttt{\__regex_tmp:w \}} \ldots \texttt{\__regex_tmp:w}, and the calling code has set \texttt{\__regex_tmp:w} equal to \texttt{\__regex_extract_map_loop:w}. The loop is otherwise pretty standard, with \texttt{\prg_do_nothing:} to avoid losing braces.

\begin{verbatim}
cs_new:Npn \__regex_extract_map:N #1 { \exp_after:wN \__regex_extract_map_aux:NNn \exp_after:wN #1 \g__regex_internal_tl \use_none:nnn }
cs_new:Npn \__regex_extract_map_aux:NNn #1#2#3 { #3 #2 #1 \prg_do_nothing: }
cs_new:Npn \__regex_extract_map_loop:w #1#2 \__regex_tmp:w #3 { \exp_after:wN #1 \exp_after:wN {#2} \__regex_tmp:w #3 \__regex_extract_map_loop:w #1 \prg_do_nothing: }
\end{verbatim}

Our task here is to store the list of end-points of submatches, and store them in appropriate array entries, from \texttt{\__regex_zeroth_submatch_int} upwards. First, we store in \texttt{\g__regex_submatch_prev_intarray} the position at which the match attempt started. We extract the rest from the comma list \texttt{\l__regex_success_submatches_tl}, which starts with entries to be stored in \texttt{\g__regex_submatch_begin_intarray} and continues with entries for \texttt{\g__regex_submatch_end_intarray}.

\begin{verbatim}
cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_extract: { \if_meaning:w \c_true_bool \__regex_success_bool
 \int_set_eq:NN \l__regex_zeroth_submatch_int \l__regex_submatch_int \prg_replicate:n \l__regex_capturing_group_int
 { \__kernel_intarray_gset:Nnn \g__regex_submatch_prev_intarray \{ \l__regex_submatch_int \} \{ 0 \} \__kernel_intarray_gset:Nnn \g__regex_submatch_case_intarray \{ \l__regex_submatch_int \} \{ 0 \} \int_incr:N \l__regex_internal_a_int \int_zero:N \l__regex_internal_a_int \exp_after:wN \__regex_extract_aux:w \l__regex_success_submatches_tl \prg_break_point: \__regex_use_none_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:w , \q__regex_recursion_stop
} \end{verbatim}
45.7.4 Replacement

Build the NFA and the replacement functions, then find a single match. If the match failed, simply exit the group. Otherwise, we do the replacement. Extract submatches. Compute the brace balance corresponding to replacing this match by the replacement (this depends on submatches). Prepare the replaced token list: the replacement function produces the tokens from the start of the query to the start of the match and the replacement text for this match; we need to add the tokens from the end of the match to the end of the query. Finally, store the result in the user’s variable after closing the group: this step involves an additional `x`-expansion, and checks that braces are balanced in the final result.
Match multiple times, and for every match, extract submatches and additionally store the position at which the match attempt started. The entries from \l__regex_min_submatch_int to \l__regex_submatch_int hold information about submatches of every match in order; each match corresponds to \l__regex_capturing_group_int consecutive entries. Compute the brace balance corresponding to doing all the replacements: this is the sum of brace balances for replacing each match. Join together the replacement texts for each match (including the part of the query before the match), and the end of the query.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_replace_all:nnN #1#2
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_replace_all_aux:nnN #1#2#3
\group_begin:
\__regex_multi_match:n { \__regex_extract: } #1
\exp_args:No \__regex_match:n {#3}
\exp_args:No \__regex_query_set:n {#3} #2
\int_set:Nn \l__regex_balance_int { 0 \int_step_function:nnnN { \l__regex_min_submatch_int } \l__regex_capturing_group_int { \l__regex_submatch_int - 1 } \__regex_replacement_balance_one_match:n }
\__kernel_tl_set:Nx \l__regex_internal_a_tl { \int_step_function:nnnN { \l__regex_min_submatch_int } \l__regex_capturing_group_int { \l__regex_submatch_int - 1 } \__regex_replacement_do_one_match:n \__regex_query_range:nn \l__regex_start_pos_int \l__regex_max_pos_int }
\__regex_group_end_replace:N #3
\group_end: #3

\__regex_group_end_replace:N \__regex_group_end_replace_try:
\__regex_group_end_replace_check:w
\__regex_group_end_replace_check:n

At this stage \l__regex_internal_a_tl (x-expands to the desired result). Guess from \l__regex_balance_int the number of braces to add before or after the result then
try expanding. The simplest case is when \l__regex_internal_a_tl together with the braces we insert via \prg_replicate:nn give a balanced result, and the assignment ends at the \if_false: \fi: construction: then \_regex_group_end_replace_check:w sees that there is no material left and we successfully found the result. The harder case is that expanding \l__regex_internal_a_tl may produce extra closing braces and end the assignment early. Then we grab the remaining code using; importantly, what follows has not yet been expanded so that \_regex_group_end_replace_check:n grabs everything until the last brace in \_regex_group_end_replace_try:, letting us try again with an extra surrounding pair of braces.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \_regex_group_end_replace:N #1
\int_set:Nn \l__regex_added_begin_int { \int_max:nn { - \l__regex_balance_int } { 0 } }
\int_set:Nn \l__regex_added_end_int { \int_max:nn { \l__regex_balance_int } { 0 } }
\_regex_group_end_replace_try:
\int_compare:nNnT { \l__regex_added_begin_int + \l__regex_added_end_int } > 0
\msg_error:nnnn { regex } { result-unbalanced } { replacing } { \int_use:N \l__regex_added_begin_int }
\group_end:
\tl_set_eq:NN #1 \g__regex_internal_tl
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_regex_group_end_replace_try:
\tex_afterassignment:D \_regex_group_end_replace_check:w \_kernel_tl_gset:Nx \g__regex_internal_tl
\prg_replicate:nn { \l__regex_added_begin_int } { { \if_false: } \fi: }
\_regex_group_end_replace_a_tl
\prg_replicate:nn { \l__regex_added_end_int } { \if_false: } \if_false: \fi: 
\_regex_group_end_replace_check:n #1
\tl_if_empty:nF { #1 }
\int_incr:N \l__regex_added_begin_int
\int_incr:N \l__regex_added_end_int
\_regex_group_end_replace_try:
\exp_after:wN \_regex_group_end_replace_check:n \exp_after:wN \_regex_group_end_replace_check:n \_regex_group_end_replace_check:n #1
\tl_if_empty:nF { #1 }
\int_incr:N \l__regex_added_begin_int
\int_incr:N \l__regex_added_end_int
\_regex_group_end_replace_try:
\endinput

(End definition for \_regex_group_end_replace:N and others.)
45.7.5 Peeking ahead

\l__regex_peek_true_tl  True/false code arguments of \peek_regex:nTF or similar.
\l__regex_peek_false_tl
\l_new:N \l__regex_peek_true_tl
\l_new:N \l__regex_peek_false_tl

(End definition for \l__regex_peek_true_tl and \l__regex_peek_false_tl.)

\l__regex_replacement_tl  When peeking in \peek_regex_replace_once:nnTF we need to store the replacement
text.
\l_new:N \l__regex_replacement_tl

(End definition for \l__regex_replacement_tl.)

\l__regex_input_tl \__regex_input_item:n  Stores each token found as \regex_input_item:n\{\langle tokens\rangle\}, where the \langle tokens\rangle o-
expand to the token found, as for \tl_analysis_map_inline:nn.
\l_new:N \l__regex_input_tl
\cs_new_eq:NN \__regex_input_item:n \?

(End definition for \l__regex_input_tl and \__regex_input_item:n.)

\peek_regex:nTF \peek_regex:NTF \peek_regex_remove_once:nTF \peek_regex_remove_once:NTF
The T and F functions just call the corresponding TF function. The four TF functions differ
along two axes: whether to remove the token or not, distinguished by using \__regex_-
peek_end: or \__regex.peek_remove_end:n (the latter case needs an argument, as we
will see), and whether the regex has to be compiled or is already in an N-type variable,
distinguished by calling \__regex_build_aux:Nn or \__regex_build_aux:NN. The first
argument of these functions is \c_false_bool to indicate that there should be no implicit
insertion of a wildcard at the start of the pattern: otherwise the code would keep looking
further into the input stream until matching the regex.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \peek_regex:nTF #1
\begin{verbatim}
 { \__regex_peek:nnTF { \__regex_build_aux:Nn \c_false_bool \{#1\} } \__regex_peek_end: }
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \peek_regex:nT #1#2
\begin{verbatim}
 { \peek_regex:nTF \{#1\} \{#2\} } 
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \peek_regex:nF #1 { \peek_regex:nTF \{#1\} \{\} } \cs_new_protected:Npn \peek_regex:NTF #1
\begin{verbatim}
 { \__regex_peek:nnTF { \__regex_build_aux:NN \c_false_bool \{#1\} } \__regex_peek_end: }
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \peek_regex:NT #1#2
\begin{verbatim}
 { \__regex_build_aux:NN \c_false_bool \{#1\} } \__regex_peek_end: }
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \peek_regex:NF #1 { \peek_regex:NTF \{#1\} \{\} } \cs_new_protected:Npn \peek_regex_remove_once:nTF #1
\begin{verbatim}
 { \__regex_peek:nnTF { \__regex_build_aux:Nn \c_false_bool \{#1\} } \__regex_peek_remove_end:n \{#1\} }
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \peek_regex_remove_once:nT #1#2
\begin{verbatim}
 { \__regex_build_aux:Nn \c_false_bool \{#1\} } \__regex_peek_remove_end:n \{#1\} }
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \peek_regex_remove_once:NF #1 { \peek_regex_remove_once:nTF \{#1\} \{\} }
Store the user’s true/false codes (plus \texttt{\group_end:}) into two token lists. Then build the automaton with \#1, without submatch tracking, and aiming for a single match. Then start matching by setting up a few variables like for any regex matching like \texttt{\regex_match:nnTF}, with the addition of \texttt{\l__regex_input_tl} that keeps track of the tokens seen, to reinsert them at the end. Instead of \texttt{\tl_analysis_map_inline:nn} on the input, we call \texttt{\peek_analysis_map_inline:n} to go through tokens in the input stream. Since \texttt{\__regex_match_one_token:nnN} calls \texttt{\__regex_maplike_break:} we need to catch that and break the \texttt{\peek_analysis_map_inline:n} loop instead.

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_peek:nnTF #1
  {
    \__regex_peek_aux:nnTF
    {
      \__regex_disable_submatches:
      #1
    }
  }
```

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_peek_aux:nnTF #1#2#3#4
  {
    \group_begin:
    \tl_set:Nn \l__regex_peek_true_tl { \group_end: #3 }
    \tl_set:Nn \l__regex_peek_false_tl { \group_end: #4 }
    \__regex_single_match:
    #1
    \__regex_match_init:
    \tl_build_clear:N \l__regex_input_tl
    \__regex_match_once_init:
    \peek_analysis_map_inline:n
    {
      \tl_build_put_right:Nn \l__regex_input_tl
      { \__regex_input_item:n {##1} }
      \__regex_match_one_token:nnN {##1} {##2} ##3
      \use_none:nnn
      \prg_break_point:Nn \l__regex_maplike_break:
      { \peek_analysis_map_break:n {#2} }
    }
  }
```

(End definition for \texttt{\__regex_peek:nnTF} and \texttt{\__regex_peek_aux:nnTF}.)
Once the regex matches (or permanently fails to match) we call `\__regex_peek_end:` or `\__regex_peek_remove_end:n` with argument the last token seen. For `\peek_regex:nTF` we reinsert tokens seen by calling `\__regex_peek_reinsert:N` regardless of the result of the match. For `\peek_regex_remove_once:nTF` we reinsert the tokens seen only if the match failed; otherwise we just reinsert the tokens \#1, with one expansion. To be more precise, \#1 consists of tokens that o-expand and x-expand to the last token seen, for example it is `\exp_not:N `⟨cs⟩` for a control sequence. This means that just doing `\exp_after:wN `\l__regex_peek_true_tl `\#1` would be unsafe because the expansion of `⟨cs⟩` would be suppressed.

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_peek_end: 7920
{ 7921  \bool_if:NTF \g__regex_success_bool 7922  { \__regex_peek_reinsert:N \l__regex_peek_true_tl } 7923  { \__regex_peek_reinsert:N \l__regex_peek_false_tl } 7924  }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_peek_remove_end:n 7925 #1 7926 { 7927  \bool_if:NTF \g__regex_success_bool 7928  { \exp_args:NNo \use:nn \l__regex_peek_true_tl {#1} } 7929  { \__regex_peek_reinsert:N \l__regex_peek_false_tl } 7930  }
```

```
(End definition for `\__regex_peek_end:` and `\__regex_peek_remove_end:n`.)
```

```
\__regex_peek_reinsert:N 7946
\__regex_reinsert_item:n 7947
Insert the true/false code \#1, followed by the tokens found, which were stored in `\l__regex_input_tl`. For this, loop through that token list using `\__regex_reinsert_item:n`, which expands \#1 once to get a single token, and jumps over it to expand what follows, with suitable `\exp:w` and `\exp_end:`. We cannot just use `\use:e` on the whole token list because the result may be unbalanced, which would stop the primitive prematurely, or let it continue beyond where we would like.

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_peek_reinsert:N 7932 #1 7933 { 7934  \tl_build_end:N \l__regex_input_tl 7935  \cs_set_eq:NN \__regex_input_item:n \__regex_reinsert_item:n 7936  \exp_after:wN #1 \exp:w \l__regex_input_tl \exp_end: 7937  }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_reinsert_item:n 7938 #1 7939 { 7940  \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN 7941  \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN 7942  #1 7943  \exp:w 7944  }
```

```
(End definition for `\__regex_peek_reinsert:N` and `\__regex_reinsert_item:n`.)
```

```
\peek_regex_replace_once:nn 7946 \peek_regex_replace_once:nnTF 7947 \peek_regex_replace_once:Nn 7948 \peek_regex_replace_once:nnTF 7949 Similar to `\peek_regex:nTF` above.
```

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \peek_regex_replace_once:nnTF 7940 \cs_new_protected:Npn \peek_regex_replace_once:nnTF #1 7941 \cs_new_protected:Npn \peek_regex_replace_once:nnTF \c_false_bool \#1 7942 \#1 \#2 \#3 \#3 \} \} 7943 \cs_new_protected:Npn \peek_regex_replace_once:nnF \cs_new_protected:Npn \peek_regex_replace_once:nnTF #1 7944 \cs_new_protected:Npn \peek_regex_replace_once:nnTF #1 \#2 \#2 \#3 \} \} 7945 \cs_new_protected:Npn \peek_regex_replace_once:nnF \cs_new_protected:Npn \peek_regex_replace_once:nnTF #1 \#2 \#2 \#3
```

550
\cs_new_protected:Npn \peek_regex_replace_once:nnTF #1 #2
{ \peek_regex_replace_once:nnTF {#1} {#2} { } }\par
\cs_new_protected:Npn \peek_regex_replace_once:NnTF #1
{ \__regex_peek_replace:nnTF { \__regex_build_aux:NN \c_false_bool #1 } }\par
\cs_new_protected:Npn \peek_regex_replace_once:NnT #1 #2 #3
{ \peek_regex_replace_once:NnTF #1 {#2} {#3} { } }\par
\cs_new_protected:Npn \peek_regex_replace_once:NnF #1 #2
{ \peek_regex_replace_once:NnTF #1 {#2} { } }\par
\cs_new_protected:Npn \peek_regex_replace_once:Nn #1 #2
{ \peek_regex_replace_once:NnTF #1 {#2} { } { } }\par
\__regex_peek_replace:nnTF
Same as \__regex_peek:nTF (used for \peek_regex:nTF above), but without disabling
submatches, and with a different end. The replacement text #2 is stored, to be analyzed
later.
\__regex_peek_replace_end:
If the match failed \__regex_peek_reinsert:N reinserts the tokens found. Otherwise,
finish storing the submatch information using \__regex_extract:, and store the input
into \toks. Redefine a few auxiliaries to change slightly their expansion behaviour as
explained below. Analyse the replacement text with \__regex_replacement:n, which
as usual defines \__regex_replacement_do_one_match:n to insert the tokens from the
start of the match attempt to the beginning of the match, followed by the replacement
text. The \use:x expands for instance the trailing \__regex_query_range:nn down to a
sequence of \__regex_reinsert-item:n {{\langle tokens\rangle}} where \langle tokens\rangle o-expand to a single
token that we want to insert. After x-expansion, \use:x does \use:n, so we have \exp_after:wN \l__regex_peek_true_tl \exp:w ...
\exp_end: This is set up such as to obtain \__regex_peek_true-tl followed by the replaced tokens (possibly unbalanced)
in the input stream.
\exp_not:n \exp_after:wN \l__regex_peek_true_tl \exp:w 
\__regex_replacement_do_one_match:n 
\__regex_query_range:nn 
{ \l__regex_zeroth_submatch_int } 
\__kernel_intarray_item:Nn \g__regex_submatch_end_intarray 
{ \l__regex_zeroth_submatch_int } 
\__regex_query_set_item:n \l__regex_input_tl 
\__regex_input_:nn \langle \text{tokens} \rangle . Store that in successive \toks. It's not clear whether the empty entries before and after are both useful.

\__regex_peek_replacement_put:n While building the replacement function \__regex_replacement_do_one_match:n, we often want to put simple material, given as #1, whose x-expansion o-expands to a single token. Normally we can just add the token to \l__regex_build_tl, but for \peek_regex_replace_once:nnTF we eventually want to do some strange expansion that is basically using \exp_after:wN to jump through numerous tokens (we cannot use x-expansion like for \regex_replace_once:nnNTF because it is ok for the result to be unbalanced since we insert it in the input stream rather than storing it. When within a csname we don't do any such shenanigan because \cs:w ... \cs_end: does all the expansion we need.
\fi:
\)

(End definition for \_\_regex_peek_replacement_put:n)

\_\_regex_peek_replacement_token:n

When hit with \exp:w, \_\_regex_peek_replacement_token:n \((\text{token})\) stops \exp_end: and does \exp_after:wN \token \exp:w to continue expansion after it.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_regex_peek_replacement_token:n #1
\{
\exp_after:wN \exp_end: \exp_after:wN #1 \exp:w \}

(End definition for \_\_regex_peek_replacement_token:n)

\_\_regex_peek_replacement_put_submatch_aux:n

While analyzing the replacement we also have to insert submatches found in the query. Since query items \_\_regex_input_item:n \((\text{tokens})\) expand correctly only when surrounded by \exp:w \ldots \exp_end:, and since these expansion controls are not there within csnames (because \cs:w \ldots \cs_end: make them unnecessary in most cases), we have to put \exp:w and \exp_end: by hand here.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_regex_peek_replacement_put_submatch_aux:n #1
\{
\if_case:w \l__regex_replacement_csnames_int
\tl_build_put_right:Nn \l__regex_build_tl
\{ \_\_regex_query_submatch:n \{ \int_eval:n \#1 + ##1 \} \}
\else:
\tl_build_put_right:Nn \l__regex_build_tl
\{ \exp:w \_\_regex_query_submatch:n \{ \int_eval:n \#1 + ##1 \} \exp_end: \}
\fi:
\}

(End definition for \_\_regex_peek_replacement_put_submatch_aux:n)

\_\_regex_peek_replacement_var:N

This is used for \u outside csnames. It makes sure to continue expansion with \exp:w before expanding the variable \#1 and stopping the \exp:w that precedes.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_regex_peek_replacement_var:N #1
\{
\exp_after:wN \exp_last_unbraced:NV
\exp_after:wN \exp_end:
\exp_after:wN #1 \exp:w \}

(End definition for \_\_regex_peek_replacement_var:N)

45.8 Messages

Messages for the preparsing phase.

\use:x
\{
\msg_new:nnn { regex } { trailing-backslash }
\{ Trailing-'\iow_char:N\\' in regex or replacement. \}
\msg_new:nnn { regex } { x-missing-rbrace }
\{ Missing-brace-'\iow_char:N\'} in regex-
...\iow_char:N\x\iow_char:N\{...\#1'.
\}
Invalid quantifier.

Messages for missing or extra closing brackets and parentheses, with some fancy singular/plural handling for the case of parentheses.

Some escaped alphanumerics are not allowed everywhere.
\_\_regex_if_in_cs:TF
{
  within-a-control-sequence-test-introduced-by-
  \texttt{\textbackslash iow\_char:N\textbackslash c\textbackslash iow\_char:N\{.}
}
{
  \_\_regex_if_in_class:TF
  \{ within-a-character-class- \}
  \{ following-a-category-test-such-as-'\texttt{\textbackslash iow\_char:N\textbackslash cL'}- \}
  because-it-does-not-match-exactly-one-character.
}
}

Range errors.
\msg_new:nnnn { regex } { range-missing-end }
{ Invalid-end-point-for-range-'#1-#2'-in-character-class. }
{
The-end-point-'#2'-of-the-range-'#1-#2'-may-not-serve-as-an-
  end-point-for-a-range:-alphanumeric-characters-should-not-be-
  escaped,-and-non-alphanumeric-characters-should-be-escaped.
}
\msg_new:nnnn { regex } { range-backwards }
{ Range-'[#1-#2]'-out-of-order-in-character-class. }
{
  In-ranges-of-characters- '[x-y]'-appearing-in-character-classes,-
  the-first-character-code-must-not-be-larger-than-the-second.-
  Here,-'#1'-has-character-code-\texttt{\textbackslash int\_eval:n}\ '{#1}',-while-
  '#2'-has-character-code-\texttt{\textbackslash int\_eval:n}\ '{#2}'.
}

Errors related to \texttt{\textbackslash c} and \texttt{\textbackslash u}.
\msg_new:nnnn { regex } { c-bad-mode }
{ Invalid-nested-'\texttt{\textbackslash iow\_char:N\textbackslash c'}-escape-in-regular-expression. }
{
The-'\texttt{\textbackslash iow\_char:N\textbackslash c'}-escape-cannot-be-used-within-
  a-control-sequence-test-'\texttt{\textbackslash iow\_char:N\textbackslash c(...)}'-
  nor-another-category-test.-
  To-combine-several-category-tests,-use-'\texttt{\textbackslash iow\_char:N\textbackslash c[...]}'.
}
\msg_new:nnnn { regex } { c-C-invalid }
{ '\texttt{\textbackslash iow\_char:N\textbackslash cC'}-should-be-followed-by-'.','-or-'.','-not-'#1'. }
{
The-'\texttt{\textbackslash iow\_char:N\textbackslash cC'}-construction-restricts-the-next-item-to-be-a-
  control-sequence-or-the-next-group-to-be-made-of-control-sequences.-
  It-only-makes-sense-to-follow-it-by-'.','-or-by-a-group.
}
\msg_new:nnnn { regex } { cu-lbrace }
{ Left-braces-must-be-escaped-in-'\texttt{\textbackslash iow\_char:N\textbackslash c\{...}'}. }
{
  Constructions-such-as-'\texttt{\textbackslash iow\_char:N\textbackslash c\{...\textbackslash iow\_char:N\textbackslash c\{...}'-are-
  not-allowed-and-should-be-replaced-by-
  '\texttt{\textbackslash iow\_char:N\textbackslash c\{...\textbackslash token\_to\_str:N\{...}'.
}
\msg_new:nnnn { regex } { c-lparen-in-class }
{ Catcode-test-cannot-apply-to-group-in-character-class }
\begin{verbatim}
\{ 
  Construction-such-as-’\iow_char:N\cL(abc)’-are-not-allowed-inside-a-
  class-‘[...]’-because-classes-do-not-match-multiple-characters-at-once.
}\}
\msg_new:nnnn { regex } { c-missing-rbrace }
\{ Missing-right-brace-inserted-for-’\iow_char:N\c’-escape. \}
\{ \LaTeX\-was\-given\-a\-regular\-expression\-where-a-
  ’\iow_char:N\iow_char:N\{(...)’-construction\-was\-not\-ended-
  with-a\-closing\-brace-’\iow_char:N\}'. \}
\msg_new:nnnn { regex } { c-missing-brack }
\{ Missing-right-bracket-inserted-for-’\iow_char:N\c’-escape. \}
\{ A\-construction-’\iow_char:N\c[...]’-appears\-in-a-
  regular\-expression,-but-the\-closing-’]’-is\-not\-present. \}
\msg_new:nnnn { regex } { c-missing-category }
\{ Invalid-character-’#1’-following-’\iow_char:N\c’-escape. \}
\{ In-regular-expressions,-the-’\iow_char:N\c’-escape\-sequence-
  may\-only\-be\-followed\-by-a-left\-brace,-a\-left\-bracket,-or-a-
  capital\-letter\-representing\-a\-character\-category,-namely-
  one\-of\-’ABCDELMOPSTU’. \}
\msg_new:nnnn { regex } { c-trailing }
\{ Trailing\-category\-code\-escape-’\iow_char:N\c’... \}
\{ A\-regular\-expression\-ends\-with-’\iow_char:N\c’\-followed-
  by-a\-letter.-It\-will\-be\-ignored. \}
\msg_new:nnnn { regex } { u-missing-lbrace }
\{ Missing-left-brace-following-’\iow_char:N\u’-escape. \}
\{ The-’\iow_char:N\u’-escape\-sequence\-must\-be\-followed-by-
  a\-brace\-group\-with\-the\-name\-of\-the\-variable\-to\-use. \}
\msg_new:nnnn { regex } { u-missing-rbrace }
\{ Missing-right-brace-inserted-for-’\iow_char:N\u’-escape. \}
\{ \LaTeX\-
  \str_if_eq:eeTF { } {#2} \{ reached\-the\-end\-of\-the\-string\- \}
  \{ encountered-an\-escaped\-alphanumeric-character \’\iow_char:N\#2’- \}
  \{ when\-parsing\-the\-argument\-of\-an-
  \’\iow_char:N\u\iow_char:N\{(...)’-escape. \}
}\}
\\errors{Errors when encountering the \texttt{posix} syntax \texttt{[...]}:}
\msg_new:nnnn { regex } { posix-unsupported }
\{ POSIX-collating-element-’[#1 - #1]’-not\-supported. \}
\{ The-’[.foo.]-and-’[=bar=]’\-syntaxes\-have\-a\-special\-meaning-
  in\-POSIX-regular\-expressions.-This\-is\-not\-supported\-by\-LaTeX.-
  Maybe\-you\-forgot\-to\-escape\-a\-left\-brace\-in\-a\-character\-class?\}
\end{verbatim}
In various cases, the result of a l3regex operation can leave us with an unbalanced token list, which we must re-balance by adding begin-group or end-group character tokens.

\msg_new:nnnn { regex } { result-unbalanced }
{ Missing-brace-inserted-when-#1. }

LaTeX was asked to do some regular expression operation, and the resulting token list would not have the same number of begin-group and end-group tokens. Braces were inserted: #2-left, #3-right.

Error message for unknown options.
\msg_new:nnnn { regex } { unknown-option }
{ Unknown-option-#1'-for-regular-expressions. }
\msg_new:nnnn { regex } { special-group-unknown }
{ Unknown-special-group-#1-...'in-a-regular-expression. }

Errors in the replacement text.
\msg_new:nnnn { regex } { replacement-c }
{ Misused-\iow_char:N\c'-command-in-a-replacement-text. }
\msg_new:nnnn { regex } { replacement-u }
{ Misused-\iow_char:N\u'-command-in-a-replacement-text. }
Missing brace for the '\iow_char:N\g{-construction-in-a-replacement-text.}

In-the-replacement-text for a regular expression search, submatches are represented either as '\iow_char:N \g{dd..d}', or '\\d', where 'd' are single digits. Here, a brace is missing.

Missing character for the '\iow_char:N\c<category><character>-construction-in-a-replacement-text.

In-a-replacement-text, the '\iow_char:N\c'-escape sequence can be followed by one of the letters 'ABCDELMOPSTU'-representing the character category. Then, a character must follow. LaTeX reached the end of the replacement when looking for that.

Escaped letter or digit after category code in replacement text.

In-a-replacement-text, the '\iow_char:N\c'-escape sequence can be followed by one of the letters 'ABCDELMOPSTU'-representing the character category. Then, a character must follow, not '\iow_char:N\#2'.

Category code '\iow_char:N\c#1#3'-ignored inside '\iow_char:N\c{...}'-in-a-replacement-text.

In-a-replacement-text, the category codes of the argument of '\iow_char:N\c{...}'-are ignored when building the control sequence name.

TeX cannot build a space token with character code 0. You asked for a character token with category space, and character code 0, for instance through '\iow_char:N\cS\iow_char:N\x00'. This specific case is impossible and will be replaced by a normal space.

Missing right-brace inserted in replacement text.

There: \int_compare:nTF { \#1 = 1 } { was } { were } - \#1-
missing-right-\int_compare:nTF { #1 = 1 } { brace } { braces }.

\msg_new:nnnn { regex } { replacement-missing-rparen }
{ Missing-right-parenthesis-inserted-in-replacement-text. }
{ }
{ There- \int_compare:nTF { #1 = 1 } { was } { were } - #1-
missing-right-
\int_compare:nTF { #1 = 1 } { parenthesis } { parentheses } .
}
\msg_new:nnn { regex } { submatch-too-big }
{ Submatch-#1-used-but-regex-only-has-#2-group(s) }
{ Some escaped alphanumerics are not allowed everywhere. }
\msg_new:nnnn { regex } { backwards-quantifier }
{ Quantifer-"{#1,#2}"-is-backwards. }
{ The-values-given-in-a-quantifier-must-be-in-order. }

Used in user commands, and when showing a regex.

\msg_new:nnnn { regex } { case-odd }
{ #1-with-odd-number-of-items }
{ }
{ There-must-be-a-#2-part-for-each-regex:-
found-odd-number-of-items-(#3)-in\}
\iow_indent:n {#4}
\msg_new:nnn { regex } { show }
{ >-Compiled-regex-
\tl_if_empty:nTF {#1} { variable- #2 } { {#1} } :
#3
}
\prop_gput:Nnn \g_msg_module_name_prop { regex } { LaTeX3 }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g_msg_module_type_prop { regex } { }

\__regex_msg_repeated:nnN This is not technically a message, but seems related enough to go there. The arguments are: #1 is the minimum number of repetitions; #2 is the number of allowed extra repetitions (-1 for infinite number), and #3 tells us about lazyness.
\cs_new:Npn \__regex_msg_repeated:nnN #1#2#3
{ \str_if_eq:eeF { #1 #2 } { 1 0 } 
{ - repeated - \int_case:nF {#2} 
{ 1 } { #1-or-more-times,-\bool_if:NTF #3 { lazy } { greedy } } 
{ 0 } { #1-times } 
}
{ between-#1-and-\int_eval:n {#1+#2}-times,- 
\bool_if:NTF #3 { lazy } { greedy } 
}
}

(End definition for \__regex_msg_repeated:nnN.)
45.9 Code for tracing

There is a more extensive implementation of tracing in the l3trial package l3trace. Function names are a bit different but could be merged.

\__regex_trace_push:nnN
\__regex_trace_pop:nnN
\__regex_trace:nnx

Here \#1 is the module name (regex) and \#2 is typically 1. If the module's current tracing level is less than \#2 show nothing, otherwise write \#3 to the terminal.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_trace_push:nnN \#1\#2\#3
{ \__regex_trace:nnx {\#1} {\#2} { entering \token_to_str:N \#3 } }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_trace_pop:nnN \#1\#2\#3
{ \__regex_trace:nnx {\#1} {\#2} { leaving \token_to_str:N \#3 } }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_trace:nnx \#1\#2\#3
{ \int_compare:nNnF \{ \int_use:c { g__regex_trace_\#1_int } \} < \#2
{ \iow_term:x { Trace: \#3 } } }

(End definition for \__regex_trace_push:nnN, \__regex_trace_pop:nnN, and \__regex_trace:nnx.)

\g__regex_trace_regex_int
No tracing when that is zero.
\int_new:N \g__regex_trace_regex_int
(End definition for \g__regex_trace_regex_int.)

\__regex_trace_states:n
This function lists the contents of all states of the NFA, stored in \toks from 0 to \l__regex_max_state_int (excluded).
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__regex_trace_states:n \#1
{ \int_step_inline:nnn \l__regex_min_state_int \{ \l__regex_max_state_int - 1 \}
{ \__regex_trace:nnx { regex } \#1
{ \iow_char:N \toks \#1 = { \__regex_toks_use:w \#1 } } }
}
(End definition for \__regex_trace_states:n.)
\endinput
Chapter 46

\texttt{l3prg} implementation

The following test files are used for this code: \texttt{m3prg001.lvt}, \texttt{m3prg002.lvt}, \texttt{m3prg003.lvt}.

\section*{Primitive conditionals}

Those two primitive \TeX conditionals are synonyms. \texttt{\if_bool:N} is defined in \texttt{l3basics}, as it's needed earlier to define quark test functions.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_eq:NN \if_predicate:w \tex_ifodd:D
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\if_bool:N} and \texttt{\if_predicate:w}. These functions are documented on page 70.)

\section*{Defining a set of conditional functions}

These are all defined in \texttt{l3basics}, as they are needed “early”. This is just a reminder!

(End definition for \texttt{\prg_set_conditional:Npnn} and others. These functions are documented on page 62.)

\section*{The boolean data type}

Boolean variables have to be initiated when they are created. Other than that there is not much to say here.

\begin{verbatim}
\bool_new:N \bool_new:c
\end{verbatim}

A merger between \texttt{\tl_const:Nn} and \texttt{\bool_set:Nn}.

\begin{verbatim}
\bool_return_true: \prg_return_true:
\bool_return_false: \prg_return_false:
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\bool_new:N}. This function is documented on page 65.)

561
Setting is already pretty easy. When check-declarations is active, the definitions are patched to make sure the boolean exists. This is needed because booleans are not based on token lists nor on \TeX registers.

\begin{verbatim}
\bool_set_true:N \bool_set_true:c \bool_gset_true:N \bool_gset_true:c \bool_set_false:N \bool_set_false:c \bool_gset_false:N \bool_gset_false:c
\end{verbatim}

The usual copy code. While it would be cleaner semantically to copy the \cs_set_eq:NN family of functions, we copy \tl_set_eq:NN because that has the correct checking code.

\begin{verbatim}
\bool_set_eq:NN \bool_set_eq:cN \bool_set_eq:Nc \bool_gset_eq:NN \bool_gset_eq:cN \bool_gset_eq:Nc \bool_gset_eq:cc
\end{verbatim}

This function evaluates a boolean expression and assigns the first argument the meaning \c_true_bool or \c_false_bool. Again, we include some checking code. It is important to evaluate the expression before applying the \chardef primitive, because that primitive sets the left-hand side to \scan_stop: before looking for the right-hand side.

\begin{verbatim}
\bool_set:Nn \bool_set:cn \bool_gset:Nn \bool_gset:cn
\end{verbatim}
46.4 Internal auxiliaries

\q__bool_recursion_tail\n\q__bool_recursion_stop

Internal recursion quarks.

\q__bool_recursion_tail
\q__bool_recursion_stop

(End definition for \q__bool_recursion_tail and \q__bool_recursion_stop.)

\_bool_use_i_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:nw

Functions to gobble up to a quark.

\cs_new:N \_bool_use_i_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:nw
\#1 \q__bool_recursion_stop \{#1\}

(End definition for \_bool_use_i_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:nw.)

\_bool_if_recursion_tail_stop_do:nn

Functions to query recursion quarks.

\__kernel_quark_new_test:N \_bool_if_recursion_tail_stop_do:nn

(End definition for \_bool_if_recursion_tail_stop_do:nn.)

\bool_if_p:N\bool_if_p:c
\bool_if:N \bool_if:c
\bool_if:T \bool_if:F \bool_if:TF

Straight forward here. We could optimize here if we wanted to as the boolean can just
be input directly.

\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \bool_if:N #1 { p , T , F , TF }
\{ \if_bool:N #1 \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi: \}
\prg_generate_conditional_variant:Nnn \bool_if:N { c } { p , T , F , TF }

(End definition for \bool_if:NTF. This function is documented on page 65.)

\bool_to_str:N \bool_to_str:c\bool_to_str:n

Expands to true or false with category code letter.

\cs_new:Npn \bool_to_str:N \bool_to_str:c \bool_to_str:n
\{ \if_bool:N \bool_to_str:n \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi: \}
\prg_generate_conditional_variant:Nnn \bool_to_str:n { c } { p , T , F , TF }

(End definition for \bool_to_str:N and \bool_to_str:n. These functions are documented on page 65.)

\bool_show:n \bool_show:c \bool_log:n \bool_log:c \__bool_show:NN

Show the truth value of the boolean.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \bool_show:n
\{ \msg_show_eval:Nn \bool_to_str:n \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \bool_log:n
\{ \msg_log_eval:Nn \bool_to_str:n \}

(End definition for \bool_show:n and \bool_log:n. These functions are documented on page 66.)

\bool_show:N \bool_show:NN \bool_log:N \bool_log:NN \__bool_show:NN

Show the truth value of the boolean, as true or false.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \bool_show:N \bool_show:NN \\__bool_show:NN
\{ \__bool_show:NN \tl_show:n \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \bool_log:N \bool_log:NN \\__bool_show:NN
\{ \__bool_show:NN \tl_log:n \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \bool_log:NN \\__bool_show:NN
\{ \__bool_show:NN \#2 \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \bool_log:NN \\__bool_show:NN
\{ \__bool_show:NN \#2 \}

563
\_\_kernel\_chk\_defined:NT #2
{
  \token\_case\_meaning:NnF #2
  {
    \c\_true\_bool \{ \exp\_args:Nx #1 \{ \token\_to\_str:N #2 = true \} \}
    \c\_false\_bool \{ \exp\_args:Nx #1 \{ \token\_to\_str:N #2 = false \} \}
  }
  {
    \msg\_error:nnxxx \{ kernel \} \{ bad\_type \}
    \{ \token\_to\_str:N #2 \} \{ \token\_to\_meaning:N #2 \} \{ bool \}
  }
}

(End definition for \bool\_show:N, \bool\_log:N, and \_\_bool\_show:N. These functions are documented on page 66.)

\l\_tmpa\_bool \l\_tmpb\_bool \g\_tmpa\_bool \g\_tmpb\_bool

A few booleans just if you need them.
\bool\_new:N \l\_tmpa\_bool
\bool\_new:N \l\_tmpb\_bool
\bool\_new:N \g\_tmpa\_bool
\bool\_new:N \g\_tmpb\_bool

(End definition for \l\_tmpa\_bool and others. These variables are documented on page 66.)

\bool\_if\_exist:p:N \bool\_if\_exist:p:c
\bool\_if\_exist:N,TF \bool\_if\_exist:c,NF
\bool\_if\_exist:c,NF

Copies of the cs functions defined in l3basics.
\prg\_new\_eq\_conditional:NNn \bool\_if\_exist:N \cs\_if\_exist:N
\prg\_new\_eq\_conditional:NNn \bool\_if\_exist:c \cs\_if\_exist:c

(End definition for \bool\_if\_exist:N,TF. This function is documented on page 66.)

46.5 Boolean expressions

\bool\_if\_p:n \bool\_if\_n:TF

Evaluating the truth value of a list of predicates is done using an input syntax somewhat similar to the one found in other programming languages with ( and ) for grouping, ! for logical “Not”, && for logical “And” and || for logical “Or”. However, they perform eager evaluation. We shall use the terms Not, And, Or, Open and Close for these operations.

Any expression is terminated by a Close operation. Evaluation happens from left to right in the following manner using a GetNext function:

- If an Open is seen, start evaluating a new expression using the Eval function and call GetNext again.
- If a Not is seen, remove the ! and call a GetNext function with the logic reversed.
- If none of the above, reinsert the token found (this is supposed to be a predicate function) in front of an Eval function, which evaluates it to the boolean value (true) or (false).

The Eval function then contains a post-processing operation which grabs the instruction following the predicate. This is either And, Or or Close. In each case the truth value is used to determine where to go next. The following situations can arise:
And

Current truth value is true, logical And seen, continue with GetNext to examine truth value of next boolean (sub-)expression.

And

Current truth value is false, logical And seen, stop using the values of predicates within this sub-expression until the next Close. Then return \( \langle \text{false} \rangle \).

Or

Current truth value is true, logical Or seen, stop using the values of predicates within this sub-expression until the nearest Close. Then return \( \langle \text{true} \rangle \).

Or

Current truth value is false, logical Or seen, continue with GetNext to examine truth value of next boolean (sub-)expression.

Close

Current truth value is true, Close seen, return \( \langle \text{true} \rangle \).

Close

Current truth value is false, Close seen, return \( \langle \text{false} \rangle \).

\bool_if:nTF

To speed up the case of a single predicate, \texttt{f}-expand and check whether the result is one token (possibly surrounded by spaces), which must be \texttt{c_true_bool} or \texttt{c_false_bool}. We use a version of \texttt{tl_if_single:nTF} optimized for speed since we know that an empty \#1 is an error. The auxiliary \texttt{\_bool_if_p_aux:w} removes the trailing parenthesis and gets rid of any space. For the general case, first issue a \texttt{\group_align_safe_begin:} as we are using \&\& as syntax shorthand for the And operation and we need to hide it for \TeX. This group is closed after \texttt{\_bool_get_next:NN} returns \texttt{c_true_bool} or \texttt{c_false_bool}. That function requires the trailing parenthesis to know where the expression ends.

\bool_if_p:n

\_bool_if_p:n

\bool_if_p_aux:w

The GetNext operation. Its first argument is \texttt{\use_i:nnnn}, \texttt{\_bool_if_p:n}, and \texttt{\_bool_if_p_aux:w}. This function is documented on page 67.
which follows until the next unmatched closing parenthesis. For instance “\_bool_get_next:NN \use_i:nnnn \c_true_bool \&\& \c_true_bool )” (including the closing parenthesis) expands to \c_true_bool. In the second state (after !) the logic is reversed. We call these two states “normal” and the next two “skipping”. In the third state (after \c_true_bool||) it always returns \c_true_bool. In the fourth state (after \c_false_bool&&) it always returns \c_false_bool and also stops when encountering ||, not only parentheses. This code itself is a switch: if what follows is neither ! nor \,, we assume it is a predicate.

\cs_new:Npn \__bool_get_next:NN #1#2
\{\use:c
\__bool_
\if_meaning:w !#2 ! \else: \if_meaning:w (#2 ( \else: p \fi: \fi:
\exp_after:wN \__bool_get_next:NN \use_i:nnnn \use_i:nnnn \use_iii:nnnn \use_iv:nnnn
\}
\}

(End definition for \__bool_get_next:NN.)

\__bool_!:Nw The Not operation reverses the logic: it discards the ! token and calls the GetNext operation with the appropriate first argument. Namely the first and second states are interchanged, but after \c_true_bool|| or \c_false_bool&& the ! is ignored.

\cs_new:cpn { \__bool_!:Nw } #1#2
\{ \exp_after:wN \__bool_get_next:NN \use_i:nnnn \use_i:nnnn \use_iii:nnnn \use_iv:nnnn
\}

(End definition for \__bool_!:Nw.)

\__bool_p:Nw If what follows GetNext is neither ! nor \,, evaluate the predicate using the primitive \int_value:w. The canonical true and false values have numerical values 1 and 0 respectively. Look for And, Or or Close afterwards.

\cs_new:cpn { \__bool_p:Nw } #1
\{ \exp_after:wN \__bool_choose:NNN \exp_after:wN \int_value:w \}

(End definition for \__bool_p:Nw.)

566
The arguments are \#1: a function such as $\backslash$use_i:nnnn, \#2: 0 or 1 encoding the current truth value, \#3: the next operation, And, Or or Close. We distinguish three cases according to a combination of \#1 and \#2. Case 2 is when \#1 is $\backslash$use_ii:nnnn (state 3), namely after $\backslash$c_true_bool [$]$. Case 1 is when \#1 is $\backslash$use_i:nnnn and \#2 is true or when \#1 is $\backslash$use_i:nnnn and \#2 is false, for instance for $\backslash$c_false_bool. Case 0 includes the same with true/false interchanged and the case where \#1 is $\backslash$use_iv:nnnn namely after $\backslash$c_false_bool $\&\&$. When seeing $)$ the current subexpression is done, leave the appropriate boolean.

When seeing $|$ in case 0 go into state 4, equivalent to having seen $\backslash$c_false_bool $\&\&$. In case 1, namely when the argument is true and we are in a normal state continue in the normal state 1. In case 2, namely when skipping alternatives in an Or, continue in the same state. When seeing $|$ in case 0, continue in a normal state; in particular stop skipping for $\backslash$c_false_bool $\&\&$ because that binds more tightly than $||$. In the other two cases start skipping for $\backslash$c_true_bool $||$.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__bool_choose:NNN #1#2#3
 { \use:c
 { __bool_ \token_to_str:N #3 _ #1 #2 { \if_meaning:w 0 #2 1 \else: 0 \fi: } 2 0 : }
}
\cs_new:cpn { __bool_)_0: } { \c_false_bool }
\cs_new:cpn { __bool_)_1: } { \c_true_bool }
\cs_new:cpn { __bool_)_2: } { \c_true_bool }
\cs_new:cpn { __bool_&_0: } & { \__bool_get_next:NN \use_iv:nnnn }
\cs_new:cpn { __bool_&_1: } & { \__bool_get_next:NN \use_i:nnnn }
\cs_new:cpn { __bool_&_2: } & { \__bool_get_next:NN \use_iii:nnnn }
\cs_new:cpn { __bool_|_0: } | { \__bool_get_next:NN \use_i:nnnn }
\cs_new:cpn { __bool_|_1: } | { \__bool_get_next:NN \use_iii:nnnn }
\cs_new:cpn { __bool_|_2: } | { \__bool_get_next:NN \use_iii:nnnn }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__bool_choose:NNN and others.)

\begin{verbatim}
\bool_lazy_all_p:n
\bool_lazy_all:nTF
\__bool_lazy_all:n
\cs_new:Npn \bool_lazy_all_p:n #1
 { \__bool_lazy_all:n #1 \q__bool_recursion_tail \q__bool_recursion_stop }
\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \bool_lazy_all:n #1 { T , F , TF }
 { \if_predicate:w \bool_lazy_all_p:n {#1}
 \prg_return_true:
 \else:
 \prg_return_false:
 \fi:
 \end{vbrc}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \bool_lazy_all_p:n and \bool_lazy_all:n.)

Go through the list of expressions, stopping whenever an expression is false. If the end is reached without finding any false expression, then the result is true.
Only evaluate the second expression if the first is true. Note that \#2 must be removed as an argument, not just by skipping to the `else:` branch of the conditional since \#2 may contain unbalanced \TeX conditionals.

```
\cs_new:Npn \bool_lazy_and_p:n #1 \{ \__bool_lazy_any:n \}
\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \bool_lazy_and:n \{ \#1, \#2 \} \{ p, T, F, TF \}
{ \if_predicate:w \bool_if:nTF {\#1} { \bool_if_p:n {\#2} } { \c_false_bool } \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi: }
```

(End definition for \bool_lazy_and:nnTF and \__bool_lazy_all:n. This function is documented on page 68.)

Go through the list of expressions, stopping whenever an expression is true. If the end is reached without finding any true expression, then the result is false.

```
\cs_new:Npn \bool_lazy_any_p:n \{ \__bool_lazy_any:n \}
\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \bool_lazy_any:n \{ T, F, TF \}
{ \if_predicate:w \bool_lazy_any_p:n \{\#1\} \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi: }
```

(End definition for \bool_lazy_and:nnTF. This function is documented on page 68.)

Only evaluate the second expression if the first is false.

```
\cs_new:Npn \bool_lazy_or_p:n \{ \__bool_lazy_or:n \}
\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \bool_lazy_or:n \{ \#1, \#2 \} \{ p, T, F, TF \}
{ \if_predicate:w \bool_if:nTF {\#1} { \c_true_bool } { \bool_if_p:n {\#2} } \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi: }
```

(End definition for \bool_lazy_or:nnTF. This function is documented on page 68.)
\bool_not_p:n \bool_xor_p:nn
\bool_xor:nnTF

The Not variant just reverses the outcome of \bool_if_p:n. Can be optimized but this is nice and simple and according to the implementation plan. Not even particularly useful to have it when the infix notation is easier to use.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \bool_not_p:n #1 { \bool_if_p:n { ! ( #1 ) } }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \bool_not_p:n. This function is documented on page 68.)

\bool_xor_p:nn
\bool_xor:nnTF

Exclusive or. If the boolean expressions have same truth value, return false, otherwise return true.

\begin{verbatim}
\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \bool_xor:nn #1#2 { p , T , F , TF }
\prg_return_true:
\else:
\prg_return_false:
\fi:
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \bool_xor:nnTF. This function is documented on page 68.)

46.6 Logical loops

\bool_while_do:Nn \bool_while_do:cn
\bool_until_do:Nn \bool_until_do:cn
\bool_do_while:Nn \bool_do_while:cn
\bool_do_until:Nn \bool_do_until:cn
\bool_do_until:cn

A while loop where the boolean is tested before executing the statement. The “while” version executes the code as long as the boolean is true; the “until” version executes the code as long as the boolean is false.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \bool_while_do:Nn #1#2
{ \bool_if:NT #1 { #2 \bool_while_do:Nn #1 {#2} } }
\cs_new:Npn \bool_until_do:Nn #1#2
{ \bool_if:NF #1 { #2 \bool_until_do:Nn #1 {#2} } }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \bool_while_do:Nn { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \bool_until_do:Nn { c }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \bool_while_do:Nn and \bool_until_do:Nn. These functions are documented on page 69.)

\bool_do_while:Nn \bool_do_while:cn
\bool_do_until:Nn \bool_do_until:cn
\bool_do_until:cn

A do-while loop where the body is performed at least once and the boolean is tested after executing the body. Otherwise identical to the above functions.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \bool_do_while:Nn #1#2
{ #2 \bool_if:NT #1 { \bool_do_while:Nn #1 {#2} } }
\cs_new:Npn \bool_do_until:Nn #1#2
{ #2 \bool_if:TF #1 { \bool_do_until:Nn #1 {#2} } }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \bool_do_while:Nn { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \bool_do_until:Nn { c }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \bool_do_while:Nn and \bool_do_until:Nn. These functions are documented on page 69.)

\bool_do:nn \bool_do:nn
\bool_do_until:nn \bool_do_until:nn
\bool_do_until:nn

Loop functions with the test either before or after the first body expansion.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \bool_do:nn #1#2
{ \bool_if:nT {#1} { \bool_do:nn #1 {#2} } }
\end{verbatim}

569
\prg_replicate:nn
\prg_replicate:N
\prg_replicate_first:N
\prg_replicate_0:n
\prg_replicate_1:n
\prg_replicate_2:n
\prg_replicate_3:n
\prg_replicate_4:n
\prg_replicate_5:n
\prg_replicate_6:n
\prg_replicate_7:n
\prg_replicate_8:n
\prg_replicate_9:n
\prg_replicate_first_0:n
\prg_replicate_first_1:n
\prg_replicate_first_2:n
\prg_replicate_first_3:n
\prg_replicate_first_4:n
\prg_replicate_first_5:n
\prg_replicate_first_6:n
\prg_replicate_first_7:n
\prg_replicate_first_8:n
\prg_replicate_first_9:n

This function uses a cascading csname technique by David Kastrup (who else :-)

The idea is to make the input \texttt{25} result in first adding five, and then \texttt{20} copies of the code to be replicated. The technique uses cascading csnames which means that we start building several csnames so we end up with a list of functions to be called in reverse order. This is important here (and other places) because it means that we can for instance make the function that inserts five copies of something also hand down ten to the next function in line. This is exactly what happens here: in the example with \texttt{25} then the next function is the one that inserts two copies but it sees the ten copies handed down by the previous function. In order to avoid the last function to insert say, \texttt{100} copies of the original argument just to gobble them again we define separate functions to be inserted first. These functions also close the expansion of \texttt{\exp:w}, which ensures that \prg_replicate:nn only requires two steps of expansion.

This function has one flaw though: Since it constantly passes down ten copies of its previous argument it severely affects the main memory once you start demanding hundreds of thousands of copies. Now I don’t think this is a real limitation for any ordinary use, and if necessary, it is possible to write \texttt{\prg_replicate:nn \{1000\} \{\prg_-_replicate:nn \{1000\} \{\langle code\rangle\} \}}. An alternative approach is to create a string of \texttt{\textbackslash m}s with \texttt{\exp:w} which can be done with just four macros but that method has its own problems since it can exhaust the string pool. Also, it is considerably slower than what we use here so the few extra csnames are well spent I would say.
Then comes all the functions that do the hard work of inserting all the copies. The first function takes \texttt{:n} as a parameter.

Users shouldn't ask for something to be replicated once or even not at all but...

(End definition for \texttt{\textbackslash prg\_replicate:nn} and others. This function is documented on page 69.)
46.8 Detecting \TeX’s mode

\mode_if_vertical_p: \mode_if_vertical:TF

For testing vertical mode. Strikes me here on the bus with David, that as long as we are just talking about returning true and false states, we can just use the primitive conditionals for this and gobbling the \exp_end: in the input stream. However this requires knowledge of the implementation so we keep things nice and clean and use the return statements.

\mode_if_horizontal_p: \mode_if_horizontal:TF

For testing horizontal mode.

\mode_if_inner_p: \mode_if_inner:TF

For testing inner mode.

\mode_if_math_p: \mode_if_math:TF

For testing math mode. At the beginning of an alignment cell, this should be used only inside a non-expandable function.

46.9 Internal programming functions

\group_align_safe_begin: \group_align_safe_end: \TeX’s alignment structures present many problems. As Knuth says himself in \TeX: The Program: “It’s sort of a miracle whenever \halign or \valign work, […]” One problem relates to commands that internally issue a \cr but also peek ahead for the next character for use in, say, an optional argument. If the next token happens to be a & with category code 4 we get some sort of weird error message because the underlying \futurelet stores the token at the end of the alignment template. This could be a & giving a message like ! Misplaced \cr. or even worse: it could be the \endtemplate token causing even more trouble! To solve this we have to open a special group so that \TeX still thinks it’s on safe ground but at the same time we don’t want to introduce any brace group that may find its way to the output. The following functions help with this by using behaviour documented only in Appendix D of \TeXbook…In short evaluating ‘{ and ‘} as numbers will not change the counter \TeX uses to keep track of its state in an alignment, whereas gobbling a brace using \if_false: will affect \TeX’s state without producing any real group. We place the \if_false: { \fi: part at that place so that the successive expansions of \group_align_safe_begin/end: are always brace balanced.
\group_end:
\cs_new:Npn \group_align_safe_end:
\{ \if_int_compare:w '{ = \c_zero_int } \fi: \}

(End definition for \group_align_safe_begin: and \group_align_safe_end:. These functions are documented on page 71.)
\g__kernel_prg_map_int
\int_new:N \g__kernel_prg_map_int

(End definition for \g__kernel_prg_map_int.)
\prg_break_point:Nn \prg_map_break:Nn
These are defined in l3basics, as they are needed “early”. This is just a reminder that is the case!

(End definition for \prg_break_point:Nn and \prg_map_break:Nn. These functions are documented on page 70.)
\prg_break_point: \prg_break: \prg_break:n
Also done in l3basics.

(End definition for \prg_break_point:, \prg_break:, and \prg_break:n. These functions are documented on page 71.)
{/package}
Chapter 47

l3sys implementation

47.1 Kernel code

47.1.1 Detecting the engine

\_sys\_const:nn

Set the T, F, TF, p forms of \#1 to be constants equal to the result of evaluating the boolean expression \#2.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \_sys\_const:nn #1#2
{
\bool_if:nTF {#2}
{
\cs_new_eq:cN { #1 :T } \use:n
\cs_new_eq:cN { #1 :F } \use_none:n
\cs_new_eq:cN { #1 :TF } \use_i:nn
\cs_new_eq:cN { #1 _p: } \c\_true\_bool
}
{\cs_new_eq:cN { #1 :T } \use_none:n
\cs_new_eq:cN { #1 :F } \use:n
\cs_new_eq:cN { #1 :TF } \use_ii:nn
\cs_new_eq:cN { #1 _p: } \c_false\_bool
}
}

(End definition for \_sys\_const:nn.)

\sys\_if\_engine\_luatex_p:  Set up the engine tests on the basis exactly one test should be true. Mainly a case of looking for the appropriate marker primitive.
\sys\_if\_engine\_luatex:TF
\sys\_if\_engine\_pdftex_p:TF
\sys\_if\_engine\_ptex_p:TF
\sys\_if\_engine\_uptex_p:TF
\sys\_if\_engine\_uptex:TF
\sys\_if\_engine\_xetex_p:TF
\sys\_if\_engine\_xetex:TF
\str\_const:Nx \c\_sys\_engine\_str
{\cs\_if\_exist:NT \tex\_luatexversion:D \{ \luatex \}
\cs\_if\_exist:NT \tex\_pdftexversion:D \{ \pdftex \}
\cs\_if\_exist:NT \tex\_kanjiskip:D
{\c\_sys\_engine\_str
574
(End definition for \sys_if_engine_luatex:TF and others. These functions are documented on page 73.)

\c_sys_engine_exec_str
\c_sys_engine_format_str

Take the functions defined above, and set up the engine and format names. \c_sys_engine_exec_str differs from \c_sys_engine_str as it is the actual engine name, not a “filtered” version. It differs for \texttt{ptex} and \texttt{uptex}, which have a leading e, and for \texttt{luatex}, because \LaTeX uses the LuaHBTeX engine.

\c_sys_engine_format_str is quite similar to \c_sys_engine_str, except that it differentiates \texttt{pdflatex} from \texttt{latex} (which is pdf\TeX in DVI mode). This differentiation, however, is reliable only if the user doesn’t change \tex_pdfoutput:D before loading this code.

\group_begin:
\cs_set_eq:NN \lua_now:e \tex_directlua:D
\str_const:Nx \c_sys_engine_exec_str
{
  \sys_if_engine_pdftex:T { pdf }
  \sys_if_engine_xetex:T { xe }
  \sys_if_engine_ptex:T { ep }
  \sys_if_engine_uptex:T { eup }
  \sys_if_engine_luatex:T
    { lua \lua_now:e
      { if (pcall(require, ’luaharfbuzz’)) then ~
        tex.print(’hb”) ~
        end
    }
  tex
}
\group_end:
\str_const:Nx \c_sys_engine_format_str
{
  \cs_if_exist:NT \fmtname
    { bool_lazy_or:nTF
      { \str_if_eq_p:Vn \fmtname { plain } } 
      { \str_if_eq_p:Vn \fmtname { LaTeX2e } } 
    }
  \sys_if_engine_pdftex:T
    { \int_compare:nNnT { \tex_pdfoutput:D } = { 1 } { pdf } }
  \sys_if_engine_xetex:T { xe }
}
\sys_if_engine_ptex:T \{ p \}
\sys_if_engine_uptex:T \{ up \}
\sys_if_engine_luatex:T
{ \int_compare:nNnT { \tex_pdfoutput:D } = { 0 } \{ dvi \}
lua
}
\str_if_eq:VnTF \fmtname \{ LaTeX2e \}
{ latex }
{ \bool_lazy_and:nnT \{ \sys_if_engine_pdftex_p: \}
{ \int_compare_p:nNn \{ \tex_pdfoutput:D \} = \{ 0 \} }
tex
}
\bool_lazy_and:nnT \{ \sys_if_rand_exist \}
{ \cs_if_exist_p:N \tex_uniformdeviate:D }
(End definition for \c_sys_engine_exec_str and \c_sys_engine_format_str. These variables are documented on page 73.)

47.1.2 Randomness
This candidate function is placed there because \sys_if_rand_exist:TF is used in l3fp-rand.
\sys_if_rand_exist_p: \sys_if_rand_exist:TF
Currently, randomness exists under pdf\TeX, Lua\TeX, \p\TeX and up\TeX.
\sys_if_rand_exist_p:
\sys_if_rand_exist:
TF
\__sys_const:nn \{ \sys_if_rand_exist \}
\{ \cs_if_exist_p:N \tex_uniformdeviate:D \}
(End definition for \sys_if_rand_exist:TF. This function is documented on page 306.)

47.1.3 Platform
Setting these up requires the file module (file lookup), so is actually implemented there.
(End definition for \sys_if_platform_unix:TF, \sys_if_platform_windows:TF, and \c_sys_platform_str. These functions are documented on page 74.)

47.1.4 Configurations
Loading the backend code is pretty simply: check that the backend is valid, then load it up.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \sys_load_backend:n \sys_load_backend_check:N
\c_sys_backend_str
\__sys_load_backend_check:N
\c_sys_backend_str
{ \sys_finalise: \sys_load_backend:n \sys_load_backend_check: \c_sys_backend_str
{ \str_if_eq:VoF \c_sys_backend_str \#1
{ \msg_error:nn \{ sys \} \{ backend-set \} }
576
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__sys_load_backend_check:N \#1
\{
  \sys_if_engine_xetex:TF
  \{
    \str_case:VnF \#1
    \{
      \dvipsym \{} \}
      \xdvipdfmx \{ \tl_gset:Nn \#1 \{ xetex \} \}
      \xetex                       \{ \}
    \}
    \msg_error:nxnx \{ sys \} \{ wrong-backend \}
    \#1 \{ xetex \}
    \tl_gset:Nn \#1 \{ xetex \}
  \}
  \{
    \sys_if_output_pdf:TF
    \{
      \str_if_eq:VnF \#1 \{ pdfmode \}
      \{
        \sys_if_engine_luatex:TF
        \{ \tl_gset:Nn \#1 \{ lualatex \} \}
        \{ \tl_gset:Nn \#1 \{ pdftex \} \}
      \}
      \bool_lazy_or:nnF
      \{ \str_if_eq_p:Vn \#1 \{ lualatex \} \}
      \{ \str_if_eq_p:Vn \#1 \{ pdftex \} \}
      \{
        \msg_error:nxxx \{ sys \} \{ wrong-backend \}
        \#1 \{ \sys_if_engine_luatex:TF \{ lualatex \} \{ pdftex \} \}
        \sys_if_engine_luatex:TF
        \{ \tl_gset:Nn \#1 \{ lualatex \} \}
        \{ \tl_gset:Nn \#1 \{ pdftex \} \}
      \}
    \}
    \{
      \str_case:VnF \#1
      \{
        \dvipdfmx \{ \}
        \dvips \{ \}
        \dvissym \{ \}
      \}
  \}
\}
\sys_load_backend:n, \__sys_load_backend_check:N, and \c_sys_backend_str. These functions are documented on page 75.)

\__sys_load_backend_check:N
\tl_gset:Nn #1 { dvips }

(End definition for \sys_load_backend:n, \__sys_load_backend_check:N, and \c_sys_backend_str. These functions are documented on page 75.)

\g__sys_debug_bool
\bool_new:N \g__sys_debug_bool

(End definition for \g__sys_debug_bool.)

\sys_load_debug:
\cs_new_protected:Npn \sys_load_debug:
\bool_if:NF \g__sys_debug_bool
{ \__kernel_sys_configuration_load:n { l3debug } }
\bool_gset_true:N \g__sys_debug_bool

(End definition for \sys_load_debug:. This function is documented on page 76.)

47.1.5 Access to the shell
\l__sys_internal_tl
\tl_new:N \l__sys_internal_tl

(End definition for \l__sys_internal_tl.)
\c__sys_marker_tl
The same idea as the marker for rescanning token lists.
\tl_const:Nx \c__sys_marker_tl { : \token_to_str:N : }

(End definition for \c__sys_marker_tl.)
\sys_get_shell:nnN
\cs_new_protected:Npn \sys_get_shell:nnN \__sys_get:nnN \__sys_get_do:Nw
\sys_get_shell:nnNF \sys_get_shell:nnN

Setting using a shell is at this level just a slightly specialised file operation, with an additional check for quotes, as these are not supported.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \sys_get_shell:nnN \__sys_get:nnN \__sys_get_do:Nw
\sys_get_shell:nnNF \#1 \#2 \#3
\tl_set:Nn \#3 \q_no_value

\prg_new_protected_conditional:Npn \sys_get_shell:nnN \#1\#2\#3 { T , F , TF }
\sys_if_shell:TF
\exp_args:N \__sys_get:nnN \tl_to_str:n \#1 \#2 \#3
\prg_return_false:
\cs_new_protected:Npn \sys_get_shell:nnN \#1\#2\#3
End definition for \sys_get_shell:nnNTF and others. These functions are documented on page 74.

\c__sys_shell_stream_int

This is not needed for Lua\TeX{}: shell escape there isn’t done using a \TeX{} interface.

\sys_shell_now:n

\_sys_shell_now:e

Execute commands through shell escape immediately.

For Lua\TeX{}, we use a pseudo-primitive to do the actual work.

\{'tex\}
\{'lua\}
\{do\}
\{local os_exec = os.execute\}
\{local function shellescape(cmd)\}
\{local status, msg = os_exec(cmd)\}
\{if status == nil then\}
\{write_nl("log", "runsystem(" .. cmd .. ")..(" .. msg .. ")\n")\}
\{elseif status == 0 then\}
\{write_nl("log", "runsystem(" .. cmd .. ")...executed\n")\}
\{else\}
\{write_nl("log", "runsystem(" .. cmd .. ")...failed " .. (msg or ") .. "\n")\}
\{end\}
\{end\}
\{luacmd("_sys_shell_now:e", function()\}

579
\sys_shell_shipout:n\_sys_shell_shipout:e

Execute commands through shell escape at shipout.

For Lua\TeX, we use the same helper as above but delayed using a late\_lua whatsit.

Creating a late\_lua whatsit works a bit different if we are running under Con\TeXt.
47.2 Dynamic (every job) code

\sys_everyjob:
\__sys_everyjob:n
\g__sys_everyjob_tl

\cs_new_protected:Npn \sys_everyjob:
\tl_use:N \g__sys_everyjob_tl
\tl_gclear:N \g__sys_everyjob_tl
\}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__sys_everyjob:n #1
\{ \tl_gput_right:Nn \g__sys_everyjob_tl {#1} \}
\tl_new:N \g__sys_everyjob_tl

(End definition for \sys_everyjob:, \__sys_everyjob:n, and \g__sys_everyjob_tl. This function is documented on page ??.)

47.2.1 The name of the job

\c_sys_jobname_str

Inherited from the \LaTeX3 name for the primitive. This has to be the primitive as it’s set in \everyjob. If the user does

\pdflatex \input some-file-name

then \everyjob is inserted before \jobname is changed form \texput, and thus we would have the wrong result.
\__sys_everyjob:n
\{ \cs_new_eq:NN \c_sys_jobname_str \tex_jobname:D \}

(End definition for \c_sys_jobname_str. This variable is documented on page ??.)

47.2.2 Time and date

\c_sys_minute_int \c_sys_hour_int \c_sys_day_int \c_sys_month_int \c_sys_year_int

Copies of the information provided by \TeX. There is a lot of defensive code in package mode: someone may have moved the primitives, and they can only be recovered if we have \primitive and it is working correctly. For \init\TeX of course that is all redundant but does no harm.
\__sys_everyjob:n
\{ \group_begin:
\cs_set:Npn \__sys_tmp:w #1
\str_if_eq:eeTF { \cs_meaning:N #1 } { \token_to_str:N #1 } { #1 } { \cs_if_exist:NTF \tex_primitive:D \bool_lazy_and:nnTF
\int_compare_p:nNn \exp_after:wN \use_none:n \tex_XeTeXrevision:D }
47.2.3 Random numbers

\sys_rand_seed: Unpack the primitive. When random numbers are not available, we return zero after an error (and incidentally make sure the number of expansions needed is the same as with random numbers available).

\sys_gset_rand_seed:n The primitive always assigns the seed globally.
\sys_timer:  
\_sys_elapsedtime:   \sys_if_timer_exist_p:  \sys_if_timer_exist:TF

In LuaTeX, create a pseudo-primitive, otherwise try to locate the real primitive. The elapsed time will be available if this succeeds.

\c_sys_shell_escape_int

Expose the engine’s shell escape status to the user.

47.2.4 Access to the shell

(End definition for \sys_gset_rand_seed:n. This function is documented on page 74.)
\sys_if_shell_p:  Performs a check for whether shell escape is enabled. The first set of functions returns true if either of restricted or unrestricted shell escape is enabled, while the other two sets of functions return true in only one of these two cases.

\sys_if_shell:TF \sys_if_shell_unrestricted:TF \sys_if_shell_restricted:TF

\g_file_curr_name_str

See comments about \c_sys_jobname_str: here, as soon as there is file input/output, things get “tided up”.

\g_file_curr_name_str

47.2.5 Held over from l3file

\_sys_everyjob:n

A simple hook to finalise the system-dependent layer. This is forced by the backend loader, which is forced by the main loader, so we do not need to include that here.

\_sys_finalise: \_sys_finalise:n \g__sys_finalise_tl

584
47.3.1 Detecting the output

This is a simple enough concept: the two views here are complementary.

\sys_if_output_dvi_p: \sys_if_output_dvi:TF \sys_if_output_pdf_p: \sys_if_output_pdf:TF \c_sys_output_str

This is a simple enough concept: the two views here are complementary.

\sys_if_output_dvi_p: \sys_if_output_dvi:TF \sys_if_output_pdf_p: \sys_if_output_pdf:TF \c_sys_output_str

47.3.2 Configurations

\g__sys_backend_tl

As the backend has to be checked and possibly adjusted, the approach here is to create

\tl_new:N \g__sys_backend_tl \__sys_finalise:n

a variable and use that in a one-shot to set a constant.

\tl_new:N \g__sys_backend_tl \__sys_finalise:n

\__kernel_tl_gset:Nx \g__sys_backend_tl

\sys_if_engine_xetex:TF

\\sys_if_output_pdf:TF

\{ \sys_if_engine_pdfTeX:TF

\{ \luatex

\}

\cnt_compare:nNnTF

\{ \cs_if_exist_use:NF \text_pdfoutput:D \{ 0 \} \} \{ 0 \}

\{ \pdf \}

\{ \dvi \}

\__sys_const:nn \{ sys_if_output_dvi \}

\{ \str_if_eq_p:Vn \c_sys_output_str \{ dvi \} \}

\__sys_const:nn \{ sys_if_output_pdf \}

\{ \str_if_eq_p:Vn \c_sys_output_str \{ pdf \} \}

(End definition for \sys_if_output_dvi:TF, \sys_if_output_pdf:TF, and \c_sys_output_str. These

functions are documented on page 73.)

47.3.2 Configurations

\g__sys_backend_tl

As the backend has to be checked and possibly adjusted, the approach here is to create

a variable and use that in a one-shot to set a constant.

\tl_new:N \g__sys_backend_tl \__sys_finalise:n

\__kernel_tl_gset:Nx \g__sys_backend_tl

\{ \sys_if_engine_xetex:TF

\{ \pdfTeX \}

\{ \luatex

\}

\{ \dvips \}

\}

\__sys_finalise:n

{ \cs_if_exist:NT \@classoptionslist

{ \cs_if_eq:NNF \@classoptionslist \scan_stop:

{ \clist_map_inline:Nn \@classoptionslist

{ }
\str_case:nnT {#1}
{
{ dvipdfmx }
{ \tl_gset:Nn \g__sys_backend_tl { dvipdfmx } }
{ dvips }
{ \tl_gset:Nn \g__sys_backend_tl { dvips } }
{ dvisvgm }
{ \tl_gset:Nn \g__sys_backend_tl { dvisvgm } }
{ pdftex }
{ \tl_gset:Nn \g__sys_backend_tl { pdftex } }
{ xetex }
{ \tl_gset:Nn \g__sys_backend_tl { xetex } }
{ \clist_remove_all:Nn \@unusedoptionlist {#1} }
}

(End definition for \g__sys_backend_tl.)

(/tex)

(/package)
Chapter 48

\texttt{l3msg} implementation

\l__msg_internal_tl A general scratch for the module.
\tl_new:N \l__msg_internal_tl
(End definition for \l__msg_internal_tl.)

\l__msg_name_str \l__msg_text_str
\str_new:N \l__msg_name_str
\str_new:N \l__msg_text_str
(End definition for \l__msg_name_str and \l__msg_text_str.)

48.1 Internal auxiliaries

\s__msg_mark \s__msg_stop
\scan_new:N \s__msg_mark
\scan_new:N \s__msg_stop
(End definition for \s__msg_mark and \s__msg_stop.)

\msg_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w
\cs_new:Npn \msg_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w #1 \s__msg_stop { }
(End definition for \msg_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w.)

48.2 Creating messages

Messages are created and used separately, so there are two parts to the code here. First, a mechanism for creating message text. This is pretty simple, as there is not actually a lot to do.

\c__msg_text_prefix_tl \c__msg_more_text_prefix_tl
\tl_const:Nn \c__msg_text_prefix_tl { msg~text~>~ }
\tl_const:Nn \c__msg_more_text_prefix_tl { msg~extra~text~>~ }

587
\msg_if_exist_p:nn
Test whether the control sequence containing the message text exists or not.
\msg_if_exist:nnTF
\prg_new conditional:Npnn \msg_if_exist:nn #1#2 { p , T , F , TF }
{ \cs_if_exist:cTF { \c__msg_text_prefix_tl #1 / #2 } 
{ \prg_return_true: } { \prg_return_false: } }
\msg_if_exist:nnTF
This function is documented on page 78.
\__msg_chk_if_free:nn
This auxiliary is similar to \_kernel_chk_if_free_cs:N, and is used when defining
messages with \msg_new:nnnn.
\msg_new:nnnn
\msg_new:nnn
\msg_gset:nnnn
\msg_gset:nnn
\msg_set:nnnn
\msg_set:nnn
Setting a message simply means saving the appropriate text into two functions. A sanity
check first.
\msg_new:nnnn
\msg_gset:nnnn
\msg_set:nnnn
48.3 Messages: support functions and text

Simple pieces of text for messages.

\c__msg_coding_error_text_tl
\c__msg_continue_text_tl
\c__msg_critical_text_tl
\c__msg_fatal_text_tl
\c__msg_help_text_tl
\c__msg_no_info_text_tl
\c__msg_on_line_text_tl
\c__msg_return_text_tl
\c__msg_trouble_text_tl

\tl_const:Nn \c__msg_coding_error_text_tl
{ This is a coding error.
 \ \ }
\tl_const:Nn \c__msg_continue_text_tl
{ Type <return> to continue }
\tl_const:Nn \c__msg_critical_text_tl
{ Reading the current file ‘\g_file_curr_name_str’ will stop. }
\tl_const:Nn \c__msg_fatal_text_tl
{ This is a fatal error: \LaTeX{} will abort. }
\tl_const:Nn \c__msg_help_text_tl
{ For immediate help type H <return> }
\tl_const:Nn \c__msg_no_info_text_tl
{ \LaTeX{} does not know anything more about this error, sorry. }
\tl_const:Nn \c__msg_return_text_tl
{ on line }
\tl_const:Nn \c__msg_return_text_tl
{ Try typing <return> to proceed.
 \ \ If that doesn’t work, type X <return> to quit. }
\tl_const:Nn \c__msg_trouble_text_tl
{ More errors will almost certainly follow: \ \ the \LaTeX{} run should be aborted.
 }

(End definition for \c__msg_coding_error_text_tl and others.)

\msg_line_number:
\msg_line_context:
For writing the line number nicely. \msg_line_context: was set up earlier, so this is not new.

\cs_new:Npn \msg_line_number: { \int_use:N \tex_inputlineno:D }
\cs_gset:Npn \msg_line_context: {
\c__msg_on_line_text_tl \c_space_tl \msg_line_number: }

(End definition for \msg_line_number: and \msg_line_context: These functions are documented on page 79.)
48.4 Showing messages: low level mechanism

The low-level interruption macro is rather opaque, unfortunately. Depending on the availability of more information there is a choice of how to set up the further help. We feed the extra help text and the message itself to a wrapping auxiliary, in this order because we must first set up \TeX's `\errhelp` register before issuing an `\errmessage`. To deal with the various cases of critical or fatal errors with and without help text, there is a bit of argument-passing to do.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__msg_interrupt:Nnnn \#1\#2\#3\#4\#5
  {\
    \str_set:Nx \l__msg_text_str { \#1 {\#2} }
    \str_set:Nx \l__msg_name_str { \msg_module_name:n {\#2} }
    \cs_if_eq:cNTF
      { \c__msg_more_text_prefix_tl \#2 / \#3 }
      \__msg_no_more_text:nnnn
    {\
      \__msg_interrupt_wrap:nnn
        { \use:c { \c__msg_text_prefix_tl \#2 / \#3 } \#4 }
      { \c__msg_continue_text_tl }
    }
    {\
      \__msg_interrupt_wrap:nnn
        { \use:c { \c__msg_text_prefix_tl \#2 / \#3 } \#4 }
      { \c__msg_help_text_tl }
    }
  }
\cs_new:Npn \__msg_no_more_text:nnnn \#1\#2\#3\#4 { }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for `\__msg_interrupt:Nnnn` and `\__msg_no_more_text:nnnn`.)

First setup \TeX's `\errhelp` register with the extra help #1, then build a nice-looking error message with #2. Everything is done using x-type expansion as the new line markers are different for the two type of text and need to be correctly set up. The auxiliary `\__msg_interrupt_wrap:n` receives its argument as a line-wrapped string, which is thus unaffected by expansion. We ave to split the main text into two parts as only the “message” itself is wrapped with a leader: the generic help is wrapped at full width. We also have to allow for the two characters used by `\errmessage` itself.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__msg_interrupt_wrap:n \#1\#2\#3
  {\
    \iow_wrap:nnnn { \#3 } { } { } \__msg_interrupt_more_text:n
    \group_begin:
      \int_sub:Nn \l_iow_line_count_int { 2 }
    \iow_wrap:nxmN { \l__msg_text_str : - \#1 }
\end{verbatim}

590
\__msginterrupt:n

The business end of the process starts by producing some visual separation of the message from the main part of the log. The error message needs to be printed with everything made “invisible”: \TeX’s own information involves the macro in which \errmessage is called, and the end of the argument of the \errmessage, including the closing brace. We use an active ! to call the \errmessage primitive, and end its argument with \use_\none:n { ⟨spaces⟩} which fills the output with spaces. Two trailing closing braces are turned into spaces to hide them as well. The group in which we alter the definition of the active ! is closed before producing the message: this ensures that tokens inserted by typing I in the command-line are inserted after the message is entirely cleaned up.

The \__kernel_iow_with:Nnn auxiliary, defined in l3file, expects an ⟨integer variable⟩, an integer ⟨value⟩, and some ⟨code⟩. It runs the ⟨code⟩ after ensuring that the ⟨integer variable⟩ takes the given ⟨value⟩, then restores the former value of the ⟨integer variable⟩ if needed. We use it to ensure that the \newlinechar is 10, as needed for \iow_newline: to work, and that \errorcontextlines is −1, to avoid showing irrelevant context. Note that restoring the former value of these integers requires inserting inerting tokens after the \errmessage, which go in the way of tokens which could be inserted by the user. This is unavoidable.
48.5 Displaying messages

\begin{quote}
\textbf{\LaTeX} is handling error messages and so the \TeX\ ones are disabled.
\end{quote}

A function for issuing messages: both the text and order could in principle vary. The module name may be empty for kernel messages, hence the slightly contorted code path for a space.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \msg_fatal_text:n #1 { Fatal \msg_error_text:n {#1} }
\cs_new:Npn \msg_critical_text:n #1 { Critical \msg_error_text:n {#1} }
\cs_new:Npn \msg_error_text:n #1 { \__msg_text:nn {#1} { Error } }
\cs_new:Npn \msg_warning_text:n #1 { \__msg_text:nn {#1} { Warning } }
\cs_new:Npn \msg_info_text:n #1 { \__msg_text:nn {#1} { Info } }
\cs_new:Npn \__msg_text:nn #1#2 { \exp_args:Nf \msg_fatal_text:n { \msg_module_type:n {#1} } \exp_args:Nf \msg_critical_text:n { \msg_module_name:n {#1} } \__msg_text:n { \msg_module_type:n {#1} } \msg_module_name:n {#1} \#1
\exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \group_end: }
\end{verbatim}
\__msg_class_new:nn
\group_begin:
\cs_set_protected:Npn \_\msg_new_text:n #1
{\tl_if_blank:nF {#1}
 { #1 - }
 }

(End definition for \msg_fatal_text:n and others. These functions are documented on page 79.)

\g_msg_module_name_prop
\g_msg_module_type_prop
For storing public module information: the kernel data is set up in advance.
\prop_new:N \g_msg_module_name_prop
\prop_gput:Nnn \g_msg_module_name_prop { LaTeX } { LaTeX3 }
\prop_new:N \g_msg_module_type_prop
\prop_gput:Nnn \g_msg_module_type_prop { LaTeX } { }

(End definition for \g_msg_module_name_prop and \g_msg_module_type_prop. These variables are documented on page 78.)

\msg_module_type:n
Contextual footer information, with the potential to give modules an alternative name.
\cs_new:Npn \msg_module_type:n #1
{\prop_if_in:NnTF \g_msg_module_type_prop {#1}
 { \prop_item:Nn \g_msg_module_type_prop {#1} }
 { Package }
 }

(End definition for \msg_module_type:n. This function is documented on page 78.)

\msg_module_name:n
\msg_see_documentation_text:n
Contextual footer information, with the potential to give modules an alternative name.
\cs_new:Npn \msg_module_name:n #1
{\prop_if_in:NnTF \g_msg_module_name_prop {#1}
 { \prop_item:Nn \g_msg_module_name_prop {#1} }
 {#1}
 }
\cs_new:Npn \msg_see_documentation_text:n #1
{See the \msg_module_name:n {#1} documentation for further information.}

(End definition for \msg_module_name:n and \msg_see_documentation_text:n. These functions are documented on page 78.)
For fatal errors, after the error message \TeX{} bails out. We force a bail out rather than using `\end` as this means it does not matter if we are in a context where normally the run cannot end.

Not quite so bad: just end the current file.

(End definition for `\__msg_class_new:nn`.)

(End definition for `\msg_fatal:nnnnnn` and others. These functions are documented on page 80.)
For an error, the interrupt routine is called. We check if there is a “more text” by comparing that control sequence with a permanently empty text. We have to undefine the bootstrap versions here.

\cs_undefine:N \msg_error:nnxx
\cs_undefine:N \msg_error:nx
\cs_undefine:N \msg_error:n

\__msg_class_new:nn { error }
{
  \__msg_interrupt:NnnnN
  \msg_error_text:n {#1} {#2}
  { {#3} {#4} {#5} {#6} }
  \c_empty_tl
}

(End definition for \msg_critical:nnnnnn and others. These functions are documented on page 81.)

Warnings and information messages have no decoration. Warnings are printed to the terminal while information can either go to the log or both log and terminal.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__msg_info_aux:NNnnnnnn #1#2#3#4#5#6#7#8
{
  \str_set:Nx \l__msg_text_str { #2 {#3} }
  \str_set:Nx \l__msg_name_str { \msg_module_name:n {#3} }
  #1 { }
  \iow_wrap:nxnN
  {
    \l__msg_text_str : ~
    \use:c { \c__msg_text_prefix_tl #3 / #4 } {#5} {#6} {#7} {#8}
  }
  { ( \l__msg_name_str )
    \prg_replicate:nn
    { \str_count:N \l__msg_text_str
      \str_count:N \l__msg_name_str
      { - } } }
  { } #1
  #1 { }
  \__msg_class_new:nn { warning }
  { }
  \__msg_info_aux:NNnnnnnn \iow_term:n \msg_warning_text:n
  {#1} {#2} {#3} {#4} {#5} {#6}
}

(End definition for \msg_error:nnnnnn and others. These functions are documented on page 81.)
\msg_log:nnnnn
"Log" data is very similar to information, but with no extras added. "Term" is used for communicating with the user through the terminal, like diagnostic messages, and debugging. This is similar to "log" messages, but uses the terminal output.

\msg_term:nnxxx

The none message type is needed so that input can be gobbled.

\msg_show:nnnnn
The show message type is used for \seq_show:N and similar complicated data structures. Wrap the given text with a trailing dot (important later) then pass it to \__msg_show:n. If there is \ exceeding (or if the whole thing starts with \ exceeding) we split there, print the first part and show the second part using \showtokens (the \exp_after:wN ensure a nice display).

Note that this primitive adds a leading \ exceeding and trailing dot. That is why we included a trailing dot before wrapping and removed it afterwards. If there is no \ exceeding do the same but with an empty second part which adds a spurious but inevitable exceeding.
\l__msg_class_tl Support variables needed for the redirection system.
\l__msg_current_class_tl
\l__msg_redirect_prop For redirection of individually-named messages
\l__msg_hierarchy_seq During redirection, split the message name into a sequence: \{/module/submodule\}, \{/module\}, and \{\}.
Classes encountered when following redirections to check for loops.

Actually using a message is a multi-step process. First, some safety checks on the message and class requested. The code and arguments are then stored to avoid passing them around. The assignment to \_msg\_use\_code: is similar to \tl_set:Nn. The message is eventually produced with whatever \_msg\_class_tl is when \_msg\_use\_code: is called. Here is also a good place to suppress tracing output if the trace package is loaded since all (non-expandable) messages go through this auxiliary.

The first check is for a individual message redirection. If this applies then no further redirection is attempted. Otherwise, split the message name into ⟨module⟩, ⟨submodule⟩ and ⟨message⟩ (with an arbitrary number of slashes), and store {/module/submodule}, {/module} and {} into \_msg\_hierarchy_seq. We then map through this sequence, applying the most specific redirection.
At this point, the items of \_\_msg\_hierarchy\_seq are the various levels at which we should look for a redirection. Redirections which are less specific than the argument of \_\_msg\_use\_redirect\_module:n are not attempted. This argument is empty for a class redirection, /module for a module redirection, etc. Loop through the sequence to find the most specific redirection, with module ##1. The loop is interrupted after testing for a redirection for ##1 equal to the argument #1 (least specific redirection allowed). When a redirection is found, break the mapping, then if the redirection targets the same class, output the code with that class, and otherwise set the target as the new current class, and search for further redirections. Those redirections should be at least as specific as ##1.

\msg\_redirect\_name:\_nnn

Named message always use the given class even if that class is redirected further. An empty target class cancels any existing redirection for that message.
If the target class is empty, eliminate the corresponding redirection. Otherwise, add the redirection. We must then check for a loop: as an initialization, we start by storing the initial class in \l__msg_current_class_tl.

Since multiple redirections can only happen with increasing specificity, a loop requires that all steps are of the same specificity. The new redirection can thus only create a loop with other redirections for the exact same module, \#1, and not submodules. After some initialization above, follow redirections with \l__msg_class_tl, and keep track in \l__msg_class_loop_seq of the various classes encountered. A redirection from a class to itself, or the absence of redirection both mean that there is no loop. A redirection to the initial class marks a loop. To break it, we must decide which redirection to cancel. The user most likely wants the newly added redirection to hold with no further redirection. We thus remove the redirection starting from \#2, target of the new redirection. Note that no message is emitted by any of the underlying functions: otherwise we may get an infinite loop because of a message from the message system itself.
48.6 Kernel-specific functions

These are all retained purely for older \texttt{xparse} support.

\begin{verbatim}
\__kernel_msg_new:nnnn
\__kernel_msg_new:nnn
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__kernel_msg_new:nnnn #1
{ \msg_new:nnnn { LaTeX / #1 } }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__kernel_msg_new:nnn #1
{ \msg_new:nnn { LaTeX / #1 } }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \__kernel_msg_new:nnn { o }
\cs_new:Npn \__kernel_msg_info:nnxx #1
{ \msg_info:nnxx { LaTeX / #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__kernel_msg_warning:nnx #1
{ \msg_warning:nnx { LaTeX / #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__kernel_msg_warning:nnxx #1
{ \msg_warning:nnxx { LaTeX / #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__kernel_msg_error:nnx #1
{ \msg_error:nnx { LaTeX / #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__kernel_msg_error:nnxx #1
{ \msg_error:nnxx { LaTeX / #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__kernel_msg_error:nnxxx #1
{ \msg_error:nnxxx { LaTeX / #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__kernel_msg_expandable_error:nnn #1
{ \msg_expandable_error:nnn { LaTeX / #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__kernel_msg_expandable_error:nnf #1
{ \msg_expandable_error:nnf { LaTeX / #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__kernel_msg_expandable_error:nnff #1
{ \msg_expandable_error:nnff { LaTeX / #1 } }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\_msg_redirect_class:nn} and \texttt{\_msg_redirect_class:nnn} and others. These functions are documented on page 84.)
48.7 Internal messages

Error messages needed to actually implement the message system itself.

\msg_new:nnnn { msg } { already-defined }
\{ Message-’#2’-for-module-’#1’-already-defined. }\c__msg_coding_error_text_tl
LaTeX-was-asked-to-define-a-new-message-called-’#2’\\
by-the-module-’#1’:-this-message-already-exists.
\c__msg_return_text_tl
\}
\msg_new:nnnn { msg } { unknown }
\{ Unknown-message-’#2’-for-module-’#1’. }\c__msg_coding_error_text_tl
LaTeX-was-asked-to-display-a-message-called-’#2’\\
by-the-module-’#1’:-this-message-does-not-exist.
\c__msg_return_text_tl
\}
\msg_new:nnnn { msg } { class-unknown }
\{ Unknown-message-class-’#1’. }\c__msg_coding_error_text_tl
LaTeX-has-been-asked-to-redirect-messages-to-a-class-’#1’:\\this-was-never-defined.
\c__msg_return_text_tl
\}
\msg_new:nnnn { msg } { redirect-loop }
\{ Message-redirection-loop-caused-by- {#1} -&gt;- {#2}\\\tl_if_empty:nF {#3} { -for-module- \use_none:n #3 } .
\}
\{ Adding-the-message-redirection- {#1} -&gt;- {#2}\\\tl_if_empty:nF {#3} { -for-the-module- \use_none:n #3 } -
created-an-infinite-loop\\\\\iow_indent:n { #4 \\\\\}
\}

Messages for earlier kernel modules plus a few for l3keys which cover coding errors.
\msg_new:nnnn { kernel } { bad-number-of-arguments }
\{ Function-’#1’-cannot-be-defined-with-#2-arguments. }\c__msg_coding_error_text_tl
LaTeX-has-been-asked-to-define-a-function-’#1’-with-\#2-arguments.\TeX-allows-between-0-and-9-arguments-for-a-single-function.
\}
\msg_new:nnnn { kernel } { command-already-defined }
\{ Control-sequence-’#1’-already-defined. }\c__msg_coding_error_text_tl
LaTeX-has-been-asked-to-create-a-new-control-sequence-’#1’-but-this-name-has-already-been-used-elsewhere. \\\
The-current-meaning-is: \\
\msg_new:nnnn { kernel } { command-not-defined }
{"Control-sequence`#1`-undefined. }\c__msg_coding_error_text_tl
LaTeX-has-been-asked-to-use-a-control-sequence`-`#1`:\ this-has-not-been-defined-yet.
\msg_new:nnnn { kernel } { empty-search-pattern }
{"Empty-search-pattern. }\c__msg_coding_error_text_tl
LaTeX-has-been-asked-to-replace-an-empty-pattern-by`-`#1`:~that-
would-lead-to-an-infinite-loop!
\msg_new:nnnn { kernel } { non-base-function }
{"Function`-`#1`-is-not-a-base-function }\c__msg_coding_error_text_tl
Functions-defined-through`-\iow_char:N\cs_new:Nn-must-have-a-signature-consisting-of-only-normal-arguments`-`N`-and`-`n`.~
The-signature`-`#2`-of`-`#1`-contains-other-arguments`-`#3`.~
To define variants use`-\iow_char:N\cs_generate_variant:Nn~and-to-define-other-functions-use`-\iow_char:N\cs_new:Npn.
\msg_new:nnnn { kernel } { missing-colon }
{"Function`-`#1`-contains-no`-`:`. }\c__msg_coding_error_text_tl
Code-level-functions-must-contain`-`:`-to-separate-the-
argument-specification-from-the-function-name.~This-is-
needed-when-defining-conditionals-or-variants,~or-when-building-a-
parameter-text-from-the-number-of-arguments-of-the-function.
\msg_new:nnnn { kernel } { overflow }
{"Integers-larger-than-2`-`^{30}-1-cannot-be-stored-in-arrays. }\c__msg_coding_error_text_tl
An-attempt-was-made-to-store`-`#3-
\tl_if_empty:nF {#2} { at-position`-`#2- in-the-array`-`#1`.~
The-largest-allowed-value`-`#4-will-be-used-instead.
\msg_new:nnnn { kernel } { out-of-bounds }
{"Access-to-an-entry-beyond-an-array`s-bounds. }\c__msg_coding_error_text_tl
An-attempt-was-made-to-access-or-store-data-at-position`-`#2- of-the-
array`-`#1`,~but-this-array-has-entries-at-positions-from-1-to-#3.
\msg_new:nnnn { kernel } { protected-predicate }
{"Predicate`-`#1`-must-be-expandable. }\c__msg_coding_error_text_tl
LaTeX-has-been-asked-to-define`-`#1-as-a-protected-predicate.~
Only-expandable-tests-can-have-a-predicate-version.
\msg_new:nnn { kernel } { randint-backward-range }
{ Wrong-order-of-bounds-in-\low_char:N\int_rand:nn{#1}{#2}. }
\msg_new:nnn { kernel } { conditional-form-unknown }
{ Conditional-form-’#1’-for-function-’#2’-unknown. }
\c__msg_coding_error_text_tl
LaTeX\-has\-been\-asked\-to\-define\-the\-conditional\-form-’#1’\-of-
the\-function-’#2’,\-but\-only-’TF’,-’T’,-’F’,-’P’-forms\-exist.
\msg_new:nnn { kernel } { variant-too-long }
{ Variant-form-’#1’\-longer\-than\-base\-signature\-of-’#2’. }
\c__msg_coding_error_text_tl
LaTeX\-has\-been\-asked\-to\-create\-a\-variant\-of\-the\-function-’#2’-
with\-a\-signature\-starting\-with-’#1’,\-but\-that\-is\-longer\-than-
the\-signature\-(part\-after\-the\-colon)\-of-’#2’.
\msg_new:nnn { kernel } { invalid-variant }
{ Variant-form-’#1’-invalid\-for\-base\-form-’#2’. }
\c__msg_coding_error_text_tl
LaTeX\-has\-been\-asked\-to\-create\-a\-variant\-of\-the\-function-’#2’-
with\-a\-signature\-starting\-with-’#1’,\-but\-cannot\-change\-an\-argument-
from\-type-’#3’\-to\-type-’#4’.
\msg_new:nnn { kernel } { invalid-exp-args }
{ Invalid-variant\-specifier-’#1’-in-’#2’. }
\c__msg_coding_error_text_tl
LaTeX\-has\-been\-asked\-to\-create\-an-\low_char:N\exp_args:N\ldots-
function\-with\-signature-’N#2’\-but\-’#1’\-is\-not\-a\-valid\-argument-
specifier.
\msg_new:nnn { kernel } { deprecated-variant }
{ Variant-form-’#1’\-deprecated\-for\-base\-form-’#2’.-
One\-should\-not\-change\-an\-argument\-from\-type-’#3’\-to\-type-’#4’
\str_case:nnF {#3}
{ n } { :-use-a-’\token_if_eq_charcode:NNTF #4 c v V’-variant? }{ N } { :-base-form-only-accepts-a-single-token-argument. }{ #4 } { :-base-form-is-already-a-variant. }
} { . }
\msg_new:nnn { char } { active }
{ Cannot\-generate\-active\-chars. }
\msg_new:nnn { char } { invalid-catcode }
{ Invalid-catcode\-for\-char\-generation. }
\msg_new:nnn { char } { null-space }
{ Cannot\-generate\-null\-char\-as-a\-space. }
\msg_new:nnn { char } { out-of-range }
{ Charcode\-requested\-out\-of\-engine\-range. }
\msg_new:nnn { char } { space }
{ Cannot-generate-space-chars. }
\msg_new:nnnn { ior } { quote-in-shell }
{ Quotes-in-shell-command-"#1". }
\msg_new:nnnn { keys } { no-property }
{ No-property-given-in-definition-of-key-"#1". }
{
\c__msg_coding_error_text_tl
Inside-\keys_define:nn each-key-name-
needs-a-property: \ \ \ \\ioindent:n { #1 .<property> } \ \ \LaTeX-did-not-find-a-'.'-to-indicate-the-start-of-a-property.
}
\msg_new:nnnn { keys } { property-boolean-values-only }
{ The-property-"#1"-accepts-boolean-values-only. }
{
\c__msg_coding_error_text_tl
The-property-"#1"-only-accepts-the-values-"true"-and-"false".
}
\msg_new:nnnn { keys } { property-requires-value }
{ The-property-"#1"-requires-a-value. }
{
\c__msg_coding_error_text_tl
LaTeX-was-asked-to-set-property-"#1"-for-key-"#2".\LaTeX-was-asked-to-set-property-"#1"-for-key-"#2":
No-value-was-given-for-the-property,-and-one-is-required.
}
\msg_new:nnnn { keys } { property-unknown }
{ The-key-property-"#1"-is-unknown. }
{
\c__msg_coding_error_text_tl
LaTeX-has-been-asked-to-set-the-property-"#1"-for-key-"#2":-
this-property-is-not-defined.
}
\msg_new:nnnn { quark } { invalid-function }
{ Quark-test-function-"#1"-is-invalid. }
{
\c__msg_coding_error_text_tl
LaTeX-has-been-asked-to-create-quark-test-function-"#1"-
\tl_if_empty:nTF {#2}
{ but-that-name- }
{ with-signature-"#2",-but-that-signature- }
is-not-valid.
}
__kernel_msg_new:nnn { quark } { invalid }
{ Invalid-quark-variable-`#1'. }
\msg_new:nnnn { scanmark } { already-defined }
{ Scan-mark-`#1'-already-defined. }
{
\c__msg_coding_error_text_tl
LaTeX-has-been-asked-to-create-a-new-scan-mark-`#1'-
but-this-name-has-already-been-used-for-a-scan-mark.
}
\msg_new:nnnn { seq } { shuffle-too-large }
{ The-sequence-`#1'-is-too-long-to-be-shuffled-by-TeX. }
Some errors are only needed in package mode if debugging is enabled by one of the options \texttt{enable-debug}, \texttt{check-declarations}, \texttt{log-functions}, or on the contrary if debugging is turned off. In format mode the error is somewhat different.

Some errors only appear in expandable settings, hence don’t need a “more-text” argument.
{ Misused\exp_end_continue_f:w or\exp_end_continue_f:w }
\msg_new:nnn { kernel } { bad-variable }
{ Erroneous-variable-#1 used! }
\msg_new:nnn { seq } { misused }
{ A-sequence-was-misused. }
\msg_new:nnn { prop } { misused }
{ A-property-list-was-misused. }
\msg_new:nnn { prg } { negative-replication }
{ Negative-argument-for\iow_char:N\prg_replicate:nn. }
\msg_new:nnn { prop } { prop-keyval }
{ Missing-‘=‘-in-‘#1‘-(in-‘..._keyval:Nn’) }
\msg_new:nnn { kernel } { unknown-comparison }
{ Relation-‘#1‘-not-among=,<,>,==,!=,<,>,>=. }
\msg_new:nnn { kernel } { zero-step }
{ Zero-step-size-for-function-#1. }
\cs_if_exist:NF \tex_expanded:D

\msg_new:nnn { clist } { show }
\tl_if_empty:nF {#1} { #1 ~ }
\tl_if_empty:nTF {#2}
{ is-empty \> . }
{ contains-the-items-(without-outer-braces): #2 . }
\msg_new:nnn { intarray } { show }
{ The-integer-array-#1-contains=#2-items: \ #3 . }
\msg_new:nnn { prop } { show }
{ The-property-list-#1-
\tl_if_empty:nTF {#2}
{ is-empty \> . }
{ contains-the-pairs-(without-outer-braces): #2 . }
\msg_new:nnn { seq } { show }
{ The-sequence-#1-
\tl_if_empty:nTF {#2}
{ is-empty \> . }
{ contains-the-items-(without-outer-braces): #2 . }
\msg_new:nnn { kernel } { show-streams }
{ \tl_if_empty:nTF {#2} { No- } { The-following- }
\str_case:nn {#1}
{ ior } { input - }
{ iow } { output - }
}
\msg_new:nnn { prg } { open } { in-use: #2 . }

607
48.8 Expandable errors

In expansion only context, we cannot use the normal means of reporting errors. Instead, we rely on a low-level \TeX error caused by expanding a macro \texttt{???} with parameter text “?” (this could be any token) which we used followed by something else (here, a space). This shows the context, which thanks to the odd-looking \texttt{use:n} is

\begin{verbatim}
<argument> \???
  ! mypkg Error: The error message.
\end{verbatim}

In other words, \TeX is processing the argument of \texttt{use:n}, which is \texttt{??? (space) ! (error type) : (error message)}.}

The command built from the csname \texttt{\_msg\_expandable\_error:nn} takes four arguments and builds the error text, which is fed to \texttt{\_msg\_expandable\_error:nn} with appropriate expansion: just as for usual messages the arguments are first turned to strings, then the message is fully expanded. The module name also has to be determined.
48.9 Message formatting

(End definition for \texttt{msg\_expandable\_error:nnnnnnn} and others. These functions are documented on page 83.)
Chapter 49

l3file implementation

The following test files are used for this code: m3file001.

49.1 Input operations

49.1.1 Variables and constants

\l_{\text{iior}} \text{internal_tl} \quad \text{Used as a short-term scratch variable.}
\tl_new:N \l_{\text{iior}} \text{internal_tl}

(End definition for \l_{\text{iior}} \text{internal_tl})

\c_{\text{iior}} \text{term_ior} \quad \text{Reading from the terminal (with a prompt) is done using a positive but non-existent stream number. Unlike writing, there is no concept of reading from the log.}
\int_{\text{const:Nn}} \c_{\text{iior}} \text{term_ior} \{ 16 \}

(End definition for \c_{\text{iior}} \text{term_ior})

\g_{\text{iior}} \text{streams_seq} \quad \text{A list of the currently-available input streams to be used as a stack.}
\seq_new:N \g_{\text{iior}} \text{streams_seq}

(End definition for \g_{\text{iior}} \text{streams_seq})

\l_{\text{iior}} \text{stream_tl} \quad \text{Used to recover the raw stream number from the stack.}
\tl_new:N \l_{\text{iior}} \text{stream_tl}

(End definition for \l_{\text{iior}} \text{stream_tl})

\g_{\text{iior}} \text{streams_prop} \quad \text{The name of the file attached to each stream is tracked in a property list. To get the correct number of reserved streams in package mode the underlying mechanism needs to be queried. For \LaTeX{} 2\varepsilon{} and plain \TeX{} this data is stored in \count{16}; with the etex package loaded we need to subtract 1 as the register holds the number of the next stream to use. In Con\TeX{}, we need to look at \count{38} but there is no subtraction: like the original plain \TeX/\LaTeX{} 2\varepsilon{} mechanism it holds the value of the last stream allocated.}
\prop_new:N \g_{\text{iior}} \text{streams_prop}
49.1.2 Stream management

Reserving a new stream is done by defining the name as equal to using the terminal.
\ior_new:N
\ior_new:c

The usual scratch space.
\g_tmsa_ior
\g_tmsb_ior

Use the conditional version, with an error if the file is not found.
\ior_open:Nn
\ior_open:cn

Data storage.
\l_iors_file_name_tl

An auxiliary searches for the file in the \TeX{}, \LaTeX{} 2ε and \LaTeX{} 3 paths. Then pass the
file found to the lower-level function which deals with streams. The full_name is empty
when the file is not found.
\ior_open:NnTF
\ior_open:cnTF

(End definition for \ior_open:N. This function is documented on page 86.)

(End definition for \g_tmsa_ior and \g_tmsb_ior. These variables are documented on page 93.)

(End definition for \l_iors_file_name_tl.)
Streams are reserved using `\newread` before they can be managed by `ior`. To prevent `ior` from being affected by redefinitions of `\newread` (such as done by the third-party package `morewrites`), this macro is saved here under a private name. The complicated code ensures that `\__ior_new:N` is not `\outer` despite plain TeX’s `\newread` being `\outer`. For ConTeXt, we have to deal with the fact that `\newread` works like our own: it actually checks before altering definition.

The stream allocation itself uses the fact that there is a list of all of those available. Life gets more complex as it’s important to keep things in sync. That is done using a two-part approach: any streams that have already been taken up by `ior` but are now free are tracked, so we first try those. If that fails, ask plain TeX or LaTeX2ε for a new stream and use that number (after a bit of conversion).

Here, we act defensively in case LuaTeX is in use with an extensionless file name.
Closing a stream means getting rid of it at the \TeX{} level and removing from the various data structures. Unless the name passed is an invalid stream number (outside the range \[0, 15] \), it can be closed. On the other hand, it only gets added to the stack if it was not already there, to avoid duplicates building up.

\begin{verbatim}
10136 \cs_new_protected:Npn \ior_close:N #1
10137 { \int_compare:nT { -1 < #1 < \c__ior_term_ior } 
10138 \tex_closein:D #1 
10139 \prop_gremove:NV \g__ior_streams_prop #1 
10140 \seq_if_in:NVF \g__ior_streams_seq #1 
10141 \{ \seq_gpush:NV \g__ior_streams_seq #1 \} 
10142 \cs_gset_eq:NN #1 \c__ior_term_ior
10143 }
10144 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \ior_close:N { c }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \ior_close:N. This function is documented on page 86.)

Seek the stream in the \g__ior_streams_prop list, then show the stream as open or closed accordingly.

\begin{verbatim}
10147 \cs_new_protected:Npn \ior_show:N { \__ior_show:NN \tl_show:n }
10148 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \ior_show:N { c }
10149 \cs_new_protected:Npn \ior_log:N { \__ior_show:NN \tl_log:n }
10150 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \ior_log:N { c }
10151 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__ior_show:NN #1#2
10152 { \__kernel_chk_defined:NT #2
10153 \prop_get:NVNTF \g__ior_streams_prop #2 \l__ior_internal_tl
10154 \{ \exp_args:Nx \l__ior_internal_tl
10155 \token_to_str:N #2 - open \}
10156 \exp_args:Nx \l__ior_internal_tl
10157 \token_to_str:N #2 - closed }
10158 
10159 }
10160 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \ior_show:N { c }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \ior_show:N, \ior_log:N, and \__ior_show:NN. These functions are documented on page 86.)

Show the property lists, but with some “pretty printing”. See the \l3msg{} module. The first argument of the message is ior (as opposed to iow) and the second is empty if no read stream is open and non-empty (the list of streams formatted using \msg_show_item_unbraced:nn) otherwise. The code of the message show-streams takes care of translating ior/iow to English.

\begin{verbatim}
10161 \cs_new_protected:Npn \ior_show_list: { \__ior_list:N \msg_show:nnxxxx \}
10162 \cs_new_protected:Npn \ior_log_list: { \__ior_list:N \msg_log:nnxxxx \}
10163 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__ior_list:N #1
10164 \{ \#1 \{ kernel \} \{ show-streams \}
10165 \{ ior \}
10166 \{ \prop_map_function:NN \g__ior_streams_prop
\end{verbatim}

613
49.1.3 Reading input

\texttt{\if_eof:w}

The primitive conditional

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_eq:NN \if_eof:w \tex_ifeof:D
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\if_eof:w}. This function is documented on page 93.)

\texttt{\ior_if_eof_p:N, \ior_if_eof:NTF}

To test if some particular input stream is exhausted the following conditional is provided. The primitive test can only deal with numbers in the range [0, 15] so we catch outliers (they are exhausted).

\begin{verbatim}
\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \ior_if_eof:N #1 { p , T , F , TF } \{ \if_int_compare:w -1 < #1 \else:\prg_return_true: \else:\prg_return_false: \fi: \else:\prg_return_true: \fi: \else:\prg_return_true: \fi: \}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\ior_if_eof:NTF}. This function is documented on page 90.)

\texttt{\ior_get:NN, \_ior_get:NN, \ior_get:NTF}

And here we read from files.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \ior_get:NN #1#2 \{ \ior_get:NNF #1 #2 \{ \tl_set:Nn #2 { \q_no_value } \} \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_ior_get:NN \ior_get:NN \ior_get:NNTF \{ \ior_if_eof:NTF #1 \{ \prg_return_false: \} \_ior_get:NN #1 \_ior_get:NN #1 \ior_get:NTF \}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\ior_get:NN, \_ior_get:NN, and \ior_get:NTF}. These functions are documented on page 87.)
Reading as strings is a more complicated wrapper, as we wish to remove the endline character and restore it afterwards.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \ior_str_get:NN #1#2
{ \ior_str_get:NNF #1 #2 { \tl_set:Nn #2 { \q_no_value } } }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__ior_str_get:NN #1#2
{ \exp_args:Nno \use:n
{ \int_set:Nn \tex_endlinechar:D { -1 }
 \tex_readline:D #1 to #2
 \int_set:Nn \tex_endlinechar:D
 } { \int_use:N \tex_endlinechar:D }
}
\prg_new_protected_conditional:Npnn \ior_str_get:NN #1#2 { T , F , TF }
{ \ior_if_eof:NTF #1
{ \prg_return_false: }
{ \__ior_str_get:NN #1 #2
\prg_return_true:
}
}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \ior_str_get:NN, \__ior_str_get:NN, and \ior_str_get:NNTF. These functions are documented on page 88.)

\c__ior_term_noprompt_ior

For reading without a prompt.

\begin{verbatim}
\int_const:Nn \c__ior_term_noprompt_ior { -1 }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \c__ior_term_noprompt_ior.)

Getting from the terminal is better with pretty-printing.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \ior_get_term:nN #1#2
{ \__ior_get_term:NnN \__ior_get:NN {#1} #2 }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \ior_str_get_term:nN #1#2
{ \__ior_get_term:NnN \__ior_str_get:NN {#1} #2 }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__ior_get_term:NnN #1#2#3
{ \group_begin:
 \tex_escapechar:D = -1 \scan_stop:
 \tl_if_blank:nTF {#2}
{ \exp_args:Nnc #1 \c__ior_term_noprompt_ior }
{ \exp_args:Nnc #1 \c__ior_term_ior }
{#2}
 \exp_args:NNNv \group_end:
 \tl_set:Nn #3 {#2}
}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \ior_get_term:nN, \ior_str_get_term:nN, and \__ior_get_term:NnN. These functions are documented on page 592.)

\ior_map_break:

Usual map breaking functions.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \ior_map_break:
{ \prg_map_break:Nn \ior_map_break: { } }
\cs_new:Npn \ior_map_break:n
{ \prg_map_break:Nn \ior_map_break: }
\end{verbatim}

615
Mapping over an input stream can be done on either a token or a string basis, hence the set up. Within that, there is a check to avoid reading past the end of a file, hence the two applications of \ior_if_eof:N and its lower-level analogue \if_eof:w. This mapping cannot be nested with twice the same stream, as the stream has only one “current line”.

Since the \TeX{} primitive (\read{} or \readline{}) assigns the tokens read in the same way as a token list assignment, we simply call the appropriate primitive. The end-of-loop is checked using the primitive conditional for speed.
There is a lot of similarity here to the input operations, at least for many of the basics. Thus quite a bit is copied from the earlier material with minor alterations.

### Variables and constants

\l__iow_internal_tl

Used as a short-term scratch variable.

\tl_new:N \l__iow_internal_tl

(End definition for \l__iow_internal_tl.)

\c_log_iow \c_term_iow

Here we allocate two output streams for writing to the transcript file only (\c_log_iow) and to both the terminal and transcript file (\c_term_iow). Recent Lua\TeX\ provides 128 write streams; we also use \c_term_iow as the first non-allowed write stream so its value depends on the engine.

\int_const:Nn \c_log_iow { -1 }
\int_const:Nn \c_term_iow
\bool_lazy_and:nnTF
\sys_if_engine_luatex_p: 
\int_compare_p:nNn \tex_luatexversion:D > { 80 } 
{ 128 } 
{ 16 }

(End definition for \c_log_iow and \c_term_iow. These variables are documented on page 93.)

\g__iow_streams_seq

A list of the currently-available output streams to be used as a stack.

\seq_new:N \g__iow_streams_seq

(End definition for \g__iow_streams_seq.)

\l__iow_stream_tl

Used to recover the raw stream number from the stack.

\tl_new:N \l__iow_stream_tl

(End definition for \l__iow_stream_tl.)

\g__iow_streams_prop

As for reads with the appropriate adjustment of the register numbers to check on.

\prop_new:N \g__iow_streams_prop
\int_step_inline:nnn
{ 0 }
\cs_if_exist:NTF \normalend
\tex_count:D 39 ~
\tex_count:D 17 ~
617
\cs_if_exist:NT \loccount { - 1 }

\prop_gput:Nnn \g__iow_streams_prop {#1} { Reserved-by-format }

(End definition for \g__iow_streams_prop.)

49.2.2 Internal auxiliaries

\s__iow_mark \s__iow_stop

Internal scan marks.

\scan_new:N \s__iow_mark \scan_new:N \s__iow_stop

(End definition for \s__iow_mark and \s__iow_stop.)

\__iow_use_i_delimit_by_s_stop:nw

Functions to gobble up to a scan mark.

\cs_new:Npn \__iow_use_i_delimit_by_s_stop:nw #1 #2 \s__iow_stop {#1}

(End definition for \__iow_use_i_delimit_by_s_stop:nw.)

\q__iow_nil

Internal quarks.

\quark_new:N \q__iow_nil

(End definition for \q__iow_nil.)

49.3 Stream management

\iow_new:N \iow_new:c

Reserving a new stream is done by defining the name as equal to writing to the terminal:

odd but at least consistent.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \iow_new:N #1 { \cs_new_eq:NN #1 \c_term_iow }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \iow_new:N { c }

(End definition for \iow_new:N. This function is documented on page 86.)

\g_tmpa_iow \g_tmpb_iow

The usual scratch space.

\io_new:N \g_tmpa_iow \io_new:N \g_tmpb_iow

(End definition for \g_tmpa_iow and \g_tmpb_iow. These variables are documented on page 93.)

\__iow_new:N

As for read streams, copy \newwrite, making sure that it is not \outer.

\exp_args:NNf \cs_new_protected:Npn \__iow_new:N
{ \exp_args:NNc \exp_after:wN \exp_stop_f: \newwrite }

(End definition for \__iow_new:N.)

\l__iow_file_name_tl

Data storage.

\tl_new:N \l__iow_file_name_tl

(End definition for \l__iow_file_name_tl.)
The same idea as for reading, but without the path and without the need to allow for a conditional version.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \iow_open:Nn #1#2
\__iow_open_stream:Nn
\__iow_open_stream:NV
\iow_close:N
\iow_close:c
\iow_show:N
\iow_log:N
\__iow_show:NN
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \iow_open:Nn { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \iow_close:N { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \iow_show:N { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \iow_log:N { c }

Closing a stream is not quite the reverse of opening one. First, the close operation is easier than the open one, and second as the stream is actually a number we can use it directly to show that the slot has been freed up.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \iow_close:N #1
\__iow_close:NN
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \iow_close:N { c }

Seek the stream in the \g__iow Streams list, then show the stream as open or closed accordingly.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \iow_show:N \__iow_show:NN
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \iow_show:N { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \iow_log:N \__iow_show:NN
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \iow_log:N { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__iow_show:NN
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \__iow_show:NN { #1#2 }

(End definition for \iow_open:Nn and \__iow_open_stream:Nn. This function is documented on page 86.)
\__kernel_chk_defined:NT #2
{
  \prop_get:NVNTF \g__iow_streams_prop #2 \l__iow_internal_tl
  {
    \exp_args:Nx #1
    { \token_to_str:N #2 - open: - \l__iow_internal_tl }
  }
  { \exp_args:Nx #1 { \token_to_str:N #2 - closed } }
}

(End definition for \iow_show:N, \iow_log:N, and \__iow_show:NN. These functions are documented on page 86.)

\iow_list:N
Done as for input, but with a copy of the auxiliary so the name is correct.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \iow_show_list: { \__iow_list:N \msg_show:nnxxxx }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \iow_log_list: { \__iow_list:N \msg_log:nnxxxx }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__iow_list:N #1
{
  #1 { kernel } { show-streams }
  { iow }
  {
    \prop_map_function:NN \g__iow_streams_prop
    \msg_show_item_unbraced:nn
  }
  { } { }
}

(End definition for \iow_show_list:, \iow_log_list:, and \__iow_list:N. These functions are documented on page 87.)

49.3.1 Deferred writing
\iow_shipout_x:Nn
First the easy part, this is the primitive, which expects its argument to be braced.
\cs_new_protected:Npm \iow_shipout_x:Nn \#1\#2
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \iow_shipout_x:Nn { c, Nx, cx }

(End definition for \iow_shipout_x:Nn. This function is documented on page 90.)

\iow_shipout:Nn
With \texttt{t-\LaTeX} available deferred writing without expansion is easy.
\cs_new_protected:Npm \iow_shipout:Nn \#1\#2
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \iow_shipout:Nn { c, Nx, cx }

(End definition for \iow_shipout:Nn. This function is documented on page 90.)

49.3.2 Immediate writing
\__kernel_iow_with:Nnn
\__iow_with:nNnn
If the integer \#1 is equal to \#2, just leave \#3 in the input stream. Otherwise, pass the old value to an auxiliary, which sets the integer to the new value, runs the code, and restores the integer.
\cs_new_protected:Npm \__kernel_iow_with:Nnn \#1\#2

620
This routine writes the second argument onto the output stream without expansion. If this stream isn’t open, the output goes to the terminal instead. If the first argument is no output stream at all, we get an internal error. We don’t use the expansion done by \texttt{write} to get the \texttt{Nx} variant, because it differs in subtle ways from x-expansion, namely, macro parameter characters would not need to be doubled. We set the \texttt{newlinechar} to 10 using \_\_kernel_iow_with:Nnn to support formats such as plain \TeX: otherwise, \texttt{iow_newline}: would not work. We do not do this for \texttt{iow_shipout:Nn} or \texttt{iow_shipout_x:Nn}, as \TeX looks at the value of the \texttt{newlinechar} at shipout time in those cases.

\cs_set_protected:Npn \iow_log:x { \iow_now:Nx \c_log_iow }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \iow_log:n { \iow_now:Nn \c_log_iow }
\cs_set_protected:Npn \iow_term:x { \iow_now:Nx \c_term_iow }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \iow_term:n { \iow_now:Nn \c_term_iow }

(End definition for \_\_kernel_iow_with:Nnn and \_\_iow_with:nNnn.)

\texttt{\_\_kernel_iow_with:Nnn} Writing to the log and the terminal directly are relatively easy.

(End definition for \texttt{iow_log:n} and \texttt{iow_term:n}. These functions are documented on page 90.)

49.3.3 Special characters for writing

\texttt{\_\_kernel_iow_with:Nnn} Global variable holding the character that forces a new line when something is written to an output stream.

(End definition for \texttt{\_\_kernel_iow_with:Nnn}. This function is documented on page 91.)

\texttt{\_\_kernel_iow_with:Nnn} Function to write any escaped char to an output stream.

(End definition for \texttt{\_\_kernel_iow_with:Nnn}. This function is documented on page 91.)
49.3.4 Hard-wrapping lines to a character count

The code here implements a generic hard-wrapping function. This is used by the messaging system, but is designed such that it is available for other uses.

`\l_iow_line_count_int` This is the “raw” number of characters in a line which can be written to the terminal. The standard value is the line length typically used by TeX Live and MiKTeX.

\begin{verbatim}
\int_new:N \l_iow_line_count_int
\int_set:Nn \l_iow_line_count_int { 78 }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \l_iow_line_count_int. This variable is documented on page 92.)

`\l__iow_newline_tl` The token list inserted to produce a new line, with the (run-on text).

\begin{verbatim}
\tl_new:N \l__iow_newline_tl
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \l__iow_newline_tl.)

`\l__iow_line_target_int` This stores the target line count: the full number of characters in a line, minus any part for a leader at the start of each line.

\begin{verbatim}
\int_new:N \l__iow_line_target_int
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \l__iow_line_target_int.)

`\l__io_unindent:w` auxiliary removes one indentation. The function `\l__io_one_indent_tl` (that could possibly be public) sets the indentation in a consistent way. We set it to four spaces by default.

\begin{verbatim}
\tl_new:N \l__io_one_indent_tl
\int_new:N \l__io_one_indent_int
\cs_new:Npn \__io_unindent:w { }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__io_set_indent:n #1
\exp_last_unbraced:NNo
\cs_set:Npn \__io_unindent:w \l__io_one_indent_tl { }
\exp_args:Nx \__io_set_indent:n { \prg_replicate:nn { 4 } { ~ } }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \l__io_one_indent_int and others.)

`\l__io_line_tl` `\l__io_line_part_tl` These hold the current line of text and a partial line to be added to it, respectively.

\begin{verbatim}
\tl_new:N \l__io_line_tl
\tl_new:N \l__io_line_part_tl
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \l__io_line_tl and \l__io_line_part_tl.)
\l__iow_line_break_bool Indicates whether the line was broken precisely at a chunk boundary.

\bool_new:N \l__iow_line_break_bool

(End definition for \l__iow_line_break_bool.)

\l__iow_wrap_tl Used for the expansion step before detokenizing, and for the output from wrapping text: fully expanded and with lines which are not overly long.

\tl_new:N \l__iow_wrap_tl

(End definition for \l__iow_wrap_tl.)

\c__iow_wrap_marker_tl \c__iow_wrap_end_marker_tl \c__iow_wrap_newline_marker_tl \c__iow_wrap_allow_break_marker_tl \c__iow_wrap_indent_marker_tl \c__iow_wrap_unindent_marker_tl

Every special action of the wrapping code is starts with the same recognizable string, \c__iow_wrap_marker_tl. Upon seeing that “word”, the wrapping code reads one space-delimited argument to know what operation to perform. The setting of \escapechar here is not very important, but makes \c__iow_wrap_marker_tl look marginally nicer.

\group_begin:
\int_set:Nn \tex_escapechar:D { -1 }
\tl_const:Nx \c__iow_wrap_marker_tl { \tl_to_str:n { \^^I \^^O \^^W \^^_ \^^W \^^R \^^A \^^P } }
\group_end:
\tl_map_inline:nn { { end } { newline } { allow_break } { indent } { unindent } }
\tl_const:cx { \c__iow_wrap_ #1 _marker_tl }
\c__iow_wrap_marker_tl #1 \c_catcode_other_space_tl

(End definition for \c__iow_wrap_marker_tl and others.)

\iow_allow_break: \__iow_allow_break: \__iow_allow_break_error:

We set \iow_allow_break:n to produce an error when outside messages. Within wrapped message, it is set to \__iow_allow_break: when valid and otherwise to \__iow_allow_break_error:. The second produces an error expandably.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \iow_allow_break: { \msg_error:nnnn { kernel } { iow-indent } { \iow_wrap:nnnN } { \iow_allow_break: } }
\cs_new:Npx \__iow_allow_break: { \c__iow_wrap_allow_break_marker_tl \iow_allow_break_error: }
\cs_new:Npn \__iow_allow_break_error: { \msg_expandable_error:nnnn { kernel } { iow-indent } { \iow_wrap:nnnN } { \iow_allow_break: } }

(End definition for \iow_allow_break:, \__iow_allow_break:, and \__iow_allow_break_error:. This function is documented on page 302.)

623
We set \iow_indent:n to produce an error when outside messages. Within wrapped message, it is set to \_\_iow_indent:n when valid and otherwise to \_\_iow_indent_error:n. The first places the instruction for increasing the indentation before its argument, and the instruction for unindenting afterwards. The second produces an error expandably. Note that there are no forced line-break, so the indentation only changes when the next line is started.

\begin{Verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \iow_indent:n #1
\{
  \msg_error:nnnn { kernel } { iow-indent }
  \{ \iow_wrap:nnnN \} \{ \iow_indent:n \} \{#1\}
\}
\cs_new:Npx \_\_iow_indent:n #1
\{
  \c__iow_wrap_indent_marker_tl #1
  \c__iow_wrap_unindent_marker_tl
\}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_iow_indent_error:n #1
\{
  \msg_expandable_error:nnnn { kernel } { iow-indent }
  \{ \iow_wrap:nnnN \} \{ \iow_indent:n \} \{#1\}
\}
\end{Verbatim}

(End definition for \iow_indent:n, \_\_iow_indent:n, and \_\_iow_indent_error:n. This function is documented on page 92.)

The main wrapping function works as follows. First give \\, \_\_ and other formatting commands the correct definition for messages and perform the given setup \#3. The definition of \_\_ uses an “other” space rather than a normal space, because the latter might be absorbed by \TeX to end a number or other \_\_ expansion. Use \conditionally@traceoff if defined; it is introduced by the trace package and suppresses uninteresting tracing of the wrapping code.

\begin{Verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \iow_wrap:nnnN \iow_wrap:nxnN
\{
\group_begin:
  \cs_if_exist_use:N \conditionally@traceoff
  \int_set:Nn \tex_escapechar:D \{ -1 \}
  \cs_set:Npx \{ { \token_to_str:N \{ } \}
  \cs_set:Npx \# { \token_to_str:N \# } \}
  \cs_set:Npx \{ { \token_to_str:N \{ } \}
  \cs_set:Npx \% { \token_to_str:N \% } \}
  \cs_set:Npx \% { \token_to_str:N \% } \}
  \cs_set:Npx \- { \token_to_str:N \- } \}
  \int_set:Nn \tex_escapechar:D \{ 92 \}
  \cs_set_eq:NN \\ \iow_newline:
  \cs_set_eq:NN \\ \c_catcode_other_space_tl
  \cs_set_eq:NN \\ \iow_allow_break: \_\_iow_allow_break:
  \cs_set_eq:NN \\ \iow_indent:n \_\_iow_indent:n
  \#3
\group_end:
\}
\end{Verbatim}

Then fully-expand the input: in package mode, the expansion uses \LaTeX2e’s \protect mechanism in the same way as \typeout. In generic mode this setting is useless but
harmless. As soon as the expansion is done, reset \iow_indent:n to its error definition: it only works in the first argument of \iow_wrap:nnnN.

\cs_set_eq:NN \protect \token_to_str:N \__kernel_tl_set:Nx \l__iow_wrap_tl (#1)
\cs_set_eq:NN \iow_allow_break: \__iow_allow_break_error:
\cs_set_eq:NN \iow_indent:n \__iow_indent_error:n

Afterwards, set the newline marker (two assignments to fully expand, then convert to a string) and initialize the target count for lines (the first line has target count \l_iow_line_count_int instead).

\__kernel_tl_set:Nx \l__iow_newline_tl { \iow_newline: #2 }
\__kernel_tl_set:Nx \l__iow_newline_tl { \tl_to_str:N \l__iow_newline_tl }
\int_set:Nn \l__iow_line_target_int
\{ \l_iow_line_count_int - \str_count:N \l__iow_newline_tl + 1 \}

Sanity check.
\int_compare:nNnT { \l__iow_line_target_int } < 0
{ \tl_set:Nn \l__iow_newline_tl { \iow_newline: }
\int_set:Nn \l__iow_line_target_int
\{ \l_iow_line_count_int + 1 \}
}

There is then a loop over the input, which stores the wrapped result in \l__iow_wrap_tl. After the loop, the resulting text is passed on to the function which has been given as a post-processor. The \tl_to_str:N step converts the “other” spaces back to normal spaces. The f-expansion removes a leading space from \l__iow_wrap_tl.

\__iow_wrap_do:
\exp_args:NNf \group_end:
#4 { \tl_to_str:N \l__iow_wrap_tl }
\}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \iow_wrap:nnnN { nx }

(End definition for \iow_wrap:nnnN. This function is documented on page 92.)

\__iow_wrap_do:
\__iow_wrap_fix_newline:w
\__iow_wrap_start:w

Escape spaces and change newlines to \c__iow_wrap_newline_marker_tl. Set up a few variables, in particular the initial value of \l__iow_wrap_tl: the space stops the f-expansion of the main wrapping function and \use_none:n removes a newline marker inserted by later code. The main loop consists of repeatedly calling the chunk auxiliary to wrap chunks delimited by (newline or indentation) markers.

\cs_new_protected:Npm \__iow_wrap_do:
{ \__kernel_tl_set:Nx \l__iow_wrap_tl
{ \exp_args:No \__kernel_str_to_other_fast:n \l__iow_wrap_tl
\c__iow_wrap_end_marker_tl }
\__kernel_tl_set:Nx \l__iow_wrap_tl
{ \exp_after:wN \__iow_wrap_fix_newline:w \l__iow_wrap_tl
^^J \q__iow_nil ^^J \s__iow_stop }
\exp_after:wN \__iow_wrap_start:w \l__iow_wrap_tl
}
\cs_new:Npn \__iow_wrap_fix_newline:w #1 ^ ^J #2 ^ ^J }
\if_meaning:w \q__iow_nil #2 \__iow_use_i_delimit_by_s_stop:nw \fi:
\c__iow_wrap_newline_marker_tl
\__iow_wrap_fix_newline:w #2 ^ ^J
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__iow_wrap_start:w }
\bool_set_false:N \l__iow_line_break_bool
\tl_clear:N \l__iow_line_tl
\tl_clear:N \l__iow_line_part_tl
\tl_set:Nn \l__iow_wrap_tl { \use_none:n }
\int_zero:N \l__iow_indent_int
\tl_clear:N \l__iow_indent_tl
\__iow_wrap_chunk:nw { \l_iow_line_count_int }
\__iow_wrap_next:nw
\use:c { \__iow_wrap_do: , \__iow_wrap_fix_newline:w , and \__iow_wrap_start:w . }
\__iow_wrap_chunk:nw
\__iow_wrap_next:nw
The chunk and next auxiliaries are defined indirectly to obtain the expansions of \c_-
catcode_other_space_tl and \c__iow_wrap_marker_tl in their definition. The next auxiliaries calls a function corresponding to the type of marker (its ##2), which can be newline or indent or unindent or end. The first argument of the chunk auxiliary is a target number of characters and the second is some string to wrap. If the chunk is empty simply call next. Otherwise, set up a call to \__iow_wrap_line:nw, including the indentation if the current line is empty, and including a trailing space (#1) before the\__iow_wrap_end_chunk:w auxiliary.
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__iow_tmp:w #1#2
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__iow_wrap_chunk:nw ##1##2 #2
\tl_if_empty:nTF {##2}
\tl_set:Nn \l__iow_line_tl
\tl_clear:N \l__iow_line_t1
\__iow_wrap_next:nw {##1}
\tl_if_empty:NTF \l__iow_line_tl
\__iow_wrap_line:nw { \l__iow_indent_t1 }
\tl_set:Nn \l__iow_line_tl
\__iow_wrap_line:nw { } ##1 ;
\__iow_wrap_end_chunk:w 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0 \s__iow_stop
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__iow_wrap_next:nw ##1##2 #1
\use:c { \__iow_wrap_##2:n } {##1} }
626
This is followed by \{(\textit{string})\} \{(\textit{intexpr})\};. It stores the \{(\textit{string})\} and up to \{(\textit{intexpr})\} characters from the current chunk into \l__iow_line_part_tl. Characters are grabbed 8 at a time and left in \l__iow_line_part_tl by the \texttt{line_loop} auxiliary. When \(k < 8\) remain to be found, the \texttt{line_aux} auxiliary calls the \texttt{line_end} auxiliary followed by (the single digit) \(k\), then \(7 - k\) empty brace groups, then the chunk’s remaining characters. The \texttt{line_end} auxiliary leaves \(k\) characters from the chunk in the line part, then ends the assignment. Ignore the \texttt{\use_none:nnnn} line for now. If the next character is a space the line can be broken there: store what we found into the result and get the next line. Otherwise some work is needed to find a break-point. So far we have ignored what happens if the chunk is shorter than the requested number of characters: this is dealt with by the \texttt{end_chunk} auxiliary, which gets treated like a character by the rest of the code. It ends up being called either as one of the arguments \#2–\#9 of the \texttt{line_loop} auxiliary or as one of the arguments \#2–\#8 of the \texttt{line_end} auxiliary. In both cases stop the assignment and work out how many characters are still needed. Notice that when we have exactly seven arguments to clean up, a \texttt{\exp_stop_f} has to be inserted to stop the \texttt{\exp:w}. The weird \texttt{\use_none:nnnn} ensures that the required data is in the right place.
Functions here are defined indirectly: \_iow\_wrap\_break\_w is eventually called with an “other” space as its argument. The goal is to remove from \l__iow\_line\_part\_tl the part after the last space. In most cases this is done by repeatedly calling the break_loop auxiliary, which leaves “words” (delimited by spaces) until it hits the trailing space: then its argument \#3 is ? \_iow\_wrap\_break\_end\_w instead of a single token, and that break_end auxiliary leaves in the assignment the line until the last space, then calls \_iow\_wrap\_line\_end\_nw to finish up the line and move on to the next. If there is no space in \_iow\_line\_part\_tl then the break_first auxiliary calls the break_\_none auxiliary. In that case, if the current line is empty, the complete word (including \#4, characters beyond what we had grabbed) is added to the line, making it over-long. Otherwise, the word is used for the following line (and the last space of the line so far is removed because it was inserted due to the presence of a marker).
The special case where the end of a line coincides with the end of a chunk is detected here, to avoid a spurious empty line. Otherwise, call \texttt{\_\_iow\_wrap\_line:nw} to find characters for the next line (remembering to account for the indentation).

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_iow\_wrap\_next\_line:w #1 \s__iow_stop
  { \tl_clear:N \l__iow\_line\_tl
    \token_if_eq_meaning:NTF #1 \_\_iow\_wrap\_end\_chunk:w
      { \tl_clear:N \l__iow\_line\_part\_tl
        \bool_set_true:N \l__iow\_line\_break\_bool
        \_\_iow\_wrap\_next:nw { \l__iow\_line\_target\_int } }
    { \_\_iow\_wrap\_line:nw
      { \_\_iow\_indent\_tl
        \_\_iow\_line\_target\_int - \_\_iow\_indent\_int ;
        \_\_iow\_wrap\_allow\_break:n
        \_\_iow\_wrap\_break\_loop:w #1 \#1 #2 \s__iow\_mark #4 #1
      }
    }
  }
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_iow\_wrap\_allow\_break:n #1
  { \_kernel_tl_set:Nx \l__iow\_line\_tl
    { \_\_iow\_line\_tl \_\_iow\_wrap\_trim:N \l__iow\_line\_part\_tl }
    \bool_set_false:N \l__iow\_line\_break\_bool
    \tl_if_empty:NTF \_\_iow\_line\_part\_tl
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \_\_iow\_wrap\_break:w and others.)
These functions are called after a chunk has been wrapped, when encountering indent/unindent markers. Add the line part (last line part of the previous chunk) to the line so far and reset a boolean denoting the presence of a line-break. Most importantly, add or remove one indent from the current indent (both the integer and the token list). Finally, continue wrapping.

\__iow_wrap_newline:n
\__iow_wrap_end:n
These functions are called after a chunk has been line-wrapped, when encountering a newline/end marker. Unless we just took a line-break, store the line part and the line so far into the whole \l__iow_wrap_tl, trimming a trailing space. In the newline case look for a new line (of length \l__iow_line_target_int) in a new chunk.

\__iow_wrap_store_do:n
First add the last line part to the line, then append it to \l__iow_wrap_tl with the appropriate new line (with “run-on” text), possibly with its last space removed (#1 is empty or \__iow_wrap_trim:N).
10723 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__iow_wrap_store_do:n #1
10724 { \_kernel_tl_set:Nx \l__iow_line_tl
10725 \_l__iow_line_tl \_l__iow_line_part_tl }
10726 \_kernel_tl_set:Nx \l__iow_wrap_tl
10727 \_l__iow_wrap_tl \_l__iow_newline_tl
10728 \_l__iow_newline_tl \_l__iow_line_tl
10729 \tl_clear:N \l__iow_line_tl
10730 \}
10731 (End definition for \__iow_wrap_store_do:n.)
10732 \_l__iow_wrap_store_do:n
10733 \_l__iow_wrap_store_do:w
10734 \_l__iow_wrap_store_aux:w
10735 \cs_set_protected:Npn \__iow_tmp:w #1
10736 { \cs_new:Npn \__iow_wrap_trim:N ##1
10737 { \exp_after:wN \__iow_wrap_trim:w ##1 \s__iow_mark #1 \s__iow_mark \s__iow_stop }
10738 \cs_new:Npn \__iow_wrap_trim:w ##1 #1 \s__iow_mark
10739 { \__iow_wrap_trim_aux:w ##1 \s__iow_mark }
10740 \cs_new:Npn \__iow_wrap_trim_aux:w ##1 \s__iow_mark ##2 \s__iow_stop {##1}
10741 }
10742 \exp_args:NV \__iow_tmp:w \c_catcode_other_space_tl
10743 (End definition for \__iow_wrap_trim:N, \__iow_wrap_trim:w, and \__iow_wrap_trim_aux:w.)
10744 ⟨@=file⟩

49.4 File operations

\_l__file_internal_tl Used as a short-term scratch variable.
10746 \tl_new:N \l__file_internal_tl
10747 (End definition for \_l__file_internal_tl.)
\_g__file_stack_seq The input list of files is stored as a sequence stack. In package mode we can recover
10748 \seq_new:N \g__file_stack_seq
10749 (group_begin:
10750 \cs_set_protected:Npn \__file_tmp:w \_file_tmp:w #1\_2\_3
10751 (End definition for \_file_tmp:w, \_file_tmp:w, and \_file_tmp:w.)

\_g__file_stack_seq The input list of files is stored as a sequence stack. In package mode we can recover
10752 \seq_new:N \g__file_stack_seq
10753 (group_begin:
10754 \cs_set_protected:Npn \__file_tmp:w \_file_tmp:w #1\_2\_3
10755 (End definition for \_file_tmp:w, \_file_tmp:w, and \_file_tmp:w.)
\tl_if_blank:nTF {#1}
{
  \cs_set:Npn \__file_tmp:w ##1 " ##2 " ##3 \s__file_stop
  { { } {#2} { } }
  \seq_gput_right:Nx \g__file_stack_seq
  { \exp_after:wN \__file_tmp:w \tex_jobname:D
  " \tex_jobname:D " \s__file_stop
  }
}
\seq_gput_right:Nn \g__file_stack_seq { { } {#1} {#2} }
\__file_tmp:w
\cs_if_exist:NT \@currnamestack
{
  \tl_if_empty:NF \@currnamestack
  { \exp_after:wN \__file_tmp:w \@currnamestack }
}
\group_end:

(End definition for \g__file_stack_seq.)

\g__file_record_seq  The total list of files used is recorded separately from the current file stack, as nothing is ever popped from this list. The current file name should be included in the file list! We will eventually copy the contents of \@filelist.
\seq_new:N \g__file_record_seq

(End definition for \g__file_record_seq.)

\l__file_base_name_tl  For storing the basename and full path whilst passing data internally.
\l__file_full_name_tl
\tl_new:N \l__file_base_name_tl
\tl_new:N \l__file_full_name_tl

(End definition for \l__file_base_name_tl and \l__file_full_name_tl.)

\l__file_dir_str  Used in parsing a path into parts: in contrast to the above, these are never used outside of the current module.
\l__file_ext_str
\l__file_name_str
\str_new:N \l__file_dir_str
\str_new:N \l__file_ext_str
\str_new:N \l__file_name_str

(End definition for \l__file_dir_str, \l__file_ext_str, and \l__file_name_str.)

\l_file_search_path_seq  The current search path.
\seq_new:N \l_file_search_path_seq

(End definition for \l_file_search_path_seq. This variable is documented on page 94.)

\l__file_tmp_seq  Scratch space for comma list conversion.
\seq_new:N \l__file_tmp_seq

(End definition for \l__file_tmp_seq.)
49.4.1 Internal auxiliaries

\s_file_stop \Internal scan marks.

\__file_nil \Internal quarks.

\__file_if_nil_p:n Branching quark conditional.

\__file_recursion_tail \__file_recursion_stop \Internal recursion quarks.

\__file_if_recursion_tail_break:NN \__file_if_recursion_tail_stop_do:Nn Functions to query recursion quarks.

Expanding the file name uses a \csname-based approach, and relies on active characters (for example from UTF-8 characters) being properly set up to expand to an expansion-safe version using \ifcsname. This is less conservative than the token-by-token approach used before, but it is much faster.

\cs_new:Npn \__kernel_file_name_sanitize:n \#1 \{ \exp_args:Ne \__file_name_trim_spaces:n \{ \exp_args:Ne \__file_name_strip_quotes:n \{ \__file_name_expand:n \{\#1\} \} \} \} We'll use \cs:w to start expanding the file name, and to avoid creating csnames equal to \relax with “common” names, there’s a prefix __file_name= to the csnames. There’s also a guard token at the end so we can check if there was an error during the process and (try to) clean up gracefully.
With the csname built, we grab it, and grab the remaining tokens delimited by `\__file_name_expand_end:`. If there are any remaining tokens, something bad happened, so we'll call the error procedure `\__file_name_expand_error:Nw`. If everything went according to plan, then use `\token_to_str:N` on the csname built, and call `\__file_name_expand_cleanup:w` to remove the prefix we added a while back. `\__file_name_expand_cleanup:w` takes a leading argument so we don’t have to bother about the value of `\tex_escapechar:D`.

```
cs_new:Npn \__file_name_expand_cleanup:Nw #1 #2 \__file_name_expand_end:  
{  
  \tl_if_empty:nF {#2}  
  \{  \__file_name_expand_error:Nw #2 \__file_name_expand_end: \}  
  \exp_after:wN \__file_name_expand_cleanup:w \token_to_str:N #1  
}  
\exp_last_unbraced:NNNNo  
cs_new:Npn \__file_name_expand_cleanup:w #1 \tl_to_str:n { __file_name = } { }  
```

In non-error cases `\__file_name_expand_end:` should not expand. It will only do so in case there is a `\csname` too much in the file name, so it will throw an error (while expanding), then insert the missing `\cs_end:` and yet another `\__file_name_expand_end:` that will be used as a delimiter by `\__file_name_expand_cleanup:Nw` (or that will expand again if yet another `\endcsname` is missing).

```
cs_new:Npn \__file_name_expand_end:  
{  
  \msg_expandable_error:nn  
  \{ kernel \} \{ filename-missing-endcsname \}  
  \cs_end: \__file_name_expand_end:  
}  
```

Now to the error case. `\__file_name_expand_error:Nw` adds an extra `\cs_end:` so that in case there was an extra `\csname` in the file name, then `\__file_name_expand_error_aux:Nw` throws the error.

```
cs_new:Npn \__file_name_expand_error:Nw #1 #2 \__file_name_expand_end:  
{  \__file_name_expand_error_aux:Nw #1 #2 \__file_name_expand_end: \cs_end: \__file_name_expand_end: \}  
```

Quoting file name uses basically the same approach as for `luaquotejobname`: count the " tokens and remove them.

```
cs_new:Npn \__file_name_strip_quotes:n #1  
{  \__file_name_strip_quotes:nw \{ 0 \}  
  \#1 " \q_file_recursion_tail " \q__file_recursion_stop \{#1\}  
}  
```

```
cs_new:Npn \__file_name_strip_quotes:nw #1" \if_meaning:w \q__file_recursion_tail #2  
{  \__file_name_strip_quotes:end:wmmn  
  \fi:  
  \#2  
```

634
Spaces need to be trimmed from the start of the name and from the end of any extension. However, the name we are passed might not have an extension: that means we have to look for one. If there is no extension, we still use the standard trimming function but deliberately prevent any spaces being removed at the end.

\cs_new:Npn \__file_name_trim_spaces:n #1
\begin{verbatim}
{ \tl_trim_spaces_apply:nN { #1 \tl_null } \__file_name_trim_spaces_aux:n }
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__file_name_trim_spaces_aux:n #1 { #1 }

(End definition for \__kernel_file_name_sanitize:n and others.)

The same idea as the marker for rescanning token lists: this pair of tokens cannot appear in a file that is being input.
\tl_const:Nx \c__file_marker_tl { : \token_to_str:N : }

(End definition for \c__file_marker_tl.)

The approach here is similar to that for \tl_set_rescan:Nn. The file contents are grabbed as an argument delimited by \c__file_marker_tl. A few subtleties: braces in \iffalse: ... \fi: to deal with possible alignment tabs, \tracingnesting to avoid...
a warning about a group being closed inside the \scantokens, and \prg_return_true: is placed after the end-of-file marker.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \file_get:nnN #1#2\#3
\file_get:nnNF {#1} {#2} #3
\tl_set:Nn #3 { \q_no_value }
\prg_new_protected_conditional:Npnn \file_get:nnN #1#2#3 { T , F , TF }
\file_get_full_name:nNTF {#1} \l__file_full_name_tl
\exp_args:NV \__file_get_aux:nnN \l__file_full_name_tl
\prg_return_true:
\prg_return_false:
\cs_new_protected:Npx \__file_get_aux:nnN #1#2#3
\exp_not:N \if_false: { \exp_not:N \fi:
\group_begin:
\int_set_eq:NN \tex_tracingnesting:D \c_zero_int
\exp_not:N \exp_args:No \tex_everyeof:D
\prg_do_nothing:
\exp_not:N \exp_after:wN \exp_not:N \__file_get_do:Nw
\exp_not:N \exp_after:wN \exp_not:N \prg_do_nothing:
\sys_if_engine_luatex:TF
\exp_not:N \exp_after:wN \exp_not:N \__kernel_file_name_quote:n {#1}
\exp_not:N \if_false: } \exp_not:N \fi:
\exp_not:N \if_false: { \exp_not:N \fi:
\exp_args:Nno \use:nn
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__file_get_do:Nw #1#2
\prg_return_true:
\prg_return_false:
\group_end:
\tl_set:No #1 {#2}

(End definition for \file_get:nnNTF and others. These functions are documented on page 94.)

\__file_size:n
\cs_new_eq:NN \__file_size:n \tex_filesize:D
(End definition for \__file_size:n.)

\file_full_name:n
\__file_full_name:n
\__file_full_name_aux:nn
\__file_full_name_aux:Nnn
\__file_full_name_aux:Nn
\__file_name_cleanup:w
\__file_name_end:
\__file_name_ext_check:nn
\__file_name_ext_check:nnw
\__file_name_ext_check:nnnw
\__file_name_ext_check:nnn

File searching can be carried out if the \pdffilesize primitive or an equivalent is available. That of course means we need to arrange for everything else to here to be done by expansion too. We start off by sanitizing the name and quoting if required: we may need to remove those quotes, so the raw name is passed too.

636
First, we check if the file is just here: no mapping so we do not need the break part of the broader auxiliary. We are using the fact that the primitive here returns nothing if the file is entirely absent. To avoid unnecessary filesystem lookups, the result of `\pdffilesize` is kept available as an argument. For package mode, `\input@path` is a token list not a sequence.

Two pars to the auxiliary here so we can avoid doing quoting twice in the event we find the right file.

As \TeX automatically adds `.tex` if there is no extension, there is a little clean up to do here. First, make sure we are not in the directory part, saving that. Then check for an extension.
Deal with the fact that the primitive might not be available.
\cs_if_exist:NF \tex_filesize:D
{ \cs_gset:Npn \file_full_name:n \pm
{ \msg_expandable_error:nnn { kernel } { primitive-not-available } \pm \pdf\filesize \pm }
}
\msg_new:nnnn { kernel } { primitive-not-available }
{ Primitive\token_to_str:N \pm \token_to_str:N \pm \pm }
{ The-version-of-your-TeX-engine-does-not-provide-functionality-equivalent-to-the-\pm \pm \pm .}

(End definition for \file_full_name:n and others. This function is documented on page 94.)

\file_get_full_name:nN
\file_get_full_name:VN
\file_get_full_name:nTF
\file_get_full_name:VNTF
\__file_get_full_name_search:nN
These functions pre-date using \tex_filesize:D for file searching, so are get functions with protection. To avoid having different search set ups, they are simply wrappers
around the code above.

11003 \cs_new_protected:Npn \file_get_full_name:nN #1#2  
11004  {  
11005   \file_get_full_name:nNF {#1} #2  
11006   { \tl_set:Nn #2 { \q_no_value } }  
11007  }  
11008 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \file_get_full_name:nN { V }  
11009 \prg_new_protected_conditional:Npnn \file_get_full_name:nN #1#2 { T , F , TF }  
11010  {  
11011   \__kernel_tl_set:Nx #2 #2  
11012   { \file_full_name:n {#1} }  
11013   \tl_if_empty:NTF #2  
11014   { \prg_return_false: }  
11015   { \prg_return_true: }  
11016  }  
11017 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \file_get_full_name:nNT { V }  
11018 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \file_get_full_name:nNF { V }  
11019 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \file_get_full_name:nNTF { V }  

If \tex_filesize:D is not available, the way to test if a file exists is to try to open it: if it does not exist then \TeX reports end-of-file. A search is made looking at each potential path in turn (starting from the current directory). The first location is of course treated as the correct one: this is done by jumping to \prg_break_point:. If nothing is found, #2 is returned empty. A special case when there is no extension is that once the first location is found we test the existence of the file with .tex extension in that directory, and if it exists we include the .tex extension in the result.

11020 \cs_if_exist:NF \tex_filesize:D  
11021  {  
11022   \prg_set_protected_conditional:Npnn \file_get_full_name:nN #1#2 { T , F , TF }  
11023   {  
11024     \__kernel_tl_set:Nx \l__file_base_name_tl #2  
11025     { \__kernel_file_name_sanitize:n {#1} }  
11026     \__file_get_full_name_search:nN { } \use:n  
11027     \seq_map_inline:Nn \l_file_search_path_seq  
11028     { \__file_get_full_name_search:nN { ##1 / } \seq_map_break:n }  
11029     \cs_if_exist:NT \input@path  
11030     { \__file_get_full_name_search:nN { ##1 } \tl_map_break:n }  
11031   }  
11032   \tl_set:Nn \l__file_full_name_tl { \q_no_value }  
11033   \prg_break_point:  
11034   \quark_if_no_value:NTF \l__file_full_name_tl \l__file_full_name_tl  
11035   {  
11036     \ior_close:N \g__file_internal_ior  
11037     \prg_return_false:  
11038   }  
11039   {  
11040     \file_parse_full_name:VNNN \l__file_full_name_tl \l__file_dir_str \l__file_name_str \l__file_ext_str  
11041     \str_if_empty:NT \l__file_ext_str  
11042     { \__kernel_ior_open:No \g__file_internal_ior  
11043       \l__file_full_name_tl .tex }  
11044   }  
11045 }  
11046 

639
\ior_if_eof:NF \g__file_internal_ior
{ \tl_put_right:Nn \l__file_full_name_tl {.tex} }
\ior_close:N \g__file_internal_ior
\tl_set_eq:NN #2 \l__file_full_name_tl
\prg_return_true:
}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__file_get_full_name_search:nN #1#2
{ \__kernel_tl_set:Nx \l__file_full_name_tl
{ \tl_to_str:n {#1} \l__file_base_name_tl }
\__kernel_ior_open:No \g__file_internal_ior \l__file_full_name_tl
\ior_if_eof:NF \g__file_internal_ior { #2 { \prg_break: } }
}

\g__file_internal_ior
A reserved stream to test for file existence (if required), and for opening a shell.
\ior_new:N \g__file_internal_ior
(End definition for \g__file_internal_ior.
\file_mdfive_hash:n \file_size:n \file_timestamp:n \__file_details:nn \__file_details_aux:nn \__file_mdfive_hash:n
Getting file details by expansion is relatively easy if a bit repetitive. As the MD5 function
has a slightly different syntax from the other commands, there is a little cleaning up to do.
\cs_new:Npn \file_size:n #1
{ \__file_details:nn {#1} { size } }
\cs_new:Npn \file_timestamp:n #1
{ \__file_details:nn {#1} { moddate } }
\cs_new:Npn \__file_details:nn #1#2
{ \exp_args:Ne \__file_details_aux:nn { \file_full_name:n {#1} } {#2} }
\cs_new:Npn \__file_details_aux:nn #1#2
{ \tl_if_blank:nF {#1}
{ \use:c { tex_file #2 :D } {#1} }
}
\cs_new:Npn \file_mdfive_hash:n #1
{ \exp_args:Ne \__file_mdfive_hash:n { \file_full_name:n {#1} } }
\cs_new:Npn \__file_mdfive_hash:n #1
{ \tex_mdfivesum:D file {#1} }
(End definition for \file_mdfive_hash:n and others. These functions are documented on page 96.)
\file_hex_dump:nnn \__file_hex_dump_auxi:nnn \__file_hex_dump_auxii:nnn \__file_hex_dump_auxiii:nnn \__file_hex_dump_auxiv:nnn \file_hex_dump:n \__file_hex_dump:n
These are separate as they need multiple arguments or the file size. For Lua\TeX, the
emulation does not need the file size so we save a little on expansion.
\cs_new:Npn \file_hex_dump:nnn #1#2#3
{ \exp_args:Ne \__file_hex_dump_auxi:nnn
{ \file_full_name:n {#1} } }
(End definition for \file_hex_dump:nnn and others. These functions are documented on page 96.)
\cs_new:Npn \__file_hex_dump_auxi:nnn #1#2#3
\{
  \bool_lazy_any:nF
  { \tl_if_blank_p:n {#1} }
  { \int_compare_p:nNn {#2} = 0 }
  { \int_compare_p:nNn {#3} = 0 }
  \}
  \{
    \exp_args:Ne \__file_hex_dump_auxii:nnnn
    { \__file_details_aux:nn {#1} \size }
    {#1} {#2} {#3}
  \}
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__file_hex_dump_auxii:nnnn #1#2#3#4
\{
  \int_compare:nNnTF {#3} > 0
  { \__file_hex_dump_auxiii:nnnn {#3} }
  { \exp_args:Ne \__file_hex_dump_auxiii:nnnn
    { \int_eval:n { #1 + #3 } }
    {#1} {#2} {#4}
  }
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__file_hex_dump_auxiii:nnnn #1#2#3#4
\{
  \int_compare:nNnTF {#4} > 0
  { \__file_hex_dump_auxiv:nnn {#4} }
  { \exp_args:Ne \__file_hex_dump_auxiv:nnn
    { \int_eval:n { #2 + #4 } }
    {#1} {#3}
  }
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__file_hex_dump_auxiv:nnn #1#2#3
\{
  \tex_filedump:D
  offset \int_eval:n {#2 - 1}
  length \int_eval:n {#1 - #2 + 1}
  {#3}
\}
\cs_new:Npn \file_hex_dump:n #1
\{
  \exp_args:Ne \__file_hex_dump:n { \file_full_name:n {#1} }
\}
\sys_if_engine_luatex:TF
\{
  \cs_new:Npn \__file_hex_dump:n #1
  \{
    \tl_if_blank:nF {#1}
    { \tl_if_blank:nF {#1}
      { \tex_filedump:D whole {#1} {#1} }
    }
  }
\}
641
Non-expandable wrappers around the above in the case where appropriate primitive support exists.

Where the primitive is not available, issue an error: this is a little more conservative than absolutely needed, but does work.
Custom code due to the additional arguments.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \file_get_hex_dump:nnnNF #1 #2 #3 #4
\prg_new_protected_conditional:Npnn \file_get_hex_dump:nnnN #1 #2 #3 #4
{ T , F , TF }
{ \__kernel_tl_set:Nx #4
{ \file_hex_dump:nnn {#1} {#2} {#3} }
\tl_if_empty:NTF #4
{ \prg_return_false: }
{ \prg_return_true: }
}

(End definition for \file_get_hex_dump:nnnNTF. This function is documented on page 95.)

As we are doing a fixed-length “big” integer comparison, it is easiest to use the low-level behavior of string comparisons.

\cs_new_eq:NN \__file_str_cmp:nn \tex_strcmp:D

(End definition for \__file_str_cmp:nn.)

Comparison of file date can be done by using the low-level nature of the string comparison functions.

\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \file_compare_timestamp:nNn \file_compare_timestamp_p:nNn \\file_compare_timestamp:n
\__file_compare_timestamp:nnN
\__file_timestamp:n
\file_compare_timestamp_p:nNn
\__file_timestamp:n

\exp_args:Nee \__file_compare_timestamp:nnN
\tl_if_blank:nTF {#1}
{ \if_charcode:w #3 <
 \prg_return_true:
 \else:
 \prg_return_false:
 \fi:
}
\tl_if_blank:nTF {#2}
{ \if_charcode:w #3 >

643
\file_if_exist:nTF The test for the existence of a file is a wrapper around the function to add a path to a file. If the file was found, the path contains something, whereas if the file was not located then the return value is empty.

\file_if_exist_input:n \file_if_exist_input:nF Input of a file with a test for existence. We do not define the T or TF variants because the most useful place to place the (true code) would be inconsistent with other conditionals.
\file_get_full_name:nNTF {#1} \l__file_full_name_tl
\__file_input:V \l__file_full_name_tl

(End definition for \file_if_exist_input:n and \file_if_exist_input:nF. These functions are documented on page 97.)

\file_input_stop: A simple rename.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \file_input_stop: { \tex_endinput:D }

(End definition for \file_input_stop: This function is documented on page 97.)

\__kernel_file_missing:n An error message for a missing file, also used in \ior_open:Nn.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__kernel_file_missing:n #1
\msg_error:nnx { kernel } { file-not-found }
\{ \__kernel_file_name_sanitize:n {#1} \}

(End definition for \__kernel_file_missing:n)

Loading a file is done in a safe way, checking first that the file exists and loading only if it does. Push the file name on the \g__file_stack_seq, and add it to the file list, either \g__file_record_seq, or \@filelist in package mode.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \file_input:n #1
\file_get_full_name:nNTF {#1} \l__file_full_name_tl
\__file_input:V \l__file_full_name_tl
\__kernel_file_missing:n {#1}

\exp_not:N \clist_if_exist:NTF \exp_not:N \@filelist
\{ \exp_not:N \@addtofilelist {#1} \}
\{ \seq_gput_right:Nn \exp_not:N \g__file_record_seq {#1} \}
\exp_not:N \__file_input_push:n {#1}
\sys_if_engine_luatex:TF
\{ {#1} \}
\exp_not:N \__kernel_file_name_quote:n {#1} \scan_stop: }
\exp_not:N \__file_input_pop:

\cs_generate_variant:Nn \__file_input:n { V }

Keeping a track of the file data is easy enough: we store the separated parts so we do not need to parse them twice.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__file_input_push:n #1
\seq_gpush:Nx \g__file_stack_seq
\{ \g_file_curr_dir_str \}
\{ \g_file_curr_name_str \}
\{ \g_file_curr_ext_str \}

645
The main parsing macro `\file_parse_full_name_apply:nN` passes the file name `#1` through `__kernel_file_name_sanitize:n` so that we have a single normalised way to treat files internally. `\file_parse_full_name:n` uses the former, with `\prg_do_nothing:` to leave each part of the name within a pair of braces.

```
\cs_new:Npn \file_parse_full_name:n #1
\file_parse_full_name_apply:nN \prg_do_nothing:
\cs_new:Npn \file_parse_full_name_apply:nN #1
\exp_args:Ne \__file_parse_full_name_auxi:nN \__kernel_file_name_sanitize:n \#1
\cs_new:Npn \__file_parse_full_name_area:nw #1 #2 / #3 \s__file_stop
\tl_if_empty:nTF {#3}
\__file_parse_full_name_base:n { } #2 . \s__file_stop {#1}
\__file_parse_full_name_area:nw { #1 / #2 } #3 \s__file_stop
```

`\__file_parse_full_name_area:nw` splits the file name into chunks separated by `/`, until the last one is reached. The last chunk is the file name plus the extension, and everything before that is the path. When `\__file_parse_full_name_area:nw` is done, it leaves the path within braces after the scan mark `\s__file_stop` and proceeds parsing the actual file name.

```
\cs_new:Npn \__file_parse_full_name_auxi:nN \__file_parse_full_name_area:nw { } #1
\tl_if_empty:nTF {#3}
\__file_parse_full_name_base:n { } #2 . \s__file_stop {#1}
\__file_parse_full_name_area:nw { #1 / #2 } #3 \s__file_stop
```
\_\_file\_parse\_full\_name\_base:nw does roughly the same as above, but it separates the chunks at each period. However here there’s some extra complications: In case \#1 is empty, it is assumed that the extension is actually empty, and the file name is \#2. Besides, an extra . has to be added to \#2 because it is later removed in \_\_file\_parse\_full\_name\_tidy:nnnN. In any case, if there’s an extension, it is returned with a leading ..

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_file\_parse\_full\_name\_base:nw #1 #2 . #3 \s__file\_stop
  {\tl_if_empty:nTF {#3}
    {\tl_if_empty:nTF {#1}
      {\tl_if_empty:nTF {#2}
        {
          \__file\_parse\_full\_name\_tidy:nnnN { } { } }
        {\__file\_parse\_full\_name\_tidy:nnnN { } \#2} }
      {\__file\_parse\_full\_name\_base:nw {#1} \#2} }
    { \__file\_parse\_full\_name\_base:nw {#1 . #2} \#3 \s__file\_stop } }
\end{verbatim}

Now we just need to tidy some bits left loose before. The loop used in the two macros above start with a leading / and . in the file path an name, so here we need to remove them, except in the path, if it is a single /, in which case it’s left as is. After all’s done, pass to \#4.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_file\_parse\_full\_name\_tidy:nnnN #1 #2 #3 #4
  {\exp_args:Nee #4
    {\str_if_eq:nnF {#3} { / } { \use_none:n }
      \str_set:Nn #3 {#1}
      \str_set:Nn #4 {#2}}}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \file\_parse\_full\_name:n and others. These functions are documented on page 95.)

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \file\_parse\_full\_name:nnNN #1 #2 #3 #4
  {\file\_parse\_full\_name\_apply:nN {#1}
    \_\_file\_full\_name\_assign:nnnNNN #2 #3 #4}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \file\_parse\_full\_name:nnNN. This function is documented on page 95.)
A function to list all files used to the log, without duplicates. In package mode, if \@filelist is still defined, we need to take this list of file names into account (we capture it \AtBeginDocument into \g__file_record_seq), turning it to a string (this does not affect the commas of this comma list).

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \file_show_list: { \__file_list:N \msg_show:nnxxxx }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \file_log_list: { \__file_list:N \msg_log:nnxxxx }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__file_list:N #1
\seq_clear:N \l__file_tmp_seq
\clist_if_exist:NT \@filelist
\exp_args:NNx \seq_set_from_clist:Nn \l__file_tmp_seq
{ \tl_to_str:N \@filelist }
\seq_concat:NNN \l__file_tmp_seq \l__file_tmp_seq \g__file_record_seq
\seq_remove_duplicates:N \l__file_tmp_seq
\seq_map_function:NN \l__file_tmp_seq \__file_list_aux:n
\end{verbatim}

When used as a package, there is a need to hold onto the standard file list as well as the new one here. File names recorded in \@filelist must be turned to strings before being added to \g__file_record_seq.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_if_exist:NT \@filelist
\AtBeginDocument
{ \exp_args:NNx \seq_set_from_clist:Nn \l__file_tmp_seq
{ \tl_to_str:N \@filelist }
\seq_gconcat:NNN \g__file_record_seq \g__file_record_seq \l__file_tmp_seq}
\end{verbatim}

\textit{(End definition for \file_show_list: and others. These functions are documented on page 97.)}

49.5 \texttt{GetIdInfo}  

As documented in expl3.dtx this function extracts file name etc from an SVN Id line. This used to be how we got version number and so on in all modules, so it had to be defined in \texttt{l3bootstrap}. Now it’s more convenient to define it after we have set up quite a lot of tools, and \texttt{l3file} seems the least unreasonable place for it.

The idea here is to extract out the information needed from a standard SVN Id line, but to avoid a line that would get changed when the file is checked in. Hence the fact that none of the lines here include both a dollar sign and the \texttt{Id} keyword!

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \GetIdInfo
{ \tl_clear_new:N \ExplFileDescription \tl_clear_new:N \ExplFileDate}
\end{verbatim}

648
A first check for a completely empty SVN field. If that is not the case, there is a second case when a file created using SVN cp but has not been checked in. That leaves a special marker -1 version, which has no further data. Dealing correctly with that is the reason for the space in the line to use __file_id_info_auxii:w.

Here, #1 is Id, #2 is the file name, #3 is the extension, #4 is the version, #5 is the check in date and #6 is the check in time and user, plus some trailing spaces. If #4 is the marker -1 value then #5 and #6 are empty.

Convert an SVN-style date into a \LaTeX-style one.

49.6 Checking the version of kernel dependencies

This function is responsible for checking if dependencies of the \LaTeXX3 kernel match the version preloaded in the \LaTeXX2\v kernel. If versions don’t match, the function attempts to tell why by searching for a possible stray format file.

The function starts by checking that the kernel date is defined, and if not zero is used to force the error route. The kernel date is then compared with the argument requested.
date (usually the packaging date of the dependency). If the kernel date is less than the
required date, it’s an error and the loading should abort.

\begin{verbatim}
cs_new_protected:Npn \__kernel_dependency_version_check:Nn #1
  { \exp_args:NV \__kernel_dependency_version_check:nn #1 }
cs_new_protected:Npn \__kernel_dependency_version_check:nn #1
  {\cs_if_exist:NTF \c__kernel_expl_date_tl
    \exp_args:NV \__file_kernel_dependency_compare:nnn
      \c__kernel_expl_date_tl {#1}
  }
\end{verbatim}

If the versions differ, then we try to give the user some guidance. This function starts by
taking the engine name \texttt{\c_sys_engine_str} and replacing \texttt{tex} by \texttt{latex}, then building
a command of the form: \texttt{kpsewhich \textendash \textendash all \textendash \textendash engine=\langle engine\rangle \langle format\rangle \textendash \textendash [\textendash \textendash dev\textendash ]\texttt{.fmt} to query
the format files available. A shell is opened and each line is read into a sequence.

\begin{verbatim}
cs_new_protected:Npn \__file_mismatched_dependency_error:nn #1 #2
  {\exp_args:NNx \ior_shell_open:Nn \g__file_internal_ior
    \begin{verbatim}
    kpsewhich ~ --all ~
    --engine = \c_sys_engine_exec_str
    \c_space_tl \c_sys_engine_format_str
    bool_lazy_and:nNT
      { \tl_if_exist_p:N \development@branch@name }
      { ! \tl_if_empty_p:N \development@branch@name }
    { -dev } .fmt
    \end{verbatim}
    \seq_clear:N \l__file_tmp_seq
    \ior_map_inline:Nn \g__file_internal_ior
      { \seq_put_right:Nn \l__file_tmp_seq {##1} }
    \ior_close:N \g__file_internal_ior
    \msg_error:nnnn { kernel } { mismatched-support-file }
  }
\end{verbatim}

And finish by ending the current file.

\begin{verbatim}
\tex_endinput:D
\end{verbatim}

\end{verbatim}

\file_mismatched_dependency_error:nn
Mismatched LaTeX support files detected. \\
Loading-'#2'-aborted!

\c__kernel_expl_date_tl may not exist, due to an older format, so only print the dates when the sentinel token list exists:
\tl_if_exist:NT \c__kernel_expl_date_tl
{ \\\n  \c__kernel_expl_date_tl, but in your TeX-
  \tl_if_exist:NT \c__kernel_expl_date_tl, -at least-#1. }

The L3 programming layer in the LaTeX format is dated \c__kernel_expl_date_tl, but in your TeX-
files require at least #1.

The sequence containing the format files should have exactly one item: the format file currently being run. If that’s the case, the cause of the error is not that, so print a generic help with some possible causes. If more than one format file was found, then print the list to the user, with appropriate indications of what’s in the system and what’s in the user tree.
\int_compare:nNnTF { \seq_count:N \l__file_tmp_seq } > 1
{ The cause seems to be an old format file in the user tree. \\\n  LaTeX found these files: \seq_map_tokens:Nn \l__file_tmp_seq { \use:n } \\\n  Try deleting the file in the user tree then run LaTeX again. }
{ The most likely causes are:
  \--- A recent format generation failed;
  \--- A stray format file in the user tree which needs-
  to be removed or rebuilt;
  \--- You are running a manually installed version of \#2 \\
  which is incompatible with the version in LaTeX. }

LaTeX will abort loading the incompatible support files-
but this may lead to later errors. Please ensure that-
your LaTeX format is correctly regenerated.

(End definition for \kernel_dependency_version_check:Nn and others.)

49.7 Messages
\msg_new:nnn { kernel } { file-not-found }
{ File-\#1'-not-found. }
{ The requested file could not be found in the current directory,-
in the TeX search path or in the LaTeX search path. }
\msg_new:nnn { kernel } { file-list }
{ -File-List-<

651
There was an invalid token in the file name that caused the characters following it to be lost.

The file name had more \iow_char:N\csname commands than \iow_char:N\endcsname ones. LaTeX will add the missing \iow_char:N\endcsname and try to continue as best as it can.

File names must contain balanced numbers of quotes (").

The command \#2 can only be used in messages which will be wrapped using \#1.

- It was called with argument \#3.

49.8 Functions delayed from earlier modules

Detecting the platform on LuaTeX is easy: for other engines, we use the fact that the two common cases have special null files. It is possible to probe further (see package platform), but that requires shell escape and seems unlikely to be useful. This is set up here as it requires file searching.

\c_sys_platform_str Detecting the platform on LuaTeX is easy: for other engines, we use the fact that the two common cases have special null files. It is possible to probe further (see package platform), but that requires shell escape and seems unlikely to be useful. This is set up here as it requires file searching.
We can now set up the tests.

\begin{verbatim}
\clist_map_inline:nn { unix , windows }
\{ \__file_const:nn { sys_if_platform_ #1 }
\{ \str_if_eq_p:Vn \c_sys_platform_str { #1 } \}
\}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{sys_if_platform_unix:TF} and \texttt{sys_if_platform_windows:TF}. These functions are documented on page 74.)

\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}

\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{c_sys_platform_str}. This variable is documented on page 74.)
Chapter 50

\texttt{l3lualatex implementation}

50.1 Breaking out to Lua

\begin{verbatim}
\__lua_escape:n \__lua_now:n \__lua_shipout:n
\end{verbatim}

Covers of primitives.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_eq:NN \__lua_escape:n \tex_luaescapestring:D
\cs_new_eq:NN \__lua_now:n \tex_directlua:D
\cs_new_eq:NN \__lua_shipout:n \tex_latelua:D
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__lua_escape:n, \__lua_now:n, and \__lua_shipout:n.)

These functions are set up in \texttt{l3str} for bootstrapping: we want to replace them with a “proper” version at this stage, so clean up.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_undefine:N \lua_escape:e
\cs_undefine:N \lua_now:e
\end{verbatim}

Wrappers around the primitives. As with engines other than \TeX\ these have to be macros, we give them the same status in all cases. When \TeX\ is not in use, simply give an error message/

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \lua_now:e #1 { \__lua_now:n {#1} }
\cs_new:Npn \lua_now:n #1 { \lua_now:e { \exp_not:n {#1} } }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \lua_shipout_e:n #1 { \__lua_shipout:n {#1} }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \lua_shipout:n #1 { \lua_shipout_e:n { \exp_not:n {#1} } }
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\sys_if_engine_luatex:F
\clist_map_inline:nn
\\lua_escape:n, \lua_escape:e,
\\lua_now:n, \lua_now:e
\end{verbatim}

654
50.2 Messages

\msg_new:nnnn \luatex \luatex-required
\{ LuaTeX-engine-not-in-use!-Ignoring-#1. \}
\{
    \The-feature-you-are-using-is-only-available-
    \with-the-LuaTeX-engine.-LaTeX3-ignored-’#1’.
\}
\langle /tex \rangle

50.3 Lua functions for internal use

\langle *lua \rangle

Most of the emulation of pdfTeX here is based heavily on Heiko Oberdiek’s \pdftexcmds\ package.

\ltx.utils

Create a table for the kernel’s own use.

\ltx = \ltx or {utils={}\}
\ltx.utils = \ltx.utils or { \}
\llocal \ltxutils = \ltx.utils

\langle End definition for \ltx.utils. This function is documented on page 99. \rangle

Local copies of global tables.

\local io = io
\local kpse = kpse
\local lfs = lfs
\local math = math
\local md5 = md5
\local os = os
\local string = string
\local tex = tex
\local texio = texio
\local tonumber = tonumber

655
Local copies of standard functions.

local abs = math.abs
local byte = string.byte
local floor = math.floor
local format = string.format
local gsub = string.gsub
local lfs_attr = lfs.attributes
local open = io.open
local os_date = os.date
local setcatcode = tex.setcatcode
local sprint = tex.sprint
local cprint = tex.cprint
local write = tex.write
local write_nl = texio.write_nl
local utf8_char = utf8.char

local scan_int = token.scan_int or token.scan_integer
local scan_string = token.scan_string
local scan_keyword = token.scan_keyword
local put_next = token.put_next
local token_create = token.create

Since token.create only returns useful values after the tokens has been added to TeX’s hash table, we define a variant which defines it first if necessary.

local token_create_safe

function token_create_safe(s)
    local orig_token = token_create(s)
    if is_defined(s, true) then
        return orig_token
    end
    set_char(s, 0)
    local new_token = token_create(s)
    runtoks(function()
        put_next(let_token, new_token, orig_token)
    end)
    return new_token
end

local true_tok = token_create_safe'prg_return_true:'
local false_tok = token_create_safe'prg_return_false:'

In ConTeXt lmtx token.command_id does not exist, but it can easily be emulated with ConTeXt’s tokens.commands.

local command_id = token.command_id
if not command_id and tokens and tokens.commands then
    local id_map = tokens.commands
    function command_id(name)

Deal with Con\TeXt: doesn’t use kpse library.

\begin{verbatim}
local kpse_find = (resolvers and resolvers.findfile) or kpse.find_file
\end{verbatim}

\section*{escapehex}
An internal auxiliary to convert a string to the matching hex escape. This works on a byte basis: extension to handled UTF-8 input is covered in \texttt{pdftexcmds} but is not currently required here.

\begin{verbatim}
local function escapehex(str)
  return (gsub(str, ".",
    function (ch) return format("%02X", byte(ch)) end))
end
\end{verbatim}

\section*{\texttt{ltx.utils.filedump}}
Similar comments here to the next function: read the file in binary mode to avoid any line-end weirdness.

\begin{verbatim}
local function filedump(name,offset,length)
  local file = kpse_find(name,\texttt{``tex'',true})
  if not file then return end
  local f = open(file,\texttt{``rb''})
  if not f then return end
  if offset and offset > 0 then
    f:seek(\texttt{``set'', offset})
  end
  local data = f:read(length or \texttt{``a''})
  f:close()
  return escapehex(data)
end
ltxutils.filedump = filedump
\end{verbatim}

\section*{\texttt{md5.HEX}}
Hash a string and return the hash in uppercase hexadecimal format. In some engines, this is build-in. For traditional Lua\TeX, the conversion to hexadecimal has to be done by us.

\begin{verbatim}
local md5_HEX = md5.HEX
if not md5_HEX then
  local md5_sum = md5.sum
  function md5_HEX(data)
    return escapehex(md5_sum(data))
  end
  md5.HEX = md5_HEX
end
\end{verbatim}

\section*{\texttt{ltx.utils.filemd5sum}}
Read an entire file and hash it: the hash function itself is a built-in. As Lua is byte-based there is no work needed here in terms of UTF-8 (see \texttt{pdftexcmds} and how it handles strings that have passed through Lua\TeX). The file is read in binary mode so that no line ending normalisation occurs.

\begin{verbatim}
local function filemd5sum(name)
  return id_map[name]
end
end
\end{verbatim}
local file = kpse_find(name, "tex", true) if not file then return end
local f = open(file, "rb") if not f then return end
local data = f:read("*a") f:close()
return md5_HEX(data)
end

ltxutils.filemd5sum = filemd5sum

(End definition for ltx.utils.filemd5sum. This function is documented on page 99.)

---

There are two cases: If the C standard library is C99 compliant, we can use %z to get the timezone in almost the right format. We only have to add primes and replace a zero or missing offset with Z.

Of course this would be boring, so Windows does things differently. There we have to manually calculate the offset. See procedure makepdftime in utils.c of pdftex.

local filemoddate
if os_date('%z'):match'^[+-]%d%d%d%d$' then
local pattern = lpeg.Cs(16 *
  (lpeg.Cg(lpeg.S'+-' * '0000' * lpeg.Cc'Z')
  + 3 * lpeg.Cc"" * 2 * lpeg.Cc"
  + lpeg.Cc'Z')
  * -1)
function filemoddate(name)
local file = kpse_find(name, "tex", true)
if not file then return end
local date = lfs_attr(file, "modification")
if not date then return end
return pattern:match(os_date("D:%Y%m%d%H%M%S%z", date))
end
else
local function filemoddate(name)
local file = kpse_find(name, "tex", true)
if not file then return end
local date = lfs_attr(file, "modification")
if not date then return end
local d = os_date("*t", date)
local u = os_date("!*t", date)
local off = 60 * (d.hour - u.hour) + d.min - u.min
if d.year ~= u.year then
  if d.year > u.year then
    off = off + 1440
  else
    off = off - 1440
  end
elseif d.yday ~= u.yday then
  if d.yday > u.yday then
    off = off + 1440
  else
    off = off - 1440
  end
end
local timezone
if off == 0 then
  os.date("%z", off)
end
end
local timezone
if off == 0 then
  os.date("%z", off)
end

---

658
timezone = "Z"
else
  if off < 0 then
    timezone = "-"
    off = -off
  else
    timezone = "+"
  end
  timezone = format("%s%02d'%02d''", timezone, hours // 60, hours % 60)
end
return format("D:%04d%02d%02d%02d%02d%02d%s",
  d.year, d.month, d.day, d.hour, d.min, d.sec, timezone)
end

ltxutils.filemoddate = filemoddate

(End definition for ltx.utils.filemoddate. This function is documented on page 99.)

ltx.utils.filesize A simple disk lookup.

local function filesize(name)
  local file = kpse_find(name, "tex", true)
  if file then
    local size = lfs_attr(file, "size")
    if size then
      return size
    end
  end
end

ltxutils.filesize = filesize

(End definition for ltx.utils.filesize. This function is documented on page 99.)

luadef An internal function for defining control sequences form Lua which behave like primitives.
This acts as a wrapper around token.set_lua which accepts a function instead of an
index into the functions table.

local luacmd do
  local set_lua = token.set_lua
  local undefined_cs = command_id'undefined_cs'
  if not context and not luatexbase then require'ltluatex' end
  if luatexbase then
    local new_luafunction = luatexbase.new_luafunction
    local functions = lua.get_functions_table()
    function luacmd(name, func, ...)
      local id
      local tok = token_create(name)
      if tok.command == undefined_cs then
        id = new_luafunction(name)
        set_lua(name, id, ...)
      else
        id = tok.index or tok.mode
        end
      functions[id] = func
      end
  end
}

659
elseif context then
  local register = context.functions.register
  local functions = context.functions.known
  function luacmd(name, func, ...)
    local tok = token_create(name)
    if tok.command == undefined_cs then
      token.set_lua(name, register(func), ...)
    else
      functions[tok.index or tok.mode] = func
    end
  end
end

(End definition for luadef.)

50.4 Preserving iniTeX Lua data for runs

@@=lua

The Lua state is not dumped when a format is written, therefore any Lua variables filled doing format building need to be restored in order to be accessible during normal runs.

We provide some kernel-internal helpers for this. They will only be available if luatexbase is available. This is not a big restriction though, because ConTeXt (which does not use luatexbase) does not load expl3 in the format.

if luatexbase then
  local register = token_create '@expl@luadata@bytecode'.index
  if status.ini_version then
    register_luadata
  end
end

register_luadata is only available during format generation. It accept a string which uniquely identifies the data object and has to be provided to retrieve it later. Additionally it accepts a function which is called in the pre_dump callback and which has to return a string that evaluates to a valid Lua object to be preserved.

local luadata, luadata_order = {}, {}

function register_luadata(name, func)
  if luadata[name] then
    error(format("LaTeX error: data name \%=q already in use", name))
  end
  luadata[name] = func
  luadata_order[#luadata_order + 1] = func and name
end

(End definition for register_luadata. This function is documented on page ??.)

The actual work is done in pre_dump. The luadata_order is used to ensure that the order is consistent over multiple runs.

luatexbase.add_to_callback("pre_dump", function()
  if next(luadata) then
    local str = "return {"
    for i=1, #luadata_order do

660
11847
11848
11849
11850
11851
11852
11853

get_luadata

local name = luadata_order[i]
str = format(’%s[%q]=%s,’, str, name, luadata[name]())
end
lua.bytecode[register] = assert(load(str .. "}"))
end
end, "ltx.luadata")
else

get_luadata is only available if data should be restored. It accept the identifier which
was used when the data object was registered and returns the associated object. Every
object can only be retrieved once.
11854
11855
11856
11857
11858
11859
11860
11861
11862
11863
11864
11865
11866

local luadata = lua.bytecode[register]
if luadata then
lua.bytecode[register] = nil
luadata = luadata()
end
function get_luadata(name)
if not luadata then return end
local data = luadata[name]
luadata[name] = nil
return data
end
end
end

(End definition for get_luadata. This function is documented on page ??.)
11867

⟨/lua⟩

11868

⟨/package⟩

661


Chapter 51

l3legacy Implementation

\prg_new_conditional:Nnn \legacy_if:n \#1 \{ p , T , F , TF \}
\prg_return_true:
\prg_return_false:
\fi:

(End definition for \legacy_if:nTF. This function is documented on page 100.)

\cs_new_protected:Npn \legacy_if_set_true:n \#1
\cs_set_eq:cN { if\#1 } \if_true: 
\legacy_if_set_false:n \legacy_if_set_false:n
\begin{itemize}
\item \legacy_if_set:nn
\item \legacy_if_gset:nn
\end{itemize}

(End definition for \legacy_if_set_true:n and others. These functions are documented on page 100.)

\cs_new_protected:Npm \legacy_if_set:nn \#1\#2
\cs_gset_eq:cN { if\#1 } \if_true: 
\legacy_if_gset_false:n \legacy_if_gset_false:n
\begin{itemize}
\item \legacy_if_set:nn
\item \legacy_if_gset:nn
\end{itemize}

A more elaborate wrapper.
(End definition for `\legacy_if_set::nn` and `\legacy_if_gset::nn`. These functions are documented on page 100.)

`1107` `{/package}`
Chapter 52

l3tl implementation

A token list variable is a \TeX macro that holds tokens. By using the \texttt{\unexpanded} primitive \LaTeX{} primitive \texttt{\edef} it is possible to store any tokens, including \texttt{#}, in this way.

52.1 Functions

\texttt{\__kernel_tl_set:Nx} \texttt{\__kernel_tl_gset:Nx} These two are supplied to get better performance for macros which would otherwise use \texttt{\tl_set:Nx} or \texttt{\tl_gset:Nx} internally.

\texttt{\cs_new_eq:NN \__kernel_tl_set:Nx \cs_set_nopar:Npx} \texttt{\cs_new_eq:NN \__kernel_tl_gset:Nx \cs_gset_nopar:Npx}

(End definition for \texttt{\__kernel_tl_set:Nx} and \texttt{\__kernel_tl_gset:Nx}.)

\texttt{\tl_new:N} Creating new token list variables is a case of checking for an existing definition and doing the definition.

\texttt{\cs_new_protected:Npn \tl_new:N #1} \texttt{\cs_gset_eq:NN #1 \c_empty_tl}

(End definition for \texttt{\tl_new:N}. This function is documented on page 102.)

\texttt{\tl_const:Nn} \texttt{\tl_const:Nx} \texttt{\tl_const:cn} \texttt{\tl_const:cx} Constants are also easy to generate. They use \texttt{\cs_gset_nopar:Npx} instead of \texttt{\__kernel_tl_gset:Nx} so that the correct scope checking is applied if \texttt{l3debug} is used.

\texttt{\cs_new_protected:Npm \tl_new:N \tl_const:Nn \tl_const:Nx \tl_const:cn \tl_const:cx}
Clearing a token list variable means setting it to an empty value. Error checking is sorted out by the parent function.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npm \tl_clear:N #1
\cs_new_protected:Npm \tl_gclear:N #1
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_clear:N { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_gclear:N { c }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\tl_clear:N}. This function is documented on page 103.)

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npm \tl_clear_new:N #1
\cs_new_protected:Npm \tl_gclear_new:N #1
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_clear_new:N { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_gclear_new:N { c }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\tl_clear_new:N} and \texttt{\tl_gclear_new:N}. These functions are documented on page 103.)

For setting token list variables equal to each other. To allow for patching, the arguments have to be explicit. In addition this ensures that a braced second argument will not cause problems.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npm \tl_set_eq:NN \tl_set_eq:Nc \tl_set_eq:cN \tl_set_eq:cc
\cs_new_protected:Npm \tl_gset_eq:NN \tl_gset_eq:Nc \tl_gset_eq:cN \tl_gset_eq:cc
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\tl_set_eq:NN} and \texttt{\tl_gset_eq:NN}. These functions are documented on page 103.)

Concatenating token lists is easy. When checking is turned on, all three arguments must be checked: a token list \#2 or \#3 equal to \texttt{\scan_stop:} would lead to problems later on.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npm \tl_concat:NNN \tl_concat:ccc \tl_gconcat:NNN \tl_gconcat:ccc
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\tl_concat:NNN} and \texttt{\tl_gconcat:NNN}. These functions are documented on page 103.)
52.2 Constant token lists

\texttt{\c_empty_tl}

Never full. We need to define that constant before using \texttt{\tl_new:N}.

(End definition for \texttt{\c_empty_tl}. This variable is documented on page 118.)

\texttt{\c_novalue_tl}

A special marker: as we don’t have \texttt{\char_generate:nn} yet, has to be created the old-fashioned way.

(End definition for \texttt{\c_novalue_tl}. This variable is documented on page 118.)

\texttt{\c_space_tl}

A space as a token list (as opposed to as a character).

(End definition for \texttt{\c_space_tl}. This variable is documented on page 118.)

52.3 Adding to token list variables

\texttt{\tl_set:Nn} By using \texttt{\exp_not:n} token list variables can contain # tokens, which makes the token list registers provided by \TeX{} more or less redundant. The \texttt{\tl_set:No} version is done by hand as it is used quite a lot.

(End definition for \texttt{\tl_set:Nn}. This function is documented on page 103.)
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_set:Nn { NV , Nv , Nf }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_set:Nn { c, cV , cv , cf }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_set:Nx { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_set:No { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_gset:Nn { NV , Nv , Nf }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_gset:Nn { c, cV , cv , cf }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_gset:Nx { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_gset:No { c }

(End definition for \tl_set:Nn and \tl_gset:Nn. These functions are documented on page 103.)

\tl_put_left:Nn Adding to the left is done directly to gain a little performance.
\tl_put_left:NV
\tl_put_left:No
\tl_put_left:Nx
\tl_put_left:cn
\tl_put_left:cV
\tl_put_left:co
\tl_put_left:cx
\tl_gput_left:Nn
\tl_gput_left:NV
\tl_gput_left:No
\tl_gput_left:Nx
\tl_gput_left:cn
\tl_gput_left:cV
\tl_gput_left:co
\tl_gput_left:cx

\cs_new_protected:Npn \tl_put_left:Nn #1#2
\cs_new_protected:Npn \tl_gput_left:Nn #1#2
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_put_left:Nn { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_put_left:NV { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_put_left:No { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_put_left:Nx { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_gput_left:NV { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_gput_left:No { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_gput_left:Nx { c }

(End definition for \tl_put_left:Nn and \tl_gput_left:Nn. These functions are documented on page 103.)

\tl_put_right:Nn
\tl_put_right:NV
\tl_put_right:No
\tl_put_right:Nx
\tl_put_right:cn
\tl_put_right:cV
\tl_put_right:co
\tl_put_right:cx
\tl_gput_right:Nn
\tl_gput_right:NV
\tl_gput_right:No
\tl_gput_right:Nx
\tl_gput_right:cn
\tl_gput_right:cV
\tl_gput_right:co
\tl_gput_right:cx

The same on the right.
52.4 Internal quarks and quark-query functions

- **\q__tl_nil**
- **\q__tl_mark**
- **\q__tl_stop**

**Internal quarks.**

12074 \quark_new:N \q__tl_nil
12075 \quark_new:N \q__tl_mark
12076 \quark_new:N \q__tl_stop

**Internal recursion quarks.**

12077 \quark_new:N \q__tl_recursion_tail
12078 \quark_new:N \q__tl_recursion_stop

**Functions to query recursion quarks.**

12079 \__kernel_quark_new_test:N \__tl_if_recursion_tail_break:nN
12080 \__kernel_quark_new_conditional:Nn \__tl_quark_if_nil:n { TF }

52.5 Reassigning token list category codes

**The rescanning code needs a special token list containing the same character (chosen here to be a colon) with two different category codes: it cannot appear in the tokens being rescanned since all colons have the same category code.**

12081 \tl_const:Nx \c__tl_rescan_marker_tl { : \token_to_str:N : }

**In a group, after some initial setup explained below and the user setup \#3 (followed by \scan_stop: to be safe), there is a call to \__tl_set_rescan:nNN. This shared auxiliary defined later distinguishes single-line and multi-line “files”. In the simplest case of multi-line files, it calls (with the same arguments) \__tl_set_rescan_multi:nNNN, whose code is included here to help understand the approach. This function rescans its argument \#1, closes the group, and performs the assignment.**

One difficulty when rescanning is that \scantokens treats the argument as a file, and without the correct settings a \TeX error occurs:

File ended while scanning definition of 

A related minor issue is a warning due to opening a group before the \scantokens and closing it inside that temporary file; we avoid that by setting \texttt{\textbackslash tracingnesting}. The standard solution to the “File ended” error is to grab the rescanned tokens as a delimited argument of an auxiliary, here \__tl_rescan:NNw, that performs the assignment, then let \TeX “execute” the end of file marker. As usual in delimited arguments we use \texttt{\prg_do_=nothing} to avoid stripping an outer set braces: this is removed by using o-expanding assignments. The delimiter cannot appear within the rescanned token list because it contains twice the same character, with different catcodes.
For \tl_rescan:nn we cannot simply call __tl_set_rescan:NNnn \prg_do_nothing: \use:n because that would leave the end-of-file marker after the result of rescanning. If that rescanned result is code that looks further in the input stream for arguments, it would break.

For multi-line files the only subtlety is that newlchar should be equal to endlchar because newlchar characters become new lines and then become endlchar characters when writing to an abstract file and reading back. This equality is ensured by setting newlchar equal to endlchar. Prior to this, endlchar is set to −1 if it was 32 (in particular true after \ExplSyntaxOn) to avoid unreasonable line-breaks at every space for instance in error messages triggered by the user setup. Another side effect of reading back from the file is that spaces (catcode 10) are ignored at the beginning of lines, and spaces and tabs (character code 32 and 9) are ignored at the end of lines.

The two \iffalse:... \fi: are there to prevent alignment tabs to cause a change of tabular cell while rescanning. We put the “opening” one after \group_begin: so that if one accidentally f-expands \tl_set_rescan:NNn braces remain balanced. This is essential in \tex-e type arguments when \expanded is not available.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \tl_rescan:nn #1#2
\tl_set_rescan:Nnn \l__tl_internal_a_tl {#1} {#2}
\exp_after:wN \__tl_rescan_aux:
\l__tl_internal_a_tl
\exp_args:NNo \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tl_rescan_aux:
{ \tl_clear:N \l__tl_internal_a_tl }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \tl_set_rescan:Nnn
{ \__tl_set_rescan:NNnn \tl_set:No }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \tl_gset_rescan:Nnn
{ \__tl_set_rescan:NNnn \tl_gset:No }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__tl_set_rescan:NNnn #1#2#3#4
{ \group_begin:
\iffalse: { \fi:
\int_set_eq:NN \tex_tracingnesting:D \c_zero_int
\int_compare:nNnT \tex_endlinechar:D = { 32 }
\int_set:Nn \tex_endlinechar:D { -1 }
\int_set_eq:NN \tex_newlinechar:D \tex_endlinechar:D
\scan_stop:
\exp_args:No \tl_set_rescan:nNNn \tl_to_str:n \c__tl_rescan_marker_tl
\iffalse: } \fi:
}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__tl_set_rescan_multi:nNN #1#2#3
\tex_everyeof:D \exp_after:wN \c__tl_rescan_marker_tl
\exp_after:wN \__tl_rescan:nNNn \tl_set_rescan:NNn
\exp_after:wN \prg_do_nothing:
\tex_scantokens:D \c\#1
\exp_args:Nno \use:n
{ \cs_new:Npn \__tl_rescan:nNNn \c\#1\#3 } \c__tl_rescan_marker_tl
\end{verbatim}
The function \_\_tl_set_rescan:nNN calls \_\_tl_set_rescan_multi:nNN or \_\_tl_set_rescan_single:mmNN \{ \’ \} depending on whether its argument is a single-line fragment of code/data or is made of multiple lines by testing for the presence of a \newlchar{} character. If \newlchar{} is out of range, the argument is assumed to be a single line.

For a single line, no \endlinechar{} should be added, so it is set to \texttt{-1}, and spaces should not be removed. Trailing spaces and tabs are a difficult matter, as \LaTeX{} removes these at a very low level. The only way to preserve them is to rescan not the argument but the argument followed by a character with a reasonable category code. Here, 11 (letter) and 12 (other) are accepted, as these are convenient, suitable for delimiting an argument, and it is very unlikely that none of the ASCII characters are in one of these categories. To avoid selecting one particular character to put at the end, whose category code may have been modified, there is a loop through characters from \’ (ASCII 39) to \~{} (ASCII 127). The choice of starting point was made because this is the start of a very long range of characters whose standard category is letter or other, thus minimizing the number of steps needed by the loop (most often just a single one). If no valid character is found (very rare), fall-back on \_\_tl_set_rescan_multi:mmNN.

Otherwise, once a valid character is found (let us use \’ in this explanation) run some code very similar to \_\_tl_set_rescan_multi:mmNN but with \’ added at both ends of the input. Of course, we need to define the auxiliary \_\_tl_set_rescan_single:mmNN \{ \’ \} on the fly to remove the additional \’ that is just before :: (by which we mean \c\_\_tl\_rescan_marker_tl). Note that the argument must be delimited by \’ with the current catcode; this is done thanks to \char_generate:mm. Yet another issue is that the rescanned token list may contain a comment character, in which case the \’ we expected is not there. We fix this as follows: rather than just :: we set \everyeof to ::\{(code1)\}'::\{(code2)\}\text{\_\_tl\_stop}. The auxiliary \_\_tl_set_rescan_single:mmNNw runs the o-expanding assignment, expanding either \{code1\} or \{code2\} before its the main argument \#3. In the typical case without comment character, \{code1\} is expanded, removing the leading \’. In the rarer case with comment character, \{code2\} is expanded, calling \_\_tl_set_rescan_single_aux:mmNNw, which removes the trailing ::\{(code1)\} and the leading \’.

\begin{Verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_tl_set_rescan:mmNN #1
\{
  \int_compare:nNnTF \tex_newlinechar:D < 0
  \{ \use_ii:mm \}
  \{
    \exp_args:Nnf \tl_if_in:mmTF \{#1\}
    \{ \char_generate:mm \{ \tex_newlinechar:D \} \{ 12 \} \}
  \}
  \{
    \_\_tl_set_rescan_multi:mmNN
  \}
\end{Verbatim}
52.6 Modifying token list variables

\verbatim
\tl_replace_all:Nnn
\tl_replace_all:cnn
\tl_greplace_all:Nnn
\tl_greplace_all:cnn
\tl_replace_once:Nnn
\tl_replace_once:cnn
\tl_greplace_once:Nnn
\tl_greplace_once:cnn

All of the replace functions call \_\_\_tl_replace:NNNNN with appropriate arguments. The first two arguments are explained later. The next controls whether the replacement function calls itself (\_\_\_tl_replace_next:w) or stops (\_\_\_tl_replace_wrap:w) after

(End definition for \_\_\_tl_set_rescan:NN and others.)
To implement the actual replacement auxiliary \texttt{\_\_tl_replace\_auxii:nNNNnn} we need a \texttt{\langle delimiter\rangle} with the following properties:

- all occurrences of the \texttt{\langle pattern\rangle} \#6 in \texttt{\langle token list\rangle \langle delimiter\rangle} belong to the \texttt{\langle token list\rangle} and have no overlap with the \texttt{\langle delimiter\rangle},
- the first occurrence of the \texttt{\langle delimiter\rangle} in \texttt{\langle token list\rangle \langle delimiter\rangle} is the trailing \texttt{\langle delimiter\rangle}.

We first find the building blocks for the \texttt{\langle delimiter\rangle}, namely two tokens \texttt{\langle A\rangle} and \texttt{\langle B\rangle} such that \texttt{\langle A\rangle} does not appear in \#6 and \#6 is not \texttt{\langle B\rangle} (this condition is trivial if \#6 has more than one token). Then we consider the delimiters \texttt{\langle A\rangle} and \texttt{\langle A\rangle \langle A\rangle \langle A\rangle \langle A\rangle} for \( n \geq 1 \), where \texttt{\langle A\rangle} denotes \( n \) copies of \texttt{\langle A\rangle}, and we choose as our \texttt{\langle delimiter\rangle} the first one which is not in the \texttt{\langle token list\rangle}.

Every delimiter in the set obeys the first condition: \#6 does not contain \texttt{\langle A\rangle} hence cannot be overlapping with the \texttt{\langle token list\rangle} and the \texttt{\langle delimiter\rangle}, and it cannot be within the \texttt{\langle delimiter\rangle} since it would have to be in one of the two \( B \) hence be equal to this single token (or empty, but this is an error case filtered separately). Given the particular form of these delimiters, for which no prefix is also a suffix, the second condition is actually a consequence of the weaker condition that the \texttt{\langle delimiter\rangle} choose does not appear in the \texttt{\langle token list\rangle}. Additionally, the set of delimiters is such that a \texttt{\langle token list\rangle} of \( n \) tokens can contain at most \( O(n^{3/2}) \) of them, hence we find a \texttt{\langle delimiter\rangle} with at most \( O(n^{3/2}) \) tokens in a time at most \( O(n^{3/2}) \). Bear in mind that these upper bounds are reached only in very contrived scenarios: we include the case \texttt{\langle A\rangle} in the list of delimiters to try, so that the \texttt{\langle delimiter\rangle} is simply \texttt{\q__tl_mark} in the most common situation where neither the \texttt{\langle token list\rangle} nor the \texttt{\langle pattern\rangle} contains \texttt{\q__tl_mark}.

Let us now ahead, optimizing for this most common case. First, two special cases: an empty \texttt{\langle pattern\rangle} \#6 is an error, and if \#1 is absent from both the \texttt{\langle token list\rangle} \#5 and the \texttt{\langle pattern\rangle} \#6 then we can use it as the \texttt{\langle delimiter\rangle} through \texttt{\_\_tl_replace\_auxii:nNNNnn} \#1. Otherwise, we end up calling \texttt{\_\_tl_replace:NnNNnnn} repeatedly with the first two arguments \texttt{\q__tl_mark {?}, \? {??}, \? {??}, \? {??}}), and so on, until \#6 does not contain the control sequence \#1, which we take as our \texttt{\langle A\rangle}. The argument \#2 only serves to collect ? characters for \#1. Note that the order of the tests means that the
first two are done every time, which is wasteful (for instance, we repeatedly test for the emptiness of #6). However, this is rare enough not to matter. Finally, choose \( \langle B \rangle \) to be \q__tl_nil or \q__tl_stop such that it is not equal to #6.

The \__tl_replace_auxi:NnnNNNnn auxiliary receives \{ \langle A \rangle \} and \{ \langle A \rangle^n \langle B \rangle \} as its arguments, initially with \( n = 1 \). If “\langle A \rangle \langle A \rangle^n \langle B \rangle \langle A \rangle^n \langle B \rangle” is in the \{token list\} then increase \( n \) and try again. Once it is not anymore in the \{token list\} we take it as our \langle delimiter \rangle and pass this to the auxii auxiliary.

The auxiliary \__tl_replace_auxii:nNNNnn receives the following arguments:

\{(delimiter)\} \langle function \rangle \langle assignment \rangle
\langle tl var \rangle \langle (pattern) \rangle \langle (replacement) \rangle

All of its work is done between \group_align_safe_begin: and \group_align_safe_end: to avoid issues in alignments. It does the actual replacement within #3 #4 \ldots, an x-expanding \langle assignment \rangle #3 to the \langle tl var \rangle #4. The auxiliary \__tl_replace_next:w is called, followed by the \langle (token list) \rangle, some tokens including the \langle delimiter \rangle \#1, followed by the \langle (pattern) \rangle \#5. This auxiliary finds an argument delimited by \#5 (the presence of a trailing \#5 avoids runaway arguments) and calls \__tl_replace_wrap:w to test whether this \#5 is found within the \langle (token list) \rangle or is the trailing one.

If on the one hand it is found within the \langle (token list) \rangle, then \#1 cannot contain the \langle delimiter \rangle \#1 that we worked so hard to obtain, thus \__tl_replace_wrap:w gets \#1 as its own argument \#1, and protects it against the x-expanding assignment. It also finds \exp_not:n as \#2 and does nothing to it, thus letting through \exp_not:n \langle (replacement) \rangle into the assignment. Note that \__tl_replace_next:w and \__tl_replace_wrap:w are always called followed by two empty brace groups. These are safe
because no delimiter can match them. They prevent losing braces when grabbing delimited arguments, but require the use of \texttt{\textbackslash exp\_not:o} and \texttt{\textbackslash use\_none:nn}, rather than simply \texttt{\textbackslash exp\_not:n}. Afterwards, \texttt{\_\_tl\_replace\_next:w} is called to repeat the replacement, or \texttt{\_\_tl\_replace\_wrap:w} if we only want a single replacement. In this second case, \texttt{##1} is the \texttt{(remaining tokens)} in the \texttt{(token list)} and \texttt{##2} is some \texttt{(ending code)} which ends the assignment and removes the trailing tokens \texttt{#5} using some \texttt{\textbackslash if\_false: \{ \textbackslash fi: \} \textbackslash trickery} because \texttt{#5} may contain any delimiter.

If on the other hand the argument \texttt{##1} of \texttt{\_\_tl\_replace\_next:w} is delimited by the trailing \texttt{(pattern)} \texttt{#5}, then \texttt{##1} is \texttt{\textbackslash{ }\textbackslash{ }\langle \texttt{token list} \rangle \langle \texttt{delimiter} \rangle \texttt{\{\texttt{ending code}\}}\texttt{\} \texttt{\}}\texttt{\}}, hence \texttt{\_\_tl\_replace\_wrap:w} finds \texttt{\textbackslash{ }\textbackslash{ }\langle \texttt{token list} \rangle \langle \texttt{delimiter} \rangle \texttt{\{\texttt{ending code}\}}\texttt{\}} as \texttt{##1} and the \texttt{(ending code)} as \texttt{##2}. It leaves the \texttt{(token list)} into the assignment and unbraces the \texttt{(ending code)} which removes what remains (essentially the \texttt{(delimiter)} and \texttt{(replacement)}).

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_tl\_replace\_auxii:nNNn \#1\#2\#3\#4\#5\#6
{ \group_align_safe_begin:
  \cs_set:Npn \_\_tl\_replace\_wrap:w ##1 #1 ##2
  { \__kernel_exp_not:w \exp_after:wN \exp_none:nn ##1 } ##2
  \cs_set:Npx \_\_tl\_replace\_next:w ##1 #5
  { \exp_not:N \_\_tl\_replace\_wrap:w ##1
    \exp_not:n \{{} \}
    \exp_not:n \{{\exp_not:n {{}}\}
    \exp_not:n \{{} \}
  }
  \#3 \#4
  { \exp_after:wN \_\_tl\_replace\_next\_aux:w
    \#4
    \#1
    { \if_false: \{ \fi: }
      \exp_after:wN \exp_none:n \exp_after:wN \{ \if_false: \} \fi:
    }
    \#5
  }
 \group_align_safe_end:
}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_tl\_replace\_next\_aux:w \{ \}
\cs_new_eq:NN \_\_tl\_replace\_wrap:w ?
\cs_new_eq:NN \_\_tl\_replace\_next:w ?
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \_\_tl\_replace\_next:w { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \_\_tl\_replace\_wrap:w { c }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\_\_tl\_replace:NnNNn and others}.)

\begin{verbatim}
\tl_remove\_once:Nn Removal is just a special case of replacement.
\tl_remove\_once:cn
\tl_gremove\_once:Nn
\tl_gremove\_once:cn
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\_\_tl\_replace:NnNNn and \_\_tl\_replace\_next:w}. These functions are documented on page 116.)
Removal is just a special case of replacement.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \tl_remove_all:Nn #1 #2
\begin{verbatim}
{ \tl_replace_all:Nnn #1 {#2} { } }
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \tl_gremove_all:Nn #1 #2
\begin{verbatim}
{ \tl_greplace_all:Nnn #1 {#2} { } }
\end{verbatim}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_remove_all:Nn { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_gremove_all:Nn { c }

(End definition for \tl_remove_all:Nn and \tl_gremove_all:Nn. These functions are documented on page 117.)

52.7 Token list conditionals

These functions check whether the token list in the argument is empty and execute the proper code from their argument(s).

\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \tl_if_empty:N #1 { p , T , F , TF }
\begin{verbatim}
{ \if_meaning:w #1 \c_empty_tl \prg_return_true: \\
\else: \prg_return_false: \fi: }
\end{verbatim}
\prg_generate_conditional_variant:Nnn \tl_if_empty:N { c } { p , T , F , TF }

(End definition for \tl_if_empty:NTF. This function is documented on page 104.)

\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \tl_if_empty:n #1 { p , TF , T , F }
\begin{verbatim}
{ \if:w \scan_stop: \tl_to_str:n {#1} \scan_stop: \prg_return_true: \\
\else: \prg_return_false: \fi: }
\end{verbatim}
\prg_generate_conditional_variant:Nnn \tl_if_empty:n { V } { p , TF , T , F }

(End definition for \tl_if_empty:nTF. This function is documented on page 104.)

\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \tl_if_empty:o #1 \tl_if_empty:o
\begin{verbatim}
{ \if:w \scan_stop: \tl_to_str:n {#1} \scan_stop: \prg_return_true: \\
\else: \prg_return_false: \fi: }
\end{verbatim}
\prg_generate_conditional_variant:Nnn \tl_if_empty:o { c } { p , T , F , TF }

(End definition for \tl_if_empty:nTF. This function is documented on page 104.)

The auxiliary function \_\_\_tl_if_empty_if:o is for use in various token list conditionals which reduce to testing if a given token list is empty after applying a simple function to it. The test for emptiness is based on \tl_if_empty:nTF, but the expansion is hard-coded for efficiency, as this auxiliary function is used in several places. We don’t put \prg_return_true: and so on in the definition of the auxiliary, because that would prevent an optimization applied to conditionals that end with this code. Also the
\_tl_if_empty_if:o is expanded once in \_tl_if_empty:oTF for efficiency as well (and
to reduce code doubling).
\cs_new:Npn \_tl_if_empty_if:o #1
{ \if:w \scan_stop: \_kernel_tl_to_str:w \exp_after:wN {#1} \scan_stop: }
\exp_args:Nno \use:n
{ \prg_new_conditional:Npnn \_tl_if_empty_if:o #1 { p , TF , T , F } }
{ \_tl_if_empty_if:o #1 \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi: }
(End definition for \_tl_if_empty:oTF and \_tl_if_empty_if:o. This function is documented on page 104.)
\_tl_if_blank_p:n \_tl_if_blank_p:V \_tl_if_blank_p:o \_tl_if_blank:nTF \_tl_if_blank:VTF \_tl_if_blank:oTF \_tl_if_blank_p:NNw
\_tl_if_blank:FTF \_tl_if_blank:VTF \_tl_if_blank:nNF \_tl_if_blank:pNN \_tl_if_blank:pNc \_tl_if_blank:pCc \_tl_if_blank:ccTF
\_tl_if_eq:p:NN \_tl_if_eq:p:Nc \_tl_if_eq:p:cc \_tl_if_eq:nNF \_tl_if_eq:VTF \_tl_if_eq:oTF \_tl_if_eq:ccTF
\_tl_if_eq:ccTF
\l__tl_internal_a_tl \l__tl_internal_b_tl
Temporary storage.
\l__tl_internal_a_tl \l__tl_internal_b_tl
TEX skips spaces when reading a non-delimited arguments. Thus, a (token list) is blank
if and only if \use_none:n ⟨token list⟩ % is empty after one expansion. The auxiliary
\_tl_if_empty_if:o is a fast emptyness test, converting its argument to a string (after
one expansion) and using the test \if:w \scan_stop: ... \scan_stop:.
\exp_args:Nno \use:n
{ \prg_new_conditional:Npnn \_tl_if_blank:n #1 { p , T , F , TF } }
{ \_tl_if_blank:n #1 \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi: }
\prg_generate_conditional_variant:Nnn \_tl_if_blank:n { e , V , o } { p , T , F , TF }
(End definition for \_tl_if_blank:nTF and \_tl_if_blank_p:NNw. This function is documented on page 104.)
\_tl_if_eq:p:NN \_tl_if_eq:p:Nc \_tl_if_eq:p:cc \_tl_if_eq:nNF \_tl_if_eq:VTF \_tl_if_eq:oTF \_tl_if_eq:ccTF
\_tl_if_eq:ccTF
\l__tl_internal_a_tl \l__tl_internal_b_tl
Temporary storage.
\l__tl_internal_a_tl \l__tl_internal_b_tl

677
A simple store and compare routine.

```latex
\tl_if_eq:Nn \tl_if_eq:nn
```

See \tl_if_in:nnTF for further comments. Here we simply expand the token list variable and pass it to \tl_if_in:nnTF.

```latex
\tl_if_in:Nn \tl_if_in:cn
```

Once more, the test relies on the emptiness test for robustness. The function \_\_tl_\_tmp:w removes tokens until the first occurrence of #2. If this does not appear in #1, then the final #2 is removed, leaving an empty token list. Otherwise some tokens remain, and the test is false. See \tl_if_empty:nTF for details on the emptiness test.

Treating correctly cases like \tl_if_in:nnTF \{a state\} \{states\}, where #1#2 contains #2 before the end, requires special care. To cater for this case, we insert {} between the two token lists. This marker may not appear in #2 because of \TeX\ limitations on what can delimit a parameter, hence we are safe. Using two brace groups makes the
test work also for empty arguments. The \if_false: constructions are a faster way to do \group_align_safe_begin: and \group_align_safe_end:. The \scan_stop: ensures that f-expanding \tl_if_in:nnTF does not lead to unbalanced braces.

\tl_if_novalue_p:n \tl_if_novalue:nTF \__tl_if_novalue:w

Tests whether ##1 matches -NoValue- exactly (with suitable catcodes): this is similar to \quark_if_nil:nTF. The first argument of \__tl_if_novalue:w is empty if and only if ##1 starts with -NoValue-, while the second argument is empty if ##1 is exactly -NoValue- or if it has a question mark just following -NoValue-. In this second case, however, the material after the first ?! remains and makes the emptiness test return false.

\tl_if_single_p:N \tl_if_single:nTF

Expand the token list and feed it to \tl_if_single:nTF.

\tl_if_single_p:n \tl_if_single:nTF \__tl_if_single:nw

This test is similar to \tl_if_empty:nTF. Expanding \use_none:nn #1 ?? once yields an empty result if #1 is blank, a single ? if #1 has a single item, and otherwise yields some tokens ending with ???. Then, \__kernel_tl_to_str:w makes sure there are no odd category codes. An earlier version would compare the result to a single ? using string comparison, but the Lua call is slow in LuaTeX. Instead, \__tl_if_single:nw picks
the second token in front of it. If \#1 is empty, this token is the trailing ? and the \if:w test yields false. If \#1 has a single item, the token is \scan_stop: and the \if:w test yields true. Otherwise, it is one of the characters resulting from \tl_to_str:n and the \if:w test yields false. Note that \if:w and \__kernel_tl_to_str:w are primitives that take care of expansion.

\begin{verbatim}
\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \tl_if_single:n \#1 { p , T , F , TF }
\prg_return_true:
\else:
\prg_return_false:
\fi:
\cs_new:Npn \__tl_if_single:nnw \#1 \s__tl_stop {\#2}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \tl_if_single:nTF and \__tl_if_single:nnw. This function is documented on page 105.)

There are four cases: empty token list, token list starting with a normal token, with a brace group, or with a space token. If the token list starts with a normal token, remove it and check for emptiness. For the next case, an empty token list is not a single token. Finally, we have a non-empty token list starting with a space or a brace group. Applying f-expansion yields an empty result if and only if the token list is a single space.

\begin{verbatim}
\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \tl_if_single_token:n \#1 { p , T , F , TF }
\tl_if_head_is_N_type:nTF {\#1}
\tl_if_empty_if:o { \use_none:n \#1 }
{ \tl_if_empty:nTF {\#1}
{ \if_false: }
{ \__tl_if_empty_if:o { \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w \#1 } }
\prg_return_true:
\else:
\prg_return_false:
\fi:
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \tl_if_single_token:nTF. This function is documented on page 105.)

The aim here is to allow the case statement to be evaluated using a known number of expansion steps (two), and without needing to use an explicit “end of recursion” marker. That is achieved by using the test input as the final case, as this is always true. The trick is then to tidy up the output such that the appropriate case code plus either the true or false branch code is inserted.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__tl_case:nnTF \#1 \#2\#3
\exp:w \__tl_case:nnTF \#1 \{ \#2 \} \{ \#3 \}
\end{verbatim}

\(680\)
To tidy up the recursion, there are two outcomes. If there was a hit to one of the cases searched for, then #1 is the code to insert, #2 is the next case to check on and #3 is all of the rest of the cases code. That means that #4 is the true branch code, and #5 tidies up the spare \s__tl_mark and the false branch. On the other hand, if none of the cases matched then we arrive here using the “termination” case of comparing the search with itself. That means that #1 is empty, #2 is the first \s__tl_mark and so #4 is the false code (the true code is mopped up by #3).

(End definition for \tl_case:NnTF and others. This function is documented on page 106.)

52.8 Mapping over token lists

Expandable loop macro for token lists. We use the internal scan mark \s__tl_stop (defined later), which is not allowed to show up in the token list \#1 since it is internal to \l3tl. This allows us a very fast test of whether some \langle item\rangle is the end-marker \s__tl_stop, namely call \_\_tl_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w \langle item\rangle \langle function\rangle \s__tl_stop, which calls \langle function\rangle if the \langle item\rangle is the end-marker. To speed up the loop even more, only test one out of eight items, and once we hit one of the eight end-markers, go more slowly through the last few items of the list using \_\_tl_map_function_end:w.

\_\_tl_map_function:nN \_\_tl_map_function:NN \_\_tl_map_function:cN \_\_tl_map_function:Nnnnnnn \_\_tl_map_function_end:w \_\_tl_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w

681
The inline functions are straightforward by now. We use a little trick with the counter \g__kernel_prg_map_int to make them nestable. We can also make use of \__tl_map_function:Nnnnnnnn from before.

\prg_break_point:Nn \tl_map_break: { }

\cs_new:Npn \tl_map_break: { }

{ \exp_args:No \tl_map_function:nN }

\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_map_function:NN { c }

\cs_new:Npn \__tl_map_function:Nnnnnnnnn #1#2#3#4#5#6#7#8#9

\__tl_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w

#9 \__tl_map_function_end:w \s__tl_stop

#1 {#2} #1 {#3} #1 {#4} #1 {#5} #1 {#6} #1 {#7} #1 {#8} #1 {#9}

\__tl_map_function:Nnnnnnnnn #1

\cs_new:Npn \__tl_map_function_end:w \s__tl_stop #1#2

{ \__tl_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w #2 \tl_map_break: \s__tl_stop


 \__tl_map_function:Nnnnnnnnn #1

\cs_new_protected:Npn \tl_map_inline:nn #1#2

{ \int_gincr:N \g__kernel_prg_map_int

\cs_gset_protected:cpn

\exp_args:No \tl_map_function:nN

\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_map_function:NN { c }

\prg_break_point:Nn \tl_map_break: }

\cs_new_protected:Npn \tl_map_inline:Nn

\cs_new_protected:Npn \tl_map_inline:cn

\__tl_map_tokens:nnnnnnnn

\__tl_map_tokens_end:w

Much like the function mapping.

\prg_break_point:Nn \tl_map_break: { }

\cs_new:Npn \tl_map_tokens:nn #1#2

\__tl_map_tokens:nnnnnnnn {#2} #1

\__tl_map_tokens:nnnnnnnn {#2} #1

\prg_break_point:Nn \tl_map_break: { }

\cs_new:Npn \tl_map_tokens:nn

\cs_new:Npn \tl_map_tokens:Nn

\cs_new:Npn \tl_map_tokens:cn

\__tl_map_tokens:nnnnnnnn

\__tl_map_tokens_end:w

(End definition for \tl_map_function:nN and others. These functions are documented on page 110.)

(End definition for \tl_map_inline:nn and \tl_map_inline:Nn. These functions are documented on page 110.)
52.9 Using token lists

\tl_to_str:n \tl_to_str:V
Another name for a primitive: defined in \texttt{l3basics}.

(End definition for \texttt{tl_to_str:n}. This function is documented on page 107.)

\tl_to_str:N \tl_to_str:c
These functions return the replacement text of a token list as a string.

(End definition for \texttt{tl_to_str:N}. This function is documented on page 107.)
Token lists which are simply not defined give a clear \TeX error here. No such luck for ones equal to \texttt{scan_stop}: so instead a test is made and if there is an issue an error is forced.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \tl_use:N #1
\{ 
\tl_if_exist:NTF #1 {#1} 
\{ \msg_expandable_error:nnn { kernel } { bad-variable } {#1} \}
\}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_use:N { c }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{tl_use:N}. This function is documented on page 108.)

52.10 Working with the contents of token lists

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \tl_count:n #1 
\{ 
\int_eval:n { 0 \tl_map_function:nN {#1} \__tl_count:n } 
\}
\cs_new:Npn \tl_count:N #1 
\{ 
\int_eval:n { 0 \tl_map_function:NN #1 \__tl_count:n } 
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__tl_count:n #1 { + 1 }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_count:n { V , o }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_count:N { c }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{tl_count:n}, \texttt{tl_count:N}, and \texttt{__tl_count:n}. These functions are documented on page 108.)

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \tl_count_tokens:n #1 
\{ 
\int_eval:n 
\{ 0 \tl_map_function:nN \__tl_count:n \__tl_count_normal:n \__tl_count_group:n \__tl_count_space:n {#1} \}
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__tl_count_normal:n #1 { 1 + }
\cs_new:Npn \__tl_count_group:n #1 { + 1 }
\cs_new:Npn \__tl_count_space:n #1 { \c_zero_int }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_count_tokens:n { N , V , o }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tl_count_normal:n { N }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tl_count_group:n { N }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tl_count_space:n { N }
\end{verbatim}

The token count is computed through an \texttt{int_eval:n} construction. Each \texttt{1+} is output to the left, into the integer expression, and the sum is ended by the \texttt{exp_end:} inserted by \texttt{\__tl_count_end:wn} (which is technically implemented as \texttt{\c_zero_int}). Somewhat a hack!

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \tl_count:n \__tl_count_normal:n \__tl_count_group:n \__tl_count_space:n #1 
\{ 1 + \}
\end{verbatim}
Reversal of a token list is done by taking one item at a time and putting it after \s__-tl_stop.

Trimming spaces from around the input is deferred to an internal function whose first argument is the token list to trim, augmented by an initial \__tl_trim_mark:, and whose second argument is a ⟨continuation⟩, which receives as a braced argument \__tl_trim_mark:. The control sequence \__tl_trim_mark: expands to nothing in a single expansion. In the case at hand, we take \__kernel_exp_not:w \exp_after:wN { \use_none:nn + #2 } as our continuation, so that space trimming behaves correctly within an x-type expansion.
end of the token list: then #1 is the token list and #3 is \__tl_trim_spaces_auxii:w. This hands the relevant tokens to the loop \__tl_trim_spaces_auxiii:w, responsible for trimming trailing spaces. The end is reached when \s__tl_nil matches the one present in the definition of \tl_trim_spaces:n. Then \__tl_trim_spaces_auxiv:w puts the token list into a group, with a lingering \__tl_trim_mark: at the start (which will expand to nothing in one step of expansion), and feeds this to the (continuation).

\set_protected:Npn \__tl_tmp:w #1
\cs_new:Npn \__tl_trim_spaces:nn ##1
\__tl_trim_spaces_auxi:w ##1 \__tl_trim_mark: #1 ##2 \__tl_trim_mark: ##3
\__tl_trim_spaces_auxii:w \__tl_trim_mark: \__tl_trim_mark: ##1
\__tl_trim_spaces_auxiii:w \__tl_trim_mark: #1 \s__tl_nil
\__tl_trim_spaces_auxiv:w \s__tl_nil
\__tl_stop

{ \__tl_tmp:w { ~ } }

(End definition for \tl_trim_spaces:n and others. These functions are documented on page 109.)

\__tl_sort:Nn
\__tl_sort:cn
\__tl_gsort:Nn
\__tl_gsort:cn
\__tl_sort:nN

Implemented in \l3sort.

(End definition for \tl_sort:Nn, \tl_gsort:Nn, and \tl_sort:nN. These functions are documented on page 116.)
52.11 The first token from a token list

Finding the head of a token list expandably always strips braces, which is fine as this is consistent with for example mapping over a list. The empty brace groups in \tl_head:n ensure that a blank argument gives an empty result. The result is returned within the \unexpanded primitive. The approach here is to use \if_false: to allow us to use } as the closing delimiter: this is the only safe choice, as any other token would not be able to parse it’s own code. If the \expanded primitive is available it is used to get a fast and safe code variant in which we don’t have to ensure that the left-most token is an internal to not break in an f-type expansion. If \expanded isn’t available, using a marker, we can see if what we are grabbing is exactly the marker, or there is anything else to deal with. If there is, there is a loop. If not, tidy up and leave the item in the output stream. More detail in http://tex.stackexchange.com/a/70168.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_if_exist:NTF \tex_expanded:D
  \cs_new:Npn \tl_head:n #1
  { \__kernel_exp_not:w \tex_expanded:D
      { \if_false: \fi: \__tl_head_aux:n #1 \s__tl_stop } } \cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_head:n { V , v , f }
\end{verbatim}

To correctly leave the tail of a token list, it’s important not to absorb any of the tail part
as an argument. For example, the simple definition
\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \tl_tail:n #1 { \tl_tail:w #1 \q_stop }
\cs_new:Npn \tl_tail:w #1#2 \q_stop
\end{verbatim}
would give the wrong result for \texttt{\tl_tail:n \{ a \{ bc \} \}} (the braces would be stripped). Thus the only safe way to proceed is to first check that there is an item to grab (i.e. that the argument is not blank) and assuming there is to dispose of the first item. As with \texttt{\tl_head:n}, the result is protected from further expansion by \texttt{\unexpanded}.

While we could optimise the test here, this would leave some tokens “banned” in the input, which we do not have with this definition.

\begin{verbatim}
\exp_args:Nno \use:n { \cs_new:Npn \tl_tail:n #1 }
\exp_after:wN \__kernel_exp_not:w
\tl_if_blank:nTF {#1}
{ { } }
{ \exp_after:wN { \use_none:n #1 } }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_tail:n { V , v , f }
\cs_new:Npn \tl_tail:N { \exp_args:No \tl_tail:n }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\tl_head:N} and others. These functions are documented on page 112.)

Accessing the first token of a token list is tricky in three cases: when it has category code 1 (begin-group token), when it is an explicit space, with category code 10 and character code 32, or when the token list is empty (obviously). Forgetting temporarily about this issue we would use the following test in \texttt{\tl_if_\_head_eq_charcode:nN}. Here, \texttt{\tl_head:w} yields the first token of the token list, then passed to \texttt{\exp_not:N}.

\begin{verbatim}
\if_charcode:w \exp_after:wN \exp_not:N \tl_head:w #1 \q_nil \q_stop
\exp_not:N #2
\prg_return_true:
\else:
\prg_return_false:
\fi:
\end{verbatim}
The two first special cases are detected by testing if the token list starts with an \texttt{N}-type token (the extra \texttt? sends empty token lists to the \texttt{true} branch of this test). In those cases, the first token is a character, and since we only care about its character code, we can use \texttt{\str_head:n} to access it (this works even if it is a space character). An empty argument results in \texttt{\tl_head:w} leaving two tokens: \texttt{^} and \texttt{\_\_tl_if_head_eq_empty_arg:w} which will result in the \texttt{\if_charcode:w} test being false and remove \texttt{\exp_not:N} and \texttt{#2}.

\begin{verbatim}
\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \tl_if_head_eq_charcode:nN #1#2 { p , T , F , TF }
{ \if_charcode:w \tl_if_head_is_N_type:nTF { #1 ? } 
{ \_\_tl_if_head_exp_not:w \#1 { ^ { \_\_tl_if_head_eq_empty_arg:w } } \s__tl_stop }
{ \str_head:n {#1} }
\exp_not:N #2
\prg_return_true:
\else:
\prg_return_false:
\fi:
\end{verbatim}
For `\tl_if_head_eq_catcode:nN`, again we detect special cases with a `\tl_if_head_is_N_type:n`. Then we need to test if the first token is a begin-group token or an explicit space token, and produce the relevant token, either `\c_group_begin_token` or `\c_space_token`. Again, for an empty argument, a hack is used, removing the token given by the user and leaving two tokens in the input stream which will make the `\if_catcode:w` test return false.

```
\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \tl_if_head_eq_catcode:nN #1 #2 { p , T , F , TF }
{ \if_catcode:w \tl_if_head_is_N_type:nTF { #1 ? } 
  \__tl_head_exp_not:w #1 { ^ \__tl_if_head_eq_empty_arg:w } \s__tl_stop }
\tl_if_head_is_group:nTF {#1}
\c_group_begin_token
\c_space_token
\exp_not:N #2
\prg_return_true:
\else:
\prg_return_false:
\fi:
\prg_generate_conditional_variant:Nnn \tl_if_head_eq_catcode:nN { o } { p , TF , T , F }
```

For `\tl_if_head_eq_meaning:nN`, again, detect special cases. In the normal case, use `\tl_head:w` with no `\exp_not:N` this time, since `\if_meaning:w` causes no expansion. With an empty argument, the test is `true`, and `\use_none:nnn` removes `#2` and `\prg_return_true:` and `\else:` (it is safe this way here as in this case `\prg_new_conditional:Npnn` didn’t optimize these two away). In the special cases, we know that the first token is a character, hence `\if_charcode:w` and `\if_catcode:w` together are enough. We combine them in some order, hopefully faster than the reverse. Tests are not nested because the arguments may contain unmatched primitive conditionals.

```
\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \tl_if_head_eq_meaning:nN #1#2 { p , T , F , TF }
{ \if_meaning:w \__tl_tl_head:w #1 { ?? \use_none:nnn } \s__tl_stop } \if_charcode:w \str_head:n {#1} \exp_not:N #2 \exp_after:wN \use_ii:nn
```
Both \texttt{\_\_\_tl\_head\_exp\_nort:w} and \texttt{\_\_\_tl\_head\_exp\_catcode:w} will need to get the first token of their argument and apply \texttt{\exp\_not:N} to it. \texttt{\_\_\_tl\_head\_exp\_nort:w} does exactly that.

If the argument of \texttt{\_\_\_tl\_head\_eq\_charcode:w} and \texttt{\_\_\_tl\_head\_eq\_catcode:w} was empty \texttt{\_\_\_\_\_tl\_head\_eq\_empty\_arg:w} will be left in the input stream. This macro has to remove \texttt{\exp\_not:N} and the following token from the input stream to make sure no unbalanced if-construct is created and leave tokens there which make the two tests return \texttt{false}.

\begin{verbatim}
A token list can be empty, can start with an explicit space character (catcode 10 and charcode 32), can start with a begin-group token (catcode 1), or start with an N-type argument. In the first two cases, the line involving \texttt{\_\_\_\_\_tl\_head\_is\_N\_type\_auxi:w} produces \texttt{f} (and otherwise nothing). In the third case (begin-group token), the lines involving \texttt{\token\_to\_str:N} produce a single closing brace. The category code test is thus true exactly in the fourth case, which is what we want. One cannot optimize by moving one of the \texttt{\scan\_stop:} to the beginning: if \texttt{#1} contains primitive conditionals, all of its occurrences must be dealt with before the \texttt{\if:w} tries to skip the \texttt{true} branch of the conditional.
\end{verbatim}
\tl_if_head_is_N_type:nTF
\tl_if_head_is_N_type:TF
\__tl_if_head_is_N_type_auxii:n

\exp_after:wN \__tl_if_head_is_N_type_auxii:n
\exp_after:wN \if_false: \fi:

\cs_new:Npn \__tl_if_head_is_N_type_auxii:n #1
{ \exp_after:wN \use_none:n \exp_after:wN }
\exp_after:wN { \if_false: } \fi:
\exp_after:wN \__tl_if_head_is_N_type_auxii:n #1
{ \exp_after:wN \use_none:n \exp_after:wN }

(End definition for \tl_if_head_is_N_type:TF and others. This function is documented on page 107.)

\tl_if_head_is_group_p:n
\tl_if_head_is_group:n TF
\__tl_if_head_is_group_fi_false:w

Pass the first token of #1 through \token_to_str:N, then check for the brace balance. The extra ? caters for an empty argument. This could be made faster, but we need all brace tricks to happen in one step of expansion, keeping the token list brace balanced at all times.

\prg_new_conditional:Nppnn \tl_if_head_is_group:n #1 { p , T , F , TF }
{ \if:w
\exp_after:wN \use_none:n
\exp_after:wN { \exp_after:wN { \token_to_str:N #1 ? } }
\scan_stop: \scan_stop:
\__tl_if_head_is_group_fi_false:w
\fi:
\if_true:
\prg_return_true:
\else:
\prg_return_false:
\fi:
\cs_new:Npn \__tl_if_head_is_group_fi_false:w \fi: \if_true: { \fi: \if_false: }

(End definition for \tl_if_head_is_group:nTF and \__tl_if_head_is_group_fi_false:w. This function is documented on page 106.)

\tl_if_head_is_space_p:n
\tl_if_head_is_space:n TF
\__tl_if_head_is_space:w

The auxiliary’s argument is all that is before the first explicit space in \prg_do_nothing:#1?. If that is a single \prg_do_nothing: the test yields true. Otherwise, that is more than one token, and the test yields false. The work is done within braces (with an \if_false: \fi: ... \fi: construction) both to hide potential alignment tab characters from \TeX in a table, and to allow for removing what remains of the token list after its first space. The use of \if:w ensures that the result of a single step of expansion directly yields a balanced token list (no trailing closing brace).

\prg_new_conditional:Nppnn \tl_if_head_is_space:n #1 { p , T , F , TF }
{ \if:w
\if_false: { \fi: \__tl_if_head_is_space:w \prg_do_nothing: #1 - } \scan_stop: \scan_stop:
\prg_return_true:
\else:
\prg_return_false:
\fi:
\cs_new:Npn \__tl_if_head_is_space:w #1 - }

\exp_args:Nno \use:n { \cs_new:Npn \__tl_if_head_is_space:w #1 - }
{ \__tl_if_empty_if:o {#1} \else: f \fi:
52.12 Token by token changes

The \_\_tl_\_act\_\_...\_ functions may be applied to any token list. Hence, we use a private quark, to allow any token, even quarks, in the token list. Only \s__tl_act_stop may not appear in the token lists manipulated by \_\_tl_\_act\_NNN functions.

To help control the expansion, \_\_tl_\_act\_NNN should always be preceded by \exp:w and ends by producing \exp_end: once the result has been obtained. This way no internal token of it can be accidentally end up in the input stream. Because \s__tl_act_stop can’t appear without braces around it in the argument #1 of \_\_tl_\_act_loop:w, we can use this marker to set up a fast test for leading spaces.

(We expand the definition \_\_tl_\_act\_if_head_is_space:nTF when setting up \_\_tl_\_act_loop:w, so we can then undefine the auxiliary.) In the loop, we check how the token list begins and act accordingly. In the “group” case, we may have reached \s__tl_\_act_stop, the end of the list. Then leave \exp_end: and the result in the input stream, to terminate the expansion of \exp:w. Otherwise, apply the relevant function to the “arguments”, #3 and to the head of the token list. Then repeat the loop. The scheme is the same if the token list starts with an N-type or with a space, making sure that \_\_tl_\_act_space:wNNNN gobbles the space.
\__tl_act:NNNn loops over tokens, groups, and spaces in #4. \s_@@_act_stop serves as the end of token list marker, the ? after it avoids losing outer braces. The result is stored as an argument for the dummy function \__tl_act_result:n.

\__tl_act:NNNn

Typically, the output is done to the right of what was already output, using \__tl_act_output:n, but for the \__tl_act_reverse functions, it should be done to the left.

\tl_reverse:n
\tl_reverse:o
\tl_reverse:V

The goal here is to reverse without losing spaces nor braces. This is done using the general internal function \__tl_act:NNNn. Spaces and “normal” tokens are output on the left of the current output. Grouped tokens are output to the left but without any reversal within the group.
The idea here is to find the offset of the item from the left, then use a loop to grab the correct item. If the resulting offset is too large, then \texttt{\_\_tl_if_recursion_tail\_break:nN} terminates the loop, and returns nothing at all.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \tl_item:nn #1#2
{ \exp_args:Nf \__tl_item:nn { \exp_args:Nf \__tl_item_aux:nn { \int_eval:n {#2} } {#1} } #1
\q__tl_recursion_tail \prg_break_point: }
\cs_new:Npn \__tl_item_aux:nn #1#2
{ \int_compare:nNnTF {#1} < 0
{ \int_eval:n { \tl_count:n {#2} + 1 + #1 } }
#1 }
\cs_new:Npn \__tl_item:nn #1#2
{ \__tl_if_recursion_tail_break:nN {#2} \prg_break:
\int_compare:nNnTF {#1} = 1
{ \prg_break:n { \exp_not:n {#2} } }
\end{verbatim}

52.13 Using a single item
\tl_rand_item:n  Importantly \tl_item:nn only evaluates its argument once.
\tl_rand_item:N  \tl_rand_item:c

To avoid checking for the end of the token list at every step, start by counting the number
l of items and “normalizing” the bounds, namely clamping them to the interval \([0, l]\) and
dealing with negative indices. More precisely, \_\_tl_range_items:nnNn receives the
number of items to skip at the beginning of the token list, the index of the last item
to keep, a function which is either \_\_tl_range:w or the token list itself. If nothing
should be kept, leave {}: this stops the f-expansion of \tl_head:f and that function
produces an empty result. Otherwise, repeatedly call \_\_tl_range_skip:w to delete #1
items from the input stream (the extra brace group avoids an off-by-one shift). For the
braced version \_\_tl_range_braced:w sets up \_\_tl_range_collect_braced:w which
stores items one by one in an argument after the semicolon. Depending on the first token
of the tail, either just move it (if it is a space) or also decrement the number of items left
to find. Eventually, the result is a brace group followed by the rest of the token list, and
\tl_head:f cleans up and gives the result in \exp_not:n.
\cs_new:Npn \__tl_range:nnNn \#1#2#3#4
\begin{verbatim}
{ \if_int_compare:w #2 > #1 \exp_stop_f: \else:
\exp_after:wN { \exp_after:wN }
\fi:
\exp_after:wN #3
\int_value:w \int_eval:n { #2 - #1 } \exp_after:wN ;
\exp_after:wN { \exp:w \__tl_range_skip:w #1 ; { } #4 }
}
\cs_new:Npn \__tl_range_skip:w #1 ; #2
\begin{verbatim}
{ \if_int_compare:w #1 > \c_zero_int
\exp_after:wN \__tl_range_skip:w
\int_value:w \int_eval:n { #1 - 1 } \exp_after:wN ;
\else:
\exp_after:wN \exp_end:
\fi:
}
\cs_new:Npn \__tl_range:w #1 ; #2
\begin{verbatim}
\exp_args:Nf \__tl_range_collect:nn
{ \__tl_range_skip_spaces:n {#2} } {#1}
}
\cs_new:Npn \__tl_range_skip_spaces:n #1
\begin{verbatim}
{ \tl_if_head_is_space:nTF {#1}
{ \exp_args:Nf \__tl_range_skip_spaces:n {#1} }
{ { } #1 }
}
\cs_new:Npn \__tl_range_collect:nn #1#2
\begin{verbatim}
{ \int_compare:nNnTF {#2} = 0
{#1}
{ \exp_args:No \tl_if_head_is_space:nTF { \use_none:n #1 }
{ \exp_args:Nf \__tl_range_collect:nn
{ \__tl_range_collect_space:nw #1 } #2 }
{ \__tl_range_collect:ff
{ \exp_args:No \tl_if_head_is_N_type:nTF { \use_none:n #1 }
{ \__tl_range_collect_N:nN }
{ \__tl_range_collect_group:nn }
#1 }
{ \int_eval:n { #2 - 1 } }
}
}
{ \__tl_range_collect_space:nw #1 - { { #1 - } }
}
}\end{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}
This function converts an ⟨index⟩ argument into an explicit position in the token list (a result of 0 denoting “out of bounds”). Expects two explicit integer arguments: the ⟨index⟩ #1 and the string count #2. If #1 is negative, replace it by #1 + #2 + 1, then limit to the range [0, #2].

(End definition for \_tl_range:nn and others. These functions are documented on page 115.)

\_tl_range_normalize:nn

\cs_new:Npn \__tl_range_normalize:nn #1#2 { \int_eval:n { \if_int_compare:w #1 < \c_zero_int \if_int_compare:w #1 < -#2 \exp_stop_f: 0 \else: \fi: \else: \fi: \else: \fi: \else: \fi: \else: \fi: \else: \fi: \else: \fi: } { \token_to_str:N #2 = \__kernel_exp_not:w \exp_after:wN {#2} } }

(End definition for \_tl_range_normalize:nn.)

52.14 Viewing token lists

Showing token list variables is done after checking that the variable is defined (see \__kernel_register_show:N).

\cs_new_protected:Npn \tl_show:N { \__tl_show:NN \tl_show:n } \cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_show:N { c }

\cs_new_protected:Npn \tl_log:N { \__tl_show:NN \tl_log:n } \cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_log:N { c }

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__tl_show:NN #1#2 { \__kernel_chk_defined:NT #2 { \exp_args:Nf \tl_if_empty:nTF { \cs_prefix_spec:N #2 \cs_argument_spec:N #2 } { \exp_args:Ne #1 { \token_to_str:N #2 = \__kernel_exp_not:w \exp_after:wN {#2} } } } { \msg_error:nnxxx { kernel } { bad-type } { \token_to_str:N #2 } { \token_to_meaning:N #2 } { tl } } }
Many \texttt{show} functions are based on \texttt{tl\_show:n}. The argument of \texttt{tl\_show:n} is line-wrapped using \texttt{iow\_wrap:nnn} but with a leading \texttt{>~} and trailing period, both removed before passing the wrapped text to the \texttt{showtokens} primitive. This primitive shows the result with a leading \texttt{>~} and trailing period.

The token list \texttt{\_\_tl\_internal\_a\_tl} containing the result of all these manipulations is displayed to the terminal using \texttt{tex\_showtokens:D} and an odd \texttt{exp\_after:wN} which expand the closing brace to improve the output slightly. The calls to \texttt{\_\_kernel\_iow\_with:Nn} ensure that the \texttt{newline} character is set to 10 so that the \texttt{iow\_newline} is inserted by the line-wrapping code are correctly recognized by \TeX, and that \texttt{errorcontextlines} is \texttt{-1} to avoid printing irrelevant context.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \tl_show:n #1
  \{ \iow_wrap:nnnN { \texttt{>~} \tl_to_str:n {#1} \texttt{.} } { } { } \__tl_show:n \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__tl\_show:n #1
  \{ \tl_set:Nf \l\__tl\_internal\_a\_tl { \__tl\_show:w #1 \s\__tl\_stop } \__kernel\_iow\_with:Nn \tex\_newlinechar:D { 10 } \__kernel\_iow\_with:Nn \tex\_errorcontextlines:D { -1 } \{ \tex\_showtokens:D \exp\_after:wN \exp\_after:wN \exp\_after:wN \{ \exp\_after:wN \l\__tl\_internal\_a\_tl \} \}
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__tl\_show:w #1 > \texttt{#2} \texttt{.} \s\__tl\_stop \texttt{#2} \}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\_\_tl\_show:n}, \texttt{\_\_tl\_show:n}, and \texttt{\_\_tl\_show:w}. This function is documented on page 109.)

\texttt{tl\_log:n} Logging is much easier, simply line-wrap. The \texttt{>~} and trailing period is there to match the output of \texttt{\_\_tl\_show:n}.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \tl\_log:n #1
  \{ \iow_wrap:nnnN { \texttt{>\texttt{~}} \tl_to_str:n {#1} \texttt{.} } { } { } \iow\_log:n \}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\_\_tl\_log:n}, \texttt{\_\_tl\_show:n}, and \texttt{\_\_tl\_show:w}. This function is documented on page 109.)

\texttt{\_\_kernel\_chk\_tl\_type:NnnT} Helper for checking that \texttt{#1} has the correct internal structure to be of a certain type. Make sure that it is defined and that it is a token list, namely a macro with no \texttt{long} nor \texttt{protected} prefix. Then compare \texttt{#1} to an attempt at reconstructing a valid structure of the given type using \texttt{#2} (see implementation of \texttt{seq\_show:N} for instance). If that is successful run the requested code \texttt{#4}.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \\_\_kernel\_chk\_tl\_type:NnnT \#1\#2\#3\#4
  \{ \\_\_kernel\_chk\_defined:NT \#1 \}
  \exp\_args:Nf \tl\_if\_empty:nTF
  \{ \cs\_prefix\_spec:N \#1 \cs\_argument\_spec:N \#1 \}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\_\_kernel\_log:n}. This function is documented on page 110.)
\{ \tl_set:Nx \l__tl_internal_a_tl {#3} \tl_if_eq:NNTF \l__tl_internal_a_tl {#4} { \msg_error:nnxx { kernel } { bad-type } \{ \token_to_str:N #1 \} { \tl_to_str:N #1 \} {#2} \{ \tl_to_str:N \l__tl_internal_a_tl \} \} \} \} \} \} (End definition for \l__kernel_chk_tl_type:HanT)

52.15 Internal scan marks
\__tl_nil \__tl_mark \__tl_stop Internal scan marks. These are defined here at the end because the code for \scan_new:N depends on some \l3tl functions.
\tl_new:N \g_tmpa_tl \tl_new:N \g_tmpb_tl (End definition for \g_tmpa_tl and \g_tmpb_tl. These variables are documented on page 119.)

52.16 Scratch token lists
\g_tmpa_tl \g_tmpb_tl Global temporary token list variables. They are supposed to be set and used immediately, with no delay between the definition and the use because you can’t count on other macros not to redefine them from under you.
\tl_new:N \g_tmpa_tl \tl_new:N \g_tmpb_tl (End definition for \g_tmpa_tl and \g_tmpb_tl. These variables are documented on page 119.)

\l_tmpa_tl \l_tmpb_tl These are local temporary token list variables. Be sure not to assume that the value you put into them will survive for long—see discussion above.
\tl_new:N \l_tmpa_tl \tl_new:N \l_tmpb_tl (End definition for \l_tmpa_tl and \l_tmpb_tl. These variables are documented on page 118.)

We finally clean up a temporary control sequence that we have used at various points to set up some definitions.
\cs_undefine:N \__tl_tmp:w ⟨/package⟩
Chapter 53

l3str implementation

53.1 Internal auxiliaries

\s__str_mark\n\s__str_stop
Internal scan marks.

\scan_new:N \s__str_mark
\scan_new:N \s__str_stop
(End definition for \s__str_mark and \s__str_stop.)

\__str_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w\n\__str_use_i_delimit_by_s_stop:nw
Functions to gobble up to a scan mark.

\cs_new:Npn \__str_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w #1 \s__str_stop { }
\cs_new:Npn \__str_use_i_delimit_by_s_stop:nw #1 #2 \s__str_stop {#1}
(End definition for \__str_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w and \__str_use_i_delimit_by_s_stop:nw.)

\q__str_recursion_tail\n\q__str_recursion_stop
Internal recursion quarks.

\quark_new:N \q__str_recursion_tail
\quark_new:N \q__str_recursion_stop
(End definition for \q__str_recursion_tail and \q__str_recursion_stop.)

\__str_if_recursion_tail_break:NN\n\__str_if_recursion_tail_stop_do:Nn
Functions to query recursion quarks.

\__kernel_quark_new_test:N \__str_recursion_tail_break:NN
\__kernel_quark_new_test:N \__str_recursion_tail_stop_do:Nn
(End definition for \__str_recursion_tail_break:NN and \__str_recursion_tail_stop_do:Nn.)
53.2 Creating and setting string variables

\str_new:N  
\str_new:c
\str_use:N  
\str_use:c
\str_clear:N
\str_clear:c
\str_gclear:N
\str_gclear:c
\str_clear_new:N
\str_clear_new:c
\str_gclear_new:N
\str_gclear_new:c
\str_set_eq:NN
\str_set_eq:cN
\str_set_eq:Nc
\str_set_eq:cc
\str_gset_eq:NN
\str_gset_eq:cN
\str_gset_eq:Nc
\str_gset_eq:cc
\str_concat:NNN
\str_concat:ccc
\str_gconcat:NNN
\str_gconcat:ccc

A string is simply a token list. The full mapping system isn’t set up yet so do things by hand.

\cs_set_protected:Npn \__str_tmp:n #1
\tl_if_blank:nF {#1}
\cs_new_eq:cc { str_ #1 :N } { tl_ #1 :N }
\exp_args:Nc \cs_generate_variant:Nn { str_ #1 :N } { c }
\__str_tmp:n
{ new }
\__str_tmp:n
{ set }
\__str_tmp:n
{ use }
\__str_tmp:n
{ clears }
\__str_tmp:n
{ gclears }
\__str_tmp:n
{ clears }
\__str_tmp:n
{ gclears }
\__str_tmp:n
{ consts }
\__str_tmp:n
{ puts }

Simply convert the token list inputs to ⟨strings⟩.

\cs_set_protected:Npn \__str_tmp:n #1
\tl_if_blank:nF {#1}
\cs_new_eq:cc { str_ #1 :N } { tl_ #1 :N }
\exp_args:Nc \cs_generate_variant:Nn { str_ #1 :N } { c }
\__str_tmp:n
{ new }
\__str_tmp:n
{ set }
\__str_tmp:n
{ use }
\__str_tmp:n
{ gset }
\__str_tmp:n
{ const }
\__str_tmp:n
{ put_left }

(End definition for \str_new:N and others. These functions are documented on page 121.)
53.3 Modifying string variables

Start by applying \texttt{\tl_to_str:n} to convert the old and new token lists to strings, and also apply \texttt{\tl_to_str:N} to avoid any issues if we are fed a token list variable. Then the code is a much simplified version of the token list code because neither the delimiter nor the replacement can contain macro parameters or braces. The delimiter \texttt{\s__str-\mark} cannot appear in the string to edit so it is used in all cases. Some \texttt{x}\texttt{-expansion} is unnecessary. There is no need to avoid losing braces nor to protect against expansion. The ending code is much simplified and does not need to hide in braces.
53.4 String comparisons

String comparisons rely on the primitive \( \text{strcmp} \), so we define a new name for it.

```latex
\cs_new_eq:NN \__str_if_eq:nn \tex_strcmp:D
```

(End definition for \__str_if_eq:nn and \__str_if_eq:nn. These functions are documented on page 122.)

\hspace{1em}\textbf{\__str_if_eq:nn}

More copy-paste!

```latex
\prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \str_if_exist:N \tl_if_exist:N
{ p , T , F , TF }
\prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \str_if_exist:c \tl_if_exist:c
{ p , T , F , TF }
\prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \str_if_exist:p \tl_if_exist:N
{ p , T , F , TF }
\prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \str_if_exist:c \tl_if_exist:N
{ p , T , F , TF }
\prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \str_if_empty:N \tl_if_exist:N
{ p , T , F , TF }
\prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \str_if_empty:c \tl_if_exist:N
{ p , T , F , TF }
```

(End definition for \str_if_exist:N and \str_if_exist:N. These functions are documented on page 122.)

\hspace{1em}\textbf{\__str_if_eq:nn}

Simply rely on \__str_if_eq:nn, which expands to \(-1, 0\) or \(1\). The ee version is created directly because it is more efficient.

```latex
\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \str_compare:nNn { p , T , F , TF }
{ p , T , F , TF }
```

(End definition for \__str_if_eq:nn)

```latex
\hspace{1em}\textbf{\怒_\str_if_eq:nn}
```

End definition for \__str_if_eq:nn and \__str_if_eq:nn.

Removal is just a special case of replacement.

```latex
\cs_new_protected:Nnn \str_remove_once:Nn \{ \}
\cs_new_protected:Nnn \str_gremove_once:Nn \{ \}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \str_remove_once:Nn { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \str_gremove_once:Nn { c }
```

(End definition for \str_remove_once:Nn and \str_gremove_once:Nn. These functions are documented on page 129.)

```latex
\cs_new_protected:Npn \str_remove_all:Nn \str_gremove_all:Nn \{ \}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \str_remove_all:Nn { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \str_gremove_all:Nn { c }
```

(End definition for \str_remove_all:Nn and \str_gremove_all:Nn. These functions are documented on page 129.)

Removal is just a special case of replacement.

```latex
\prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \str_if_exist:N \tl_if_exist:N
{ p , T , F , TF }
\prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \str_if_exist:c \tl_if_exist:c
{ p , T , F , TF }
```

(End definition for \str_if_exist:N and \str_if_exist:N. These functions are documented on page 122.)

String comparisons rely on the primitive \( \text{strcmp} \), so we define a new name for it.

```latex
\cs_new_eq:NN \__str_stop
```

(End definition for \__str_stop)

```latex
\{ \}
\cs_new_eq:NN \__str_replace_next:w
```

```latex
(End definition for \str_replace_all:Nnn and others. These functions are documented on page 129.)
```

```latex
\str_remove_once:Nn \str_remove_once:cn
\str_gremove_once:Nn \str_gremove_once:cn
\str_remove_all:Nn \str_remove_all:cn
\str_gremove_all:Nn \str_gremove_all:cn
```

Removal is just a special case of replacement.

```latex
\cs_new_protected:Npn \str_remove_once:Nn #1#2
{ \str_replace_once:Nnn #1 {#2} { } }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \str_gremove_once:Nn #1#2
{ \str_greplace_once:Nnn #1 {#2} { } }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \str_remove_once:Nn { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \str_gremove_once:Nn { c }
```

(End definition for \str_remove_once:Nn and \str_gremove_once:Nn. These functions are documented on page 129.)

```latex
\str_remove_all:Nn \str_remove_all:cn
\str_gremove_all:Nn \str_gremove_all:cn
\cs_new_protected:Npn \str_remove_all:Nn #1#2
{ \str_replace_all:Nnn #1 {#2} { } }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \str_gremove_all:Nn #1#2
{ \str_greplace_all:Nnn #1 {#2} { } }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \str_remove_all:Nn { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \str_gremove_all:Nn { c }
```

(End definition for \str_remove_all:Nn and \str_gremove_all:Nn. These functions are documented on page 129.)

```latex
```

More copy-paste!
Modern engines provide a direct way of comparing two token lists, but returning a number. This set of conditionals therefore makes life a bit clearer. The \texttt{nn} and \texttt{ee} versions are created directly as this is most efficient. Since \texttt{\_\_str_if_eq:nn} will expand to 0 as an explicit character with category 12 if the two lists match (and either -1 or 1 if they don’t) we can use \texttt{\if:w} here which is faster than using \texttt{\if_int_compare:w}.

\begin{verbatim}
\prg_new_protected_conditional:Npnn \str_if_eq:NN #1#2 { T , F , TF } { \use:x { \tl_if_in:nnTF { \tl_to_str:N #1 } { \tl_to_str:n {#2} } } { \prg_return_true: } { \prg_return_false: } }
\prg_generate_conditional_variant:Nnn \str_if_eq:NN 13225 { c , Nc , cc } { T , F , TF , p }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\str_if_eq:NNTF}. This function is documented on page 122.)

\texttt{\str_if_in:Nn} is different from \texttt{\tl_if_eq:NNTF} because it needs to ignore category codes.

\begin{verbatim}
\prg_new_protected_conditional:Npnn \str_if_in:Nn #1#2 { T , F , TF } { \prg_return_true: \tl_if_in:nnTF { \tl_to_str:N #1 } { \tl_to_str:n {#2} } \prg_return_false: }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\str_if_in:NNTF}. This function is documented on page 122.)

\texttt{\str_if_eq:nn} directly but that takes more code.

\begin{verbatim}
\str_if_in:Nn\str_if_in:cn\str_if_in:nn\str_if_p:nn\str_if_p:Vn\str_if_p:on\str_if_p:nV\str_if_p:no\str_if_p:VV\str_if_p:ee\str_if_eq:nn\str_if_eq:Vn\str_if_eq:on\str_if_eq:nV\str_if_eq:no\str_if_eq:VV\str_if_eq:ee\str_if_if_eq_p:nn\str_if_if_eq_p:Vn\str_if_if_eq_p:on\str_if_if_eq_p:nV\str_if_if_eq_p:no\str_if_if_eq_p:VV\str_if_if_eq_p:ee
\end{verbatim}

Everything here needs to be detokenized but beyond that it is a simple token list test. It would be faster to fine-tune the \texttt{T}, \texttt{F}, \texttt{TF} variants by calling the appropriate variant of \texttt{\tl_if_eq:nnTF} directly but that takes more code.

\begin{verbatim}
\prg_new_protected_conditional:Npnn \str_if_in:Nn #1#2 { T , F , TF } { \use:x { \tl_if_in:nnTF { \tl_to_str:N #1 } { \tl_to_str:n {#2} } } { \prg_return_true: } { \prg_return_false: } }
\end{verbatim}
\prg_new_protected_conditional:Npnn \str_if_in:nn \#1\#2 { T , F , TF }
{
\use:x
{ \tl_if_in:nnTF { \tl_to_str:n {#1} } { \tl_to_str:n {#2} } }
{ \prg_return_true: } { \prg_return_false: }
}

(End definition for \str_if_in:nnTF and \str_if_in:nnTF. These functions are documented on page 129.)
\str_case:nn
Much the same as \tl_case:nnTF here: just a change in the internal comparison.
\str_case:nn
\cs_new:Npn \str_case:nn \#1\#2
{
\exp:w
\__str_case:nnTF {#1} {#2} { } { }
}\str_case:nnT \#1\#2\#3
\cs_new:Npn \__str_case:nnTF \#1\#2\#3
{ \__str_case:nw {#1} #2 \s__str_mark #3 \s__str_stop }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \str_case:nn { V , o , nV , nv }
\prg_generate_conditional_variant:Nnn \str_case:nn { V , o , nV , nv }
53.5 Mapping over strings

The inline and variable mappings are similar to the usual token list mappings but start
out by turning the argument to an “other string”. Doing the same for the expandable
function mapping would require \__kernel_str_to_other:n, quadratic in the string
length. To deal with spaces in that case, \__str_map_function:w replaces the following
space by a braced space and a further call to itself. These are received by \__str_map_function:nN, which passes the space to #1 and calls \__str_map_function:w to deal
with the next space. The space before the braced space allows to optimize the \q__str_recursion_tail test. Of course we need to include a trailing space (the question
mark is needed to avoid losing the space when \TeX tokenizes the line). At the cost of
about three more auxiliaries this code could get a 9 times speed up by testing only every
9-th character for whether it is \q__str_recursion_tail (also by converting 9 spaces
at a time in the \str_map_function:nN case).

For the map_variable functions we use a string assignment to store each character
because spaces are made catcode 12 before the loop.
\str_map_tokens:NN
\str_map_tokens:cn
\str_map_tokens:nn

Uses an auxiliary of \str_map_function:NN.

\cs_new:Npn \str_map_tokens:nn #1#2
\exp_args:Nno \use:nn
{ \__str_map_function:w \__str_map_function:nn {#2} }
{ \__kernel_tl_to_str:w {#1} }
\q__str_recursion_tail ? ~
\prg_break_point:Nn \str_map_break: { }
}
\cs_new:Npn \str_map_tokens:Nn { \exp_args:No \str_map_tokens:nn }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \str_map_tokens:Nn { c }

(End definition for \str_map_tokens:NN and \str_map_tokens:cn. These functions are documented on page 124.)

53.6 Accessing specific characters in a string

First apply \tl_to_str:n, then replace all spaces by “other” spaces, 8 at a time, storing the converted part of the string between the \s__str_mark and \s__str_stop markers. The end is detected when \__str_to_other_loop:w finds one of the trailing A, distinguished from any contents of the initial token list by their category. Then \__str_to_other_end:w is called, and finds the result between \s__str_mark and the first A (well, there is also the need to remove a space).

\cs_new:Npn \__kernel_str_to_other:n #1
\exp_after:wN \__str_to_other_loop:w
\tl_to_str:n {#1} ~ A ~ A ~ A ~ A ~ A ~ A ~ A ~ A ~ \s__str_mark \s__str_stop

\group_begin:
\tex_lccode:D '* = ' \%
\tex_lccode:D 'A = 'A \%
\tex_lowercase:D
}\group_end:
\cs_new:Npn \__str_to_other_loop:w #1 ~ #2 ~ #3 ~ #4 ~ #5 ~ #6 ~ #7 ~ #8 ~ #9 \s__str_stop
{ \if_meaning:w A #8 \__str_to_other_end:w \fi: \__str_to_other_loop:w #9 #1 * #2 * #3 * #4 * #5 * #6 * #7 * #8 * \s__str_stop }
\cs_new:Npn \__str_to_other_end:w \fi: #1 \s__str_mark #2 * A #3 \s__str_stop
{ \fi: #2 }

(End definition for \__kernel_str_to_other:n, \__str_to_other_loop:w, and \__str_to_other_end:w.)
The difference with \_kernel\_str\_to\_other\_fast:n is that the converted part is left in the input stream, making these commands only restricted-expandable.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__kernel\_str\_to\_other\_fast:n \#1 
\exp_after:wN \__str\_to\_other\_fast\_loop:w \tl\to\str:n \{\#1\} - 
\group_begin:
\tex_lccode:D \* = '%
\tex_lccode:D \A = 'A %
\tex_lowercase:D
\group_end:
\cs_new:Npn \__str\_to\_other\_fast\_loop:w \#1 \#2 \#3 \#4 \#5 \#6 \#7 \#8 \#9 
\if_meaning:w \A \#9
\__str\_to\_other\_fast\_end:w 
\fi:
\#1 \* \#2 \* \#3 \* \#4 \* \#5 \* \#6 \* \#7 \* \#8 \* \#9
\__str\_to\_other\_fast\_loop:w \*
\cs_new:Npn \__str\_to\_other\_fast\_end:w \#1 \* A \#2 \s\__str\_stop \{\#1\}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__kernel\_str\_to\_other\_fast:n, \__kernel\_str\_to\_other\_fast\_loop:w, and \__str\_to\_other\_fast\_end:w.)

\str\_item:nn\ 
\str\_item:cn
\str\_item\_ignore\_spaces:nn
\_str\_item:nn
\_str\_item:w

The \str\_item:nn hands its argument with spaces escaped to \_str\_item:nn, and makes sure to turn the result back into a proper string (with category code 10 spaces) eventually. The \str\_item\_ignore\_spaces:nn function does not escape spaces, which are thus ignored by \_str\_item:nn since everything else is done with undelimited arguments. Evaluate the \langle index\rangle argument \#2 and count characters in the string, passing those two numbers to \_str\_item:w for further analysis. If the \langle index\rangle is negative, shift it by the \langle count\rangle to know the how many character to discard, and if that is still negative give an empty result. If the \langle index\rangle is larger than the \langle count\rangle, give an empty result, and otherwise discard \langle index\rangle – 1 characters before returning the following one. The shift by \#1 is obtained by inserting an empty brace group before the string in that case: that brace group also covers the case where the \langle index\rangle is zero.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \str\_item:nn \exp_args:No \str\_item:nn 
\cs\generate\_variant:Nn \str\_item:nn \c
\cs_new:Npn \str\_item:nn \#1\#2
\exp_args:Nf \tl\to\str:n
\exp_args:Nf \_str\_item:nn
\{ \__kernel\_str\_to\_other\:n \#1\} \#2
\}
\}
\cs_new:Npn \str\_item\_ignore\_spaces:nn \#1
\exp_args:No \_str\_item:nn \{ \tl\to\str:n \#1\}
\cs_new:Npn \_str\_item:nn \#1\#2
\}
\end{verbatim}

709
Removes \text{max}(\#1,0)\) characters from the input stream, and then leaves \texttt{\exp_end:}. This should be expanded using \texttt{\exp:w}. We remove characters 8 at a time until there are at most 8 to remove. Then we do a dirty trick: the \texttt{\if_case:w} construction leaves between 0 and 8 times the \texttt{\or:} control sequence, and those \texttt{\or:} become arguments of \texttt{\_str_skip_end::NNNNNNNN}. If the number of characters to remove is 6, say, then there are two \texttt{\or:} left, and the 8 arguments of \texttt{\_str_skip_end::NNNNNNNN} are the two \texttt{\or:}, and 6 characters from the input stream, exactly what we wanted to remove. Then close the \texttt{\if_case:w} conditional with \texttt{\fi:}.; and stop the initial expansion with \texttt{\exp_end:} (see places where \texttt{\_str_skip_end::w} is called).

\texttt{\cs_new:Npn \_str_skip_end::w #1;}

(...) End definition for \str_item:Nn and others. These functions are documented on page 127.)
Sanitize the string. Then evaluate the arguments. At this stage we also increment the \langle start index \rangle, since our goal is to know how many characters should be removed. Then limit the range to be non-negative and at most the length of the string (this avoids needing to check for the end of the string when grabbing characters), shifting negative numbers by the appropriate amount. Afterward, skip characters, then keep some more, and finally drop the end of the string.

\__str_range_normalize:nn

This function converts an \langle index \rangle argument into an explicit position in the string (a result of 0 denoting “out of bounds”). Expects two explicit integer arguments: the \langle index \rangle #1 and the string count #2. If #1 is negative, replace it by #1 + #2 + 1, then limit to the range \[0, #2\].

\cs_new:Npn \_\_str_range_normalize:nn #1#2
\begin{verbatim}
{ \__kernel_str_to_other:n {#1} } {#2} {#3}
\end{verbatim}
\int_eval:n
{
    \if_int_compare:w #1 < \c_zero_int
        \if_int_compare:w #1 < -#2 \exp_stop_f:
            0
        \else:
            #1 + #2 + 1
        \fi:
    \else:
        \if_int_compare:w #1 < #2 \exp_stop_f:
            #1
        \else:
            #2
        \fi:
    \fi:
}
\__str_range_normalize:nn
(End definition for \__str_range_normalize:nn.)

Collects max(#1,0) characters, and removes everything else until \s__str_stop. This is somewhat similar to \__str_skip_exp_end:w, but accepts integer expression arguments. This time we can only grab 7 characters at a time. At the end, we use an \if_case:w trick again, so that the 8 first arguments of \__str_collect_end:nnnnnnnnw are some \or:, followed by an \fi:, followed by #1 characters from the input stream. Simply leaving this in the input stream closes the conditional properly and the \or: disappear.

\cs_new:Npn \__str_collect_delimit_by_q_stop:w #1;
{ \__str_collect_loop:wn #1 ; { } }
\cs_new:Npn \__str_collect_loop:wn #1 ;
{\if_int_compare:w #1 > 7 \exp_stop_f:
    \exp_after:wN \__str_collect_loop:wnNNNNNNN
    \else:
        \exp_after:wN \__str_collect_end:wn
        \fi:
    #1 ;}
\cs_new:Npn \__str_collect_loop:wnNNNNNNN #1; #2 #3#4#5#6#7#8#9
{\exp_after:wN \__str_collect_loop:wn
\int_value:w \int_eval:n { #1 - 7 } ; { #2 #3#4#5#6#7#8#9 }
}\cs_new:Npn \__str_collect_end:wn #1 ;
{\if_case:w \if_int_compare:w #1 > \c_zero_int
        #1 \else: 0 \fi: \exp_stop_f:
        \or: \or: \or: \or: \or: \or: \fi:
    \cs_new:Npn \__str_collect_end:wnnnnnnnw #1#2#3#4#5#6#7#8 #9 \s__str_stop
    { #1#2#3#4#5#6#7#8 }
(End definition for \__str_collect_delimit_by_q_stop:w and others.)
53.7 Counting characters

To speed up this function, we grab and discard 9 space-delimited arguments in each iteration of the loop. The loop stops when the last argument is one of the trailing \(X\langle\text{number}\rangle\), and that \langle\text{number}\rangle is added to the sum of 9 that precedes, to adjust the result.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \str_count_spaces:N { \exp_args:No \str_count_spaces:n }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \str_count_spaces:N { c }
\cs_new:Npn \str_count_spaces:n #1 { \int_eval:n { \exp_after:wN \__str_count_spaces_loop:w \tl_to_str:n {#1} ~ X 7 ~ X 6 ~ X 5 ~ X 4 ~ X 3 ~ X 2 ~ X 1 ~ X 0 ~ X -1 ~ X__str_stop } }
\cs_new:Npn \__str_count_spaces_loop:w #1~#2~#3~#4~#5~#6~#7~#8~#9~ { \if_meaning:w X #9 \__str_use_i_delimit_by_s_stop:nw \fi: 9 + \__str_count_spaces_loop:w }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \str_count_spaces:N, \str_count_spaces:n, and \__str_count_spaces_loop:w. These functions are documented on page 126.)

To count characters in a string we could first escape all spaces using \__kernel_str_to_other:n, then pass the result to \tl_count:n. However, the escaping step would be quadratic in the number of characters in the string, and we can do better. Namely, sum the number of spaces (\str_count_spaces:n) and the result of \tl_count:n, which ignores spaces. Since strings tend to be longer than token lists, we use specialized functions to count characters ignoring spaces. Namely, loop, grabbing 9 non-space characters at each step, and end as soon as we reach one of the 9 trailing items. The internal function \__str_count:n, used in \str_item:nn and \str_range:nnn, is similar to \str_count_ignore_spaces:n but expects its argument to already be a string or a string with spaces escaped.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \str_count:N { \exp_args:No \str_count:n }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \str_count:N { c }
\cs_new:Npn \str_count:n #1 { \__str_count_aux:n \str_count_spaces:n {#1} + \exp_after:wN \__str_count_loop:NNNNNNNNN \tl_to_str:n {#1} }
\end{verbatim}
53.8 The first character in a string

\str_head:N The _ignore_spaces variant applies \tl_to_str:n then grabs the first item, thus skipping spaces. As usual, \str_head:N expands its argument and hands it to \str_head:n. To circumvent the fact that \TeX skips spaces when grabbing undelimited macro parameters, \__str_head:w takes an argument delimited by a space. If #1 starts with a non-space character, \__str_use_i_delimit_by_s_stop:n leaves that in the input stream. On the other hand, if #1 starts with a space, the \__str_head:w takes an empty argument, and the single (initially braced) space in the definition of \__str_head:w makes its way to the output. Finally, for an empty argument, the (braced) empty brace group in the definition of \str_head:n gives an empty result after passing through \__str_use_i_delimit_by_s_stop:nw.

\str_head:N \str_head:c \str_head:n \str_head_ignore_spaces:n \__str_head:w

\cs_new:Npn \str_count:NNNNNNNNN #1
\cs_new:Npn \str_count_ignore_spaces:n #1
\cs_new:Npn \__str_count_aux:n #1
\cs_new:Npn \__str_count_loop:NNNNNNNNN \tl_to_str:n {#1}
\cs_new:Npn \__str_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w
\cs_new:Npn \str_head:N { \exp_args:No \str_head:n }
\cs_new:Npn \str_head:n #1
\cs_new:Npn \__str_use_i_delimit_by_s_stop:nw
\cs_new:Npn \str_head_ignore_spaces:n #1

(End definition for \str_count:N and others. These functions are documented on page 126.)
Getting the tail is a little bit more convoluted than the head of a string. We hit the front of the string with `\reverse_if:N \if_charcode:w \scan_stop:`. This removes the first character, and necessarily makes the test true, since the character cannot match `\scan_stop:`. The auxiliary function then inserts the required `\fi:` to close the conditional, and leaves the tail of the string in the input stream. The details are such that an empty string has an empty tail (this requires in particular that the end-marker `X` be unexpandable and not a control sequence). The `_ignore_spaces` is rather simpler: after converting the input to a string, `\__str_tail_auxi:w` removes one undelimited argument and leaves everything else until an end-marker `\s__str_mark`. One can check that an empty (or blank) string yields an empty tail.

```
\cs_new:Npn \str_tail:N { \exp_args:No \str_tail:n }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \str_tail:N { c }
\cs_new:Npn \str_tail:n #1 { \exp_after:wN \__str_tail_auxi:w \reverse_if:N \if_charcode:w \tl_to_str:n {#1} X X \s__str_stop }
\cs_new:Npn \__str_tail_auxi:w #1 X #2 \s__str_stop { \fi: #1 }
\cs_new:Npn \str_tail_ignore_spaces:n #1 { \exp_after:wN \__str_tail_auxii:w \tl_to_str:n {#1} \s__str_mark \s__str_mark \s__str_stop }
\cs_new:Npn \__str_tail_auxii:w #1 #2 \s__str_mark \s__str_stop { #2 }
```

(End definition for `\str_head:N` and others. These functions are documented on page 127.)

53.9 String manipulation

Case changing for programmatic reasons is done by first detokenizing input then doing a simple loop that only has to worry about spaces and everything else. The output is detokenized to allow data sharing with text-based case changing.

```
\cs_new:Npn \str_foldcase:n #1 { \__str_change_case:nn {#1} { fold } }
\cs_new:Npn \str_lowercase:n #1 { \__str_change_case:nn {#1} { lower } }
\cs_new:Npn \str_uppercase:n #1 { \__str_change_case:nn {#1} { upper } }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \str_foldcase:n { V }
\cs_new:Npn \str_lowercase:V #1 { \__str_change_case:nn {#1} { lower } }
\cs_new:Npn \str_uppercase:V #1 { \__str_change_case:nn {#1} { upper } }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \str_foldcase:n { f }
\cs_new:Npn \str_lowercase:f #1 { \__str_change_case:nn {#1} { lower } }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \str_uppercase:f #1 { \__str_change_case:nn {#1} { upper } }
```

(End definition for `\str_tail:N` and others. These functions are documented on page 127.)
\section{\texttt{str}\_foldcase:n and \texttt{c} variables}

For all of those strings, use \texttt{cs\_to\_str:N} to get characters with the correct category code without worries.

\begin{verbatim}
\c_ampersand_str \c_atsign_str \c_backslash_str \c_left_brace_str \c_right_brace_str \c_circumflex_str \c_colon_str \c_dollar_str \c_hash_str \c_percent_str \c_underscore_str \c_zero_str
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\texttt{c} variables}. These functions are documented on page 131.)

\begin{verbatim}
\l_tmpa_str \l_tmpb_str \g_tmpa_str \g_tmpb_str
\end{verbatim}

Scratch strings.

\begin{verbatim}
\l_tmpa_str \l_tmbp_str \g_tmps_str \g_tmbp_str
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\texttt{c} variables} and others. These variables are documented on page 132.)
53.10 Viewing strings

\texttt{\textbackslash str\_show:n} Displays a string on the terminal.
\texttt{\textbackslash str\_show:N} \texttt{\cs\_new\_eq:NN \textbackslash str\_show:n \textbackslash tl\_show:n}
\texttt{\textbackslash str\_show:c} \texttt{\cs\_new\_protected:Npm \str\_show:N \#1}
\texttt{\str\_log:n} \texttt{\cs\_new\_protected:Npm \str\_show:N \#1}
\texttt{\textbackslash str\_log:N} \texttt{\__kernel\_chk\_tl\_type:NnnT \#1 \{ \textbar \{ \tl\_to\_str:N \#1 \} \}}
\texttt{\textbackslash str\_log:c} \texttt{\cs\_generate\_variant:Nn \str\_show:N \{ c \}}

(End definition for \textbackslash _tmpa\_str and others. These variables are documented on page 132.)
Chapter 54

\texttt{l3str-convert implementation}

\texttt{\{+package\}}
\texttt{\{@@=str\}}

54.1 Helpers

54.1.1 Variables and constants

\texttt{\__\_str\_tmp:w}
Internal scratch space for some functions.

\texttt{\l__\_str\_internal\_tl}
\texttt{\cs\_new\_protected:Npm \__\_str\_tmp:w \{ \}}
\texttt{\tl\_new:N \l__\_str\_internal\_tl}
(End definition for \__\_str\_tmp:w and \l__\_str\_internal\_tl.)

\texttt{\g__\_str\_result\_tl}
The \g__\_str\_result\_tl variable is used to hold the result of various internal string
operations (mostly conversions) which are typically performed in a group. The variable
is global so that it remains defined outside the group, to be assigned to a user-provided
variable.

\texttt{\tl\_new:N \g__\_str\_result\_tl}
(End definition for \g__\_str\_result\_tl.)

\texttt{\c__\_str\_replacement\_char\_int}
When converting, invalid bytes are replaced by the Unicode replacement character
"\texttt{FFFD}.

\texttt{\int\_const:Nn \c__\_str\_replacement\_char\_int \{ "\texttt{FFFD} \}}
(End definition for \c__\_str\_replacement\_char\_int.)

\texttt{\c__\_str\_max\_byte\_int}
The maximal byte number.

\texttt{\int\_const:Nn \c__\_str\_max\_byte\_int \{ 255 \}}
(End definition for \c__\_str\_max\_byte\_int.)

\texttt{\s__\_str}
Internal scan marks.

\texttt{\scan\_new:N \s__\_str}
(End definition for \s__\_str.)
\texttt{\_\_str\_nil} Internal quarks.
\begin{verbatim}
\q__str_nil
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\_\_str\_nil}.)

\texttt{g\_\_str\_alias\_prop} To avoid needing one file per encoding/escaping alias, we keep track of those in a property list.
\begin{verbatim}
\prop_new:N \g__str_alias_prop
\prop_gput:Nnn \g__str_alias_prop { latin1 } { iso88591 }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g__str_alias_prop { latin2 } { iso88592 }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g__str_alias_prop { latin3 } { iso88593 }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g__str_alias_prop { latin4 } { iso88594 }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g__str_alias_prop { latin5 } { iso88599 }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g__str_alias_prop { latin6 } { iso885910 }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g__str_alias_prop { latin7 } { iso885913 }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g__str_alias_prop { latin8 } { iso885914 }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g__str_alias_prop { latin9 } { iso885915 }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g__str_alias_prop { latin10 } { iso885916 }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g__str_alias_prop { utf16le } { utf16 }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g__str_alias_prop { utf16be } { utf16 }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g__str_alias_prop { utf32le } { utf32 }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g__str_alias_prop { utf32be } { utf32 }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g__str_alias_prop { hexadecimal } { hex }
\bool_lazy_any:nTF
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\_\_str\_alias\_prop}.)

\texttt{g\_\_str\_error\_bool} In conversion functions with a built-in conditional, errors are not reported directly to the user, but the information is collected in this boolean, used at the end to decide on which branch of the conditional to take.
\begin{verbatim}
\bool_new:N \g__str_error_bool
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\_\_str\_error\_bool}.)

\texttt{str\_byte} Conversions from one \texttt{encoding}/\texttt{escaping} pair to another are done within \texttt{x}-expanding assignments. Errors are signalled by raising the relevant flag.
\begin{verbatim}
\flag_new:n { str\_byte }
\flag_new:n { str\_error }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{str\_byte} and \texttt{str\_error}. These variables are documented on page ??.)
54.2 String conditionals

\__str_if_contains_char:NnTF \{\langle token list\rangle\} \langle char\rangle

Expects the \langle token list\rangle to be an \langle other string\rangle: the caller is responsible for ensuring that no (too-)special catcodes remain. Loop over the characters of the string, comparing character codes. The loop is broken if character codes match. Otherwise we return “false”.

\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \__str_if_contains_char:Nn #1#2 { T , TF }
\{ \exp_after:wN \__str_if_contains_char_aux:nn \exp_after:wN {#1} {#2} \}
\prg_break_point:
\prg_return_false:
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__str_if_contains_char_aux:nn #1#2
\{ \__str_if_contains_char_auxi:nN {#2} #1 \}
\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \__str_if_contains_char:nn #1#2 { TF }
\{ \__str_if_contains_char_auxi:nN {#2} #1 { \prg_break:n { ? \fi: } } \}
\prg_break_point:
\prg_return_false:
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__str_if_contains_char_auxi:nN #1#2
\{ \if_charcode:w #1 #2 \exp_after:wN \__str_if_contains_char_true:
\fi: \}
\__str_if_contains_char:true:nN {#1} \}
\cs_new:Npn \__str_if_contains_char_true:
\{ \prg_break:n { \prg_return_true: \use_none:n } \}
\}
\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \__str_octal_use:NTF \{\langle true code\rangle\} \{\langle false code\rangle\}

If the \langle token\rangle is an octal digit, it is left in the input stream, \textit{followed} by the \langle true code\rangle. Otherwise, the \langle false code\rangle is left in the input stream.

\TeXhackers\note: This function will fail if the escape character is an octal digit. We are thus careful to set the escape character to a known value before using it. \TeX\ dutifully detects octal digits for us: if \#1 is an octal digit, then the right-hand side of the comparison is ’\#1’, greater than 1. Otherwise, the right-hand side stops as ’1’, and the conditional takes the \textit{false} branch.

\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \__str_octal_use:NTF \{\langle token\rangle\} \{\langle true code\rangle\} \{\langle false code\rangle\}
\{ \if_int_compare:w 1 < '1 \token_to_str:N #1 \exp_stop_f: \#1 \prg_return_true: \}
\else: \\prg_return_false: \fi: \}
\}
\}(End definition for \__str_octal_use:NTF.\)
\_str_hexadecimal_use:NTF \TeX \textnormal{ detects upper case hexadecimal digits for us (see} \_str_octal_use:NTF, \textnormal{but not the lowercase letters, which we need to detect and replace by their upper case counterpart.}

\begin{verbatim}
\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \__str_hexadecimal_use:N #1 { TF }
\begin{verbatim}
#1 \prg_return_true:
\else:
\if_case:w \int_eval:n { \exp_after:wN ' \token_to_str:N #1 - 'a }
A \else: \prg_return_true:
\fi:
\prg_return_true:
\fi:
\end{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \_str_hexadecimal_use:NTF.)

54.3 Conversions

54.3.1 Producing one byte or character

For each integer \( N \) in the range \([0, 255]\), we create a constant token list which holds three character tokens with category code other: the character with character code \( N \), followed by the representation of \( N \) as two hexadecimal digits. The value \( -1 \) is given a default token list which ensures that later functions give an empty result for the input \( -1 \).

\begin{verbatim}
\__kernel_tl_set:Nx \l__str_internal_tl { \tl_to_str:n { 0123456789ABCDEF } }
\tl_map_inline:Nn \l__str_internal_tl
\tl_const:cx { c__str_byte_ \int_eval:n {"##1##1} _tl }
\char_generate:nn { "##1##1} { 12 } \#1 \#1 }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \c__str_byte_0_tl and others.)

Those functions must be used carefully: feeding them a value outside the range \([-1, 255]\) will attempt to use the undefined token list variable \c__str_byte_\langle number\rangle_tl. Assuming that the argument is in the right range, we expand the corresponding token list, and pick either the byte (first token) or the hexadecimal representations (second and third tokens). The value \(-1\) produces an empty result in both cases.
\cs_new:Npn \__str_output_byte:n #1
{ \__str_output_byte:w #1 \__str_output_end: }
\cs_new:Npn \__str_output_byte:w
{ \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \use_i:nnn \cs:w c__str_byte_ \int_eval:w }
\cs_new:Npn \__str_output_hexadecimal:n #1
{ \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \use_none:n \cs:w c__str_byte_ \int_eval:n {#1} _tl \cs_end: }
\cs_new:Npn \__str_output_end:
{ \scan_stop: _tl \cs_end: }

(End definition for \__str_output_byte:n and others.)

\__str_output_byte_pair_be:n \__str_output_byte_pair_le:n \__str_output_byte_pair:nnN

Convert a number in the range \([0, 65535]\) to a pair of bytes, either big-endian or little-endian.
\cs_new:Npn \__str_output_byte_pair_be:n #1
{ \exp_args:Nf \__str_output_byte_pair:nnN { \int_div_truncate:nn { #1 } { "100 } } {#1} \use:nn }
\cs_new:Npn \__str_output_byte_pair_le:n #1
{ \exp_args:Nf \__str_output_byte_pair:nnN { \int_div_truncate:nn { #1 } { "100 } } {#1} \use_ii_i:nn }
\cs_new:Npn \__str_output_byte_pair:nnN #1#2#3
{ #3 { \__str_output_byte:n { #1 } } { \__str_output_byte:n { #2 - #1 * "100 } } }

(End definition for \__str_output_byte_pair_be:n, \__str_output_byte_pair_le:n, and \__str_output_byte_pair:nnN.)

54.3.2 Mapping functions for conversions

This maps the function \#1 over all characters in \texttt{\_g\_str_result_tl}, which should be a byte string in most cases, sometimes a native string.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__str_convert_gmap:N #1
{ \__kernel_tl_gset:Nx \g__str_result_tl { \__str_convert_gmap_loop:NN } #1 \prg_break: }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__str_convert_gmap_loop:NN
{}
This maps the function \#1 over all character codes in \g\__str_result_tl, which must be in the internal representation.

\new:N \__str_convert_gmap_loop:NN \#1 #2
\use_none:n #2 #1 #2 \__str_convert_gmap_loop:NN #1

\__str_convert_gmap_internal:N
\__str_convert_gmap_internal_loop:Nw

This maps the function \#1 over all character codes in \g\__str_result_tl, which must be in the internal representation.

\cs_new:NNp \__str_convert_gmap_internal:N \#1
\__kernel_tl_gset:Nx \g\__str_result_tl
\exp_after:wN \__str_convert_gmap_internal_loop:Nww
\exp_after:wN #1 \g\__str_result_tl \s\__str \s\str_stop \prg_break: \s\__str
\prg_break_point:
}
\cs_new:Npn \__str_convert_gmap_internal_loop:Nww #1 #2 \s\__str #3 \s\str
\__str_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w #3 \s\str_stop #1 {#3}
\__str_convert_gmap_internal_loop:Nww #1

\__str_if_flag_error:nnx
\__str_if_flag_no_error:nnx

When converting using the function \str_set_convert:Nnnn, errors should be reported to the user after each step in the conversion. Errors are signalled by raising some flag (typically \@@_error), so here we test that flag: if it is raised, give the user an error, otherwise remove the arguments. On the other hand, in the conditional functions \str_-
set_convert:NnnnTF, errors should be suppressed. This is done by changing \__str_-
if_flag_error:nnx into \__str_if_flag_no_error:nnx locally.

\cs_new:NNp \__str_if_flag_error:nnx \#1
{ \flag_if_raised:nTF {#1} \msg_error:nnx { str } \use_none:nn }
\cs_new:NNp \__str_if_flag_no_error:nnx \#1 \{#3\}
\cs_new:NNp \__str_convert_gmap_internal_loop:Nww \#1

\__str_if_flag_times:nT

At the end of each conversion step, we raise all relevant errors as one error message, built on the fly. The height of each flag indicates how many times a given error was encountered. This function prints \#2 followed by the number of occurrences of an error if it occurred, nothing otherwise.
54.3.4 Framework for conversions

Most functions in this module expect to be working with “native” strings. Strings can also be stored as bytes, in one of many encodings, for instance \texttt{UTF8}. The bytes themselves can be expressed in various ways in terms of \TeX tokens, for instance as pairs of hexadecimal digits. The questions of going from arbitrary Unicode code points to bytes, and from bytes to tokens are mostly independent.

Conversions are done in four steps:

- “unescape” produces a string of bytes;
- “decode” takes in a string of bytes, and converts it to a list of Unicode characters in an internal representation, with items of the form
  \begin{verbatim}
  ⟨bytes⟩ \s_{str} ⟨Unicode code point⟩ \s_{str}
  \end{verbatim}
  where we have collected the \texttt{(bytes)} which combined to form this particular Unicode character, and the \texttt{(Unicode code point)} is in the range \([0, \text{"10FFFF}]\).
- “encode” encodes the internal list of code points as a byte string in the new encoding;
- “escape” escapes bytes as requested.

The process is modified in case one of the encoding is empty (or the conversion function has been set equal to the empty encoding because it was not found): then the unescape or escape step is ignored, and the decode or encode steps work on tokens instead of bytes. Otherwise, each step must ensure that it passes a correct byte string or internal string to the next step.

The input string is stored in \texttt{\g__str_result_tl}, then we: unescape and decode; encode and escape; exit the group and store the result in the user’s variable. The various conversion functions all act on \texttt{\g__str_result_tl}. Errors are silenced for the conditional functions by redefining \texttt{\_\_str_if_flag_error:nnx} locally.
The task of \str_convert:nnnn is to split \langle encoding/escaping \rangle pairs into their components, \#1 and \#2. Calls to \str_convert:nnn ensure that the corresponding conversion functions are defined. The third auxiliary does the main work.

- \#1 is the encoding conversion function;
- \#2 is the escaping function;
- \#3 is the escaping name for use in an error message;
- \#4 is \prg_do_nothing: for unescaping/decoding, and \use_ii_i:nn for encoding/escaping;
- \#5 is the default encoding function (either “decode” or “encode”), for which there should be no escaping.

Let us ignore the native encoding for a second. In the unescaping/decoding phase, we want to do \#2\#1 in this order, and in the encoding/escaping phase, the order should be reversed: \#4\#2\#1 does exactly that. If one of the encodings is the default (native), then the escaping should be ignored, with an error if any was given, and only the encoding, \#1, should be performed.
The arguments of \texttt{\_\_str\_convert:nnn} are: \texttt{enc} or \texttt{esc}, used to build filenames, the type of the conversion (unescape, decode, encode, escape), and the encoding or escaping name. If the function is already defined, no need to do anything. Otherwise, filter out all non-alphanumerics in the name, and lowercase it. Feed that, and the same three arguments, to \texttt{\_\_str\_convert:nnnn}. The task is then to make sure that the conversion function \texttt{#3\_#1} corresponding to the type \texttt{#3} and filtered name \texttt{#1} is defined, then set our initial conversion function \texttt{#3\_#4} equal to that.

How do we get the \texttt{#3\_#1} conversion to be defined if it isn’t? Two main cases.

First, if \texttt{#1} is a key in \texttt{\_\_str\_alias\_prop}, then the value \texttt{\_\_str\_internal\_tl} tells us what file to load. Loading is skipped if the file was already read, \textit{i.e.}, if the conversion command based on \texttt{\_\_str\_internal\_tl} already exists. Otherwise, try to load the file; if that fails, there is an error, use the default empty name instead.

Second, \texttt{#1} may be absent from the property list. The \texttt{\_\_str\_internal\_tl} test is automatically false, and we search for a file defining the encoding or escaping \texttt{#1} (this should allow third-party .def files). If the file is not found, there is an error, use the default empty name instead.

In all cases, the conversion based on \texttt{\_\_str\_internal\_tl} is defined, so we can set the \texttt{#3\_#1} function equal to that. In some cases (\textit{e.g.}, utf16be), the \texttt{#3\_#1} function is actually defined within the file we just loaded, and it is different from the \texttt{\_\_str\_internal\_tl}-based function: we mustn’t clobber that different definition.
This function keeps only letters and digits, with upper case letters converted to lower case.

```latex
\cs_new:Npn \__str_convert_lowercase_alphanum:n #1
\begin{verbatim}
\exp_after:wN \__str_convert_lowercase_alphanum_loop:N
\tl_to_str:n {#1} { ? \prg_break: }
\prg_break_point:
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__str_convert_lowercase_alphanum_loop:N #1
\begin{verbatim}
\use:n #1
\if_int_compare:w '#1 > 'Z \exp_stop_f:
\if_int_compare:w '#1 > 'z \exp_stop_f: \else:
\if_int_compare:w '#1 < 'a \exp_stop_f: \else:
#1
\fi:
\fi:
\else:
\if_int_compare:w '#1 < 'A \exp_stop_f:
\if_int_compare:w 1 < \num{1} \exp_stop_f: \else:
#1
\fi:
\fi:
\else:
\__str_output_byte:n { '#1 + 'a - 'A }
\fi:
\__str_convert_lowercase_alphanum_loop:N
\end{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}
```

(End definition for \__str_convert:nnn and \__str_convert:nnnn.)
54.3.5 Byte unescape and escape

Strings of bytes may need to be stored in auxiliary files in safe “escaping” formats. Each such escaping is only loaded as needed. By default, on input any non-byte is filtered out, while the output simply consists in letting bytes through.

In the case of 8-bit engines, every character is a byte. For Unicode-aware engines, test the character code; non-bytes cause us to raise the flag \texttt{str\_byte}. Spaces have already been given the correct category code when this function is called.

The simplest unescaping method removes non-bytes from \texttt{g\_str\_result\_tl}.
The simplest form of escape leaves the bytes from the previous step of the conversion unchanged.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__str_convert_escape_: { }
\cs_new_eq:NN \__str_convert_escape_bytes: \__str_convert_escape_: ( \End definition for \__str_convert_escape_: and \__str_convert_escape_bytes:.)
\end{verbatim}

3.6 Native strings

Convert each character to its character code, one at a time.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__str_convert_decode_: \__str_decode_native_char:N
\end{verbatim}

The conversion from an internal string to native character tokens basically maps \char_-generate:nn through the code-points, but in non-Unicode-aware engines we use a fallback character ? rather than nothing when given a character code outside [0, 255]. We detect the presence of bad characters using a flag and only produce a single error after the x-expanding assignment.

\begin{verbatim}
\bool_lazy_any:nTF
\begin{verbatim}
\sys_if_engine_luatex_p:
\sys_if_engine_xetex_p:
\end{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__str_convert_encode_: \__str_convert_gmap_internal:N \__str_encode_native_char:n
\end{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__str_encode_native_char:n #1
\begin{verbatim}
\char_generate:nn {#1} {12}
\end{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\msg_new:nnnn { str } { native-overflow }
\begin{verbatim}
{ Character-code-too-large-for-this-engine. }
\end{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}
This engine only supports 8-bit characters: valid character codes are in the range $[0,255]$. To manipulate arbitrary Unicode, use LuaTeX or XeTeX.

\end{definition}

\subsection{clist}

\begin{verbatim}
:\__str_convert_decode_clist:
\__str_decode_clist_char:n
\end{verbatim}

Convert each integer to the internal form. We first turn $\g__str_result_tl$ into a clist variable, as this avoids problems with leading or trailing commas.

\begin{verbatim}
:\cs_new_protected:Npn \__str_convert_decode_clist: \\
\{ \\
\clist_gset:No \g__str_result_tl \g__str_result_tl \\
\__kernel_tl_gset:Nx \g__str_result_tl \\
\{ \\
\exp_args:No \clist_map_function:nN \\
\g__str_result_tl \__str_decode_clist_char:n \\
\} \\
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__str_decode_clist_char:n #1 \\
{ #1 \s__str \int_eval:n {#1} \s__str }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__str_convert_decode_clist: and \__str_decode_clist_char:n.)

\begin{verbatim}
:\__str_convert_encode_clist:
\__str_encode_clist_char:n
\end{verbatim}

Convert the internal list of character codes to a comma-list of character codes. The first line produces a comma-list with a leading comma, removed in the next step (this also works in the empty case, since $\tl_tail:N$ does not trigger an error in this case).

\begin{verbatim}
:\cs_new_protected:Npn \__str_convert_encode_clist: \\
\{ \\
\__str_convert_gmap_internal:N \__str_encode_clist_char:n \\
\__kernel_tl_gset:Nx \g__str_result_tl \{ \tl_tail:N \g__str_result_tl \} \\
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__str_encode_clist_char:n #1 \\
{ , #1 }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__str_convert_encode_clist: and \__str_encode_clist_char:n.)

\subsection{8-bit encodings}

It is not clear in what situations 8-bit encodings are used, hence it is not clear what should be optimized. The current approach is reasonably efficient to convert long strings, and it scales well when using many different encodings.

The data needed to support a given 8-bit encoding is stored in a file that consists of a single function call

\begin{verbatim}
:\__str_declare_eight_bit_encoding:nmmn \{\langle name\rangle\} \{\langle modulo\rangle\} \{\langle mapping\rangle\} \{\langle missing\rangle\}
\end{verbatim}

This declares the encoding $\langle name\rangle$ to map bytes to Unicode characters according to the $\langle mapping\rangle$, and map those bytes which are not mentioned in the $\langle mapping\rangle$ either to the replacement character (if they appear in $\langle missing\rangle$), or to themselves. The $\langle mapping\rangle$ argument is a token list of pairs $\langle\langle byte\rangle\rangle \langle\langle Unicode\rangle\rangle$ expressed in uppercase hexadecimal notation. The $\langle missing\rangle$ argument is a token list of $\langle\langle byte\rangle\rangle$. Every $\langle byte\rangle$ which does
not appear in the <mapping> nor the <missing> lists maps to itself in Unicode, so for instance the latin1 encoding has empty <mapping> and <missing> lists. The (modulo) is a (decimal) integer between 256 and 558 inclusive, modulo which all Unicode code points supported by the encodings must be different.

We use two integer arrays per encoding. When decoding we only use the <decode> integer array, with entry \(n+1\) (offset needed because integer array indices start at 1) equal to the Unicode code point that corresponds to the \(n\)-th byte in the encoding under consideration, or \(-1\) if the given byte is invalid in this encoding. When encoding we use both arrays: upon seeing a code point \(n\), we look up the entry \((1\ plus) n\) modulo some number \(M\) in the <encode> array, which tells us the byte that might encode the given Unicode code point, then we check in the <decode> array that indeed this byte encodes the Unicode code point we want. Here, \(M\) is an encoding-dependent integer between 256 and 558 (it turns out), chosen so that among the Unicode code points that can be validly represented in the given encoding, no pair of code points have the same value modulo \(M\).

Loop through both lists of bytes to fill in the <decode> integer array; then fill the <encode> array accordingly. For bytes that are invalid in the given encoding, store \(-1\) in the <decode> array.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__str_declare_eight_bit_encoding:nnnn #1
\cs_new_protected:cpn { __str_convert_decode_#1: }
\cs_new_protected:cpn { __str_convert_encode_#1: }
\exp_args:Ncc \__str_declare_eight_bit_aux:NNnnn
\__str_declare_eight_bit_loop:Nnn #1 #4 { \s__str_stop \prg_break: } { }
\prg_break_point:
\__str_declare_eight_bit_loop:Nn #1 #5 { \s__str_stop \prg_break: }
\prg_break_point:
\intarray_new:Nn #1 \{ 256 \}
\int_step_inline:nnn { 0 } { 255 }
\{ \intarray_gset:Nn #1 \{ 1 + #1 \} \{##1\} \}
\__str_declare_eight_bit_loop:Nnn #1 #4 { \s__str_stop \prg_break: } { }
\prg_break_point:
\__str_declare_eight_bit_loop:Nn #1 #5 { \s__str_stop \prg_break: }
\prg_break_point:
\intarray_new:Nn #2 \{ 255 \}
\int_step_inline:nnn { 0 } { 255 }
\{ \intarray_gset:Nnn #2 \{ 1 + #1 \} = \{ -1 \}
\}
\intarray_gset:Nnn #2
\{ 1 + \}
\int_mod:n \{ \intarray_item:Nn #2 \{ 1 + #1 \} \}
\{ \intarray_count:N #2 \}
\}
\}
\end{verbatim}
The map from bytes to Unicode code points is in the decode array corresponding to the given encoding. Define \texttt{\_\_str\_tmp:w} and pass it successively all bytes in the string. It produces an internal representation with suitable \texttt{\s\_\_str} inserted, and the corresponding code point is obtained by looking it up in the integer array. If the entry is $-1$ then issue a replacement character and raise the flag indicating that there was an error.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__str_decoder:nnn #1#2#3
\__str_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w #2 \s\_\_str_stop
\intarray_gset:Nnn #1 { 1 + "#2 \{ "#3 }
\__str_decoder:nnn #1
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\_\_str\_decoder:nnn} and others.)

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__str_decoder:nnn #1#2
\__str_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w #2 \s\_\_str_stop
\intarray_gset:Nnn #1 { 1 + "#2 \{ -1 }
\__str_decoder:nnn #1
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\_\_str\_decoder:nnn} and others.)

It is not practical to make an integer array with indices in the full Unicode range, so we work modulo some number, which is simply the size of the encode integer array for the
given encoding. This gives us a candidate byte for representing a given Unicode code point. Of course taking the modulo leads to collisions so we check in the decode array that the byte we got is indeed correct. Otherwise the Unicode code point we started from is simply not representable in the given encoding.

\begin{verbatim}
14195 \int_new:N \l__str_modulo_int
14196 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__str_convert_encode_eight_bit:n #1
14197 { \cs_set:Npx \__str_tmp:w
14198 { \exp_not:N \__str_encode_eight_bit_aux:NNn
14199 \exp_not:c { g__str_encode_#1_intarray }
14200 \exp_not:c { g__str_decode_#1_intarray }
14201 }
14202 \flag_clear:n { str_error }
14203 \__str_convert_gmap_internal:N \__str_tmp:w
14204 \__str_if_flag_error:nnx { str_error } { encode-8-bit } {#1}
14205 }
14206 \cs_new:Npn \__str_encode_eight_bit_aux:NNn #1#2#3
14207 { \exp_args:Nf \__str_encode_eight_bit_aux:nnN
14208 { \intarray_item:Nn #1 { 1 + \int_mod:nn {#3} { \intarray_count:N #1 } } }
14209 {#3}
14210 #2
14211 }
14212 \cs_new:Npn \__str_encode_eight_bit_aux:nnN #1#2#3
14213 { \int_compare:nNnTF { \intarray_item:Nn #3 { 1 + #1 } } = {#2}
14214 { \__str_output_byte:n {#1} }
14215 { \flag_raise:n { str_error } }
14216 }
14217 \end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__str_convert_encode_eight_bit:n, \__str_encode_eight_bit_aux:nnN, and \__str_encode_eight_bit_aux:NNn.)

### 54.4 Messages

General messages, and messages for the encodings and escapings loaded by default (“native”, and “bytes”).

\begin{verbatim}
14220 \msg_new:nn { str } { unknown-esc }
14221 { Escaping-scheme-’#1’-(filtered:-’#2’) unknown. }
14222 \msg_new:nn { str } { unknown-enc }
14223 { Encoding-scheme-’#1’-(filtered:-’#2’) unknown. }
14224 \msg_new:nnn { str } { native-escaping }
14225 { The-’native’-encoding-scheme-does-not-support-any-escaping. }
14226 { Since-native-strings-do-not-consist-in-bytes,-
14227 none-of-the-escaping-methods-make-sense.-
14228 The-specified-escaping,-’#1’,-will-be-ignored. }
14229 \msg_new:nn { str } { file-not-found }
\end{verbatim}

733
Message used when the “bytes” unescaping fails because the string given to \str_set_convert:Nnnn contains a non-byte. This cannot happen for the -8-bit engines. Messages used for other escapings and encodings are defined in each definition file.

Those messages are used when converting to and from 8-bit encodings.

Several of those encodings are defined by the pdf file format. The following byte storage methods are defined:

- **bytes** (default), non-bytes are filtered out, and bytes are left untouched (this is defined by default);
- **hex** or **hexadecimal**, as per the pdfTeX primitive \pdfescapehex
- **name**, as per the pdfTeX primitive \pdfescapename
- **string**, as per the pdfTeX primitive \pdfescapestring
- **url**, as per the percent encoding of urls.
54.5.1 Unescape methods

Take chars two by two, and interpret each pair as the hexadecimal code for a byte. Anything else than hexadecimal digits is ignored, raising the flag. A string which contains an odd number of hexadecimal digits gets 0 appended to it: this is equivalent to appending a 0 in all cases, and dropping it if it is alone.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__str_convert_unescape_hex:
\group_begin:
\flag_clear:n { str_error }
\int_set:Nn \tex_escapechar:D { 92 }
\__kernel_tl_gset:Nx \g__str_result_tl
\__str_output_byte:w " \exp_last_unbraced:Nf \__str_unescape_hex_auxi:N
\prg_break_point:
\__str_output_end:
\__str_if_flag_error:nnx { str_error } { unescape-hex } { }
\group_end:
\msg_new:nnnn { str } { unescape-hex }
\end definition for \__str_convert_unescape_hex:, \__str_unescape_hex_auxi:N, and \__str_unescape_hex_auxii:N.
The \_str_convert_unescape_name: function replaces each occurrence of # followed by two hexadecimal digits in \g__str_result_tl by the corresponding byte. The url function is identical, with escape character % instead of #. Thus we define the two together. The arguments of \_str_tmp:w are the character code of # or % in hexadecimal, the name of the main function to define, and the name of the auxiliary which performs the loop.

The looping auxiliary \#3 finds the next escape character, reads the following two characters, and tests them. The test \_str_hexadecimal_use:NTF leaves the upper-case digit in the input stream, hence we surround the test with \_str_output_byte:w " and \_str_output_end:. If both characters are hexadecimal digits, they should be removed before looping: this is done by \use_i:nnn. If one of the characters is not a hexadecimal digit, then feed "#1 to \_str_output_byte:w to produce the escape character, raise the flag, and call the looping function followed by the two characters (remove \use_i:nnn).

\cs_set_protected:Npn \_str_temp:w #1#2#3
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \_str_convert_unescape_#2: }
\group_begin:
\flag_clear:n { str_byte }
\flag_clear:n { str_error }
\int_set:Nn \tex_escapechar:D { 92 }
\__kernel_tl_gset:Nx \g__str_result_tl
{ \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN #1 \prg_break_point:
  \__str_if_flag_error:nnx { str_byte } { non-byte } { #2 }
  \__str_if_flag_error:nnx { str_error } { unescape-#2 } { }
}\group_end:
\cs_new:Npn #3 ##1#1##2##3
{ \__str_filter_bytes:n {##1}
  \use_none:n ##3
  \__str_output_byte:w "
  \__str_hexadecimal_use:NTF ##2
  \__str_hexadecimal_use:NTF ##3
  \flag_raise:n { str_error }
  0 + '##1 \use_i:nn}
\__str_output_end:
\use_i:nnn #3 #2#3

736
LaTeX came across the escape character `-#1'-not followed by two hexadecimal digits. This is invalid in the escaping `-#2'.

The string escaping is somewhat similar to the name and url escapings, with escape character `. The first step is to convert all three line endings, `\^^J`, `\^^M`, and `\^^M\^^J` to the common `\^^J`, as per the PDF specification. This step cannot raise the flag.

Then the following escape sequences are decoded.

- `\n` Line feed (10)
- `\r` Carriage return (13)
- `\t` Horizontal tab (9)
- `\b` Backspace (8)
- `\f` Form feed (12)
- `(` Left parenthesis
- `)` Right parenthesis
- `\` Backslash

`\ddd` (backslash followed by 1 to 3 octal digits) Byte `ddd` (octal), subtracting 256 in case of overflow.

If followed by an end-of-line character, the backslash and the end-of-line are ignored. If followed by anything else, the backslash is ignored, raising the error flag.
54.5.2 Escape methods

Currently, none of the escape methods can lead to errors, assuming that their input is made out of bytes.

\_\_str_convert_escape_hex:
\_\_str_escape_hex_char:N
Loop and convert each byte to hexadecimal.

\_\_str_convert_escape_name:
\_\_str_escape_name_char:n
\_\_str_if_escape_name:nTF
\c__str_escape_name_not_str
\c__str_escape_name_str
For each byte, test whether it should be output as is, or be “hash-encoded”. Roughly, bytes outside the range \[2A,7E\] are hash-encoded. We keep two lists of exceptions: characters in \c__str_escape_name_not_str are not hash-encoded, and characters in the \c__str_escape_name_str are encoded.

\str_const:Nn \c__str_escape_name_not_str { ! " $ & ' } %$
\str_const:Nn \c__str_escape_name_str { { }/<>[] }
\prg_return_false:
\else:
  \_str_if_contains_char:NnTF \c__str_escape_name_str {#1}
  \prg_return_false: \prg_return_true:
\fi:
\fi:
}\fi:
\end{macrodef}
(End definition for \_str_convert_escape_name: and others.)

Any character below (and including) space, and any character above (and including) del, are converted to octal. One backslash is added before each parenthesis and backslash.
\begin{verbatim}
\__str_convert_escape_string:
\__str_escape_string_char:N \__str_if_escape_string:NTF
\c__str_escape_string_str
\str_const:Nx \c__str_escape_string_str
{ \c_backslash_str ( ) }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__str_convert_escape_string:
{ \__str_convert_gmap:N \__str_escape_string_char:N }
\cs_new:Npn \__str_escape_string_char:N #1
{ \__str_if_escape_string:NTF #1
{ \__str_if_contains_char:NnT \c__str_escape_string_str {#1}
{ \c_backslash_str }
#1
}
{ \c_backslash_str
\int_div_truncate:nn {'#1} {64}
\int_mod:nn \{ \int_div_truncate:nn {'#1} {8} \} {8}
\int_mod:nn {'#1} {8}
}
}\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \__str_if_escape_string:N #1 { TF }
{ \if_int_compare:w '#1 < "21 \exp_stop_f:
  \prg_return_false:
\else:
  \if_int_compare:w '#1 > "7E \exp_stop_f:
    \prg_return_false:
\else:
  \prg_return_true:
\fi:
\fi:
\end{verbatim}
(End definition for \_str_convert_escape_string: and others.)

This function is similar to \_str_convert_escape_name:, escaping different characters.
\begin{verbatim}
\__str_convert_escape_url:
\__str_escape_url_char:n \__str_if_escape_url:nTF
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__str_convert_escape_url:
{ \__str_convert_gmap:N \__str_escape_url_char:n }
\cs_new:Npn \__str_escape_url_char:n #1
{ \__str_if_escape_url:nTF {#1} {#1}
{ \c_percent_str \__str_output_hexadecimal:n { '#1 } }
\end{verbatim}
54.6 Encoding definitions

The native encoding is automatically defined. Other encodings are loaded as needed. The following encodings are supported:

- UTF-8;
- UTF-16, big-, little-endian, or with byte order mark;
- UTF-32, big-, little-endian, or with byte order mark;
- the ISO 8859 code pages, numbered from 1 to 16, skipping the inexistent ISO 8859-12.

54.6.1 utf-8 support

Loop through the internal string, and convert each character to its UTF-8 representation. The representation is built from the right-most (least significant) byte to the left-most (most significant) byte. Continuation bytes are in the range [128, 191], taking 64 different values, hence we roughly want to express the character code in base 64, shifting the first digit in the representation by some number depending on how many continuation bytes there are. In the range [0, 127], output the corresponding byte directly. In the range [128, 2047], output the remainder modulo 64, plus 128 as a continuation byte, then output the quotient (which is in the range [0, 31]), shifted by 192. In the next range, [2048, 65535], split the character code into residue and quotient modulo 64, output the residue as a first continuation byte, then repeat; this leaves us with a quotient in the range [0, 15], which we output shifted by 224. The last range, [65536, 1114111], follows the same pattern: once we realize that dividing twice by 64 leaves us with a number larger than 15, we repeat, producing a last continuation byte, and offset the quotient by 240 for the leading byte.

How is that implemented? \texttt{\_\_str\_encode\_utf\_vii\_loop:wwnw} takes successive quotients as its first argument, the quotient from the previous step as its second argument (except in step 1), the bound for quotients that trigger one more step or not, and finally the offset used if this step should produce the leading byte. Leading bytes can be in
the ranges [0, 127], [192, 223], [224, 239], and [240, 247] (really, that last limit should be 244 because Unicode stops at the code point 1114111). At each step, if the quotient \( n \) is less than the limit \( m \) for that range, output the leading byte (\( n \) shifted by \( m \)) and stop. Otherwise, we need one more step: use the quotient of \( n \) by 64, and \( n \) as arguments for the looping auxiliary, and output the continuation byte corresponding to the remainder \( n - 64 \cdot \text{int_value} \). The bizarre construction \( -1 + 0 \ast \) removes the spurious initial continuation byte (better methods welcome).

When decoding a string that is purportedly in the utf-8 encoding, four different errors can occur, signalled by a specific flag for each (we define those flags using \flag_clear_new:n rather than \flag_new:n, because they are shared with other encoding definition files).

- “Missing continuation byte”: a leading byte is not followed by the right number of continuation bytes.
- “Extra continuation byte”: a continuation byte appears where it was not expected, i.e., not after an appropriate leading byte.
- “Overlong”: a Unicode character is expressed using more bytes than necessary, for instance, “C0”80 for the code point 0, instead of a single null byte.
- “Overflow”: this occurs when decoding produces Unicode code points greater than 1114111.

We only raise one \texttt{ETEX} error message, combining all the errors which occurred. In the short message, the leading comma must be removed to get a grammatically correct sentence. In the long text, first remind the user what a correct UTF-8 string should look like, then add error-specific information.

```
\cs_new_protected:cpn { __str_convert_encode_utf8: }
\cs_new:Npn \__str_convert_gmap_internal:N \__str_encode_utf_viii_char:n }
\cs_new:Npn \__str_encode_utf_viii_char:n #1
\__str_encode_utf_viii_loop:wwnnw #1 ; - 1 + 0 * ;
\if_int_compare:w #1 < #3 \exp_stop_f:
\__str_output_byte:n { #1 + #4 }
\fi:
\exp_after:wN \__str_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w
\\int_value:w \int_div_truncate:nn {#1} {64} ; #1 ;
\s__str_stop
\__str_output_byte:n { #2 - 64 * ( #1 - 2 ) }
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__str_encode_utf_viii_loop:wwnnw #1; #2; #3#4 #5 \s__str_stop
\exp_after:wN \__str_encode_utf_viii_loop:wwnnw
\\int_value:w \int_div_truncate:nn {#1} {64} ; #1 ;
\s__str_stop
\__str_output_byte:n { #2 - 64 * ( #1 - 2 ) }
\}
(End definition for \__str_convert_encode_utf8:, \__str_encode_utf_viii_char:n, and \__str_encode_utf_viii_loop:wwnnw.)
```

\l__str_missing_flag
\l__str_extra_flag
\l__str_overlong_flag
\l__str_overflow_flag

When decoding a string that is purportedly in the UTF-8 encoding, four different errors can occur, signalled by a specific flag for each (we define those flags using \flag_clear_new:n rather than \flag_new:n, because they are shared with other encoding definition files).
Invalid UTF-8 string:

\exp_last_unbraced:Nf \use_none:n

\__str_if_flag_times:nT { str_missing } { ,missing-continuation-byte }
\__str_if_flag_times:nT { str_extra } { ,extra-continuation-byte }
\__str_if_flag_times:nT { str_overlong } { ,overlong-form }
\__str_if_flag_times:nT { str_overflow } { ,code-point-too-large }

In the UTF-8 encoding, each Unicode character consists in 1 to 4 bytes, with the following bit pattern:

\iw-indent:n

\begin{itemize}
\item Code point \textless~128: 0xxxxxxx
\item Code point \textless~2048: 110xxxxx 10xxxxxx
\item Code point \textless~65536: 1110xxxx 10xxxxxx 10xxxxxx
\item Code point \textless~1114112: 11110xxx 10xxxxxx 10xxxxxx 10xxxxxx
\end{itemize}

Bytes of the form 10xxxxxx are called continuation bytes.

\prop_gput:Nnn \g_msg_module_name_prop { str } { LaTeX3 }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g_msg_module_type_prop { str } { }

(End definition for \l__str_missing_flag and others.)
Decoding is significantly harder than encoding. As before, lower some flags, which are
tested at the end (in bulk, to trigger at most one \texttt{LaTeX3} error, as explained above). We
expect successive multi-byte sequences of the form \texttt{(start byte) (continuation bytes)}. The
\texttt{start} auxiliary tests the first byte:

- \[0, "7F\]: the byte stands alone, and is converted to its own character code;
- \["80, "BF\]: unexpected continuation byte, raise the appropriate flag, and convert
  that byte to the replacement character \texttt{"FFFD};
- \["C0, "FF\]: this byte should be followed by some continuation byte(s).

In the first two cases, \texttt{use\_none\_delimit\_by\_q\_stop:} removes data that only the third
case requires, namely the limits of ranges of Unicode characters which can be expressed
with 1, 2, 3, or 4 bytes.

We can now concentrate on the multi-byte case and the \texttt{continuation} auxiliary.
We expect \#3 to be in the range \["80, "BF\]. The test for this goes as follows: if the
character code is less than \"80, we compare it to \texttt{−C0}, yielding \texttt{false}; otherwise to
\"C0, yielding \texttt{true} in the range \["80, "BF\] and \texttt{false} otherwise. If we find that the
byte is not a continuation range, stop the current slew of bytes, output the replacement
character, and continue parsing with the \texttt{start} auxiliary, starting at the byte we just
tested. Once we know that the byte is a continuation byte, leave it behind us in the
input stream, compute what code point the bytes read so far would produce, and feed
that number to the \texttt{aux} function.

The \texttt{aux} function tests whether we should look for more continuation bytes or not.
If the number it receives as \#1 is less than the maximum \#4 for the current range, then
we are done: check for an overlong representation by comparing \#1 with the maximum
\#3 for the previous range. Otherwise, we call the \texttt{continuation} auxiliary again, after
shifting the “current code point” by \#4 (maximum from the range we just checked).

Two additional tests are needed: if we reach the end of the list of range maxima and
we are still not done, then we are faced with an overflow. Clean up, and again insert the
code point \texttt{"FFFD} for the replacement character. Also, every time we read a byte, we
need to check whether we reached the end of the string. In a correct UTF-8 string, this
happens automatically when the \texttt{start} auxiliary leaves its first argument in the input
stream: the end-marker begins with \texttt{\texttt{prg\_break:}}, which ends the loop. On the other
hand, if the end is reached when looking for a continuation byte, the \texttt{\texttt{\texttt{use\_none:n}} \#3}
construction removes the first token from the end-marker, and leaves the \texttt{end} auxiliary,
which raises the appropriate error flag before ending the mapping.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:cpn { __str_convert_decode_utf8: }
  { \flag_clear:n { str_error } \flag_clear:n { str_missing } \flag_clear:n { str_extra } \flag_clear:n { str_overlong } \flag_clear:n { str_overflow } \kernel_tl_gset:Nx \g__str_result_tl \exp_after:wN \__str_decode_utf_viii_start:N \g__str_result_tl \prg_break: \__str_decode_utf_viii_end: \prg_break_point: \__str_if_flag_error:nnx { str_error } { utf8-decode } { }
\end{verbatim}
54.6.2 utf-16 support

The definitions are done in a category code regime where the bytes 254 and 255 used by the byte order mark have catcode 12.

When the endianness is not specified, it is big-endian by default, and we add a byte-order mark. Convert characters one by one in a loop, with different behaviours depending on the character code.

- [0, "D7FF]: converted to two bytes;
- ["D800", "DFFF"] are used as surrogates: they cannot be converted and are replaced by the replacement character;
- ["E000", "FFFF"]: converted to two bytes;
- ["10000", "10FFFF"]: converted to a pair of surrogates, each two bytes. The magic "D7C0 is "D800 – "10000"/400.

For the duration of this operation, \_\_str_tmp:w is defined as a function to convert a number in the range [0, "FFFF"] to a pair of bytes (either big endian or little endian), by feeding the quotient of the division of \#1 by "100", followed by \#1 to \_\_str_encode_utf_xvi_be:nn or its le analog: those compute the remainder, and output two bytes for the quotient and remainder.
When encoding a Unicode string to utf-16, only one error can occur: code points in the range \[U+D800, U+DFFF\], corresponding to surrogates, cannot be encoded. We use the all-purpose flag \@error to signal that error.

When decoding a Unicode string which is purportedly in utf-16, three errors can occur: a missing trail surrogate, an unexpected trail surrogate, and a string containing an odd number of bytes.
\exp_last_unbraced:Nf \use_none:n
\__str_if_flag_times:nT { str_missing } { ,~missing-trail-surrogate }
\__str_if_flag_times:nT { str_extra } { ,~extra-trail-surrogate }
\__str_if_flag_times:nT { str_end } { ,~odd-number-of-bytes }

In-the-UTF-16-encoding,-each-Unicode-character-is-encoded-as-
2-or-4-bytes: \\
\iow_indent:n
\ Code-point-in-[U+0000,-U+D7FF]:two-bytes \\
\ Code-point-in-[U+D800,-U+DFFF]:illegal \\
\ Code-point-in-[U+E000,-U+FFFF]:two-bytes \\
\ Code-point-in-[U+10000,-U+10FFFF]:
\ a-lead-surrogate-and-a-trail-surrogate \\
\ Lead-surrogates-are-pairs-of-bytes-in-the-range-[0xD800,-0xDBFF]-
\ and-trail-surrogates-are-in-the-range-[0xDC00,-0xDFFF].
\flag_if_raised:nT { str_missing }
\ { \\\n\ A-lead-surrogate-was-not-followed-by-a-trail-surrogate. \\\n\ }
\flag_if_raised:nT { str_extra }
\ { \\\n\ LaTeX-came-across-a-trail-surrogate-when-it-was-not-expected. \\\n\ }
\flag_if_raised:nT { str_end }
\ { \\\n\ The-string-contained-an-odd-number-of-bytes.-This-is-invalid:-
\ the-basic-code-unit-for-UTF-16-is-16-bits-(2-bytes). \\\n\ }

(End definition for \_\_\_str_missing_flag, \_\_\_str_extra_flag, and \_\_\_str_end_flag.)

As for utf-8, decoding UTF-16 is harder than encoding it. If the endianness is unknown,
check the first two bytes: if those are \*FE and \*FF in either order, remove them and use
the corresponding endianness, otherwise assume big-endianess. The three endianness
cases are based on a common auxiliary whose first argument is 1 for big-endian and 2 for
little-endian, and whose second argument, delimited by the scan mark \s__str_stop,
is expanded once (the string may be long; passing \g__str_result_tl as an argument
before expansion is cheaper).

The \__str_decode_utf_xvi:Nw function defines \__str_tmp:w to take two argu-
ments and return the character code of the first one if the string is big-endian, and the
second one if the string is little-endian, then loops over the string using \__str_decode-
utf_xvi_pair:NN described below.
Bytes are read two at a time. At this stage, \@@_tmp:w #1#2 expands to the character code of the most significant byte, and we distinguish cases depending on which range it lies in:

- \[\text{D8, DB}\] signals a lead surrogate, and the integer expression yields 1 (\$\varepsilon\$-\TeX{} rounds ties away from zero);
- \[\text{DC, DF}\] signals a trail surrogate, unexpected here, and the integer expression yields 2;
- any other value signals a code point in the Basic Multilingual Plane, which stands for itself, and the \if_case:w construction expands to nothing (cases other than 1 or 2), leaving the relevant material in the input stream, followed by another call to the _pair auxiliary.

The case of a lead surrogate is treated by the _quad auxiliary, whose arguments #1, #2, #4 and #5 are the four bytes. We expect the most significant byte of #4#5 to be in the range \[\text{DC, DF}\] (trail surrogate). The test is similar to the test used for continuation bytes.
in the UTF-8 decoding functions. In the case where \#4\#5 is indeed a trail surrogate, leave
\#1\#2\#4\#5 \s__str (code point) \s__str, and remove the pair \#4\#5 before looping with
\__str_decode_utf_xvi_pair:NN. Otherwise, of course, complain about the missing surrogate.

The magic number "D7F7" is such that "D7F7*400 = "D800*400+"DC00--"10000.

Every time we read a pair of bytes, we test for the end-marker \q__str_nil. When
reaching the end, we additionally check that the string had an even length. Also, if the
end is reached when expecting a trail surrogate, we treat that as a missing surrogate.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__str_decode_utf_xvi_pair:NN #1#2
{\if_meaning:w \q__str_nil #2\__str_decode_utf_xvi_pair_end:Nw #1\fi:\if_case:w\int_eval:n { ( \__str_tmp:w #1#2 - "D6 ) / 4 } \scan_stop:\or:\exp_after:wN \__str_decode_utf_xvi_quad:NNwNN\or:\exp_after:wN \__str_decode_utf_xvi_extra:NNw\fi:\#1\#2 \s__str\int_eval:n { "100 * \__str_tmp:w #1#2 + \__str_tmp:w #2#1 } \s__str\__str_decode_utf_xvi_pair:NN}
\cs_new:Npn \__str_decode_utf_xvi_quad:NNwNN #1#2 #3 \__str_decode_utf_xvi_pair:NN #4#5
{\if_meaning:w \q__str_nil #5\__str_decode_utf_xvi_error:nNN { missing } #1#2\__str_decode_utf_xvi_pair_end:Nw #4\fi:\if_int_compare:w\if_int_compare:w \__str_tmp:w #4#5 < "DC \exp_stop_f:
  0 = 1\else:\__str_tmp:w #4#5 < "E0 \exp_stop_f:\if\exp_stop_f:\#1 \#2 \#4 \#5 \s__str\if\exp_stop_f:\int_eval:n{
  "100 * \__str_tmp:w #1#2 + \__str_tmp:w #2#1 - "D7F7 ) * "400 + "100 * \__str_tmp:w #4#5 + \__str_tmp:w #5#4
}\s__str\else:\exp_after:wN \use_i:nnn\fi:\else:\__str_decode_utf_xvi_error:nNN { missing } #1#2\fi:\__str_decode_utf_xvi_pair_end:NN #4#5}\cs_new:Npn \__str_decode_utf_xvi_pair_end:Nw #1 #2\fi:\if_meaning:w \q__str_nil #1 \fi:
\end{verbatim}


54.6.3 utf-32 support

The definitions are done in a category code regime where the bytes 0, 254 and 255 used by the byte order mark have catcode “other”.

Convert each integer in the comma-list \g__str_result_tl to a sequence of four bytes. The functions for big-endian and little-endian encodings are very similar, but the \__str_output_byte:n instructions are reversed.

\__str_convert_encode_utf32:
\__str_convert_encode_utf32be:
\__str_convert_encode_utf32le:
\__str_encode_utf_xxxii_be:n
\__str_encode_utf_xxxii_be_aux:nn
\__str_encode_utf_xxxii_le:n
\__str_encode_utf_xxxii_le_aux:nn

\cs_new_protected:cpn { \__str_convert_encode_utf32: }
{ \__str_convert_gmap_internal:N \__str_encode_utf_xxxii_be:n
\tl_gput_left:Nx \g__str_result_tl { ^^00 ^^00 ^^fe ^^ff }
}
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \__str_convert_encode_utf32be: }
{ \__str_convert_gmap_internal:N \__str_encode_utf_xxxii_be:n }
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \__str_convert_encode_utf32le: }
{ \__str_convert_gmap_internal:N \__str_encode_utf_xxxii_le:n }
\cs_new:Npn \__str_encode_utf_xxxii_be:n #1
{ \exp_args:Nf \__str_encode_utf_xxxii_be_aux:nn
{ \int_div_truncate:nn {#1} { "100 } } {#1} }
\cs_new:Npn \__str_encode_utf_xxxii_be_aux:nn
{ ~00
\__str_output_byte_pair_be:n {#1}
\__str_output_byte:n { #2 - #1 * "100 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__str_encode_utf_xxxii_le:n #1
{ { 751}
\exp_args:Nf \__str_encode_utf_xxxii_le_aux:nn
\{ \int_div_truncate:nn {#1} { "100 } \} {#1}
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__str_encode_utf_xxxii_le_aux:nn #1#2
\{ \__str_output_byte:n { #2 - #1 * "100 } \}
\__str_output_byte_pair_le:n {#1}
\}
\end{definition}

\begin{verbatim}
there can be no error when encoding in utf-32. when decoding, the string may not
have length 4n, or it may contain code points larger than "10ffff. the latter case often
happens if the encoding was in fact not utf-32, because most arbitrary strings are not
valid in utf-32.
\end{verbatim}

\flag_clear_new:n \{ str_overflow \}
\flag_clear_new:n \{ str_end \}
\msg_new:nnnn \{ str \} \{ utf32-decode \}
\{ \exp_last_unbraced:Nf \use_none:n \}
\{ \__str_if_flag_times:nT { str_overflow } { , code-point-too-large } \}
\{ \__str_if_flag_times:nT { str_end } { , truncated-string } \}
\}
\}
\{ \_in-the-utf-32-encoding,-every-unicode-character-
 \{ \_flag_if_raised:nT \{ str_overflow \} \{ ,code-point-too-large \} \}
\{ \_flag_if_raised:nT \{ str_end \} \{ ,truncated-string \} \}
\}
\end{definition}

\begin{verbatim}
the structure is similar to utf-16 decoding functions. if the endianness is not given, test
the first 4 bytes of the string (possibly \_s__str_stop if the string is too short) for the
presence of a byte-order mark. if there is a byte-order mark, use that endianness, and
remove the 4 bytes, otherwise default to big-endian, and leave the 4 bytes in place. the
\_str_decode_utf_xxxii:Nw auxiliary receives 1 or 2 as its first argument indicating
endianness, and the string to convert as its second argument (expanded or not). it sets
\end{verbatim}
\__str_tmp:w to expand to the character code of either of its two arguments depending on endianness, then triggers the _loop auxiliary inside an x-expanding assignment to __str_result_tl.

The _loop auxiliary first checks for the end-of-string marker __str_stop, calling the _end auxiliary if appropriate. Otherwise, leave the (4 bytes) __str behind, then check that the code point is not overflowing: the leading byte must be 0, and the following byte at most 16.

In the ending code, we check that there remains no byte: there should be nothing left until the first __str_stop. Break the map.

\cs_new_protected:cpn { __str_convert_decode_utf32be: } \cs_new_protected:cpn { __str_decode_utf_xxxii:Nw 1 __str_result_tl __str_stop } \cs_new_protected:cpn { __str_convert_decode_utf32le: } \cs_new_protected:cpn { __str_decode_utf_xxxii:Nw 2 __str_result_tl __str_stop } \cs_new_protected:Npn { __str_convert_decode_utf32: } \exp_after:wN { \__str_decode_utf_xxxii_bom:NNNN __str_result_tl __str_stop __str_stop __str_stop __str_stop __str_stop } \cs_new_protected:Npn { __str_decode_utf_xxxii_bom:NNNN #1#2#3#4 } \exp_after:wN \__str_decode_utf_xxxii_loop:NNNN #2 __str_stop __str_stop __str_stop __str_stop \__str_if_flag_error:nnx { str_error } { utf32-decode } { } \cs_new_protected:Npn { __str_decode_utf_xxxii_loop:NNNN #1#2#3#4 } \exp_after:wN \__str_decode_utf_xxxii_loop:NNNN #2 __str_stop __str_stop __str_stop __str_stop \__str_if_flag_error:nnx { str_error } { utf32-decode } { } \cs_new:Npn { __str_decode_utf_xxxii_loop:NNNN #1#2#3#4 } \exp_after:wN \__str_decode_utf_xxxii_loop:NNNN #2 __str_stop __str_stop __str_stop __str_stop \__str_if_flag_error:nnx { str_error } { utf32-decode } { }
To convert to PDF names by expansion, we work purely on UTF-8 input. The first step is to make a string with “other” spaces, after which we use a simple token-by-token approach. In Unicode engines, we break down everything before one-byte codepoints, but for 8-bit engines there is no need to worry. Actual escaping is covered by the same code as used in the non-expansible route.
\exp_args:Ne \__str_convert_pdfname_bytes_aux:n
  \{ \char_to_utfviii_bytes:n \{"#1\} \}
\cs_new:Npn \__str_convert_pdfname_bytes_aux:n \#1
  \{ \__str_convert_pdfname_bytes_aux:nnnn \#1 \}
\cs_new:Npx \__str_convert_pdfname_bytes_aux:nnnn \#1#2#3#4
  \{
    \c_hash_str \exp_not:N \__str_output_hexadecimal:n \{#1\}
    \c_hash_str \exp_not:N \__str_output_hexadecimal:n \{#2\}
    \exp_not:N \tl_if_blank:nF {#3}
    \{
      \c_hash_str \exp_not:N \__str_output_hexadecimal:n \{#3\}
      \exp_not:N \tl_if_blank:nF \{#4\}
      \{
        \c_hash_str \exp_not:N \__str_output_hexadecimal:n \{#4\}
      \}
    \}
  }
\cs_new_eq:NN \__str_convert_pdfname:n \__str_escape_name_char:n

(End definition for \str_convert_pdfname:n and others. This function is documented on page 135.)

\end{package}

54.7.1 iso 8859 support

The iso-8859-1 encoding exactly matches with the 256 first Unicode characters. For other 8-bit encodings of the iso-8859 family, we keep track only of differences, and of unassigned bytes.

\__str_declare_eight_bit_encoding:nnnn \iso88591 \{ 256 \}
\__str_declare_eight_bit_encoding:nnnn \iso88592 \{ 399 \}
\__str_declare_eight_bit_encoding:nnnn \iso88593 \{ 755 \}
\_\_str\_define\_eight\_bit\_encoding:nnnn { iso88593 } { 384 }
{
    { A1 } { 0126 }
    { A2 } { 02D8 }
    { A6 } { 0124 }
    { A9 } { 0130 }
}
\_
\_str_declare_eight_bit_encoding:nnnn \ { iso88594 \} \ { 383 \}
\{ iso88594 \}
\\/iso88593\\}
```python
{ B9 } { 0161 }
{ BA } { 0113 }
{ BB } { 0123 }
{ BC } { 0167 }
{ BD } { 014A }
{ BE } { 017E }
{ BF } { 014B }
{ CO } { 0100 }
{ C7 } { 012E }
{ CS } { 010C }
{ CA } { 0118 }
{ CC } { 0116 }
{ CF } { 012A }
{ D0 } { 0110 }
{ D1 } { 0145 }
{ D2 } { 014C }
{ D3 } { 0136 }
{ D9 } { 0172 }
{ DD } { 0168 }
{ DE } { 016A }
{ E0 } { 0101 }
{ E7 } { 012F }
{ E8 } { 010D }
{ EA } { 0119 }
{ EC } { 0117 }
{ EF } { 012B }
{ F0 } { 0111 }
{ F1 } { 0146 }
{ F2 } { 014D }
{ F3 } { 0137 }
{ F9 } { 0173 }
{ FD } { 0169 }
{ FE } { 016B }
{ FF } { 02D9 }

{ A1 } { 0401 }
{ A2 } { 0402 }
{ A3 } { 0403 }
{ A4 } { 0404 }
{ A5 } { 0405 }
{ A6 } { 0406 }
{ A7 } { 0407 }
{ A8 } { 0408 }
{ A9 } { 0409 }
{ AA } { 040A }
{ AB } { 040B }
{ AC } { 040C }
{ AE } { 040E }
```
{ AF } { 040F }
{ B0 } { 0410 }
{ B1 } { 0411 }
{ B2 } { 0412 }
{ B3 } { 0413 }
{ B4 } { 0414 }
{ B5 } { 0415 }
{ B6 } { 0416 }
{ B7 } { 0417 }
{ B8 } { 0418 }
{ B9 } { 0419 }
{ BA } { 041A }
{ BB } { 041B }
{ BC } { 041C }
{ BD } { 041D }
{ BE } { 041E }
{ BF } { 041F }
{ C0 } { 0420 }
{ C1 } { 0421 }
{ C2 } { 0422 }
{ C3 } { 0423 }
{ C4 } { 0424 }
{ C5 } { 0425 }
{ C6 } { 0426 }
{ C7 } { 0427 }
{ C8 } { 0428 }
{ C9 } { 0429 }
{ CA } { 042A }
{ CB } { 042B }
{ CC } { 042C }
{ CD } { 042D }
{ CE } { 042E }
{ CF } { 042F }
{ D0 } { 0430 }
{ D1 } { 0431 }
{ D2 } { 0432 }
{ D3 } { 0433 }
{ D4 } { 0434 }
{ D5 } { 0435 }
{ D6 } { 0436 }
{ D7 } { 0437 }
{ D8 } { 0438 }
{ D9 } { 0439 }
{ DA } { 043A }
{ DB } { 043B }
{ DC } { 043C }
{ DD } { 043D }
{ DE } { 043E }
{ DF } { 043F }
{ E0 } { 0440 }
{ E1 } { 0441 }
{ E2 } { 0442 }
{ E3 } { 0443 }
{ E4 } { 0444 }
\__str\_declare\_eight\_bit\_encoding\:nnnn { iso88596 } { 344 }

{ AC } { 060C }
{ BB } { 061B }
{ BF } { 061F }
{ C1 } { 0621 }
{ C2 } { 0622 }
{ C3 } { 0623 }
{ C4 } { 0624 }
{ C5 } { 0625 }
{ C6 } { 0626 }
{ C7 } { 0627 }
{ C8 } { 0628 }
{ C9 } { 0629 }
{ CA } { 062A }
{ CB } { 062B }
{ CC } { 062C }
{ CD } { 062D }
{ CE } { 062E }
{ CF } { 062F }
{ D0 } { 0630 }
{ D1 } { 0631 }

760
0632
0633
0634
0635
0636
0637
0638
0639
063A
0640
0641
0642
0643
0644
0645
0646
0647
0648
0649
064A
064B
064C
064D
064E
064F
0650
0651
0652
A1
A2
A3
A5
A6
A7
A8
A9
AA
AB
AE
AF
B0
B1
B2
B3
B4
B5
B6
B7
B8
B9
BA
BC
```c
    { BD }  
    { BE }  
    { CO }  
    { DB }  
    { DC }  
    { DD }  
    { DE }  
    { DF }  

    { iso88597}  
    \_str_declare_eight_bit_encoding:nnnn { iso88597 } { 498 } 

    {  A1 } { 2018 }  
    {  A2 } { 2019 }  
    {  A4 } { 20AC }  
    {  A5 } { 20AF }  
    {  AA } { 037A }  
    {  AF } { 2015 }  
    {  B4 } { 0384 }  
    {  B5 } { 0385 }  
    {  B6 } { 0386 }  
    {  B8 } { 0388 }  
    {  B9 } { 0389 }  
    {  BA } { 038A }  
    {  BC } { 038C }  
    {  BE } { 038E }  
    {  BF } { 038F }  
    {  CO } { 0390 }  
    {  C1 } { 0391 }  
    {  C2 } { 0392 }  
    {  C3 } { 0393 }  
    {  C4 } { 0394 }  
    {  C5 } { 0395 }  
    {  C6 } { 0396 }  
    {  C7 } { 0397 }  
    {  C8 } { 0398 }  
    {  C9 } { 0399 }  
    {  CA } { 039A }  
    {  CB } { 039B }  
    {  CC } { 039C }  
    {  CD } { 039D }  
    {  CE } { 039E }  
    {  CF } { 039F }  
    {  D0 } { 03A0 }  
    {  D1 } { 03A1 }  
    {  D3 } { 03A3 }  
    {  D4 } { 03A4 }  
    {  D5 } { 03A5 }  
    {  D6 } { 03A6 }  
    {  D7 } { 03A7 }  
    {  D8 } { 03A8 }  
    {  D9 } { 03A9 }  
    {  DA } { 03AA }  
```
\_\_str\_declare\_eight\_bit\_encoding: \n\n```c
{ DB } { 03AB }
{ DC } { 03AC }
{ DD } { 03AD }
{ DE } { 03AE }
{ DF } { 03AF }
{ E0 } { 03B0 }
{ E1 } { 03B1 }
{ E2 } { 03B2 }
{ E3 } { 03B3 }
{ E4 } { 03B4 }
{ E5 } { 03B5 }
{ E6 } { 03B6 }
{ E7 } { 03B7 }
{ E8 } { 03B8 }
{ E9 } { 03B9 }
{ EA } { 03BA }
{ EB } { 03BB }
{ EC } { 03BC }
{ ED } { 03BD }
{ EE } { 03BE }
{ EF } { 03BF }
{ F0 } { 03C0 }
{ F1 } { 03C1 }
{ F2 } { 03C2 }
{ F3 } { 03C3 }
{ F4 } { 03C4 }
{ F5 } { 03C5 }
{ F6 } { 03C6 }
{ F7 } { 03C7 }
{ F8 } { 03C8 }
{ F9 } { 03C9 }
{ FA } { 03CA }
{ FB } { 03CB }
{ FC } { 03CC }
{ FD } { 03CD }
{ FE } { 03CE }
```
'{ E6 } { 05D6 } { E7 } { 05D7 } { E8 } { 05D8 } { E9 } { 05D9 } { EA } { 05DA } { EB } { 05DB } { EC } { 05DC } { ED } { 05DD } { EE } { 05DE } { EF } { 05DF } { F0 } { 05E0 } { F1 } { 05E1 } { F2 } { 05E2 } { F3 } { 05E3 } { F4 } { 05E4 } { F5 } { 05E5 } { F6 } { 05E6 } { F7 } { 05E7 } { F8 } { 05E8 } { F9 } { 05E9 } { FA } { 05EA } { FD } { 200E } { FE } { 200F } {'A1'} {'BF'} {'C0'} {'C1'} {'C2'} {'C3'} {'C4'} {'C5'} {'C6'} {'C7'} {'C8'} {'C9'} {'CA'} {'CB'} {'CC'} {'CD'} {'CE'} {'CF'} {'D0'} {'D1'} {'D2'} {'D3'} {'D4'} {'D5'} {'D6'} {'D7'} {'D8'} {'D9'} {'DA'}
\__str declare eight bit encoding:nnnn { iso88599 } { 352 }
{
  { D0 } { 011E }
  { DD } { 0130 }
  { DE } { 015E }
  { F0 } { 011F }
  { FD } { 0131 }
  { FE } { 015F }
}
\__str declare eight bit encoding:nnnn { iso885910 } { 383 }
{
  { A1 } { 0104 }
  { A2 } { 0112 }
  { A3 } { 0122 }
  { A4 } { 012A }
  { A5 } { 0128 }
  { A6 } { 0136 }
  { A8 } { 013B }
  { A9 } { 0110 }
  { AA } { 0160 }
  { AB } { 0166 }
  { AC } { 017D }
  { AE } { 016A }
  { AF } { 014A }
  { B1 } { 0105 }
  { B2 } { 0113 }
  { B3 } { 0123 }
  { B4 } { 012B }
  { B5 } { 0129 }
  { B6 } { 0137 }
  { B8 } { 013C }
  { B9 } { 0111 }
  { BA } { 0151 }
  { BB } { 0167 }
  { BC } { 017E }
  { BD } { 2015 }
  { BE } { 016B }
  { BF } { 014B }
  { C0 } { 0100 }
  { C7 } { 012E }

\_\_str\_declare\_eight\_bit\_encoding:nnnn { iso885911 } { 369 }
{
    { A1 } { OE01 }
    { A2 } { OE02 }
    { A3 } { OE03 }
    { A4 } { OE04 }
    { A5 } { OE05 }
    { A6 } { OE06 }
    { A7 } { OE07 }
    { A8 } { OE08 }
    { A9 } { OE09 }
    { AA } { OE0A }
    { AB } { OE0B }
    { AC } { OE0C }
    { AD } { OE0D }
    { AE } { OE0E }
    { AF } { OE0F }
    { B0 } { OE10 }
    { B1 } { OE11 }
    { B2 } { OE12 }
    { B3 } { OE13 }
    { B4 } { OE14 }
    { B5 } { OE15 }
    { B6 } { OE16 }
    { B7 } { OE17 }
    { B8 } { OE18 }
    { B9 } { OE19 }
    { BA } { OE1A }
    { BB } { OE1B }
    { BC } { OE1C }
    { BD } { OE1D }
    { BE } { OE1E }
}
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hexadecimal</th>
<th>Decimal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>92</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>97</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>99</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A0</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A1</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A2</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A3</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A4</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A5</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A6</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A7</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A8</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A9</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AA</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AB</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AC</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AD</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AE</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B0</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B1</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B2</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B3</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B4</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B5</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B6</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B7</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B8</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B9</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BB</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BC</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BD</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BE</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BF</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C0</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C1</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C2</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C3</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C4</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C5</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C6</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C7</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C8</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C9</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CB</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CC</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CE</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CF</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D0</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D1</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D2</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D3</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D5</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D6</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D7</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D8</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D9</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DA</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DD</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DE</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DF</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E0</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E1</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E3</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E4</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E5</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E6</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E7</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E8</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E9</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EA</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EB</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EC</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ED</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EE</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EF</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F0</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F1</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F2</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F3</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F4</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F5</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F6</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F7</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F8</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F9</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FA</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FB</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FC</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FD</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FE</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FF</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
\__str\_declare\_eight\_bit\_encoding:nnnn \{iso885913\} \{ 399 \} 

\{ A1 \} \{ 201D \} 
\{ A5 \} \{ 201E \} 
\{ A8 \} \{ 00D8 \} 
\{ AA \} \{ 0156 \} 
\{ AF \} \{ 00C6 \} 
\{ B4 \} \{ 201C \} 
\{ B8 \} \{ 00F8 \} 
\{ BA \} \{ 0157 \} 
\{ BF \} \{ 00E6 \} 
\{ CO \} \{ 0104 \} 
\{ C1 \} \{ 012E \} 
\{ C2 \} \{ 0100 \} 
\{ C3 \} \{ 0106 \} 
\{ C6 \} \{ 0118 \} 
\{ C7 \} \{ 0112 \} 
\{ C8 \} \{ 010C \} 
\{ CA \} \{ 0179 \} 
\{ CB \} \{ 0116 \} 
\{ CC \} \{ 0122 \} 
\{ CD \} \{ 0136 \} 
\{ CE \} \{ 012A \} 
\{ CF \} \{ 013B \} 
\{ D0 \} \{ 0160 \} 
\{ D1 \} \{ 0143 \} 
\{ D2 \} \{ 0145 \} 
\{ D4 \} \{ 014C \} 
\{ D8 \} \{ 0172 \} 
\{ DA \} \{ 0141 \} 
\{ DB \} \{ 016A \} 
\{ DD \} \{ 017B \} 
\{ DE \} \{ 017D \} 
\{ E0 \} \{ 0105 \} 
\{ E1 \} \{ 012F \} 
\{ E2 \} \{ 0101 \} 
\{ E3 \} \{ 0107 \} 
\{ E6 \} \{ 0119 \} 
\{ E7 \} \{ 0113 \} 
\{ EB \} \{ 010D \} 
\{ EA \} \{ 017A \}
{ EB } { 0117 }
{ EC } { 0123 }
{ ED } { 0137 }
{ EE } { 012B }
{ EF } { 013C }
{ F0 } { 0161 }
{ F1 } { 0144 }
{ F2 } { 0146 }
{ F4 } { 014D }
{ F8 } { 0173 }
{ F9 } { 0142 }
{ FA } { 015B }
{ FB } { 016B }
{ FD } { 017C }
{ FE } { 017E }
{ FF } { 2019 }

{ iso885913 }
{ iso885914 }
\__str\_declare\_eight\_bit\_encoding:nnnn { iso885914 } { 383 }
{
  \{ A4 \} { 20AC }
  \{ A6 \} { 0160 }
  \{ A8 \} { 0161 }
  \{ B4 \} { 017D }
  \{ B8 \} { 017E }
  \{ BC \} { 0152 }
  \{ BD \} { 0153 }
  \{ BE \} { 0178 }
}
\} /
iso885914
\⟩

\__str\_declare\_eight\_bit\_encoding:nnnn { iso885915 } { 558 }
{
  \{ A1 \} { 0104 }
  \{ A2 \} { 0105 }
  \{ A3 \} { 0141 }
  \{ A4 \} { 20AC }
  \{ A5 \} { 201E }
  \{ A6 \} { 0160 }
  \{ A8 \} { 0161 }
  \{ AA \} { 0218 }
  \{ AC \} { 0179 }
  \{ AE \} { 017A }
  \{ AF \} { 017B }
  \{ B2 \} { 010C }
  \{ B3 \} { 0142 }
  \{ B4 \} { 017D }
  \{ B5 \} { 201D }
  \{ B8 \} { 017E }
  \{ B9 \} { 010D }
  \{ BA \} { 0219 }
  \{ BC \} { 0152 }
  \{ BD \} { 0153 }
  \{ BE \} { 0178 }
  \{ BF \} { 017C }
  \{ C3 \} { 0102 }
  \{ C5 \} { 0106 }
  \{ D0 \} { 0110 }
  \{ D1 \} { 0143 }
  \{ D5 \} { 0150 }
  \{ D7 \} { 015A }
  \{ D8 \} { 0170 }
  \{ DD \} { 0118 }
  \{ DE \} { 021A }
Chapter 55

l3quark implementation

The following test files are used for this code: m3quark001.lvt.

55.1 Quarks

\quark_new:N Allocate a new quark.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \quark_new:N #1
{ \__kernel_chk_if_free_cs:N #1 \cs_gset_nopar:Npn #1 {#1} }

(End definition for \quark_new:N. This function is documented on page 158.)

\q_nil \q_mark \q_no_value \q_stop Some “public” quarks. \q_stop is an “end of argument” marker, \q_nil is an empty value and \q_no_value marks an empty argument.
\quark_new:N \q_nil \quark_new:N \q_mark \quark_new:N \q_no_value \quark_new:N \q_stop

(End definition for \q_nil and others. These variables are documented on page 158.)

\q_recursion_tail \q_recursion_stop Quarks for ending recursions. Only ever used there! \q_recursion_tail is appended to whatever list structure we are doing recursion on, meaning it is added as a proper list item with whatever list separator is in use. \q_recursion_stop is placed directly after the list.
\quark_new:N \q_recursion_tail \quark_new:N \q_recursion_stop

(End definition for \q_recursion_tail and \q_recursion_stop. These variables are documented on page 159.)

\s__quark Private scan mark used in l3quark. We don’t have l3scan yet, so we declare the scan mark here and add it to the scan mark pool later.
\cs_new_eq:NN \s__quark \scan_stop:
Private quark use for some tests.

When doing recursions, it is easy to spend a lot of time testing if the end marker has been found. To avoid this, a dedicated end marker is used each time a recursion is set up. Thus if the marker is found everything can be wrapper up and finished off. The simple case is when the test can guarantee that only a single token is being tested. In this case, there is just a dedicated copy of the standard quark test. Both a gobbling version and one inserting end code are provided.

See \quark_if_nil:nTF for the details. Expanding \__quark_if_recursion_tail:w once in front of the tokens chosen here gives an empty result if and only if \q_recursion_tail is exactly \q_recursion_tail.
Analogues of the \quark_if_recursion_tail_stop... functions. Break the mapping using \#2.

\begin{verbatim}
cs_new:Npn \quark_if_recursion_tail_break:NN #1#2
  {\if_meaning:w \q_recursion_tail #1 \exp_after:wN #2 \fi:}
cs_new:Npn \quark_if_recursion_tail_break:nN #1#2
  {\tl_if_empty:oT { \__quark_if_recursion_tail:w {} #1 {} ?! \q_recursion_tail ??! } {#2} }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \quark_if_recursion_tail_break:NN and \quark_if_recursion_tail_break:nN. These functions are documented on page 140.)

\begin{verbatim}
quark_if_nil_p:N \quark_if_nil:NTF \quark_if_no_value_p:N \quark_if_no_value:NTF \quark_if_no_value_p:c \quark_if_no_value_p:c \quark_if_no_value:cTF \quark_if_no_value:n \quark_if_no_value:n \__quark_if_nil:w \__quark_if_no_value:w \__quark_if_empty_if:o
\end{verbatim}

Here we test if we found a special quark as the first argument. We better start with \q_no_value as the first argument since the whole thing may otherwise loop if \#1 is wrongly given a string like \texttt{aabc} instead of a single token.\footnote{It may still loop in special circumstances however!}

\begin{verbatim}
\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \quark_if_nil:N #1 { p, T, F, TF }
  {\if_meaning:w \q_nil #1 \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi:}
\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \quark_if_no_value:N #1 { p, T, F, TF }
  {\if_meaning:w \q_no_value #1 \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi:}
\prg_generate_conditional_variant:Nnn \quark_if_no_value:N { c } { p, T, F, TF }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \quark_if_nil:NTF and \quark_if_no_value:NTF. These functions are documented on page 138.)

Let us explain \quark_if_nil:nTF. Expanding \_\_\quark_if_nil:w once is safe thanks to the trailing \q_nil ?!?. The result of expanding once is empty if and only if both delimited arguments \#1 and \#2 are empty and \#3 is delimited by the last tokens ?!. Thanks to the leading \{, the argument \#1 is empty if and only if the argument of \quark_if_nil:n starts with \q_nil. The argument \#2 is empty if and only if this \q_nil is followed immediately by ? or by \}, coming either from the trailing tokens in the definition of \quark_if_nil:n, or from its argument. In the first case, \_\_\quark_if_nil:w is followed by \}\q_nil \}? \q_nil ??!, hence \#3 is delimited by the final ?!, and the test returns \texttt{true} as wanted. In the second case, the result is not empty since...
the first ?! in the definition of \quark_if_nil:n stop #3. The auxiliary here is the same as \_tl_if_empty_if:o, with the same comments applying.

\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \quark_if_nil:n #1 { p, T, F, TF }
{ \__quark_if_empty_if:o
  \__quark_if_nil:w {} #1 {} ? ! \q_nil ? ? !
  \prg_return_true:
\else:
  \prg_return_false:
\fi:
\__quark_if_empty_if:o
\__quark_if_no_value:w {} #1 {} ? ! \q_no_value ? ? !
\prg_return_true:
\else:
  \prg_return_false:
\fi:
\cs_new:Npn \__quark_if_nil:w #1 \q_nil #2 ? #3 ? ! { #1 #2 }
\prg_new_conditional:Nppn \quark_if_no_value:n #1 { p, T, F, TF }
{ \__quark_if_empty_if:o
  \__quark_if_no_value:w {} #1 {} ? ! \q_no_value ? ? !
  \prg_return_true:
\else:
  \prg_return_false:
\fi:
\__quark_if_empty_if:o
\__quark_if_no_value:w #1 {} ? ! \q_no_value ? ? !
\prg_return_true:
\else:
  \prg_return_false:
\fi:
\cs_new:Npn \__quark_if_no_value:w #1 \q_no_value #2 ? #3 ? ! { #1 #2 }
\prg_generate_conditional_variant:Nnn \quark_if_nil:n \__kernel_quark_new_test:N
\__kernel_tl_to_str:w \exp_after:wN \if_meaning:w \exp_after:wN {#1} \q_nil

(End definition for \quark_if_nil:nTF and others. These functions are documented on page 138.)

\__kernel_quark_new_test:N

The function \__kernel_quark_new_test:N defines #1 in a similar way as \quark_if_recursion_tail... functions (as described below), using \q__⟨namespace⟩_recursion_tail as the test quark and \q__⟨namespace⟩_recursion_stop as the delimiter quark, where the ⟨namespace⟩ is determined as the first _-delimited part in #1.

There are six possible function types which this function can define, and which is defined depends on the signature of the function being defined:

:n gives an analogue of \quark_if_recursion_tail_stop:n
:nn gives an analogue of \quark_if_recursion_tail_stop_do:nn
:nN gives an analogue of \quark_if_recursion_tail_break:nN
:N gives an analogue of \quark_if_recursion_tail_stop:N
:Nn gives an analogue of \quark_if_recursion_tail_stop_do:Nn
:NN gives an analogue of \quark_if_recursion_tail_break:NN

Any other signature causes an error, as does a function without signature.
Similar to \_\_kernel_quark_new_test:N, but defines quark branching conditionals like \quark_if_nil:nTF that test for the quark \quark:⟨namespace⟩⟨name⟩. The ⟨namespace⟩ and ⟨name⟩ are determined from the conditional #1, which must take the rather rigid form \__⟨namespace⟩\quark_if⟨name⟩:⟨arg spec⟩. There are only two cases for the ⟨arg spec⟩ here:

:n gives an analogue of \quark_if_nil:nTF
:N gives an analogue of \quark_if_nil:NTF

Any other signature causes an error, as does a function without signature. We use low-level emptiness tests as \l3tl is not available yet when these functions are used; thankfully we only care about whether strings are empty so a simple \if_meaning:w \q_nil ⟨string⟩ \q_nil suffices.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__kernel_quark_new_test:N #1
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__quark_new_test_aux:Nx #1 { \__quark_module_name:N #1 } 
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__quark_new_test:Nccn #1
\__quark_new_test_aux:nnNNnnnn #1 { q__#1_recursion_tail } { q__#1_recursion_stop } { __#1 }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \__quark_new_test_aux:Nn { Nx }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__quark_new_test:NNNn #1
\exp_last_unbraced:Nf \__quark_new_test_aux:nnNNnnnn #1 { test }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \__quark_new_test:NNNn { Ncc }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__kernel_quark_new_conditional:Nn #1
\__quark_new_conditional:Nxxn #1 { \__quark_quark_conditional_name:N #1 }
\__quark_module_name:N #1 
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__quark_new_conditional:Nnnn #1#2#3#4
\if_meaning:w \q_nil #2 \q_nil 
\msg_error:nxn { quark } { invalid-function }
\token_to_str:N #1
\else:
\if_meaning:w \q_nil #3 \q_nil 
\msg_error:nxn { quark } { invalid-function }
\token_to_str:N #1
\else:
\exp_last_unbraced:Nf \__quark_new_test_aux:nnNNnnnn
\cs_split_function:N #1
\fi:
\end{verbatim}

\end{verbatim}

776
These macros implement the six possibilities mentioned above, passing the right arguments to \_\_quark_new_test_aux:nnNNnnn, which defines some auxiliaries, and then to \_\_quark_new_test_define_t1:nnNNnn (:n(n) variants) or to \_\_quark_new_test_define_ifx:t1:nnNNnn (:N(n)) which define the main conditionals.

(End definition for \_\_kernel_quark_new_test:N and others.)
\__quark_new_test_aux_do:nNNnnnnNNn makes the control sequence names which will be used by \__quark_test_define_aux:NNNNnnNNn, and then later by \__quark_new_test_define_tl:nNNnnNn or \__quark_new_test_define_ifx:nNNnnNn. The control sequences defined here are analogous to \__quark_if_recursion_tail:w and to \use_{(none|i)}_{delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:}(\!w)w.

The name is composed by the name-space and the name of the quarks. Suppose \__kernel_quark_new_test:N was used with:

\begin{verbatim}
\__kernel_quark_new_test:N \__test_quark_tail:n
\end{verbatim}

then the first auxiliary will be \__test_quark_recursion_tail:w, and the second one will be \__test_use_none_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:w.

Note that the actual quarks are not defined here. They should be defined separately using \quark_new:N.

```latex
\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__quark_new_test_aux_do:nNNnnnnNNn #1 #2 #3 #4 #5 #6
{ \exp_args:Ncc \__quark_test_define_aux:NNNNnnNNn
  { #1 _quark_recursion_tail:w }
  { #1 _use_ #4 _delimit_by_q_recursion_stop: #5 w }
  #2 #3 }
\end{verbatim}
```

(End definition for \__quark_new_test_aux_do:nNNnnnnNNn and \__quark_test_define_aux:NNNNnnNNn.)

Finally, these two macros define the main conditional function using what’s been set up before.

```latex
\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__quark_new_test_define_tl:nNnNNn #1 #2 #3 #4 #5 #6
{ \cs_new:Npn #5 #1
  { \tl_if_empty:oTF { #2 {} ##1 {} ?! #4 ??! }
    { #3 } {#6} }
}
\end{verbatim}
```

778
These macros implement the two possibilities for branching quark conditionals, passing
the right arguments to \texttt{\_\_quark\_new\_conditional\_aux\_do:NNnnn}, which defines some
auxiliaries and defines the main conditionals.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__quark\_new\_conditional\_n:Nnnn
  { \__quark\_new\_conditional\_aux\_do:NNnnn \use_i:nn }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__quark\_new\_conditional\_N:Nnnn
  { \__quark\_new\_conditional\_aux\_do:NNnnn \use_ii:nn }
\end{verbatim}

\textit{End definition for \texttt{\_\_quark\_new\_conditional\_n:Nnnn} and \texttt{\_\_quark\_new\_conditional\_N:Nnnn}.}

Similar to the previous macros, but branching conditionals only require one auxiliary, so
we take a shortcut. In \texttt{\_\_quark\_new\_conditional\_aux\_do:NNnnn}, \texttt{#4} is \texttt{\use_i:nn} to
define the n-type function (which needs an auxiliary) and is \texttt{\use_ii:nn} to define the
N-type function.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__quark\_new\_conditional\_aux\_do:NNnnn \#1 \#2 \#3 \#4
  { \exp_args:Ncc \__quark\_new\_conditional\_define:NNNNn
      { __ #4 _if_quark_ #3 :w } { q__ #4 _ #3 } \#2 \#1 }
\end{verbatim}

\textit{End definition for \texttt{\_\_quark\_new\_conditional\_aux\_do:NNnnn} and \texttt{\_\_quark\_new\_conditional\_define:NNNNn}.}

\texttt{\_\_quark\_module\_name:N} takes a control sequence and returns its (module) name, de-
termined as the first non-empty non-single-character word, separated by \_ or ::. These
rules give the correct result for public functions \texttt{\_\_module\_...}, private functions \texttt{\_\_\_module\_...}, and variables such as \texttt{\_\_\_\_module\_...}. If no valid module is found the
result is an empty string. The approach is to first cut off everything after the (first) :
if any is present, then repeatedly grab \_ delimited words until finding one of length at
least 2 (we use low-level tests as \texttt{l3tl} is not fully available when \texttt{\_\_kernel_quark\_new\_test:N} is first used) if no \texttt{\_\_module\_} is found (such as in \texttt{\_\_n}) we get the trailing marker
\texttt{\use_none:n \{}}, which expands to nothing.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_set:Npn \__quark\_tmp:w \#1#2
  { \cs_new:Npn \__quark\_module\_name:N ##1
        { \exp_last_unbraced:Nf \__quark\_module\_name:w
            { \__quark\_module\_name_loop:w #1 \use_none:n { } \use_none:n { } } #1
        \s__quark } }
\end{verbatim}

\textit{End definition for \texttt{\_\_quark\_new\_conditional\_aux\_do:NNnnn} and \texttt{\_\_quark\_new\_conditional\_define:NNNNn}.}
\cs_new:Npn \__quark_module_name_loop:w #1 #2
{
 \use_i_ii:nnn \if_meaning:w \prg_do_nothing:
 #1 \prg_do_nothing: \prg_do_nothing:
 \exp_after:wN \__quark_module_name_loop:w
 \else:
 \__quark_module_name_end:w #1
 \fi:
}
\cs_new:Npn \__quark_module_name_end:w
\__quark_module_name_end:w #1 \fi: \s__quark { \fi: \___quark}
\exp_after:wN \___quark_tmp:w \tl_to_str:n { : _ }

(End definition for \__quark_module_name:N and others.)

\__quark_quark_conditional_name:N \__quark_quark_conditional_name:w
\__quark_quark_conditional_name:N
determines the quark name that the quark conditional function \#1 queries, as the part of the function name between \_quark_if_ and the trailing :. Again we define it through \__quark_tmp:w, which receives : as \#1 and \_quark_if_ as \#2. The auxiliary \__quark_quark_conditional_name:w returns the part between the first \_quark_if_ and the next ;, and we apply this auxiliary to the function name followed by ; (in case the function name is lacking a signature), and \_quark_if_: so that \__quark_quark_conditional_name:N returns an empty string if \_quark_if_ is not present.

\cs_set:Npn \__quark_tmp:w #1 #2 \s__quark
{
 \cs_new:Npn \__quark_quark_conditional_name:N ##1
{
 \exp_last_unbraced:Nf \__quark_quark_conditional_name:w
 { \cs_to_str:N ##1 } #1 #2 #1 \s__quark
}
\cs_new:Npn \__quark_quark_conditional_name:w
\__quark_quark_conditional_name:w #1 #2 #1 \s__quark { #2 }
\exp_after:wN \___quark_tmp:w \tl_to_str:n { : _quark_if_ } \s__quark

(End definition for \__quark_quark_conditional_name:N and \__quark_quark_conditional_name:w.)

55.2 Scan marks

\g___scan_marks_tl
\g___scan_marks_tl
The list of all scan marks currently declared. No l3tl yet, so define this by hand.
\cs_gset:Npn \g___scan_marks_tl { }

(End definition for \g___scan_marks_tl.)

\scan_new:N
\scan_new:N
Check whether the variable is already a scan mark, then declare it to be equal to \scan_stop: globally.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \scan_new:N #1
{\tl_if_in:NnTF \g___scan_marks_tl { #1 } \s__quark

(End definition for \__quark_quark_conditional_name:N and \__quark_quark_conditional_name:w.)
\msg_error:n { scanmark } { already-defined }
\{ \token_to_str:N #1 \}

\tl_gput_right:Nn \g__scan_marks_tl {#1}
\cs_new_eq:NN #1 \scan_stop:
\}

(End definition for \scan_new:N. This function is documented on page 141.)

\s_stop We only declare one scan mark here, more can be defined by specific modules. Can’t use \scan_new:N yet because \l3tl isn’t loaded, so define \s_stop by hand and add it to \g__scan_marks_tl. We also add \s__quark (declared earlier) to the pool here. Since it lives in a different namespace, a little \l3docstrip cheating is necessary.
\cs_new_eq:NN \s_stop \scan_stop:
\cs_gset_nopar:Npx \g__scan_marks_tl
\exp_not:o \g__scan_marks_tl \s_stop
\exp_not:o \s__quark
\exp_not:o \s__quark

(End definition for \s_stop. This variable is documented on page 141.)

\use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w Similar to \use_none_delimit_by_q_stop:w.
\cs_new:Npn \use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w #1 \s_stop { }

(End definition for \use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w. This function is documented on page 141.)
Chapter 56

l3seq implementation

The following test files are used for this code: m3seq002,m3seq003.

\package
\@@=seq

A sequence is a control sequence whose top-level expansion is of the form “\__seq \__seq_item:n {\item} \ldots \__seq_item:n {\itemn}”, with a leading scan mark followed by \n items of the same form. An earlier implementation used the structure “\seq elt:w  {\item} \seq elt: end: \ldots \seq elt:w  {\itemn} \seq elt: end:”. This allowed rapid searching using a delimited function, but was not suitable for items containing {, } and # tokens, and also lead to the loss of surrounding braces around items.

\__seq_item:n * \__seq_item:n {\item}
The internal token used to begin each sequence entry. If expanded outside of a mapping or manipulation function, an error is raised. The definition should always be set globally.

\__seq_push_item_def:n \__seq_push_item_def:x

\__seq_push_item_def:n \__seq_push_item_def:x

Saves the definition of \__seq_item:n and redefines it to accept one parameter and expand to \item. This function should always be balanced by use of \__seq_pop_item_def:n.

\__seq_pop_item_def:

Restores the definition of \__seq_item:n most recently saved by \__seq_push_item_def:n. This function should always be used in a balanced pair with \__seq_push_item_def:n.

\s__seq
This private scan mark.
\scan_new:N \s__seq
(End definition for \s__seq)

\s__seq_mark
Private scan marks.
\scan_new:N \s__seq_mark
\scan_new:N \s__seq_stop
(End definition for \s__seq_mark and \s__seq_stop)
The delimiter is always defined, but when used incorrectly simply removes its argument and hits an undefined control sequence to raise an error.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__seq_item:n
  {\msg_expandable_error:nn { seq } { misused } \use_none:n}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__seq_item:n.)

\__seq_internal_a_tl
\__seq_internal_b_tl

Scratch space for various internal uses.

\begin{verbatim}
\tl_new:N \l__seq_internal_a_tl
\tl_new:N \l__seq_internal_b_tl
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \l__seq_internal_a_tl and \l__seq_internal_b_tl.)

\__seq_tmp:w

Scratch function for internal use.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_eq:NN \__seq_tmp:w ?
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__seq_tmp:w.)

\c_empty_seq

A sequence with no item, following the structure mentioned above.

\begin{verbatim}
\tl_const:Nn \c_empty_seq { \s__seq }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \c_empty_seq. This variable is documented on page 153.)

### 56.1 Allocation and initialisation

\__seq_new:N
\__seq_new:c

Sequences are initialized to \c_empty_seq.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npm \__seq_new:N #1
  { \__kernel_chk_if_free_cs:N #1 \cs_gset_eq:NN #1 \c_empty_seq }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \__seq_new:N { c }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__seq_new:N. This function is documented on page 142.)

\__seq_clear:N
\__seq_clear:c

Clearing a sequence is similar to setting it equal to the empty one.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npm \__seq_clear:N #1
  { \seq_set_eq:NN #1 \c_empty_seq }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \__seq_clear:N { c }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__seq_clear:N and \__seq_clear:c. These functions are documented on page 142.)

\__seq_gclear:N
\__seq_gclear:c

Once again we copy code from the token list functions.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npm \__seq_gclear:N #1
  { \seq_if_exist:NTF #1 { \__seq_clear:N #1 } { \__seq_new:N #1 } }
\cs_generate_variant:NN \__seq_gclear:N { c }
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npm \__seq_gclear_new:N #1
  { \seq_if_exist:NTF #1 { \__seq_gclear:N #1 } { \__seq_new:N #1 } }
\cs_generate_variant:NN \__seq_gclear_new:N { c }
\end{verbatim}
Copying a sequence is the same as copying the underlying token list.

\seq_set_eq:NN \seq_set_eq:cN \seq_set_eq:Nc \seq_set_eq:cc
\seq_gset_eq:NN \seq_gset_eq:cN \seq_gset_eq:Nc \seq_gset_eq:cc

Setting a sequence from a comma-separated list is done using a simple mapping.

\seq_set_from_clist:NN \seq_set_from_clist:cN \seq_set_from_clist:cc \seq_set_from_clist:Nn \seq_set_from_clist:cn
\seq_gset_from_clist:NN \seq_gset_from_clist:cN \seq_gset_from_clist:cc \seq_gset_from_clist:Nn \seq_gset_from_clist:cn
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_set_from_clist:NN { Nc }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_set_from_clist:NN { c , cc }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_set_from_clist:Nn { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_gset_from_clist:NN { Nc }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_gset_from_clist:NN { c , cc }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_gset_from_clist:Nn { c }

Almost identical to \seq_set_from_clist:Nn.

\seq_const_from_clist:NN \seq_const_from_clist:cn

(End definition for \seq_clear_new:N and \seq_gclear_new:N. These functions are documented on page 142.)

(End definition for \seq_set_eq:NN and \seq_gset_eq:NN. These functions are documented on page 142.)

(End definition for \seq_set_eq:NN and \seq_gset_eq:NN. These functions are documented on page 142.)

(End definition for \seq_set_eq:NN and \seq_gset_eq:NN. These functions are documented on page 142.)

(End definition for \seq_set_eq:NN and \seq_gset_eq:NN. These functions are documented on page 143.)

(End definition for \seq_set_from_clist:Nn and others. These functions are documented on page 143.)

(End definition for \seq_const_from_clist:Nn. This function is documented on page 143.)
When the separator is empty, everything is very simple, just map \texttt{\seq_wrap_item:n} through the items of the last argument. For non-trivial separators, the goal is to split a given token list at the marker, strip spaces from each item, and remove one set of outer braces if after removing leading and trailing spaces the item is enclosed within braces. After \texttt{\tl_replace_all:Nnn}, the token list \texttt{\l__seq_internal_a_tl} is a repetition of the pattern \texttt{\__seq_set_split_auxi:w prg_do_nothing: (item with spaces) \__seq_set_split_end:}. Then, x-expansion causes \texttt{\__seq_set_split_auxi:w} to trim spaces, and leaves its result as \texttt{\__seq_set_split_auxii:w (trimmed item) \__seq_set_split_end:}. This is then converted to the \l3seq internal structure by another x-expansion. In the first step, we insert \texttt{prg_do_nothing:} to avoid losing braces too early: that would cause space trimming to act within those lost braces. The second step is solely there to strip braces which are outermost after space trimming.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \seq_set_split:Nnn { \__seq_set_split:NNNnn \__kernel_tl_set:Nx \tl_trim_spaces:n }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \seq_gset_split:Nnn { \__seq_set_split:NNNnn \__kernel_tl_gset:Nx \tl_trim_spaces:n }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \seq_set_split_keep_spaces:Nnn { \__seq_set_split:NNNnn \__kernel_tl_set:Nx \exp_not:n }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \seq_gset_split_keep_spaces:Nnn { \__seq_set_split:NNNnn \__kernel_tl_gset:Nx \exp_not:n }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__seq_set_split:NNNnn #1#2#3#4#5
{ \tl_if_empty:nTF {#4}
  { \tl_set:Nn \l__seq_internal_a_tl { \tl_map_function:nN {#5} \__seq_wrap_item:n }
    }
  { \tl_set:Nn \l__seq_internal_a_tl {
    \__seq_set_split:Nw #2 \prg_do_nothing: #5 \__seq_set_split_end:
    }
    \tl_replace_all:Nnn \l__seq_internal_a_tl {#4}
    { \__seq_set_split:Nw #2 \prg_do_nothing: }
    \__kernel_tl_set:Nx \l__seq_internal_a_tl { \l__seq_internal_a_tl }
    }
#1 #3 { \s__seq \l__seq_internal_a_tl }
}
\cs_new:Npn \__seq_set_split:Nw #1 #2 \__seq_set_split_end:
{ \exp_not:N \__seq_set_split:w \exp_args:No #1 {#2}
  \exp_not:N \__seq_set_split_end:
}
\cs_new:Npn \__seq_set_split:w #1 #2 \__seq_set_split_end:
{ \__seq_wrap_item:n {#1} }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_set_split:Nnn { NnV }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_gset_split:Nnn { NnV }
\end{verbatim}
When concatenating sequences, one must remove the leading $s_{--}\text{seq}$ of the second sequence. The result starts with $s_{--}\text{seq}$ (of the first sequence), which stops f-expansion.

When adding to the left of a sequence, remove $s_{--}\text{seq}$. This is done by $\__seq\_put\_left\_aux:w$, which also stops f-expansion.

When adding to the left of a sequence, remove $s_{--}\text{seq}$. This is done by $\__seq\_put\_left\_aux:w$, which also stops f-expansion.
Since there is no trailing marker, adding an item to the right of a sequence simply means wrapping it in `\__seq_item:n`.

```latex
\cs_new_protected:Npn \seq_put_right:Nn #1 #2 \{ \tl_put_right:Nn #1 { \__seq_item:n {#2} } \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \seq_gput_right:Nn #1 #2 \{ \tl_gput_right:Nn #1 { \__seq_item:n {#2} } \}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_gput_right:Nn { NV , Nv , No , Nx }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_gput_right:Nn { c , cV , cv , co , cx }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_put_right:Nn { NV , Nv , No , Nx }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_put_right:Nn { c , cV , cv , co , cx }
```

(End definition for `\seq_put_right:Nn` and `\seq_gput_right:Nn`. These functions are documented on page 144.)

### 56.3 Modifying sequences

This function converts its argument to a proper sequence item in an `x`-expansion context.

```latex
\cs_new:Npn \__seq_wrap_item:n #1 \{ \exp_not:n { \__seq_item:n {#1} } \}
```

(End definition for `\__seq_wrap_item:n`.)

An internal sequence for the removal routines.

```latex
\seq_new:N \l__seq_remove_seq
```

(End definition for `\l__seq_remove_seq`.)

Removing duplicates means making a new list then copying it.

```latex
\cs_new_protected:Npn \seq_remove_duplicates:N \{ \__seq_remove_duplicates:NN \seq_set_eq:NN \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \seq_gremove_duplicates:N \{ \__seq_remove_duplicates:NN \seq_gset_eq:NN \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__seq_remove_duplicates:NN #1 #2 \{ \seq_clear:N \l__seq_remove_seq \seq_map_inline:Nn #2 \{ \seq_if_in:NnF \l__seq_remove_seq {##1} \{ \seq_put_right:Nn \l__seq_remove_seq {##1} \}\} #1 #2 \l__seq_remove_seq \}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_remove_duplicates:N { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_gremove_duplicates:N { c }
```

(End definition for `\seq_remove_duplicates:N`, `\seq_gremove_duplicates:N`, and `\__seq_remove_duplicates:NN`. These functions are documented on page 147.)

The idea of the code here is to avoid a relatively expensive addition of items one at a time to an intermediate sequence. The approach taken is therefore similar to that in `\__seq_pop_right:NNN`, using a “flexible” `x`-type expansion to do most of the work. As `\tl_if_eq:nnT` is not expandable, a two-part strategy is needed. First, the `x`-type expansion uses `\str_if_eq:nnT` to find potential matches. If one is found, the expansion is halted and the necessary set up takes place to use the `\tl_if_eq:nnT` test. The `x`-type is started...
again, including all of the items copied already. This happens repeatedly until the entire sequence has been scanned. The code is set up to avoid needing and intermediate scratch list: the lead-off x-type expansion (#1 #2 {#2}) ensures that nothing is lost.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \seq_remove_all:Nn { \__seq_remove_all_aux:Nnn \__kernel_tl_set:Nx }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \seq_gremove_all:Nn { \__seq_remove_all_aux:Nnn \__kernel_tl_gset:Nx }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__seq_remove_all_aux:NNn #1#2#3
{ \__seq_push_item_def:n
{ \str_if_eq:nnT {##1} {#3}
{ \tl_set:Nn \l__seq_internal_b_tl {##1}
 #1 #2
 { \tl_set:Nf {\__kernel_tl_set:Nx {##1}} {#3} #1 #2 \tl_set:Nf \l__seq_internal_a_tl
 \tl_set:Nn \l__seq_internal_b_tl \tl_set:Nn \l__seq_internal_a_tl \tl_set:Nn \l__seq_internal_a_tl
 \use_none:nn } } \__seq_wrap_item:n {##1} }
 \tl_set:Nn \l__seq_internal_a_tl {#3}
 \__seq_pop_item_def:
}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_remove_all:Nn { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_gremove_all:Nn { c }
\end{verbatim}

These functions are documented on page 147.

\seq_reverse:N\seq_reverse:c\seq_greverse:N\seq_greverse:c\__seq_reverse:NN\__seq_reverse_item:nwn

Previously, \seq_reverse:N was coded by collecting the items in reverse order after an \exp_stop_f: marker.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \seq_reverse:N #1
{ \cs_set_eq:NN \@@_item:n \@@_reverse_item:nw
 \tl_set:Nf #2 { #2 \exp_stop_f: }
}
\cs_new:Npn \@@_reverse_item:nw #1 #2 \exp_stop_f:
{ \exp_stop_f:
 \@@_item:n {#1}
}
\end{verbatim}

At first, this seems optimal, since we can forget about each item as soon as it is placed after \exp_stop_f:. Unfortunately, \TeX’s usual tail recursion does not take place in this case: since the following \__seq_reverse_item:nwn only reads tokens until \exp_stop_f: and never reads the \@@_item:n {#1} left by the previous call, \TeX cannot remove that previous call from the stack, and in particular must retain the various macro parameters in memory, until the end of the replacement text is reached. The stack is thus
only flushed after all the \_seq_reverse_item: nw are expanded. Keeping track of the arguments of all those calls uses up a memory quadratic in the length of the sequence. \TeX can then not cope with more than a few thousand items.

Instead, we collect the items in the argument of \exp_not:n. The previous calls are cleanly removed from the stack, and the memory consumption becomes linear.

```latex
\cs_new_protected:Npn \seq_reverse:N { \__seq_reverse:NN \__kernel_tl_set:Nx }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \seq_greverse:N { \__seq_reverse:NN \__kernel_tl_gset:Nx }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__seq_reverse:NN #1 #2
{ \cs_set_eq:NN \__seq_tmp:w \__seq_item:n \cs_set_eq:NN \__seq_item:n \__seq_reverse_item:nwn #1 #2 \exp_not:n { } }
\cs_set_eq:NN \__seq_item:n \__seq_tmp:w
\cs_new:Npn \__seq_reverse_item:nwn #1 #2 \exp_not:n #3
{ #2 \exp_not:n { \__seq_item:n {#1} #3 } }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_reverse:N { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_greverse:N { c }
```

(End definition for \seq_reverse:N and others. These functions are documented on page 147.)

\seq_sort:Nn\seq_sort:cn\seq_gsort:Nn\seq_gsort:cn

Implemented in l3sort.

(End definition for \seq_sort:Nn and \seq_gsort:Nn. These functions are documented on page 147.)

### 56.4 Sequence conditionals

\seq_if_empty_p:N\seq_if_empty_p:c\seq_if_empty:NTF\seq_if_empty:cTF

Similar to token lists, we compare with the empty sequence.

```latex
\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \seq_if_empty:N #1 { p , T , F , TF } { \if_meaning:w #1 \c_empty_seq \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi: }
\prg_generate_conditional_variant:Nnn \seq_if_empty:N { c } { p , T , F , TF }
```

(End definition for \seq_if_empty:NTF. This function is documented on page 147.)

\seq_shuffle:N\seq_shuffle:c\seq_gshuffle:N\seq_gshuffle:c

We apply the Fisher–Yates shuffle, storing items in \toks registers. We use the primitive \tex_uniformdeviate:D for speed reasons. Its non-uniformity is of order its argument divided by \(2^{28}\), not too bad for small lists. For sequences with more than 13 elements there are more possible permutations than possible seeds (13! > \(2^{28}\)) so the question of uniformity is somewhat moot. The integer variables are declared in l3int: load-order issues.

```latex
\cs_if_exist:NTF \tex_uniformdeviate:D \seq_shuffle:NN\seq_shuffle:cn\seq_gshuffle:NN\seq_gshuffle:cn
```

789
The approach here is to define \_\_seq_item:n to compare its argument with the test sequence. If the two items are equal, the mapping is terminated and \group_end: \prg_return_true: is inserted after skipping over the rest of the recursion. On the other hand, if there is no match then the loop breaks, returning \prg_return_false:. Everything is inside a group so that \_\_seq_item:n is preserved in nested situations.

790
56.5 Recovering data from sequences

The two pop functions share their emptiness tests. We also use a common emptiness test
for all branching get and pop functions.

Getting an item from the left of a sequence is pretty easy: just trim off the first item
after \__seq_item:n at the start. We append a \q_no_value item to cover the case of
an empty sequence.
\__kernel_tl_set:Nx \__seq_get_left:wnw
\exp_after:wN \__seq_item:n \q_no_value \s__seq_stop
{ \__seq_get_left:wnw #1 \__seq_item:n \s__seq_stop}
\cs_new:Npn \__seq_get_left:wnw #1 \__seq_item:n #2#3 \s__seq_stop
{ \exp_not:n {#2} }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_get_left:NN { c }

(End definition for \seq_get_left:NN and \__seq_get_left:wnw. This function is documented on page 144.)

The approach to popping an item is pretty similar to that to get an item, with the only difference being that the sequence itself has to be redefined. This makes it more sensible to use an auxiliary function for the local and global cases.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \seq_pop_left:NN
\{ \__seq_pop:NNNN \__seq_pop_left:NNN \tl_set:Nn \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \seq_gpop_left:NN
\{ \__seq_pop:NNNN \__seq_pop_left:NNN \tl_gset:Nn \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__seq_pop_left:NNN #1#2#3
\{ \exp_after:wN \__seq_pop_left:wnwNNN #2 \s__seq_stop #1#2#3 \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__seq_pop_left:wnwNNN
\#1 \__seq_item:n #2#3 \s__seq_stop \#4#5#6
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_pop_left:NN { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_gpop_left:NN { c }

(End definition for \seq_pop_left:NN and others. These functions are documented on page 144.)

First remove \s__seq and prepend \q_no_value. The first argument of \__seq_get_right_loop:nw is the last item found, and the second argument is empty until the end of the loop, where it is code that applies \exp_not:n to the last item and ends the loop.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \seq_get_right:NN \__kernel_tl_set:Nx \__seq_get_right_end:NnN
\begin{verbatim}
{ \__seq_get_right_loop:nw \q_no_value \s__seq_stop}
\exp_after:wN \__seq_item:n
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__seq_get_right_loop:nw #1#2 \__seq_item:n
\{ #4 #5 \{ #1 \#3 \}
\tl_set:Nn \#6 \{ #2 \}
\}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_get_right:NN { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_gpop_left:NN { c }

(End definition for \seq_get_right:NN and others. These functions are documented on page 144.)
The approach to popping from the right is a bit more involved, but does use some of the same ideas as getting from the right. What is needed is a “flexible length” way to set a token list variable. This is supplied by the \\{ if_false: } \fi: \ldots if_false: { fi: } construct. Using an x-type expansion and a “non-expanding” definition for \_\_seq_item:n, the left-most n − 1 entries in a sequence of n items are stored back in the sequence. That needs a loop of unknown length, hence using the strange if_false: way of including braces. When the last item of the sequence is reached, the closing brace for the assignment is inserted, and \tl_set:Nn \#3 is inserted in front of the final entry. This therefore does the pop assignment. One more iteration is performed, with an empty argument and use_special:nn, which finally stops the loop.

Getting from the left or right with a check on the results. The first argument to \_\_seq_pop_TF:NNN is left unused.

(End definition for \seq_get_right:NN, \_\_seq_get_right_loop:nw, and \_\_seq_get_right_end:NnN. This function is documented on page 145.)

(End definition for \seq_get_right:NN and others. These functions are documented on page 145.)
More or less the same for popping.

\begin{Verbatim}
\texttt{\textbackslash seq_pop_left:NNTF}
\texttt{\textbackslash seq_pop_left:cNTF}
\texttt{\textbackslash seq_gpop_left:NNTF}
\texttt{\textbackslash seq_pop_right:NNTF}
\texttt{\textbackslash seq_gpop_right:NNTF}
\texttt{\textbackslash seq_pop_left:cNTF}
\texttt{\textbackslash seq_gpop_left:cNTF}
\end{Verbatim}

The idea here is to find the offset of the item from the left, then use a loop to grab
the correct item. If the resulting offset is too large, then the argument delimited by
\texttt{\textbackslash seq_item:n} is \texttt{\textbackslash prg_break}: instead of being empty, terminating the loop and re-
turning nothing at all.

\begin{Verbatim}
\texttt{\textbackslash seq_item:Nn}
\texttt{\textbackslash seq_item:cn}
\texttt{\_seq_item:wNn}
\texttt{\_seq_item:nN}
\texttt{\_seq_item:nwn}
\texttt{\_seq_item:nwN}
\end{Verbatim}

\textit{(End definition for \texttt{\seq_get_left:NNTF} and \texttt{\seq_get_right:NNTF}. These functions are documented on page 146.)}
(End definition for \seq_item:Nn and others. This function is documented on page 145.)

\seq_rand_item:N  \seq_rand_item:c
Importantly, \seq_item:Nn only evaluates its argument once.

\cs_new:Npn \seq_rand_item:N #1
\seq_if_empty:NF #1
\{ \seq_item:Nn #1 { \int_rand:nn { 1 } { \seq_count:N #1 } } \}
\}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_rand_item:N { c }

(End definition for \seq_rand_item:N. This function is documented on page 145.)

56.6 Mapping over sequences

\seq_map_break:  \seq_map_break:n
To break a function, the special token \prg_break_point:Nn is used to find the end of the code. Any ending code is then inserted before the return value of \seq_map_break:n is inserted.

\cs_new:Npn \seq_map_break:
\{ \prg_map_break:Nn \seq_map_break: { } \}
\cs_new:Npn \seq_map_break:n
\{ \prg_map_break:Nn \seq_map_break: \}

(End definition for \seq_map_break: and \seq_map_break:n. These functions are documented on page 149.)

\seq_map_function:NN  \seq_map_function:cN  \__seq_map_function:Nw
The idea here is to apply the code of \#2 to each item in the sequence without altering the definition of \_\_seq_item:n. The even-numbered arguments of \__seq_map_function:Nw delimited by \_\_seq_item:n are almost always empty, except at the end of the loop where it is \prg_break:. This allows to break the loop without needing to do a (relatively-expensive) quark test.

\cs_new:Npn \seq_map_function:NN #1#2
\{ \exp_after:wN \use_i_ii:nnn \exp_after:wN \__seq_map_function:Nw \exp_after:wN \#2 \exp_after:wN \#1
\prg_break:
\_\_seq_item:n { } \_\_seq_item:n { } \_\_seq_item:n { } \_\_seq_item:n { }
\prg_break_point:
\prg_break_point:Nn \seq_map_break: { }
\}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_seq_map_function:Nw #1
#2 \_\_seq_item:n #3
#4 \_\_seq_item:n #5
#6 \_\_seq_item:n #7
#8 \_\_seq_item:n #9
\{ #2 #1 {#3}
#4 #1 {#5}
#6 #1 {#7}
#8 #1 {#9}
\_\_seq_map_function:Nw #1
\}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_map_function:NN { c }
The definition of \texttt{\__seq_item:n} needs to be saved and restored at various points within the mapping and manipulation code. That is handled here: as always, this approach uses global assignments.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__seq_push_item_def:n #1 #2
{\__seq_push_item_def:\cs_gset:Npn \__seq_item:n ##1 #1}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_map_inline:Nn { c }
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \seq_map_tokens:Nn #1 #2
{\_\_seq_map_tokens:nw \use_i:nn { \_\_seq_map_tokens:nw {#2} } #1 \prg_break_point:Nn \seq_map_break: { \_\_seq_item:n: } \_\_seq_item:n: \_\_seq_item:n: \_\_seq_item:n:}
\end{verbatim}

\end{definition}
\seq_map_tokens:Nn \seq_map_tokens:Nn \__seq_map_tokens:nw \__seq_map_tokens:nw

This is just a specialised version of the in-line mapping function, using an \texttt{x}-type expansion for the code set up so that the number of \texttt{#} tokens required is as expected.

\begin{verbatim}
cs_new_protected:Npn \seq_map_variable:NNn #1#2#3
{\tl_set:Nn \exp_not:N #2 {##1}\exp_not:n {#3}}\prg_break_point:Nn \seq_map_break:
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_map_variable:NNn { Nc , c , cc }
\end{verbatim}

Similar to \texttt{\seq_map_function:NN} but we keep track of the item index as a \texttt{;}-delimited argument of \texttt{\_\_seq_map_indexed:Nw}.

\begin{verbatim}
cs_new:Npn \seq_map_indexed_function:NN #1#2
{\_\_seq_map_indexed:NN #1#2}\prg_break_point:Nn \seq_map_break: \cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_map_indexed_function:NN { Nc , c , cc }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\seq_map_tokens:Nn} and \texttt{\_\_seq_map_tokens:nw}. This function is documented on page 148.)

\begin{verbatim}
\__seq_map_indexed:NN #1#2
\begin{verbatim}
\int_gincr:N \g__kernel_prg_map_int
\cs_gset_protected:cpn{ \_\_seq_map_\int_use:N \g__kernel_prg_map_int :w }##1##2\\exp_args:NNc{ \_\_seq_map_\int_use:N \g__kernel_prg_map_int :w }\prg_break_point:Nn \seq_map_break:
\int_gdecr:N \g__kernel_prg_map_int
\end{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\seq_map_variable:NNn}. This function is documented on page 148.)

797
Very similar to \seq_set_filter:Nnn. We could actually merge the two within a single function, but it would have weird semantics.

Similar to \seq_set_map_x:Nnn, but prevents expansion of the <inline function>.

Since counting the items in a sequence is quite common, we optimize it by grabbing 8 items at a time and correspondingly adding 8 to an integer expression. At the end of the loop, #9 is \__seq_count_end:w instead of being empty. It removes 8+ instead
places the number of \_\_seq_item:n that \_\_seq_count:w grabbed before reaching the end of the sequence.

\cs_new:Npn \seq_count:N \#1 \\
\{
\int_eval:n \\
\{
\exp_after:wN \use_i:nn \\
\exp_after:wN \_\_seq_count:w \\
\#1 \\
\_\_seq_count_end:w \_\_seq_item:n \#7 \\
\_\_seq_count_end:w \_\_seq_item:n \#6 \\
\_\_seq_count_end:w \_\_seq_item:n \#5 \\
\_\_seq_count_end:w \_\_seq_item:n \#4 \\
\_\_seq_count_end:w \_\_seq_item:n \#3 \\
\_\_seq_count_end:w \_\_seq_item:n \#2 \\
\_\_seq_count_end:w \_\_seq_item:n \#1 \\
\_\_seq_count_end:w \_\_seq_item:n \#0 \\
\prg_break_point: \\
\}
\}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_seq_count:w \#1 \_\_seq_item:n \#2 \_\_seq_item:n \#3 \_\_seq_item:n \#4 \_\_seq_item:n \#5 \_\_seq_item:n \#6 \_\_seq_item:n \#7 \_\_seq_item:n \#8 \_\_seq_item:n \#9 \_\_seq_count:w \\
\cs_new:Npn \_\_seq_count_end:w \#9 \_\_seq_count:w \#1 \_\_seq_item:n \#2 \_\_seq_item:n \#3 \_\_seq_item:n \#4 \_\_seq_item:n \#5 \_\_seq_item:n \#6 \_\_seq_item:n \#7 \_\_seq_item:n \#8 \_\_seq_item:n \#9 \_\_seq_item:n \#10 \\
\prg_break_point: \\
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__seq_count:w 8 + \_\_seq_count:w \#1 \_\_seq_item:n #2 \_\_seq_item:n #3 \_\_seq_item:n #4 \_\_seq_item:n #5 \_\_seq_item:n #6 \_\_seq_item:n #7 \_\_seq_item:n #8 \_\_seq_item:n #9 \_\_seq_item:n #10 \\
\exp_after:wN \__seq_use_setup:w #1 \__seq_item:n \\
\s__seq_mark { \__seq_use:nwwwwnwn {#3} }
\s__seq_mark { \__seq_use:nwn {#4} }
\s__seq_stop { } \\
\prg_break_point: \\
\}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_count:N { c }

\end{definition}

\section*{56.7 Using sequences}

See \clist_use:Nnnn for a general explanation. The main difference is that we use \_\_seq_item:n as a delimiter rather than commas. We also need to add \_\_seq_item:n at various places, and \_\_seq.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \seq_use:Nnnn \#1 \#2 \#3 \#4 \\
\{
\seq_if_exist:NTF \#1 \\
\\
\int_case:nnF { \seq_count:N \#1 } \\
\\
\begin{align*}
0 & \{ \} \\
1 & \{ \exp_after:wN \_\_seq_use:NNn \#1 ? \{ \} \{ \} \}
\end{align*}
\\
\end{verbatim}
\msg_expandable_error:nnn
{ kernel } { bad-variable } (#1)
}

\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_use:Nnnn { c }
\cs_new:Npn \__seq_use:NNnNnn #1#2#3#4#5#6 { \exp_not:n { #3 #6 #5 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__seq_use_setup:w \s__seq { \__seq_use:Nnnn { } }
\cs_new:Npn \__seq_use:nwwwnwn
#1 \__seq_item:n #2 \__seq_item:n #3 \__seq_item:n #4#5
\s__seq_mark #6#7 \s__seq_stop #8
{
#6 \__seq_item:n {#3} \__seq_item:n {#4} #5
\s__seq_mark {#6} #7 \s__seq_stop { #8 #1 #2 }
}
\cs_new:Npn \__seq_use:nwwn #1 \__seq_item:n #2 #3 \s__seq_stop #4
{ \exp_not:n { #4 #1 #2 } }
\cs_new:Npn \seq_use:Nn \cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_use:Nnnn { c }

(End definition for \seq_use:Nnnn and others. These functions are documented on page 150.)

56.8 Sequence stacks

The same functions as for sequences, but with the correct naming.

\seq_push:Nn Pushing to a sequence is the same as adding on the left.
\seq_push:NV
\seq_push:Nv
\seq_push:No
\seq_push:Nx
\seq_push:cn
\seq_push:cV
\seq_push:co
\seq_push:cx
\seq_gpush:Nn
\seq_gpush:NV
\seq_gpush:Nv
\seq_gpush:No
\seq_gpush:Nx
\seq_gpush:cn
\seq_gpush:cV
\seq_gpush:co
\seq_gpush:cx

(End definition for \seq_push:Nn and \seq_gpush:Nn. These functions are documented on page 152.)

\seq_get:NN In most cases, getting items from the stack does not need to specify that this is from the left. So alias are provided.
\seq_get:cN
\seq_pop:NN
\seq_pop:cN
\seq_gpop:NN
\seq_gpop:cN

800
\cs_new_eq:NN \seq_get:cN \seq_get_left:cN
\cs_new_eq:NN \seq_pop:NN \seq_pop_left:NN
\cs_new_eq:NN \seq_gpop:NN \seq_gpop_left:NN
\cs_new_eq:NN \seq_get_left:cN \seq_get_right:cN
\cs_new_eq:NN \seq_pop_left:NN \seq_pop_right:NN
\cs_new_eq:NN \seq_gpop_left:NN \seq_gpop_right:NN

(End definition for \seq_get:NN, \seq_pop:NN, and \seq_gpop:NN. These functions are documented on page 151.)

\\texttt{\seq_get:NN}
\\texttt{\seq_get:cN}
\\texttt{\seq_get_left:cN}
\\texttt{\seq_pop:NN}
\\texttt{\seq_pop_left:NN}
\\texttt{\seq_gpop:NN}
\\texttt{\seq_gpop_left:NN}

More copies.

\prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \seq_get:NN \seq_get_left:NN { T , F , TF }
\prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \seq_get:cN \seq_get_left:cN { T , F , TF }
\prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \seq_pop:NN \seq_pop_left:NN { T , F , TF }
\prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \seq_pop:cN \seq_pop_left:cN { T , F , TF }
\prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \seq_gpop:NN \seq_gpop_left:NN { T , F , TF }
\prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \seq_gpop:cN \seq_gpop_left:cN { T , F , TF }

(End definition for \seq_get:NNTF, \seq_pop:NNTF, and \seq_gpop:NNTF. These functions are documented on page 151.)

56.9 Viewing sequences

Apply the general \_kernel_chk_tl_type:NnnT.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \seq_show:N { \__seq_show:NN \msg_show:nnxxxx }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_show:N { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \seq_log:N { \__seq_show:NN \msg_log:nnxxxx }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_log:N { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__seq_show:NN #1#2
\{ \__kernel_chk_tl_type:NnnT #2 \#2 \seq \\{ \s__seq
\exp_after:wN \use_i:nn \exp_after:wN \__seq_show_validate:nn \#2
\q_recursion_tail \q_recursion_stop
\}
\{ \#1 \seq \{ shov \}
\{ \token_to_str:N \#2 \}
\{ \seq_map_function:NN \#2 \msg_show_item:n \}
\} \}
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__seq_show_validate:nn nn #2
\{ \_quark_if_recursion_tail \_quark_recursion_stop \}
\{ \_seq_wrap_item:n \#2 \}
\{ \_seq_show_validate:nn \}
(End definition for \seq_show:N and others. These functions are documented on page 154.)
56.10 Scratch sequences

\l_tmpa_seq  Temporary comma list variables.
\l_tmpb_seq 16902 \seq_new:N \l_tmpa_seq
\g_tmpa_seq 16903 \seq_new:N \l_tmpb_seq
\g_tmpb_seq 16904 \seq_new:N \g_tmpa_seq
16905 \seq_new:N \g_tmpb_seq

(End definition for \l_tmpa_seq and others. These variables are documented on page 154.)

⟨/package⟩
Chapter 57

l3int implementation

The following test files are used for this code: m3int001, m3int002, m3int03. Done in l3basics.

(End definition for \c_max_register_int. This variable is documented on page 166.)

\__int_to_roman:w \if_int_compare:w
Done in l3basics.

(End definition for \__int_to_roman:w and \if_int_compare:w. This function is documented on page 167.)

\or:
Done in l3basics.

(End definition for \or:. This function is documented on page 167.)

\int_value:w \__int_eval:w \__int_eval_end: \if_int_odd:w \if_case:w

Here are the remaining primitives for number comparisons and expressions.

(End definition for \int_value:w and others. These functions are documented on page 167.)

\s__int_mark \s__int_stop
Scan marks used throughout the module.

(End definition for \s__int_mark and \s__int_stop.)

\__int_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w
Function to gobble until a scan mark.

(End definition for \__int_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w.)

\q__int_recursion_tail \q__int_recursion_stop
Quarks for recursion.
Functions to query quarks.

16919 \_kernel_quark_new_test:N \_int_if_recursion_tail_stop_do:Nn
16920 \_kernel_quark_new_test:N \_int_if_recursion_tail_stop:N

(End definition for \_int_if_recursion_tail_stop_do:N and \_int_if_recursion_tail_stop:N.)

### 57.1 Integer expressions

**\int_eval:n**

Wrapper for \_int_eval:w: can be used in an integer expression or directly in the input stream. It is very slightly faster to use \texttt{the} rather than \texttt{number} to turn the expression to a number. When debugging, we introduce parentheses to catch early termination (see \texttt{l3debug}).

16921 \cs_new:Npn \int_eval:n #1
16922 \{ \tex_the:D \_int_eval:w #1 \_int_eval_end: \}
16923 \cs_new:Npn \int_eval:w \{ \tex_the:D \_int_eval:w \}

(End definition for \_int_eval:n and \_int_eval:w. These functions are documented on page 156.)

**\int_sign:n**

See \_int_abs:n. Evaluate the expression once (and when debugging is enabled, check that the expression is well-formed), then test the first character to determine the sign. This is wrapped in \_int_value:w...\exp_stop_f: to ensure a fixed number of expansions and to avoid dealing with closing the conditionals.

16924 \cs_new:Npn \int_sign:n #1
16925 \{ \int_value:w \exp_after:wN \_int_sign:Nw
16926 \int_value:w \_int_eval:w #1 \_int_eval_end: ;
16927 \exp_stop_f:
16928 \}
16929 \cs_new:Npn \_int_sign:Nw #1#2 ;
16930 \{ \if_meaning:w 0 #1 \else: \exp_after:wN #1 \fi: \}
16931 0
16932 \else:
16933 \if_meaning:w - #1 - \fi: 1
16934 \fi:
16935 \}

(End definition for \_int_sign:n and \_int_sign:Nw. This function is documented on page 156.)

**\int_abs:n**

Functions for min, max, and absolute value with only one evaluation. The absolute value is obtained by removing a leading sign if any. All three functions expand in two steps.

16938 \cs_new:Npn \int_abs:n #1
16939 \{ \int_value:w \exp_after:wN \_int_abs:N
16940 \int_value:w \_int_eval:w #1 \_int_eval_end: ;
16941 \exp_stop_f:
16942 \}
16943 \cs_set:Npn \int_max:nn #1#2
16944 \{ \if_meaning:w - #1 \else: \exp_after:wN #1 \fi: \}
16945 \cs_set:Npn \int_min:nn #1#2
16946 \{ \if_meaning:w - #1 \else: \exp_after:wN #1 \fi: \}

804
As \_\_int_eval:w rounds the result of a division we also provide a version that truncates the result. We use an auxiliary to make sure numerator and denominator are only evaluated once: this comes in handy when those are more expressions are expensive to evaluate (e.g., \tl_count:n). If the numerator \#1\#2 is 0, then we divide 0 by the denominator (this ensures that 0/0 is correctly reported as an error). Otherwise, shift the numerator \#1\#2 towards 0 by \((\#3\#4 − 1)/2\), which we round away from zero. It turns out that this quantity exactly compensates the difference between \-TEX’s rounding and the truncating behaviour that we want. The details are thanks to Heiko Oberdiek: getting things right in all cases is not so easy.

\begin{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}
For the sake of completeness:
\cs_new:Npn \int_div_round:nn #1#2
\{ \__int_eval:w \_\_\_int_eval:w ( #1 ) / ( #2 ) \_\_\_int_eval_end: \}

Finally there’s the modulus operation.
\cs_new:Npn \int_mod:nn #1#2
\{ \__int_eval:w \exp_after:wN \_\_\_int_eval:w \exp_after:wN \_\_\_int_eval:w #1 \exp_after:wN ;
\__int_eval:w \exp_after:wN \_\_\_int_eval:w #2 ; \__int_eval_end: \}

\cs_new:Npn \_\_\_int_mod:ww #1; #2;
\{ #1 - ( \_\_\_int_div_truncate:NwNw #1 ; #2 ; ) * #2 \}

\_\_\_kernel_int_add:nnn

Equivalent to \__eval:n \{#1+#2+#3\} except that overflow only occurs if the final result overflows \([-2^{31} + 1, 2^{31} - 1]\). The idea is to choose the order in which the three numbers are added together. If \#1 and \#2 have opposite signs (one is in \([-2^{31} + 1, -1]\) and the other in \([0, 2^{31} - 1]\)) then \#1+\#2 cannot overflow so we compute the result as \#1+\#2+\#3. If they have the same sign, then either \#3 has the same sign and the order does not matter, or \#3 has the opposite sign and any order in which \#3 is not last will work. We use \#1+\#3+\#2.

\cs_new:Npn \_\_\_kernel_int_add:nnn #1#2#3
\{ \__int_eval:w \_\_\_int_eval:w \_\_\_int_eval:w #1 \_\_\_int_eval:w \if_int_compare:w #2 < \c_zero_int \exp_after:wN \_\_\_\_int_eval:w \else: + \_\_\_\_int_eval:w \fi:
\_\_\_int_eval:w #1 < \c_zero_int \_\_\_\_int_eval:w \if_int_compare:w #1 < \c_zero_int + \_\_\_\_int_eval:w + \_\_\_\_int_eval:w \else: + \_\_\_\_int_eval:w \fi:
\_\_\_\_int_eval_end: \}

\_\_\_kernel_int_add:nnn

(\End definition for \int_div_truncate:nn and others. These functions are documented on page 156.)

57.2 Creating and initialising integers
\int_new:N
\int_new:c

Two ways to do this: one for the format and one for the \LaTeX\ package. In plain \TeX, \newcount (and other allocators) are \outer: to allow the code here to work in “generic” mode this is therefore accessed by name. (The same applies to \newbox, \newdimen and so on.)

\cs_new_protected:Npn \int_new:N #1
\{ \_\_\_kernel_chk_if_free_cs:N #1 \cs:w newcount \cs_end: #1 \}

(\End definition for \int_new:N. This function is documented on page 157.)

806
As stated, most constants can be defined as \texttt{\texttt{chardef}} or \texttt{\texttt{mathchardef}} but that's engine dependent. As a result, there is some setup code to determine what can be done. No full engine testing just yet so everything is a little awkward. We cannot use \texttt{\texttt{int_gset:Nn}} because (when \texttt{check-declarations} is enabled) this runs some checks that constants would fail.

\begin{verbatim}
c__int_max_constdef_int
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
17015 \cs_new_protected:Npn \int_const:Nn \#1\#2
17016 { \exp_args:Nx \__int_const:nN { \int_eval:n {\#2} } \#1 }
17017 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__int_const:nN \#1\#2
17018 { \int_compare:nNnTF {\#1} < \c_zero_int
17019 { \int_new:N \#2
17020 \tex_global:D
17021 } }
17022 { \int_compare:nNnTF {\#1} > \c__int_max_constdef_int
17023 { \int_new:N \#2
17024 \tex_global:D \__int_constdef:Nw
17025 } }
17026 \__kernel_chk_if_free_cs:N \#2
17027 \tex_global:D \__int_constdef:Nw
17028 \#2 = \__int_eval:w \#1 \__int_eval_end: }
17029 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \int_const:Nn { c }
17030 \if_int_odd:w 0
17031 \cs_if_exist:NT \tex_luatexversion:D { 1 }
17032 \cs_if_exist:NT \tex_omathchardef:D { 1 }
17033 \cs_if_exist:NTF \tex_omathchardef:D
17034 { \cs_new_eq:NN \__int_constdef:Nw \tex_omathchardef:D }
17035 { \cs_new_eq:NN \__int_constdef:Nw \tex_mathchardef:D }
17036 \__int_constdef:Nw \c__int_max_constdef_int 1114111 ~
17037 \else:
17038 \cs_new_protected:Npm \int_const:Nn \#1\#2
17039 { \exp_args:Nx \__int_const:nN { \int_eval:n {\#2} } \#1 }
17040 \cs_new_protected:Npm \__int_const:nN \#1\#2
17041 { \int_compare:nNnTF {\#1} < \c_zero_int
17042 { \int_new:N \#2
17043 \tex_global:D
17044 } }
17045 { \int_compare:nNnTF {\#1} > \c__int_max_constdef_int
17046 { \int_new:N \#2
17047 \tex_global:D \__int_constdef:Nw
17048 } }
17049 \__kernel_chk_if_free_cs:N \#2
17050 \tex_global:D \__int_constdef:Nw
17051 \#2 = \__int_eval:w \#1 \__int_eval_end: }
17052 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \int_const:Nn { c }
17053 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \int_gzero:N { c }
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
 \int_zero:N
 \int_zero:c
 \int_gzero:N
 \int_gzero:c
\end{verbatim}

Functions that reset an \texttt{\texttt{integer}} register to zero.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npm \int_zero:N \#1 \{ \#1 = \c_zero_int \}
\cs_new_protected:Npm \int_gzero:N \#1 \{ \tex_global:D \#1 = \c_zero_int \}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \int_zero:N { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \int_gzero:N { c }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\texttt{int_zero:N}} and \texttt{\texttt{int_gzero:N}}. These functions are documented on page 157.)

\begin{verbatim}
\int_zero_new:N
 \int_zero_new:c
 \int_gzero_new:N
 \int_gzero_new:c
\end{verbatim}

Create a register if needed, otherwise clear it.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npm \int_zero_new:N \#1 \{ \int_if_exist:NTF \#1 \{ \int_zero:N \#1 \} \{ \int_new:N \#1 \} \}
\cs_new_protected:Npm \int_gzero_new:N \#1 \{ \int_gzero:N \#1 \}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \int_zero_new:N { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \int_gzero_new:N { c }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\texttt{int_zero_new:N}} and \texttt{\texttt{int_gzero_new:N}}. These functions are documented on page 157.)
\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_new\_protected:Np} \texttt{\textbackslash int\_gzero\_new:N \#1}
\texttt{\{ \textbackslash int\_if\_exist:NTF \#1 \{ \textbackslash int\_gzero:N \#1 \} \{ \textbackslash int\_new:N \#1 \} \}}
\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_generate\_variant:Nn} \texttt{\textbackslash int\_zero\_new:N \{ c \}}
\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_generate\_variant:Nn} \texttt{\textbackslash int\_gzero\_new:N \{ c \}}

(End definition for \texttt{\textbackslash int\_zero\_new:N} and \texttt{\textbackslash int\_gzero\_new:N}. These functions are documented on page 157.)

\texttt{\textbackslash int\_set\_eq:NN}
\texttt{\textbackslash int\_set\_eq:cn}
\texttt{\textbackslash int\_set\_eq:Nc}
\texttt{\textbackslash int\_set\_eq:cc}
\texttt{\textbackslash int\_gset\_eq:NN}
\texttt{\textbackslash int\_gset\_eq:cn}
\texttt{\textbackslash int\_gset\_eq:Nc}
\texttt{\textbackslash int\_gset\_eq:cc}

Setting equal means using one integer inside the set function of another. Check that assigned integer is local/global. No need to check that the other one is defined as \texttt{TeX} does it for us.

\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_new\_protected:Np} \texttt{\textbackslash int\_set\_eq:NN \#1 \#2 \{ \#1 = \#2 \}}
\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_generate\_variant:Nn} \texttt{\textbackslash int\_set\_eq:NN \{ c , Nc , cc \}}
\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_new\_protected:Np} \texttt{\textbackslash int\_gset\_eq:NN \#1 \#2 \{ \texttt{\textbackslash tex\_global:D} \#1 = \#2 \}}
\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_generate\_variant:Nn} \texttt{\textbackslash int\_gset\_eq:NN \{ c , Nc , cc \}}

(End definition for \texttt{\textbackslash int\_set\_eq:NN} and \texttt{\textbackslash int\_gset\_eq:NN}. These functions are documented on page 157.)

\texttt{\textbackslash int\_if\_exist:p:N}
\texttt{\textbackslash int\_if\_exist:p:c}
\texttt{\textbackslash int\_if\_exist:NTF}
\texttt{\textbackslash int\_if\_exist:cTF}

Copies of the \texttt{cs} functions defined in \texttt{l3basics}.

\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_new\_protected:Np} \texttt{\textbackslash int\_if\_exist:NTF \{ \texttt{TF} , T , F , p \}}
\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_new\_protected:Np} \texttt{\textbackslash int\_if\_exist:cTF \{ \texttt{TF} , T , F , p \}}

(End definition for \texttt{\textbackslash int\_if\_exist:NTF}. This function is documented on page 157.)

57.3 Setting and Incrementing Integers

\texttt{\textbackslash int\_add:Nn}
\texttt{\textbackslash int\_add:cn}
\texttt{\textbackslash int\_gadd:Nn}
\texttt{\textbackslash int\_gadd:cn}
\texttt{\textbackslash int\_sub:Nn}
\texttt{\textbackslash int\_sub:cn}
\texttt{\textbackslash int\_gsub:Nn}
\texttt{\textbackslash int\_gsub:cn}

Adding and subtracting to and from a counter. Including here the optional by would slow down these operations by a few percent.

\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_new\_protected:Np} \texttt{\textbackslash int\_add:Nn \#1 \#2}
\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_generate\_variant:Nn} \texttt{\textbackslash int\_add:cn \{ \texttt{\_int\_eval:w} \#1 \_\_int\_eval:w \#2 \_\_int\_eval\_end: \}}
\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_new\_protected:Np} \texttt{\textbackslash int\_sub:Nn \#1 \#2}
\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_generate\_variant:Nn} \texttt{\textbackslash int\_sub:cn \{ \texttt{\_int\_eval:w} \#1 - \_\_int\_eval:w \#2 \_\_int\_eval\_end: \}}
\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_new\_protected:Np} \texttt{\textbackslash int\_gadd:Nn \#1 \#2}
\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_generate\_variant:Nn} \texttt{\textbackslash int\_gadd:cn \{ \texttt{\_int\_eval:w} \#1 \_\_int\_eval:w \#2 \_\_int\_eval\_end: \}}
\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_new\_protected:Np} \texttt{\textbackslash int\_gsub:Nn \#1 \#2}
\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_generate\_variant:Nn} \texttt{\textbackslash int\_gsub:cn \{ \texttt{\_int\_eval:w} \#1 - \_\_int\_eval:w \#2 \_\_int\_eval\_end: \}}
\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_generate\_variant:Nn} \texttt{\textbackslash int\_add:Nn \{ c \}}
\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_generate\_variant:Nn} \texttt{\textbackslash int\_gadd:Nn \{ c \}}
\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_generate\_variant:Nn} \texttt{\textbackslash int\_sub:Nn \{ c \}}
\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_generate\_variant:Nn} \texttt{\textbackslash int\_gsub:Nn \{ c \}}

(End definition for \texttt{\textbackslash int\_add:Nn} and others. These functions are documented on page 158.)

\texttt{\textbackslash int\_incr:N}
\texttt{\textbackslash int\_incr:c}
\texttt{\textbackslash int\_gincr:N}
\texttt{\textbackslash int\_gincr:c}
\texttt{\textbackslash int\_decr:N}
\texttt{\textbackslash int\_decr:c}
\texttt{\textbackslash int\_gdecr:N}
\texttt{\textbackslash int\_gdecr:c}

Incrementing and decrementing of integer registers is done with the following functions.

\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_new\_protected:Np} \texttt{\textbackslash int\_incr:N \#1}
\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_new\_protected:Np} \texttt{\textbackslash int\_gincr:N \#1}
\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_new\_protected:Np} \texttt{\textbackslash int\_decr:N \#1}
\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_new\_protected:Np} \texttt{\textbackslash int\_gdecr:N \#1}

808
As integers are register-based \TeX{} issues an error if they are not defined. While the \texttt{=} sign is optional, this version with \texttt{=} is slightly quicker than without, while adding the optional space after \texttt{=} slows things down minutely.

These functions are documented on page 158.

57.4 Using integers

Here is how counters are accessed. We hand-code the \texttt{c} variant for some speed gain.

These functions are documented on page 158.

57.5 Integer expression conditionals

Those functions are used for comparison tests which use a simple syntax where only one set of braces is required and additional operators such as \texttt{!=} and \texttt{>=} are supported. The tests first evaluate their left-hand side, with a trailing \texttt{__int_compare_error:}. This marker is normally not expanded, but if the relation symbol is missing from the test’s argument, then the marker inserts \texttt{=} (and itself) after triggering the relevant \TeX{} error. If the first token which appears after evaluating and removing the left-hand side is not a known relation symbol, then a judiciously placed \texttt{__int_compare_error:Nw} gets expanded, cleaning up the end of the test and telling the user what the problem was.

These functions are documented on page 158.
Comparision tests using a simple syntax where only one set of braces is required, additional operators such as != and >= are supported, and multiple comparisons can be performed at once, for instance 0 < 5 <= 1. The idea is to loop through the argument, finding one operand at a time, and comparing it to the previous one. The looping auxiliary \_\_int\_compare:Nw reads one (operand) and one (comparison) symbol, and leaves roughly
\begin{verbatim}
(operand) \prg_return_false: \fi:
\reverse_if:N \if_int_compare:w (operand) (comparison)
\_\_int_compare:Nw
\end{verbatim}
in the input stream. Each call to this auxiliary provides the second operand of the last call’s if_int_compare:w. If one of the (comparisons) is false, the true branch of the \TeX{} conditional is taken (because of \reverse_if:N), immediately returning false as the result of the test. There is no \TeX{} conditional waiting the first operand, so we add an if_false: and expand by hand with \int_value:w, thus skipping \prg_return_false: on the first iteration.

Before starting the loop, the first step is to make sure that there is at least one relation symbol. We first let \TeX{} evaluate this left hand side of the (in)equality using \_\_int_eval:w. Since the relation symbols <, >, = and != are not allowed in integer expressions, they would terminate the expression. If the argument contains no relation symbol, \_\_int_compare_error: is expanded, inserting = and itself after an error. In all cases, \_\_int_compare:w receives as its argument an integer, a relation symbol, and some more tokens. We then setup the loop, which is ended by the two odd-looking items e and {=nd_}, with a trailing \_\_int_stop used to grab the entire argument when necessary.

\begin{verbatim}
\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \int_compare:n { p , T , F , TF }
\{
\exp_after:wN \_\_int_compare:w 
\int_value:w \_\_int_eval:w #1 \_\_int_compare_error:
\}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_int_compare:w #1 \_\_int_compare_error:
\{
\exp_after:wN \_\_int_compare:NNw 
\__int_to_roman:w - 0 #2 \_\_int_mark
\end{verbatim}

The goal here is to find an (operand) and a (comparison). The (operand) is already evaluated, but we cannot yet grab it as an argument. To access the following relation symbol, we remove the number by applying \_\_int_to_roman:w, after making sure that the argument becomes non-positive: its roman numeral representation is then empty. Then probe the first two tokens with \_\_int_compare:NNw to determine the relation symbol, building a control sequence from it (\token_to_str:N gives better errors if #1 is not a character). All the extended forms have an extra = hence the test for that as a second token. If the relation symbol is unknown, then the control sequence is turned by \TeX{} into \scan_stop:, ignored thanks to \unexpanded, and \_\_int_compare_error:Nw raises an error.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_int_compare:NNw \_\_int_compare_error:
\{
\exp_after:wN \_\_int_compare:NNw 
\_\_int_to_roman:w - 0 #2 \_\_int_mark
\end{verbatim}

810
When the last *(operand)* is seen, `\__int_compare:NNw` receives `e` and `nd_` as arguments, hence calling `\__int_compare_end_=:NNw` to end the loop: return the result of the last comparison (involving the operand that we just found). When a normal relation is found, the appropriate auxiliary calls `\__int_compare:nnN` where `#1` is `\if_int_compare:w` or `\reverse_if:N \if_int_compare:w`, `#2` is the *(operand)*, and `#3` is one of `<`, `=`, or `>`. As announced earlier, we leave the *(operand)* for the previous conditional. If this conditional is true the result of the test is known, so we remove all tokens and return `false`. Otherwise, we apply the conditional `#1` to the *(operand)* `#2` and the comparison `#3`, and call `\__int_compare:Nw` to look for additional operands, after evaluating the following expression.

The actual comparisons are then simple function calls, using the relation as delimiter for a delimited argument and discarding `\__int_compare_error:Nw` *(token)* responsible for error detection.
More efficient but less natural in typing.

For integer cases, the first task to fully expand the check condition. The overall idea is then much the same as for \texttt{tl_case:nTF} as described in \texttt{l3tl}.

A predicate function.
(End definition for \texttt{\int_if_odd:nTF} and \texttt{\int_if_even:nTF}. These functions are documented on page 160.)

\subsection*{57.6 Integer expression loops}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \\int_while_do:nn { \int_compare:nT {#1} { \\int_while_do:nn {#1} {#2} } }
\cs_new:Npn \\int_until_do:nn { \int_compare:nF {#1} { \\int_until_do:nn {#1} {#2} } }
\cs_new:Npn \\int_do_while:nn { #2 \\int_compare:nT {#1} { \\int_do_while:nn {#1} {#2} } }
\cs_new:Npn \\int_do_until:nn { #2 \\int_compare:nF {#1} { \\int_do_until:nn {#1} {#2} } }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\int_while_do:nn} and others. These functions are documented on page 161.)

\begin{verbatim}
\int_while_do:nNnn \int_until_do:nNnn \int_do_while:nNnn \int_do_until:nNnn
\end{verbatim}

As above but not using the more natural syntax.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \\int_while_do:nNnn { \int_compare:nT {#1} { \\int_while_do:nNnn {#1} {#2} } }
\cs_new:Npn \\int_until_do:nNnn { \int_compare:nF {#1} { \\int_until_do:nNnn {#1} {#2} } }
\cs_new:Npn \\int_do_while:nNnn { #2 \\int_compare:nT {#1} { \\int_do_while:nNnn {#1} {#2} } }
\cs_new:Npn \\int_do_until:nNnn { #2 \\int_compare:nF {#1} { \\int_do_until:nNnn {#1} {#2} } }
\end{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\{ \int_compare:nNnT {#1} #2 {#3} #4 \}
\int_until_do:nNnn {#1} #2 {#3} #4
\int_do_until:nNnn {#1} #2 {#3} #4
\int_do:while:nNnn {#1} #2 {#3} #4
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\int_while_do:nNnn} and others. These functions are documented on page 161.)

57.7 Integer step functions

Before all else, evaluate the initial value, step, and final value. Repeating a function by steps first needs a check on the direction of the steps. After that, do the function for the start value then step and loop around. It would be more symmetrical to test for a step size of zero before checking the sign, but we optimize for the most frequent case (positive step).
The approach here is to build a function, with a global integer required to make the nesting safe (as seen in other in line functions), and map that function using \int_step_function:nnn. We put a \prg_break_point:Nn so that map_break functions from other modules correctly decrement \g__kernel_prg_map_int before looking for their own break point. The first argument is \scan_stop:, so that no breaking function recognizes this break point as its own.
57.8 Formatting integers

\int_to_arabic:n
Nothing exciting here.

\int_to_symbols:nnn
\__int_to_symbols:nnnn
For conversion of integers to arbitrary symbols the method is in general as follows. The input number (#1) is compared to the total number of symbols available at each place (#2). If the input is larger than the total number of symbols available then the modulus is needed, with one added so that the positions don’t have to number from zero. Using an f-type expansion, this is done so that the system is recursive. The actual conversion function therefore gets a ‘nice’ number at each stage. Of course, if the initial input was small enough then there is no problem and everything is easy.

\int_to_alph:n
\int_to_Alph:n
These both use the above function with input functions that make sense for the alphabet in English.
\cs_new:Npn \int_to_alph:n #1
\{\int_to_symbols:nnn {#1} { 26 }
\{ { 1 } { a } { 2 } { b } { 3 } { c } { 4 } { d } { 5 } { e } { 6 } { f } { 7 } { g } { 8 } { h } { 9 } { i } {10 } { j } {11 } { k } {12 } { l } {13 } { m } {14 } { n } {15 } { o } {16 } { p } {17 } { q } {18 } { r } {19 } { s } {20 } { t } {21 } { u } {22 } { v } {23 } { w } {24 } { x } {25 } { y } {26 } { z }\}
\}
\cs_new:Npn \int_to_Alph:n #1
\{\int_to_symbols:nnn {#1} { 26 }
\{ { 1 } { A } { 2 } { B } { 3 } { C } { 4 } { D } { 5 } { E } { 6 } { F } { 7 } { G } { 8 } { H } { 9 } { I } {10 } { J } {11 } { K } {12 } { L } {13 } { M } {14 } { N } {15 } { O } {16 } { P } {17 } { Q } {18 } { R }\}
(End definition for \texttt{\int_to_alph:n} and \texttt{\int_to_Alph:n}. These functions are documented on page 163.)

Converting from base ten (#1) to a second base (#2) starts with computing #1: if it is a complicated calculation, we shouldn't perform it twice. Then check the sign, store it, either \texttt{-} or \texttt{\c_empty_tl}, and feed the absolute value to the next auxiliary function.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \int_to_base:nn #1 { \exp_args:Nf \__int_to_base:nn { \int_eval:n {#1} } }
\cs_new:Npn \int_to_Base:nn #1 { \exp_args:Nf \__int_to_Base:nn { \int_eval:n {#1} } }
\cs_new:Npn \__int_to_base:nn #1#2
{\int_compare:nNnTF {#1} < 0
{ \exp_args:No \__int_to_base:nnN { \use_none:n #1 } {#2} - }
{ \__int_to_base:nnN {#1} {#2} \c_empty_tl }
}
\cs_new:Npn \__int_to_base:nnN #1#2#3
{\int_compare:nNnTF {#1} < {#2}
{ \exp_last_unbraced:Nf #3 { \__int_to_letter:n {#1} } }
{ \exp_args:Nf \__int_to_base:nnnN { \__int_to_letter:n { \int_mod:nn {#1} {#2} } }
{#1}
{#2}
#3}
}
\end{verbatim}

Here, the idea is to provide a recursive system to deal with the input. The output is built up after the end of the function. At each pass, the value in #1 is checked to see if it is less than the new base (#2). If it is, then it is converted directly, putting the sign back in front. On the other hand, if the value to convert is greater than or equal to the new base then the modulus and remainder values are found. The modulus is converted to a symbol and put on the right, and the remainder is carried forward to the next round.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__int_to_base:nnN #1#2#3#4
{ \exp_args:Nf \__int_to_base:nnnN {#1} {#2} #3#4 }
\end{verbatim}
Convert to a letter only if necessary, otherwise simply return the value unchanged. It
would be cleaner to use \int_case:nn, but in our case, the cases are contiguous, so it
is forty times faster to use the \if_case:w primitive. The first \exp_after:wN expands
the conditional, jumping to the correct case, the second one expands after the resulting
caracter to close the conditional. Since #1 might be an expression, and not directly a
single digit, we need to evaluate it properly, and expand the trailing \fi:.

\cs_new:Npn \__int_to_Letter:n #1
  \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN
  \if_case:w \__int_eval:w #1 - 10 \__int_eval_end: a
  \or: b
  \or: c
  \or: d
  \or: e
  \or: f
  \or: g
  \or: h
  \or: i
  \or: j
  \or: k
  \or: l
  \or: m
  \or: n
  \or: o
  \or: p
  \or: q
  \or: r
\begin{verbatim}
\or: s
\or: t
\or: u
\or: v
\or: w
\or: x
\or: y
\or: z
\else: \int_value:w \__int_eval:w #1 \exp_after:wN \__int_eval_end:
\fi:
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__int_to_Letter:n #1
{
\exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN
\if_case:w \__int_eval:w #1 - 10 \__int_eval_end:
A
\or: B
\or: C
\or: D
\or: E
\or: F
\or: G
\or: H
\or: I
\or: J
\or: K
\or: L
\or: M
\or: N
\or: O
\or: P
\or: Q
\or: R
\or: S
\or: T
\or: U
\or: V
\or: W
\or: X
\or: Y
\or: Z
\else: \int_value:w \__int_eval:w #1 \exp_after:wN \__int_eval_end:
\fi:
\}
(End definition for \int_to_base:nn and others. These functions are documented on page 164.)
\end{verbatim}

\int_to_bin:n Wrappers around the generic function.
\int_to_hex:n
\int_to_Hex:n
\int_to_oct:n
\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \int_to_bin:n #1
{ \int_to_base:nn {#1} { 2 } }
\cs_new:Npn \int_to_hex:n #1
{ \int_to_base:nn {#1} { 16 } }
\cs_new:Npn \int_to_Hex:n #1
{ \int_to_base:nn {#1} { 16 } }
\cs_new:Npn \int_to_oct:n #1
{ \int_to_base:nn {#1} { 16 } }
\end{verbatim}
The \_int_to_roman:w primitive creates tokens of category code 12 (other). Usually, what is actually wanted is letters. The approach here is to convert the output of the primitive into letters using appropriate control sequence names. That keeps everything expandable. The loop is terminated by the conversion of the Q.

```latex
\cs_new:Npn \int_to_roman:n #1
\exp_after:wN \__int_to_roman:N
\__int_to_roman:w \int_eval:n {#1} Q
```

57.9 Converting from other formats to integers

Called as \_int_pass_signs:wn (signs and digits) \s__int_stop {⟨code⟩}, this function leaves in the input stream any sign it finds, then inserts the ⟨code⟩ before the first
non-sign token (and removes \texttt{$\backslash s\_int\_stop$}). More precisely, it deletes any + and passes any - to the input stream, hence should be called in an integer expression.

\begin{verbatim}
cs_new:Npn \__int_pass_signs:wn #1  
  { 
    \if:w + \if:w - \exp_not:N #1 \+ \fi: \exp_not:N #1 
    \exp_after:wN \__int_pass_signs:wn 
    \else: 
    \exp_after:wN \__int_pass_signs_end:wn 
    \exp_after:wN \#1 
    \fi: 
  }
\cs_new:Npn \__int_pass_signs_end:wn #1 \s__int_stop #2 { #2 #1 }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{$\backslash \_\_int\_pass\_signs:wn$} and \texttt{$\backslash \_\_int\_pass\_signs\_end:wn$}.)

\texttt{$\backslash \int\_from\_alph:n$} \texttt{$\backslash \_\_int\_from\_alph:nN$} \texttt{$\backslash \_\_int\_from\_alph:N$}

First take care of signs then loop through the input using the \texttt{recursion} quarks. The \texttt{$\backslash \_\_int\_from\_alph:nN$} auxiliary collects in its first argument the value obtained so far, and the auxiliary \texttt{$\backslash \_\_int\_from\_alph:N$} converts one letter to an expression which evaluates to the correct number.

\begin{verbatim}
cs_new:Npn \int_from_alph:n #1  
  { \int_eval:n 
    { \exp_after:wN \__int_pass_signs:wn \tl_to_str:n {#1} \s__int_stop { \__int_from_alph:nN { 0 } } \q__int_recursion_tail \q__int_recursion_stop } }
\cs_new:Npn \__int_from_alph:nN #1#2 
  { \__int_if_recursion_tail_stop_do:Nn #2 {#1} \exp_args:Nf \__int_from_alph:nN { \int_eval:n { #1 * 26 + \__int_from_alph:N #2 } } }
\cs_new:Npn \__int_from_alph:N #1  
  { '#1 - \int_compare:nNnTF { '#1 } < { 91 } { 64 } { 96 } }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{$\backslash \_\_int\_from\_alph:nn$}, \texttt{$\backslash \_\_int\_from\_alph:nN$}, and \texttt{$\backslash \_\_int\_from\_alph:N$}. This function is documented on page \pageref{int_from_base:n}.)

\texttt{$\backslash \int\_from\_base:nn$} \texttt{$\backslash \_\_int\_from\_base:nnN$} \texttt{$\backslash \_\_int\_from\_base:N$}

Leave the signs into the integer expression, then loop through characters, collecting the value found so far in the first argument of \texttt{$\backslash \_\_int\_from\_base:nnN$}. To convert a single character, \texttt{$\backslash \_\_int\_from\_base:N$} checks first for digits, then distinguishes lower from upper case letters, turning them into the appropriate number. Note that this auxiliary does not use \texttt{$\int\_eval:n$}, hence is not safe for general use.

\begin{verbatim}
cs_new:Npn \int_from_base:nn #1#2  
  { \int_eval:n 
    { \exp_after:wN \__int_pass_signs:wn \tl_to_str:n {#1} \s__int_stop { \__int_from_base:nnN { 0 } {#2} } \q__int_recursion_tail \q__int_recursion_stop } }
\end{verbatim}

822
\cs_new:Npn \__int_from_base:nnN #1#2#3
{
    \__int_if_recursion_tail_stop_do:Nn #3 {#1}
    \exp_args:Nf \__int_from_base:nnN
    { \int_eval:n { #1 * #2 + \__int_from_base:N #3 } }
    (#2)
}
\cs_new:Npn \__int_from_base:N #1
{
    \int_compare:nNnTF { '#1 } < { 58 }
    {#1}
    { '#1 - \int_compare:nNnTF { '#1 } < { 91 } { 55 } { 87 } }
}

(End definition for \int_from_base:nn, \__int_from_base:nnN, and \__int_from_base:N. This function is documented on page 165.)

\int_from_bin:n
\int_from_hex:n
\int_from_oct:n

Wrappers around the generic function.
\cs_new:Npn \int_from_bin:n #1
{ \int_from_base:nn {#1} { 2 } }
\cs_new:Npn \int_from_hex:n #1
{ \int_from_base:nn {#1} { 16 } }
\cs_new:Npn \int_from_oct:n #1
{ \int_from_base:nn {#1} { 8 } }

(End definition for \int_from_bin:n, \int_from_hex:n, and \int_from_oct:n. These functions are documented on page 165.)

c__int_from_roman_i_int
\c__int_from_roman_v_int
\c__int_from_roman_x_int
\c__int_from_roman_l_int
\c__int_from_roman_c_int
\c__int_from_roman_d_int
\c__int_from_roman_m_int
\c__int_from_roman_I_int
\c__int_from_roman_V_int
\c__int_from_roman_X_int
\c__int_from_roman_L_int
\c__int_from_roman_C_int
\c__int_from_roman_D_int
\c__int_from_roman_M_int

Constants used to convert from Roman numerals to integers.
\int_const:cn { c__int_from_roman_i_int } { 1 }
\int_const:cn { c__int_from_roman_v_int } { 5 }
\int_const:cn { c__int_from_roman_x_int } { 10 }
\int_const:cn { c__int_from_roman_l_int } { 50 }
\int_const:cn { c__int_from_roman_c_int } { 100 }
\int_const:cn { c__int_from_roman_d_int } { 500 }
\int_const:cn { c__int_from_roman_m_int } { 1000 }
\int_const:cn { c__int_from_roman_I_int } { 1 }
\int_const:cn { c__int_from_roman_V_int } { 5 }
\int_const:cn { c__int_from_roman_X_int } { 10 }
\int_const:cn { c__int_from_roman_L_int } { 50 }
\int_const:cn { c__int_from_roman_C_int } { 100 }
\int_const:cn { c__int_from_roman_D_int } { 500 }
\int_const:cn { c__int_from_roman_M_int } { 1000 }

(End definition for c__int_from_roman_i_int and others.)

\int_from_roman:n
\__int_from_roman:NN
\__int_from_roman_error:w

The method here is to iterate through the input, finding the appropriate value for each letter and building up a sum. This is then evaluated by \TeX. If any unknown letter is found, skip to the closing parenthesis and insert *0-1 afterwards, to replace the value by $-1$.
\cs_new:Npn \int_from_roman:n #1
{
    \int_eval:n
    { (#1)
    \__int_from_roman_error:w
    }
}

823
57.10 Viewing integer

\int_show:N  Diagnostics.
\int_show:c
\__int_show:nN

(End definition for \int_show:N and \__int_show:nN. This function is documented on page 166.)

\int_show:n  We don’t use the \TeX\ primitive \showthe\ to show integer expressions: this gives a more
unified output.

\int_log:N  Diagnostics.
\int_log:c

(End definition for \int_log:N. This function is documented on page 166.)
\int_log:n \quad \text{Similar to } \int_show:n.

(End definition for \int_log:n. This function is documented on page 166.)

\int_rand:nn \quad \text{Defined in l3fp-random.}

(End definition for \int_rand:nn. This function is documented on page 165.)

57.11 Random integers

57.12 Constant integers

\c_zero_int \quad \text{The zero is defined in l3basics.}
\c_one_int \quad \text{\int_const:Nn \c_one_int \{ 1 \}}

(End definition for \c_zero_int \text{ and } \c_one_int. These variables are documented on page 166.)

\c_max_int \quad \text{The largest number allowed is } 2^{31} - 1
\c_max_int \quad \text{\int_const:Nn \c_max_int \{ 2 147 483 647 \}}

(End definition for \c_max_int. This variable is documented on page 166.)

\c_max_char_int \quad \text{The largest character code is 1114111 (hexadecimal 10FFFF) in Xe\TeX and Lua\TeX and 255 in other engines. In many places \TeX\ and \up\TeX support larger character codes but for instance the values of \lccode are restricted to [0, 255].}
\c_max_char_int \quad \text{\int_const:Nn \c_max_char_int}
\c_max_char_int \quad \text{\if_int_odd:w 0}
\c_max_char_int \quad \cs_if_exist:NT \tex_luatexversion:D \{ 1 \}
\c_max_char_int \quad \cs_if_exist:NT \tex_XeTeXversion:D \{ 1 \} -
\c_max_char_int \quad \text{10FFFF}
\c_max_char_int \quad \text{\else:}
\c_max_char_int \quad \text{"FF}
\c_max_char_int \quad \text{\fi:}
\c_max_char_int \quad \text{}}

(End definition for \c_max_char_int. This variable is documented on page 166.)

57.13 Scratch integers

\l_tmpa_int \quad \text{We provide two local and two global scratch counters, maybe we need more or less.}
\l_tmpb_int \quad \text{\int_new:N \l_tmpa_int}
\g_tmpa_int \quad \text{\int_new:N \l_tmpb_int}
\g_tmpb_int \quad \text{\int_new:N \g_tmpa_int}
\g_tmpb_int \quad \text{\int_new:N \g_tmpb_int}

(End definition for \l_tmpa_int \text{ and others. These variables are documented on page 166.})
57.14 Integers for earlier modules

\l__int_internal_a_int
\l__int_internal_b_int

\int_new:N \l__int_internal_a_int
\int_new:N \l__int_internal_b_int

(End definition for \l__int_internal_a_int and \l__int_internal_b_int.)

\end_package
Chapter 58

l3flag implementation

The following test files are used for this code: m3flag001.

58.1 Non-expandable flag commands

The height \( h \) of a flag (initially zero) is stored by setting control sequences of the form \( \texttt{flag} \langle \text{name} \rangle \langle \text{integer} \rangle \) to \( \texttt{relax} \) for \( 0 \leq \langle \text{integer} \rangle < h \). When a flag is raised, a “trap” function \( \texttt{flag} \langle \text{name} \rangle \) is called. The existence of this function is also used to test for the existence of a flag.

\begin{verbatim}
\flag_new:n
For each flag, we define a “trap” function, which by default simply increases the flag by 1 by letting the appropriate control sequence to \( \texttt{relax} \). This can be done expandably!
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\flag_clear:n
Undefine control sequences, starting from the 0 flag, upwards, until reaching an undefined control sequence. We don’t use \texttt{cs_undefine:c} because that would act globally. When the option check-declarations is used, check for the function defined by \( \texttt{flag_new:n} \).
\end{verbatim}
As for other datatypes, clear the \( \text{\textlangle flag\textrangle} \) or create a new one, as appropriate.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \flag_clear_new:n #1
\{ \flag_if_exist:nTF {#1} { \flag_clear:n } { \flag_new:n } {#1} \}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \flag_clear_new:n. This function is documented on page 170.)

Show the height (terminal or log file) using appropriate \l3msg auxiliaries.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \flag_show:n { \__flag_show:Nn \tl_show:n }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \flag_log:n { \__flag_show:Nn \tl_log:n }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__flag_show:Nn #1#2
\{ \exp_args:Nc \__kernel_chk_defined:NT { flag~#2 } \{
\exp_args:Nx #1 \{
\tl_to_str:n { flag~#2~height } = \flag_height:n {#2} \}
\}
\}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \flag_show:n, \flag_log:n, and \__flag_show:Nn. These functions are documented on page 170.)

58.2 Expandable flag commands

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \flag_height:n #1
{ \__flag_height_loop:wn 0; {#1} }
\cs_new:Npn \__flag_height_loop:wn #1 ; #2
{ \if_cs_exist:w flag~#2~#1 \cs_end:
\exp_after:wN \__flag_height_loop:wn \int_value:w \int_eval:w 1 + #2
\else:
\prg_return_false:
\fi:
}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \flag_height:n. This function is documented on page 170.)

A flag exist if the corresponding trap \( \text{\textlangle flag\textrangle}:n \) is defined.

\begin{verbatim}
\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \flag_if_exist:n #1 { p , T , F , TF }
\{ \cs_if_exist:cTF { flag~#1 } \{ \prg_return_true: \} \{ \prg_return_false: \}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \flag_if_exist:nTF. This function is documented on page 170.)

Test if the flag has a non-zero height, by checking the 0 control sequence.

\begin{verbatim}
\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \flag_if_raised:n #1 { p , T , F , TF }
\{ \if_cs_exist:w flag~#1~0 \cs_end:
\prg_return_true:
\else:
\prg_return_false:
\fi:
\}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \flag_if_raised:nTF. This function is documented on page 170.)

Extract the value of the flag by going through all of the control sequences starting from 0.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \flag_height:n #1
\{ \__flag_height_loop:wn 0; {#1} \}
\cs_new:Npn \__flag_height_loop:wn #1 ; #2
\{ \if_cs_exist:w flag~#2~#1 \cs_end:
\exp_after:wN \__flag_height_loop:wn \int_value:w \int_eval:w 1 + #2
\else:
\end{verbatim}
\exp_after:wN \__flag_height_end:wn 
\fi: 
\} 
\cs_new:Npn \__flag_height_end:wn \#1 ; \#2 {\#1} 

(End definition for \flag_height:n, \__flag_height_loop:wn, and \__flag_height_end:wn. This function is documented on page 170.)

\flag_raise:n \ Simply apply the trap to the height, after expanding the latter.
\cs_new:Npn \flag_raise:n \#1 
\cs:w flag~#1 \exp_after:wN \cs_end: 
\int_value:w \flag_height:n \{#1\} ; 
\}

(End definition for \flag_raise:n. This function is documented on page 170.)

(/package)
Chapter 59

\texttt{i3clist implementation}

The following test files are used for this code: \texttt{m3clist002}.

\begin{verbatim}
\l_\texttt{clist}\n\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\c_empty_clist} An empty comma list is simply an empty token list.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_eq:NN \c_empty_clist \c_empty_tl
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\c_empty_clist}. This variable is documented on page 180.)

\texttt{\l_\texttt{clist_internal_clist}} Scratch space for various internal uses. This comma list variable cannot be declared as
such because it comes before \texttt{\clist_new:N}

\begin{verbatim}
\tl_new:N \l__clist_internal_clist
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\l__clist_internal_clist}.)

\texttt{\s__clist_mark} \texttt{\s__clist_stop} Internal scan marks.

\begin{verbatim}
\scan_new:N \s__clist_mark
\scan_new:N \s__clist_stop
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\s__clist_mark} and \texttt{\s__clist_stop}.)

\texttt{\__clist_use_none_delimit_by_s_mark:w} \texttt{\__clist_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w} \texttt{\__clist_use_i_delimit_by_s_stop:nw} Functions to gobble up to a scan mark.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__clist_use_none_delimit_by_s_mark:w #1 \s__clist_mark { }
\cs_new:Npn \__clist_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w #1 \s__clist_stop { }
\cs_new:Npn \__clist_use_i_delimit_by_s_stop:nw #1 #2 \s__clist_stop (#1)
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\__clist_use_none_delimit_by_s_mark:w}, \texttt{\__clist_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w}, and \texttt{\__clist_use_i_delimit_by_s_stop:nw}.)

\texttt{\__clist_tmp:w} A temporary function for various purposes.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__clist_tmp:w { }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\__clist_tmp:w}.)
59.1 Removing spaces around items

\clist_trim_next:w Called as \exp:w \clist_trim_next:w \prg_do_nothing: ⟨comma list⟩ ... it expands to ⟨⟨trimmed item⟩⟩ where the ⟨trimmed item⟩ is the first non-empty result from removing spaces from both ends of comma-delimited items in the ⟨comma list⟩. The \prg_do_nothing: marker avoids losing braces. The test for blank items is a somewhat optimized \tl_if_empty:oTF construction; if blank, another item is sought, otherwise trim spaces.

17802 \cs_new:Npn \clist_trim_next:w #1 ,
17803 { \tl_if_empty:oTF { \use_none:nn #1 ? }
17804 { \clist_trim_next:w \prg_do_nothing: }
17805 { \tl_trim_spaces_apply:oN {#1} \exp_end: }
17806 }

(End definition for \clist_trim_next:w.)

\clist_sanitize:n \clist_sanitize:Nn The auxiliary \clist_sanitize:Nn receives a delimiter (\c_empty_tl the first time, afterwards a comma) and that item as arguments. Unless we are done with the loop it calls \clist_wrap_item:w to unbrace the item (using a comma delimiter is safe since #2 came from removing spaces from an argument delimited by a comma) and possibly re-brace it if needed.

17808 \cs_new:Npn \clist_sanitize:n #1
17809 { \exp_after:wN \clist_sanitize:Nn \exp_after:wN \c_empty_tl
17810 \exp:w \clist_trim_next:w \prg_do_nothing:
17811 #1 , \s__clist_stop \prg_break: , \prg_break_point:
17812 }
17813 \cs_new:Npn \clist_sanitize:Nn #1#2
17814 { \clist_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w #2 \s__clist_stop
17815 \clist_wrap_item:w #2 ,
17816 \exp_after:wN \clist_sanitize:Nn \exp_after:wN ,
17817 \exp:w \clist_trim_next:w \prg_do_nothing:
17818 }

(End definition for \clist_sanitize:n and \clist_sanitize:Nn.)

\clist_wrap_item:w \clist_wrap_item:nTF True if the argument must be wrapped to avoid getting altered by some clist operations. That is the case whenever the argument

- starts or end with a space or contains a comma,
- is empty, or
- consists of a single braced group.

If the argument starts or ends with a space or contains a comma then one of the three arguments of \clist_wrap_item:w will have its end delimiter (partly) in one of the three copies of #1 in \clist_wrap_item:nTF; this has a knock-on effect meaning that the result of the expansion is not empty; in that case, wrap. Otherwise, the argument is safe unless it starts with a brace group (or is empty) and it is empty or consists of a single n-type argument.

17821 \prg_new_conditional:Npn \clist_wrap_item:n #1 { TF }

831
59.2 Allocation and initialisation

Internally, comma lists are just token lists.

Creating and initializing a constant comma list is done by sanitizing all items (stripping spaces and braces).

Clearing comma lists is just the same as clearing token lists.
\clist_clear_new:N \clist_gclear_new:N Once again a copy from the token list functions.
\clist_set_eq:NN \clist_set_eq:cN \clist_gset_eq:NN \clist_gset_eq:cN Once again, these are simple copies from the token list functions.
\clist_set_from_seq:NN \clist_gset_from_seq:NN Setting a comma list from a comma-separated list is done using a simple mapping. Safe items are put in \exp_not:n, otherwise we put an extra set of braces. The first comma must be removed, except in the case of an empty comma-list.
Concatenating comma lists is not quite as easy as it seems, as there needs to be the correct addition of a comma to the output. So a little work to do.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \clist_concat:NNN { \__clist_concat:NNNN \__kernel_tl_set:Nx }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \clist_gconcat:NNN { \__clist_concat:NNNN \__kernel_tl_gset:Nx }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \clist_concat:NNN { ccc }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \clist_gconcat:NNN { ccc }

Copies of the \cs functions defined in \l3basics.\prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \clist_if_exist:N \cs_if_exist:N { TF , T , F , p }
\prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \clist_if_exist:c \cs_if_exist:c { TF , T , F , p }

Everything is based on concatenation after storing in \l__clist_internal_clist. This avoids having to worry here about space-trimming and so on.

\cs_new_protected:Npm \clist_concat:NNN \list_concat_from_seq:NN and others. These functions are documented on page 172.

\clist_concat:NNN
\clist_gconcat:NNN
\__clist_concat:NNNN

\clist_if_exist_p:N
\clist_if_exist_p:c
\clist_if_exist:NTF
\clist_if_exist:cTF

\clist_set:Nn \clist_set:NV \clist_set:No \clist_set:Nx \clist_set:cn \clist_set:cV \clist_set:co \clist_set:cx
\clist_gset:Nn \clist_gset:NV \clist_gset:No \clist_gset:Nx \clist_gset:cn \clist_gset:cV \clist_gset:co \clist_gset:cx

\__clist_put_left:NNNn
\clist_put_left:Nn \clist_put_left:NV \clist_put_left:No \clist_put_left:Nx \clist_put_left:cn \clist_put_left:cV \clist_put_left:co \clist_put_left:cx
\clist_gput_left:Nn \clist_gput_left:NV \clist_gput_left:No \clist_gput_left:Nx \clist_gput_left:cn \clist_gput_left:cV \clist_gput_left:co \clist_gput_left:cx
\__clist_put_left:NNNn

\clist_if_exist_p:N \clist_if_exist_p:c \clist_if_exist:NTF \clist_if_exist:cTF

\clist_set:Nn \clist_set:NV \clist_set:No \clist_set:Nx \clist_set:cn \clist_set:cV \clist_set:co \clist_set:cx
\clist_gset:Nn \clist_gset:NV \clist_gset:No \clist_gset:Nx \clist_gset:cn \clist_gset:cV \clist_gset:co \clist_gset:cx

\__clist_put_left:NNNn
\clist_put_left:Nn \clist_put_left:NV \clist_put_left:No \clist_put_left:Nx \clist_put_left:cn \clist_put_left:cV \clist_put_left:co \clist_put_left:cx
\clist_gput_left:Nn \clist_gput_left:NV \clist_gput_left:No \clist_gput_left:Nx \clist_gput_left:cn \clist_gput_left:cV \clist_gput_left:co \clist_gput_left:cx
\__clist_put_left:NNNn

(End definition for \clist_concat:NNN, \clist_gconcat:NNN, and \__clist_concat:NNNN. These functions are documented on page 173.)

59.3 Adding data to comma lists

\clist_set:Nn \clist_set:NV \clist_set:No \clist_set:Nx \clist_set:cn \clist_set:cV \clist_set:co \clist_set:cx
\clist_gset:Nn \clist_gset:NV \clist_gset:No \clist_gset:Nx \clist_gset:cn \clist_gset:cV \clist_gset:co \clist_gset:cx

\__clist_put_left:NNNn
\clist_put_left:Nn \clist_put_left:NV \clist_put_left:No \clist_put_left:Nx \clist_put_left:cn \clist_put_left:cV \clist_put_left:co \clist_put_left:cx
\clist_gput_left:Nn \clist_gput_left:NV \clist_gput_left:No \clist_gput_left:Nx \clist_gput_left:cn \clist_gput_left:cV \clist_gput_left:co \clist_gput_left:cx
\__clist_put_left:NNNn

(End definition for \clist_set:Nn and \clist_gset:Nn. These functions are documented on page 173.)

Everything is based on concatenation after storing in \l__clist_internal_clist. This avoids having to worry here about space-trimming and so on.

\cs_new_protected:Npm \clist_put_left:Nn \clist_concat:NNN \list_concat_from_seq:NN and others. These functions are documented on page 172.

\clist_concat:NNN
\clist_gconcat:NNN
\__clist_concat:NNNN

\clist_if_exist_p:N \clist_if_exist_p:c \clist_if_exist:NTF \clist_if_exist:cTF

\clist_set:Nn \clist_set:NV \clist_set:No \clist_set:Nx \clist_set:cn \clist_set:cV \clist_set:co \clist_set:cx
\clist_gset:Nn \clist_gset:NV \clist_gset:No \clist_gset:Nx \clist_gset:cn \clist_gset:cV \clist_gset:co \clist_gset:cx

\__clist_put_left:NNNn
\clist_put_left:Nn \clist_put_left:NV \clist_put_left:No \clist_put_left:Nx \clist_put_left:cn \clist_put_left:cV \clist_put_left:co \clist_put_left:cx
\clist_gput_left:Nn \clist_gput_left:NV \clist_gput_left:No \clist_gput_left:Nx \clist_gput_left:cn \clist_gput_left:cV \clist_gput_left:co \clist_gput_left:cx
\__clist_put_left:NNNn

(End definition for \clist_concat:NNN, \clist_gconcat:NNN, and \__clist_concat:NNNN. These functions are documented on page 173.)
59.4 Comma lists as stacks

Getting an item from the left of a comma list is pretty easy: just trim off the first item using the comma. No need to trim spaces as comma-list variables are assumed to have “cleaned-up” items. (Note that grabbing a comma-delimited item removes an outer pair of braces if present, exactly as needed to uncover the underlying item.)

An empty clist leads to \texttt{q_no_value}, otherwise grab until the first comma and assign to the variable. The second argument of \texttt{\__clist_pop:wwNNN} is a comma list ending in a comma and \texttt{s__clist_mark}, unless the original clist contained exactly one item: then the argument is just \texttt{s__clist_mark}. The next auxiliary picks either \texttt{\exp_not:n} or \texttt{\use_none:n} as \texttt{#2}, ensuring that the result can safely be an empty comma list.
The same, as branching code: very similar to the above.

\prg_new_protected_conditional:Npnn \clist_get:NN { T , F , TF } { } { T , F , TF } { \if_meaning:w \#1 \c_empty_clist \prg_return_false: \else: \exp_after:wN \__clist_get:wN \#1 , \s__clist_stop \prg_return_true: \fi: } \prg_generate_conditional_variant:Nnn \clist_get:NN { c } { T , F , TF } \prg_new_protected_conditional:Npnn \clist_pop:NN { T , F , TF } { } { T , F , TF } { \if_meaning:w \#2 \c_empty_clist \prg_return_false: \else: \exp_after:wN \__clist_pop:wwNNN \#2 , \s__clist_mark \s__clist_stop \#1\#2\#3 \fi: } \prg_generate_conditional_variant:Nnn \clist_pop:NN { c } { T , F , TF } \prg_new_protected_conditional:Npnn \clist_gpop:NN { T , F , TF } { } { T , F , TF } { \if_meaning:w \#2 \c_empty_clist \prg_return_false: \else: \exp_after:wN \__clist_gpop:wwNNN \#2 , \s__clist_mark \s__clist_stop \#1\#2\#3 \fi: } \prg_generate_conditional_variant:Nnn \clist_gpop:NN { c } { T , F , TF }

\prg_generate_variant:Nnn \clist_get:NN { c } { T , F , TF } \prg_generate_variant:Nnn \clist_pop:NN { c } { T , F , TF } \prg_generate_variant:Nnn \clist_gpop:NN { c } { T , F , TF }

(End definition for \clist_pop:NN and others. These functions are documented on page 178.)
59.5 Modifying comma lists

An internal comma list and a sequence for the removal routines.

Removing duplicates means making a new list then copying it.
The method used here for safe items is very similar to \texttt{tl_replace_all:Nnn}. However, if the item contains commas or leading/trailing spaces, or is empty, or consists of a single brace group, we know that it can only appear within braces so the code would fail; instead just convert to a sequence and do the removal with \texttt{l3seq} code (it involves somewhat elaborate code to do most of the work expandably but the final token list comparisons non-expandably).

For “safe” items, build a function delimited by the \texttt{⟨item⟩} that should be removed, surrounded with commas, and call that function followed by the expanded comma list, and another copy of the \texttt{⟨item⟩}. The loop is controlled by the argument grabbed by \texttt{\_\_clist_remove_all:w}: when the item was found, the \texttt{s\_\_clist_mark} delimiter used is the one inserted by \texttt{\_\_clist_tmp:w}, and \texttt{\_\_clist_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w} is deleted. At the end, the final \texttt{⟨item⟩} is grabbed, and the argument of \texttt{\_\_clist_-tmp:w} contains \texttt{s\_\_clist_mark}: in that case, \texttt{\_\_clist_remove_all:w} removes the second \texttt{s\_\_clist_mark} (inserted by \texttt{\_\_clist_tmp:w}), and lets \texttt{\_\_clist_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w} act.

No brace is lost because items are always grabbed with a leading comma. The result of the first assignment has an extra leading comma, which we remove in a second assignment. Two exceptions: if the clist lost all of its elements, the result is empty, and we shouldn’t remove anything; if the clist started up empty, the first step happens to turn it into a single comma, and the second step removes it.
\cs_new:Npn \__clist_remove_all: { \exp_after:wN \__clist_remove_all:w \__clist_tmp:w , }
\cs_new:Npn \__clist_remove_all:w #1 , \s__clist_mark \__clist_remove_all:w #2 , { \exp_not:n {#1} }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \clist_remove_all:Nn { c , NV , cV }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \clist_gremove_all:Nn { c , NV , cV }

(End definition for \clist_remove_all:Nn and others. These functions are documented on page 174.)

\clist_reverse:N
\clist_reverse:c
\clist_greverse:N
\clist_greverse:c

Use \clist_reverse:N in an x-expanding assignment. The extra work that \clist_reverse:n does to preserve braces and spaces would not be needed for the well-controlled case of N-type comma lists, but the slow-down is not too bad.

\clist_reverse:n
\__clist_reverse:wwNww
\__clist_reverse_end:ww

The reversed token list is built one item at a time, and stored between \s__clist_stop and \s__clist_mark, in the form of ? followed by zero or more instances of \langle item\rangle. We start from a comma list \langle item1, \ldots, itemn\rangle. During the loop, the auxiliary \__clist_reverse:wwNww receives \langle item1, \ldots, itemn\rangle as \#1, \langle itemn, \ldots, item1\rangle as \#2, \__clist_reverse:wwNww as \#3, what remains until \s__clist_stop as \#4, and \langle item1, \ldots, itemn\rangle as \#5. The auxiliary moves \#1 just before \#5, with a comma, and calls itself \#3. After the last item is moved, \__clist_reverse:wwNww receives \langle \s__clist_mark \__clist_reverse:wwNww ! \rangle as its argument \#1, thus \__clist_reverse_end:ww as its argument \#3. This second auxiliary cleans up until the marker !, removes the trailing comma (introduced when the first item was moved after \s__clist_stop), and leaves its argument \#1 within \exp_not:n. There is also a need to remove a leading comma, hence \exp_not:o and \use_none:n. There is also a need to remove \langle item1, \ldots, itemn\rangle, and \__clist_reverse:n \__clist_reverse:wwNww, and \__clist_reverse_end:ww. This function is documented on page 174.)
59.6 Comma list conditionals

Simple copies from the token list variable material.

As usual, we insert a token (here ?) before grabbing any argument: this avoids losing braces. The argument of \texttt{\tl_if_empty:oTF} is empty if \texttt{#1} is ? followed by blank spaces (besides, this particular variant of the emptiness test is optimized). If the item of the comma list is blank, grab the next one. As soon as one item is non-blank, exit: the second auxiliary grabs \texttt{\prg_return_false:} as \texttt{#2}, unless every item in the comma list was blank and the loop actually got broken by the trailing \texttt{\s__clist_mark \prg_return_false:} item.

For “safe” items, we simply surround the comma list, and the item, with commas, then use the same code as for \texttt{\tl_if_in:Nn}. For “unsafe” items we follow the same route as \texttt{\seq_if_in:Nn}, mapping through the list a comparison function. If found, return true and remove \texttt{\prg_return_false:}.
59.7 Mapping over comma lists

If the variable is empty, the mapping is skipped (otherwise, that comma-list would be seen as consisting of one empty item). Then loop over the comma-list, grabbing eight comma-delimited items at a time. The end is marked by \s__clist_stop, which may not appear in any of the items. Once the last group of eight items has been reached, we go through them more slowly using \__clist_map_function_end:w. The auxiliary function \__clist_map_function:Nw is also used in some other clist mappings.
The `\clist_map_function:nN` function is a bit more awkward, since spaces must be trimmed from each item. Space trimming is again based on `\__clist_trim_next:w`. The auxiliary `\__clist_map_function:nN` function receives as arguments the function, and the next non-empty item (after space trimming but before brace removal). One level of braces is removed by `\__clist_map_unbrace:wn`.

Inline mapping is done by creating a suitable function “on the fly”: this is done globally to avoid any issues with \TeX’s groups. We use a different function for each level of nesting.

Since the mapping is non-expandable, we can perform the space-trimming needed by the `n` version simply by storing the comma-list in a variable. We don’t need a different comma-list for each nesting level: the comma-list is expanded before the mapping starts.

842
\clist_map_variable:NNn

\clist_map_variable:cNn
\clist_map_variable:nNn
\__clist_map_variable:Nnn

The \texttt{N}-type version is a straightforward application of \clist_map_tokens:Nn, calling \_\_\_clist_map_variable:NNn for each item to assign the variable and run the user's code. The \texttt{n}-type version is not implemented in terms of the \texttt{n}-type function \clist_map_tokens:Nn, because here we are allowed to clean up the \texttt{n}-type comma list non-expandably.

\clist_map_tokens:Nn
\clist_map_tokens:cn
\__clist_map_tokens:nw
\__clist_map_tokens_end:w

Essentially a copy of \clist_map_function:NN with braces added.
\clist_map_tokens:nn\__clist_map_tokens:n:nw

Similar to \clist_map_function:nN but with a different way of grabbing items because we cannot use \exp_after:wN to pass the ⟨code⟩.

\clist_map_break:
\clist_map_break:n

The break statements use the general \prg_map_break:Nn mechanism.

\clist_count:N\clist_count:c\clist_count:n\__clist_count:n\__clist_count:w

Counting the items in a comma list is done using the same approach as for other token count functions: turn each entry into a +1 then use integer evaluation to actually do the mathematics. In the case of an n-type comma-list, we could of course use \clist_map_function:nN, but that is very slow, because it carefully removes spaces. Instead, we loop manually, and skip blank items (but not {}), hence the extra spaces.
59.8 Using comma lists

\clist_use:Nnnn \clist_use:cn \clist_use:NNnnn \clist_use:NNn \clist_use:NN

First check that the variable exists. Then count the items in the comma list. If it has none, output nothing. If it has one item, output that item, brace stripped (note that space-trimming has already been done when the comma list was assigned). If it has two, place the \langle separator between two\rangle in the middle.

Otherwise, \_\_clist_use:NNnnn takes the following arguments: 1: a \langle separator\rangle, 2, 3, 4: three items from the comma list (or quarks), 5: the rest of the comma list, 6: a \langle continuation\rangle function \use_ii or \use_iii with its \langle separator\rangle argument, 7: junk, and 8: the temporary result, which is built in a brace group following \s__clist_stop. The \langle separator\rangle and the first of the three items are placed in the result, then we use the \langle continuation\rangle, placing the remaining two items after it. When we begin this loop, the three items really belong to the comma list, the first \s__clist_mark is taken as a delimiter to the \use_ii function, and the continuation is \use_ii itself. When we reach the last two items of the original token list, \s__clist_mark is taken as a third item, and now the second \s__clist_mark serves as a delimiter to \use_ii, switching to the other \langle continuation\rangle, \use_iii, which uses the \langle separator between final two\rangle.
\clist_use:nnnn
\clist_use:nn
\__clist_use:Nw
\__clist_use_one:w
\__clist_use_end:w
\__clist_use_more:w

Items are grabbed by \__clist_use:Nw, which detects blank items with a \tl_if_empty:oTF test (in which case it recurses). Non-blank items are either the end of the list, in which case the argument #1 of \__clist_use:Nw is used to properly end the list, or are normal items, which must be trimmed and properly unbraced. As we find successive items, the long list of \__clist_use:Nw calls gets shortened and we end up calling \__clist_use_more:w once we have found 3 items. This auxiliary leaves the first-found item and the general separator, and calls \__clist_use:Nw to find more items. A subtlety is that we use \__clist_use_end:w both in the case of a two-item list and for the last two items of a general list: to get the correct separator, \__clist_use_more:w replaces the separator-of-two by the last-separator when called, namely as soon as we have found three items.
To avoid needing to test the end of the list at each step, we first compute the \( \langle \text{length} \rangle \) of the list. If the item number is 0, less than \(-\langle \text{length} \rangle\), or more than \(\langle \text{length} \rangle\), the result is empty. If it is negative, but not less than \(-\langle \text{length} \rangle\), add \(\langle \text{length} \rangle + 1\) to the item number before performing the loop. The loop itself is very simple, return the item if the counter reached 1, otherwise, decrease the counter and repeat.

```latex
\cs_new:Npn \clist_item:Nn #1#2 { ... } ...
\cs_new:Npn \__clist_item:N_loop:nw #1 #2, ...
```

End definition for \clist_use:nnnn and others. These functions are documented on page 178.
\int_compare:nNnTF {#1} = 0
\__clist_use_i_delimit_by_s_stop:nw { \exp_not:n {#2} }
\exp_args:Nf \__clist_item_N_loop:nw { \int_eval:n { #1 - 1 } }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \clist_item:Nn { c }

(End definition for \clist_item:N, \__clist_item:nnN, and \__clist_item_N_loop:nw. This function is documented on page 179.)

\clist_item:nn
\__clist_item:n:nw
\__clist_item:n_loop:nw
\__clist_item:n_end:n
\__clist_item:n_strip:n
\__clist_item:n_strip:w

This starts the same way as \clist_item:N by counting the items of the comma list. The final item should be space-trimmed before being brace-striped, hence we insert a couple of odd-looking \prg_do_nothing: to avoid losing braces. Blank items are ignored.

\cs_new:Npn \clist_item:nn #1#2
{\__clist_item:ffnN {\clist_count:n {#1}} {\int_eval:n {#2}} {#1} \__clist_item_n:nw}
\cs_new:Npn \__clist_item_n:nw #1{\__clist_item_n_loop:nw {#1} \prg_do_nothing:}
\cs_new:Npn \__clist_item_n_loop:nw #1 #2, {\exp_args:No \tl_if_blank:nTF {#2} {\__clist_item_n_loop:nw {#1} \prg_do_nothing:} {\int_compare:nNnTF {#1} = 0 {\exp_args:No \__clist_item_n_end:n {#2}} {\exp_args:Nf \__clist_item_n_loop:nw {\int_eval:n { #1 - 1 } } \prg_do_nothing:}}}
\cs_new:Npn \__clist_item_n_end:n #1 #2 \s__clist_stop {\tl_trim_spaces_apply:nN {#1} \__clist_item_n_strip:n}
\cs_new:Npn \__clist_item_n_strip:w #1 , {\exp_not:n {#1}}

(End definition for \clist_item:nn and others. This function is documented on page 179.)

\clist_rand_item:n
\clist_rand_item:N
\clist_rand_item:c
\__clist_rand_item:nn

The N-type function is not implemented through the n-type function for efficiency: for instance comma-list variables do not require space-trimming of their items. Even testing for emptiness of an n-type comma-list is slow, so we count items first and use that both for the emptiness test and the pseudo-random integer. Importantly, \clist_item:Nn and \clist_item:nn only evaluate their argument once.
59.10 Viewing comma lists

\clist_show:N
\clist_show:c
\clist_log:N
\clist_log:c
\__clist_show:NN

Apply the general \__kernel_chk_tl_type:NnnT with \exp_not:o #2 serving as a dummy code to prevent a check performed by this auxiliary.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \clist_show:N { \__clist_show:NN \msg_show:nnxxxx }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \clist_log:N { \__clist_show:NN \msg_log:nnxxxx }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__clist_show:NN #1#2[
  #1 { clist } { show }
  { \token_to_str:N #2 } { \clist_map_function:NN #2 \msg_show_item:n } { } { }
]{
  \__kernel_chk_tl_type:NnnT #2 { clist } { \exp_not:o #2 }
  \int_compare:nNnTF { \clist_count:N #2 } = { \exp_args:No \clist_count:n #2 }
    { \msg_error:nnxx { clist } { non-clist }
      \token_to_str:N #2 { \tl_to_str:N #2 }
    }
  }
}(End definition for \clist_show:N, \clist_log:N, and \__clist_show:NN. These functions are documented on page 180.)

\clist_show:n
\clist_log:n
\__clist_show:Nn

A variant of the above: no existence check, empty first argument for the message.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \clist_show:n { \__clist_show:Nn \msg_show:nxxxx }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \clist_log:n { \__clist_show:Nn \msg_log:nxxxx }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__clist_show:Nn #1#2[
  #1 { clist } { show }
  { } { \clist_map_function:nN (#2) \msg_show_item:n } { } { }
]{
  \__kernel_chk_tl_type:NnnT #2 { clist } { \exp_not:o #2 }
  \int_compare:nNnTF { \clist_count:N #2 } = { \exp_args:No \clist_count:n #2 }
    { \msg_error:nxxx { clist } { non-clist }
      \token_to_str:N #2 { \tl_to_str:N #2 }
    }
  }
}(End definition for \clist_show:n, \clist_log:n, and \__clist_show:Nn. These functions are documented on page 180.)
59.11 Scratch comma lists

\l_tmpa_clist Temporary comma list variables.
\l_tmpb_clist \clist_new:N \l_tmpa_clist
\g_tmpa_clist \clist_new:N \l_tmpb_clist
\g_tmpb_clist \clist_new:N \g_tmpa_clist
\g_tmpb_clist \clist_new:N \g_tmpb_clist

(End definition for \l_tmpa_clist and others. These variables are documented on page 180.)
Chapter 60

\textit{l3token} implementation

\section*{60.1 Internal auxiliaries}

\texttt{\_\_char_stop} Internal scan mark.
\begin{verbatim}
\scan_new:N \_\_char_stop
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \_\_char_stop.)

\texttt{\_char_no_value} Internal recursion quarks.
\begin{verbatim}
\quark_new:N \_char_no_value
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \_char_no_value.)

\texttt{\_\_char_quark_if_no_value:p:N\_\_char_quark_if_no_value:NTF} Functions to query recursion quarks.
\begin{verbatim}
\_\_kernel_quark_new_conditional:Nn \_\_char_quark_if_no_value:N { TF }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \_\_char_quark_if_no_value:NTF.)

\section*{60.2 Manipulating and interrogating character tokens}

Simple wrappers around the primitives.
\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \char_set_catcode:nn \char_value_catcode:n \char_show_value_catcode:n
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \char_set_catcode:nn, \char_value_catcode:n, and \char_show_value_catcode:n. These functions are documented on page \pageref{page-184}.)
(End definition for \char_set_catcode_escape:N and others. These functions are documented on page 183.)


Pretty repetitive, but necessary!

Two sequences for dealing with special characters. The first is characters which may be active, the second longer list is for “special” characters more generally. Both lists are escaped so that for example bulk code assignments can be carried out. In both cases, the order is by ASCII character code (as is done in for example `\ExplSyntaxOn`).
60.3 Creating character tokens

Four simple functions with very similar definitions, so set up using an auxiliary. These
are similar to LuaTeX’s \letcharcode primitive.

\char_set_active_eq:NN
\char_set_active_eq:Nc
\char_gset_active_eq:NN
\char_gset_active_eq:Nc
\char_set_active_eq:nN
\char_set_active_eq:nc
\char_gset_active_eq:nN
\char_gset_active_eq:nc

\group_begin:
\char_set_catcode_active:N \^^@  
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__char_tmp:nN #1#2 
{ \cs_new_protected:cpn { #1 :nN } ##1 
{ \group_begin: \char_set_lccode:nn { \^^@ } { ##1 } \tex_lowercase:D { \group_end: #2 \^^@ } } 
\cs_new_protected:cpx { #1 :NN } ##1 { \exp_not:c { #1 : nN } { '##1 } } }
\__char_tmp:nN { char_set_active_eq } \cs_set_eq:NN
\__char_tmp:nN { char_gset_active_eq } \cs_gset_eq:NN
\group_end:
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \char_set_active_eq:NN { Nc }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \char_gset_active_eq:NN { Nc }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \char_set_active_eq:nN { nc }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \char_gset_active_eq:nN { nc }

(End definition for \char_set_active_eq:NN and others. These functions are documented on page 182.)

\__char_int_to_roman:w

For efficiency in 8-bit engines, we use the faster primitive approach to making roman
numerals.

\cs_new_eq:NN \__char_int_to_roman:w \tex_romannumeral:D

(End definition for \__char_int_to_roman:w.)

\char_generate:nn
\__char_generate_aux:nn
\__char_generate_auxii:nnw
\__char_generate:invalid_catcode:

The aim here is to generate characters of (broadly) arbitrary category code. Where
possible, that is done using engine support (XeLaTeX, LuaLaTeX). There are though various
issues which are covered below. At the interface layer, turn the two arguments into
integers up-front so this is only done once.

\cs_new:Npn \char_generate:nn { \char_gset_active_eq:nn #1#2 
\exp:w \exp_after:wN \__char_generate:aux:nnw
\int_value:w \int_eval:n {#1} \exp_after:wN ; 
\int_value:w \int_eval:n {#2} ; 
}
Before doing any actual conversion, first some special case filtering. Spaces are out here as LuaTeX emulation only makes normal (charcode 32 spaces). However, \texttt{\^^@} is filtered out separately as that can’t be done with macro emulation either, so is flagged up separately. That done, hand off to the engine-dependent part.

```
\cs_new:Npn \__char_generate_aux:w #1 ; #2 ;
\exp_end:  
\tl_new:N \l__char_tmp_tl
```

Engine-dependent definitions are now needed for the implementation. For LuaTeX and XeLaTeX there is engine-level support. They can do cases that macro emulation can’t. All of those are filtered out here using a primitive-based boolean expression to avoid fixing the category code of the null character used in the false branch (for 8-bit engines). The final level is the basic definition at the engine level: the arguments here are integers so there is no need to worry about them too much. Older versions of XeLaTeX cannot generate active characters so we filter that: at some future stage that may change: the slightly odd ordering of auxiliaries reflects that.

```
\group_begin:
\char_set_catcode_active:N \^^L 
\cs_set:Npn \^^L { }
\char_set_catcode_other:n { 0 }
\if_int_odd:w 0 
\sys_if_engine_luatex:T { 1 } \exp_stop_f:  
\sys_if_engine_xetex:T { 1 } \exp_stop_f: 
\cs_new:Npn \__char_generate_aux:nnw {#1} {#2} \exp_end:  
\tl_new:N \l__char_tmp_tl
```

\exp_after:wN \exp_end:
\tex_Ucharcat:D \#1 \exp_stop_f: \#2 \exp_stop_f:
\}
\cs_if_exist:NF \tex_expanded:D
\{
\cs_new_eq:NN \__char_generate_auxii:nnw \__char_generate_aux:nnw
\cs_gset:Npn \__char_generate_aux:nnw \#1\#2 \exp_end:
\{
\#3
\if_int_compare:w \#2 = 13 \exp_stop_f:
\msg_expandable_error:nn { char } { active }
\else:
\__char_generate_auxii:nnw \#1 \#2
\fi:
\exp_end:
\}
\else:
\}
\else:
\}

For engines where \Ucharcat isn’t available or emulated, we have to work in macros, and cover only the 8-bit range. The first stage is to build up a \tl containing \^^@ with each category code that can be accessed in this way, with an error set up for the other cases. This is all done such that it can be quickly accessed using a \if_case:w low-level conditional. There are a few things to notice here. As \^L is \outer we need to locally set it to avoid a problem. To get open/close braces into the list, they are set up using \if_false: pairing and are then \x-type expanded together into the desired form.

\tl_set:Nn \l__char_tmp_tl { \exp_not:N \or: }
\char_set_catcode_group_begin:n { 0 } % {
\tl_put_right:Nn \l__char_tmp_tl { \^^@ \if_false: } }
\char_set_catcode_group_end:n { 0 }
\tl_put_right:Nn \l__char_tmp_tl { } \fi: \exp_not:N \or: \^^@ }
\__kernel_tl_set:Nx \l__char_tmp_tl { \l__char_tmp_tl }
\char_set_catcode_math_toggle:n { 0 }
\tl_put_right:Nn \l__char_tmp_tl { \or: \^^@ }
\char_set_catcode_math_subscript:n { 0 }
\tl_put_right:Nn \l__char_tmp_tl { \or: \^^@ }
\char_set_catcode_math_superscript:n { 0 }
\tl_put_right:Nn \l__char_tmp_tl { \or: \^^@ }
\char_set_catcode_letter:n { 0 }
\tl_put_right:Nn \l__char_tmp_tl { \or: \^^@ }
\char_set_catcode_other:n { 0 }
\tl_put_right:Nn \l__char_tmp_tl { \or: \^^@ }
\char_set_catcode_active:n { 0 }

For making spaces, there needs to be an \x-type expansion of a \use:n (or some other tokenization) to avoid dropping the space.

\char_set_catcode_space:n { 0 }
\tl_put_right:Nn \l__char_tmp_tl { \use:n \{ \or: \} \^^@ }
\char_set_catcode_letter:n { 0 }
\tl_put_right:Nn \l__char_tmp_tl { \or: \^^@ }
\char_set_catcode_other:n { 0 }
\tl_put_right:Nn \l__char_tmp_tl { \or: \^^@ }
\char_set_catcode_active:n { 0 }

856
\text{Convert the above temporary list into a series of constant token lists, one for each character code, using } \texttt{\texttt{\textbackslash tex_lowercase:D}} \text{ to convert } \texttt{^^@} \text{ in each case. The x-type expansion ensures that } \texttt{\texttt{\textbackslash tex_lowercase:D}} \text{ receives the contents of the token list. } \texttt{^^L} \text{ is awkward hence this is done in three parts: up to } \texttt{^^L}, \texttt{^^L} \text{ itself and above } \texttt{^^L}. \text{ Notice that at this stage } \texttt{^^@} \text{ is active.}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__char_tmp:n #1
\{ \char_set_lccode:nn { 0 } {#1} \char_set_lccode:nn { 32 } {#1} \exp_args:Nx \tex_lowercase:D
\{ \tl_const:Nn \exp_not:c { c__char_ \__char_int_to_roman:w #1 _tl }
\{ \exp_not:o \l__char_tmp_tl \}
\}
\int_step_function:nnN { 0 } { 11 } \__char_tmp:n
\group_begin:
\tl_replace_once:Nnn \l__char_tmp_tl { ^^@ } { \ERROR }
\__char_tmp:n { 12 }
\group_end:
\int_step_function:nnN { 13 } { 255 } \__char_tmp:n
\end{verbatim}

As \TeX{} is very unhappy if it finds an alignment character inside a primitive \texttt{\textbackslash halign} even when skipping false branches, some precautions are required. \TeX{} is happy if the token is hidden between braces within \texttt{\if\false: ... \fi:}.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__char_generate_aux:nnw #1#2#3 \exp_end:
\{ \if\false: { \fi:
\exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_end:
\if_case:w #2
\exp_last_unbraced:Nv \exp_stop_f:
\{ c__char_ \__char_int_to_roman:w #1 _tl \}
\or: \}
\fi:
\fi:
\group_end:
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{End definition for } \texttt{\char_generate:nn} \text{ and others. This function is documented on page } 182.\texttt{)}

This code converts a codepoint into the correct UTF-8 representation. In terms of the algorithm itself, see \url{https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/UTF-8} for the octet pattern.
\char_to_nfd:N  
\__char_to_nfd:n  
\__char_to_nfd:Nw

Look up any NF and recursively produce the result.

\cs_new:Npn \__char_to_utfviii_bytes_output:fnn  
\{ \int_eval:n {#1} \} { {#3} {#4} } {#2}  
\}

\cs_new:Npn \__char_to_utfviii_bytes_outputiv:nw  
\{ \int_eval:n {#1} \} { {#3} {#4} {#5} } {#2}  
\}

\cs_new:Npn \__char_to_utfviii_bytes_output:nnn #1#2#3  
\{ #3 \} \__char_to_utfviii_bytes_end: #2 #1 \}

\cs_generate_variant:Nn \__char_to_utfviii_bytes_output:nnn { f }

\cs_new:Npn \__char_to_utfviii_bytes_end: { }

(End definition for \char_to_utfviii_bytes:n and others. This function is documented on page 308.)

\char_lowercase:N  
\char_uppercase:N  
\char_titlecase:N  
\char_foldcase:N  
\__char_change_case:nNN  
\__char_change_case:nN  
\__char_change_case_multi:nN  
\__char_change_case_multi:vN  
\__char_change_case:NNNNw  
\__char_change_case:NNN  
\__char_change_case:NNNN  
\__char_change_case:NN  
\__char_change_case_catcode:N  
\char_str_lowercase:N  
\char_str_uppercase:N  
\char_str_titlecase:N  
\char_str_foldcase:N  
\__char_str_change_case:nNN  
\__char_str_change_case:nN  

To ensure that the category codes produced are predictable, every character is regenerated even if it is otherwise unchanged. This makes life a little interesting when we might have multiple output characters: we have to grab each of them and case change them in reverse order to maintain \f-type expandability.

(End definition for \char_to_nfd:N, \__char_to_nfd:n, and \__char_to_nfd:Nw. This function is documented on page 308.)
\cs_new:Npn \char_uppercase:N #1
{ \__char_change_case:nNN { upper } \char_value_uccode:n #1 }
\cs_new:Npn \char_titlecase:N #1
{ \tl_if_exist:cTF { c__char_titlecase_ \token_to_str:N #1 _tl } }
\cs_new:Npn \char_foldcase:N #1
{ \__char_change_case:nNN { fold } \char_value_lccode:n #1 }
\cs_new:Npn \__char_change_case:nNN #1#2#3
{ \tl_if_exist:cTF { c__char_ #1 case_ \token_to_str:N #3 _tl } }
\cs_new:Npn \__char_change_case_multi:nN #1#2
{ \__char_change_case_project:NNNNw #2 #1 \q__char_no_value \q__char_no_value \s__char_stop }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \__char_change_case_multi:nN { v }
\cs_new:Npn \__char_change_case:NNNN #1#2#3#4
{ \exp_args:Nnff \use:nnn { \__char_change_case:NN #1 #2 } { \__char_change_case:NN #1 #3 } { \__char_change_case:NN #1 #4 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__char_quark_if_no_value:NTF #1
{ \__char_quark_if_no_value:NTF #1 #2 #3 }
\cs_new:Npn \__char_change_case:NN #1#2
{ \exp_args:Nnf \use:nn { \__char_change_case:NN #1 #2 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__char_change_case:NNN #1#2#3
{ \int_compare:nNnTF {#1} = 0 { #2 } { \char_generate:nn {#1} { \__char_change_case_catcode:N #2 } } }
\cs_new:Npn \__char_change_case:NNNN #1#2#3#4
{ \exp_args:Nf \use:nnf { \__char_change_case:NN #1 #2 } { \__char_change_case:NN #1 #3 } }
Same story for the string version, except category code is easier to follow. This of course makes this version significantly faster.
\cs_new:Npn \__char_str_change_case:nN #1#2
{ \int_compare:nNnTF {#1} = 0
{ \tl_to_str:n {#2} }
{ \char_generate:nn {#1} { 12 } }
}
\bool_lazy_or:nnF
{ \cs_if_exist_p:N \tex_luatexversion:D }
{ \cs_if_exist_p:N \tex_XeTeXversion:D }
{ \cs_set:Npn \__char_str_change_case:nN #1#2
{ \tl_to_str:n {#2} }
}

\tl_const:Nx \c_catcode_other_space_tl \char_code:nnn { \char_generate:nn { ' } { 12 } }

\s__token_mark \s__token_stop
\token_to_meaning:N \token_to_meaning:c \token_to_str:N \token_to_str:c
\c_group_begin_token \c_group_end_token \c_math_toggle_token \c_alignment_token \c_parameter_token
\c_math_superscript_token \c_math_subscript_token \c_space_token \c_catcode_letter_token \c_catcode_other_token

\c_catcode_other_space_tl
Create a space with category code 12: an “other” space.

\tl_const:Nx \c_catcode_other_space_tl \char_code:nnn { \char_generate:nn { ' } { 12 } }

\c_group_begin_token \__kernel_chk_if_free_cs:N \c_group_begin_token
\tex_global:D \tex_let:D \c_group_begin_token { \__kernel_chk_if_free_cs:N \c_group_end_token
\tex_global:D \tex_let:D \c_group_end_token }
\char_set_catcode_math_toggle:N \*
\cs_new_eq:NN \c_math_toggle_token *
\char_set_catcode_alignment:N \*
\cs_new_eq:NN \c_alignment_token *
\cs_new_eq:NN \c_parameter_token #
\cs_new_eq:NN \c_math_superscript_token ^

60.4 Generic tokens
\s__token_mark \s__token_stop
Internal scan marks.

\token_to_meaning:N \token_to_meaning:c \token_to_str:N \token_to_str:c
\c_group_begin_token \c_group_end_token \c_math_toggle_token \c_alignment_token \c_parameter_token
\c_math_superscript_token \c_math_subscript_token \c_space_token \c_catcode_letter_token \c_catcode_other_token

These are all defined in \texttt{l3basics}, as they are needed “early”. This is just a reminder!

We define these useful tokens. For the brace and space tokens things have to be done
by hand: the formal argument spec. for \texttt{\cs_new_eq:NN} does not cover them so we do
things by hand. (As currently coded it would work with \texttt{\cs_new_eq:NN} but that’s not
really a great idea to show off: we want people to stick to the defined interfaces and that
includes us.) So that these few odd names go into the log when appropriate there is a
need to hand-apply the \texttt{\__kernel_chk_if_free_cs:N} check.
60.5 Token conditionals

\token_if_group_begin_p:N  \token_if_group_begin:NTF  
Check if token is a begin group token. We use the constant \c_group_begin_token for this.

\token_if_group_end_p:N   \token_if_group_end:NTF  
Check if token is an end group token. We use the constant \c_group_end_token for this.

\token_if_math_toggle_p:N \token_if_math_toggle:NTF  
Check if token is a math shift token. We use the constant \c_math_toggle_token for this.

\token_if_alignment_p:N   \token_if_alignment:NTF   
Check if token is an alignment tab token. We use the constant \c_alignment_token for this.
(End definition for \texttt{\token_if_alignment:NTF}. This function is documented on page 188.)

\token_if_parameter_p:N
\token_if_parameter:NTF
Check if token is a parameter token. We use the constant \texttt{\c_parameter_token} for this. We have to trick \TeX{} a bit to avoid an error message: within a group we prevent \texttt{\c_\_parameter_token} from behaving like a macro parameter character. The definitions of \texttt{\prg_new_conditional:Npnn} are global, so they remain after the group.

\group_begin:
\cs_set_eq:NN \c_parameter_token \scan_stop:
\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \token_if_parameter:N #1 { p , T , F , TF }
{ \if_catcode:w \exp_not:N #1 \c_parameter_token \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi: }
\group_end:

(End definition for \texttt{\token_if_parameter:NTF}. This function is documented on page 188.)

\token_if_math_superscript_p:N
\token_if_math_superscript:NTF
Check if token is a math superscript token. We use the constant \texttt{\c_math_superscript_token} for this.

\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \token_if_math_superscript:N #1 { p , T , F , TF }
{ \if_catcode:w \exp_not:N #1 \c_math_superscript_token \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi: }

(End definition for \texttt{\token_if_math_superscript:NTF}. This function is documented on page 188.)

\token_if_math_subscript_p:N
\token_if_math_subscript:NTF
Check if token is a math subscript token. We use the constant \texttt{\c_math_subscript_token} for this.

\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \token_if_math_subscript:N #1 { p , T , F , TF }
{ \if_catcode:w \exp_not:N #1 \c_math_subscript_token \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi: }

(End definition for \texttt{\token_if_math_subscript:NTF}. This function is documented on page 188.)

\token_if_space_p:N
\token_if_space:NTF
Check if token is a space token. We use the constant \texttt{\c_space_token} for this.

\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \token_if_space:N #1 { p , T , F , TF }
{ \if_catcode:w \exp_not:N #1 \c_space_token \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi: }

(End definition for \texttt{\token_if_space:NTF}. This function is documented on page 188.)

\token_if_letter_p:N
\token_if_letter:NTF
Check if token is a letter token. We use the constant \texttt{\c_catcode_letter_token} for this.

\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \token_if_letter:N #1 { p , T , F , TF }
{ \if_catcode:w \exp_not:N #1 \c_catcode_letter_token \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi: }

(End definition for \texttt{\token_if_letter:NTF}. This function is documented on page 188.)
Check if token is an other char token. We use the constant \c_catcode_other_token for this.

\prg_new_conditional:Npn \token_if_other:N \#1 \{ p , T , F , TF \}
{ \if_catcode:w \exp_not:N \#1 \c_catcode_other_token
  \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi: }

(End definition for \token_if_other:NTF. This function is documented on page 188.)

Check if token is an active char token. We use the constant \c_catcode_active_tl for this. A technical point is that \c_catcode_active_tl is in fact a macro expanding to \exp_not:N *, where * is active.

\prg_new_conditional:Npn \token_if_active:N \#1 \{ p , T , F , TF \}
{ \if_catcode:w \exp_not:N \#1 \c_catcode_active_tl
  \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi: }

(End definition for \token_if_active:NTF. This function is documented on page 188.)

Check if the tokens \#1 and \#2 have same meaning.

\prg_new_conditional:Npn \token_if_eq_meaning:NN \#1\#2 \{ p , T , F , TF \}
{ \if_meaning:w \#1 \#2
  \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi: }

(End definition for \token_if_eq_meaning:NNTF. This function is documented on page 189.)

Check if the tokens \#1 and \#2 have same category code.

\prg_new_conditional:Npn \token_if_eq_catcode:NN \#1\#2 \{ p , T , F , TF \}
{ \if_catcode:w \exp_not:N \#1 \exp_not:N \#2
  \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi: }

(End definition for \token_if_eq_catcode:NNTF. This function is documented on page 188.)

Check if the tokens \#1 and \#2 have same character code.

\prg_new_conditional:Npn \token_if_eq_charcode:NN \#1\#2 \{ p , T , F , TF \}
{ \if_charcode:w \exp_not:N \#1 \exp_not:N \#2
  \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi: }

(End definition for \token_if_eq_charcode:NNTF. This function is documented on page 188.)

When a token is a macro, \token_to_meaning:N always outputs something like \long macro:#1->#1 so we could naively check to see if the meaning contains ->. However, this can fail the five \...mark primitives, whose meaning has the form \...mark:\langle user material \rangle. The problem is that the \langle user material \rangle can contain ->. However, only characters, macros, and marks can contain the colon character. The idea is thus to grab until the first ;, and analyse what is left. However, macros can have...
any combination of \texttt{\long}, \texttt{\protected}, or \texttt{\outer} (not used in \LaTeX3) before the string \texttt{macro}:. We thus only select the part of the meaning between the first \texttt{ma} and the first following \texttt{.}. If this string is \texttt{cro}, then we have a macro. If the string is \texttt{rk}, then we have a mark. The string can also be \texttt{cro parameter character} for a colon with a weird category code (namely the usual category code of \texttt{#}). Otherwise, it is empty.

This relies on the fact that \texttt{\long}, \texttt{\protected}, \texttt{\outer} cannot contain \texttt{ma}, regardless of the escape character, even if the escape character is \texttt{m...}

Both \texttt{ma} and \texttt{:} must be of category code 12 (other), so are detokenized.

\begin{verbatim}
\prg_new_conditional:Npn \exp_not:N \token_if_macro:N ##1 { p , T , F , TF }
\prg_new_conditional:Npn \exp_not:N \__token_if_macro_p:w
\exp_not:N \token_to_meaning:N ##1 \tl_to_str:n { ma : }
\s__token_stop
\cs_new:Npn \exp_not:N \__token_if_macro_p:w ##1 \tl_to_str:n { ma } ##2 \c_colon_str ##3 \s__token_stop
\str_if_eq:nnTF { #2 } { cro } { \prg_return_true: } { \prg_return_false: }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\token_if_macro:NTF} and \texttt{\__token_if_macro_p:w}. This function is documented on page 189.)

\begin{verbatim}
\prg_new_conditional:Npn \exp_not:N \token_if_cs:N #1 { p , T , F , TF }
\if_catcode:w \exp_not:N #1 \scan_stop:
\prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi:
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\token_if_cs:NTF}. This function is documented on page 189.)

\begin{verbatim}
\prg_new_conditional:Npn \exp_not:N \token_if_expandable:N #1 { p , T , F , TF }
\exp_after:wN \if_meaning:w \exp_not:N #1
\prg_return_false:
\else:
\if_cs_exist:N #1 \prg_return_true:
\else:
\prg_return_false: \fi:
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\token_if_expandable:NTF}. This function is documented on page 189.)

Check if token has same catcode as a control sequence. This follows the same pattern as for \texttt{\token_if_letter:N} \texttt{etc}. We use \texttt{\scan_stop;} for this.

Check if token is expandable. We use the fact that \TeX temporarily converts \texttt{\exp_not:N \langle token \rangle} into \texttt{\scan_stop;} if \texttt{\langle token \rangle} is expandable. An \texttt{undefined} token is not considered as expandable. No problem nesting the conditionals, since the third \texttt{#1} is only skipped if it is non-expandable (hence not part of \TeX’s conditional apparatus).
These auxiliary functions are used below to define some conditionals which detect whether
the \meaning of their argument begins with a particular string. Each auxiliary takes an
argument delimited by a string, a second one delimited by \s__token_stop, and returns
the first one and its delimiter. This result is eventually compared to another string. Note
that the “font” auxiliary is delimited by a space followed by “font”. This avoids an
unnecessary check for the \font primitive below.

Each of these conditionals tests whether its argument’s \meaning starts with a given
string. This is essentially done by having an auxiliary grab an argument delimited by the
string and testing whether the argument was empty. Of course, a copy of this string must
first be added to the end of the \meaning to avoid a runaway argument in case it does
not contain the string. Two complications arise. First, the escape character is not fixed,
and cannot be included in the delimiter of the auxiliary function (this function cannot be
defined on the fly because tests must remain expandable): instead the first argument of
the auxiliary (plus the delimiter to avoid complications with trailing spaces) is compared
using \str_if_eq:eeTF to the result of applying \token_to_str:N to a control sequence.
Second, the \meaning of primitives such as \dimen or \dimendef starts in the same way
as registers such as \dimen123, so they must be tested for.

Characters used as delimiters must have catcode 12 and are obtained through \tl_to_str:n. This requires doing all definitions within x-expansion. The temporary function
\__token_tmp:w used to define each conditional receives three arguments: the name of
the conditional, the auxiliary’s delimiter (also used to name the auxiliary), and the string
to which one compares the auxiliary’s result. Note that the \meaning of a protected long
macro starts with \protected\long macro, with no space after \protected but a space
after \long, hence the mixture of \token_to_str:N and \tl_to_str:n.

For the first six conditionals, \cs_if_exist:cT turns out to be false (thanks to
the leading space for font), and the code boils down to a string comparison between
the result of the auxiliary on the \texttt{meaning} of the conditional’s argument \texttt{####1}, and \texttt{#3}. Both are evaluated at run-time, as this is important to get the correct escape character.

The other five conditionals have additional code that compares the argument \texttt{####1} to two \TeX{} primitives which would wrongly be recognized as registers otherwise. Despite using \TeX{}’s primitive conditional construction, this does not break when \texttt{####1} is itself a conditional, because branches of the conditionals are only skipped if \texttt{####1} is one of the two primitives that are tested for (which are not \TeX{} conditionals).

\begin{verbatim}
\group_begin:
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__token_tmp:w #1#2#3
{ \use:x
  { \prg_new_conditional:Npnn \exp_not:c { token_if_ #1 :N } ####1
    { p , T , F , TF }
    { \cs_if_exist:cT { tex_ #2 :D }
      { \exp_not:N \if_meaning:w ####1 \exp_not:c { tex_ #2 :D }
        \exp_not:N \prg_return_false:
        \exp_not:N \else:
        \exp_not:N \if_meaning:w ####1 \exp_not:c { tex_ #2 def:D }
        \exp_not:N \prg_return_false:
        \exp_not:N \else:
        \exp_not:N \str_if_eq:eeTF
          { \exp_not:N \exp_after:wN
            \exp_not:c { __token_delimit_by_ #2 :w }
            \exp_not:N \token_to_meaning:N ####1
          } { \exp_not:n {#3} }
        \exp_not:N \prg_return_true:
        \exp_not:N \prg_return_false:
      } \cs_if_exist:cT { tex_ #2 :D }
      \fi:
      \fi:
    } \cs_if_exist:cT { tex_ #2 :D }
  }

\exp_not:N \str_if_eq:eeTF
  { \exp_not:N \exp_after:wN
    \exp_not:c { __token_delimit_by_ #2 :w }
    \exp_not:N \token_to_meaning:N \texttt{####1}
  } { \exp_not:n {#3} }
  { \exp_not:N \prg_return_true:
    \exp_not:N \prg_return_false:
  }
  \cs_if_exist:cT { tex_ #2 :D }
  { \exp_not:N \fi:
    \exp_not:N \fi:
  }
  }
}
\__token_tmp:w { chardef } { char" } { \token_to_str:N \char" }
\__token_tmp:w { mathchardef } { char" } { \token_to_str:N \mathchar" }
\__token_tmp:w { long_macro } { macro } { \tl_to_str:n { \long } macro }
\__token_tmp:w { protected_macro } { macro }
\{ \tl_to_str:n { \protected } macro }
\__token_tmp:w { protected_long_macro } { macro }
\{ \tl_to_str:n { \protected_long_macro } \macro }
\{ \token_to_str:N \protected \tl_to_str:n { \long } macro }
\__token_tmp:w { font_selection } { - font } { select - font }
\__token_tmp:w { dim_register } { dimen } { \token_to_str:N \dimen }
\__token_tmp:w { int_register } { count } { \token_to_str:N \count }
\__token_tmp:w { muskip_register } { muskip } { \token_to_str:N \muskip }
\end{verbatim}
We filter out macros first, because they cause endless trouble later otherwise.

Primitives are almost distinguished by the fact that the result of \token_to_-meaning:N is formed from letters only. Every other token has either a space (e.g., the letter A), a digit (e.g., \count123) or a double quote (e.g., \char"A).

Ten exceptions: on the one hand, \text_undefined:D is not a primitive, but its meaning is undefined, only letters; on the other hand, \space, \italiccorr, \hyphen, \firstmark, \topmark, \botmark, \splitfirstmark, \splitbotmark, and \nullfont are primitives, but have non-letters in their meaning.

We start by removing the two first (non-space) characters from the meaning. This removes the escape character (which may be nonexistent depending on \endlinechar), and takes care of three of the exceptions: \space, \italiccorr and \hyphen, whose meaning is at most two characters. This leaves a string terminated by some :, and \s__token_stop.

The meaning of each one of the five \...mark primitives has the form \langle letters \rangle: \langle user material \rangle. In other words, the first non-letter is a colon. We remove everything after the first colon.

We are now left with a string, which we must analyze. For primitives, it contains only letters. For non-primitives, it contains either ", or a space, or a digit. Two exceptions remain: \text_undefined:D, which is not a primitive, and \nullfont, which is a primitive.

Spaces cannot be grabbed in an undelimited way, so we check them separately. If there is a space, we test for \nullfont. Otherwise, we go through characters one by one, and stop at the first character less than ‘A (this is not quite a test for “only letters”, but is close enough to work in this context). If this first character is : then we have a primitive, or \text_undefined:D, and if it is ", or a digit, then the token is not a primitive.

For Lua\TeX we use a different implementation which just looks at the command code for the token and compares it to a list of non-primitives. Again, \nullfont is a special case because it is the only primitive with the normally non-primitive set_font command code.

In Lua\TeX some of the command names are different, so we check for both versions. The first one is always the Lua\TeX version.
local mode_below_biggest_char = {}
local index_not_nil = {}
local mode_not_null = {}
local non_primitive = {
    [cmd'left_brace'] = true,
    [cmd'right_brace'] = true,
    [cmd'math_shift'] = true,
    [cmd'mac_param' or cmd'parameter'] = mode_below_biggest_char,
    [cmd'sup_mark' or cmd'superscript'] = true,
    [cmd'sub_mark' or cmd'subscript'] = true,
    [cmd'endv' or cmd'ignore'] = true,
    [cmd'spacer'] = true,
    [cmd'letter'] = true,
    [cmd'other_char'] = true,
    [cmd'tab_mark' or cmd'alignment_tab'] = mode_below_biggest_char,
    [cmd'char_given'] = true,
    [cmd'math_given' or 'math_char_given'] = true,
    [cmd'xmath_given' or 'math_char_xgiven'] = true,
    [cmd'set_font'] = mode_not_null,
    [cmd'undefined_cs'] = true,
    [cmd'call'] = true,
    [cmd'long_call' or cmd'protected_call'] = true,
    [cmd'outer_call' or cmd'tolerant_call'] = true,
    [cmd'long_outer_call' or cmd'tolerant_protected_call'] = true,
    [cmd'assign_glue' or cmd'register_glue'] = index_not_nil,
    [cmd'assign_mu_glue' or cmd'register_mu_glue'] = index_not-nil,
    [cmd'assign_toks' or cmd'register_toks'] = index_not_nil,
    [cmd'assign_int' or cmd'register_int'] = index_not_nil,
    [cmd'assign_attr' or cmd'register_attribute'] = true,
    [cmd'assign_dimen' or cmd'register_dimen'] = index_not_nil,
}

luacmd("__token_if_primitive_lua:N", function()
  local tok = get_next()
  local is_non_primitive = non_primitive[get_command(tok)]
  return put_next(
    is_non_primitive == true
    and false_tok
    or is_non_primitive == nil
    and true_tok
    or is_non_primitive == mode_not_null
    and (get_mode(tok) == 0 and true_tok or false_tok)
    or is_non_primitive == index_not_nil
    and (get_index(tok) and false_tok or true_tok)
    or is_non_primitive == mode_below_biggest_char
    and (get_mode(tok) > biggest_char and true_tok or false_tok))
end, "global")
\usebeamertemplate{titlepage}
\begin{titlepage}
\title{Title of the Presentation}
\subtitle{Subtitle of the Presentation}
\author{Author Name}
\institute{Institution Name}
\maketitle
\tableofcontents
\end{titlepage}
The aim here is to allow the case statement to be evaluated using a known number of
expansion steps (two), and without needing to use an explicit “end of recursion” marker.
That is achieved by using the test input as the final case, as this is always true. The
trick is then to tidy up the output such that the appropriate case code plus either the
ture or false branch code is inserted.

(End definition for \token_if_primitive:NTF and others. This function is documented on page 190.)
To tidy up the recursion, there are two outcomes. If there was a hit to one of the cases searched for, then \#1 is the code to insert, \#2 is the next case to check on and \#3 is all of the rest of the cases code. That means that \#4 is the true branch code, and \#5 tidies up the spare \texttt{\__token\_mark} and the false branch. On the other hand, if none of the cases matched then we arrive here using the “termination” case of comparing the search with itself. That means that \#1 is empty, \#2 is the first \texttt{\__token\_mark} and so \#4 is the false code (the true code is mopped up by \#3).

```latex
\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__token_case_end:nw #1#2#3 \__token_mark #4#5 \__token_stop
{ \exp_end: #1 #4 }
\end{verbatim}
```

(End definition for \texttt{\token\_case\_catcode:NnTF} and others. These functions are documented on page 191.)

### 60.6 Peeking ahead at the next token

Peeking ahead is implemented using a two part mechanism. The outer level provides a defined interface to the lower level material. This allows a large amount of code to be shared. There are four cases:

1. peek at the next token;
2. peek at the next non-space token;
3. peek at the next token and remove it;
4. peek at the next non-space token and remove it.

- \texttt{\l\_peek\_token} Storage tokens which are publicly documented: the token peeked.
- \texttt{\g\_peek\_token} Storage tokens which are publicly documented: the token peeked.

```
\cs_new_eq:NN \l\_peek\_token ?
\cs_new_eq:NN \g\_peek\_token ?
```

(End definition for \texttt{\l\_peek\_token} and \texttt{\g\_peek\_token}. These variables are documented on page 191.)

- \texttt{\l\_peek\_search\_token} The token to search for as an implicit token: cf. \texttt{\l\_\_peek\_search\_tl}.

```
\cs_new_eq:NN \l\_\_peek\_search\_token ?
```

(End definition for \texttt{\l\_\_peek\_search\_token}.)

- \texttt{\l\_\_peek\_search\_tl} The token to search for as an explicit token: cf. \texttt{\l\_\_peek\_search\_token}.

```
\tl_new:N \l\_\_peek\_search\_tl
```

(End definition for \texttt{\l\_\_peek\_search\_tl}.)

- \texttt{\_\_peek\_true\_w} Functions used by the branching and space-stripping code.
- \texttt{\_\_peek\_true\_aux\:w}
- \texttt{\_\_peek\_false\:w}
- \texttt{\_\_peek\_tmp\:w}

```
\cs_new:Npn \_\_peek\_true\_w { }
\cs_new:Npn \_\_peek\_true\_aux\:w { }
\cs_new:Npn \_\_peek\_false\:w { }
\cs_new:Npn \_\_peek\_tmp\:w { }
```

(End definition for \texttt{\_\_peek\_true\:w} and others.)
\s__peek_mark
\s__peek_stop

Internal scan marks.
\scan_new:N \s__peek_mark
\scan_new:N \s__peek_stop

(End definition for \s__peek_mark and \s__peek_stop.)

\_peek_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w

Functions to gobble up to a scan mark.
\cs_new:Npn \_peek_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w #1 \s__peek_stop { }

(End definition for \_peek_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w.)

\peek_after:Nw \peek_gafter:Nw

Simple wrappers for \futurelet: no arguments absorbed here.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \peek_after:Nw { \tex_futurelet:D \l_peek_token }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \peek_gafter:Nw { \tex_global:D \tex_futurelet:D \g_peek_token }

(End definition for \peek_after:Nw and \peek_gafter:Nw. These functions are documented on page 191.)

\_peek_true_remove:w

A function to remove the next token and then regain control.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_peek_true_remove:w
{ \tex_afterassignment:D \_peek_true_aux:w }
\cs_set_eq:NN \__peek_tmp:w { \exp_not:n {#1} }
\group_align_safe_begin:
\cs_set:Npn \_peek_true_aux:w { \peek_after:Nw \_peek_remove_spaces: }
\_peek_true_aux:w
\group_align_safe_end:
\exp_after:wN \__peek_false:w

(End definition for \_peek_true_remove:w.)

\peek_remove_spaces:n \_peek_remove_spaces:

Repeatedly use \_peek_true_remove:w to remove a space and call \_peek_true_-aux:w.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \peek_remove_spaces:n #1
{ \cs_set:Npx \__peek_false:w { \exp_not:n {#1} } }
\group_align_safe_begin:
\cs_set:Npn \_peek_true_aux:w { \peek_after:Nw \_peek_remove_spaces: }
\_peek_true_aux:w
\group_align_safe_end:
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_peek_remove_spaces:
{ \if_meaning:w \l_peek_token \c_space_token \else:
  \exp_after:wN \_peek_true_remove:w
  \else:
  \exp_after:wN \__peek_false:w
  \fi:
}

(End definition for \peek_remove_spaces:n and \_peek_remove_spaces:. This function is documented on page 192.)

874
Here we expand the input, removing spaces and `\scan_stop:` tokens until we reach a non-expandable token. At that stage we re-insert the payload. To deal with the problem of & tokens, we have to put the align-safe group in the correct place.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \peek_remove_filler:n #1
\{\cs_set:Npn \__peek_true_aux:w { \__peek_remove_filler:w }\cs_set:Npx \__peek_false:w {\exp_not:N \group_align_safe_end: \exp_not:n {#1} \group_align_safe_begin: \__peek_remove_filler:w }\cs_new_protected:Npn \__peek_remove_filler:w
{\if_catcode:w \exp_not:N \l_peek_token \c_space_token \__peek_true_remove:w \else:\if_meaning:w \l_peek_token \scan_stop: \\exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \__peek_true_remove:w \else:\exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \__peek_remove_filler_expand:w \fi:\fi:\}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__peek_remove_filler:w
{\exp_after:wN \if_meaning:w \exp_not:N \l_peek_token \l_peek_token \exp_after:wN \__peek_false:w \else:\exp_after:wN \__peek_remove_filler:w \fi:\}
\end{verbatim}

Here we can nest conditionals as `\l_peek_token` is only skipped over in the nested one if it’s a space: no problems with conditionals or outer tokens.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__peek_remove_filler: \cs_new_protected:Npn \__peek_remove_filler_expand:w
{ \exp_after:wN \if_meaning:w \exp_not:N \l_peek_token \l_peek_token \exp_after:wN \__peek_true_remove:w \else:\exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \__peek_remove_filler_expand:w \fi:\}
\end{verbatim}

To deal with undefined control sequences in the same way \TeX\ does, we need to check for expansion manually.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__peek_remove_filler_expand:w
{ \exp_after:wN \if_meaning:w \exp_not:N \l_peek_token \l_peek_token \exp_after:wN \__peek_false:w \else:\exp_after:wN \__peek_remove_filler:w \fi:\}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for `\peek_remove_filler:n` and others. This function is documented on page \pageref{peek_remove_filler:n}.)

The generic functions store the test token in both implicit and explicit modes, and the `true` and `false` code as token lists, more or less. The two branches have to be absorbed here as the input stream needs to be cleared for the peek function itself. Here, `#1` is `\__peek_true_remove:w` when removing the token and `\__peek_true_aux:w` otherwise.
For token removal there needs to be a call to the auxiliary function which does the work.

The catcode and charcode tests are very similar, and in order to use the same auxiliaries
we do something a little bit odd, firing \if_catcode:w and \if_charcode:w before
finding the operands for those tests, which are only given in the auxii:N and auxiii:
auxiliaries. For our purposes, three kinds of tokens may follow the peeking function:
• control sequences which are not equal to a non-active character token (e.g., macro, primitive);
• active characters which are not equal to a non-active character token (e.g., macro, primitive);
• explicit non-active character tokens, or control sequences or active characters set equal to a non-active character token.

The first two cases are not distinguishable simply using \TeX{}'s \texttt{\futurelet}, because we can only access the \texttt{\meaning} of tokens in that way. In those cases, detected thanks to a comparison with \texttt{\scan_stop}:, we grab the following token, and compare it explicitly with the explicit search token stored in \texttt{\_\_\_peek_search_tl}. The \texttt{\exp_not:N} prevents outer macros (coming from non-\TeX{} code) from blowing up. In the third case, \texttt{\_\_\_peek_token} is good enough for the test, and we compare it again with the explicit search token. Just like the peek token, the search token may be of any of the three types above, hence the need to use the explicit token that was given to the peek function.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_\_peek_execute_branches_catcode: 
\{ \if_catcode:w \_\_\_peek_execute_branches_catcode_aux: \}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_\_peek_execute_branches_charcode: 
\{ \if_charcode:w \_\_\_peek_execute_branches_catcode_aux: \}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_\_peek_execute_branches_catcode_aux: 
{ 
\if_catcode:w \exp_not:N \l_peek_token \scan_stop:
\exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN
\exp_after:wN \_\_\_peek_execute_branches_catcode_auxii:N
\exp_after:wN \exp_not:N
\else:
\exp_after:wN \_\_\_peek_execute_branches_catcode_auxiiii:
\fi:
\}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_\_peek_execute_branches_catcode_auxiiii:N \#1 
{ 
\exp_not:N \#1
\exp_after:wN \_\_\_peek_search_tl
\exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \_\_\_peek_true:w
\else:
\exp_after:wN \_\_\_peek_false:w
\fi:
\}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_\_peek_execute_branches_catcode_auxiiii:
{ 
\exp_not:N \_\_\_peek_token
\exp_after:wN \exp_not:N \_\_\_peek_search_tl
\exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \_\_\_peek_true:w
\else:
\exp_after:wN \_\_\_peek_false:w
\fi:
\}
\end{verbatim}

The public functions themselves cannot be defined using \texttt{\prg_new_conditional:Nnn}. Instead, the \texttt{T}, \texttt{F}, \texttt{TF} variants are defined in terms of corresponding variants of
\__peek_token_remove_Generic:NNTF, with first argument one of \__peek_execute_branches_catcode:, \__peek_execute_branches_charcode:, or \__peek_execute_branches_meaning:.

\tl_map_inline:nn { { catcode } { charcode } { meaning } }
\tl_map_inline:nn { { } { _remove } }
\tl_map_inline:nn { { TF } { T } { F } }

\cs_new_protected:cpnx { peek_#1##1:N####1 }
\exp_not:c { __peek_token##1##1:NN####1 }
\exp_not:c { __peek_execute_branches_##1: }

(End definition for \peek_catcode:NTF and others. These functions are documented on page 192.)

\peek_N_type:TF
\__peek_N_type:w
\__peek_N_type_aux:nnw

All tokens are N-type tokens, except in four cases: begin-group tokens, end-group tokens, space tokens with character code 32, and outer tokens. Since \l_peek_token might be outer, we cannot use the convenient \bool_if:nTF function, and must resort to the old trick of using \ifodd to expand a set of tests. The false branch of this test is taken if the token is one of the first three kinds of non-N-type tokens (explicit or implicit), thus we call \__peek_false:w. In the true branch, we must detect outer tokens, without impacting performance too much for non-outer tokens. The first filter is to search for outer in the \meaning of \l_peek_token. If that is absent, \__peek_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w cleans up, and we call \__peek_true:w. Otherwise, the token can be a non-outer macro or a primitive mark whose parameter or replacement text contains outer, it can be the primitive \outer, or it can be an outer token. Macros and marks would have ma in the part before the first occurrence of outer; the meaning of \outer has nothing after outer, contrarily to outer macros; and that covers all cases, calling \__peek_true:w or \__peek_false:w as appropriate. Here, there is no \langle search token \rangle, so we feed a dummy \scan_stop: to the \__peek_token_generic:NTF function.

\group_begin:
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__peek_tmp:w #1 \s__peek_stop
{ \cs_new_protected:Npn \__peek_execute_branches_N_type:
{ \if_int_odd:w \if_catcode:w \exp_not:N \l_peek_token { \c_zero_int \fi:
\if_catcode:w \exp_not:N \l_peek_token { \c_zero_int \fi:
\if_meaning:w \l_peek_token \c_space_token { \c_zero_int \fi:
\c_one_int
\exp_after:wN \__peek_N_type:w
\token_to_meaning:N \l_peek_token
\s__peek_mark \__peek_N_type_aux:nnw
\c_one_int
\exp_after:wN \__peek_N_type:w
\s__peek_mark \__peek_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w
\s__peek_stop
\exp_after:wN \__peek_true:w
\else:
\exp_after:wN \__peek_false:w

878
End definition for \peek_N_type:TF and others. This function is documented on page 193.

⟨/tex⟩

⟨/package⟩
Chapter 61

\l3prop implementation

The following test files are used for this code: m3prop001, m3prop002, m3prop003, m3prop004, m3show001.

\l3prop implementation

A property list is a macro whose top-level expansion is of the form

\s__prop \__prop_pair:wn ⟨key⟩ \s__prop {⟨value⟩}
\__prop_pair:wn ⟨key⟩ \s__prop {⟨value⟩}
...
\__prop_pair:wn ⟨key⟩ \s__prop {⟨value⟩}

where \s__prop is a scan mark (equal to \scan_stop:), and \__prop_pair:wn can be used to map through the property list.

\s__prop The internal token used at the beginning of property lists. This is also used after each ⟨key⟩ (see \__prop_pair:wn).

(End definition for \s__prop.)

\__prop_pair:wn \__prop_pair:wn ⟨key⟩ \s__prop {⟨item⟩}
The internal token used to begin each key–value pair in the property list. If expanded outside of a mapping or manipulation function, an error is raised. The definition should always be set globally.

(End definition for \__prop_pair:wn.)

\l__prop_internal_tl Token list used to store new key–value pairs to be inserted by functions of the \prop_put:Nnn family.

(End definition for \l__prop_internal_tl.)
\__prop_split:NnTF \__prop_split:NnTF \{property list\} \{(key)\} \{(true code)\} \{(false code)\}
Splits the \{property list\} at the \{key\}, giving three token lists: the \{extract\} of \{property list\} before the \{key\}, the \{value\} associated with the \{key\} and the \{extract\} of the \{property list\} after the \{value\}. Both \{extracts\} retain the internal structure of a property list, and the concatenation of the two \{extracts\} is a property list. If the \{key\} is present in the \{property list\} then the \{true code\} is left in the input stream, with \#1, \#2, and \#3 replaced by the first \{extract\}, the \{value\}, and the second extract. If the \{key\} is not present in the \{property list\} then the \{false code\} is left in the input stream, with no trailing material. Both \{true code\} and \{false code\} are used in the replacement text of a macro defined internally, hence macro parameter characters should be doubled, except \#1, \#2, and \#3 which stand in the \{true code\} for the three extracts from the property list. The \{key\} comparison takes place as described for \texttt{str_if_eq:nn}.

\s__prop
A private scan mark is used as a marker after each key, and at the very beginning of the property list.
\begin{verbatim}
19525 \scan_new:N \s__prop
(End definition for \s__prop.)
\end{verbatim}

\__prop_pair:wn
The delimiter is always defined, but when misused simply triggers an error and removes its argument.
\begin{verbatim}
19526 \cs_new:Npn \__prop_pair:wn \#1 \s__prop \#2
19527 \{ \msg-expandable-error:nn { prop } { misused } \}
(End definition for \__prop_pair:wn.)
\end{verbatim}

\l__prop_internal_tl
Token list used to store the new key–value pair inserted by \prop_put:Nnn and friends.
\begin{verbatim}
19528 \tl_new:N \l__prop_internal_tl
(End definition for \l__prop_internal_tl.)
\end{verbatim}

\c_empty_prop
An empty prop.
\begin{verbatim}
19529 \tl_const:Nn \c_empty_prop { \s__prop }
(End definition for \c_empty_prop. This variable is documented on page 205.)
\end{verbatim}

## 61.1 Internal auxiliaries

\s__prop
Internal scan marks.
\begin{verbatim}
1932 \scan_new:N \s__prop
(End definition for \s__prop.)
\end{verbatim}

\__prop_pair:wn
Internal recursion quarks.
\begin{verbatim}
19419 \quark_new:N \q__prop_recursion_tail
19419 \quark_new:N \q__prop_recursion_stop
(End definition for \q__prop_recursion_tail and \q__prop_recursion_stop.)
\end{verbatim}

\__kernel_quark_new_test:N \__prop_if_recursion_tail_stop:n
Functions to query recursion quarks.
\begin{verbatim}
19534 \__kernel_quark_new_test:N \__prop_if_recursion_tail_stop:n
19535 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__prop_if_recursion_tail_stop:n { o }
(End definition for \__prop_if_recursion_tail_stop:n and \__prop_if_recursion_tail_stop:o.)
\end{verbatim}

881
61.2 Allocation and initialisation

Property lists are initialized with the value \c_empty_prop.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npm \prop_new:N #1
\__kernel_chk_if_free_cs:N #1
\cs_gset_eq:NN #1 \c_empty_prop
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \prop_new:N. This function is documented on page 198.)

The same idea for clearing.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \prop_clear:N #1
{ \prop_set_eq:NN #1 \c_empty_prop }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_clear:N { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \prop_gclear:N #1
{ \prop_gset_eq:NN #1 \c_empty_prop }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_gclear:N { c }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \prop_clear:N and \prop_gclear:N. These functions are documented on page 198.)

Once again a simple variation of the token list functions.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npm \prop_clear_new:N #1
\__kernel_chk_if_free_cs:N #1 \prop_clear:N #1
\cs_gset_eq:NN \l__prop_internal_prop \c_empty_prop
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \l_tmpa_prop and others. These variables are documented on page 204.)

These are simply copies from the token list functions.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npm \prop_set_eq:NN \tl_set_eq:NN
\cs_new_protected:Npm \prop_set_eq:Nc \tl_set_eq:Nc
\cs_new_protected:Npm \prop_set_eq:cc \tl_set_eq:cc
\cs_new_protected:Npm \prop_gset_eq:NN \tl_gset_eq:NN
\cs_new_protected:Npm \prop_gset_eq:Nc \tl_gset_eq:Nc
\cs_new_protected:Npm \prop_gset_eq:cc \tl_gset_eq:cc
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \prop_set_eq:NN and \prop_gset_eq:NN. These functions are documented on page 199.)

We can now initialize the scratch variables.

\begin{verbatim}
\l_tmpa_prop
\l_tmpb_prop
\g_tmpa_prop
\g_tmpb_prop
\l__prop_internal_prop
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \l_tmpa_prop and others. These variables are documented on page 204.)

Property list used by \prop_concat:NNN, \prop_set_from_keyval:Nn and others.

\begin{verbatim}
\l__prop_internal_prop
\end{verbatim}
\prop_concat:NNN
\prop_concat:ccc
\prop_gconcat:NNN
\prop_gconcat:ccc
\__prop_concat:NNNN

Combine two property lists. We cannot use a simple \tl_concat:NNN because there may be some duplicate keys between the two property lists.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \prop_concat:NNN{ \__prop_concat:NNNN \prop_set_eq:NN }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_concat:NNN { ccc }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \prop_gconcat:NNN{ \__prop_concat:NNNN \prop_gset_eq:NN }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_gconcat:NNN { ccc }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__prop_concat:NNNN #1#2#3#4 { \prop_set_eq:NN \l__prop_internal_prop #3 \prop_map_inline:Nn #4 { \prop_put:Nnn \l__prop_internal_prop {##1} {##2} } #1 #2 \l__prop_internal_prop }

(End definition for \prop_concat:NNN, \prop_gconcat:NNN, and \__prop_concat:NNNN. These functions are documented on page 200.)

\prop_set_from_keyval:Nn
\prop_set_from_keyval:cn
\prop_gset_from_keyval:Nn
\prop_gset_from_keyval:cn
\prop_const_from_keyval:Nn
\prop_const_from_keyval:cn
\prop_put_from_keyval:Nn
\prop_put_from_keyval:cn
\prop_gput_from_keyval:Nn
\prop_gput_from_keyval:cn
\__prop_missing_eq:n

To avoid tracking throughout the loop the variable name and whether the assignment is local/global, do everything in a scratch variable and empty it afterwards to avoid wasting memory. Loop through items separated by commas, with \prg_do_nothing: to avoid losing braces. After checking for termination, split the item at the first and then at the second = (which ought to be the first of the trailing = that we added). For both splits trim spaces and call a function (first \__prop_from_keyval_key:w then \__prop_from_keyval_value:w), followed by the trimmed material, \s__prop_mark, the subsequent part of the item, and the trailing =’s and \s__prop_stop. After finding the ⟨key⟩ just store it after \s__prop_stop. After finding the ⟨value⟩ ignore completely empty items (both trailing = were used as delimiters and all parts are empty); if the remaining part #2 consists exactly of the second trailing = (namely there was exactly one = in the item) then output one key–value pair for the property list; otherwise complain about a missing or extra =.

\cs_new_protected:Npm \prop_set_from_keyval:Nn \l__prop_internal_prop #1
\prop_clear:N \l__prop_internal_prop
\prop_put_from_keyval:Nn \l__prop_internal_prop
\__prop_missing_eq:n

(End definition for \prop_concat:NNN, \prop_gconcat:NNN, and \__prop_concat:NNNN. These functions are documented on page 200.)

883
61.3 Accessing data in property lists

This function is used by most of the module, and hence must be fast. It receives a ⟨property list⟩, a ⟨key⟩, a ⟨true code⟩ and a ⟨false code⟩. The aim is to split the ⟨property list⟩ at the given ⟨key⟩ into the ⟨extract1⟩ before the key–value pair, the ⟨value⟩ associated with the ⟨key⟩ and the ⟨extract2⟩ after the key–value pair. This is done using a delimited function, whose definition is as follows, where the ⟨key⟩ is turned into a string.

```
\cs_set:Npn \__prop_split_aux:w #1 #2 #3 #4 #5 \s__prop_stop
{ #4 {\langle true code\rangle} {\langle false code\rangle} }
```

If the ⟨key⟩ is present in the property list, \__prop_split_aux:w’s #1 is the part before the ⟨key⟩, #2 is the ⟨value⟩, #3 is the part after the ⟨key⟩, #4 is \use_i:nn, and #5 is additional tokens that we do not care about. The ⟨true code⟩ is left in the input stream, and can use the parameters #1, #2, #3 for the three parts of the property list as desired. Namely, the original property list is in this case #1 \__prop_pair:wn ⟨key⟩ \s__prop #2. #3 \s__prop_mark #4 #5 \s__prop_stop

If the ⟨key⟩ is not there, then the ⟨function⟩ is \use_ii:nn, which keeps the ⟨false code⟩.

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\__prop_split:NnTF #1#2 \_\__prop_split_aux:NnTF #1 \_\__prop_split:NNn \c_true_bool
\_\__prop_keyval_parse:NNn \c_false_bool
\prop_put:Nnn
}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_put_from_keyval:Nn { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \prop_gput_from_keyval:Nn
{ \bool_if:NTF \l__kernel_keyval_allow_blank_keys_bool
{ \__prop_keyval_parse:NNNn \c_true_bool }
{ \__prop_keyval_parse:NNNn \c_false_bool }
\prop_gput:Nnn }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_gput_from_keyval:Nn { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__prop_missing_eq:n
{ \msg_error:nnn { prop } { prop-keyval } }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__prop_keyval_parse:NNNn #1#2#3#4
{ \bool_set_eq:NN \l__kernel_keyval_allow_blank_keys_bool \c_true_bool
\keyval_parse:nnn \__prop_missing_eq:n { #2 #3 } {#4}
\bool_set_eq:NN \l__kernel_keyval_allow_blank_keys_bool #1 }

(End definition for \prop_set_from_keyval:Nn and others. These functions are documented on page 199.)
Deleting from a property starts by splitting the list. If the key is present in the property list, the returned value is ignored. If the key is missing, nothing happens.

```latex
\cs_new_protected:Npn \prop_remove:Nn #1#2
\{ \__prop_split:NnTF #1 {#2} \{ \tl_set:Nn #1 { ##1 ##3 } \} \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \prop_gremove:Nn #1#2
\{ \__prop_split:NnTF #1 {#2} \{ \tl_gset:Nn #1 { ##1 ##3 } \} \}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_remove:Nn { NV , c , cV }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_gremove:Nn { NV , c , cV }
```

(End definition for \__prop_split:NnTF, \__prop_split_aux:NnTF, and \__prop_split_aux:w.)

Getting an item from a list is very easy: after splitting, if the key is in the property list, just set the token list variable to the return value, otherwise to \texttt{\q_no_value}.

```latex
\cs_new_protected:Npn \prop_get:NnN #1#2#3
\{ \__prop_split:NnTF #1 {#2} \{ \tl_set:Nn #3 {##2} \} \}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_get:NnN { NV , c , cV , cv , co }
```

(End definition for \prop_remove:Nn and \prop_gremove:Nn. These functions are documented on page 201.)

Popping a value also starts by doing the split. If the key is present, save the value in the token list and update the property list as when deleting. If the key is missing, save \texttt{\q_no_value} in the token list.

```latex
\cs_new_protected:Npn \prop_pop:NnN #1#2#3
\{ \__prop_split:NnTF #1 {#2} \{ \tl_set:Nn #1 { ##1 #2 } \}
\}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_pop:NnN { NV , c , cV , cv , co }
```

(End definition for \prop_get:NnN. This function is documented on page 200.)
Getting the value corresponding to a key in a property list in an expandable fashion simply uses \prop_map_tokens:Nn to go through the property list. The auxiliary \_\prop_item:nnn receives the search string #1, the key #2 and the value #3 and returns as appropriate.

\cs_new:Npn \prop_item:Nn #1#2
{ \exp_args:NNo \prop_map_tokens:Nn #1
  { \exp_after:wN \__prop_item:nnn \exp_after:wN { \tl_to_str:n {#2} } } }

\cs_new:Npn \__prop_item:nnn #1#2#3
{ \str_if_eq:eeT {#1} {#2}
  { \prop_map_break:n { \exp_not:n {#3} } } }

\cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_item:Nn { c }

(End definition for \prop_item:Nn and \_\prop_item:nnn. This function is documented on page 201.)

Counting the key–value pairs in a property list is done using the same approach as for other count functions: turn each entry into a +1 then use integer evaluation to actually do the mathematics.

\cs_new:Npn \prop_count:N #1
{ \int_eval:n
  { \prop_map_function:NN #1 \__prop_count:nn } }

\cs_new:Npn \__prop_count:nn #1#2
{ + 1 }

\cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_count:N { c }

(End definition for \prop_count:N and \_\prop_count:nn. This function is documented on page 201.)

Each property name and value pair will be returned in the form \{⟨name⟩⟩=⟨⟨value⟩⟩\}. As one of the main use cases for this macro is to pass the ⟨property list⟩ on to a key–value parser, we have to make sure that the behaviour is as good as possible. Using a
space before the opening brace we get the correct brace stripping behaviour for most of
the key–value parsers available in \LaTeX. If \texttt{\textbackslash tex\_expanded:D} is available this function
makes use of it, so there are two different implementations here. They both start with
\texttt{\_\_\_kernel\_exp\_not:w} to start the expansion context to expand in two steps. If the
\texttt{(property list)} is empty they just leave an empty set of braces in the input stream for
\texttt{\_\_\_kernel\_exp\_not:w}.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_if_exist:NTF \tex_expanded:D
{\__kernel_exp_not:w}
\end{verbatim}

The variant using \texttt{\textbackslash tex\_expanded:D} can just iterate over the \texttt{(property list)} and remove
the leading comma afterwards. Only the value has to be protected in \texttt{\_\_\_kernel\_-
exp\_not:w} as the property name is always a string. After the loop the leading comma
is removed by \texttt{\use\_none:n} and afterwards \texttt{\_\_\_kernel\_exp\_not:w} eventually finds the
opening brace of its argument.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \prop_to_keyval:N #1
{\__kernel_exp_not:w
\prop_if_empty:NTF #1
{ {} }
{\
\exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN
\(tex_expanded:D
{\__kernel_exp_not:w \{ \use\_none:n \}
\prop_map_function:NN #1 \_\_\_prop_to_keyval:nn
}
\_\_\_kernel_exp_not:w
{\use\_none:n
}
}\_\_\_prop_to_keyval:nn #1#2
{, -. {#1} =- { \_\_\_kernel\_exp\_not:w {#2} } }
}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_\_prop_to_keyval:nnw #1#2 #3 \_\_\_prop_to_keyval_exp_after:wN #4
\end{verbatim}

The other variant will iterate over the \texttt{(property list)} and has to output the result in a
group after the marker \texttt{\_\_\_prop_to_keyval\_exp\_after:wN}. As a result this is considerably
slower than the \texttt{\textbackslash tex\_expanded:D} using variant as it has to read the entire contents
of the \texttt{(property list)} for each item. Since the marker is just \texttt{\exp\_after:wN} with another
name, after the loop the leading comma is gobbled by \texttt{\use\_none:n}, leaving the result
as the argument to \texttt{\_\_\_kernel\_exp\_not:w}.

\begin{verbatim}
{\cs_new:Npn \prop_to_keyval:N #1
{\__kernel_exp_not:w
\prop_if_empty:NTF #1
{ {} }
{\
\prop_map_function:NN #1 \_\_\_prop_to_keyval:nn
\_\_\_prop_to_keyval\_exp\_after:wN \{ \use\_none:n 
\}
}\_\_\_prop_to_keyval\_exp\_after:wN \_\_\_prop_to_keyval:nnw #1#2#3 \_\_\_prop_to_keyval\_exp\_after:wN #4
\end{verbatim}
Popping an item from a property list, keeping track of whether the key was present or not, is implemented as a conditional. If the key was missing, neither the property list, nor the token list are altered. Otherwise, \prg_return_true: is used after the assignments.

\begin{verbatim}
\__prop_put:NNnn #1#2#3#4
{ \tl_set:Nn \l__prop_internal_tl { \exp_not:N \__prop_pair:wn \tl_to_str:n {#3} \s__prop { \exp_not:n {#4} } } \__prop_split:NnTF #2 {#3} { \exp_not:n {##1} \l__prop_internal_tl \exp_not:n {##3} } \exp_not:o {#2} \l__prop_internal_tl }\end{verbatim}

Since the branches of \__prop_split:NnTF are used as the replacement text of an internal macro, and since the ⟨key⟩ and new ⟨value⟩ may contain arbitrary tokens, it is not safe to include them in the argument of \__prop_split:NnTF. We thus start by storing in \l__prop_internal_tl tokens which (after \x{expansion}) encode the key–value pair. This variable can safely be used in \__prop_split:NnTF. If the ⟨key⟩ was absent, append the new key–value to the list. Otherwise concatenate the extracts ##1 and ##3 with the new key–value pair \l__prop_internal_tl. The updated entry is placed at the same spot as the original ⟨key⟩ in the property list, preserving the order of entries.
Adding conditionally also splits. If the key is already present, the three brace groups
given by \_\_prop_split:NnTF are removed. If the key is new, then the value is added,
being careful to convert the key to a string using \tl_to_str:n.

(End definition for \prop_put:Nnn and others. These functions are documented on page 199.)

61.4 Property list conditionals

Copies of the cs functions defined in l3basics.

(End definition for \prop_if_exist:NTF. This function is documented on page 201.)

Same test as for token lists.

These functions are documented on page 199.)
Testing expandably if a key is in a property list requires to go through the key–value pairs one by one. This is rather slow, and a faster test would be

\prg_new_protected_conditional:Npnn \prop_if_in:Nn #1 #2
{ \@@_split:NnTF #1 {#2}
{ \prg_return_true: }
{ \prg_return_false: }
}

but \_\_prop_split:NnTF is non-expandable. Instead, we use \prop_map_tokens:Nn to compare the search key to each key in turn using \str_if_eq:ee, which is expandable.

\prg_new_protected_conditional:Npnn \prop_if_in:Nn #1 #2 { p , T , F , TF }
{ \exp_args:NNo \prop_map_tokens:Nn #1
{ \exp_after:wN \__prop_if_in:nnn \exp_after:wN { \tl_to_str:n {#2} } }
\prg_return_false:
}
\prg_generate_conditional_variant:Nnn \prop_if_in:Nn
{ NV , No , c , cV , co } { p , T , F , TF }

(End definition for \prop_if_in:NnTF and \_\_prop_if_in:nnn. This function is documented on page 202.)

61.5 Recovering values from property lists with branching

Getting the value corresponding to a key, keeping track of whether the key was present or not, is implemented as a conditional (with side effects). If the key was absent, the token list is not altered.

\prg_new_protected_conditional:Npnn \prop_get:NnN #1 #2 { T , F , TF }
{ \_\_prop_split:NnTF #1 {#2}
{ \tl_set:Nn #3 {##2}
\prg_return_true:
}
{ \prg_return_false: }
}
\prg_generate_conditional_variant:Nnn \prop_get:NnN
{ NV , Nv , No , c , cV , co } { T , F , TF }

(End definition for \prop_get:NnNTF. This function is documented on page 202.)
61.6 Mapping over property lists

The even-numbered arguments of \texttt{\_\_prop_map_function:Nw} are keys, hence have string catcodes, except at the end where they are \texttt{\_\_prop_map_break:}. The \texttt{\_\_prop_map_break:} construction and we jump out of the loop. No need for any quark test.

```
\cs_new:Npn \__prop_map_function:Nw #1
\__prop_pair:wn #2 \s__prop #3
\__prop_pair:wn #4 \s__prop #5
\__prop_pair:wn #6 \s__prop #7
\__prop_pair:wn #8 \s__prop #9
\prg_break_point:Nn \prop_map_break: { }
```

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \prop_map_inline:Nn #1#2
{ \cs_gset_eq:cN \__prop_map_int :wn \__prop_pair:wn \int_gincr:N \g__kernel_prg_map_int {#2}
\int_gdecr:N \g__kernel_prg_map_int \cs_gset_eq:Nc \__prop_pair:wn \__prop_map_int :wn } \__prop_pair:wn
```

Mapping in line requires a nesting level counter. Store the current definition of \texttt{\_\_prop_pair:vn}, and define it anew. At the end of the loop, revert to the earlier definition. Note that besides pairs of the form \texttt{\_\_prop_pair:vn \langle key \rangle \s__prop \langle value \rangle}, there are a leading and a trailing tokens, but both are equal to \texttt{\scan_stop:}, hence have no effect in such inline mapping. Such \texttt{\scan_stop:} could have affected ligatures if they appeared during the mapping.

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \prop_map_inline:Nn #1#2
{ \cs_gset_eq:cN \__prop_pair:vn \int_use:N \g__kernel_prg_map_int :wn } \__prop_pair:vn
\int_gincr:N \g__kernel_prg_map_int \cs_gset_protected:Npn \__prop_pair:vn \#1 \s__prop \#2 {#2} #1
\prg_break_point:Nn \prop_map_break: { }
```

```
\cs_gset_eq:Nc \__prop_pair:vn \int_use:N \g__kernel_prg_map_int
```

(End definition for \texttt{\__prop_map_function:N} and \texttt{\__prop_map_function:Nw}. This function is documented on page 205.)

891
The mapping is very similar to \prop_map_function:Nn. The \use_i:nn removes the leading \s__prop. The odd construction \use:n \{#1\} allows #1 to contain any token without interfering with \prop_map_break:. The loop stops when the ⟨key⟩ between \__prop_pair:wn and \s__prop is \fi: \prop_map_break: instead of being a string.

\cs_new:Npn \prop_map_tokens:Nn #1#2
\exp_last_unbraced:Nno \use_i:nn { \__prop_map_tokens:nw {#2} } #1
\__prop_pair:wn \fi: \prop_map_break: \s__prop { } \__prop_pair:wn \fi: \prop_map_break: \s__prop { } \__prop_pair:wn \fi: \prop_map_break: \s__prop { } \__prop_pair:wn \fi: \prop_map_break: \s__prop { }
\prg_break_point:Nn \prop_map_break: { }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_map_tokens:Nn { c }

The break statements are based on the general \prg_map_break:Nn.

\cs_new:Npn \prop_map_break: { \prg_map_break:Nn \prop_map_break: { } }
\cs_new:Npn \prop_map_break:n { \prg_map_break:Nn \prop_map_break: }

(End definition for \prop_map_tokens:Nn and \__prop_map_tokens:nw. This function is documented on page 203.)

61.7 Viewing property lists

Apply the general \__kernel_chk_tl_type:NnnT. Contrarily to sequences and comma lists, we use \msg_show_item:nn to format both the key and the value for each pair.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \prop_show:N { \__prop_show:NN \msg_show:nnxxxx }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \prop_log:N { \__prop_show:NN \msg_log:nnxxxx }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \prop_show:N { \__prop_show:NN \msg_show:nnxxxx }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \prop_log:N { \__prop_show:NN \msg_log:nnxxxx }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_map_tokens:Nn { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_map_tokens:cn { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_map_tokens:nw { c }

(End definition for \prop_map_tokens:Nn and \__prop_map_tokens:nw. This function is documented on page 203.)
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_log:N { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npm \__prop_show:NN #1#2
{
\__kernel_chk_tl_type:NnnT #2 { prop }
{
\s__prop
\exp_after:wN \use_i:nn \exp_after:wN \__prop_show_validate:w #2
\__prop_pair:wn \q_recursion_tail \s__prop { } \q_recursion_stop
}
{
#1 { prop } { show }
{ \token_to_str:N #2 }
{ \prop_map_function:NN #2 \msg_show_item:nn }
{ } { }
}
}
\cs_new:Npn \__prop_show_validate:w #1 \__prop_pair:wn #2 \s__prop #3
{
\quark_if_recursion_tail_stop:n {#2}
\exp_not:N \__prop_pair:wn \tl_to_str:n {#2} \s__prop \exp_not:n { {#3} }
\__prop_show_validate:w
}

(End definition for \prop_show:N and others. These functions are documented on page 204.)

//package
Chapter 62

l3skip implementation

62.1 Length primitives renamed

Primitives renamed.

\texttt{\if_dim:w \__dim_eval:w \__dim_eval_end:}

Primitives renamed. \texttt{Primitives renamed.}

\texttt{\cs_new_eq:NN \if_dim:w \tex_ifdim:D}

\texttt{\cs_new_eq:NN \__dim_eval:w \tex_dimexpr:D}

\texttt{\cs_new_eq:NN \__dim_eval_end: \tex_relax:D}

(End definition for \texttt{\if_dim:w, \__dim_eval:w, and \__dim_eval_end:}. This function is documented on page 220.)

62.2 Internal auxiliaries

Internal scan marks.

\texttt{\scan_new:N \s__dim_mark}

\texttt{\scan_new:N \s__dim_stop}

(End definition for \texttt{\s__dim_mark} and \texttt{\s__dim_stop}.)

Functions to gobble up to a scan mark.

\texttt{\cs_new:Npn \__dim_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w #1 \s__dim_stop { }}

(End definition for \texttt{\__dim_use_none_delimit_by_s_stop:w}.)

62.3 Creating and initialising dim variables

Allocating \texttt{\dim} registers ...

\texttt{\cs_new_protected:Npn \dim_new:N \dim_new:c}

\texttt{\cs_kernel_chk_if_free_cs:N \dim_new:N \dim_new:c}

\texttt{\cs:w newdimen \cs_end: \dim_new:N \dim_new:c}

\texttt{\cs_generate_variant:Nn \dim_new:N \dim_new:c}

894
Contrarily to integer constants, we cannot avoid using a register, even for constants. We cannot use \texttt{dim_gset:Nn} because debugging code would complain that the constant is not a global variable. Since \texttt{dim_const:Nn} does not need to be fast, use \texttt{dim_eval:n} to avoid needing a debugging patch that wraps the expression in checking code.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \dim_const:Nn #1#2
  \dim_new:N #1
  \tex_global:D #1 = \dim_eval:n {#2} \scan_stop:
\end{verbatim}

Reset the register to zero. Using \texttt{c_zero_skip} deals with the case where the variable passed is incorrectly a skip (for example a \LaTeX\ macro). Besides, these functions are then simply copied for \texttt{skip_zero:N} and related functions.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \dim_zero:N #1 { #1 = \c_zero_skip }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \dim_gzero:N #1 { \tex_global:D #1 = \c_zero_skip }
\end{verbatim}

Create a register if needed, otherwise clear it.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \dim_zero_new:N #1
  { \dim_if_exist:NTF #1 { \dim_zero:N #1 } { \dim_new:N #1 } }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \dim_gzero_new:N #1
  { \dim_if_exist:NTF #1 { \dim_gzero:N #1 } { \dim_new:N #1 } }
\end{verbatim}

Copies of the \texttt{cs} functions defined in \texttt{l3basics}.

\begin{verbatim}
\prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \dim_if_exist:N \cs_if_exist:N { TF , T , F , p }
\prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \dim_if_exist:c \cs_if_exist:c { TF , T , F , p }
\end{verbatim}

Setting \texttt{dim} variables

Setting dimensions is easy enough but when debugging we want both to check that the variable is correctly local/global and to wrap the expression in some code. The \texttt{\scan_stop} deals with the case where the variable passed is a skip (for example a \LaTeX\ length).

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \dim_set:Nn \dim_set:cn \dim_gset:Nn \dim_gset:cn
  { #1 = \_\dim_eval:w #2 \_\dim_eval_end: \scan_stop: }
\end{verbatim}
All straightforward, with a `\scan_stop:` to deal with the case where \texttt{#1} is (incorrectly) a skip.

Using by here would slow things down just to detect nonsensical cases such as passing `\dimen 123` as the first argument. Using `\scan_stop:` deals with skip variables. Since debugging checks that the variable is correctly local/global, the global versions cannot be defined as `\tex_global:D` followed by the local versions.

Functions for min, max, and absolute value with only one evaluation. The absolute value is evaluated by removing a leading - if present.

(End definition for \texttt{\dim_set_eq:NN} and \texttt{\dim_gset_eq:NN}. These functions are documented on page 207.)

(End definition for \texttt{\dim_add:Nn} and \texttt{\dim_gadd:Nn}. These functions are documented on page 207.)
\cs_new:Npn \__dim_abs:N #1
{ \if_meaning:w - #1 \else: \exp_after:wN #1 \fi: }
\cs_new:Npn \dim_max:nn #1#2
{ \dim_use:N \__dim_eval:w \exp_after:wN \__dim_maxmin:wwN \dim_use:N \__dim_eval:w #1 \exp_after:wN ; \dim_use:N \__dim_eval:w #2 ; > \__dim_eval_end: }
\cs_new:Npn \dim_min:nn #1#2
{ \dim_use:N \__dim_eval:w \exp_after:wN \__dim_maxmin:wwN \dim_use:N \__dim_eval:w #1 \exp_after:wN ; \dim_use:N \__dim_eval:w #2 ; < \__dim_eval_end: }
\cs_new:Npn \__dim_maxmin:wwN #1 ; #2 ; #3
{ \if_dim:w #1 #3 #2 ~ #1 \else: #2 \fi: }
(End definition for \dim_abs:n and others. These functions are documented on page 207.)

\dim_ratio:nn \__dim_ratio:n
With dimension expressions, something like 10 pt * ( 5 pt / 10 pt ) does not work. Instead, the ratio part needs to be converted to an integer expression. Using \int_value:w forces everything into sp, avoiding any decimal parts.
\cs_new:Npn \dim_ratio:nn #1#2
{ \__dim_ratio:n {#1} / \__dim_ratio:n {#2} }
\cs_new:Npn \__dim_ratio:n #1
{ \int_value:w \__dim_eval:w (#1) \__dim_eval_end: }
(End definition for \dim_ratio:nn and \__dim_ratio:n. This function is documented on page 208.)

62.6 Dimension expression conditionals
\dim_compare_p:nNn \dim_compare:nNnTF
Simple comparison.
\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \dim_compare:nNn { p , T , F , TF }
{ \if_dim:w \__dim_eval:w #1 #2 \__dim_eval:w #3 \__dim_eval_end: \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi: }
(End definition for \dim_compare:nNnTF. This function is documented on page 208.)

\dim_compare_p:n \dim_compare:nTF
\__dim_compare:w \__dim_compare:wNN \__dim_compare=:w \__dim_compare:!w \__dim_compare:<:w \__dim_compare:>w \__dim_compare_error:
This code is adapted from the \int_compare:nTF function. First make sure that there is at least one relation operator, by evaluating a dimension expression with a trailing \__dim_compare_error:. Just like for integers, the looping auxiliary \__dim_compare:wNN closes a primitive conditional and opens a new one. It is actually easier to
grab a dimension operand than an integer one, because once evaluated, dimensions all end with \texttt{pt} (with category other). Thus we do not need specific auxiliaries for the three “simple” relations $<$, $=$, and $>$. 

\begin{verbatim}
\prg_new_conditional:Nnpn \dim_compare:n #1 { p , T , F , TF }
\exp_after:wN \__dim_compare:w
\dim_use:N \__dim_eval:w #1 \__dim_compare_error:
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__dim_compare:w #1 \__dim_compare_error:
\exp_after:wN \if_false: \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w
\__dim_compare:wNN #1 ? { \__dim_compare_end:w \else: } \s__dim_stop
\}
\exp_args:Nno \use:nn
{ \cs_new:Npn \__dim_compare:wNN #1 } { \tl_to_str:n {pt} #2#3 }
\exp_after:wN \__dim_compare:wNN
\dim_use:N \__dim_eval:w #3}
\cs_new:cpn { __dim_compare_! :w }
#1 \reverse_if:N #2 ! #3 = { #1 #2 = #3 }
\cs_new:cpn { __dim_compare_ = :w }
#1 \__dim_eval:w = { #1 \__dim_eval:w }
\cs_new:cpn { __dim_compare_< :w }
#1 \reverse_if:N #2 < #3 = { #1 #2 < #3 }
\cs_new:cpn { __dim_compare_ > :w }
#1 \reverse_if:N #2 > #3 = { #1 #2 < #3 }
\cs_new:Npn \__dim_compare_end:w \prg_return_false:
\fi:
{ \__dim_compare_end:w \else: \prg_return_true: \fi: }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__dim_compare_error:
{ \if_int_compare:w \c_zero_int \c_zero_int \fi:
\__dim_compare_error:
}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\dim_compare:nTF} and others. This function is documented on page 209.)

For dimension cases, the first task to fully expand the check condition. The over all idea is then much the same as for \texttt{\str_case:nnTF} as described in \texttt{l3basics}.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \dim_case:nn { \__dim_case:nnTF }
\__dim_case:nnTF \__dim_case:nw \__dim_case_end:nw
\cs_new:Npn \dim_case:nnT #1#2#3
\exp:w \exp_args:Nf \__dim_case:nnTF { \dim_eval:n {#1} }
\}
\cs_new:Npn \dim_case:nnT #1#2#3
\end{verbatim}

898
62.7 Dimension expression loops

`\dim_case:nnTF` and others. This function is documented on page 210.

---

while_do and do_while functions for dimensions. Same as for the int type only the
names have changed.

---

899
while_do and do_while functions for dimensions. Same as for the int type only the names have changed.

\cs_new:Npn \dim_while_do:nNnn #1#2#3#4
\dim_until_do:nNnn #1#2#3#4
\dim_do_while:nNnn #1#2#3#4
\dim_do_until:nNnn #1#2#3#4

Before all else, evaluate the initial value, step, and final value. Repeating a function by steps first needs a check on the direction of the steps. After that, do the function for the start value then step and loop around. It would be more symmetrical to test for a step size of zero before checking the sign, but we optimize for the most frequent case (positive step).

\cs_new:Npn \dim_step_function:nnnN #1#2#3
\__dim_step:wwwN
\__dim_step:NnnnN

(End definition for \dim_while_do:nNnn and others. These functions are documented on page 211.)

62.8 Dimension step functions
The approach here is to build a function, with a global integer required to make the nesting safe (as seen in other in line functions), and map that function using \_dim\_step_function:nnn. We put a \prg\_break_point:Nn so that map\_break functions from other modules correctly decrement \g\_kernel\_prg\_map\_int before looking for their own break point. The first argument is \scan\_stop:, so that no breaking function recognizes this break point as its own.

(End definition for \_dim\_step\_function:nnn, \_dim\_step:wwwN, and \_dim\_step:NNnnn. This function is documented on page \ref{page:211}.)
\input{sources/\texttt{texcmds}}

62.9 \textit{\texttt{Using dim expressions and variables}}

\texttt{\texttt{dim_eval:n}} Evaluating a dimension expression expandably.

\texttt{\texttt{dim_sign:n}} See \texttt{\texttt{dim_abs:n}}. Contrarily to \texttt{\texttt{int_sign:n}} the case of a zero dimension cannot be distinguished from a positive dimension by looking only at the first character, since 0.2pt and 0pt start the same way. We need explicit comparisons. We start by distinguishing the most common case of a positive dimension.

\texttt{\texttt{dim_use:N}} Accessing a (dim). We hand-code the \texttt{c variant for some speed gain.

\texttt{\texttt{dim_to_decimal:n}} A function which comes up often enough to deserve a place in the kernel. Evaluate the dimension expression \#1 then remove the trailing pt. When debugging is enabled, the argument is put in parentheses as this prevents the dimension expression from terminating early and leaving extra tokens lying around. This is used a lot by low-level manipulations.
\cs_new:Npn \dim_to_decimal:n #1
\exp_after:wN \__dim_to_decimal:w \dim_use:N \__dim_eval:w #1 \__dim_eval_end:
\use:x
\cs_new:Npn \exp_not:N \__dim_to_decimal:w
##1 . ##2 \tl_to_str:n { pt }
\int_compare:nNnTF {#2} > \c_zero_int
{ #1 . #2 }
{ #1 }
\}
\}
(End definition for \dim_to_decimal:n and \__dim_to_decimal:w. This function is documented on page 212.)
\dim_to_decimal_in_bp:n Conversion to big points is done using a scaling inside \__dim_eval:w as \e-\TeX{} does that using 64-bit precision. Here, 800/803 is the integer fraction for 72/72.27. This is a common case so is hand-coded for accuracy (and speed).
\cs_new:Npn \dim_to_decimal_in_bp:n #1
{ \dim_to_decimal:n { ( #1 ) * 800 / 803 } }
(End definition for \dim_to_decimal_in_bp:n. This function is documented on page 213.)
\dim_to_decimal_in_sp:n Another hard-coded conversion: this one is necessary to avoid things going off-scale.
\cs_new:Npn \dim_to_decimal_in_sp:n #1
{ \int_value:w \__dim_eval:w #1 \__dim_eval_end: }
(End definition for \dim_to_decimal_in_sp:n. This function is documented on page 213.)
\dim_to_decimal_in_unit:nn An analogue of \dim_ratio:nn that produces a decimal number as its result, rather than a rational fraction for use within dimension expressions.
\cs_new:Npn \dim_to_decimal_in_unit:nn #1#2
\dim_to_decimal:n
{ lpt * \dim_ratio:nn {#1} {#2} }
(End definition for \dim_to_decimal_in_unit:nn. This function is documented on page 213.)
\dim_to_fp:n Defined in \l3fp-convert, documented here.
(End definition for \dim_to_fp:n. This function is documented on page 213.)
62.10 Viewing dim variables

\dim_show:N  Diagnostics.
\dim_show:c  \cs_new_eq:NN \dim_show:N \__kernel_register_show:N
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \dim_show:N { c }

(End definition for \dim_show:N. This function is documented on page 213.)

\dim_show:n  Diagnostics. We don’t use the \TeX{} primitive \showthe{} to show dimension expressions: this gives a more unified output.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \dim_show:n { \msg_show_eval:Nn \dim_eval:n }

(End definition for \dim_show:n. This function is documented on page 214.)

\dim_log:N  Diagnostics. Redirect output of \dim_show:n to the log.
\dim_log:c  \cs_new_eq:NN \dim_log:N \__kernel_register_log:N
\cs_new_eq:NN \dim_log:c \__kernel_register_log:c
\cs_new_protected:Npn \dim_log:n { \msg_log_eval:Nn \dim_eval:n }

(End definition for \dim_log:N and \dim_log:n. These functions are documented on page 214.)

62.11 Constant dimensions

\c_zero_dim  Constant dimensions.
\c_max_dim  \dim_const:Nn \c_zero_dim { 0 pt }
\dim_const:Nn \c_max_dim { 16383.99999 pt }

(End definition for \c_zero_dim and \c_max_dim. These variables are documented on page 214.)

62.12 Scratch dimensions

\l_tmpa_dim  We provide two local and two global scratch registers, maybe we need more or less.
\l_tmpb_dim  \dim_new:N \l_tmpa_dim
\g_tmpa_dim  \dim_new:N \l_tmpb_dim
\g_tmpb_dim  \dim_new:N \g_tmpa_dim
\dim_new:N \g_tmpb_dim

(End definition for \l_tmpa_dim and others. These variables are documented on page 214.)

62.13 Creating and initialising skip variables

\s__skip_stop  Internal scan marks.
\scan_new:N \s__skip_stop

(End definition for \s__skip_stop.)
Allocation of a new internal registers.
\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \skip_new:N #1
{ \__kernel_chk_if_free_cs:N #1
  \cs:w newskip \cs_end: #1}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \skip_new:N { c }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \skip_new:N. This function is documented on page 214.)

Contrarily to integer constants, we cannot avoid using a register, even for constants. See \skip_new:cn for why we cannot use \skip_gset:Nn.
\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \skip_const:Nn #1#2
{ \skip_new:N #1
  \tex_global:D #1 = \skip_eval:n {#2} \scan_stop:}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \skip_const:Nn { c }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \skip_const:Nn. This function is documented on page 215.)

Reset the register to zero.
\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_eq:NN \skip_zero:N \dim_zero:N
\cs_new_eq:NN \skip_gzero:N \dim_gzero:N
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \skip_zero:N { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \skip_gzero:N { c }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \skip_zero:N and \skip_gzero:N. These functions are documented on page 215.)

Create a register if needed, otherwise clear it.
\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \skip_zero_new:N #1
{ \skip_if_exist:NTF #1 { \skip_zero:N #1 } { \skip_new:N #1 }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \skip_gzero_new:N #1
{ \skip_if_exist:NTF #1 { \skip_gzero:N #1 } { \skip_new:N #1 }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \skip_zero_new:N { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \skip_gzero_new:N { c }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \skip_zero_new:N and \skip_gzero_new:N. These functions are documented on page 215.)

Copies of the cs functions defined in l3basics.
\begin{verbatim}
\prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \skip_if_exist:N \cs_if_exist:N
{ TF , T , F , p }
\prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \skip_if_exist:c \cs_if_exist:c
{ TF , T , F , p }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \skip_if_exist:N. This function is documented on page 215.)
62.14 Setting skip variables

\skip_set:Nn
\skip_set:cn
\skip_gset:Nn
\skip_gset:cn

Much the same as for dimensions.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \skip_set:Nn #1#2
\{ #1 = \tex_glueexpr:D #2 \scan_stop: \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \skip_gset:Nn #1#2
\{ \tex_global:D #1 = \tex_glueexpr:D #2 \scan_stop: \}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \skip_set:Nn { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \skip_gset:Nn { c }

(End definition for \skip_set:Nn and \skip_gset:Nn. These functions are documented on page 215.)

\skip_set_eq:NN
\skip_set_eq:cN
\skip_set_eq:Nc
\skip_set_eq:cc
\skip_gset_eq:NN
\skip_gset_eq:cN
\skip_gset_eq:Nc
\skip_gset_eq:cc

All straightforward.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \skip_add:Nn #1#2
\{ \tex_advance:D #1 \tex_glueexpr:D #2 \scan_stop: \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \skip_gadd:Nn #1#2
\{ \tex_global:D \tex_advance:D #1 \tex_glueexpr:D #2 \scan_stop: \}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \skip_add:Nn { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \skip_gadd:Nn { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \skip_sub:Nn #1#2
\{ \tex_advance:D #1 - \tex_glueexpr:D #2 \scan_stop: \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \skip_gsub:Nn #1#2
\{ \tex_global:D \tex_advance:D #1 - \tex_glueexpr:D #2 \scan_stop: \}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \skip_sub:Nn { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \skip_gsub:Nn { c }

(End definition for \skip_add:Nn and others. These functions are documented on page 215.)

62.15 Skip expression conditionals

\skip_if_eq_p:nn
\skip_if_eq:nn
\TF
\skip_if_eq:nnTF
\skip_if_eq:nn

Comparing skips means doing two expansions to make strings, and then testing them.
As a result, only equality is tested.

\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \skip_if_eq:nn #1#2 \{ p , T , F , TF \}
\{ \str_if_eq:eeTF { \skip_eval:n {#1} } { \skip_eval:n {#2} }
\{ \prg_return_true: \}
\{ \prg_return_false: \}
\}

(End definition for \skip_if_eq:nn. This function is documented on page 216.)
With \( \varepsilon \)-\TeX, we have an easy access to the order of infinities of the stretch and shrink components of a skip. However, to access both, we either need to evaluate the expression twice, or evaluate it, then call an auxiliary to extract both pieces of information from the result. Since we are going to need an auxiliary anyways, it is quicker to make it search for the string \texttt{fil} which characterizes infinite glue.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__skip_tmp:w #1
\prg_new_conditional:Npnn \skip_if_finite:n { p , T , F , TF }\{\exp_after:wN \__skip_if_finite:wwNw \skip_use:N \tex_glueexpr:D ##1 ; \prg_return_false: #1 ; \prg_return_true: \s__skip_stop \} \cs_new:Npn \__skip_if_finite:wwNw ##1 #1 ##2 ; ##3 ##4 \s__skip_stop {##3}\}
\exp_args:No \__skip_tmp:w { \tl_to_str:n { fil } }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\skip_if_finite:nTF} and \texttt{\__skip_if_finite:wwNw}. This function is documented on page 216.)

\subsection{Using skip expressions and variables}

Evaluating a skip expression expandably.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \skip_eval:n #1
\{ \skip_use:N \tex_glueexpr:D #1 \\scan_stop: \}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\skip_eval:n}. This function is documented on page 216.)

Accessing a \( \langle \text{skip} \rangle \).

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_eq:NN \skip_use:N \dim_use:N
\cs_new_eq:NN \skip_use:c \dim_use:c
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\skip_use:N}. This function is documented on page 216.)

\subsection{Inserting skips into the output}

Inserting skips.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_eq:NN \skip_horizontal:N \tex_hskip:D
\cs_new:Npn \skip_horizontal:n #1
\{ \skip_horizontal:N \tex_glueexpr:D #1 \\scan_stop: \}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \skip_horizontal:N { c }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\skip_horizontal:N} and others. These functions are documented on page 217.)
62.18 Viewing skip variables

\skip_show:N \skip_show:c
\skip_show:n
\skip_log:N \skip_log:c \skip_log:n

Diagnostics.

Diagnostics. We don’t use the \TeX primitive \texttt{\showthe} to show skip expressions: this gives a more unified output.

Diagnostics. Redirect output of \skip_show:n to the log.

Diagnostics. This function is documented on page 216.

(End definition for \skip_show:N. This function is documented on page 216.)

(End definition for \skip_show:n. This function is documented on page 216.)

(End definition for \skip_log:N and \skip_log:n. These functions are documented on page 217.)

62.19 Constant skips

\c_zero_skip \c_max_skip

Skips with no rubber component are just dimensions but need to terminate correctly.

(End definition for \c_zero_skip and \c_max_skip. These functions are documented on page 217.)

62.20 Scratch skips

\l_tmpa_skip \l_tmpb_skip \g_tmpa_skip \g_tmpb_skip

We provide two local and two global scratch registers, maybe we need more or less.

(End definition for \l_tmpa_skip and others. These variables are documented on page 217.)

62.21 Creating and initialising muskip variables

\muskip_new:N \muskip_new:c

And then we add muskips.

(End definition for \muskip_new:N. This function is documented on page 218.)
\muskip_const:Nn \muskip_const:cn

See \skip_const:Nn.

\muskip_zero:N \muskip_zero:c \muskip_gzero:N \muskip_gzero:c

Reset the register to zero.

\muskip_zero_new:N \muskip_zero_new:c \muskip_gzero_new:N \muskip_gzero_new:c

Create a register if needed, otherwise clear it.

\muskip_if_exist_p:N \muskip_if_exist_p:c \muskip_if_exist:N \muskip_if_exist:c

Copies of the cs functions defined in l3basics.

\muskip_set:Nn \muskip_set:cn \muskip_gset:Nn \muskip_gset:cn

This should be pretty familiar.

62.22 Setting muskip variables

(End definition for \muskip_set:Nn. This function is documented on page 219.)
All straightforward.

20400 \texttt{\textbackslash cs\_new\_protected:Npn \textbackslash muskip\_set\_eq:NN \#1\#2 \{ \#1 = \#2 \}}
20401 \texttt{\textbackslash cs\_generate\_variant:Nn \textbackslash muskip\_set\_eq:NN \{ c , \text{Nc} , \text{cc} \}}
20402 \texttt{\textbackslash cs\_new\_protected:Npn \textbackslash muskip\_gset\_eq:NN \#1\#2 \{ \texttt{\textbackslash tex\_global:D \#1 = \#2} \}}
20403 \texttt{\textbackslash cs\_generate\_variant:Nn \textbackslash muskip\_gset\_eq:NN \{ c , \text{Nc} , \text{cc} \}}

(End definition for \texttt{\textbackslash muskip\_set\_eq:NN} and \texttt{\textbackslash muskip\_gset\_eq:NN}. These functions are documented on page 219.)

Using by here deals with the (incorrect) case \texttt{\muskip123}.

20404 \texttt{\textbackslash cs\_new\_protected:Npn \textbackslash muskip\_add:Nn \#1\#2}
20405 \texttt{\textbackslash cs\_generate\_variant:Nn \textbackslash muskip\_add:Nn \{ c \}}
20406 \texttt{\textbackslash cs\_new\_protected:Npn \textbackslash muskip\_gadd:Nn \#1\#2}
20407 \texttt{\textbackslash cs\_generate\_variant:Nn \textbackslash muskip\_gadd:Nn \{ c \}}
20408 \texttt{\textbackslash cs\_new\_protected:Npn \textbackslash muskip\_sub:Nn \#1\#2}
20409 \texttt{\textbackslash cs\_generate\_variant:Nn \textbackslash muskip\_sub:Nn \{ c \}}
20410 \texttt{\textbackslash cs\_new\_protected:Npn \textbackslash muskip\_gsub:Nn \#1\#2}
20411 \texttt{\textbackslash cs\_generate\_variant:Nn \textbackslash muskip\_gsub:Nn \{ c \}}

(End definition for \texttt{\textbackslash muskip\_add:Nn} and others. These functions are documented on page 218.)

62.23 Using \texttt{muskip} expressions and variables

\texttt{\textbackslash muskip\_eval:n \#1}
20416 \texttt{\textbackslash cs\_new\_eq:NN \textbackslash muskip\_eval:n \#1}
20417 \texttt{\textbackslash cs\_generate\_variant:Nn \textbackslash muskip\_eval:n \{ c \}}

(End definition for \texttt{\textbackslash muskip\_eval:n}. This function is documented on page 219.)

\texttt{\textbackslash muskip\_use:N \textbackslash dim\_use:N}
\texttt{\textbackslash muskip\_use:c \textbackslash dim\_use:c}

(End definition for \texttt{\textbackslash muskip\_use:N}. This function is documented on page 219.)

62.24 Viewing \texttt{muskip} variables

\texttt{\textbackslash muskip\_show:N \textbackslash dim\_use:N}
\texttt{\textbackslash muskip\_show:c \textbackslash dim\_use:c}

(End definition for \texttt{\textbackslash muskip\_show:N}. This function is documented on page 219.)

\texttt{\textbackslash muskip\_show:n \textbackslash msg\_show\_eval:Nn \textbackslash muskip\_eval:n}

(End definition for \texttt{\textbackslash muskip\_show:n}. This function is documented on page 220.)
Diagnostics. Redirect output of \texttt{\muskip\show:n} to the log.

\begin{Verbatim}
\cs_new_eq:NN \muskip\log:N \__kernel_register_log:N
\cs_new_eq:NN \muskip\log:c \__kernel_register_log:c
\cs_new_protected:Npn \muskip\log:n
  \{ \msg\log_eval:Nn \muskip\eval:n \}
\end{Verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\muskip\log:N} and \texttt{\muskip\log:n}. These functions are documented on page 220.)

\subsection{Constant muskips}

\begin{Verbatim}
\muskip\const:Nn \c_zero_muskip { 0 mu }
\muskip\const:Nn \c_max_muskip { 16383.99999 mu }
\end{Verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\c_zero_muskip} and \texttt{\c_max_muskip}. These functions are documented on page 220.)

\subsection{Scratch muskips}

\begin{Verbatim}
\muskip\new:N \l_tmpa_muskip
\muskip\new:N \l_tmpb_muskip
\muskip\new:N \g_tmpa_muskip
\muskip\new:N \g_tmpb_muskip
\end{Verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\l_tmpa_muskip} and others. These variables are documented on page 220.)
Chapter 63

l3keys Implementation

63.1 Low-level interface

The low-level key parser’s implementation is based heavily on expkv. Compared to keyval it adds a number of additional “safety” requirements and allows to process the parsed list of key–value pairs in a variety of ways. The net result is that this code needs around one and a half the amount of time as keyval to parse the same list of keys. To optimise speed as far as reasonably practical, a number of lower-level approaches are taken rather than using the higher-level expl3 interfaces.

\l__kernel_keyval_allow_blank_keys_bool

The general behavior of the l3keys module is to throw an error on blank key names. However to support the usage of \keyval_parse:nnn in the l3prop module we allow this error to be switched off temporarily and just ignore blank names.

This temporary macro will be used since some of the definitions will need an active comma or equals sign. Inside of this macro #1 will be the active comma and #2 will be the active equals sign.

The main function starts the first of two loops. The outer loop splits the key–value list at active commas, the inner loop will do so at other commas. The use of \s__keyval_mark here prevents loss of braces from the key argument.
\cs_if_exist:NTF \tex_expanded:D
{
  \cs_new:Npn \keyval_parse:nnn ##1 ##2 ##3
  {
    \__kernel_exp_not:w \tex_expanded:D
    {
      \__keyval_loop_active:nnw {##1} {##2}
      \s__keyval_mark ##3 \s__keyval_tail #1
    }
  }
}
\cs_new:Npn \keyval_parse:nnn ##1 ##2 ##3
{
  \group_align_safe_begin:
  \__keyval_loop_active:nnw {##1} {##2}
  \s__keyval_mark ##3 #1 \s__keyval_tail #1
  \group_align_safe_end:
}
\cs_new_eq:NN \keyval_parse:NNn \keyval_parse:nnn
(End definition for \keyval_parse:nnn and \keyval_parse:NNn. These functions are documented on page 234.)

\__keyval_loop_active:nnw
First a fast test for the end of the loop is done, it’ll gobble everything up to a \s__keyval_tail. The loop ending macro will gobble everything to the last comma in this definition. If the end isn’t reached yet, start the second loop splitting at other commas, the next iteration of this first loop will be inserted by the end of \__keyval_loop_other:nnw.

\cs_new:Npn \__keyval_loop_active:nnw ##1 ##2 ##3 #1
{
  \__keyval_if_recursion_tail:w ##3
  \__keyval_end_loop_active:w \s__keyval_tail
  \__keyval_loop_other:nnw {##1} {##2} ##3 , \s__keyval_tail ,
}
(End definition for \__keyval_loop_active:nnw.)

\__keyval_split_other:w
\__keyval_split_active:w
These two macros allow to split at the first equals sign of category 12 or 13. At the same time they also execute branching by inserting the first token following \s__keyval_mark that followed the equals sign. Hence they also test for the presence of such an equals sign simultaneously.

\cs_new:Npn \__keyval_split_other:w #1 = ##2 \s__keyval_mark ##3
{ #3 \s__keyval_stop \s__keyval_mark ##2 }
\cs_new:Npn \__keyval_split_active:w #1 #2 \s__keyval_mark ##3
{ #3 \s__keyval_stop \s__keyval_mark ##2 }
(End definition for \__keyval_split_other:w and \__keyval_split_active:w.)

\__keyval_loop_other:nnw
The second loop uses the same test for its end as the first loop, next it splits at the first active equals sign using \__keyval_split_active:w. The \s__keyval_nil prevents
accidental brace stripping and acts as a delimiter in the next steps. First testing for an active equals sign will reduce the number of necessary expansion steps for the expected average use case of other equals signs and hence perform better on average.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_keyval_loop_other:nnw ##1 ##2 ##3 ,
  \{
    \_keyval_if_recursion_tail:w ##3
    \_keyval_end_loop_other:w \s__keyval_tail
    \_keyval_split_active:w ##3 \s__keyval_nil
    \s__keyval_mark \_keyval_split_active_auxi:w
    \_keyval_split_active_auxii:w\{##1} \{##2
    \s__keyval_mark \_keyval_clean_up_active:w
  \}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \_keyval_loop_other:nnw.)

After \_keyval_split_active:w the following will only be called if there was at least one active equals sign in the current key–value pair. Therefore this is the execution branch for a key–value pair with an active equals sign. \#1 will be everything up to the first active equals sign. First it tests for other equals signs in the key name, which will eventually throw an error via \_keyval_misplaced_equal_after_active_error:w. If none was found we forward the key to \_keyval_split_active_auxii:w.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_keyval_split_active_auxi:w ##1 \s__keyval_stop
  \{
    \_keyval_split_other:w ##1 \s__keyval_nil
    \s__keyval_mark \_keyval_misplaced_equal_after_active_error:w
    \s__keyval_nil #2 \s__keyval_mark \_keyval_clean_up_active:w
  \}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_keyval_split_active_auxii:w ##1 \s__keyval_nil \s__keyval_mark \_keyval_misplaced_equal_after_active_error:w
  \s__keyval_nil \s__keyval_clean_up_active:w
  \{
  \_keyval_split_active_auxiii:w ##1 \s__keyval_nil
\end{verbatim}

Next we test for a misplaced active equals sign in the value, if none is found \_keyval_split_active_auxiv:w will be called.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_keyval_split_active_auxiii:w ##1 \s__keyval_nil \s__keyval_mark \_keyval_misplaced_equal_after_active_error:w
  \s__keyval_clean_up_active:w\{##1\}
\end{verbatim}

This runs the last test after sanitising the remainder of the previous one. This time test for a misplaced equals sign of category 12 in the value. Finally the last auxiliary macro will be called.
This last macro in this execution branch sanitises the last test, trims the value and passes it to \texttt{\_\_keyval\_pair:nnnn}.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_keyval\_split\_active\_auxv:w 
  \##1 \_\_keyval\_nil \_\_keyval\_mark \_\_keyval\_misplaced\_equal\_in\_split\_error:w 
  \_\_keyval\_stop \_\_keyval\_mark 
  \{ \_\_keyval\_trim:nN \{ \##1 \} \_\_keyval\_pair:nnnn \}
\end{verbatim}

This is executed if the key–value pair doesn’t contain an active equals sign but at least one other. \texttt{\_\_keyval\_clean\_up\_active:w} will contain the complete key name, which is trimmed and forwarded to the next auxiliary macro.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_keyval\_clean\_up\_active:w 
  \##1 \_\_keyval\_nil \_\_keyval\_mark \_\_keyval\_split\_active\_auxi:w \_\_keyval\_stop 
  \{ \_\_keyval\_clean\_up\_other:w \} 
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_keyval\_split\_other\_auxi:w 
  \_\_keyval\_trim:nN \{ \##1 \} \_\_keyval\_pair:nnnn 
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_keyval\_split\_other\_auxii:w 
  \_\_keyval\_trim:nN \{ \##1 \##2 \_\_keyval\_nil \_\_keyval\_mark \_\_keyval\_misplaced\_equal\_in\_split\_error:w 
  \_\_keyval\_stop \_\_keyval\_mark 
  \{ \_\_keyval\_split\_other\_auxiii:w \##1 \_\_keyval\_nil \_\_keyval\_mark \_\_keyval\_misplaced\_equal\_in\_split\_error:w 
  \_\_keyval\_stop \_\_keyval\_mark 
  \{ \_\_keyval\_trim:nN \{ \##1 \} \_\_keyval\_pair:nnnn \}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_keyval\_split\_other\_auxiii:w 
  \_\_keyval\_trim:nN \{ \##1 \_\_keyval\_nil \_\_keyval\_mark \_\_keyval\_misplaced\_equal\_in\_split\_error:w 
  \_\_keyval\_stop \_\_keyval\_mark 
  \{ \_\_keyval\_pair:nnnn \}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
(End definition for \_\_keyval\_split\_other\_auxi:w, \_\_keyval\_split\_other\_auxii:w, and \_\_keyval\_split\_other\_auxiii:w.)
\end{verbatim}
\_\__keyval_clean_up_other:w  \_\__keyval_clean_up_other:w is the last branch that might exist. It is called if no equals sign was found, hence the only possibilities left are a blank list element, which is to be skipped, or a lonely key. If it’s no empty list element this will trim the key name and forward it to \_\__keyval_key:nn.
\cs_new:Npn \_\__keyval_clean_up_other:w
    \#1 \s_\__keyval_nil \s_\__keyval_mark \_\__keyval_split_other_auxi:w \s_\__keyval_stop \s_\__keyval_mark\_\__keyval_if_blank:w \#1 \s_\__keyval_nil \s_\__keyval_stop \_\__keyval_blank_true:w \s_\__keyval_mark \s_\__keyval_stop \_\__keyval_trim:nN \{ \#1 \} \_\__keyval_key:nn
\_\__keyval_misplaced_equal_after_active_error:w\_\__keyval_misplaced_equal_in_split_error:w All these two macros do is gobble the remainder of the current other loop execution and throw an error. Afterwards they have to insert the next loop iteration.
\cs_new:Npn \_\__keyval_misplaced_equal_after_active_error:w
    \s_\__keyval_mark \#1 \s_\__keyval_stop \s_\__keyval_mark \#2 \s_\__keyval_nil \__keyval_split_active_auxii:w \s_\__keyval_mark \#2 \s_\__keyval_mark \_\__keyval_clean_up_active:w \s_\__keyval_clean_up_active:nn \msg_expandable_error:nn \{ keyval \} \{ misplaced-equals-sign \} \_\__keyval_loop_active:nnw \_\__keyval_loop_other:nnw\_\_\__keyval_loop_other:w\_\_\__keyval_loop_active:w All that’s left for the parsing loops are the macros which end the recursion. Both just gobble the remaining tokens of the respective loop including the next recursion call. \_\__keyval_end_loop_other:w also has to insert the next iteration of the active loop.
\cs_new:Npn \_\__keyval_end_loop_other:w
    \s_\__keyval_tail \s_\__keyval_split_active:w \s_\__keyval_mark \s_\__keyval_tail \s_\__keyval_nil \__keyval_split_active_auxi:w \s_\__keyval_mark \#2 \s_\__keyval_mark \_\__keyval_clean_up_active:w \__keyval_clean_up_active:nn \{ \_\__keyval_loop_active:nnw \s_\__keyval_tag \s_\__keyval_nil \s_\__keyval_tag , \s_\__keyval_tag , \ }
The parsing loops are done, so here ends the definition of \_keyval\_tmp:w, which will finally set up the macros.

```latex
\char_set_catcode_active:n { '{, }
\char_set_catcode_active:n { '{= }
\_keyval\_tmp:w , =
\group_end:
```

\_keyval\_pair:nnnn
\_keyval\_key:nn

These macros will be called on the parsed keys and values of the key–value list. All arguments are completely trimmed. They test for blank key names and call the functions passed to \keyval\_parse:nnn inside of \exp_not:n with the correct arguments. Afterwards they insert the next iteration of the other loop.

```latex
\group_begin:
\cs_set_protected:Npn \_keyval\_tmp:w #1#2
{
\cs_new:Npn \_keyval\_pair:nnnn ##1 ##2 ##3 ##4
{
\__keyval\_if\_blank:w \s__keyval\_mark \s__keyval\_nil \s__keyval\_stop \__keyval\_blank\_key\_error:w
\s__keyval\_mark \s__keyval\_stop
#1
\exp_not:n { ##4 {##2} {##1} }
#2
\_keyval\_loop\_other:nnw {##3} {##4}
}
\cs_new:Npn \_keyval\_key:nn ##1 ##2
{
\__keyval\_if\_blank:w \s__keyval\_mark \s__keyval\_nil \s__keyval\_stop \__keyval\_blank\_key\_error:w
\s__keyval\_mark \s__keyval\_stop
#1
\exp_not:n { ##2 {##1} }
#2
\_keyval\_loop\_other:nnw {##2}
}
\cs_if_exist:NTF \tex\_expanded:D
{ \_keyval\_tmp:w { } { } }
{ \_keyval\_tmp:w \group\_align\_safe\_end: \group\_align\_safe\_begin: }
\group_end:
```

\_keyval\_if\_empty:w
\_keyval\_if\_blank:w
\_keyval\_if\_recursion\_tail:w

All these tests work by gobbling tokens until a certain combination is met, which makes them pretty fast. The test for a blank argument should be called with an arbitrary token following the argument. Each of these utilize the fact that the argument will contain a leading \s__keyval\_mark.

```latex
\cs_new:Npn \_keyval\_if\_empty:w \_keyval\_if\_empty:w #1 \s__keyval\_mark \s__keyval\_stop { }
\cs_new:Npn \_keyval\_if\_blank:w \_keyval\_if\_blank:w \s__keyval\_mark #1 \{ \_keyval\_if\_empty:w \s__keyval\_mark
\cs_new:Npn \_keyval\_if\_recursion\_tail:w \s__keyval\_mark #1 \s__keyval\_tail { }
```

(End definition for \_keyval\_if\_empty:w, \_keyval\_if\_blank:w, and \_keyval\_if\_recursion\_tail:w.)

917
These macros will be called if the tests above didn’t gobble them, they execute the branching.

```latex
\cs_new:Npn \__keyval_blank_true:w \s__keyval_mark \s__keyval_stop \__keyval_trim:nN #1 \__keyval_loop_other:nnw

\cs_new:Npn \__keyval_blank_key_error:w \s__keyval_mark \s__keyval_stop \__keyval_loop_other:nnw
```

(End definition for \_\_keyval_blank_true:w and \_\_keyval_blank_key_error:w.)

Two messages for the low level parsing system.

```latex
\msg_new:nnn { keyval } { misplaced-equals-sign } { Misplaced~'='~in~key-value~input~\msg_line_context: }
\msg_new:nnn { keyval } { blank-key-name } { Blank~key~name~in~key-value~input~\msg_line_context: }
```

And an adapted version of \_\_tl_trim_spaces:nn which is a bit faster for our use case, as it can strip the braces at the end. This is pretty much the same concept, so I won’t comment on it here. The speed gain by using this instead of \_tl_trim_spaces_apply:nn is about 10% of the total time for \keyval_parse:NNn with one key and one key-value pair, so I think it’s worth it.
63.2 Constants and variables

\cs_new:Npn \__keyval_trim_auxiii:w ##1 \s__keyval_nil \#2
\{ \#1 \s__keyval_nil \__keyval_trim_auxiii:w \}

This is the one macro which differs from the original definition.

\cs_new:Npn \__keyval_trim_auxiv:w \s__keyval_mark \s__keyval_nil \__keyval_trim_auxiii:w \s__keyval_nil \__keyval_trim_auxiii:w \#2
\{ \#2 \{ \#1 \} \}
\__keyval_tmp:w { ~ }
\group_end:

(End definition for \__keyval_trim:nN and others.)

\c__keys_code_root_str
\c__keys_check_root_str
\c__keys_default_root_str
\c__keys_groups_root_str
\c__keys_inherit_root_str
\c__keys_type_root_str

(End definition for \c__keys_code_root_str and others.)

\c__keys_props_root_str

(End definition for \c__keys_props_root_str.)

\l_keys_choice_int
\l_keys_choice_tl

Publicly accessible data on which choice is being used when several are generated as a set.

\l__keys_groups_clist

Used for storing and recovering the list of groups which apply to a key: set as a comma list but at one point we have to use this for a token list recovery.

\l_keys_key_str
\l_keys_key_tl

The name of a key itself: needed when setting keys. The \tl version is deprecated but has to be handled manually.

\lkeys_choice_int
\lkeys_choice_tl

Various storage areas for the different data which make up keys.

\str_const:Nn \c__keys_code_root_str { key-code-> }
\str_const:Nn \c__keys_check_root_str { key-check-> }
\str_const:Nn \c__keys_default_root_str { key-default-> }
\str_const:Nn \c__keys_groups_root_str { key-groups-> }
\str_const:Nn \c__keys_inherit_root_str { key-inherit-> }
\str_const:Nn \c__keys_type_root_str { key-type-> }

(End definition for \c__keys_code_root_str and others.)
\l__keys_module_str The module for an entire set of keys.

\l__keys_no_value_bool A marker is needed internally to show if only a key or a key plus a value was seen: this is recorded here.

\l__keys_only_known_bool Used to track if only “known” keys are being set.

\l__keys_path_str The “path” of the current key is stored here: this is available to the programmer and so is public. The older version is deprecated but has to be handled manually.

\l__keys_inherit_str

\l__keys_relative_tl The relative path for passing keys back to the user. As this can be explicitly no-value, it must be a token list.

\l__keys_property_str The “property” begin set for a key at definition time is stored here.

\l__keys_selective_bool Two flags for using key groups: one to indicate that “selective” setting is active, a second to specify which type (“opt-in” or “opt-out”).

\l__keys_filterable_seq The list of key groups being filtered in or out during selective setting.
\_\_keys\_unused\_clist
  Used when setting only some keys to store those left over.

\_\_keys\_value\_tl
  The value given for a key: may be empty if no value was given.

\_\_keys\_tmp\_bool
  Scratch space.
\_\_keys\_tmpa\_tl
\_\_keys\_tmpb\_tl

\_\_keys\_usage\_load\_prop
\_\_keys\_usage\_preamble\_prop
  Global data for document-level information.

\_\_keys\_nil
\_\_keys\_mark
\_\_keys\_stop
  Internal scan marks.

\_\_keys\_no\_value
  Internal quarks.

\_\_keys\_quark\_if\_no\_value\:N
  Branching quark conditional.

63.2.1 Internal auxiliaries

\_\_keys\_quark\_if\_no\_value\:NTF
  (End definition for \_\_keys\_quark\_if\_no\_value::NTF.)
The public function for definitions is just a wrapper for the lower level mechanism, more or less. The outer function is designed to keep a track of the current module, to allow safe nesting. The module is set removing any leading / (which is not needed here).

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \keys_define:nn
\{ \__keys_define:onn \l__keys_module_str \}
```

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__keys_define:nnn #1#2#3
\{ \str_set:Nx \l__keys_module_str { \__keys_trim_spaces:n {#2} } \keyval_parse:NNn \__keys_define:n \__keys_define:nn {#3} \str_set:Nn \l__keys_module_str {#1} \}
```

(End definition for \keys_define:nn and \__keys_define:nnn. This function is documented on page 222.)

The outer functions here record whether a value was given and then converge on a common internal mechanism. There is first a search for a property in the current key name, then a check to make sure it is known before the code hands off to the next step.

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__keys_define:n #1
\{ \bool_set_true:N \l__keys_no_value_bool \__keys_define_aux:nn {#1} { } \}
```

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__keys_define:nn #1#2
\{ \bool_set_false:N \l__keys_no_value_bool \__keys_define_aux:nn {#1} {#2} \}
```

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__keys_define_aux:nn #1#2
\{ \__keys_property_find:n {#1} \cs_if_exist:cTF { \c__keys_props_root_str \l__keys_property_str } \{ \__keys_define_code:n {#2} \} \{ \str_if_empty:NF \l__keys_property_str \msg_error:nnxx { keys } { property-unknown } \l__keys_property_str \l_keys_path_str \} \}
```

(End definition for \__keys_define:n, \__keys_define:nn, and \__keys_define_aux:nn.)

Searching for a property means finding the last . in the input, and storing the text before and after it. Everything is turned into strings, so there is no problem using an x-type expansion. Since \__keys_trim_spaces:n will turn its argument into a string anyway, this function uses \cs_set_nopar:Npx instead of \tl_set:Nx to gain some speed.

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__keys_property_find:n \{ \__keys_property_find_auxi:w \__keys_property_find_auxii:w \__keys_property_find_auxiii:w \__keys_property_find_auxiv:w \}
```

922
63.4 Turning properties into actions

Boolean keys are really just choices, but all done by hand. The second argument here is the scope: either empty or \texttt{g} for global.

To make a choice from a key, two steps: set the code, and set the unknown key. As multichoices and choices are essentially the same bar one function, the code is given together.

(End definition for \texttt{\_keys_define_code:n} and \texttt{\_keys_define_code:w}.)
Auto-generating choices means setting up the root key as a choice, then defining each choice in turn.

```
\__keys_choices_make:nn
\__keys_multichoices_make:nn
\__keys_choices_make:Nnn

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__keys_choices_make:nn { \__keys_choices_make:Nnn \__keys_choice_make: }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__keys_multichoices_make:nn { \__keys_choices_make:Nnn \__keys_multichoice_make: }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__keys_choices_make:Nnn #1#2#3 { #1 \int_zero:N \l_keys_choice_int
\clist_map_inline:nn {#2} { \int_incr:N \l_keys_choice_int \__keys_cmd_set:nx { \l_keys_path_str / \__keys_trim_spaces:n {##1} } { \tl_set:Nn \exp_not:N \l_keys_choice_tl {##1} \int_set:Nn \exp_not:N \l_keys_choice_int { \int_use:N \l_keys_choice_int } \exp_not:n {#3} } } (End definition for \__keys_choices_make:nn, \__keys_multichoices_make:nn, and \__keys_choices_make:Nnn.)
```

Setting the code for a key first logs if appropriate that we are defining a new key, then saves the code.

```
\__keys_cmd_set:nn \__keys_cmd_set:nx \__keys_cmd_set:Vn \__keys_cmd_set:Vo
\cs_new_protected:Npm \__keys_cmd_set:nn \__keys_cmd_set:nx \__keys_cmd_set:Vn \__keys_cmd_set:Vo
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \__keys_cmd_set:nn { nx, Vn, Vo }
```

(End definition for \__keys_choice_make: and others.)
Creating control sequences is a bit more tricky than other cases as we need to pick up the \texttt{p} argument. To make the internals look clearer, the trailing \texttt{n} argument here is just for appearance.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__keys_cs_set:NNpn #1#2#3#
\begin{verbatim}
\cs_set_protected:cpx { \c__keys_code_root_str \l_keys_path_str } ##1
\begin{verbatim}
{ #1 \exp_not:N \exp_not:n {#3} {##1} }
\begin{verbatim}
\use_none:n
\end{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \__keys_cs_set:NNpn { Nc }
\end{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}

\__keys_default_set:n

Setting a default value is easy. These are stored using \texttt{\cs_set_nopar:cpx} as this avoids any worries about whether a token list exists.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__keys_default_set:n #1
\begin{verbatim}
\tl_if_empty:nTF {#1}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbata
\_\_keys_inherit:n Inheritance means ignoring anything already said about the key: zap the lot and set up.
\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_keys_inherit:n #1
\{\_\_keys.Undefine:\cs_set_nopar:cpn { \c\_\_keys_inherit_root_str \l_keys_path_str } {#1}\}
\end{verbatim}
\textit{(End definition for \_\_keys_inherit:n.)}

\_\_keys_initialise:n A set up for initialisation: just run the code if it exists.
\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_keys_initialise:n #1
\{\cs_if_exist:cTF { \c\_\_keys_inherit_root_str \__keys_parent:o \l_keys_path_str }
\{ \_\_keys.Execute_inherit: \}
\{ \str_clear:N \_\_keys_inherit_str \cs_if_exist:cT { \c\_\_keys_code_root_str \l_keys_path_str }
\{ \_\_keys.Execute:nn \l_keys_path_str {#1} \}
\}
\end{verbatim}
\textit{(End definition for \_\_keys_initialise:n.)}

\_\_keys_legacy_if_set:nnn \_\_keys_legacy_if_inverse:nnn \_\_keys_legacy_if_inverse:nnnn
Much the same as expl3 booleans, except we assume that the switch exists.
\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_keys_legacy_if_set:nnn #1#2#3#4
\{ \_\_keys.choice_make:
\_\_keys.cmd_set:nx { \l_keys_path_str / true }
\{ \exp_not:c { legacy_if_#2 set_ #3 :n } { \exp_not:n {#1} } \}
\_\_keys.cmd_set:nx { \l_keys_path_str / false }
\{ \exp_not:c { legacy_if_#2 set_ #4 :n } { \exp_not:n {#1} } \}
\_\_keys.cmd_set:nn { \l_keys_path_str / unknown }
\{ \msg_error:nnx { keys } { boolean-values-only } \}
\end{verbatim}
\textit{(End definition for \_\_keys_legacy_if_set:nnn, \_\_keys_legacy_if_inverse:nnn, and \_\_keys_legacy_inverse:nnnn.)}

\_\_keys_meta_make:n \_\_keys_meta_make:nn
To create a meta-key, simply set up to pass data through.
\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_keys_meta_make:n #1
\{\_\_keys-meta_make:nn #1 \}
\end{verbatim}
\textit{927}
\__keys_cmd_set:Vo \l_keys_path_str
{
\exp_after:wN \keys_set:nn \exp_after:wN { \l__keys_module_str } {#1}
}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__keys_meta_make:nn #1#2
{
\__keys_cmd_set:Vn \l_keys_path_str { \keys_set:nn {#1} {#2} }
}
\__keys_prop_put:Nn \__keys_prop_put:cn
Much the same as other variables, but needs a dedicated auxiliary.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__keys_prop_put:Nn #1#2
{
\prop_if_exist:NF #1 { \prop_new:N #1 }
\exp_after:wN \__keys_find_key_module:wNN \l_keys_path_str \s__keys_stop
\l__keys_tmpa_tl \l__keys_tmpb_tl
\__keys_cmd_set:nx \l_keys_path_str
{
\exp_not:c { prop_ #2 put:Nnn }
\exp_not:N #1
{ \l__keys_tmpb_tl }
\exp_not:n { {##1} }
}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \__keys_prop_put:Nn { c }
(End definition for \__keys_prop_put:Nn.)
\__keys_undefine:
Undefining a key has to be done without \cs_undefine:c as that function acts globally.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__keys_undefine:
{
\clist_map_inline:nn
{ code , default , groups , inherit , type , check }
{ \cs_set_eq:cN { \tl_use:c { c__keys_ ##1 _root_str } \l_keys_path_str }
tex_undefined:D }
}
(End definition for \__keys_undefine:.)
\__keys_value_requirement:nn
\__keys_check_forbidden:
\__keys_check_required:
Validating key input is done using a second function which runs before the main key
code. Setting that up means setting it equal to a generic stub which does the check. This
approach makes the lookup very fast at the cost of one additional csname per key that
needs it. The cleanup here has to know the structure of the following code.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__keys_value_requirement:nn #1#2
{
\str_case:nnF {#2} {
{ true }
{ \cs_set_eq:cc
{ \c__keys_check_root_str \l_keys_path_str }
}
\begin{verbatim}
\__keys_usage:n \__keys_usage:NN \__keys_usage:w
\end{verbatim}

Save the relevant data.

\begin{verbatim}
\__keys_usage:n
\__keys_usage:NN
\__keys_usage:w
\end{verbatim}
Setting a variable takes the type and scope separately so that it is easy to make a new variable if needed.

(End definition for \_keys_usage:n, \_keys_usage:NN, and \_keys_usage:w.)
63.5 Creating key properties

The key property functions are all wrappers for internal functions, meaning that things stay readable and can also be altered later on.

Importantly, while key properties have “normal” argument specs, the underlying code always supplies one braced argument to these. As such, argument expansion is handled by hand rather than using the standard tools. This shows up particularly for the two-argument properties, where things would otherwise go badly wrong.

```
.bool_set:N
.bool_set:c
.bool_gset:N
.bool_gset:c

.cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .bool_set:N } #1
#2 \{ \_keys_bool_set:Nn #1 { } \}

.cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .bool_set:c } #1
#2 \{ \_keys_bool_set:cn {#1} { } \}

.cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .bool_gset:N } #1
#2 \{ \_keys_bool_set:Nn #1 { g } \}

.cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .bool_gset:c } #1
#2 \{ \_keys_bool_set:cn {#1} { g } \}

(End definition for .bool_set:N and .bool_gset:N. These functions are documented on page 223.)
```

```
.bool_set_inverse:N
.bool_set_inverse:c
.bool_gset_inverse:N
.bool_gset_inverse:c

.cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .bool_set_inverse:N } #1
#2 \{ \_keys_bool_set_inverse:Nn #1 { } \}

.cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .bool_set_inverse:c } #1
#2 \{ \_keys_bool_set_inverse:cn {#1} { } \}

.cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .bool_gset_inverse:N } #1
#2 \{ \_keys_bool_set_inverse:Nn #1 { g } \}

.cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .bool_gset_inverse:c } #1
#2 \{ \_keys_bool_set_inverse:cn {#1} { g } \}

(End definition for .bool_set_inverse:N and .bool_gset_inverse:N. These functions are documented on page 223.)
```

```
.choice:

.cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .choice: } #1
#2 \{ \_keys_choice_make: \}

(End definition for .choice:. This function is documented on page 223.)
```

```
.choices:nn
.choices:Vn
.choices:on
.choices:xn

.cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .choices:nn } #1
#2 \{ \_keys_choices_make:mm #1 \}

.cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .choices:Vn } #1
#2 \{ \exp_args:NV \_keys_choices_make:mm #1 \}

.cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .choices:on } #1
#2 \{ \exp_args:No \_keys_choices_make:mm #1 \}
```

One function for this.
Creating code is simply a case of passing through to the underlying set function.

Expansion is left to the internal functions.
Setting a variable is very easy: just pass the data along.

\cs_new_protected:cpn{\c__keys_props_root_str .dim_set:N}{\__keys_variable_set_required:NnnN{\dim}{}}#1
\cs_new_protected:cpn{\c__keys_props_root_str .dim_set:c}{\__keys_variable_set_required:cnnN{\dim}{}}#1
\cs_new_protected:cpn{\c__keys_props_root_str .dim_gset:N}{\__keys_variable_set_required:NnnN{\dim}{g}}#1
\cs_new_protected:cpn{\c__keys_props_root_str .dim_gset:c}{\__keys_variable_set_required:cnnN{\dim}{g}}#1

(End definition for .dim_set:N and .dim_gset:N. These functions are documented on page 224.)

Setting a variable is very easy: just pass the data along.
\cs_new_protected:cpn{\c__keys_props_root_str .fp_set:N}{\__keys_variable_set_required:NnnN{\fp}{}}#1
\cs_new_protected:cpn{\c__keys_props_root_str .fp_set:c}{\__keys_variable_set_required:cnnN{\fp}{}}#1
\cs_new_protected:cpn{\c__keys_props_root_str .fp_gset:N}{\__keys_variable_set_required:NnnN{\fp}{g}}#1
\cs_new_protected:cpn{\c__keys_props_root_str .fp_gset:c}{\__keys_variable_set_required:cnnN{\fp}{g}}#1

(End definition for .fp_set:N and .fp_gset:N. These functions are documented on page 224.)

A single property to create groups of keys.
\cs_new_protected:cpn{\c__keys_props_root_str .groups:n}{\__keys_groups_set:n}{#1}

(End definition for .groups:n. This function is documented on page 224.)

Nothing complex: only one variant at the moment!
\cs_new_protected:cpn{\c__keys_props_root_str .inherit:n}{\__keys_inherit:n}{#1}

(End definition for .inherit:n. This function is documented on page 225.)

The standard hand-off approach.
\cs_new_protected:cpn{\c__keys_props_root_str .initial:n}{\__keys_initialise:n}{#1}
\cs_new_protected:cpn{\c__keys_props_root_str .initial:V}{\exp_args:NV\__keys_initialise:n}{#1}
\cs_new_protected:cpn{\c__keys_props_root_str .initial:o}{\exp_args:No\__keys_initialise:n}{#1}
\cs_new_protected:cpn{\c__keys_props_root_str .initial:x}{\exp_args:Nx\__keys_initialise:n}{#1}

(End definition for .initial:n. This function is documented on page 225.)

Setting a variable is very easy: just pass the data along.
\cs_new_protected:cpn{\c__keys_props_root_str .int_set:N}{\__keys_variable_set_required:NnnN{\int}{}}#1
\cs_new_protected:cpn{\c__keys_props_root_str .int_set:c}{\__keys_variable_set_required:cnnN{\int}{}}#1
\cs_new_protected:cpn{\c__keys_props_root_str .int_gset:N}{\__keys_variable_set_required:NnnN{\int}{g}}#1
\cs_new_protected:cpn{\c__keys_props_root_str .int_gset:c}{\__keys_variable_set_required:cnnN{\int}{g}}#1

(End definition for .int_set:N. This function is documented on page 225.)
Making a meta is handled internally:

```
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .meta:n } #1
{ \__keys_meta_make:n {#1} }
```

(End definition for \meta:n. This function is documented on page 225.)

Meta with path: potentially lots of variants, but for the moment no so many defined.

```
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .meta:nn } #1
{ \__keys_meta_make:nn #1 }
```

(End definition for \meta:nn. This function is documented on page 225.)

The same idea as \choice: and \choices:nn, but where more than one choice is allowed.

```
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .multichoice: }
{ \__keys_multichoice_make: }
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .multichoices:nn } #1
{ \__keys_multichoice_make:nn #1 }
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .multichoices:Vn } #1
{ \exp_args:NV \__keys_multichoice_make:nn #1 }
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .multichoices:on } #1
{ \exp_args:No \__keys_multichoice_make:nn #1 }
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .multichoices:xn } #1
{ \exp_args:Nx \__keys_multichoice_make:nn #1 }
```

(End definition for \multichoice: and \multichoices:nn. These functions are documented on page 225.)

Setting a variable is very easy: just pass the data along.

```
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .muskip_set:N } #1
{ \__keys_variable_set_required:NnnN #1 { muskip } { } n }
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .muskip_set:c } #1
{ \__keys_variable_set_required:cnnN {#1} { muskip } { } n }
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .muskip_gset:N } #1
{ \__keys_variable_set_required:NnnN #1 { muskip } { g } n }
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .muskip_gset:c } #1
{ \__keys_variable_set_required:cnnN {#1} { muskip } { g } n }
```

(End definition for \muskip_set:N and \muskip_gset:N. These functions are documented on page 226.)
Setting a variable is very easy: just pass the data along.

```
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .prop_put:N } #1
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .prop_put:c } #1
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .prop_gput:N } #1
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .prop_gput:c } #1
```

(End definition for .prop_put:N and .prop_gput:N. These functions are documented on page 226.)

Setting a variable is very easy: just pass the data along.

```
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .skip_set:N } #1
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .skip_set:c } #1
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .skip_gset:N } #1
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .skip_gset:c } #1
```

(End definition for .skip_set:N and .skip_gset:N. These functions are documented on page 226.)

Setting a variable is very easy: just pass the data along.

```
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .str_set:N } #1
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .str_set:c } #1
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .str_set_x:N } #1
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .str_set_x:c } #1
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .str_gset:N } #1
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .str_gset:c } #1
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .str_gset_x:N } #1
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .str_gset_x:c } #1
```

(End definition for .str_set:N and others. These functions are documented on page 226.)

Setting a variable is very easy: just pass the data along.

```
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .tl_set:N } #1
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .tl_set:c } #1
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .tl_gset:N } #1
\cs_new_protected:cpn { \c__keys_props_root_str .tl_gset:c } #1
```

(End definition for .tl_set:N and others. These functions are documented on page 226.)
Another simple wrapper.

These are very similar, so both call the same function.

These functions are documented on page 227.

63.6 Setting keys

A simple wrapper allowing for nesting.
Setting known keys simply means setting the appropriate flag, then running the standard code. To allow for nested setting, any existing value of \_keys\_unused\_clist is saved on the stack and reset afterwards. Note that for speed/simplicity reasons we use a \texttt{tl} operation to set the clist here!

```latex
\begin{verbatim}
\keys_set_known:nnN \keys_set_known:nVnN \keys_set_known:nvnN \keys_set_known:nonN \__keys_set_known:nnnnN \keys_set_known:nn \keys_set_known:nV \keys_set_known:nv \keys_set_known:no \__keys_set_known:nnn
\end{verbatim}
```

(End definition for \keys_set:nn, \_keys_set:nn, and \_keys_set:nnn. This function is documented on page 230.)
The idea of setting keys in a selective manner again uses flags wrapped around the basic code. The comments on \texttt{\keys_set_known:nnN} also apply here. We have a bit more shuffling to do to keep everything nestable.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \keys_set_filter:nnn #1#2#3#4
{\exp_args:No \__keys_set_filter:nnnnn#1#2#3#4
\l__keys_unused_clist
\q__keys_no_value {#1} {#2} {#3} #4}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \keys_set_filter:nnn { nnV , nnv , nno }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \keys_set_filter:nnnn #1#2#3#4#5 #6
{\exp_args:No \__keys_set_filter:nnnnn
\l__keys_unused_clist
\l__keys_unused_clist {#4} {#1} {#2} {#3} #5 #6}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \keys_set_filter:nnnn { nnV , nnv , nno }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__keys_set_filter:nnnnn #1#2#3#4#5#6
{\clist_clear:N \l__keys_unused_clist
\__keys_set_filter:nnn {#2} {#3} {#4}
\tl_set:Nn \exp_not:N \l__keys_relative_tl
\q__keys_no_value {#1} {#2} {#3} {#4} {#5} #6
\tl_set:Nn \exp_not:N \l__keys_relative_tl
\l__keys_unused_clist #1}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \keys_set_groups:nnn #1#2#3
{\__keys_set_filter:nnn \q__keys_no_value {#1} {#2} {#3}}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \keys_set_groups:nnn { nnV , nnv , nno }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \keys_set_groups:nnnn #1#2#3#4#5#6
{\__keys_set_filter:nnn \q__keys_no_value {#1} {#2} {#3} {#4} {#5} {#6}}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \keys_set_selective:nnn #1#2#3#4#5#6
{\__keys_set_filter:nnn \q__keys_no_value {#1} {#2} {#3} {#4} {#5} {#6}}
\end{verbatim}
A shared system once again. First, set the current path and add a default if needed. There are then checks to see if the a value is required or forbidden. If everything passes, move on to execute the code.

The key path here can be fully defined, after which there is a search for the key and module names: the user may have passed them with part of what is actually the module (for our purposes) in the key name. As that happens on a per-key basis, we use the stack approach to restore the module name without a group.
This function uses \texttt{\cs_set_nopar:Npx} internally for performance reasons, the argument 
\#1 is already a string in every usage, so turning it into a string again seems unnecessary.

If selective setting is active, there are a number of possible sub-cases to consider. The
key name may not be known at all or if it is, it may not have any groups assigned. There
is then the question of whether the selection is opt-in or opt-out.
In the case where selective setting requires a comparison of the list of groups which apply to a key with the list of those which have been set active. That requires two mappings, and again a different outcome depending on whether opt-in or opt-out is set. We cannot replace the clist mapping by \clist_if_in:NnTF because catcodes may not be the same; they cannot be normalized easily in the clist because of the remote possibility that some items need braces if they involve commas or leading/trailing spaces.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__keys_check_groups:
\verbatim{\begin{verbatim}
\bool_if:NTF \l__keys_filtered_bool
\__keys_execute:
\__keys_store_unused:
\end{verbatim}}

\cs_new_protected:Npm \__keys_check_groups:
{ \begin{verbatim}
\bool_set_false:N \l__keys_tmp_bool
\seq_map_inline:Nn \l__keys_selective_seq
{ \clist_map_inline:Nn \l__keys_groups_clist
{ \str_if_eq:nnT {##1} {####1}
{ \bool_set_true:N \l__keys_tmp_bool
\clist_map_break:n \seq_map_break:
} }
\bool_if:NTF \l__keys_tmp_bool
{ \bool_if:NTF \l__keys_filtered_bool
\__keys_store_unused:
\__keys_execute:
}
\bool_if:NTF \l__keys_filtered_bool
\__keys_execute:
\__keys_store_unused:
\end{verbatim}}

(End definition for \__keys_set_keyval:n and others.)

\__keys_value_or_default:n
\__keys_default_inherit:
If a value is given, return it as #1, otherwise send a default if available.
\verbatim{\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npm \__keys_value_or_default:n #1
\bool_if:NTF \l__keys_no_value_bool
\__keys_store_unused:
\__keys_execute:
\end{verbatim}}

\verbatim{\begin{verbatim}
\cs_if_exist:cTF { \c__keys_default_root_str \l_keys_path_str }
\tl_set_eq:Nc \l_keys_value_tl
\l_keys_value_tl
{ \c__keys_default_root_str \l_keys_path_str }
\end{verbatim}}

941
Actually executing a key is done in two parts. First, look for the key itself, then look for the unknown key with the same path. If both of these fail, complain. What exactly happens if a key is unknown depends on whether unknown keys are being skipped or if an error should be raised.

To deal with the case where there is no hit, we leave \_keys_execute_unknown: in the input stream and clean it up using the break function: that avoids needing a boolean.
A key's code is in the control sequence with csname \c__keys_code_root_str #1. We expand it once to get the replacement text (with argument #2) and call \use:n with this replacement as its argument. This ensures that any undefined control sequence error in the key's code will lead to an error message of the form <argument>...⟨control sequence⟩ in which one can read the (undefined) ⟨control sequence⟩ in full, rather than an error message that starts with the potentially very long key name, which would make the (undefined) ⟨control sequence⟩ be truncated or sometimes completely hidden. See https://github.com/latex3/latex2e/issues/351.
\bool_if:FN \l__keys_no_value_bool
{ = { \exp_not:o \l_keys_value_tl } }
}\}
\tl_if_empty:NTF \l__keys_relative_tl
{\clist_put_right:Nx \l__keys_unused_clist
{ \l_keys_path_str
\bool_if:FN \l__keys_no_value_bool
{ = { \exp_not:o \l_keys_value_tl } }
}\}
{ \__keys_store_unused_aux: }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__keys_store_unused_aux:
{ \__kernel_tl_set:Nx \l__keys_relative_tl
{ \exp_args:No \__keys_trim_spaces:n \l__keys_relative_tl }
\use:x
{ \cs_set_protected:Npn \__keys_store_unused:w
###1 \l__keys_relative_tl /
###2 \l__keys_relative_tl /
###3 \s__keys_stop
}
\tl_if_blank:nF {##1}
{ \msg_error:nnxx { keys } { bad-relative-key-path }
\l_keys_path_str
\l__keys_relative_tl }
\clist_put_right:Nx \l__keys_unused_clist
{ \exp_not:n {##2}
\bool_if:FN \l__keys_no_value_bool
{ = { \exp_not:o \l_keys_value_tl } }
}\}
\use:x
{ \__keys_store_unused:w \l_keys_path_str
\l__keys_relative_tl / \l__keys_relative_tl /
\s__keys_stop
}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__keys_store_unused:w \l_keys_path_str
\l__keys_relative_tl / \l__keys_relative_tl / \s__keys_stop
{ }
(End definition for \__keys_execute: and others.)
\__keys_choice_find:n
\__keys_choice_find:nn
\__keys_multichoice_find:n

Executing a choice has two parts. First, try the choice given, then if that fails call the unknown key. That always exists, as it is created when a choice is first made. So there
is no need for any escape code. For multiple choices, the same code ends up used in a mapping.

```
cs_new:Npn \_keys_choice_find:n #1  
  {
    str_if_empty:NTF \_keys_inherit_str
      { \_keys_choice_find:nn \_keys_path_str #1 }  
      { \_keys_choice_find:nn
          { \_keys_inherit_str / \_keys_key_str } #1  
        }
  }
cs_new:Npn \_keys_choice_find:nn #1#2  
  {
    cs_if_exist:cTF { \c__keys_code_root_str #1 / \_keys_trim_spaces:n #2 }
      { \_keys_execute:nn { #1 / \_keys_trim_spaces:n #2 } {#2}  
        { \_keys_execute:nn { #1 / unknown } {#2}  
          }
      }
cs_new:Npn \_keys_multichoice_find:n #1  
      { \clist_map_function:nN #1 \_keys_choice_find:n  
        (End definition for \_keys_choice_find:n, \_keys_choice_find:nn, and \_keys_multichoice_find:n.)
      }
```

### 63.7 Utilities

```
  Used to strip off the ending part of the key path after the last /.
```  
```
cs_new:Npn \_keys_parent:o #1
  {
    exp_after:wN \_keys_parent_auxi:w #1 \q_nil \_keys_parent_auxii:w / \q_nil \_keys_parent_auxiv:w
  }
cs_new:Npn \_keys_parent_auxi:w #1 #2 \q_nil #3
  {
    #3 { #1 } #2 \q_nil #3
  }
cs_new:Npn \_keys_parent_auxii:w #1 #2 \q_nil \_keys_parent_auxii:w
  {
    #1 \_keys_parent_auxi:w #2 \q_nil \_keys_parent_auxiii:n
  }
cs_new:Npn \_keys_parent_auxiii:n #1
  {
    / #1 \_keys_parent_auxi:w
  }
cs_new:Npn \_keys_parent_auxiv:w #1 \q_nil \_keys_parent_auxiv:w
  {
  }
```

(End definition for \_keys_parent:o and others.)

```
```

Space stripping has to allow for the fact that the key here might have several parts, and spaces need to be stripped from each part. Since the key name is turned into a string groups can’t be stripped accidentally and the precautions of `\_keys_parent` are not necessary, in this case it is much faster to just directly strip spaces around `/.`
\keys_if_exist_p:nn
\keys_if_exist:nnTF

A utility for others to see if a key exists.

\keys_if_choice_exist_p:nnn
\keys_if_choice_exist:nnnTF

Just an alternative view on \keys_if_exist:nnTF.
\keys_show:nn
\keys_log:nn
\__keys_show:Nnn

To show a key, show its code using a message.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \keys_show:nn
{ \__keys_show:Nnn \msg_show:nnxxxx }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \keys_log:nn
{ \__keys_show:Nnn \msg_log:nnxxxx }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__keys_show:Nnn #1#2#3
{ #1 { keys } { show-key } { \__keys_trim_spaces:n { #2 / #3 } }
\keys_if_exist:nnT {#2} {#3}
{ \exp_args:Nnf \msg_show_item_unbraced:nn { code } }
\exp_args:Nc \cs_replacement_spec:N
{ \c__keys_code_root_str \__keys_trim_spaces:n { #2 / #3 } }
}

(End definition for \keys_show:nn, \keys_log:nn, and \__keys_show:Nnn. These functions are documented on page 233.)

63.8 Messages

For when there is a need to complain.
\msg_new:nnnn { keys } { bad-relative-key-path } { The-key-’#1’-is-not-inside-the-’#2’-path. }
\msg_new:nnnn { keys } { cannot-be-expressed-relative-to-path-’#2’. }
\msg_new:nnnn { keys } { boolean-values-only } { Key-’#1’-accepts-boolean-values-only. }
\msg_new:nnnn { keys } { choice-unknown } { Key-’#1’-accepts-only-a-fixed-set-of-choices. }
\msg_new:nnnn { keys } { unknown } { The-key-’#1’-is-unknown-and-is-being-ignored. }
\msg_new:nnnn { keys } { unknown key } { The-module-’#2’-does-not-have-a-key-called-’#1’. Check that you have spelled the key name correctly. }

947
\msg_new:nnnn { keys } { nested-choice-key }
\{ Attempt-to-define-#1-as-a-nested-choice-key. \}
\{
    The-key-#1-cannot-be-defined-as-a-choice-as-the-parent-key-#2-is-itself-a-choice.
\}
\msg_new:nnnn { keys } { value-forbidden }
\{ The-key-#1-does-not-take-a-value. \}
\{
    The-key-#1-should-be-given-without-a-value.\}
\{ The-value-#2-was-present:-the-key-will-be-ignored. \}
\msg_new:nnnn { keys } { value-required }
\{ The-key-#1-requires-a-value. \}
\{
    The-key-#1-must-have-a-value.\}
\{ No-value-was-present:-the-key-will-be-ignored. \}
\msg_new:nnn { keys } { show-key }
\{ The-key-#1-
    \tl_if_empty:nTF {#2}
    \{ is-undefined. \}
    \{ has-the-properties: #2 \}
\}
\prop_gput:Nnn \g_msg_module_name_prop { keys } { \LaTeX3 }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g_msg_module_type_prop { keys } { }
</package>
Chapter 64

\textbf{l3intarray} implementation

There are two implementations for this module: One \texttt{fontdimen} based one for more traditional \TeX{} engines and a Lua based one for engines with Lua support. Both versions do not allow negative array sizes.

64.1 Lua implementation

First, let’s look at the Lua variant:

We select the Lua version if the Lua helpers were defined. This can be detected by the presence of \texttt{__intarray_gset_count:Nw}.

64.1.1 Allocating arrays

Used to differentiate intarrays in Lua and to record an invalid index.

Used as marker for intarrays in Lua. Followed by an unbraced number identifying the array and a single space. This format is used to make it easy to scan from Lua.
\__intarray_new:Nn \__intarray_new:cn \__intarray_new:N

\intarray_new:Nn \__intarray_new:N \__intarray_new:cn

\intarray_new:Nn \__intarray_new:N \__intarray_new:cn

\__intarray_new:Nn \__intarray_new:cn \__intarray_new:N \__intarray_new:cn

\__intarray_new:Nn \__intarray_new:cn \__intarray_new:N \__intarray_new:cn

\__intarray_new:Nn \__intarray_new:cn \__intarray_new:N \__intarray_new:cn

\__intarray_new:Nn \__intarray_new:cn \__intarray_new:N \__intarray_new:cn

\__intarray_new:Nn \__intarray_new:cn \__intarray_new:N \__intarray_new:cn

\__intarray_new:Nn \__intarray_new:cn \__intarray_new:N \__intarray_new:cn

\__intarray_new:Nn \__intarray_new:cn \__intarray_new:N \__intarray_new:cn

\__intarray_new:Nn \__intarray_new:cn \__intarray_new:N \__intarray_new:cn

\__intarray_new:Nn \__intarray_new:cn \__intarray_new:N \__intarray_new:cn

\__intarray_new:Nn \__intarray_new:cn \__intarray_new:N \__intarray_new:cn

\__intarray_new:Nn \__intarray_new:cn \__intarray_new:N \__intarray_new:cn

\__intarray_new:Nn \__intarray_new:cn \__intarray_new:N \__intarray_new:cn

\__intarray_new:Nn \__intarray_new:cn \__intarray_new:N \__intarray_new:cn

\__intarray_new:Nn \__intarray_new:cn \__intarray_new:N \__intarray_new:cn

\__intarray_new:Nn \__intarray_new:cn \__intarray_new:N \__intarray_new:cn

Before we get to the first command implemented in Lua, we first need some definitions. Since \token.create only works correctly if TpX has seen the tokens before, we first run a short TpX sequence to ensure that all relevant control sequences are known.

\__intarray_table

\__intarray_table do

local \__intarray_table = get_luadata and get_luadata'\__intarray' or {[0] = {}}

function \__intarray_table()

local t = scan_token()

if t ~= intarray_marker then

put_next(t)

\text.error'LaTeX Error: intarray expected'
return tables[0]
end
local i = scan_int()
local current_table = tables[i]
if current_table then return current_table end
current_table = {}
tables[i] = current_table
return current_table
end

Since in \LaTeX{} this is loaded in the format, we want to preserve any intarrays which are
created while format building for the actual run.

To do this, we use the register\_lua\_data mechanism from \texttt{l3luatex}: Directly before
the format get dumped, the following function gets invoked and serializes all existing
tables into a string. This string gets compiled and dumped into the format and is made
available at the beginning of regular runs as \texttt{get\_lua\_data}'@@'.

\begin{verbatim}
if register\_lua\_data then
    register\_lua\_data('__intarray', function()
        local t = '{[0]={},
        for i=1, #tables do
        t = string\_format("%s(%s),", t, table\_concat(tables[i], ','))
        end
        return t .. ")"
    end)
end
end
\end{verbatim}

Set and get the size of an array. “Setting the size” means in this context that we add
zeros until we reach the desired size.

\begin{verbatim}
\_intarray\_count:N
\_intarray\_count:c
\_intarray\_set\_count:Nw
local sprint = \text{sprint}
luacmd('\_intarray\_set\_count:Nw', function()
    local t = \_intarray\_table()
    local n = scan\_int()
    for i=#t+1, n do t[i] = 0 end
    end, 'protected', 'global')
luacmd('intarray\_count:N', function()
    sprint(-2, \_intarray\_table())
end, 'global')
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\_intarray\_table}.)
64.1.2 Array items

\_\_intarray_gset:wF\_\_intarray_gset:w
The setter provided by Lua. The argument order somewhat emulates the \fontdimen:
First the array index, followed by the intarray and then the new value. This has been
chosen over a more conventional order to provide a delimiter for the numbers.

\_\_kernel_intarray_gset:Nnn\_\_kernel_intarray_gset:cnn
The \_\_kernel_intarray_gset:Nnn function does not use \int_eval:n, namely its
arguments must be suitable for \int_value:w. The user version checks the position and
value are within bounds.

\intarray_gzero:N\intarray_gzero:c
Set the appropriate array entry to zero. No bound checking needed.

\lua
\luacmd('\_\_intarray_gset:wF', function()
  local i = scan_int()
  local t = \_\_intarray_table()
  if t[i] then
    t[i] = scan_int()
    put_next(use_none)
  else
    tex.count.l\_\_intarray_bad_index_int = i
    scan_int()
    put_next(use_i)
  end
end, 'protected', 'global')

\luacmd('\_\_intarray_gset:w', function()
  local i = scan_int()
  local t = \_\_intarray_table()
  t[i] = scan_int()
end, 'protected', 'global')

\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_kernel_intarray_gset:Nnn #1#2#3
{ \_\_intarray_gset:w #2 #1 #3 \scan_stop: }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \intarray_gset:Nnn #1#2#3
{ \_\_kernel_intarray_gset:Nnn \int_eval:n {#2} #1 \int_eval:n{#3} }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \intarray_gset:Nnn { c }

\lua
\luacmd('\intarray_gzero:N', function()
  local t = \_\_intarray_table()
  for i=1, #t do
    t[i] = 0
  end
end, 'protected', 'global')
End definition for \intarray_gzero:N. This function is documented on page \textit{237}.

Get the appropriate entry and perform bound checks. The \_kernel_intarray_item:N function omits bound checks and omits \texttt{\int_eval:n}, namely its argument must be a \TeX integer suitable for \texttt{\int_value:w}.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__kernel_intarray_item:Nn \#1\#2
{ \__intarray_item:w \int_eval:n {\#2} \#1 }
\cs_new:Npn \intarray_item:Nn \#1\#2
{ \__intarray_item:wF \__kernel_intarray_item:Nf \int_eval:n \#2 \#1 }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \intarray_item:Nn { c }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\intarray_item:N} and others. This function is documented on page \textit{237}.)

Importantly, \texttt{\intarray_item:N} only evaluates its argument once.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \intarray_rand_item:N \#1
{ \__kernel_intarray_item:N \#1 \_intarray_rand_item:c \#1 }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\intarray_item:N} and others. This function is documented on page \textit{237}.)
64.1.3 Working with contents of integer arrays

We use the \texttt{\_kernel_intarray\_gset:Nnn} which does not do bounds checking and instead automatically resizes the array. This is not implemented in Lua to ensure that the clist parsing is consistent with the clist module.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \intarray\_const\_from\_clist:Nn \l__intarray\_loop\_int
\end{verbatim}

The \texttt{\_intarray\_to\_clist:N} auxiliary allows to choose the delimiter and is also used in \texttt{\intarray\_show:N}. Here we just pass the information to Lua and let \texttt{table.concat} do the actual work. We discard the category codes of the passed delimiter but this is not an issue since the delimiter is always just a comma or a comma and a space. In both cases \texttt{sprint(2, ...)} provides the right catcodes.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \intarray\_to\_clist:N \l__intarray\_loop\_int
\end{verbatim}

Loop through part of the array.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__kernel\_intarray\_range\_to\_clist:Nnn \l__intarray\_loop\_int
\end{verbatim}
local from = scan_int()
local to = scan_int()
sprint(-2, concat(t, ',', from, to))
end, 'global')
64.2.1 Allocating arrays

\__intarray_entry:w  We use these primitives quite a lot in this module.
\__intarray_count:w
\cs_new_eq:NN \__intarray_entry:w \tex_fontdimen:D
\cs_new_eq:NN \__intarray_count:w \tex_hyphenchar:D

(End definition for \__intarray_entry:w and \__intarray_count:w.)

\c__intarray_sp_dim  Used to convert integers to dimensions fast.
\dim_const:Nn \c__intarray_sp_dim { 1 sp }

(End definition for \c__intarray_sp_dim.)

\g__intarray_font_int  Used to assign one font per array.
\int_new:N \g__intarray_font_int

(End definition for \g__intarray_font_int.)

\intarray_new:Nn  Declare #1 to be a font (arbitrarily cmr10 at a never-used size). Store the array's size as the \hyphenchar of that font and make sure enough \fontdimen are allocated, by setting the last one. Then clear any \fontdimen that cmr10 starts with. It seems Lua\TeX{}'s cmr10 has an extra \fontdimen parameter number 8 compared to other engines (for a math font we would replace 8 by 22 or some such). Every intarray must be global; it’s enough to run this check in \intarray_new:Nn.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__intarray_new:N #1
\__kernel_chk_if_free_cs:N #1
\int_gincr:N \g__intarray_font_int
\tex_global:D \tex_font:D #1 = cmr10~at~ \g__intarray_font_int \c__intarray_sp_dim \scan_stop:
\int_step_inline:nn { 8 }{ \__kernel_intarray_gset:Nnn #1 {##1} \c_zero_int }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \intarray_new:Nn #1#2
\__intarray_new:N #1\__intarray_count:w #1 = \int_eval:n {#2} \scan_stop:
\int_compare:nNnT { \intarray_count:N #1 } < 0
\msg_error:nnx { kernel } { negative-array-size }
{ \__kernel_intarray_gset:Nnn #1 {#1} \c_zero_int }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \intarray_new:Nn #1#2
\__intarray_new:N #1\intarray_count:N #1 = \int_eval:n {#2} \scan_stop:
\int_compare:nNnT { \intarray_count:N #1 } > 0
{ \__kernel_intarray_gset:Nnn #1 {#1} { 0 } }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \intarray_new:Nn { c }

(End definition for \intarray_new:Nn and \__intarray_new:N. This function is documented on page 236.)

\intarray_count:N  Size of an array.
\intarray_count:c
\cs_new:Npn \intarray_count:N #1 { \int_value:w \__intarray_count:w #1 }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \intarray_count:N { c }

(End definition for \intarray_count:N. This function is documented on page 236.)
64.2.2 Array items

Used when an item to be stored is larger than \c_max_dim in absolute value; it is replaced by ±\c_max_dim.

\__intarray_signed_max_dim:n
\cs_new:Npn \__intarray_signed_max_dim:n #1
\{ \int_value:w \int_compare:nNnT {#1} < 0 { - } \c_max_dim \}

(End definition for \__intarray_signed_max_dim:n.)

\__intarray_bounds:NNnTF
\__intarray_bounds_error:NNnw

The functions \intarray_gset:Nnn and \intarray_item:Nn share bounds checking. The T branch is used if #3 is within bounds of the array #2.

\cs_new:Npn \__intarray_bounds:NNnTF #1#2#3
\{ \if_int_compare:w 1 > #3 \exp_stop_f:
\__intarray_bounds_error:NNnw #1 #2 {#3}
\else:
 \if_int_compare:w #3 > \intarray_count:N #2 \exp_stop_f:
\__intarray_bounds_error:NNnw #1 #2 {#3}
 \fi:
 \fi:
 \use_i:nn
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__intarray_bounds_error:NNnw #1#2#3#4 \use_i:nn #5#6
\{ \msg_error:nnxxx #1 {#2} { \token_to_str:N #3 } { \intarray_count:N #2 } {#5} {#6}
\}

(End definition for \__intarray_bounds:NNnTF and \__intarray_bounds_error:NNnw.)

\intarray_gset:Nnn
\intarray_gset:cnn
\__kernel_intarray_gset:Nnn
\__intarray_gset:Nnn
\__intarray_gset_overflow:Nnn

Set the appropriate \fontdimen. The \__kernel_intarray_gset:Nnn function does not use \int_eval:n, namely its arguments must be suitable for \int_value:w. The user version checks the position and value are within bounds.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__kernel_intarray_gset:Nnn #1#2#3
\{ \__intarray_entry:w #2 #1 #3 \c__intarray_sp_dim \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \intarray_gset:Nnn #1#2#3
\{ \exp_after:wN \__intarray_gset:Nww \exp_after:wN #1 \int_value:w \int_eval:n {#2} \exp_after:wN ; \int_value:w \int_eval:n {#3} ; \}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \intarray_gset:Nnn { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__intarray_gset:Nww #1#2 #3 ;
\{ \__intarray_bounds:NNnTF \msg_error:nnxxx #1 {#2}
 \__intarray_gset_overflow_test:nw {#3}
 \__kernel_intarray_gset:Nnn #1 {#2} {#3}
 \}
\}

957
\intarray_gzero:N
\intarray_gzero:c

Set the appropriate \fontdimen to zero. No bound checking needed. The \prg_replicate:nn possibly uses quite a lot of memory, but this is somewhat comparable to the size of the array, and it is much faster than an \int_step_inline:nn loop.

\intarray_item:Nn
\intarray_item:cn
\__kernel_intarray_item:Nn
\__intarray_item:Nn

Get the appropriate \fontdimen and perform bound checks. The \__kernel_intarray_item:Nn function omits bound checks and omits \int_eval:n, namely its argument must be a \TeX{} integer suitable for \int_value:w.
\cs_new:Npn \__intarray_item:Nw #1#2 ;
{ \__intarray_bounds:NNNTF \msg_expandable_error:nnff #1 {#2} 
  { \__kernel_intarray_item:Nn #1 {#2} } 
  { 0 } }

(End definition for \intarray_item:Nn, \__kernel_intarray_item:Nn, and \__intarray_item:Nn. This function is documented on page 237.)

\intarray_rand_item:N
\intarray_rand_item:c

Importantly, \intarray_item:Nn only evaluates its argument once.

\cs_new:Npn \intarray_rand_item:N #1
{ \intarray_item:Nn #1 { \int_rand:n { \intarray_count:N #1 } } }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \intarray_rand_item:N { c }

(End definition for \intarray_rand_item:N. This function is documented on page 237.)

64.2.3 Working with contents of integer arrays

Similar to \intarray_new:Nn (which we don’t use because when debugging is enabled that function checks the variable name starts with \texttt{g}). We make use of the fact that \TeX allows allocation of successive \texttt{\fontdimen} as long as no other font has been declared: no need to count the comma list items first. We need the code in \intarray_gset:Nnn that checks the item value is not too big, namely \__intarray_gset_overflow_test:nw, but not the code that checks bounds. At the end, set the size of the intarray.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \intarray_const_from_clist:Nn #1#2
{ \__intarray_new:N #1
 \int_zero:N \l__intarray_loop_int 
 \clist_map_inline:nn {#2} { \exp_args:Nf \__intarray_const_from_clist:nN { \int_eval:n {##1} } #1 } 
 \__intarray_count:w #1 \l__intarray_loop_int }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \intarray_const_from_clist:Nn { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__intarray_const_from_clist:nN #1#2
{ \int_incr:N \l__intarray_loop_int 
 \__intarray_gset_overflow_test:nw {#1} 
 \__kernel_intarray_gset:Nnn #2 \l__intarray_loop_int {#1} }

(End definition for \intarray_const_from_clist:Nn and \__intarray_const_from_clist:nN. This function is documented on page 237.)

\intarray_to_clist:N
\intarray_to_clist:c
\__intarray_to_clist:Nn
\__intarray_to_clist:w

Loop through the array, putting a comma before each item. Remove the leading comma with \texttt{f}-expansion. We also use the auxiliary in \intarray_show:N with argument comma, space.

\cs_new:Npn \intarray_to_clist:N #1 { \__intarray_to_clist:Nn #1 \{ , \} }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \intarray_to_clist:N { c }
\cs_new:Npn \__intarray_to_clist:Nn #1#2
{ \int_compare:nNnF { \intarray_count:N #1 } = \c_zero_int 
  \exp_last_unbraced:Nf \use_none:n}
\cs_new:Npn \__intarray_to_clist:w #1 ; #2 \prg_break_point:
\__kernel_intarray_item:Nn \l__intarray_to_clist:w {#1}
\exp_after:wN \__intarray_to_clist:w
\int_value:w \int_eval:w #1 + \c_one_int ; #2 {#3}

(End definition for \intarray_to_clist:N, \__intarray_to_clist:Nn, and \__intarray_to_clist:w. This function is documented on page 302.)

Loop through part of the array.
\cs_new:Npn \__kernel_intarray_range_to_clist:Nnn #1#2#3
\exp_last_unbraced:Nf \use_none:n
\exp_after:wN \__intarray_range_to_clist:ww
\int_value:w \int_eval:w #2 \exp_after:wN ;
\int_value:w \int_eval:w #3 ;
#1 \prg_break_point:
\prg_break:n
\__kernel_intarray_item:Nn #3 {#1}
\exp_after:wN \__intarray_range_to_clist:ww
\int_value:w \int_eval:w #1 + \c_one_int ; #2 ; #3

(End definition for \__kernel_intarray_range_to_clist:Nnn and \__intarray_range_to_clist:ww.)

Loop through part of the array.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__kernel_intarray_gset_range_from_clist:Nnn #1#2#3
\int_set:Nn \l__intarray_loop_int {#2}
\__intarray_gset_range:Nw #1 \l__intarray_loop_int , , \prg_break_point:
\prg_break:n
\__kernel_intarray_gset:Nnn #1 \l__intarray_loop_int {#3}
\int_incr:N \l__intarray_loop_int
\__intarray_gset_range:Nw #1 #2 ,
\prg_break:n
\__kernel_intarray_gset:Nnn #1 \l__intarray_loop_int {#2}
\int_incr:N \l__intarray_loop_int
\__intarray_gset_range:Nw #1 #1

960
64.3 Common parts

Convert the list to a comma list (with spaces after each comma)

\cs_new_protected:Npn \intarray_show:N { \__intarray_show:NN \msg_show:nnxxxx }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \intarray_show:N { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \intarray_log:N { \__intarray_show:NN \msg_log:nnxxxx }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \intarray_log:N { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__intarray_show:NN #1#2
{
\__kernel_chk_defined:NT #2
{
#1 { intarray } { show }
{ \token_to_str:N #2 }
{ \intarray_count:N #2 }
{ \__intarray_to_clist:Nn { , ~ } }
}
}
(End definition for \intarray_show:N and \intarray_log:N. These functions are documented on page 237.)

64.3.1 Random arrays

We only perform the bounds checks once. This is done by two \__kernel_gset_-overflow_test:nw, with an appropriate empty argument to avoid a spurious “at position #1” part in the error message. Then calculate the number of choices: this is at most $(2^{30} - 1) - (-(2^{30} - 1)) + 1 = 2^{31} - 1$, which just barely does not overflow. For small ranges use \__kernel_randint:n (making sure to subtract 1 before adding the random number to the ⟨min⟩, to avoid overflow when ⟨min⟩ or ⟨max⟩ are ±\c_max_int), otherwise \__kernel_randint:nn. Finally, if there are no random numbers do not define any of the auxiliaries.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \intarray_gset_rand:Nn #1{ \intarray_gset_rand:Nnn #1 { 1 } }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \intarray_gset_rand:Nn { c }
\sys_if_rand_exist:TF
{
\cs_new_protected:Npn \intarray_gset_rand:Nnn #1#2#3
{
\__intarray_gset_rand:Nff #1
{ \int_eval:n {#2} } { \int_eval:n {#3} }
}
\msg_expandable_error:nnnn { kernel } { randint-backward-range } {#2} {#3}
\__intarray_gset_all_same:Nn #1 {#3} {#2}
}
(End definition for \texttt{\intarray_gset_rand:Nn} and others. These functions are documented on page \pageref{intarray_gset_rand:Nn}.)
Chapter 65

l3fp implementation

Nothing to see here: everything is in the subfiles!
Chapter 66

l3fp-aux implementation

66.1 Access to primitives

Largely for performance reasons, we need to directly access primitives rather than use \texttt{\int eval:n}. This happens a lot, so we use private names. The same is true for \texttt{\romannumeral}, although it is used much less widely.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_eq:NN \__fp_int_eval:w \tex_numexpr:D
\cs_new_eq:NN \__fp_int_eval_end: \scan_stop:
\cs_new_eq:NN \__fp_int_to_roman:w \tex_romannumeral:D
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__fp_int_eval:w, \__fp_int_eval_end:, and \__fp_int_to_roman:w.)

66.2 Internal representation

Internally, a floating point number \( X \) is a token list containing

\begin{verbatim}
\s__fp \__fp_chk:w \( case \) \( sign \) \( body \)
\end{verbatim}

Let us explain each piece separately.

Internal floating point numbers are used in expressions, and in this context are subject to \texttt{f}-expansion. They must leave a recognizable mark after \texttt{f}-expansion, to prevent the floating point number from being re-parsed. Thus, \s__fp is simply another name for \texttt{relax}.

When used directly without an accessor function, floating points should produce an error: this is the role of \__fp_chk:w. We could make floating point variables be protected to prevent them from expanding under \texttt{x}-expansion, but it seems more convenient to treat them as a subcase of token list variables.

The (decimal part of the) IEEE-754-2008 standard requires the format to be able to represent special floating point numbers besides the usual positive and negative cases. We distinguish the various possibilities by their \texttt{(case)}, which is a single digit:

0 zeros: +0 and -0,

1 “normal” numbers (positive and negative),
Table 3: Internal representation of floating point numbers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Representation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 0 \s__fp_... ;</td>
<td>Positive zero.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 2 \s__fp_... ;</td>
<td>Negative zero.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 0 ⟨exponent⟩ {⟨X1⟩} {⟨X2⟩} {⟨X3⟩} {⟨X4⟩} ;</td>
<td>Positive floating point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 2 ⟨exponent⟩ {⟨X1⟩} {⟨X2⟩} {⟨X3⟩} {⟨X4⟩} ;</td>
<td>Negative floating point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 0 \s__fp_... ;</td>
<td>Positive infinity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 2 \s__fp_... ;</td>
<td>Negative infinity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 1 \s__fp_... ;</td>
<td>Quiet nan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 1 \s__fp_... ;</td>
<td>Signalling nan.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 infinities: +inf and -inf,
3 quiet and signalling nan.

The ⟨sign⟩ is 0 (positive) or 2 (negative), except in the case of nan, which have ⟨sign⟩ = 1. This ensures that changing the ⟨sign⟩ digit to 2−⟨sign⟩ is exactly equivalent to changing the sign of the number.

Special floating point numbers have the form
\s__fp \s__fp_chk:w ⟨case⟩ ⟨sign⟩ \s__fp_... ;

where \s__fp_... is a scan mark carrying information about how the number was formed (useful for debugging).

Normal floating point numbers (⟨case⟩ = 1) have the form
\s__fp \s__fp_chk:w 1 ⟨sign⟩ ⟨⟨exponent⟩⟩ {⟨⟨X1⟩⟩} {⟨⟨X2⟩⟩} {⟨⟨X3⟩⟩} {⟨⟨X4⟩⟩} ;

Here, the ⟨exponent⟩ is an integer, between −10000 and 10000. The body consists in four blocks of exactly 4 digits, 0000 ≤⟨⟨Xi⟩⟩≤ 9999, and the floating point is
\((-1)^{⟨sign⟩/2}⟨X1⟩⟨X2⟩⟨X3⟩⟨X4⟩\cdot10^{⟨exponent⟩−16}\)

where we have concatenated the 16 digits. Currently, floating point numbers are normalized such that the ⟨exponent⟩ is minimal, in other words, 1000 ≤⟨X1⟩ ≤ 9999.

Calculations are done in base 10000, i.e. one myriad.

66.3 Using arguments and semicolons

\s__fp_use_none_stop_f:n This function removes an argument (typically a digit) and replaces it by \exp_stop_f:, a marker which stops f-type expansion.
\s__fp_use_s:n \s__fp_use_s:nn Those functions place a semicolon after one or two arguments (typically digits).

(End definition for \s__fp_use_none_stop_f:n and \s__fp_use_s:nn)
Those functions select specific arguments among a set of arguments delimited by a semicolon.

\cs_new:Npn \__fp__use\_none\_until\_s:w #1; { } \cs_new:Npn \__fp__use\_i\_until\_s:nw #1#2; {#1} \cs_new:Npn \__fp__use\_ii\_until\_s:nnw #1#2#3; {#2} 
(End definition for \__fp__use\_none\_until\_s:w, \__fp__use\_i\_until\_s:nw, and \__fp__use\_ii\_until\_s:nnw.)

\__fp\_reverse\_args:Nww

Many internal functions take arguments delimited by semicolons, and it is occasionally useful to swap two such arguments.
\cs_new:Npn \__fp\_reverse\_args:Nww #1 #2; #3; { #1 #3; #2; } 
(End definition for \__fp\_reverse\_args:Nww.)

\__fp\_rrot:www

Rotate three arguments delimited by semicolons. This is the inverse (or the square) of the Forth primitive \texttt{ROT}, hence the name.
\cs_new:Npn \__fp\_rrot:www #1; #2; #3; { #2; #3; #1; } 
(End definition for \__fp\_rrot:www.)

\__fp\_use\_i:ww \__fp\_use\_i:www

Many internal functions take arguments delimited by semicolons, and it is occasionally useful to remove one or two such arguments.
\cs_new:Npn \__fp\_use\_i:ww #1; #2; #3; { #1; } \cs_new:Npn \__fp\_use\_i:www #1; #2; #3; { #1; } 
(End definition for \__fp\_use\_i:ww and \__fp\_use\_i:www.)

6.4 Constants, and structure of floating points

\__fp\_misused:n

This receives a floating point object (floating point number or tuple) and generates an error stating that it was misused. This is called when for instance an \texttt{fp} variable is left in the input stream and its contents reach \TeX's stomach.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__fp\_misused:n #1 \msg_error:nnx { fp } { misused } { \fp\to\texttt{tl}:n {#1} } 
(End definition for \__fp\_misused:n.)

\s__fp \__fp\_chk:w

Floating points numbers all start with \s__fp \__fp\_chk:w, where \s__fp is equal to the \TeX\ primitive \texttt{relax}, and \__fp\_chk:w is protected. The rest of the floating point number is made of characters (or \texttt{relax}). This ensures that nothing expands under \texttt{f}-expansion, nor under \texttt{x}-expansion. However, when typeset, \s__fp does nothing, and \__fp\_chk:w is expanded. We define \__fp\_chk:w to produce an error.
\scan_new:N \s__fp \cs_new_protected:Npn \__fp\_misused:n #1 { \msg_error:nnx { fp } { misused } { \fp\to\texttt{tl}:n {#1} } } 
(End definition for \s__fp and \__fp\_chk:w.)

\s__fp\_expr\_mark \s__fp\_expr\_stop

Aliases of \texttt{\relax:D}, used to terminate expressions.
\scan_new:N \s__fp\_expr\_mark \scan_new:N \s__fp\_expr\_stop 
(End definition for \s__fp\_expr\_mark and \s__fp\_expr\_stop.)
Generic scan marks used throughout the module.

Functions to gobble up to a scan mark.

A couple of scan marks used to indicate where special floating point numbers come from.

The special floating points. We define the floating points here as “exact”.

The number of digits of floating points.

Blocks have 4 digits so this integer is useful.

Normal floating point numbers have an exponent between \(-\text{minus_min_exponent}\) and \(\text{max_exponent}\) inclusive. Larger numbers are rounded to \(\pm\infty\). Smaller numbers are rounded to \(\pm0\). It would be more natural to define a \(\text{min_exponent}\) with the opposite sign but that would waste one \TeX{} count.

If a number’s exponent is larger than that, its exponential overflows/underflows.

\(\text{End definition for } \c__fp_minus_min_exponent_int\) and \(\c__fp_max_exponent_int\).
\c__fp_overflowing_fp  A floating point number that is bigger than all normal floating point numbers. This replaces inﬁnities when converting to formats that do not support inﬁnities.

\tl_const:Nx \c__fp_overflowing_fp
\begin{verbatim}
\s__fp \_fp_chk:w 1 0
\{ \int_eval:n { \c__fp_max_exponent_int + 1 } \}
\{1000} \{0000} \{0000} \{0000} ;
\}
\end{verbatim}

(End deﬁnition for \c__fp_overflowing_fp.)

\_fp_zero.fp:N  In case of overﬂow or underﬂow, we have to output a zero or inﬁnity with a given sign.

\cs_new:Npn \_fp_zero.fp:N #1
\begin{verbatim}
\s__fp \_fp_chk:w 0 #1 \s__fp_underﬂow ;
\end{verbatim}

(End deﬁnition for \_fp_zero.fp:N and \_fp_inf.fp:N.)

\_fp_exponent:w  For normal numbers, the function expands to the exponent, otherwise to 0. This is used in \l3str-format.

\cs_new:Npn \_fp_exponent:w \s__fp \_fp_chk:w #1
\begin{verbatim}
\if_meaning:w 1 #1 \exp_after:wN \_fp_use_ii_until_s:nnw
\else:\exp_after:wN \_fp_use_i_until_s:nw
\exp_after:wN 0 \fi:
\end{verbatim}

(End deﬁnition for \_fp_exponent:w.)

\_fp_neg_sign:N  When appearing in an integer expression or after \int_value:w, this expands to the sign opposite to #1, namely 0 (positive) is turned to 2 (negative), 1 (nan) to 1, and 2 to 0.

\cs_new:Npn \_fp_neg_sign:N #1
\begin{verbatim}
\__fp_int_eval:w 2 - #1 \__fp_int_eval_end:
\end{verbatim}

(End deﬁnition for \_fp_neg_sign:N.)

\_fp_kind:w  Expands to 0 for zeros, 1 for normal ﬂoating point numbers, 2 for inﬁnities, 3 for nan, 4 for tuples.

\cs_new:Npn \_fp_kind:w #1
\begin{verbatim}
\__fp_if_type_fp:NTwFw
\#1 \_fp_use_ii_until_s:nw
\s__fp { \_fp_use_i_until_s:nw 4 }
\s__fp_stop
\end{verbatim}

(End deﬁnition for \_fp_kind:w.)
Overflow, underflow, and exact zero

Expects the sign and the exponent in some order, then the significand (which we don’t touch). Outputs the corresponding floating point number, possibly underflowed to $\pm 0$ or overflowed to $\pm \infty$. The functions \_fp\_underflow:w and \_fp\_overflow:w are defined in l3fp-traps.

\cs_new:Npn \_fp\_sanitize:Nw #1 #2;
\begin{verbatim}
    \if_case:w
    \if_int_compare:w #2 > \c__fp_max_exponent_int 1 - \else:
    \if_int_compare:w #2 < - \c__fp_minus_min_exponent_int 2 - \else:
        \if_meaning:w 1 #1 3 - \fi: \fi: \fi: 0 - \\
        \or: \exp_after:wN \_fp\_overflow:w \\
        \or: \exp_after:wN \_fp\_underflow:w \\
        \or: \exp_after:wN \_fp\_sanitize_zero:w \\
        \fi:
    \__fp \_fp\_chk:w 1 #1 {#2}
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_fp\_sanitize:wN #1; #2 { \_fp\_sanitize:Nw #2 #1; }
\cs_new:Npn \_fp\_sanitize_zero:w \s__fp \_fp\_chk:w #1 #2 #3;
\begin{verbatim}
    \c_zero_fp
\end{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \_fp\_sanitize:Nw, \_fp\_sanitize:wN, and \_fp\_sanitize_zero:w.)

Expanding after a floating point number

Places \texttt{(tokens)} (empty in the case of \_fp\_exp_after_o:w) between the \texttt{(floating point)} and the following \texttt{tokens}, then hits those tokens with o or f-expansion, and leaves the floating point number unchanged.

We first distinguish normal floating points, which have a significand, from the much simpler special floating points.

\cs_new:Npn \_fp\_exp_after_o:w \s__fp \_fp\_chk:w #1
\begin{verbatim}
    \if_meaning:w 1 #1 \\
    \exp_after:wN \_fp\_exp_after_normal:nNNw \\
    \else: \\
    \exp_after:wN \_fp\_exp_after_special:nNNw \\
    \fi:
    \{ \}
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_fp\_exp_after_f:nw #1 \s__fp \_fp\_chk:w #2
\begin{verbatim}
    \if_meaning:w 1 #2 \\
    \exp_after:wN \_fp\_exp_after_normal:nNNw \\
    \else: \\
    \exp_after:wN \_fp\_exp_after_special:nNNw \\
    \fi:
    \{ \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w #1 \}
\end{verbatim}

969
Special floating point numbers are easy to jump over since they contain few tokens.

22419 \cs_new:Npn \__fp_exp_after_special:nNNw #1 #2 #3 #4 ;
22420 {
22421 \exp_after:wN \s__fp
22422 \exp_after:wN \__fp_chk:w
22423 \exp_after:wN #2
22424 \exp_after:wN #3
22425 \exp_after:wN #4
22426 \exp_after:wN ;
22427 \#1
22428 }

For normal floating point numbers, life is slightly harder, since we have many tokens to
jump over. Here it would be slightly better if the digits were not braced but instead were
delimited arguments (for instance delimited by \). That may be changed some day.

22429 \cs_new:Npn \__fp_exp_after_normal:nNNw #1 1 #2 #3 #4 #5 #6 #7 ;
22430 {
22431 \exp_after:wN \__fp_exp_after_normal:Nwwwww
22432 \exp_after:wN #2
22433 \int_value:w #3 \exp_after:wN ;
22434 \int_value:w 1 #4 \exp_after:wN ;
22435 \int_value:w 1 #5 \exp_after:wN ;
22436 \int_value:w 1 #6 \exp_after:wN ;
22437 \int_value:w 1 #7 \exp_after:wN ;
22438 \#1
22439 }

Floating point tuples take the form \s__fp_tuple \__fp_tuple_chk:w { ⟨fp 1⟩ ⟨fp 2⟩ ...} ; where each ⟨fp⟩ is a floating point number or tuple, hence ends with \ itself. When
a tuple is typeset, \__fp_tuple_chk:w produces an error, just like usual floating point
numbers. Tuples may have zero or one element.

22442 \scan_new:N \s__fp_tuple
22443 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__fp_tuple_chk:w #1 ;
22444 { \__fp_misused:n { \s__fp_tuple \__fp_tuple_chk:w #1 ; } }
22445 \tl_const:Nn \c__fp_empty_tuple_fp \s__fp_tuple_chk:w { } ;

66.7 Other floating point types

Floating point tuples take the form \s__fp_tuple \__fp_tuple_chk:w { ⟨fp 1⟩ ⟨fp 2⟩...} ; where each ⟨fp⟩ is a floating point number or tuple, hence ends with \ itself. When
a tuple is typeset, \__fp_tuple_chk:w produces an error, just like usual floating point
numbers. Tuples may have zero or one element.
Count the number of items in a tuple of floating points by counting semicolons. The technique is very similar to `\_\_fp\_count:n`, but with the loop built-in. Checking for the end of the loop is done with the \texttt{\use\_none:n} \texttt{\#1} construction.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp\_tuple\_count:w \s__fp\_tuple \__fp\_tuple\_chk:w \#1 \; 
{ \int_value:w \__fp\_int\_eval:w 0 \__fp\_tuple\_count\_loop:Nw \#1 { ? \prg\_break: } ; \prg\_break\_point: \__fp\_int\_eval\_end: } \cs_new:Npn \__fp\_tuple\_count\_loop:Nw \#1 \s__fp\_tuple\_chk:w \#2 \; 
{ \__fp\_if\_type\_fp:NTwFw \#1 \s__fp \prg\_break:n \use\_iii:nnn \s__fp\_stop } \cs_new:Npx \__fp\_if\_type\_fp:NTwFw #1 \s__fp \prg\_break:n \use\_iii:nnn \s__fp\_stop { #2 } \end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\__fp\_tuple\_count:w}, \texttt{\__fp\_array\_count:n}, \texttt{\__fp\_tuple\_count\_loop:Nw}.)

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp\_type\_from\_scan:N \s__fp \prg\_break:n \use\_iii:nnn \s__fp\_stop { #1 } \cs_new:Npx \__fp\_type\_from\_scan\_other:N #1 \exp\_not:N \exp\_after:wN \exp\_not:N \__fp\_type\_from\_scan:w \end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\__fp\_type\_from\_scan:N} and \texttt{\__fp\_type\_from\_scan\_other:N}.)

Used as `\__fp\_if\_type\_fp:nTF {marker} \{true code\} \s__fp \{false code\} \s__fp\_stop`, this test whether the \texttt{\langle marker\rangle} is \texttt{\s__fp} or not and runs the appropriate \texttt{\langle code\rangle}. The very unusual syntax is for optimization purposes as that function is used for all floating point operations.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp\_type\_from\_scan\_other:N \s__fp \prg\_break:n \use\_iii:nnn \s__fp\_stop { #1 } \cs_new:Npx \__fp\_type\_from\_scan:w \end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\__fp\_type\_from\_scan:N}.)

Used as `\__fp\_type\_from\_scan\_other:N \langle token\rangle \texttt{\#1} \s__fp`. Grabs the pieces of the stringified \texttt{\langle token\rangle} which lies after the first \texttt{\s__fp}. If the \texttt{\langle token\rangle} does not contain that string, the result is \texttt{\_?}.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp\_type\_from\_scan\_other:N \s__fp \prg\_break:n \use\_iii:nnn \s__fp\_stop { #1 } \cs_new:Npx \__fp\_type\_from\_scan:w \end{verbatim}

971
Arguments are \langle \text{type marker} \rangle \langle \text{function} \rangle \langle \text{recovery} \rangle. This gives the function obtained by placing the type after \@@. If the function is not defined then \langle \text{recovery} \rangle \langle \text{function} \rangle is used instead; however that test is not run when the \langle \text{type marker} \rangle is \s__fp.

\textbf{The \texttt{Nnw} function simply dispatches to the appropriate \_\_fp\_exp\_after\_\_\_f:nn\_f with \textbf{“...”} (either empty or \langle \text{type} \rangle) extracted from \#1, which should start with \s__fp. If it doesn’t start with \s__fp the function \_\_fp\_exp\_after\_f:nn defined in l3fp-parse gives an error; another special \langle \text{type} \rangle is \texttt{stop}, useful for loops, see below. The \texttt{nw} function has an important optimization for floating points numbers; it also fetches its type marker \#2 from the floating point.}
The loop works by using the n argument of \_fp_after_any_f:nw to place the loop macro after the next item in the tuple and expand it.

\_fp_after_array_f:w
\_fp_after_tuple_f:nw
\_fp_after_tuple_o:w

The idea is that adding \texttt{10^8} to the number ensures that it has exactly 9 digits, and can then easily find which digits correspond to what position in the number. Of course, this can be modified for any number of digits less or equal to 9 (we are limited by \LaTeX's integers). This method is very heavily relied upon in \texttt{l3fp-basics}.

More specifically, the auxiliary inserts \texttt{+ #1#2#3#4#5 ; \{#6\}}, which allows us to compute several blocks of 4 digits in a nested manner, performing carries on the fly. Say we want to compute \texttt{1 2345 \times 6677 8899}. With simplified names, we would do

\texttt{973}
The \texttt{\exp_after:wN \post_processing:w} triggers \texttt{\int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w}, which starts a first computation, whose initial value is $-5\,0000$ (the “leading shift”). In that computation appears an \texttt{\exp_after:wN \pack:NNNNNw}, which triggers the nested computation \texttt{\int_value:w \__fp_int_-eval:w} with starting value $4\,9995\,0000$ (the “middle shift”). That, in turn, expands \texttt{\exp_after:wN \pack:NNNNNw} which triggers the third computation. The third computation’s value is $5\,0000\,0000 + 12345 \times 8899$, which has 9 digits. Adding $5 \cdot 10^8$ to the product allowed us to know how many digits to expect as long as the numbers to multiply are not too big; it also works to some extent with negative results. The \texttt{pack} function puts the last 4 of those 9 digits into a brace group, moves the semi-colon delimiter, and inserts a $+$, which combines the carry with the previous computation. The shifts nicely combine into $5\,0000\,0000/10^4 + 4\,9995\,0000 = 5\,0000\,0000$. As long as the operands are in some range, the result of this second computation has 9 digits. The corresponding \texttt{pack} function, expanded after the result is computed, braces the last 4 digits, and leaves $+ \langle 5 \text{ digits} \rangle$ for the initial computation. The “leading shift” cancels the combination of the other shifts, and the \texttt{\post_processing:w} takes care of packing the last few digits.

Admittedly, this is quite intricate. It is probably the key in making \texttt{l3fp} as fast as other pure \TeX{} floating point units despite its increased precision. In fact, this is used so much that we provide different sets of packing functions and shifts, depending on ranges of input.

This set of shifts allows for computations involving results in the range $[-4\cdot10^8, 5\cdot10^8 - 1]$. Shifted values all have exactly 9 digits.

This set of shifts allows for computations involving results in the range $[-5\cdot10^8, 6\cdot10^8 - 1]$ (actually a bit more). Shifted values all have exactly 10 digits. Note that the upper bound is due to \TeX{}’s limit of $2^{31} - 1$ on integers. The shifts are chosen to be roughly the mid-point of $10^9$ and $2^{31}$, the two bounds on 10-digit integers in \TeX{}.
This set of shifts allows for computations with results in the range \([-1 \cdot 10^9, 147483647]\); the end-point is \(2^{31} - 1 - 2 \cdot 10^9 \approx 1.47 \cdot 10^8\). Shifted values all have exactly 10 digits.

\[
\text{\texttt{\textbackslash int\_const:Nn \_\texttt{fp\_Bigg\_leading\_shift\_int} \{ -20\ 0000 \}}}
\]
\[
\text{\texttt{\textbackslash int\_const:Nn \_\texttt{fp\_Bigg\_middle\_shift\_int} \{ 20\ 0000\ \star\ 9999 \}}}
\]
\[
\text{\texttt{\textbackslash int\_const:Nn \_\texttt{fp\_Bigg\_trailing\_shift\_int} \{ 20\ 0000\ \star\ 10000 \}}}
\]
\[
\text{\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_new:Np\n \_\texttt{fp\_pack\_Bigg:NNNNNNw} #1\#2\#3\#4\#5\#6 \#7;}}
\]
\[
\text{\texttt{\{ + #1\#2\#3\#4\#5\#6; \{\#7\}}} \]

(End definition for \_\texttt{fp\_pack\_Bigg:NNNNNNw} and others.)

\[
\text{\texttt{\textbackslash \_\texttt{fp\_pack\_twice\_four:wNNNNNNNN}}} \quad \langle \text{tokens} \rangle; \quad \langle \geq 8\ \text{digits} \rangle
\]

Grabs two sets of 4 digits and places them before the semi-colon delimiter. Putting several copies of this function before a semicolon packs more digits since each takes the digits packed by the others in its first argument.

\[
\text{\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_new:Np\n \_\texttt{fp\_pack\_twice\_four:wNNNNNNNN} #1; #2\#3\#4\#5 \#6\#7\#8\#9}}
\]
\[
\{ \#1 \{\#2\#3\#4\#5\} \{\#6\#7\#8\#9\}; \}
\]

(End definition for \_\texttt{fp\_pack\_twice\_four:wNNNNNNNN}.)

\[
\text{\texttt{\textbackslash \_\texttt{fp\_pack\_eight:wNNNNNNNN}}} \quad \langle \text{tokens} \rangle; \quad \langle \geq 8\ \text{digits} \rangle
\]

Grabs one set of 8 digits and places them before the semi-colon delimiter as a single group. Putting several copies of this function before a semicolon packs more digits since each takes the digits packed by the others in its first argument.

\[
\text{\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_new:Np\n \_\texttt{fp\_pack\_eight:wNNNNNNNN} #1; #2\#3\#4\#5 \#6\#7\#8\#9}}
\]
\[
\{ \#1 \{\#2\#3\#4\#5\#6\#7\#8\#9\}; \}
\]

(End definition for \_\texttt{fp\_pack\_eight:wNNNNNNNN}.)

Addition and multiplication of significands are done in two steps: first compute a (more or less) exact result, then round and pack digits in the final (braced) form. These functions take care of the packing, with special attention given to the case where rounding has caused a carry. Since rounding can only shift the final digit by 1, a carry always produces an exact power of 10. Thus, \_\texttt{fp\_basics\_pack\_high\_carry:w} is always followed by four times \{0000\}.

This is used in l3fp-basics and l3fp-extended.

\[
\text{\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_new:Np\n \_\texttt{fp\_basics\_pack\_low:NNNNNNw} #1 \#2\#3\#4\#5 \#6;}}
\]
\[
\{ + \#1 - 1 ; \{\#2\#3\#4\#5\} \{\#6\} ; \}
\]
\[
\text{\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_new:Np\n \_\texttt{fp\_basics\_pack\_high:NNNNNNw} #1 \#2\#3\#4\#5 \#6;}}
\]
\[
\{ \}
\]
\[
\text{\texttt{\textbackslash if\_meaning:w 2 \#1}}
\]
\[
\text{\texttt{\_\texttt{fp\_basics\_pack\_high\_carry:w}}}
\]
\[
\text{\texttt{\{fi:}}
\]
\[
\text{\texttt{\{\#2\#3\#4\#5\} \{\#6\}}}
\]
\[
\text{\texttt{\textbackslash cs\_new:Np\n \_\texttt{fp\_basics\_pack\_high\_carry:w} \texttt{\{fi: ; \#1}}
\]
\[
\text{\texttt{\{\fi: + 1 ; \{1000\} \}}}
\]

(End definition for \_\texttt{fp\_basics\_pack\_low:NNNNNNw}, \_\texttt{fp\_basics\_pack\_high:NNNNNNw}, and \_\texttt{fp\_basics\_pack\_high\_carry:w}.)
This is used in \texttt{l3fp-basics} for additions and divisions. Their syntax is confusing, hence the name.

```latex
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_basics_pack_weird_low:NNNNw #1 #2#3#4 \#5;
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_basics_pack_weird_high:NNNNNNNNw \#1 \#2#3#4 \#5#6#7#8 \#9; { ; {#1#2#3#4} {#5#6#7#8} {#9} }
```

(End definition for \texttt{\__fp_basics_pack_weird_low:NNNNw} and \texttt{\__fp_basics_pack_weird_high:NNNNNNNNw}.)

### 66.9 Decimate (dividing by a power of 10)

\texttt{\__fp_decimate:nNnnnn} \{\langle shift\rangle\} \langle f_1\rangle \{\langle X_1\rangle\} \{\langle X_2\rangle\} \{\langle X_3\rangle\} \{\langle X_4\rangle\};

Each \(X_i\) consists in 4 digits exactly, and \(1000 \leq \langle X_1 \rangle < 9999\). The first argument determines by how much we shift the digits. \(\langle f_1 \rangle\) is called as follows:

\[
\langle f_1 \rangle \langle \text{rounding} \rangle \{\langle X'_1 \rangle\} \{\langle X'_2 \rangle\} \langle \text{extra-digits} \rangle;
\]

where \(0 \leq \langle X'_i \rangle < 10^8 - 1\) are 8 digit integers, forming the truncation of our number. In other words,

\[
\left(\sum_{i=1}^{4} \langle X_i \rangle \cdot 10^{-4i} \cdot 10^{-\langle \text{shift} \rangle}\right) - \left(\langle X'_1 \rangle \cdot 10^{-8} + \langle X'_2 \rangle \cdot 10^{-16}\right) = 0.\langle \text{extra-digits} \rangle \cdot 10^{-16} \in [0, 10^{-16}).
\]

To round properly later, we need to remember some information about the difference. The \(\langle \text{rounding} \rangle\) digit is 0 if and only if the difference is exactly 0, and 5 if and only if the difference is exactly \(0.5 \cdot 10^{-16}\). Otherwise, it is the (non-0, non-5) digit closest to \(10^{17}\) times the difference. In particular, if the shift is 17 or more, all the digits are dropped, \(\langle \text{rounding} \rangle\) is 1 (not 0), and \(\langle X'_1 \rangle\) and \(\langle X'_2 \rangle\) are both zero.

If the shift is 1, the \(\langle \text{rounding} \rangle\) digit is simply the only digit that was pushed out of the brace groups (this is important for subtraction). It would be more natural for the \(\langle \text{rounding} \rangle\) digit to be placed after the \(\langle X'_i \rangle\), but the choice we make involves less reshuffling.

Note that this function treats negative \(\langle \text{shift} \rangle\) as 0.

```latex
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_decimate:nNnnnn \#1
\cs:w \__fp_decimate_\if_int_compare:w \__fp_int_eval:w \#1 > \c__fp_prec_int tiny \else: \__fp_int_to_roman:w \__fp_int_eval:w \#1 \fi: \#1\#2\#3\#4 \#5\#6\#7\#8 \#9\} \endcs
```

976
Each of the auxiliaries see the function \( f_1 \), followed by 4 blocks of 4 digits.

(End definition for \_fp_decimate:Nnnnn.)

If the \( \langle \text{shift} \rangle \) is zero, or too big, life is very easy.

Shifting happens in two steps: compute the \( \langle \text{rounding} \rangle \) digit, and repack digits into two blocks of 8. The sixteen functions are very similar, and defined through \_fp_trmp:w. The arguments are as follows: #1 indicates which function is being defined; after one step of expansion, #2 yields the “extra digits” which are then converted by \_fp_round_digit:Nw to the \( \langle \text{rounding} \rangle \) digit (note the + separating blocks of digits to avoid overflows for \TeX{}’s integers). This triggers the \( f \)-expansion of \_fp_decimate_pack:nnnnnnnnnnw,\(^\text{10}\) responsible for building two blocks of 8 digits, and removing the rest. For this to work, #3 alternates between braced and unbraced blocks of 4 digits, in such a way that the first and 5 next token groups yield the correct blocks of 8 digits.

(End definition for \_fp_decimate_auxi:Nnnnn and others.)

\(^\text{10}\)No, the argument spec is not a mistake: the function calls an auxiliary to do half of the job.
The computation of the \textit{(rounding)} digit leaves an unfinished \texttt{\textbackslash int\_value:w}, which expands the following functions. This allows us to repack nicely the digits we keep. Those digits come as an alternation of unbraced and braced blocks of 4 digits, such that the first 5 groups of token consist in 4 single digits, and one brace group (in some order), and the next 5 have the same structure. This is followed by some digits and a semicolon.

\texttt{\__fp\_decimate\_pack:nnnnnnnnnnw} #1#2#3#4#5
\texttt{\__fp\_decimate\_pack:nnnnnnnnnw} #1#2#3#4#5
\texttt{\__fp\_decimate\_pack:nnnnnnnnnw} #1#2#3#4#5#6
\texttt{\__fp\_decimate\_pack:nnnnnnnnnnw} (End definition for \texttt{\__fp\_decimate\_pack:nnnnnnnnnnw}).

66.10 Functions for use within primitive conditional branches

The functions described in this section are not pretty and can easily be misused. When correctly used, each of them removes one \texttt{\textbackslash fi:} as part of its parameter text, and puts one back as part of its replacement text.

Many computation functions in \texttt{l3fp} must perform tests on the type of floating points that they receive. This is often done in an \texttt{\if\_case:w} statement or another conditional statement, and only a few cases lead to actual computations: most of the special cases are treated using a few standard functions which we define now. A typical use context for those functions would be

\texttt{\if\_case:w \{integer\}\exp\_stop\_f:}
\texttt{\__fp\_case\_return\_o:Nw \{fp\ var\}}
\texttt{\or: \__fp\_case\_use:nw \{\{some\ computation\}\}}
\texttt{\or: \__fp\_case\_return\_same\_o:w}
\texttt{\or: \__fp\_case\_return\_nw \{\{something\}\}}
\texttt{\fi:}
\texttt{\{junk\}}
\texttt{\{floating\ point\}}

In this example, the case 0 returns the floating point \texttt{\{fp\ var\}}, expanding once after that floating point. Case 1 does \texttt{\{some\ computation\}} using the \texttt{\{floating\ point\}} (presumably compute the operation requested by the user in that non-trivial case). Case 2 returns the \texttt{\{floating\ point\}} without modifying it, removing the \texttt{\{junk\}} and expanding once after. Case 3 closes the conditional, removes the \texttt{\{junk\}} and the \texttt{\{floating\ point\}}, and expands \texttt{\{something\}} next. In other cases, the \texttt{\{junk\}} is expanded, performing some other operation on the \texttt{\{floating\ point\}}. We provide similar functions with two trailing \texttt{\{floating\ points\}}.

\texttt{\__fp\_case\_use:nw} This function ends a \TeX\ conditional, removes junk until the next floating point, and places its first argument before that floating point, to perform some operation on the floating point.

\texttt{\__fp\_case\_use:nw} #1\#2 \texttt{\fi: \#3 \a\_\_fp \{ \fi: \#1 \a\_\_fp \}}
(End definition for \texttt{\__fp\_case\_use:nw}).

978
\__fp_case_return:nw This function ends a \TeX conditional, removes junk and a floating point, and places its first argument in the input stream. A quirk is that we don’t define this function requiring a floating point to follow, simply anything ending in a semicolon. This, in turn, means that the ⟨junk⟩ may not contain semicolons.

\cs_new:Npn \__fp_case_return:nw #1 \fi: #3 ; { \fi: #1 }

(End definition for \__fp_case_return:nw.)

\__fp_case_return_o:Nw This function ends a \TeX conditional, removes junk and a floating point, and returns its first argument (an ⟨fp var⟩) then expands once after it.

\cs_new:Npn \__fp_case_return_o:Nw #1 \fi: #3 \s__fp #4 ; { \fi: \exp_after:wN #1 } 

(End definition for \__fp_case_return_o:Nw.)

\__fp_case_return_same_o:w This function ends a \TeX conditional, removes junk, and returns the following floating point, expanding once after it.

\cs_new:Npn \__fp_case_return_same_o:w #1 \fi: #2 \s__fp #3 ; { \fi: \__fp_exp_after_o:w \s__fp #3 ; } 

(End definition for \__fp_case_return_same_o:w.)

\__fp_case_return_o:Nww Same as \__fp_case_return_o:Nw but with two trailing floating points.

\cs_new:Npn \__fp_case_return_o:Nww #1 \fi: #3 \s__fp #4 ; #5 ; { \fi: \exp_after:wN #1 } 

(End definition for \__fp_case_return_o:Nww.)

\__fp_case_return_i_o:ww \__fp_case_return_ii_o:ww Similar to \__fp_case_return_same_o:w, but this returns the first or second of two trailing floating point numbers, expanding once after the result.

\cs_new:Npn \__fp_case_return_i_o:ww #1 \fi: #2 \s__fp #3 ; \s__fp #4 ; { \fi: \__fp_exp_after_o:w \s__fp #3 ; } 
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_case_return_ii_o:ww #1 \fi: #2 \s__fp ; { \fi: \__fp_exp_after_o:w } 

(End definition for \__fp_case_return_i_o:ww and \__fp_case_return_ii_o:ww.)

66.11 Integer floating points

\__fp_int:p:w \__fp_int:wTF Tests if the floating point argument is an integer. For normal floating point numbers, this holds if the rounding digit resulting from \__fp_decimate:nNNNNNN is 0.

\prg_new_conditional:Nppnn \__fp_int:w \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #1 #2 #3 #4; { TF , T , F , p } { \if_case:w #1 \exp_stop_f: \prg_return_true: \or: \if_charcode:w 0 \__fp_decimate:nNNNNNN \c__fp_prec_int - #3 \__fp_use_i_until_s:nw #4 \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: }
66.12 Small integer floating points

Tests if the floating point argument is an integer or ±∞. If so, it is clipped to an integer in the range \([-10^8, 10^8]\) and fed as a braced argument to the \(\langle\text{true code}\rangle\). Otherwise, the \(\langle\text{false code}\rangle\) is performed.

First filter special cases: zeros and infinities are integers, nan is not. For normal numbers, decimate. If the rounding digit is not 0 run the \(\langle\text{false code}\rangle\). If it is, then the integer is \#2 \#3 use \#3 if \#2 vanishes and otherwise \(10^8\).

(End definition for \texttt{\_fp_int:wTF} and others.)
66.13 Fast string comparison

A private version of the low-level string comparison function.

\cs_new_eq:NN \__fp_str_if_eq:nn \tex_strcmp:D

(End definition for \__fp_str_if_eq:nn.)

66.14 Name of a function from its l3fp-parse name

The goal is to convert for instance \__fp_sin_o:w to \texttt{sin}. This is used in error messages hence does not need to be fast.

\cs_new:Npn \__fp_func_to_name:N #1
\exp_last_unbraced:Nf \__fp_func_to_name_aux:w { \cs_to_str:N #1 } X
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__fp_tmp:w #1 #2
{ \cs_new:Npn \__fp_func_to_name_aux:w ##1 #1 ##2 #2 ##3 X {##2} }
\exp_args:Nff \__fp_tmp:w { \tl_to_str:n { __fp_ } }
{ \tl_to_str:n { _o: } }

(End definition for \__fp_func_to_name:N and \__fp_func_to_name_aux:w.)

66.15 Messages

Using a floating point directly is an error.

\msg_new:nnnn { fp } { misused } { A-floating-point-with-value-`#1'-was-misused. }
{ To-obtain-the-value-of-a-floating-point-variable,-use-
*\token_to_str:N \fp_to_decimal:N*,-
*\token_to_str:N \fp_to_tl:N*,-or-other-
conversion-functions. }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g_msg_module_name_prop { fp } { LaTeX3 }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g_msg_module_type_prop { fp } { }
{/package}
Chapter 67

l3fp-traps Implementation

Exceptions should be accessed by an n-type argument, among
• invalid_operation
• division_by_zero
• overflow
• underflow
• inexact (actually never used).

67.1 Flags

Flags to denote exceptions.

```
\flag_new:n { fp_invalid_operation }
\flag_new:n { fp_division_by_zero }
\flag_new:n { fp_overflow }
\flag_new:n { fp_underflow }
```

(End definition for flag fp_invalid_operation and others. These variables are documented on page 248.)

67.2 Traps

Exceptions can be trapped to obtain custom behaviour. When an invalid operation or a division by zero is trapped, the trap receives as arguments the result as an n-type floating point number, the function name (multiple letters for prefix operations, or a single symbol for infix operations), and the operand(s). When an overflow or underflow is trapped, the trap receives the resulting overly large or small floating point number if it is not too big, otherwise it receives +∞. Currently, the inexact exception is entirely ignored.

The behaviour when an exception occurs is controlled by the definitions of the functions

```
\_fp_invalid_operation:nw
```

982
• \_\_fp_invalid_operation_o:Nww,
• \_\_fp_invalid_operation_tl_o:ff,
• \_\_fp_division_by_zero_o:Nww,
• \_\_fp_division_by_zero_o:NNww,
• \_\_fp_overflow:w,
• \_\_fp_underflow:w.

Rather than changing them directly, we provide a user interface as \fp_trap:nn {⟨exception⟩} {⟨way of trapping⟩}, where the ⟨way of trapping⟩ is one of error, flag, or none.

We also provide \__fp_invalid_operation_o:nw, defined in terms of \__fp_invalid_operation:nw.

\fp_trap:nn

\cs_new_protected:Npn \fp_trap:nn #1#2
{ \cs_if_exist_use:cF { __fp_trap_#1_set_#2: } 
  \clist_if_in:nnTF { invalid_operation , division_by_zero , overflow , underflow } {#1} 
  { \msg_error:nnxx { fp } { unknown-fpu-trap-type } {#1} {#2} } 
  { \msg_error:nnx { fp } { unknown-fpu-exception } {#1} } 
} (End definition for \fp_trap:nn. This function is documented on page 248.)

We provide three types of trapping for invalid operations: either produce an error and raise the relevant flag; or only raise the flag; or don’t even raise the flag. In most cases, the function produces as a result its first argument, possibly with post-expansion.

\__fp_trap_invalid_operation_set_error:
\__fp_trap_invalid_operation_set_flag:
\__fp_trap_invalid_operation_set_none:
\__fp_trap_invalid_operation_set:N

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__fp_trap_invalid_operation_set_error: 
{ \__fp_trap_invalid_operation_set:N \prg_do_nothing: } 
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__fp_trap_invalid_operation_set_flag: 
{ \__fp_trap_invalid_operation_set:N \use_none:nnnn } 
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__fp_trap_invalid_operation_set_none: 
{ \__fp_trap_invalid_operation_set:N \use_none:nnnnnn } 
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__fp_trap_invalid_operation_set:N #1 
{ \exp_args:Nno \use:n 
  \cs_set:Npn \__fp_invalid_operation:nnw ##1##2##3; 
  { #1 
    \__fp_error:nnfn { invalid } {##2} { \fp_to_tl:n { ##3; } } { } 
  } 
}
We provide three types of trapping for invalid operations and division by zero: either produce an error and raise the relevant flag; or only raise the flag; or don’t even raise the flag. In all cases, the function must produce a result, namely its first argument, ±∞ or nan.
Just as for invalid operations and division by zero, the three different behaviours are obtained by feeding \prg_do_nothing, \use_none:nnnnn or \use_none:nnnnnnnn to an auxiliary, with a further auxiliary common to overflow and underflow functions. In most cases, the argument of the \__fp_overflow:w and \__fp_underflow:w functions will be an (almost) normal number (with an exponent outside the allowed range), and the error message thus displays that number together with the result to which it overflowed or underflowed. For extreme cases such as \(10^{10^9999}\), the exponent would be too large for \TeX, and \__fp_overflow:w receives \(\pm\infty\) (\__fp_underflow:w would receive \(\pm0\)); then we cannot do better than simply say an overflow or underflow occurred.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__fp_trap_overflow_set_error: { \__fp_trap_overflow_set:N \prg_do_nothing: }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__fp_trap_overflow_set_flag: { \__fp_trap_overflow_set:N \use_none:nnnn }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__fp_trap_overflow_set_none: { \__fp_trap_overflow_set:N \use_none:nnnnnnn }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__fp_trap_overflow_set:N #1 { \__fp_trap_overflow_set:NnNn #1 { overflow } \__fp_inf_fp:N { inf } }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__fp_trap_underflow_set_error: { \__fp_trap_underflow_set:N \prg_do_nothing: }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__fp_trap_underflow_set_flag: { \__fp_trap_underflow_set:N \use_none:nnnn }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__fp_trap_underflow_set_none: { \__fp_trap_underflow_set:N \use_none:nnnnnnn }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__fp_trap_underflow_set:N #1 { \__fp_trap_underflow_set:NnNn #1 { underflow } \__fp_zero_fp:N { 0 } }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__fp_trap_overflow_set:NnNn #1#2#3#4 { \exp_args:Nno \use:n { \cs_set:cpn { __fp_ #2 :w } \s__fp \__fp_chk:w ##1##2##3; } {#1} \__fp_error:nffn { flow \if_meaning:w 1 ##1 -to \fi: } { \fp_to_tl:n { \s__fp \__fp_chk:w ##1##2##3; } } \token_if_eq_meaning:NNF 0 ##2 { - } #4 } {#2} \flag_raise_if_clear:n { fp_#2 } #3 #2
\end{verbatim}

Initialize the control sequences (to log properly their existence). Then set invalid operations to trigger an error, and division by zero, overflow, and underflow to act silently on their flag.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_invalid_operation:nnw #1#2#3; { }
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_invalid_operation_o:Nww #1#2; #3; { }
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_invalid_operation_tl_o:ff #1 #2 { }
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_division_by_zero_o:Nww #1#2#3; { }
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_division_by_zero_o:ff #1 #2 { }
\end{verbatim}

985
Convenient short-hands for returning \cnan_fp for a unary or binary operation, and expanding after.

\cs_new:Npn \__fp_invalid_operation_o:nw
\__fp_invalid_operation_o:fw

(End definition for \__fp_invalid_operation_o:nw.)

67.3 Errors

\msg_new:nnnn { fp } { unknown-fpu-exception }  
{  
The-FPU-exception-’#1’-is-not-known:
that-trap-will-never-be-triggered. 
}  
\msg_new:nnnn { fp } { unknown-fpu-trap-type }  
{ The-FPU-trap-type-’#2’-is-not-known. }  
\msg_new:nnnn { fp } { unknown-fpu-trap-type }  
{ The-trap-type-must-be-one-of 
\ioindent:n  
* - error \n* - flag \n}
* - none
}
\msg\_new:nnn \{ fp \} \{ flow \}
{ An \#3 occurred. }
\msg\_new:nnn \{ fp \} \{ flow-to \}
{ \#1 \#3 ed to \#2. }
\msg\_new:nnn \{ fp \} \{ zero-div \}
{ Division-by-zero-in\#1(#2) }
\msg\_new:nnn \{ fp \} \{ zero-div-ii \}
{ Division-by-zero-in-(\#1)\#3(#2) }
\msg\_new:nnn \{ fp \} \{ invalid \}
{ Invalid-operation\#1(#2) }
\msg\_new:nnn \{ fp \} \{ invalid-ii \}
{ Invalid-operation-(\#1)\#3(#2) }
\msg\_new:nnn \{ fp \} \{ unknown-type \}
{ Unknown-type-for-'\#1' }
Chapter 68

l3fp-round implementation

\__fp_parse_word_trunc:N
\__fp_parse_word_floor:N
\__fp_parse_word ceil:N
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_word_trunc:N { \__fp_parse_function:NNN \__fp_round_o:Nw \__fp_round_to_zero:NNN }
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_word_floor:N { \__fp_parse_function:NNN \__fp_round_o:Nw \__fp_round_to_ninf:NNN }
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_word ceil:N { \__fp_parse_function:NNN \__fp_round_o:Nw \__fp_round_to_pinf:NNN } (End definition for \__fp_parse_word_trunc:N, \__fp_parse_word_floor:N, and \__fp_parse_word ceil:N.)

\__fp_parse_word_round:N
\__fp_parse_round:Nw
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_word_round:N #1#2 { \__fp_parse_function:NNN \__fp_round_o:Nw \__fp_round_to_nearest:NNN #1 #2 }
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_round:Nw #1 #2 \__fp_round_to_nearest:NNN #3#4 { #2 #1 #3 #4 } (End definition for \__fp_parse_word_round:N and \__fp_parse_round:Nw.)

68.1 Rounding tools

\c__fp_five_int This is used as the half-point for which numbers are rounded up/down.
\int_const:Nn \c__fp_five_int { 5 } (End definition for \c__fp_five_int.)

Floating point operations often yield a result that cannot be exactly represented in a significand with 16 digits. In that case, we need to round the exact result to a representable number. The IEEE standard defines four rounding modes:
• Round to nearest: round to the representable floating point number whose absolute difference with the exact result is the smallest. If the exact result lies exactly at the mid-point between two consecutive representable floating point numbers, round to the floating point number whose last digit is even.

• Round towards negative infinity: round to the greatest floating point number not larger than the exact result.

• Round towards zero: round to a floating point number with the same sign as the exact result, with the largest absolute value not larger than the absolute value of the exact result.

• Round towards positive infinity: round to the least floating point number not smaller than the exact result.

This is not fully implemented in l3fp yet, and transcendental functions fall back on the “round to nearest” mode. All rounding for basic algebra is done through the functions defined in this module, which can be redefined to change their rounding behaviour (but there is not interface for that yet).

The rounding tools available in this module are many variations on a base function \_\_fp_round:NNN, which expands to 0\exp_stop_f: or 1\exp_stop_f: depending on whether the final result should be rounded up or down.

\begin{itemize}
\item \_\_fp_round:NNN \langle sign\rangle \langle digit1\rangle \langle digit2\rangle can expand to 0\exp_stop_f: or 1\exp_stop_f:.
\item \_\_fp_round_s:NNNw \langle sign\rangle \langle digit1\rangle \langle digit2\rangle \langle more digits\rangle; can expand to 0\exp_stop_f:; or 1\exp_stop_f:.
\item \_\_fp_round_neg:NNN \langle sign\rangle \langle digit1\rangle \langle digit2\rangle can expand to 0\exp_stop_f: or 1\exp_stop_f:.
\end{itemize}

See implementation comments for details on the syntax.

\begin{verbatim}
\_\_fp_round:NNN \_\_fp_round_to_nearest:NNN
\_\_fp_round_to_nearest_ninf:NNN
\_\_fp_round_to_nearest_zero:NNN
\_\_fp_round_to_pinf:NNN
\_\_fp_round_neg:NNN \_\_fp_round_to_nearest:NNN
\_\_fp_round_to_nearest_ninf:NNN
\_\_fp_round_to_nearest_zero:NNN
\_\_fp_round_to_pinf:NNN
\_\_fp_round:NNN (final sign) \langle digit1\rangle \langle digit2\rangle

If rounding the number \langle final sign\rangle \langle digit1\rangle \langle digit2\rangle to an integer rounds it towards zero (truncates it), this function expands to 0\exp_stop_f:, and otherwise to 1\exp_stop_f:. Typically used within the scope of an \_\_fp_int_eval:w, to add 1 if needed, and thereby round correctly. The result depends on the rounding mode.

It is very important that \langle final sign\rangle be the final sign of the result. Otherwise, the result would be incorrect in the case of rounding towards \(-\infty\) or towards \(+\infty\). Also recall that \langle final sign\rangle is 0 for positive, and 2 for negative.

By default, the functions below return 0\exp_stop_f:, but this is superseded by \_\_fp_round_return_one:, which instead returns 1\exp_stop_f:, expanding everything and removing 0\exp_stop_f: in the process. In the case of rounding towards \(\pm\infty\) or towards 0, this is not really useful, but it prepares us for the “round to nearest, ties to even” mode.

The “round to nearest” mode is the default. If the \langle digit2\rangle is larger than 5, then round up. If it is less than 5, round down. If it is exactly 5, then round such that \langle digit1\rangle plus the result is even. In other words, round up if \langle digit1\rangle is odd.

The “round to nearest” mode has three variants, which differ in how ties are rounded: down towards \(-\infty\), truncated towards 0, or up towards \(+\infty\).
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_round_to_ninf:NNN #1 #2 #3 
{
  \if_meaning:w 2 #1
    \if_int_compare:w #3 > \c_zero_int
      \__fp_round_return_one:
    \fi:
  \fi:
  \c_zero_int
}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_round_to_zero:NNN #1 #2 #3 { \c_zero_int }
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_round_to_pinf:NNN #1 #2 #3 
{
  \if_meaning:w 0 #1
    \if_int_compare:w #3 > \c_zero_int
      \__fp_round_return_one:
    \fi:
  \fi:
  \c_zero_int
}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_round_to_nearest:NNN #1 #2 #3 
{
  \if_int_compare:w #3 > \c__fp_five_int
    \__fp_round_return_one:
  \else:
    \if_meaning:w 5 #3
      \if_int_odd:w #2 \exp_stop_f:
        \__fp_round_return_one:
    \fi:
  \fi:
  \c_zero_int
}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_round_to_nearest_ninf:NNN #1 #2 #3 
{
  \if_int_compare:w #3 > \c__fp_five_int
    \__fp_round_return_one:
  \else:
    \if_meaning:w 5 #3
      \if_meaning:w 2 #1
        \__fp_round_return_one:
      \fi:
  \fi:
  \c_zero_int
}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_round_to_nearest_zero:NNN #1 #2 #3 
{
  \if_int_compare:w #3 > \c__fp_five_int
    \__fp_round_return_one:
  \fi:
  \c_zero_int
}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_round_to_nearest_pinf:NNN #1 #2 #3 
{
\if_int_compare:w #3 > \c__fp_five_int
  \__fp_round_return_one:
\else:
  \if_meaning:w 5 #3
    \if_meaning:w 0 #1
      \__fp_round_return_one:
      \fi:
    \fi:
  \fi:
  \c_zero_int
\fi:
\cs_new_eq:NN \__fp_round:NNN \__fp_round_to_nearest:NNN
\__fp_round_s:NNNw \__fp_round_s:NNNw \langle \text{final sign} \rangle \langle \text{digit} \rangle \langle \text{more digits} \rangle;
\Similar to \__fp_round:NNN, but with an extra semicolon, this function expands to 0\exp_stop_f;; if rounding \langle \text{final sign} \rangle \langle \text{digit} \rangle \langle \text{more digits} \rangle to an integer truncates, and to 1\exp_stop_f;; otherwise. The \langle \text{more digits} \rangle part must be a digit, followed by something that does not overflow a \int_use:N \__fp_int_eval:w construction. The only relevant information about this piece is whether it is zero or not.
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_round_s:NNNw #1 #2 #3 #4;
  \exp_after:wN \__fp_round:NNN
  \exp_after:wN #1
  \exp_after:wN #2
  \int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w
  \if_int_odd:w \if_meaning:w 0 #3 1 \fi:
    \if_meaning:w 5 #3 1 \fi:
    \exp_stop_f:
  \if_int_compare:w \__fp_int_eval:w #4 > \c_zero_int
    \__fp_int_eval:w 1 +
  \fi:
  \fi:
  \fi:
  \fi:
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_round_digit:Nw #1 #2;
  \if_int_odd:w \if_meaning:w 0 #1 1 \else:
    \else:
      \if_meaning:w 5 #1 1 \else:
        0 \fi:
      \fi:
      \exp_stop_f:
    \else:
      \if_int_compare:w \__fp_int_eval:w #2 > \c_zero_int
        \__fp_int_eval:w 1 + \fi:
      \fi:
      \fi:
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_round_digit:Nw \__fp_round_digit:Nw \langle \text{digit} \rangle \langle \text{intexpr} \rangle;
\This function should always be called within an \int_value:w or \__fp_int_eval:w expansion; it may add an extra \__fp_int_eval:w, which means that the integer or integer expression should not be ended with a synonym of \relax, but with a semi-colon for instance.
68.2 The round function

First check that all arguments are floating point numbers. The \texttt{trunc}, \texttt{ceil} and \texttt{floor} functions expect one or two arguments (the second is 0 by default), and the \texttt{round} function also accepts a third argument (\texttt{nan} by default), which changes \#1 from \texttt{\_\_fp_round_to_nearest:NNN} to one of its analogues.

\begin{verbatim}

\_\_fp_round_neg:NNN \texttt{(final sign)} \texttt{(digit)} \texttt{(digit)}

This expands to 0\texttt{\exp_stop_f}: or 1\texttt{\exp_stop_f}: after doing the following test. Starting from a number of the form \texttt{(final sign)0.(15 digits)(digit)} with exactly 15 (non-all-zero) digits before \texttt{(digit)}, subtract from it \texttt{(final sign)0.0...0(digit)} where there are 16 zeros. If in the current rounding mode the result should be rounded down, then this function returns 0\texttt{\exp_stop_f}:. Otherwise, \textit{i.e.}, if the result is rounded back to the first operand, then this function returns 0\texttt{\exp_stop_f}:

It turns out that this negative “round to nearest” is identical to the positive one. And this is the default mode.

\cs_new_eq:NN \_\_fp_round_to_ninf_neg:NNN \_\_fp_round_to_pinf:NNN
\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_round_to_zero_neg:NNN #1 #2 #3 { \if_int_compare:w #3 > \c_zero_int \__fp_round_return_one: \fi: \c_zero_int }
\cs_new_eq:NN \_\_fp_round_to_pinf_neg:NNN \_\_fp_round_to_ninf:NNN
\cs_new_eq:NN \_\_fp_round_to_nearest_neg:NNN \_\_fp_round_to_nearest:NNN
\cs_new_eq:NN \_\_fp_round_to_nearest_ninf_neg:NNN \_\_fp_round_to_nearest_pinf:NNN
\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_round_to_nearest_zero_neg:NNN #1 #2 #3 { \if_int_compare:w #3 < \c__fp_five_int \else: \__fp_round_return_one: \fi: \c_zero_int }
\cs_new_eq:NN \_\_fp_round_to_nearest_pinf_neg:NNN \_\_fp_round_to_nearest_ninf:NNN
\cs_new_eq:NN \_\_fp_round_to_nearest_zero_neg:NNN \_\_fp_round_to_nearest_pinf:NNN
\cs_new_eq:NN \_\_fp_round_to_nearest_neg:NNN \_\_fp_round_to_nearest:NNN
\end{verbatim}
\_\_fp\_round\_no\_arg\_o:Nw

\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp\_round\_no\_arg\_o:Nw #1
\begin{verbatim}
  \cs_if_eq:NNTF #1 \__fp\_round\_to\_nearest:NNN
  { \__fp\_error:nnnn { num-args } { round () } { 1 } { 3 } }
  { \__fp\_error:nffn { num-args }
    \__fp\_round\_name\_from\_cs:N \_\_fp\_round\_to\_nearest\_N #1 \_\_fp\_to\_nearest\_zero\_N #1 \_\_fp\_round\_to\_nearest\_\_pinf\_N #1 \_\_fp\_round\_to\_nearest\_\_ninf\_N #1 }
  \exp_after:wN \c_nan_fp
\end{verbatim}

\__(End\ definition\ for\ \_\_fp\_round\_no\_arg\_o:Nw.)

\_\_fp\_round\_Nww

Having three arguments is only allowed for round, not trunc, ceil, floor, so check for
that case. If all is well, construct one of \_\_fp\_round\_to\_nearest\_N, \_\_fp\_round\_to\_nearest\_zero\_N, \_\_fp\_round\_to\_nearest\_\_pinf\_N and act accordingly.

\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp\_round\_N #1 #2 ; #3 ; \s__fp \__fp\_chk:w #4#5#6 ; #7 @
\begin{verbatim}
  \cs_if_eq:NNTF #1 \__fp\_round\_to\_nearest:NNN
  {
    \tl_if_empty:nTF {#7}
      { \__fp\_round\_to\_nearest\_zero:N #1 \_\_fp\_round\_to\_nearest\_\_pinf\_N #1 \_\_fp\_round\_to\_nearest\_\_ninf\_N #1 }
      { \__fp\_error:nnnn { num-args } { round () } { 1 } { 3 } }
    \exp_after:wN \c_nan_fp
  }
  { \__fp\_error:nffn { num-args }
    \__fp\_round\_name\_from\_cs:N \_\_fp\_round\_to\_nearest\_N #1 \_\_fp\_round\_to\_nearest\_\_pinf\_N #1 \_\_fp\_round\_to\_nearest\_\_ninf\_N #1 }
\end{verbatim}

\__(End\ definition\ for\ \_\_fp\_round\_no\_arg\_o:Nw.)
If the number of digits to round to is an integer or infinity all is good; if it is \texttt{nan} then just produce a \texttt{nan}; otherwise invalid as we have something like \texttt{round(1,3.14)} where the number of digits is not an integer.

\begin{verbatim}
\__fp_round:Nww \__fp_round:Nwn \__fp_round_normal:NwNNnn
\__fp_round_normal:NnnWNNnn \__fp_round_normal_end:wwNnn
\__fp_round_special:NwwNnn \__fp_round_special_aux:Nw

\cs_new:Npn \__fp_round_name_from_cs:N #1
\{ \cs_if_eq:NNTF #1 \__fp_round_to_zero:NNN { trunc } \{
\cs_if_eq:NNTF #1 \__fp_round_to_ninf:NNN { floor } \{
\cs_if_eq:NNTF #1 \__fp_round_to_pinf:NNN { ceil } \{
\round \}
\}
\}
\}

\cs_new:Npn \__fp_round:Nww #1#2 ; #3 ; \{
\__fp_small_int:wTF #3; \{ \__fp_round:Nwn #1#2; \}
\{
\if:w 3 \__fp_kind:w #3 ;
\exp_after:wN \use_i:nn
\else:
\exp_after:wN \use_ii:nn
\fi:
\exp_after:wN \c_nan_fp
\{
\__fp_invalid_operation_tl_o:ff
\{ \__fp_round_name_from_cs:N #1 \}
\{ \__fp_array_to_clist:n \{ #2; #3; \} \}
\}
\}
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_round:Nwn #1 \s__fp \__fp_chk:w 1#3#4#5 #6
\{
\__fp_invalid_operation_tl_o:ff
\{ \__fp_round_name_from_cs:N #1 \}
\{ \__fp_array_to_clist:n \{ #2; #3; \} \}
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_round:Nww #1 \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #2#3#4 #5
\{
\if_meaning:w 1 #2
\exp_after:wN \__fp_round_normal:NwNNnn
\exp_after:wN \__fp_round_normal:NwNNnv
\int_value:w #5
\else:
\exp_after:wN \__fp_exp_after_o:w
\fi:
\s__fp \__fp_chk:w #2#3#4; \}
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_round_normal:NwNNnv
\{
\exp_after:wN \c_nan_fp \__fp_chk:w 1#3#4#5; \}
\}
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_round_special_aux:Nw #1#2;
{
  \exp_after:wN \__fp_exp_after_o:w \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w
  \__fp_sanitize:Nw #1#2; {1000}{0000}{0000}{0000};
}

(End definition for \__fp_round:Nww and others.)

(\package)
Chapter 69

\texttt{l3fp-parse implementation}

69.1 Work plan

The task at hand is non-trivial, and some previous failed attempts show that the code leads to unreadable logs, so we had better get it (almost) right the first time. Let us first describe our goal, then discuss the design precisely before writing any code.

In this file at least, a \textit{floating point object} is a floating point number or tuple. This can be extended to anything that starts with \texttt{\_\_fp} or \texttt{\_\_fp_{type}} and ends with \texttt{;} with some internal structure that depends on the (type).

\begin{verbatim}
\_\_fp\_parse\_n \{\textit{fpexpr}\}
\end{verbatim}

Evaluates the \textit{floating point expression} and leaves the result in the input stream as a floating point object. This function forms the basis of almost all public \texttt{l3fp} functions. During evaluation, each token is fully \texttt{f}-expanded.

\begin{verbatim}
\_\_fp\_parse\_o\_n \{\textit{fpexpr}\}
\end{verbatim}

does the same but expands once after its result.

\TeXhackers\textbf{note}: Registers (integers, toks, etc.) are automatically unpacked, without requiring a function such as \texttt{\_\_int\_use\_n}. Invalid tokens remaining after \texttt{f}-expansion lead to unrecoverable low-level \TeX\ errors.

\textit{(End definition for \_\_fp\_parse\_n.)}

Floating point expressions are composed of numbers, given in various forms, infix operators, such as +, **, or , (which joins two numbers into a list), and prefix operators, such as the unary -, functions, or opening parentheses. Here is a list of precedences which control the order of evaluation (some distinctions are irrelevant for the order of evaluation, but serve as signals), from the tightest binding to the loosest binding.

16 Function calls.

13/14 Binary ** and ~ (right to left).

12 Unary +, -, ! (right to left).

11 Juxtaposition (implicit *) with no parenthesis.
10 Binary * and /.
9 Binary + and -.
7 Comparisons.
6 Logical and, denoted by &&.
5 Logical or, denoted by ||.
4 Ternary operator ?:, piece ?.
3 Ternary operator ?:, piece :.
2 Commas.
1 Place where a comma is allowed and generates a tuple.

0 Start and end of the expression.

23173 \int_const:Nn \c__fp_prec_func_int { 16 }
23174 \int_const:Nn \c__fp_prec_hatii_int { 14 }
23175 \int_const:Nn \c__fp_prec_hat_int { 13 }
23176 \int_const:Nn \c__fp_prec_not_int { 12 }
23177 \int_const:Nn \c__fp_prec_juxt_int { 11 }
23178 \int_const:Nn \c__fp_prec_times_int { 10 }
23179 \int_const:Nn \c__fp_prec_plus_int { 9 }
23180 \int_const:Nn \c__fp_prec_comp_int { 7 }
23181 \int_const:Nn \c__fp_prec_and_int { 6 }
23182 \int_const:Nn \c__fp_prec_or_int { 5 }
23183 \int_const:Nn \c__fp_prec_quest_int { 4 }
23184 \int_const:Nn \c__fp_prec_colon_int { 3 }
23185 \int_const:Nn \c__fp_prec_comma_int { 2 }
23186 \int_const:Nn \c__fp_prec_tuple_int { 1 }
23187 \int_const:Nn \c__fp_prec_end_int { 0 }

(End definition for \c__fp_prec_func_int and others.)

69.1.1 Storing results

The main question in parsing expressions expandably is to decide where to put the intermediate results computed for various subexpressions.

One option is to store the values at the start of the expression, and carry them together as the first argument of each macro. However, we want to f-expand tokens one by one in the expression (as \int_eval:n does), and with this approach, expanding the next unread token forces us to jump with \exp_after:wN over every value computed earlier in the expression. With this approach, the run-time grows at least quadratically in the length of the expression, if not as its cube (inserting the \exp_after:wN is tricky and slow).

A second option is to place those values at the end of the expression. Then expanding the next unread token is straightforward, but this still hits a performance issue: for long expressions we would be reaching all the way to the end of the expression at every step of the calculation. The run-time is again quadratic.

A variation of the above attempts to place the intermediate results which appear when computing a parenthesized expression near the closing parenthesis. This still lets
us expand tokens as we go, and avoids performance problems as long as there are enough parentheses. However, it would be better to avoid requiring the closing parenthesis to be present as soon as the corresponding opening parenthesis is read: the closing parenthesis may still be hidden in a macro yet to be expanded.

Hence, we need to go for some fine expansion control: the result is stored before the start!

Let us illustrate this idea in a simple model: adding positive integers which may be resulting from the expansion of macros, or may be values of registers. Assume that one number, say, 12345, has already been found, and that we want to parse the next number. The current status of the code may look as follows.

\exp_after:wN \add:ww \int_value:w 12345 \exp_after:wN ; \\
\exp:w \operand:w ⟨stuff⟩

One step of expansion expands \exp_after:wN, which triggers the primitive \int_value:w, which reads the five digits we have already found, 12345. This integer is unfinished, causing the second \exp_after:wN to expand, and to trigger the construction \exp:w, which expands \operand:w, defined to read what follows and make a number out of it, then leave \exp_end:, the number, and a semicolon in the input stream. Once \operand:w is done expanding, we obtain essentially

\exp_after:wN \add:ww \int_value:w 12345 ; \\
\exp:w \exp_end: 333444 ;

where in fact \exp_after:wN has already been expanded, \int_value:w has already seen 12345, and \exp:w is still looking for a number. It finds \exp_end:, hence expands to nothing. Now, \int_value:w sees the ;, which cannot be part of a number. The expansion stops, and we are left with

\add:ww 12345 ; 333444 ;

which can safely perform the addition by grabbing two arguments delimited by ;.

If we were to continue parsing the expression, then the following number should also be cleaned up before the next use of a binary operation such as \add:ww. Just like \int_value:w 12345 \exp_after:wN ; expanded what follows once, we need \add:ww to do the calculation, and in the process to expand the following once. This is also true in our real application: all the functions of the form \_fp_...o:ww expand what follows once. This comes at the cost of leaving tokens in the input stack, and we need to be careful not to waste this memory. All of our discussion above is nice but simplistic, as operations should not simply be performed in the order they appear.

69.1.2 Precedence and infix operators

The various operators we will encounter have different precedences, which influence the order of calculations: \(1 + 2 \times 3 = 1 + (2 \times 3)\) because \(\times\) has a higher precedence than \(+\). The true analog of our macro \operand:w must thus take care of that. When looking for an operand, it needs to perform calculations until reaching an operator which has lower precedence than the one which called \operand:w. This means that \operand:w must know what the previous binary operator is, or rather, its precedence: we thus rename it \operand:Nw. Let us describe as an example how we plan to do the calculation \(41-2^3+4+5\). More precisely we describe how to perform the first operation in this expression. Here, we abuse notations: the first argument of \operand:Nw should be an integer

999
constant \( \text{\texttt{c fp prec plus int}}, \ldots \) equal to the precedence of the given operator, not directly the operator itself.

- Clean up 41 and find \(-\). We call \texttt{\textbackslash{operand:}Nw} to find the second operand.
- Clean up 2 and find \(\wedge\).
- Compare the precedences of \(-\) and \(\wedge\). Since the latter is higher, we need to compute the exponentiation. For this, find the second operand with a nested call to \texttt{\textbackslash{operand:}Nw} \(\wedge\).
- Clean up 3 and find \(*\).
- Compare the precedences of \(-\) and \(*\). Since the former is higher, \texttt{\textbackslash{operand:}Nw} \(\wedge\) has found the second operand of the exponentiation, which is computed: \(2^3 = 8\).
- We now have 41–8*4+5, and \texttt{\textbackslash{operand:}Nw} is still looking for a second operand for the subtraction. Is it 8?
- Compare the precedences of \(-\) and \(*\). Since the latter is higher, we are not done with 8. Call \texttt{\textbackslash{operand:}Nw} \(\ast\) to find the second operand of the multiplication.
- Clean up 4, and find \(+\).
- Compare the precedences of \(\ast\) and \(+\). Since the former is higher, \texttt{\textbackslash{operand:}Nw} \(\ast\) has found the second operand of the multiplication, which is computed: \(8 \ast 4 = 32\).
- We now have 41–32+5, and \texttt{\textbackslash{operand:}Nw} is still looking for a second operand for the subtraction. Is it 32?
- Compare the precedences of \(-\) and \(+\). Since they are equal, \texttt{\textbackslash{operand:}Nw} has found the second operand for the subtraction, which is computed: \(41 - 32 = 9\).
- We now have 9+5.

The procedure above stops short of performing all computations, but adding a surrounding call to \texttt{\textbackslash{operand:}Nw} with a very low precedence ensures that all computations are performed before \texttt{\textbackslash{operand:}Nw} is done. Adding a trailing marker with the same very low precedence prevents the surrounding \texttt{\textbackslash{operand:}Nw} from going beyond the marker.

The pattern above to find an operand for a given operator, is to find one number and the next operator, then compare precedences to know if the next computation should be done. If it should, then perform it after finding its second operand, and look at the next operator, then compare precedences to know if the next computation should be done. This continues until we find that the next computation should not be done. Then, we stop.

We are now ready to get a bit more technical and describe which of the \texttt{l3fp-parse} functions correspond to each step above.

First, \texttt{\_\_fp_parse_operand:Nw} is the \texttt{\textbackslash{operand:}Nw} function above, with small modifications due to expansion issues discussed later. We denote by \(\text{\texttt{precedence}}\) the argument of \texttt{\_\_fp_parse_operand:Nw}, that is, the precedence of the binary operator whose operand we are trying to find. The basic action is to read numbers from the input stream. This is done by \texttt{\_\_fp_parse_one:Nw}. A first approximation of this function is that it reads one \(\text{\texttt{number}}\), performing no computation, and finds the following binary \(\text{\texttt{operator}}\). Then it expands to
expanding the \texttt{infix} auxiliary before leaving the above in the input stream.

We now explain the \texttt{infix} auxiliaries. We need some flexibility in how we treat the case of equal precedences: most often, the first operation encountered should be performed, such as 1-2-3 being computed as (1-2)-3, but 2^3^4 should be evaluated as 2^(3^4) instead. For this reason, and to support the equivalence between ** and ~ more easily, each binary operator is converted to a control sequence \texttt{\_\_fp_parse_infix\_\{operator\}:N} when it is encountered for the first time. Instead of passing both precedences to a test function to do the comparison steps above, we pass the \langle \textit{precedence} \rangle (of the earlier operator) to the \texttt{infix} auxiliary for the following \langle \textit{operator} \rangle, to know whether to perform the computation of the \langle \textit{operator} \rangle. If it should not be performed, the \texttt{infix} auxiliary expands to

\begin{verbatim}
\use:none:n \__fp_parse_infix_\{operator\}:N
\end{verbatim}

and otherwise it calls \texttt{\_\_fp_parse_operand:Nw} with the precedence of the \langle \textit{operator} \rangle to find its second operand \langle \textit{number} \rangle and the next \langle \textit{operator} \rangle, and expands to

\begin{verbatim}
\__fp_parse_apply_binary:NwNwN \{operator\} \{number\} \__fp_parse_infix_\{operator\}:N
\end{verbatim}

The \texttt{infix} function is responsible for comparing precedences, but cannot directly call the computation functions, because the first operand \langle \textit{number} \rangle is before the \texttt{infix} function in the input stream. This is why we stop the expansion here and give control to another function to close the loop.

A definition of \texttt{\_\_fp_parse_operand:Nw} \langle \textit{precedence} \rangle with some of the expansion control removed is

\begin{verbatim}
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_continue:NwN \exp_after:wN \{precedence\} \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w \__fp_parse_one:Nw \{precedence\}
\end{verbatim}

This expands \texttt{\_\_fp_parse_one:Nw} \langle \textit{precedence} \rangle completely, which finds a number, wraps the next \langle \textit{operator} \rangle into an \texttt{infix} function, feeds this function the \langle \textit{precedence} \rangle, and expands it, yielding either

\begin{verbatim}
\__fp_parse_continue:NwN \{precedence\} \{number\} \use:none:n \__fp_parse_infix_\{operator\}:N
\end{verbatim}

or

\begin{verbatim}
\__fp_parse_continue:NwN \{precedence\} \{number\} \__fp_parse_apply_binary:NwNwN \{operator\} \{number\} \__fp_parse_infix_\{operator\}:N
\end{verbatim}

The definition of \texttt{\_\_fp_parse_continue:NwN} is then very simple:

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_parse_continue:NwN \#1\#2\#3 \{ \#3 \#1 \#2 \#0 \}
\end{verbatim}
In the first case, \#3 is \use_none:n, yielding
\use_none:n (precedence) (number) @ \_fp_parse_infix_(operator):N
then (number) @ \_fp_parse_infix_(operator):N. In the second case, \#3 is \_fp_parse_apply_binary:NwNwN, whose role is to compute (number) ⟨operator⟩ ⟨number⟩2 and to prepare for the next comparison of precedences: first we get
\_fp_parse_apply_binary:NwNwN
⟨precedence⟩ ⟨number⟩ (operator) ⟨number⟩2
@ \_fp_parse_infix_(operator):N
then
\exp_after:wN \_fp_parse_continue:NwN
\exp_after:wN (precedence)
\exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w
\_fp_(operator)_o:ww ⟨number⟩ (number)2
\exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w
\_fp_parse_infix_(operator)2:N ⟨precedence⟩
where \_fp_(operator)_o:ww computes (number) ⟨operator⟩ ⟨number⟩2 and expands after the result, thus triggers the comparison of the precedence of the ⟨operator⟩2 and the ⟨precedence⟩, continuing the loop.

We have introduced the most important functions here, and the next few paragraphs we describe various subtleties.

69.1.3 Prefix operators, parentheses, and functions

Prefix operators (unary -, +, !) and parentheses are taken care of by the same mechanism, and functions (\texttt{sin}, \texttt{exp}, etc.) as well. Finding the argument of the unary -, for instance, is very similar to grabbing the second operand of a binary infix operator, with a subtle precedence explained below. Once that operand is found, the operator can be applied to it (for the unary -, this simply flips the sign). A left parenthesis is just a prefix operator with a very low precedence equal to that of the closing parenthesis (which is treated as an infix operator, since it normally appears just after numbers), so that all computations are performed until the closing parenthesis. The prefix operator associated to the left parenthesis does not alter its argument, but it removes the closing parenthesis (with some checks).

Prefix operators are the reason why we only summarily described the function \_fp_parse_one:Nw earlier. This function is responsible for reading in the input stream the first possible ⟨number⟩ and the next infix ⟨operator⟩. If what follows \_fp_parse_one:Nw ⟨precedence⟩ is a prefix operator, then we must find the operand of this prefix operator through a nested call to \_fp_parse_operand:N with the appropriate precedence, then apply the operator to the operand found to yield the result of \_fp_parse_one:Nw. So far, all is simple.

The unary operators +, -, ! complicate things a little bit: \texttt{-3**2} should be \texttt{-(3^2)} = \texttt{-9}, and not \texttt{(-3)^2} = \texttt{9}. This would easily be done by giving - a lower precedence, equal to that of the infix + and -. Unfortunately, this fails in cases such as \texttt{3**-2*4}, yielding \texttt{3**(-2*4)} instead of the correct \texttt{3^(-2*4)}. A second attempt would be to call \_fp_parse_operand:N with the ⟨precedence⟩ of the previous operator, but \texttt{0>-2+3} is then
parsed as 0>(2+3): the addition is performed because it binds more tightly than the
comparision which precedes -. The correct approach is for a unary - to perform opera-
tions whose precedence is greater than both that of the previous operation, and that of
the unary - itself. The unary - is given a precedence higher than multiplication and di-
vision. This does not lead to any surprising result, since -(x/y) = (-x)/y and similarly for
multiplication, and it reduces the number of nested calls to \_\_fp\_parse\_operand:Nw.

Functions are implemented as prefix operators with very high precedence, so that
their argument is the first number that can possibly be built.

Note that contrarily to the \textit{infix} functions discussed earlier, the \textit{prefix} functions
do perform tests on the previous \textit{precedence} to decide whether to find an argument or
not, since we know that we need a number, and must never stop there.

69.1.4 Numbers and reading tokens one by one

So far, we have glossed over one important point: what is a “number”? A number is
typically given in the form \langle\textit{significand}\rangle e\langle\textit{exponent}\rangle, where the \langle\textit{significand}\rangle is any non-
empty string composed of decimal digits and at most one decimal separator (a period),
the exponent “e\langle\textit{exponent}\rangle” is optional and is composed of an exponent mark e followed
by a possibly empty string of signs + or - and a non-empty string of decimal digits. The
\langle\textit{significand}\rangle can also be an integer, dimension, skip, or muskip variable, in which case
dimensions are converted from points (or mu units) to floating points, and the \langle\textit{exponent}\rangle
can also be an integer variable. Numbers can also be given as floating point variables, or
as named constants such as \texttt{nan}, \texttt{inf} or \texttt{pi}. We may add more types in the future.

When \_\_fp\_parse\_one:Nw is looking for a “number”, here is what happens.

- If the next token is a control sequence with the meaning of \texttt{scan\_stop};, it can be:
  \_\_s\_fp, in which case our job is done, as what follows is an internal floating point
  number, or \_\_s\_fp\_expr\_mark, in which case the expression has come to an early
  end, as we are still looking for a number here, or something else, in which case we
  consider the control sequence to be a bad variable resulting from c-expansion.

- If the next token is a control sequence with a different meaning, we assume that it is
  a register, unpack it with \texttt{tex\_the:D}, and use its value (in pt for dimensions and
  skips, mu for muskips) as the \langle\textit{significand}\rangle of a number: we look for an exponent.

- If the next token is a digit, we remove any leading zeros, then read a significand
  larger than 1 if the next character is a digit, read a significand smaller than
  1 if the
  next character is a period, or we have found a significand equal to 0 otherwise, and
  look for an exponent.

- If the next token is a letter, we collect more letters until the first non-letter: the
  resulting word may denote a function such as \texttt{asin}, a constant such as \texttt{pi} or be
  unknown. In the first case, we call \_\_fp\_parse\_operand:Nw to find the argument
  of the function, then apply the function, before declaring that we are done. Other-
  wise, we are done, either with the value of the constant, or with the value \texttt{nan} for
  unknown words.

- If the next token is anything else, we check whether it is a known prefix operator,
in which case \_\_fp\_parse\_operand:Nw finds its operand. If it is not known, then
  either a number is missing (if the token is a known infix operator) or the token is
  simply invalid in floating point expressions.
Once a number is found, \_\_fp\_parse\_one:Nw also finds an infix operator. This goes as follows.

- If the next token is a control sequence, it could be the special marker \s\_\_fp\_expr\_mark, and otherwise it is a case of juxtaposing numbers, such as 2\c\_zero\_int, with an implied multiplication.
- If the next token is a letter, it is also a case of juxtaposition, as letters cannot be proper infix operators.
- Otherwise (including in the case of digits), if the token is a known infix operator, the appropriate \_\_fp\_infix\_⟨operator⟩:N function is built, and if it does not exist, we complain. In particular, the juxtaposition \c\_zero\_int 2 is disallowed.

In the above, we need to test whether a character token \#1 is a digit:

\if_int_compare:w 9 < 1 \token_to_str:N \#1 \exp_stop_f:
  is a digit
\else:
  not a digit
\fi:

To exclude 0, replace 9 by 10. The use of \token_to_str:N ensures that a digit with any catcode is detected. To test if a character token is a letter, we need to work with its character code, testing if ‘\#1 lies in [65, 90] (uppercase letters) or [97, 112] (lowercase letters)

\if_int_compare:w \__fp\_int\_eval:w
  ( ‘\#1 \if_int_compare:w \#1 > \'Z - 32 \fi: ) / 26 = 3 \exp_stop_f:
  is a letter
\else:
  not a letter
\fi:

At all steps, we try to accept all category codes: when \#1 is kept to be used later, it is almost always converted to category code other through \token_to_str:N. More precisely, catcodes \{3, 6, 7, 8, 11, 12\} should work without trouble, but not \{1, 2, 4, 10, 13\}, and of course \{0, 5, 9\} cannot become tokens.

Floating point expressions should behave as much as possible like \v-\TeX-based integer expressions and dimension expressions. In particular, f-expansion should be performed as the expression is read, token by token, forcing the expansion of protected macros, and ignoring spaces. One advantage of expanding at every step is that restricted expandable functions can then be used in floating point expressions just as they can be in other kinds of expressions. Problematically, spaces stop f-expansion: for instance, the macro \X below would not be expanded if we simply performed f-expansion.

\DeclareDocumentCommand {\test} {m} { \fp\_eval:n {#1} }
\ExplSyntaxOff
\test { 1 + \X }

Of course, spaces typically do not appear in a code setting, but may very easily come in document-level input, from which some expressions may come. To avoid this problem, at every step, we do essentially what \use:f would do: take an argument, put it back
in the input stream, then f-expand it. This is not a complete solution, since a macro’s
expansion could contain leading spaces which would stop the f-expansion before further
macro calls are performed. However, in practice it should be enough; in particular,
floating point numbers are correctly expanded to the underlying \s__fp \ldots \ s\structure.
The f-expansion is performed by \_\_fp\_parse\_expand:w.

69.2 Main auxiliary functions

\_\_fp\_parse\_operand:Nw
\exp:w \_\_fp\_parse\_operand:Nw \langle precedence \rangle \_\_fp\_parse\_expand:w
Reads the “\ldots\”, performing every computation with a precedence higher than
\langle precedence \rangle, then expands to
\langle result \rangle @ \_\_fp\_parse\_infix_\langle operation \rangle:N ... 
where the \langle operation \rangle is the first operation with a lower precedence, possibly end, and
the “\ldots” start just after the \langle operation \rangle.
(End definition for \_\_fp\_parse\_operand:Nw.)

\_\_fp\_parse\_infix_+:N
\_\_fp\_parse\_infix_+:N \langle precedence \rangle ...
If + has a precedence higher than the \langle precedence \rangle, cleans up a second \langle operand \rangle and
finds the \langle operation2 \rangle which follows, and expands to
\langle operand1 \rangle @ \_\_fp\_parse\_apply\_binary:NwNwN + \langle operand \rangle @ \_\_fp\_parse\_infix_\langle operation2 \rangle:N ... 
Otherwise expands to
\langle operand1 \rangle @ \use\_none:n \_\_fp\_parse\_infix_+:N ...
A similar function exists for each infix operator.
(End definition for \_\_fp\_parse\_infix_+:N.)

\_\_fp\_parse\_one:Nw
\_\_fp\_parse\_one:Nw \langle precedence \rangle ...
Cleans up one or two operands depending on how the precedence of the next oper-
ation compares to the \langle precedence \rangle. If the following \langle operation \rangle has a precedence higher
than \langle precedence \rangle, expands to
\langle operand1 \rangle @ \_\_fp\_parse\_apply\_binary:NwNwN \langle operation \rangle \langle operand2 \rangle @ \_\_fp\_parse\_infix_\langle operation2 \rangle:N ...
and otherwise expands to
\langle operand \rangle @ \use\_none:n \_\_fp\_parse\_infix_\langle operation \rangle:N ...
(End definition for \_\_fp\_parse\_one:Nw.)
69.3 Helpers

\_fp\_parse\_expand:w
\exp:w \_fp\_parse\_expand:w \langle tokens \rangle
This function must always come within a \exp:w expansion. The \langle tokens \rangle should be the part of the expression that we have not yet read. This requires in particular closing all conditionals properly before expanding.

\cs_new:Npn \_fp\_parse\_expand:w \#1 \{ \exp_end_continue_f:w \#1 \}
(End definition for \_fp\_parse\_expand:w.)

\_fp\_parse\_return\_semicolon:w
This very odd function swaps its position with the following fi: and removes \_fp\_parse\_expand:w normally responsible for expansion. That turns out to be useful.

\cs_new:Npn \_fp\_parse\_return\_semicolon:w \#1 \fi: \_fp\_parse\_expand:w \{ \fi: ; \#1 \}
(End definition for \_fp\_parse\_return\_semicolon:w.)

These functions must be called within an \int_value:w or \_fp\_int_eval:w construction. The first token which follows must be f-expanded prior to calling those functions. The functions read tokens one by one, and output digits into the input stream, until meeting a non-digit, or up to a number of digits equal to their index. The full expansion is
\langle digits \rangle ; \langle filling 0 \rangle ; \langle length \rangle
where \langle filling 0 \rangle is a string of zeros such that \langle digits \rangle \langle filling 0 \rangle has the length given by the index of the function, and \langle length \rangle is the number of zeros in the \langle filling 0 \rangle string. Each function puts a digit into the input stream and calls the next function, until we find a non-digit. We are careful to pass the tested tokens through \token_to_str:N to normalize their category code.

\cs_set_protected:Npn \_fp\_tmp:w \#1 \#2 \#3
{\cs_new:cpn { _fp\_parse\_digits_ \#1 :N } \#1
{\if_int_compare:w 9 < 1 \token_to_str:N \#1 \exp_stop_f:
 \token_to_str:N \#1 \exp_after:wN \#1 \exp:w
 \else:
 \_fp\_parse\_return\_semicolon:w \#3 \#1 \fi:
 \_fp\_parse\_expand:w
}
}
\_fp\_tmp:w \{vii\} \_fp\_parse\_digits_vi:N \{ 000000 ; 7 \}
\_fp\_tmp:w \{vi\} \_fp\_parse\_digits_v:N \{ 000000 ; 6 \}
\_fp\_tmp:w \{v\} \_fp\_parse\_digits_iv:N \{ 000000 ; 5 \}
\_fp\_tmp:w \{iv\} \_fp\_parse\_digits_iii:N \{ 0000 ; 4 \}
\_fp\_tmp:w \{iii\} \_fp\_parse\_digits_ii:N \{ 000 ; 3 \}
\_fp\_tmp:w \{ii\} \_fp\_parse\_digits_i:N \{ 00 ; 2 \}
\_fp\_tmp:w \{i\} \_fp\_parse\_digits_:N \{ 0 ; 1 \}
\cs_new:Npn \_fp\_parse\_digits_:N \{ ; ; 0 \}
(End definition for \_fp\_parse\_digits_vii:N and others.)
69.4 Parsing one number

\_\_fp\_parse\_one:Nw

This function finds one number, and packs the symbol which follows in an \_\_fp\_parse\_infix... csname. #1 is the previous (precedence), and #2 the first token of the operand. We distinguish four cases: #2 is equal to \scan\_stop: in meaning, #2 is a digit, and #2 is something else (this last case is split further later). Despite the earlier f\-expansion, #2 may still be expandable if it was protected by \exp\_not:N, as may happen with the \LaTeX\_2\epsilon command \protect. Using a well placed \reverse\_if:N, this case is sent to \_\_fp\_parse\_one\_fp:NN which deals with it robustly.

```
\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp\_parse\_one:Nw #1 #2
\{
    \if_catcode:w \scan\_stop: \exp_not:N #2
    \exp_after:wN \if_meaning:w \exp_not:N #2 #2 \else:
    \exp_after:wN \reverse_if:N
    \fi:
    \if_meaning:w \scan\_stop: #2
    \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN
    \exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_parse\_one\_fp:NN
    \else:
    \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN
    \exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_parse\_one\_register:NN
    \fi:
    \else:
    \if_int_compare:w 9 < 1 \token_to_str:N #2 \exp_stop_f:
    \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN
    \exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_parse\_one\_digit:NN
    \else:
    \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN
    \exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_parse\_one\_other:NN
    \fi:
    \fi:
    \#1 \#2
\}
```
(End definition for \_\_fp\_parse\_one:Nw.)

\_\_fp\_parse\_one\_fp:NN
\_\_fp\_exp\_after\_exp\_mark\_f:nn
\_\_fp\_exp\_after\_?\_f:nn

This function receives a (precedence) and a control sequence equal to \scan\_stop: in meaning. There are three cases.

- \_\_fp\ starts a floating point number, and we call \_\_fp\_exp\_after\_f:nn, which f\-expands after the floating point.
- \_\_fp\_exp\_expr\_mark is a premature end, we call \_\_fp\_exp\_after\_expr\_mark\_\_f:nn, which triggers an fp\-early\-end error.
- For a control sequence not containing \_\_fp\, we call \_\_fp\_exp\_after\_?\_f:nn, causing a bad\-variable error.

This scheme is extensible: additional types can be added by starting the variables with a scan mark of the form \_\_fp\_\{type\} and defining \_\_fp\_exp\_after\_\{type\}\_f:nn. In all cases, we make sure that the second argument of \_\_fp\_parse\_infix:NN is correctly expanded. A special case only enabled in \LaTeX\_2\epsilon is that if \protect is encountered then
the error message mentions the control sequence which follows it rather than \protect itself. The test for \LaTeX uses @unexpandable@protect rather than \protect because \protect is often \texttt{scan_stop}: hence “does not exist”. 

\begin{verbatim}
cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_one_fp:NN \#1
  { \__fp_exp_after_any_f:nw
    { \exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_infix:NN
        \exp_after:wN \#1 \exp:w \__fp_parse_expand:w }
  }
cs_new:Npn \__fp_exp_after_expr_mark_f:nw \#1
  { \int_case:nnF { \exp_after:wN \use_i:nnn \use_none:nnn \#1 }
    { \c__fp_prec_comma_int { } \c__fp_prec_tuple_int { } \c__fp_prec_end_int
      { \exp_after:wN \c__fp_empty_tuple_fp
        \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w }
    }
    { \msg_expandable_error:nn { fp } { early-end }
      \exp_after:wN \c_nan_fp \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w \#1 }
  }
cs_new:cpn { __fp_exp_after_?_f:nw } \#1 \#2
  { \msg_expandable_error:nnn { kernel } { bad-variable } \#2 }
  \exp_after:wN \c_nan_fp \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w \#1
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__fp_tmp:w \#1
  { \cs_if_exist:NT \#1
    { \cs_gset:cpn { __fp_exp_after_?_f:nw } ##1##2
      { \exp_after:wN \c_nan_fp \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w \#1
        \str_if_eq:nnTF {##2} { \protect }
          { \cs_if_eq:NNTF \#1 \use_i:nn { \use:n }
            { \msg_expandable_error:nnn { fp }
              { robust-cmd } }
          }
        { \msg_expandable_error:nnn { kernel } { bad-variable } {##2}
          { \#1} }
      } }
  }
\end{verbatim}
This is called whenever \#2 is a control sequence other than \texttt{scan_stop}: in meaning. We special-case \texttt{\wd}, \texttt{\ht}, \texttt{\dp} (see later) and otherwise assume that it is a register, but carefully unpack it with \texttt{\tex_the:D} within braces. First, we find the exponent following \#2. Then we unpack \#2 with \texttt{\tex_the:D}, and the \texttt{auxii} auxiliary distinguishes integer registers from dimensions/skips from muskips, according to the presence of a period and/or of pt. For integers, simply convert \langle value \rangle e\langle exponent \rangle to a floating point number with \texttt{\__fp_parse:n} (this is somewhat wasteful). For other registers, the decimal rounding provided by \TeX does not accurately represent the binary value that it manipulates, so we extract this binary value as a number of scaled points with \texttt{\int_value:w \dim_to_decimal_in_sp:n} \{ \langle decimal value \rangle pt \}, and use an auxiliary of \texttt{\dim_to_fp:n}, which performs the multiplication by \texttt{2^{-16}}, correctly rounded.
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_one_register_dim:ww #1; #2; 
{ 
\exp_after:wN \__fp_from_dim_test:ww 
\int_value:w #2 \exp_after:wN , 
\int_value:w \dim_to_decimal_in_sp:n { #1 pt } ; 
}

(End definition for \__fp_parse_one_register:NN and others.)

\__fp_parse_one_register_special:N
\__fp_parse_one_register_math:NNw
\__fp_parse_one_register_wd:w
\__fp_parse_one_register_wd:Nw

The \wd, \dp, \ht primitives expect an integer argument. We abuse the exponent parser to find the integer argument: simply include the exponent marker e. Once that “exponent” is found, use \tex_the:D to find the box dimension and then copy what we did for dimensions.

\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_one_register_special:N #1 
{ 
\if_meaning:w \box_wd:N #1 \__fp_parse_one_register_wd:w \fi:
\if_meaning:w \box_ht:N #1 \__fp_parse_one_register_wd:w \fi:
\if_meaning:w \box_dp:N #1 \__fp_parse_one_register_wd:w \fi:
\if_meaning:w \infty #1 \__fp_parse_one_register_math:NNw \infty #1 \fi:
\if_meaning:w \pi #1 \__fp_parse_one_register_math:NNw \pi #1 \fi:
}

\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_one_register_math:NNw #1#2#3#4 \__fp_parse_expand:w 
{ #3 \str_if_eq:nnTF {#1} {#2} 
{ \msg_expandable_error:nnn { fp } { infty-pi } {#1} 
\c_nan_fp 
} { #4 \__fp_parse_expand:w } }

\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_one_register_wd:w #1#2 \exp_after:wN #3#4 \__fp_parse_expand:w 
{ #1 \exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_one_register_wd:w \#2 \exp_after:wN , 
\int_value:w \dim_to_decimal_in_sp:n { #1 #2 } ; }

(End definition for \__fp_parse_one_register_special:N and others.)

\__fp_parse_one_digit:NN

A digit marks the beginning of an explicit floating point number. Once the number is found, we catch the case of overflow and underflow with \__fp-sanitize:NN,
then  \_fp_parse_infix_after_operand:NwN expands  \_fp_parse_infix:NN after the number we find, to wrap the following infix operator as required. Finding the number itself begins by removing leading zeros: further steps are described later.

\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_one_digit:NN #1  

\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_infix_after_operand:NwN  
\exp_after:wN #1  
\exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w  
\exp_after:wN \__fp_sanitize:wN  
\int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w 0 \__fp_parse_trim_zeros:N

(End definition for  \_fp_parse_one_digit:NN.)

\_fp_parse_one_other:NN

For this function, #2 is a character token which is not a digit. If it is an ASCII letter, \_fp_parse_letters:N beyond this one and give the result to \_fp_parse_prefix:N. Otherwise, the character is assumed to be a prefix operator, and we build \_fp_parse_prefix_(operator):Nw.

\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_one_other:NN #1 #2  
\if_int_compare:w  
\__fp_int_eval:w ( '#2 \if_int_compare:w '#2 > 'Z - 32 \fi: ) / 26  
= 3 \exp_stop_f:  
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_word:Nw  
\exp_after:wN #1  
\exp_after:wN #2  
\cs:w \__fp_parse_prefix\__token_to_str:N #2 :Nw  
\exp_end:w  
\__fp_parse_letters:N  
\exp:w  
\else:  
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_prefix:NNN  
\exp_after:wN #1  
\exp_after:wN #2  
\cs:w \__fp_parse_prefix\__token_to_str:N #2 :Nw  
\exp_end:w  
\exp:w  
\fi:  
\__fp_parse_expand:w

(End definition for  \_fp_parse_one_other:NN.)

\_fp_parse_word:Nw
\_fp_parse_letters:N

Finding letters is a simple recursion. Once \_fp_parse_letters:N has done its job, we try to build a control sequence from the word #2. If it is a known word, then the corresponding action is taken, and otherwise, we complain about an unknown word, yield \c_nan_fp, and look for the following infix operator. Note that the unknown word could be a mistyped function as well as a mistyped constant, so there is no way to tell whether to look for arguments; we do not. The standard requires “inf” and “infinity” and “nan” to be recognized regardless of case, but we probably don’t want to allow every l3fp word to have an arbitrary mixture of lower and upper case, so we test and use a differently-named control sequence.
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_word:Nw \#1#2; 
\cs_if_exist_use:cF \{ \__fp_parse_word_#2:N \} 
\cs_if_exist_use:cF \{ \__fp_parse_caseless_ \str_foldcase:n \{#2\} :N \} 
\msg_expandable_error:nnn \{ fp \} \{ unknown-fp-word \} \{#2\} 
\exp_after:wN \c_nan_fp \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w 
\__fp_parse_infix:NN 
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_letters:N \#1 
\exp_end_continue_f:w 
\if_int_compare:w \if_catcode:w \scan_stop: \exp_not:N \#1 0 \else: \__fp_int_eval:w \{ #1 \if_int_compare:w #1 > 'Z - 32 \fi: \} / 26 \fi: = 3 \exp_stop_f: \exp:w \exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_letters:N \exp:w 
\else: 
\__fp_parse_prefix:NNN \#1#2#3 
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_prefix:NNN \#1#2#3 
\if_meaning:w \scan_stop: \#3 \exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_prefix_unknown:NNN \fi: \#3 \#1 
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_prefix_unknown:NNN \#1#2#3 
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_prefix:NNN \#1#2#3 
(End definition for \__fp_parse_word:Nw and \__fp_parse_letters:N.)

For this function, \#1 is the previous \textit{(precedence)}, \#2 is the operator just seen, and \#3 is a control sequence which implements the operator if it is a known operator. If this control sequence is \texttt{\scan_stop:}, then the operator is in fact unknown. Either the expression is missing a number there (if the operator is valid as an infix operator), and we put \texttt{nan}, wrapping the infix operator in a \texttt{csname} as appropriate, or the character is simply invalid in floating point expressions, and we continue looking for a number, starting again from \__fp_parse_one:Nw.
69.4.1 Numbers: trimming leading zeros

Numbers are parsed as follows: first we trim leading zeros, then if the next character is a digit, start reading a significand $\geq 1$ with the set of functions $\__fp_parse_large$...; if it is a period, the significand is $< 1$; and otherwise it is zero. In the second case, trim additional zeros after the period, counting them for an exponent shift $(\exp_1) < 0$, then read the significand with the set of functions $\__fp_parse_small$... Once the significand is read, read the exponent if e is present.

This function expects an already expanded token. It removes any leading zero, then distinguishes three cases: if the first non-zero token is a digit, then call $\__fp_parse_large$ (the significand is $\geq 1$); if it is $\cdot$, then continue trimming zeros with $\__fp_parse_strim_zeros$; otherwise, our number is exactly zero, and we call $\__fp_parse_zero$ to take care of that case.

\[\text{End definition for } \__fp_parse_prefix:NNN \text{ and } \__fp_parse_prefix_unknown:NNN.\]
If we have removed all digits until a period (or if the body started with a period), then enter the “small trim” loop which outputs −1 for each removed 0. Those −1 are added to an integer expression waiting for the exponent. If the first non-zero token is a digit, call \fpparsesmall (our significand is smaller than 1), and otherwise, the number is an exact zero. The name \texttt{strim} stands for “small trim”.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_strim_zeros:N #1
{\if:w 0 \exp_not:N #1 - 1 \exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_strim_zeros:N \exp:w \else:
\__fp_parse_strim_end:w #1 \fi:
\__fp_parse_expand:w}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_strim_end:w #1 \fi: \__fp_parse_expand:w
{\fi:
\if_int_compare:w 9 < 1 \token_to_str:N #1 \exp_stop_f:
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_small:N \else:
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_zero:
\fi:
#1}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__fp_parse_strim_zeros:N and \__fp_parse_strim_end:w.)

\_fp_parse_zero: After reading a significand of 0, find any exponent, then put a sign of 1 for \_fp_\texttt{sanitize:wN}, which removes everything and leaves an exact zero.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_fp_parse_zero:
{\exp_after:wN ; \exp_after:wN 1 \int_value:w \_fp_parse_exponent:N}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \_fp_parse_zero:.)

69.4.2 Number: small significand

This function is called after we have passed the decimal separator and removed all leading zeros from the significand. It is followed by a non-zero digit (with any catcode). The goal is to read up to 16 digits. But we can’t do that all at once, because \_int_value:w (which allows us to collect digits and continue expanding) can only go up to 9 digits. Hence we grab digits in two steps of 8 digits. Since #1 is a digit, read seven more digits using \_fp_parse_digits_vii:N. The small leading auxiliary leaves those digits in the \_int_value:w, and grabs some more, or stops if there are no more digits. Then the
pack_leading auxiliary puts the various parts in the appropriate order for the processing further up.

\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_small:N #1
\begin{sloppypar}
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_pack_leading:NNNNww
\int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w 1 \token_to_str:N #1
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_small_leading:wwNN
\int_value:w 1
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_digits_vii:N
\exp:w \__fp_parse_expand:w
\end{sloppypar}
\end{minipage}

\begin{sloppypar}
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_small_leading:wwNN
\__fp_parse_small_leading:wwNN 1 \langle digits \rangle \langle zeros \rangle \langle number of zeros \rangle
\end{sloppypar}

We leave \langle digits \rangle \langle zeros \rangle in the input stream: the functions used to grab digits are such that this constitutes digits 1 through 8 of the significand. Then prepare to pack 8 more digits, with an exponent shift of zero (this shift is used in the case of a large significand). If \#4 is a digit, leave it behind for the packing function, and read 6 more digits to reach a total of 15 digits: further digits are involved in the rounding. Otherwise put 8 zeros in to complete the significand, then look for an exponent.

\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_small_leading:wwNN 1 #1 ; #2; #3 #4
\begin{sloppypar}
\#1 #2
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_pack_trailing:NNNNww
\exp_after:wN 0
\int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w 1
\if_int_compare:w 9 < 1 \token_to_str:N #4 \exp_stop_f:
\token_to_str:N #4
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_small_trailing:wwNN
\int_value:w 1
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_digits_vii:N
\exp:w
\else:
0000 0000 \__fp_parse_exponent:Nw #4
\fi:
\__fp_parse_expand:w
\end{sloppypar}
\end{minipage}

\begin{sloppypar}
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_small_trailing:wwNN
\__fp_parse_small_trailing:wwNN 1 \langle digits \rangle \langle zeros \rangle \langle number of zeros \rangle \langle next token \rangle
\end{sloppypar}

Leave digits 10 to 15 (arguments \#1 and \#2) in the input stream. If the \langle next token \rangle is a digit, it is the 16th digit, we keep it, then the small_round auxiliary considers this digit and all further digits to perform the rounding: the function expands to nothing, to +0 or to +1. Otherwise, there is no 16-th digit, so we put a 0, and look for an exponent.

\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_small_trailing:wwNN 1 \langle digits \rangle \langle zeros \rangle \langle number of zeros \rangle
\begin{sloppypar}
\#1 \#2
\if_int_compare:w 9 < 1 \token_to_str:N #4 \exp_stop_f:
\token_to_str:N #4
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_small_round:NN
\end{sloppypar}
\end{minipage}
Those functions are expanded after all the digits are found, we took care of the rounding, as well as the exponent. The last argument is the exponent. The previous five arguments are 8 digits which we pack in groups of 4, and the argument before that is 1, except in the rare case where rounding lead to a carry, in which case the argument is 2. The trailing function has an exponent shift as its first argument, which we add to the exponent found in the e... syntax. If the trailing digits cause a carry, the integer expression for the leading digits is incremented (+1 in the code below). If the leading digits propagate this carry all the way up, the function \texttt{\_\_fp\_parse\_pack\_carry:w} increments the exponent, and changes the significand from 0000... to 1000...: this is simple because such a carry can only occur to give rise to a power of 10.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_fp\_parse\_large:N #1 { \exp_after:wN \_fp\_parse\_large\_leading:wNN \int_value:w 1 \token_to_str:N #1 \exp_after:wN \_fp\_parse\_digits_vii:N }\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\_\_fp\_parse\_small\_trailing:wNN}, \texttt{\_\_fp\_parse\_large\_leading:wNN}, \texttt{\_\_fp\_parse\_large\_carry:w}.)

69.4.3 Number: large significand

Parsing a significand larger than 1 is a little bit more difficult than parsing small significands. We need to count the number of digits before the decimal separator, and add that to the final exponent. We also need to test for the presence of a dot each time we run out of digits, and branch to the appropriate \texttt{\_\_parse\_small} function in those cases.

This function is followed by the first non-zero digit of a “large” significand ($\geq 1$). It is called within an integer expression for the exponent. Grab up to 7 more digits, for a total of 8 digits.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_fp\_parse\_large:N #1 { \exp_after:wN \_fp\_parse\_large\_leading:wNN \int_value:w 1 \token_to_str:N #1 \exp_after:wN \_fp\_parse\_digits_vii:N \exp:w \_fp\_parse\_expand:w }\end{verbatim}

1016
\__fp_parse_large_leading:wwNN 1 \{ \text{digits} \} ; \{ \text{zeros} \} ; \{ \text{number of zeros} \} \quad \text{(next token)}

We shift the exponent by the number of digits in \#1, namely the target number, 8, minus the \{ \text{number of zeros} \} (number of digits missing). Then prepare to pack the 8 first digits. If the \{ \text{next token} \} is a digit, read up to 6 more digits (digits 10 to 15). If it is a period, try to grab the end of our 8 first digits, branching to the small functions since the number of digit does not affect the exponent anymore. Finally, if this is the end of the significand, insert the \{ \text{zeros} \} to complete the 8 first digits, insert 8 more, and look for an exponent.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_large_leading:wwNN 1 #1 ; #2; #3 #4

\int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w 1 #1
\if_int_compare:w 9 < 1 \token_to_str:N #4 \exp_stop_f:
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_large_trailing:wwNN
\token_to_str:N #4
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_digits_vi:N
\else:
\if:w . \exp_not:N #4
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_small_leading:wwNN
\int_value:w 1
\cs:w
\exp:w
\else:
\exp:w
\fi:
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_exponent:Nw #4
\fi:
\__fp_parse_expand:w
\end{verbatim}

\text{(End definition for \__fp_parse_large_leading:wwNN.)}

\__fp_parse_large_trailing:wwNN 1 \{ \text{digits} \} ; \{ \text{zeros} \} ; \{ \text{number of zeros} \} \quad \text{(next token)}

We have just read 15 digits. If the \{ \text{next token} \} is a digit, then the exponent shift caused by this block of 8 digits is 8, first argument to the pack_trailing function. We keep the \{ \text{digits} \} and this 16-th digit, and find how this should be rounded using \__fp_parse_large_round:NN. Otherwise, the exponent shift is the number of \{ \text{digits} \}, 7 minus the \{ \text{number of zeros} \}, and we test for a decimal point. This case happens in 123451234512345.67 with exactly 15 digits before the decimal separator. Then branch to the appropriate small auxiliary, grabbing a few more digits to complement the digits.
we already grabbed. Finally, if this is truly the end of the significand, look for an exponent after using the \langle \text{zeros} \rangle and providing a 16-th digit of 0.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_parse_large_trailing:wwNN 1 #1 ; #2; #3 #4
\{ \if_int_compare:w 9 < 1 \token_to_str:N #4 \exp_stop_f:
\exp_after:wN \_\_fp_parse_pack_trailing:\NNNNNNww
\exp_after:wN \c__fp_half_prec_int
\int_value:w \_\_fp_int_eval:w 1 \#1 \token_to_str:N #4
\exp_after:wN \_\_fp_parse_large_round:NN
\exp_after:wN \_\_fp_parse_large_round:NN
\exp:w
\else:
\exp_after:wN \_\_fp_parse_pack_trailing:\NNNNNNww
\int_value:w \_\_fp_int_eval:w 7 - \#3 \exp_stop_f:
\if:w . \exp_not:N #4
\exp_after:wN \_\_fp_parse_small_trailing:wwNN
\int_value:w 1
\cs:w
\_\_fp_parse_digits_
\_\_fp_int_to_roman:w \#3
:N \exp_after:wN
\cs:w
\else:
\#2 0 \_\_fp_parse_exponent:Nw \#4
\fi:
\exp:w
\fi:
\exp_after:wN \_\_fp_parse_round:NN
\}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \_\_fp_parse_large_trailing:wwNN.)

\subsection{Number: beyond 16 digits, rounding}

This loop is called when rounding a number (whether the mantissa is small or large). It should appear in an integer expression. This function reads digits one by one, until reaching a non-digit, and adds 1 to the integer expression for each digit. If all digits found are 0, the function ends the expression by ;0, otherwise by ;1. This is done by switching the loop to round_up at the first non-zero digit, thus we avoid to test whether digits are 0 or not once we see a first non-zero digit.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_parse_round_loop:N \#1
\{ \if_int_compare:w 9 < 1 \token_to_str:N \#1 \exp_stop_f:
+ 1
\if:w 0 \token_to_str:N \#1
\exp_after:wN \_\_fp_parse_round_loop:N
\exp:w
\else:
\exp_after:wN \_\_fp_parse_round_up:N
\exp:w
\fi:
\exp:w
\else:
\end{verbatim}

1018
\_fp_parse_return_semicolon:w 0 \#1
\fi:
\_fp_parse_expand:w
}
\cs_new:Npn \_fp_parse_round_up:N #1
{\if_int_compare:w 9 < 1 \token_to_str:N #1 \exp_stop_f:
+ 1
\exp_after:wN \_fp_parse_round_up:N
\exp:w
\else:
\_fp_parse_return_semicolon:w 1 \#1
\fi:
\_fp_parse_expand:w
}(End definition for \_fp_parse_round_loop:N and \_fp_parse_round_up:N.)
\_fp_parse_round_after:wN
After the loop \_fp_parse_round_loop:N, this function fetches an exponent with \_fp_parse_exponent:N, and combines it with the number of digits counted by \_fp_parse_round_loop:N. At the same time, the result 0 or 1 is added to the surrounding integer expression.
\cs_new:Npn \_fp_parse_round_after:wN #1; #2
{+ #2 \exp_after:wN ;
\int_value:w \_fp_int_eval:w #1 + \_fp_parse_exponent:N
}\_fp_parse_small_round:NN
\_fp_parse_round_after:wN
Here, \#1 is the digit that we are currently rounding (we only care whether it is even or odd). If \#2 is not a digit, then fetch an exponent and expand to ;\{exponent\} only. Otherwise, we expand to +0 or +1, then ;\{exponent\}. To decide which, call \_fp_round_s:NNNw to know whether to round up, giving it as arguments a sign 0 (all explicit numbers are positive), the digit \#1 to round, the first following digit \#2, and either +0 or +1 depending on whether the following digits are all zero or not. This last argument is obtained by \_fp_parse_round_loop:N, whose number of digits we discard by multiplying it by 0. The exponent which follows the number is also fetched by \_fp_parse_round_after:wN.
\cs_new:Npn \_fp_parse_small_round:NN #1#2
{\if_int_compare:w 9 < 1 \token_to_str:N #2 \exp_stop_f:
+ \exp_after:wN \_fp_round_s:NNNw
\exp_after:wN 0
\exp_after:wN \#1
\exp_after:wN \#2
\int_value:w \_fp_int_eval:w \_fp_int_eval:w
\exp_after:wN \_fp_parse_round_after:wN
\int_value:w \_fp_int_eval:w 0 \* \_fp_int_eval:w 0
\exp_after:wN \_fp_parse_round_loop:N
\exp:w
\else:
\_fp_parse_exponent:Nw \#2
\_fp_parse_round_after:wN
\_fp_parse_round_after:wN
(End definition for \_fp_parse_round_after:wN.)
\_fp_parse_small_round:NN
\_fp_parse_round_after:wN
Large numbers are harder to round, as there may be a period in the way. Again, \#1 is
the digit that we are currently rounding (we only care whether it is even or odd). If there
are no more digits (\#2 is not a digit), then we must test for a period: if there is one,
then switch to the rounding function for small significands, otherwise fetch an exponent.
If there are more digits (\#2 is a digit), then round, checking with \_\_fp\_parse\_round\_loop:\N if all further digits vanish, or some are non-zero. This loop is not enough, as it is
stopped by a period. After the loop, the aux function tests for a period: if it is present,
then we must continue looking for digits, this time discarding the number of digits we
find.

\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp\_parse\_large\_round:NN \#1\#2
{\fi:
  \_\_fp\_parse\_large\_round:NN
  \_\_fp\_parse\_large\_round\_test:NN
  \_\_fp\_parse\_large\_round\_aux:w\NN
}

\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp\_parse\_large\_round:NN \#1\#2
{\if_int_compare:w 9 < 1 \token_to_str:N \#2 \exp_stop_f:
+ \exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_round\_s:NNNw
\exp_after:wN 0
\exp_after:wN \#1
\exp_after:wN \#2
\int_value:w \_\_fp\_int\_eval:w
\exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_parse\_large\_round\_aux:w\NN
\int_value:w \_\_fp\_int\_eval:w 1
\exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_parse\_round\_loop:\N
\else: \%A could be dot, or e, or other
\exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_parse\_large\_round\_test:NN
\exp_after:wN \#1
\exp_after:wN \#2
\fi:
\exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_parse\_expand:w
\exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_parse\_expand:w
}

\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp\_parse\_large\_round\_test:NN \#1\#2
{\if:w . \exp_not:N \#2
\exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_parse\_small\_round:NN
\exp_after:wN \#1
\exp:w
\else:
\_\_fp\_parse\_exponent:Nw \#2
\fi:
\_\_fp\_parse\_expand:w
}

\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp\_parse\_large\_round\_aux:w\NN \#1 \#2 \#3
{\if:w . \exp_not:N \#3
+ \#2 \exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_parse\_round\_after:\N
\int_value:w \_\_fp\_int\_eval:w \#1
\if:w . \exp_not:N \#3
+ 0 * \_\_fp\_int\_eval:w 0
\exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_parse\_round\_loop:\N
\exp:w \exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_parse\_expand:w
\else:

1020
69.4.5 Number: finding the exponent

Expansion is a little bit tricky here, in part because we accept input where multiplication is implicit.

\__fp_parse:n { 3.2 \texttt{erf}(0.1) }
\__fp_parse:n { 3.2 e\_my\_int }
\__fp_parse:n { 3.2 \texttt{c\_pi\_fp} }

The first case indicates that just looking one character ahead for an “\texttt{e}” is not enough, since we would mistake the function \texttt{erf} for an exponent of “rf”. An alternative would be to look two tokens ahead and check if what follows is a sign or a digit, considering in that case that we must be finding an exponent. But taking care of the second case requires that we unpack registers after e. However, blindly expanding the two tokens ahead completely would break the third example (unpacking is even worse). Indeed, in the course of reading 3.2, \texttt{c\_pi\_fp} is expanded to \texttt{s\_fp \_fp\_chk:w 1 0 {-1} {3141} \ldots}; and \texttt{s\_fp} stops the expansion. Expanding two tokens ahead would then force the expansion of \texttt{\_fp\_chk:w} (despite it being protected), and that function tries to produce an error.

What can we do? Really, the reason why this last case breaks is that just as TeX does, we should read ahead as little as possible. Here, the only case where there may be an exponent is if the first token ahead is e. Then we expand (and possibly unpack) the second token.

\__fp_parse_exponent:Nw

This auxiliary is convenient to smuggle some material through \texttt{fi}: ending conditional processing. We place those \texttt{fi}: (argument \#2) at a very odd place because this allows us to insert \texttt{\_fp\_int\_eval:w}... there if needed.

\__fp_parse_exponent:N
\__fp_parse_exponent_aux:NN

This function should be called within an \texttt{int\_value:w} expansion (or within an integer expression). It leaves digits of the exponent behind it in the input stream, and terminates the expansion with a semicolon. If there is no \texttt{e} (or \texttt{E}), leave an exponent of 0. If there is a \texttt{e} or \texttt{E}, expand the next token to run some tests on it. The first rough test is that if the character code of \#1 is greater than that of 9 (largest code valid for an exponent, less than any code valid for an identifier), there was in fact no exponent; otherwise, we search for the sign of the exponent.
\if:w e \if:w E \exp_not:N \#1 e \else: \exp_not:N \#1 \fi:
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_exponent_aux:NN
\exp_after:wN \#1
\exp:w
\else:
0 \__fp_parse_return_semicolon:w \#1
\fi:
\__fp_parse_expand:w
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_exponent_aux:NN #1#2
{\if_int_compare:w \if_catcode:w \scan_stop: \exp_not:N #2
0 \else: '9 \exp_stop_f:
0 \exp_after:wN ; \exp_after:wN #1
\else:
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_exponent_sign:N
#2
\fi:
\__fp_parse_exponent_sign:N #1
{ \__fp_parse_return_semicolon:w #1 }
\exp_after:wN ;
\exp:w
\else:
\__fp_parse_exponent_body:N \#1
\exp_after:wN \#2
\fi:
\__fp_parse_exponent_body:N \#1
(End definition for \__fp_parse_exponent:N and \__fp_parse_exponent_aux:NN.)
\__fp_parse_exponent_sign:N
Read signs one by one (if there is any).
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_exponent_sign:N #1
{\if:w + \if:w - \exp_not:N #1 + \token_to_str:N #1 \fi: \token_to_str:N #1
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_exponent_sign:N
\exp:w \exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_exponent_digits:N
\exp:w \exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_exponent_body:N
\else:
\__fp_parse_exponent_body:N \#1
\exp_after:wN \#2
\fi:
\__fp_parse_exponent_body:N \#1
(End definition for \__fp_parse_exponent_sign:N.)
\__fp_parse_exponent_body:N
An exponent can be an explicit integer (most common case), or various other things
(most of which are invalid).
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_exponent_body:N \#1
{\if_int_compare:w 9 < 1 \token_to_str:N \#1 \exp_stop_f:
\token_to_str:N \#1
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_exponent_digits:N
\exp:w
\else:
\__fp_parse_exponent_keep:NTF \#1
{ \__fp_parse_return_semicolon:w \#1 }
{ \exp_after:wN ;
\exp:w
}
\fi:
\__fp_parse_exponent_body:N \#1
}
\_\_fp\_parse\_exponent\_digits:N

Read digits one by one, and leave them behind in the input stream. When finding a non-digit, stop, and insert a semicolon. Note that we do not check for overflow of the exponent, hence there can be a \TeX error. It is mostly harmless, except when parsing 0e9876543210, which should be a valid representation of 0, but is not.

\cs_new:Npn \__fp\_parse\_exponent\_digits:N #1
{ \if_int_compare:w 9 < 1 \token_to_str:N #1 \exp_stop_f: \token_to_str:N #1 \exp:w \else: \__fp\_parse\_return\_semicolon:w #1 \fi: \__fp\_parse\_expand:w }

\_\_fp\_parse\_exponent\_keep:NTF

This is the last building block for parsing exponents. The argument #1 is already fully expanded, and neither + nor - nor a digit. It can be:

- \s__fp, marking the start of an internal floating point, invalid here;
- another control sequence equal to \relax, probably a bad variable;
- a register: in this case we make sure that it is an integer register, not a dimension;
- a character other than +, - or digits, again, an error.

\prg_new_conditional:Nppnn \__fp\_parse\_exponent\_keep:N #1 { TF }
{ \if_catcode:w \scan_stop: \exp_not:N #1 \if_meaning:w \scan_stop: #1 \if:w 0 \__fp\_str\_if\_eq:nn { \s__fp } { \exp_not:N #1 } 0 \msg\_expandable\_error:nnn \{ fp \} \{ after-e \} \{ floating-point- \} \prg\_return\_true: \else: 0 \msg\_expandable\_error:nnn \{ kernel \} \{ bad\_variable \} \{#1\} \prg\_return\_false: \fi: \else: \msg\_expandable\_error:nnn \{ \int\_value:w \#1 \} \{ \tex\_the:D \#1 \} \int\_value:w \#1 \else: 0 \msg\_expandable\_error:nnn \{ fp \} \{ after-e \} \{ dimension-\#1 \} \fi: \prg\_return\_false: }

(End definition for \__fp\_parse\_exponent\_body:N.)

(End definition for \__fp\_parse\_exponent\_digits:N.)

(End definition for \__fp\_parse\_exponent\_keep:NTF)
\_\_fp\_parse\_prefix\_\+:Nw

A unary + does nothing: we should continue looking for a number.

\cs_new_eq:cN { \_\_fp\_parse\_prefix\_\+:Nw } \_\_fp\_parse\_one:Nw

(End definition for \_\_fp\_parse\_prefix\_\+:Nw.)

\_\_fp\_parse\_apply\_function:NNNw

Here, #1 is a precedence, #2 is some extra data used by some functions, #3 is e.g., \_\_fp\_\_sin:o:w, and expands once after the calculation, #4 is the operand, and #5 is a \_\_fp\_parse\_infix\_...:N function. We feed the data #2, and the argument #4, to the function #3, which expands \exp:w thus the infix function #5.

\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp\_parse\_apply\_function:NNNw #1#2#3#4@#5

{ #3 #2 #4 @ \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w #5 #1 }

(End definition for \_\_fp\_parse\_apply\_function:NNNw.)

\_\_fp\_parse\_apply\_unary:NNNw

In contrast to \_\_fp\_parse\_apply\_function:NNNw, this checks that the operand #4 is a single argument (namely there is a single ;). We use the fact that any floating point starts with a "safe" token like \s__fp. If there is no argument produce the fp-no-arg error; if there are at least two produce fp-multi-arg. For the error message extract the mathematical function name (such as sin) from the expl3 function that computes it, such as \_\_fp\_\_sin:o:w.

In addition, since there is a single argument we can dispatch on type and check that the resulting function exists. This catches things like sin((1,2)) where it does not make sense to take the sine of a tuple.

\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp\_parse\_apply\_unary:NNNw #1#2#3#4@#5

{ \_\_fp\_parse\_apply\_unary\_chk:Nw #4 @ ; \s__fp\_stop \_\_fp\_parse\_apply\_unary\_type:NNN \_\_fp\_parse\_apply\_unary\_error:NNN \_\_fp\_sin:o:w }

(End definition for \_\_fp\_parse\_apply\_unary:NNNw.)

69.5 Constants, functions and prefix operators

69.5.1 Prefix operators
The unary - and boolean not are harder: we parse the operand using a precedence equal
to the maximum of the previous precedence #1 and the precedence \c__fp_prec_not_int
of the unary operator, then call the appropriate \__fp_{\langle \text{operation} \rangle}_o:w function,
where the \langle \text{operation} \rangle is set_sign or not.

\cs_set_protected:Npn \__fp_tmp:w #1#2#3#4
\cs_new:cpn { __fp_parse_prefix_#1 :Nw } ##1
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_apply_unary:NNNwN
\exp_after:wN ##1
\exp_after:wN #4
\exp_after:wN #3
\exp:w
\if_int_compare:w #2 < ##1
\__fp_parse_operand:Nw ##1
\else:
\__fp_parse_operand:Nw #2
\fi:
\__fp_parse_expand:w
\}
\__fp_tmp:w - \c__fp_prec_not_int \__fp_set_sign:o:w 2
\__fp_tmp:w ! \c__fp_prec_not_int \__fp_not:o:w ?

(End definition for \__fp_parse_prefix_=:Nw and \__fp_parse_prefix_!:Nw.)

Numbers which start with a decimal separator (a period) end up here. Of course, we do
not look for an operand, but for the rest of the number. This function is very similar to
\__fp_parse_one_digit:NN but calls \__fp_parse_strim_zeros:N to trim zeros after
the decimal point, rather than the trim_zeros function for zeros before the decimal
point.
\cs_new:cpn { __fp_parse_prefix_:.Nw } #1
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_infix_after_operand:NwN
\exp_after:wN #1
1025
The left parenthesis is treated as a unary prefix operator because it appears in exactly the same settings. If the previous precedence is `\c__fp_prec_func_int` we are parsing arguments of a function and commas should not build tuples; otherwise commas should build tuples. We distinguish these cases by precedence: `\c__fp_prec_comma_int` for the case of arguments, `\c__fp_prec_tuple_int` for the case of tuples. Once the operand is found, the `\lparen_after` auxiliary makes sure that there was a closing parenthesis (otherwise it complains), and leaves in the input stream an operand, fetching the following infix operator.

The right parenthesis can appear as a prefix in two similar cases: in an empty tuple or tuple ending with a comma, or in an empty argument list or argument list ending with a comma, such as in `max(1,2,)` or in `rand()`.
69.5.2 Constants

Some words correspond to constant floating points. The floating point constant is left as a result of \_\_fp\_parse\_one:Nw after expanding \_\_fp\_parse\_infix:NN.

\cs_set_protected:Npn \__fp\_tmp:w #1 #2
{ \cs_new:cpn { \__fp\_parse\_word\_#1:N } { \exp_after:wN #2 \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w \__fp\_parse\_infix:NN } }

\__fp\_tmp:w { inf } \c_inf_fp
\__fp\_tmp:w { nan } \c_nan_fp
\__fp\_tmp:w { pi } \c_pi_fp
\__fp\_tmp:w { deg } \c_one_degree_fp
\__fp\_tmp:w { true } \c_one_fp
\__fp\_tmp:w { false } \c_zero_fp

Dimension units are also floating point constants but their value is not stored as a floating point constant. We give the values explicitly here.

\cs_set_protected:Npn \__fp\_exp\_after_f:nw { \__fp\_parse\_infix:NN } 1027
The font-dependent units em and ex must be evaluated on the fly. We reuse an auxiliary of \dim_to_fp:n.

\cs_new:cpn { __fp_parse_word_#1:N } { \exp_after:wN \__fp_from_dim_test:ww \exp_after:wN 0 \exp_after:wN , \int_value:w \dim_to_decimal_in_sp:n { 1 #1 } \exp_after:wN ; \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w \__fp_parse_infix:NN }

(End definition for \__fp_parse_word_em:N and \__fp_parse_word_ex:N.)

69.5.3 Functions

\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_unary_function:NNN \__fp_parse_function:NNN #1#2#3
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_apply_unary:NNNW \exp_after:wN \#3 \exp_after:wN \#2 \exp_after:wN \#1 \exp:w \__fp_parse_operand:Nw \c__fp_prec_func_int \__fp_parse_expand:w
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_function:NNN #1#2#3
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_apply_function:NNNW \exp_after:wN \#3 \exp_after:wN \#2 \exp_after:wN \#1 \exp:w \__fp_parse_operand:Nw \c__fp_prec_func_int \__fp_parse_expand:w

(End definition for \__fp_parse_unary_function:NNN and \__fp_parse_function:NNN.)
### 69.6 Main functions

Start an \texttt{exp:w} expansion so that \texttt{__fp_parse:n} expands in two steps. The \texttt{__fp_parse_operand:Nw} function performs computations until reaching an operation with precedence \texttt{c__fp_prec_end_int} or less, namely, the end of the expression. The marker \texttt{s__fp_expr_mark} indicates that the next token is an already parsed version of an infix operator, and \texttt{__fp_parse_infix_end:N} has infinitely negative precedence. Finally, clean up a (well-defined) set of extra tokens and stop the initial expansion with \texttt{exp_end}:

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse:n #1
{ \exp:w \exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_after:ww \exp:w \__fp_parse_operand:Nw \c__fp_prec_end_int \__fp_parse_expand:w #1 \s__fp_expr_mark \__fp_parse_infix_end:N \s__fp_expr_stop \exp_end: }
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\__fp_parse_operand:Nw} This is just a shorthand which sets up both \texttt{\__fp_parse_continue:NwN} and \texttt{\__fp_parse_one:Nw} with the same precedence. Note the trailing \texttt{exp:w}.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_operand:Nw #1
{ \exp_end_continue_f:w \exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_continue:NwN \exp_after:wN #1 \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w \exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_one:Nw \exp_after:wN #1 \exp:w }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\__fp_parse:n}, \texttt{\__fp_parse_o:n}, and \texttt{\__fp_parse_after:ww}.)
Receives \{\textit{precedence}\} \{\textit{operand}_1\} \& \{\textit{operation}\} \{\textit{operand}_2\} \& \{\textit{infix command}\}. Builds the appropriate call to the \{\textit{operation}\} \#3, dispatching on both types. If the resulting control sequence does not exist, the operation is not allowed.

This is redefined in l3fp-extras.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_apply_binary:NwNwN #1 #2#3@ #4 #5#6@ #7
\begin{verbatim}
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_continue:NwN
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_apply_binary_chk:NN
\exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_apply_binary_error:NNN
\cs:w
\if_meaning:w \scan_stop: #1\__fp_parse_apply_binary_error:NNN #2\fi:
\cs_end:#1 #2#3 #5#6
\exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w #7 #1
\end{verbatim}
\} \cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_apply_binary_chk:NN #1#2
\begin{verbatim}
\__fp_type_from_scan:N #2 #1
\_o:ww
\cs_end:#1
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_apply_binary_error:NNN #1#2#3
\begin{verbatim}
\__fp_invalid_operation_o:Nww #1\end{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__fp_parse_apply_binary:NwNwN, \__fp_parse_apply_binary_chk:NN, \_fp_parse_apply_binary_error:NNN.)

\_fp_binary_type_o:Nww \_fp_binary_rev_type_o:Nww
Applies the operator \#1 to its two arguments, dispatching according to their types, and expands once after the result. The rev version swaps its arguments before doing this.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_binary_type_o:Nww #1#2#3 ; #4
\begin{verbatim}
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_apply_binary_chk:NN
\exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w
\__fp_type_from_scan:N #2 #1
\_o:ww
\cs_end:#1
\end{verbatim}
\} \cs_new:Npn \__fp_binary_rev_type_o:Nww #1 #2#3 ; #4#5 ;
\begin{verbatim}
\exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w
\end{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}

1030
(End definition for \__fp_binary_type_o:Nww and \__fp_binary_rev_type_o:Nww.)

## 69.7 Infix operators

```latex
\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_infix_after_operand:NwN #1 #2;
  \__fp_exp_after_f:nw { \__fp_parse_infix:NN #1 } #2;
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_infix:NN #1 #2
  { \if_catcode:w \scan_stop: \exp_not:N #2
    \if:w 0 \__fp_str_if_eq:nn { \s__fp_expr_mark } { \exp_not:N #2 }
      \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_infix_juxt:N
    \else:
      \__fp_parse_infix_check:NNN #1 #2 #3
    \fi:
  \else:
    \if_int_compare:w \__fp_int_eval:w (#2 \if_int_compare:w \#2 > \'Z - 32 \fi: ) / 26
      = 3 \exp_stop_f:
      \__fp_parse_infix_juxt:N
    \else:
      \__fp_parse_infix_check:NNN #1 \token_to_str:N #2 N
      \__fp_parse_infix: \token_to_str:N #2 \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \cs_end:
    \fi:
  \fi:
\end{verbatim}
```

1031
As an infix operator, \texttt{\_\_fp_expr\_mark} means that the next token (#3) has already gone through \texttt{\_\_fp\_parse\_infix:NN} and should be provided the precedence #1. The scan mark #2 is discarded.

\texttt{\_\_fp\_parse\_infix\_mark:NNN}

\texttt{\_\_fp\_parse\_infix\_after\_paren:NN}

Variant of \texttt{\_\_fp\_parse\_infix:NN} for use after a closing parenthesis. The only difference is that \texttt{\_\_fp\_parse\_infix\_juxt:N} is replaced by \texttt{\_\_fp\_parse\_infix\_mul:N}.

\texttt{\_\_fp\_parse\_infix\_mark:NNN}
This one is a little bit odd: force every previous operator to end, regardless of the precedence.

```latex
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_infix_end:N #1
\{ \@ \use_none:n \__fp_parse_infix_end:N \}
```

This is very similar to \__fp_parse_infix_end:N, complaining about an extra closing parenthesis if the previous operator was the beginning of the expression, with precedence \c__fp_prec_end_int.

```latex
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__fp_tmp:w #1
\{ \cs_new:Npn #1 ##1
\if_int_compare:w ##1 > \c__fp_prec_end_int
\exp_after:wN @
\exp_after:wN \use_none:n
\exp_after:wN #1
\else:
\msg_expandable_error:nnn { fp } { extra } { ) }
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_infix:NN
\exp_after:wN ##1
\exp:w \exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_expand:w
\fi:
\}
\exp_args:Nc \__fp_tmp:w { \__fp_parse_infix_):N }
```

As for other infix operations, if the previous operations has higher precedence the comma waits. Otherwise we call \__fp_parse_apply_comma:Nw to read more comma-delimited arguments that \__fp_parse_infix_comma:w simply concatenates into a @-delimited array. The first comma in a tuple that is not a function argument is distinguished: in that case call \__fp_parse_apply_comma:NwW whose job is to convert the first item of the tuple and an array of the remaining items into a tuple. In contrast to \__fp_parse_apply_binary:NWecnW this function’s operands are not single-object arrays.

```latex
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__fp_new:Npn \__fp_tmp:w \__fp_parse_infix_comma:w \__fp_parse_apply_comma:NwW
```
69.7.2 Usual infix operators

As described in the “work plan”, each infix operator has an associated \_\_fp\_parse\_infix\_... function, a computing function, and precedence, given as arguments to \_\_fp\_tmp\:w. Using the general mechanism for arithmetic operations. The power operation must be associative in the opposite order from all others. For this, we use two distinct precedences.

\_\_fp\_parse\_infix\_+:N
\_\_fp\_parse\_infix\_-:N
\_\_fp\_parse\_infix\_juxt:N
\_\_fp\_parse\_infix\_/:N
\_\_fp\_parse\_infix\_mul:N
\_\_fp\_parse\_infix\_and:N
\_\_fp\_parse\_infix\_or:N
\_\_fp\_parse\_infix\_^:N
69.7.3 Juxtaposition

\_\_fp\_parse\_infix\_(:N

When an opening parenthesis appears where we expect an infix operator, we compute the product of the previous operand and the contents of the parentheses using \_\_fp\_\_parse\_infix\_mul:N.

\cs_new:cpn { \_\_fp\_parse\_infix\_(:N } #1
{ \_\_fp\_parse\_infix\_mul:N #1 ( }

(End definition for \_\_fp\_parse\_infix\_(:N.

69.7.4 Multi-character cases

\_\_fp\_parse\_infix\_*:N

\cs_set_protected:Npn \_\_fp\_tmp:w #1
{ \cs_new:cpn { \_\_fp\_parse\_infix\_:*:N } ##1##2
{ \if:w * \exp_not:N ##2
\exp_after:wN #1
\exp_after:wN ##1
\else:
\exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_parse\_infix\_mul:N
\exp_after:wN ##1
\exp:w \exp_after:wN \__fp\_parse\_expand:w
\exp:w \exp_after:wN \__fp\_parse\_expand:w
\else:
\exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_parse\_infix\_mul:N
\exp_after:wN ##1
\fi:
}
\_\_fp\_tmp:w { \_\_fp\_parse\_infix\_*:N }

(End definition for \_\_fp\_parse\_infix\_:*:N)

\_\_fp\_parse\_infix\_:N
\_\_fp\_parse\_infix\&:N

\cs_set_protected:Npm \_\_fp\_tmp:w #1#2
{ \cs_new:Npm \_\_fp\_tmp:w #1 #2
{ \if:w #2 \exp_not:N #2
\exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_parse\_infix\_:N
\exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_parse\_infix\&:N
\else:
\exp:w \exp_after:wN \__fp\_parse\_expand:w
\exp:w \exp_after:wN \__fp\_parse\_expand:w
\else:
1035
69.7.5 Ternary operator

\__fp_parse_infix_?:Nw
\__fp_parse_infix_::Nw

\cs_set_protected:Npn \__fp_tmp:w #1#2#3#4
{\cs_new:Npn #1 ##1
{\if_int_compare:w ##1 < \c__fp_prec_quest_int
#4
\exp_after:wN @
\exp_after:wN #2
\exp:w
\__fp_parse_operand:Nw #3
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_expand:w
\else:
\exp_after:wN @
\exp_after:wN \use_none:n
\exp_after:wN #1
\fi:
}
\exp_args:Nc \__fp_tmp:w { \__fp_parse_infix_|:Nw } | \__fp_parse_infix_or:Nw
\exp_args:Nc \__fp_tmp:w { \__fp_parse_infix&_Nw } & \__fp_parse_infix_and:Nw

(End definition for \__fp_parse_infix_|:Nw and \__fp_parse_infix&_Nw.)

69.7.6 Comparisons

\__fp_parse_infix_<:Nw
\__fp_parse_infix_=:Nw
\__fp_parse_infix_:Nw
\__fp_parse_excl_error:
\__fp_parse_compare:NNNNNN
\__fp_parse_compare_auxi:NNNNNN
\__fp_parse_compare_end:NNNNNw
\__fp_compare:wNNNNw

\cs_new:c { \__fp_parse_infix_<:N } #1
{ \__fp_parse_compare:NNNNNN #1 1 0 0 0 0 < }
\cs_new:c { \__fp_parse_infix_=:N } #1
{ \__fp_parse_compare:NNNNNN #1 1 0 0 0 0 = }
\cs_new:c { \__fp_parse_infix_:N } #1
{ \__fp_parse_compare:NNNNNN #1 1 0 0 0 0 > }
\cs_new:c { \__fp_parse_infix_!:N } #1
{ \__fp_parse_compare:NNNNNN #1 1 0 0 0 0 ~for?: }

(End definition for \__fp_parse_infix_<:N and \__fp_parse_infix_:Nw)
(End definition for \texttt{\_\_fp\_parse\_infix\_<:N} and others.)

69.8 Tools for functions

\texttt{\_\_fp\_parse\_function\_all\_fp\_o:fnw} Followed by \{\texttt{(function name)}\} \{\texttt{(code)}\} \{\texttt{(float array)}\} @ this checks all floats are floating point numbers (no tuples).
This is followed by \{(function name)\} \{(code)\} \{float array\} @. It checks that the \{float array\} consists of one or two floating point numbers (not tuples), then leaves the \{code\} (if there is one float) or its tail (if there are two floats) followed by the \{float array\}. The \{code\} should start with a single token such as \__fp_atan_default:w that deals with the single-float case.

The first \__fp_if_type_fp:NTwFw test catches the case of no argument and the case of a tuple argument. The next one distinguishes the case of a single argument (no error, just add \c_one_fp) from a tuple second argument. Finally check there is no further argument.
Apply \texttt{#1} to all items in the following tuple and expand once afterwards. The code \texttt{#1} should itself expand once after its result.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_fp_tuple_map_o:nw #1 \s__fp_tuple \__fp_tuple_chk:w #2 ;
{ \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w \__fp_tuple_map_loop_o:nw {#1} #2 { \s__fp \prg_break: } ; \prg_break_point: \exp_after:wN } \exp_after:wN ;
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \_fp_tuple_map_o:nw and others.)

Apply \texttt{#1} to pairs of items in the following tuples and expand once afterwards.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_fp_tuple_mapthread_o:nww #1 \s__fp_tuple \__fp_tuple_chk:w #2 ;
\s__fp_tuple \__fp_tuple_chk:w #3 ;
{ \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w \__fp_tuple_mapthread_loop_o:nw {#1} #2 { \s__fp \prg_break: } ; \s__fp \prg_break_point: \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN ;
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \_fp_tuple_mapthread_o:nww and \_fp_tuple_mapthread_loop_o:nw.)
69.9 Messages

\msg_new:nnn { fp } { deprecated }
{ '#1'-deprecated; use '#2' }
\msg_new:nnn { fp } { unknown-fp-word }
{ Unknown-fp-word-#1. }
\msg_new:nnn { fp } { missing }
{ Missing-#1-inserted #2. }
\msg_new:nnn { fp } { extra }
{ Extra-#1-ignored. }
\msg_new:nnn { fp } { early-end }
{ Premature-end-in-fp-expression. }
\msg_new:nnn { fp } { after-e }
{ Cannot-use-#1 after 'e'. }
\msg_new:nnn { fp } { missing-number }
{ Missing-number-before-'#1'. }
\msg_new:nnn { fp } { unknown-symbol }
{ Unknown-symbol-#1-ignored. }
\msg_new:nnn { fp } { extra-comma }
{ Unexpected-comma-turned-to-nan-result. }
\msg_new:nnn { fp } { no-arg }
{ #1-got-no-argument; used-nan. }
\msg_new:nnn { fp } { multi-arg }
{ #1-got-more-than-one-argument; used-nan. }
\msg_new:nnn { fp } { num-args }
{ #1-expects-between-#2-and-#3-arguments. }
\msg_new:nnn { fp } { bad-args }
{ Arguments-in-#1#2-are-invalid. }
\msg_new:nnn { fp } { infnty-pi }
{ Math-command-#1 is-not-an-fp }
\cs_if_exist:cT { @unexpandable@protect }
{ }
\msg_new:nnn { fp } { robust-cmd }
{ Robust-command-#1 invalid-in-fp-expression! }
}
{/package}
Chapter 70

\texttt{l3fp-assign} implementation

70.1 Assigning values

\texttt{\fp_set:Nn} Floating point variables are initialized to be +0.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \fp_set:Nn #1#2 { \__kernel_tl_set:Nx #1 { \exp_not:f { \__fp_parse:n {#2} } } }
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \fp_gset:Nn #1#2 { \__kernel_tl_gset:Nx #1 { \exp_not:f { \__fp_parse:n {#2} } } }
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \fp_const:Nn #1#2 { \tl_const:Nx #1 { \exp_not:f { \__fp_parse:n {#2} } } }
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \fp_set:Nn {c}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \fp_gset:Nn {c}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \fp_const:Nn {c}
\end{verbatim}

Copying a floating point is the same as copying the underlying token list.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_eq:NN \fp_set_eq:NN \tl_set_eq:NN
\cs_new_eq:NN \fp_gset_eq:NN \tl_gset_eq:NN
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \fp_set_eq:NN { c , Nc , cc }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \fp_gset_eq:NN { c , Nc , cc }
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \fp_zero:N #1 { \fp_set_eq:NN #1 \c_zero_fp }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \fp_gzero:N #1 { \fp_gset_eq:NN #1 \c_zero_fp }
\end{verbatim}

Setting a floating point to zero: copy \texttt{\c_zero_fp}.
Set the floating point to zero, or define it if needed.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \fp_zero_new:N #1
\cs_new_protected:Npn \fp_gzero_new:N #1
\cs_new_protected:Npn \fp_zero_new:c #1
\cs_new_protected:Npn \fp_gzero_new:c #1
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \fp_zero_new:N { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \fp_gzero_new:N { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \fp_zero_new:c { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \fp_gzero_new:c { c }

(End definition for \fp_zero_new:N and \fp_gzero_new:N. These functions are documented on page 240.)

70.2 Updating values

These match the equivalent functions in \l3int and \l3skip.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \fp_add:Nn { \__fp_add:NNNn \fp_set:Nn + }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \fp_gadd:Nn { \__fp_add:NNNn \fp_gset:Nn + }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \fp_sub:Nn { \__fp_add:NNNn \fp_set:Nn - }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \fp_gsub:Nn { \__fp_add:NNNn \fp_gset:Nn - }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__fp_add:NNNn #1#2#3#4
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \fp_add:Nn { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \fp_gadd:Nn { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \fp_sub:Nn { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \fp_gsub:Nn { c }
\endinput

(End definition for \fp_add:Nn and others. These functions are documented on page 240.)

70.3 Showing values

This shows the result of computing its argument by passing the right data to \tl_show:n or \tl_log:n.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \fp_show:N { \__fp_show:NN \tl_show:n }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \fp_show:N { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \fp_log:N { \__fp_show:NN \tl_log:n }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \fp_log:N { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__fp_show:NN #1#2
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__fp_validate:NN #1#2
\__kernel_chk_tl_type:NnnT #2 { fp } #1
{ \str_if_eq:eeTF { \tl_head:N #2 } { \s__fp_tuple } { \exp_not:o #2 }
{ \exp_after:wN \__fp_validate:NN #2 #1
\s__fp \__fp_chk:w ??? } \s__fp_stop
}

(End definition for \fp_show:N and \fp_log:N. These functions are documented on page 240.)
\endinput}

\cs_new:Npn \__fp_show_validate:w
#1 \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #2#3#4#5 ; #6 \s__fp_stop
{
\token_if_eq_meaning:NNTF #2 1
{ \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #2 #3 {#4} #5 ; }
{ \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #2 #3 #4 #5 ; }
}

(End definition for \fp_show:N and others. These functions are documented on page 248.)

\usepackage{fp}

\fp_show:n
\fp_log:n

Use general tools.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \fp_show:n { \msg_show_eval:Nn \fp_to_tl:n }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \fp_log:n { \msg_log_eval:Nn \fp_to_tl:n }

(End definition for \fp_show:n and \fp_log:n. These functions are documented on page 248.)

## 70.4 Some useful constants and scratch variables

\c_one_fp \c_e_fp

Some constants.

\fp_const:Nn \c_e_fp { 2.718281828459045 }
\fp_const:Nn \c_one_fp { 1 }

(End definition for \c_one_fp and \c_e_fp. These variables are documented on page 246.)

\c_pi_fp \c_one_degree_fp

We simply round π to and π/180 to 16 significant digits.

\fp_const:Nn \c_pi_fp { 3.141592653589793 }
\fp_const:Nn \c_one_degree_fp { 0.01745329251994330 }

(End definition for \c_pi_fp and \c_one_degree_fp. These variables are documented on page 247.)

\l_tmpa_fp \l_tmpb_fp \g_tmpa_fp \g_tmpb_fp

Scratch variables are simply initialized there.

\fp_new:N \l_tmpa_fp
\fp_new:N \l_tmpb_fp
\fp_new:N \g_tmpa_fp
\fp_new:N \g_tmpb_fp

(End definition for \l_tmpa_fp and others. These variables are documented on page 247.)

{/package}
Chapter 71

l3fp-logic Implementation

Those functions may receive a variable number of arguments.

(End definition for \_\_fp_parse_word_max:N and \_\_fp_parse_word_min:N.)

71.1 Syntax of internal functions

- \_\_fp_compare_npos:nwnw \{⟨expo1⟩\} ⟨body1⟩ ; {⟨expo2⟩\} ⟨body2⟩ ;
- \_\_fp_minmax_o:Nw ⟨sign⟩ (floating point array)
- \_\_fp_not_o:w ? (floating point array) (with one floating point number only)
- \_\_fp_&_o:ww (floating point) (floating point)
- \_\_fp_|_o:ww (floating point) (floating point)
- \_\_fp_ternary:NwwN, \_\_fp_ternary_auxi:NwwN, \_\_fp_ternary_auxii:NwwN have to be understood.

71.2 Tests

\fp_if_exist_p:N \fp_if_exist_p:c \fp_if_exist:NTF \fp_if_exist:cTF

Copies of the cs functions defined in l3basics.

(End definition for \fp_if_exist:NTF. This function is documented on page 242.)
Evaluate and check if the result is a floating point of the same kind as \texttt{nan}.

\begin{verbatim}
\fp_if_nan_p:n
\fp_if_nan:nTF
\prg_new_conditional:Nn \fp_if_nan:n #1 { TF , T , F , p }
{ \if:w 3 \exp_last_unbraced:Nf \__fp_kind:w \__fp_parse:n (#1) }
\prg_return_true:
\else:
\prg_return_false:
\fi:
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{fp_if_nan:nTF}. This function is documented on page 301.)

71.3 Comparison

Within floating point expressions, comparison operators are treated as operations, so we evaluate \#1, then compare with \pm 0. Tuples are \texttt{true}.

\begin{verbatim}
\fp_compare_p:n
\fp_compare:nTF
\__fp_compare_return:w
\prg_new_conditional:Nn \fp_compare:n #1 { p , T , F , TF }
{ \exp_after:wN \__fp_compare_return:w \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w \__fp_parse:n (#1) }
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_compare_return:w #1#2#3;
{ \if_charcode:w 0 \__fp_if_type_fp:NTwFw #1 \__fp_use_i_delimit_by_s_stop:nw #3 \s__fp_stop }
\s__fp 1 \s__fp_stop
\prg_return_false:
\else:
\prg_return_true:
\fi:
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{fp_compare:nTF} and \texttt{fp_compare:nTF}. This function is documented on page 244.)

Evaluate \#1 and \#3, using an auxiliary to expand both, and feed the two floating point numbers swapped to \texttt{__fp_compare_back_any:ww}, defined below. Compare the result with \'#2'=', which is \texttt{-1} for \textless , \texttt{0} for \texttt{=} , \texttt{1} for \textgreater{} and \texttt{2} for ?.

\begin{verbatim}
\fp_compare_p:nNn
\fp_compare:nTF
\__fp_compare_return:w
\prg_new_conditional:Nn \fp_compare:nNn #1#2#3 { p , T , F , TF }
{ \if_int_compare:w \exp_after:wN \__fp_compare_back_any:ww \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w \__fp_parse:n (#1) (#3) }\__fp_int_eval:w \#2 - ' ' \__fp_int_eval_end:
\prg_return_true:
\else:
\prg_return_false:
\fi:
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\__fp_compare_aux:wn
\__fp_compare_aux:wn
\prg_new_conditional:Nn \fp_compare:nNn #1#2#3 { p , T , F , TF }
{ \if_int_compare:w \exp_after:wN \__fp_compare_aux:wn \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w \__fp_parse:n (#1) (#3) }\__fp_int_eval:w \#2 - ' ' \__fp_int_eval_end:
\prg_return_true:
\else:
\prg_return_false:
\fi:
\end{verbatim}

1046
\_\_fp_compare_back_any:ww \_\_fp_compare_back:ww \_\_fp_compare_nan:w

(End definition for \_\_fp_compare:nNnTF and \_\_fp_compare_aux:wn. This function is documented on page 243.)

\_\_fp_compare_back_any:ww (y); (x);

Expands (in the same way as \_\_int_eval:n) to \-1 if x < y, 0 if x = y, 1 if x > y, and 2 otherwise (denoted as x?y). If either operand is nan, stop the comparison with \_\_fp_compare_nan:w returning 2. If x is negative, swap the outputs 1 and \-1 (i.e., > and <); we can henceforth assume that x ≥ 0. If y ≥ 0, and they have the same type, either they are normal and we compare them with \_\_fp_compare_npos:nww, or they are equal. If y ≥ 0, but of a different type, the highest type is a larger number. Finally, if y ≤ 0, then x > y, unless both are zero.

\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_compare_back_any:ww #1; #2; #3

\begin{verbatim}
\__fp_if_type_fp:NTwFw #1 { \__fp_if_type_fp:NTwFw #3 \use_i:nn \s__fp \use_ii:nn \s__fp_stop }
\s__fp \use_ii:nn \s__fp_stop
\_\_fp_compare_back:ww
\{
\cs:w __fp \_\_fp_type_from_scan:N #1 \_\_fp_compare_back
\_\_fp_type_from_scan:N #3:
\cs_end:
\}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_compare_back:ww

\s__fp \_\_fp_chk:w #1 #2 #3;
\s__fp \_\_fp_chk:w #4 #5 #6;
\{
\int_value:w
\if_meaning:w 3 #1 \exp_after:wN \_\_fp_compare_nan:w \fi:
\if_meaning:w 3 #4 \exp_after:wN \_\_fp_compare_nan:w \fi:
\if_meaning:w 2 #5 \fi:
\if_meaning:w #2 #5\fi:
\if_meaning:w #1 #4
\if_meaning:w 1 #1
\_\_fp_compare_npos:nww #6; #3;
\else:
0
\fi:
\else:
\else:
\if_int_compare:w #4 < #1 \fi: 1
\fi:
\else:
\if_int_compare:w #1#4 = \c_zero_int 0
\else:
1
\end{verbatim}
Tuple and floating point numbers are not comparable so return 2 in mixed cases or when tuples have a different number of items. Otherwise compare pairs of items with \texttt{\__fp_compare_back_any:ww} and if any don't match return 2 (as \texttt{\int_value:w 02 \exp_stop_f:}).
\_fp\_compare\_significand:nnnnnn #2 #4
\else:
\if_int_compare:w #1 #3 - \fi: 1
\fi:
\fi:
\cs_new:Npn \_fp\_compare\_significand:nnnnnn #1#2#3#4#5#6#7#8
{\
\if_int_compare:w #1#2 = #5#6 \exp_stop_f:
\if_int_compare:w #3#4 = #7#8 \exp_stop_f:
0
\else:
\if_int_compare:w #3#4 < #7#8 - \fi: 1
\fi:
\else:
\if_int_compare:w #1#2 < #5#6 - \fi: 1
\fi:
\fi:
\)

(End definition for \_fp\_compare\_npos:nww and \_fp\_compare\_significand:nnnnnnn.)

71.4 Floating point expression loops

These are quite easy given the above functions. The do\_until and do\_while versions execute the body, then test. The until\_do and while\_do do it the other way round.
\cs_new:Npn \fp\_do\_until:nn #1#2
{ #2
\fp\_compare:nF {#1} \{
\fp\_do\_until:nn {#1} {#2} \}
\}
\cs_new:Npn \fp\_do\_while:nn #1#2
{ #2
\fp\_compare:nT {#1} \{
\fp\_do\_while:nn {#1} {#2} \}
\}
\cs_new:Npn \fp\_until\_do:nn #1#2
{ \fp\_compare:nF {#1} \{
 #2
\fp\_until\_do:nn {#1} {#2} \}
\}
\cs_new:Npn \fp\_while\_do:nn #1#2
{ \fp\_compare:nT {#1} \{
 #2
\fp\_while\_do:nn {#1} {#2} \}
\}

(End definition for \fp\_do\_until:nn and others. These functions are documented on page 245.)

1049
As above but not using the \texttt{nnn} syntax.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \fp_do_until:nNnn #1#2#3#4
  {
    #4
    \fp_compare:nNnF {#1} #2 {#3}
    { \fp_do_until:nNnn {#1} #2 {#3} {#4} }
  }
\cs_new:Npn \fp_do_while:nNnn #1#2#3#4
  {
    #4
    \fp_compare:nNnT {#1} #2 {#3}
    { \fp_do_while:nNnn {#1} #2 {#3} {#4} }
  }
\cs_new:Npn \fp_until_do:nNnn #1#2#3#4
  {
    \fp_compare:nNnF {#1} #2 {#3}
    { \fp_until_do:nNnn {#1} #2 {#3} {#4} }
  }
\cs_new:Npn \fp_while_do:nNnn #1#2#3#4
  {
    \fp_compare:nNnT {#1} #2 {#3}
    { \fp_while_do:nNnn {#1} #2 {#3} {#4} }
  }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\fp\_do\_until:nNnn} and others. These functions are documented on page \pageref{fp_do_until}.)

The approach here is somewhat similar to \texttt{\int\_step\_function:nnnnN}. There are two subtleties: we use the internal parser \texttt{\_\_fp\_parse:n} to avoid converting back and forth from the internal representation; and (due to rounding) even a non-zero step does not guarantee that the loop counter increases.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \fp_step_function:nnnN #1#2#3
  {
    \exp_after:wN \__fp_step:wwwN
    \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w \__fp_parse_o:n {#1}
    \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w \__fp_parse_o:n {#2}
    \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w \__fp_parse:n {#3}
  }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \fp_step_function:nnnN { nnnc }
\end{verbatim}

% Only floating point numbers (not tuples) are allowed arguments.
% Only \enquote{normal} floating points \texttt{(not $\pm 0$, $\pm \texttt{inf}$, \texttt{nan})} can be used as step; if positive, call \texttt{\cs{\_\_fp\_step:NnnnnN}} with argument $>|$ otherwise $<|$. This function has one more argument than its integer counterpart, namely the previous value, to catch the case where the loop has made no progress. Conversion to decimal is done just before calling the user's function.

\begin{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}

1050
(End definition for \texttt{fp\_step\_function:nnnN} and others. This function is documented on page 246.)
As for \texttt{\int_step_inline:nnnn}, create a global function and apply it, following up with a break point.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \fp_step_inline:nnnn
\int_gincr:N \g__kernel_prg_map_int
\exp_args:NNc \__fp_step:NNnnnn
\cs_gset_protected:Npn
\{ __fp_map_\int_use:N \g__kernel_prg_map_int :w \}
\}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \fp_step_variable:nnnNn #1#2#3#4#5
\int_gincr:N \g__kernel_prg_map_int
\exp_args:NNc \__fp_step:NNnnnn
\cs_gset_protected:Npx
\{ #1 \} \{#2\} \{#3\}
\tl_set:Nn \exp_not:N #4 {##1}
\exp_not:n {#5}
\}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__fp_step:NNnnnn #1#2#3#4#5#6
\#1 \#2 ##1 {#6}
\fp_step_function:nnnN {#3} {#4} {#5} #2
\prg_break_point:Nn \scan_stop: { \int_gdecr:N \g__kernel_prg_map_int }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\fp_step_inline:nnnn}, \texttt{\fp_step_variable:nnnNn}, and \texttt{\__fp_step:NNnnnn}. These functions are documented on page 246.)

\begin{verbatim}
\msg_new:nnn { fp } { step-tuple }{ Tuple-argument-in-fp_step_...-{#1}{#2}{#3}. }
\msg_new:nnn { fp } { bad-step }{ Invalid-step-size=#2-for-function=#3. }
\msg_new:nnn { fp } { tiny-step }{ Tiny-step-size=(#1+#2=#1)-for-function=#3. }
\end{verbatim}

## 71.5 Extrema

First check all operands are floating point numbers. The argument \#1 is to find the maximum of an array \#2 of floating point numbers, and 0 to find the minimum. We read numbers sequentially, keeping track of the largest (smallest) number found so far. If numbers are equal (for instance \pm{0}), the first is kept. We append \(-\infty\) (\(\infty\)), for the case of an empty array. Since no number is smaller (larger) than that, this additional item only affects the maximum (minimum) in the case of \texttt{max()} and \texttt{min()} with no argument. The weird \texttt{fp}-like trailing marker breaks the loop correctly: see the precise definition of \texttt{\_fp_minmax_loop:Nww}.
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_minmax_o:Nw \#1\#2 \0
{
 \if_meaning:w 0 \#1
 \exp_after:wN \__fp_minmax_loop:Nww \exp_after:wN +
 \else:
 \exp_after:wN \__fp_minmax_loop:Nww \exp_after:wN -
 \fi:
 \#2
 \s__fp \__fp_chk:w 2 \#1 \s__fp_exact ;
 \s__fp \__fp_chk:w { 3 \__fp_minmax_break_o:w } ;
}

(End definition for \__fp_minmax_o:Nw and \__fp_minmax_aux_o:Nw.)

\__fp_minmax_loop:Nww
The first argument is – or + to denote the case where the currently largest (smallest) number found (first floating point argument) should be replaced by the new number (second floating point argument). If the new number is nan, keep that as the extremum, unless that extremum is already a nan. Otherwise, compare the two numbers. If the new number is larger (in the case of max) or smaller (in the case of min), the test yields true, and we keep the second number as a new maximum; otherwise we keep the first number. Then loop.
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_minmax_loop:Nww
#1 \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #2#3; \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #4#5;
{
 \if_meaning:w 3 #4
 \if_meaning:w 3 #2
 \__fp_minmax_auxi:ww
 \else:
 \__fp_minmax_auxii:ww
 \fi:
 \else:
 \if_int_compare:w
 \__fp_compare_back:ww
 \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #4#5;
 \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #2#3;
 = \#1 1 \exp_stop_f:
 \__fp_minmax_auxii:ww
 \else:
 \__fp_minmax_auxi:ww
 \fi:
 \fi:
 \__fp_minmax_loop:Nww #1
 \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #2#3;
 \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #4#5;
}

(End definition for \__fp_minmax_loop:Nww.)

\__fp_minmax_auxi:ww
\__fp_minmax_auxii:ww
Keep the first/second number, and remove the other.
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_minmax_auxi:ww \#1 \fi: \fi: \#2 \s__fp \#3 ; \s__fp \#4;
{
 \fi: \fi: \#2 \s__fp \#3 ;
}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_minmax_auxii:ww \#1 \fi: \fi: \#2 \s__fp \#3;
{
 \fi: \fi: \#2
}
This function is called from within an \if_meaning:w test. Skip to the end of the tests, close the current test with \fi:, clean up, and return the appropriate number with one post-expansion.

\cs_new:Npn \__fp_minmax_break_o:w #1 \fi: \fi: #2 \s__fp #3; #4;
{ \fi: \__fp_exp_after_o:w \s__fp #3; }

(End definition for \__fp_minmax_break_o:w)

71.6 Boolean operations

Return true or false, with two expansions, one to exit the conditional, and one to please l3fp-parse. The first argument is provided by l3fp-parse and is ignored.

\cs_new:Npn \__fp_not_o:w #1 \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #2#3; @
{ \if_meaning:w 0 #2 \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \c_one_fp \else: \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \c_zero_fp \fi: }
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_tuple_not_o:w #1 @ { \exp_after:wN \c_zero_fp }

(End definition for \__fp_not_o:w and \__fp_tuple_not_o:w)

For and, if the first number is zero, return it (with the same sign). Otherwise, return the second one. For or, the logic is reversed: if the first number is non-zero, return it, otherwise return the second number: we achieve that by hijacking \__fp&_o:ww, inserting an extra argument, \else:, before \s__fp. In all cases, expand after the floating point number.

\group_begin:
\char_set_catcode_letter:N & \char_set_catcode_letter:N | 
\cs_new:Npn \__fp&_o:ww #1 \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #2#3; 
{ \if_meaning:w 0 #2 #1 \__fp_and_return:wNw \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #2#3; \fi: \__fp_exp_after_o:w }
\cs_new:Npn \__fp&_tuple_o:ww #1 \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #2#3; 
{ \if_meaning:w 0 #2 #1 \__fp_and_return:wNw \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #2#3; \fi: \__fp_exp_after_tuple_o:w }
\cs_new:Npn \__fp&_tuple_o:ww #1; { \__fp_exp_after_tuple_o:w }
\cs_new:Npn \__fp&_tuple_o:ww #1; { \__fp_exp_after_tuple_o:w }
\cs_new:Npn \__fp&_tuple_o:ww { \__fp&_o:ww \else: }
\cs_new:Npn \__fp&_tuple_o:ww { \__fp&_o:ww \else: }
\cs_new:Npn \__fp&_tuple_o:ww #1; #2; { \__fp_exp_after_tuple_o:w #1; }
\group_end:
Ternary operator

The first function receives the test and the true branch of the ?: ternary operator. It calls \_\_fp_ternary_auxii:NwwN if the test branch is a floating point number \pm 0, and otherwise calls \_\_fp_ternary_auxi:NwwN. These functions select one of their two arguments.

\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_ternary:NwwN #1 #2#3@ #4@ #5
\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_ternary_auxi:NwwN #1#2@#3@#4
\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_ternary_auxii:NwwN #1#2@#3@#4

(End definition for \_\_fp_&_o:ww and others.)
\exp_after:wN \__fp_parse_continue:NwN
\exp_after:wN \__fp_ternary:NwwN
\exp_after:wN \__fp_ternary_auxi:NwwN
\exp_after:wN \__fp_ternary_auxii:NwwN
\exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w
\__fp_exp_after_array_f:w #3 \s__fp_expr_stop
#4 #1
}

(End definition for \__fp_ternary:NwwN, \__fp_ternary_auxi:NwwN, and \__fp_ternary_auxii:NwwN.)

(/package)
Chapter 72

\l3fp-basics Implementation

72.1 Addition and subtraction

We define here two functions, \_\_fp_-\_o:w and \_\_fp_+\_o:w, which perform the subtraction and addition of their two floating point operands, and expand the tokens following the result once.

A more obscure function, \_\_fp_add_big_i\_o:wNww, is used in \l3fp-expo. The logic goes as follows:

- \_\_fp_-\_o:w calls \_\_fp_+\_o:w to do the work, with the sign of the second operand flipped;
- \_\_fp_+\_o:w dispatches depending on the type of floating point, calling specialized auxiliaries;
• in all cases except summing two normal floating point numbers, we return one or
the other operands depending on the signs, or detect an invalid operation in the
case of $\infty - \infty$;

• for normal floating point numbers, compare the signs;

• to add two floating point numbers of the same sign or of opposite signs, shift the
significand of the smaller one to match the bigger one, perform the addition or
subtraction of significands, check for a carry, round, and pack using the \_\_fp_
basics\_pack\_... functions.

The trickiest part is to round correctly when adding or subtracting normal floating point
numbers.

72.1.1 Sign, exponent, and special numbers

\_\_fp\_\_o:ww The \_\_fp\_\_o:ww auxiliary has a hook: it takes one argument between the first \s\_\_fp
and \_\_fp\_chk:w, which is applied to the sign of the second operand. Positioning
the hook there means that \_\_fp\_\_o:ww can still perform the sanity check that it was
followed by \s\_\_fp.

\cs_new:cpx { __fp_-\_o:ww } \s\_\_fp
\exp_not:c { __fp_+\_o:ww } \s\_\_fp
\exp_not:n { \s\_\_fp \__fp\_neg\_sign:N }

(End definition for \_\_fp\_\_o:ww.)

\_\_fp\_\_o:ww This function is either called directly with an empty \#1 to compute an addition, or it
is called by \_\_fp\_\_o:ww with \_\_fp\_neg\_sign:N as \#1 to compute a subtraction, in
which case the second operand’s sign should be changed. If the ⟨types⟩ \#2 and \#4 are the
same, dispatch to case \#2 (0, 1, 2, or 3), where we call specialized functions: thanks to
\int_value:w, those receive the tweaked ⟨sign⟩ (expansion of \#1\#5) as an argument. If
the ⟨types⟩ are distinct, the result is simply the floating point number with the highest
⟨type⟩. Since case 3 (used for two nan) also picks the first operand, we can also use it
when ⟨type1⟩ is greater than ⟨type2⟩. Also note that we don’t need to worry about ⟨sign⟩
in that case since the second operand is discarded.

\cs_new:cpn { __fp\_\_o:ww }
\s\_\_fp \#1 \_\_fp\_chk:w \#2 \#3 ; \s\_\_fp \_\_fp\_chk:w \#4 \#5
\if_case:w
\if_meaning:w \#2 \#4
\#2
\else:
\if_int_compare:w \#2 > \#4 \exp_stop_f:
3
\else:
4
\fi:
\fi:
\exp_stop_f:
\exp_after:wN \__fp\_add\_zeros\_o:Nww \int_value:w
\or: \exp_after:wN \__fp\_add\_normal\_o:Nww \int_value:w
\_fp_add_zeros_o:Nww

Adding two zeros yields \c_zero_fp, except if both zeros were \textperiodic.

\cs_new:Npn \_fp_add_zeros_o:Nww \_\_fp_chk:w \textperiodic
\{ \_\_fp_exp_after_o:w \_\_fp_chk:w \textperiodic \}

(End definition for \_fp_add_zeros_o:Nww.)

\_fp_add_inf_o:Nww

If both infinities have the same sign, just return that infinity, otherwise, it is an invalid operation. We find out if that invalid operation is an addition or a subtraction by testing whether the tweaked \langle sign \_1 \rangle \textperiodic and the \langle sign \_4 \rangle \textperiodic are identical.

\cs_new:Npn \_fp_add_inf_o:Nww
\_\_fp_case_use:nw
\{ \_\_fp_invalid_operation_o:Nww \}

(End definition for \_fp_add_inf_o:Nww.)
We now have two normal numbers to add, and we have to check signs and exponents more carefully before performing the addition.

```
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_add_normal_o:Nww #1 \s__fp \__fp_chk:w 1 #2 {
\exp_after:wN \__fp_add_npos_o:NnwNnw \else:
\exp_after:wN \__fp_sub_npos_o:NnwNnw
\fi:
#2}
```

(End definition for \__fp_add_normal_o:Nww.)

### 72.1.2 Absolute addition

In this subsection, we perform the addition of two positive normal numbers.

```
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_add_npos_o:NnwNnw #1#2#3 ; \s__fp \__fp_chk:w 1 #4 #5 {
\exp_after:wN \__fp_sanitize:Nw \exp_after:wN #1 \int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w
\if_int_compare:w #2 > #5 \exp_stop_f:
#2
\else:
#5
\if_int_compare:w #5 - #2 \exp_stop_f:
#5 - #2
\else:
#3;
\fi:
\fi:
\__fp_int_eval:w #5 - #2 ; #1 #3;
}
```

(End definition for \__fp_add_npos_o:NnwNnw.)

```
\__fp_add_big_i_o:wNww \__fp_add_big_ii_o:wNww
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_add_big_i_o:wNww #1; #2 #3; #4; \__fp_add_big_ii_o:wNww
\__fp_decimate:nNww \__fp_add_significand_o:NwwN
```

Used in l3fp-expo. Shift the significand of the small number, then add with \__fp_add_significand_o:NwwNwwNnnnnNnnn.
To round properly, we must know at which digit the rounding should occur. This requires to know whether the addition produces an overall carry or not. Thus, we do the computation now and check for a carry, then go back and do the rounding. The rounding may cause a carry in very rare cases such as 0.999...95 → 1.000...0, but this situation always gives an exact power of 10, for which it is easy to correct the result at the end.

`\__fp_add_significand_o:NnnwnnnnN` ⟨rounding digit⟩ ⟨Y’1⟩ ⟨Y’2⟩ ⟨extra-digits⟩ ; ⟨X1⟩ ⟨X2⟩ ⟨X3⟩ ⟨X4⟩ ⟨final sign⟩

If there’s no carry, grab all the digits again and round. The packing function `\__fp_basics_pack_high:NNNNw` takes care of the case where rounding brings a carry.

```
\__fp_basics_pack_high:NNNNw
```

(End definition for `\__fp_add_significand_o:NnnwnnnnN`, `\__fp_add_significand_pack:NNNNNNN`, and `\__fp_add_significand_test_o:N`.)
The case where there is a carry is very similar. Rounding can even raise the first digit from 1 to 2, but we don’t care.

Rounding properly in some modes requires to know what the sign of the result will be. Thus, we start by comparing the exponents and significands. If the numbers coincide, return zero. If the second number is larger, swap the numbers and call \_\_fp\_sub\_npos\_-ii\_o:Nnww with the opposite of (sign1).

Rounding properly in some modes requires to know what the sign of the result will be. Thus, we start by comparing the exponents and significands. If the numbers coincide, return zero. If the second number is larger, swap the numbers and call \_\_fp\_sub\_npos\_-ii\_o:Nnww with the opposite of (sign1).
After the computation is done, \_\_fp\_sanitize:Nw checks for overflow/underflow. It expects the \langle final sign \rangle and the \langle exponent \rangle (delimited by ;). Start an integer expression for the exponent, which starts with the exponent of the largest number, and may be decreased if the two numbers are very close. If the two numbers have the same exponent, call the near auxiliary. Otherwise, decimate \(y\), then call the far auxiliary to evaluate the difference between the two significands. Note that we decimate by 1 less than one could expect.

\[\begin{array}{l}
\text{\texttt{\_\_fp\_sanitize:Nw}} \text{ checks for overflow/underflow. It expects the } \langle \text{final sign} \rangle \text{ and the } \langle \text{exponent} \rangle \text{ (delimited by ;). Start an integer expression for the exponent, which starts with the exponent of the largest number, and may be decreased if the two numbers are very close. If the two numbers have the same exponent, call the near auxiliary. Otherwise, decimate } y, \text{ then call the far auxiliary to evaluate the difference between the two significands. Note that we decimate by 1 less than one could expect.}
\end{array}\]
\fi:  
; \{\#1\#2\#3\#4\} \{\#5\}
}

(End definition for \_fp_sub_back_near_o:nnnnnnnn, \_fp_sub_back_near_pack:NNNNNNw, and \_fp_sub_back_near_after:wnNNW.)

\_fp_sub_back_shift:wnnn  
\_fp_sub_back_shift_ii:ww
\_fp_sub_back_shift_iii:NNNNNNNNw  
\_fp_sub_back_shift_iv:nnnnw
\_fp_sub_back_shift:wnnn ; {\langle Z_1 \rangle} {\langle Z_2 \rangle} {\langle Z_3 \rangle} {\langle Z_4 \rangle};

This function is called with \langle Z_1 \rangle \leq 999. Act with \texttt{number} to trim leading zeros from TEX's integers. If the first two blocks are zero, the auxiliary receives an empty \#1 and trims \#2#30 from leading zeros, yielding a total shift between 7 and 16 to the exponent. Otherwise we get the shift from \#1 alone, yielding a result between 1 and 6. Once the exponent is taken care of, trim leading zeros from \#1#2#3 (when \#1 is empty, the space before \#2#3 is ignored), get four blocks of 4 digits and finally clean up. Trailing zeros are added so that digits can be grabbed safely.

\cs_new:Npn \_fp_sub_back_shift:wnnn ; #1#2  
\exp_after:wN \_fp_sub_back_shift_ii:ww  
\int_value:w #1 #2 0 ;
\cs_new:Npn \_fp_sub_back_shift_ii:ww #1 0 ; #2#3 ;
\if_meaning:w @ #1 @  
- 7  
\exp_after:wN \use_i:nnn  
\exp_after:wN \_fp_sub_back_shift_iii:NNNNNNNNw  
\int_value:w #2#3 0 - 123456789;
\else:  
- \_fp_sub_back_shift_iii:NNNNNNNNw #1 123456789;
\fi:  
\exp_after:wN \_fp_pack_twice_four:wNNNNNNNN  
\exp_after:wN \_fp_pack_twice_four:wNNNNNNNNw  
\exp_after:wN \_fp_sub_back_shift_iv:nnnnw  
\exp_after:wN ;  
\int_value:w
#1 - #2#3 0 - 0000 0000 0000 000 ;
\cs_new:Npn \_fp_sub_back_shift_iii:NNNNNNNNw #1\#2#3#4#5#6#7#8#9; \{#8\}
\cs_new:Npn \_fp_sub_back_shift_iii:NNNNNNNNw \#1 \#2 ; \{ \; \#1 ;}

(End definition for \_fp_sub_back_shift:wnnn and others.)

\_fp_sub_back_far_o:NNnnnnnN (\textit{rounding}) \{\langle Y'_1 \rangle\} \{\langle Y'_2 \rangle\}  
\{\textit{extra-digits}\} ; \{\langle X_1 \rangle\} \{\langle X_2 \rangle\} \{\langle X_3 \rangle\} \{\langle X_4 \rangle\} \{\textit{final sign}\}

If the difference is greater than \(10^{(\text{exp}+1)}\), call the \texttt{very_far} auxiliary. If the result is less than \(10^{(\text{exp}+1)}\), call the \texttt{not_far} auxiliary. If it is too close a call to know yet, namely if \(1\langle Y'_1 \rangle \langle Y'_2 \rangle = \langle X_1 \rangle \langle X_2 \rangle \langle X_3 \rangle \langle X_4 \rangle 0\), then call the \texttt{quite_far} auxiliary. We use the odd combination of space and semi-colon delimiters to allow the \texttt{not_far} auxiliary to grab each piece individually, the \texttt{very_far} auxiliary to use \_fp_pack_eight:wNNNNNNNN, and the \texttt{quite_far} to ignore the significands easily (using the ; delimiter).

\cs_new:Npn \_fp_sub_back_far_o:NNnnnnnN \#1\#2#3 \#4; \#5#6#7#8
The easiest case is when \( x - y \) is extremely close to a power of 10, namely the first digit of \( x \) is 1 and all others vanish when subtracting \( y \). Then the \( \langle \text{rounding} \rangle \) \#3 and the \( \langle \text{final sign} \rangle \) \#4 control whether we get 1 or 0.

\[
9999999999999999
\]

In the usual round-to-nearest mode, we get 1 whenever the \( \langle \text{rounding} \rangle \) digit is less than or equal to 5 (remember that the \( \langle \text{rounding} \rangle \) digit is only equal to 5 if there was no further non-zero digit).

In the present case, \( x \) and \( y \) have different exponents, but \( y \) is large enough that \( x - y \) has a smaller exponent than \( x \). Decrement the exponent (with \(-1\)). Then proceed in a way similar to the \texttt{near} auxiliaries seen earlier, but multiplying \( x \) by 10 (\#30 and \#40 below), and with the added quirk that the \( \langle \text{rounding} \rangle \) digit has to be taken into account. Namely, we may have to decrease the result by one unit if \texttt{\_fp_round_neg:NNN} returns 1. This function expects the \( \langle \text{final sign} \rangle \) \#6, the last digit of 1100000000+\#40-\#2, and the \( \langle \text{rounding} \rangle \) digit. Instead of redoing the computation for the second argument, we note that \texttt{\_fp_round_neg:NNN} only cares about its parity, which is identical to that of the last digit of \#2.
The case where $x - y$ and $x$ have the same exponent is a bit more tricky, mostly because it cannot reuse the same auxiliaries. Shift the $y$ significand by adding a leading 0. Then the logic is similar to the not_far functions above. Rounding is a bit more complicated: we have two (rounding) digits $3$ and $6$ (from the decimation, and from the new shift) to take into account, and getting the parity of the main result requires a computation. The first \int_value:w triggers the second one because the number is unfinished; we can thus not use 0 in place of 2 there.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_sub_back_not_far_o:wwwwNN #1; #2; #3; #4; #5#6
\{
  \__fp_sub_back_near_after:wNN 
  \int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w 1#30 - #1 - 11
  \__fp_sub_back_near_pack:NNNNNNw
  \int_value:w 
  \__fp_int_eval:w 11 0000 0000 + #40 - #2
  \__fp_round_neg:NNN
  \__fp_round:NNN #6
  \use_none:nnnnnnn #2 #5
  \exp_after:wN ;
\}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__fp_sub_back_not_far_o:wwww.)

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_sub_back_very_far_o:wwwwNN #1#2#3#4#5#6#7
\{
  \__fp_pack_eight:wNNNNNNNN
  \__fp_sub_back_very_far_ii_o:nnNwwNN
  \{
    0 #1#2#3 #4#5#6#7
  \}
\}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__fp_sub_back_very_far_o:wwww and \__fp_sub_back_very_far_ii_o:nnNww.)

## 72.2 Multiplication

### 72.2.1 Signs, and special numbers

\__fp_*_o:ww

We go through an auxiliary, which is common with \__fp_/o:ww. The first argument is the operation, used for the invalid operation exception. The second is inserted in a formula to dispatch cases slightly differently between multiplication and division. The
third is the operation for normal floating points. The fourth is there for extra cases
needed in \_fp_\_o:ww.
\cs_new:c { \__fp_\_*_o:ww }
\__fp_mul_cases_o:NnNnww
\_ \_fp_mul_npos_o:Nww
\{ \}
(End definition for \_fp_\_*_o:ww.)
\__fp_mul_cases_o:nNnnww
\text{Split into 10 cases (12 for division). If both numbers are normal, go to case 0 (same sign)
or case 1 (opposite signs): in both cases, call \_\_fp_mul_npos_o:Nww to do the work. If
the first operand is nan, go to case 2, in which the second operand is discarded; if the
second operand is nan, go to case 3, in which the first operand is discarded (note the
weird interaction with the final test on signs). Then we separate the case where the first
number is normal and the second is zero: this goes to cases 4 and 5 for multiplication,
10 and 11 for division. Otherwise, we do a computation which dispatches the products
0×0 = 0×1 = 1×0 = 0 to case 4 or 5 depending on the combined sign, the products 0×∞
and ∞×0 to case 6 or 7 (invalid operation), and the products 1×∞ = ∞×1 = ∞×∞ = ∞
to cases 8 and 9. Note that the code for these two cases (which return ±∞) is inserted
as argument #4, because it differs in the case of divisions.
72.2.2 Absolute multiplication

In this subsection, we perform the multiplication of two positive normal numbers.

\begin{verbatim}
\_fp_mul_npos_o:Nww (final sign) \_fp_mul \_fp_chk:w 1 (sign1) \{\{exp1\}\} (body1) \; \_fp_mul \_fp_chk:w 1 (sign2) \{\{exp2\}\} (body2) ; 
\end{verbatim}

After the computation, \_fp_sanitize:Nw checks for overflow or underflow. As we did for addition, \_fp_int_eval:w computes the exponent, catching any shift coming from the computation in the significand. The \textit{(final sign)} is needed to do the rounding properly in the significand computation. We setup the post-expansion here, triggered by \_fp_mul_significand_o:nnnnNnnnn.

This is also used in \texttt{l3fp-convert}.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_fp_mul_npos_o:Nww 
\_fp_mul \_fp_chk:w 1 \{\{sign1\}\} \{\{exp1\}\} \{\{body1\}\} \; \_fp_mul \_fp_chk:w 1 \{\{sign2\}\} \{\{exp2\}\} \{\{body2\}\} ;
\end{verbatim}

The product of two 16 digit integers has 31 or 32 digits, but it is impossible to know which one before computing. The place where we round depends on that number of digits, and may depend on all digits until the last in some rare cases. The approach is thus to compute the 5 first blocks of 4 digits (the first one is between 100 and 9999 inclusive), and a compact version of the remaining 3 blocks. Afterwards, the number of digits is known, and we can do the rounding within yet another set of \_fp_int_eval:w.

\begin{verbatim}
\_fp_mul_significand_o:nnnnNnnnn \{\{X_1\}\} \{\{X_2\}\} \{\{X_3\}\} \{\{X_4\}\} \{\{Y_1\}\} \{\{Y_2\}\} \{\{Y_3\}\} \{\{Y_4\}\} 
\end{verbatim}

Note the three semicolons at the end of the definition. One is for the last \_fp_mul_significand_drop:NNNNNw; one is for \_fp_round_digit:Nw later on; and one, preceded by \texttt{exp_after:wN}, which is correctly expanded (within an \_fp_int_eval:w), is used by \_fp_basics_pack_low:NNNNNw.

The product of two 16 digit integers has 31 or 32 digits, but it is impossible to know which one before computing. The place where we round depends on that number of digits, and may depend on all digits until the last in some rare cases. The approach is thus to compute the 5 first blocks of 4 digits (the first one is between 100 and 9999 inclusive), and a compact version of the remaining 3 blocks. Afterwards, the number of digits is known, and we can do the rounding within yet another set of \_fp_int_eval:w.
\exp_after:wN \_fp_mul_significand_keep:NNNNNw
\int_value:w \_fp_int_eval:w 99990000 + \#1*\#7 + \#2*\#6 +
\exp_after:wN \_fp_mul_significand_drop:NNNNNw
\int_value:w \_fp_int_eval:w 99990000 + \#3*\#7 + \#4*\#6 +
\exp_after:wN \_fp_mul_significand_drop:NNNNNw
\int_value:w \_fp_int_eval:w 99990000 + \#1*\#8 + \#2*\#7 + \#3*\#6 +
\int_value:w \_fp_int_eval:w 99990000 + \#1*\#9 + \#2*\#8 + \#3*\#7 + \#4*\#6 +
\exp_after:wN \_fp_mul_significand_drop:NNNNNw
\int_value:w \_fp_int_eval:w 99990000 + \#2*\#9 + \#3*\#8 + \#4*\#7 +
\exp_after:wN \_fp_mul_significand_drop:NNNNNw
\int_value:w \_fp_int_eval:w 99990000 + \#3*\#9 + \#4*\#8 + \#4*\#9 ;
\exp_after:wN ;
\}
\cs_new:Npn \_fp_mul_significand_drop:NNNNNw #1#2#3#4#5 #6;
{ #1#2#3#4#5 ; + \#6 }
\cs_new:Npn \_fp_mul_significand_keep:NNNNNw #1#2#3#4#5 #6;
{ #1#2#3#4#5 ; \#6 ; }

(End definition for \_fp_mul_significand_o:nnnnNnnnn, \_fp_mul_significand_drop:NNNNNw, and \_fp_mul_significand_keep:NNNNNw.)

\_fp_mul_significand_test_f:NNN (sign) 1 \langle digits 1–8 \rangle ; \langle digits 9–12 \rangle ;
\langle digits 13–16 \rangle ; + \langle digits 17–20 \rangle + \langle digits 21–24 \rangle + \langle digits 25–28 \rangle + \langle digits 29–32 \rangle ; \exp_after:wN ;

If the \langle digit 1 \rangle is non-zero, then for rounding we only care about the digits 16 and 17, and whether further digits are zero or not (check for exact ties). On the other hand, if \langle digit 1 \rangle is zero, we care about digits 17 and 18, and whether further digits are zero.

\cs_new:Npn \_fp_mul_significand_test_f:NNN \#1 \#2 \#3
{ \begin{verbatim}
\if_meaning:w 0 \#3
\exp_after:wN \_fp_mul_significand_small_f:NNwwwN
\else:
\exp_after:wN \_fp_mul_significand_large_f:NwwNNNw
\fi:
  \#1 \#3
\end{verbatim}
}

(End definition for \_fp_mul_significand_test_f:NNN.)

\_fp_mul_significand_large_f:NwwNNNw

In this branch, \langle digit 1 \rangle is non-zero. The result is thus \langle digits 1–16 \rangle, plus some rounding which depends on the digits 16, 17, and whether all subsequent digits are zero or not. Here, \_fp_round_digit:Nw takes digits 17 and further (as an integer expression), and replaces it by a \langle rounding digit \rangle, suitable for \_fp_round:Nw.

\cs_new:Npn \_fp_mul_significand_large_f:NwwNNNw \#1 \#2; \#3; \#4\#5\#6\#7; +
{ \begin{verbatim}
\exp_after:wN \_fp_mul_significand_test_f:NNN #1\#2\#3\#4\#5; \#6; +
\exp_after:wN \_fp_basics_pack_high:NNNNNw
\int_value:w \_fp_int_eval:w 1\#2
\exp_after:wN \_fp_basics_pack_low:NNNNNw
\int_value:w \_fp_int_eval:w 1\#3\#4\#5\#6\#7
+ \exp_after:wN \_fp_round:Nw
\exp_after:wN \_fp_mul_significand_large_f:NwwNNNw
\end{verbatim}
}
In this branch, <code>(digit 1)</code> is zero. Our result is thus <code>(digits 2–17)</code>, plus some rounding which depends on the digits 17, 18, and whether all subsequent digits are zero or not. The 8 digits 1#3 are followed, after expansion of the <code>small_pack</code> auxiliary, by the next digit, to form a 9 digit number.

```latex
\exp_after:wN \__fp_basics_pack_high:NNNNNNw
\int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w 1#3#4#5#6#7
\exp_after:wN \__fp_division_by_zero_o:NNww \c_inf_fp /
\or:
\__fp_case_use:nw{ \__fp_division_by_zero_o:NNww \c_minus_inf_fp / }
```

### 72.3 Division

#### 72.3.1 Signs, and special numbers

Time is now ripe to tackle the hardest of the four elementary operations: division.

Filtering special floating point is very similar to what we did for multiplications, with a few variations. Invalid operation exceptions display <code>/</code> rather than <code>*</code>. In the formula for dispatch, we replace <code>- 2 +</code> by <code>-</code>. The case of normal numbers is treated using <code>\__fp_div_npos_o</code> rather than <code>\__fp_mul_npos_o</code>. There are two additional cases: if the first operand is normal and the second is a zero, then the division by zero exception is raised: cases 10 and 11 of the <code>\if_case:w</code> construction in <code>\__fp_mul_cases_o</code> are provided as the fourth argument here.
72.3.2 Work plan

In this subsection, we explain how to avoid overflowing \TeX{}’s integers when performing the division of two positive normal numbers.

We are given two numbers, \( A = 0.A_1A_2A_3A_4 \) and \( Z = 0.Z_1Z_2Z_3Z_4 \), in blocks of 4 digits, and we know that the first digits of \( A_1 \) and of \( Z_1 \) are non-zero. To compute \( A/Z \), we proceed as follows.

- Find an integer \( Q_A \simeq 10^4 A/Z \).
- Replace \( A \) by \( B = 10^4 A - Q_A Z \).
- Find an integer \( Q_B \simeq 10^4 B/Z \).
- Replace \( B \) by \( C = 10^4 B - Q_B Z \).
- Find an integer \( Q_C \simeq 10^4 C/Z \).
- Replace \( C \) by \( D = 10^4 C - Q_C Z \).
- Find an integer \( Q_D \simeq 10^4 D/Z \).
- Consider \( E = 10^4 D - Q_D Z \), and ensure correct rounding.
The result is then

\[ Q = 10^{-4}Q_A + 10^{-8}Q_B + 10^{-12}Q_C + 10^{-16}Q_D + \text{rounding}. \]

Since the \( Q_i \) are integers, \( B, C, D, \) and \( E \) are all exact multiples of \( 10^{-16} \), in other words, computing with 16 digits after the decimal separator yields exact results. The problem is the risk of overflow: in general \( B, C, D, \) and \( E \) may be greater than 1.

Unfortunately, things are not as easy as they seem. In particular, we want all intermediate steps to be positive, since negative results would require extra calculations at the end. This requires that \( Q_A \leq 10^4A/Z \) etc. A reasonable attempt would be to define \( Q_A \) as

\[
\text{\texttt{\int\_eval:n \left\{ \frac{A_1A_2}{Z_1+1} - 1 \right\} \leq 10^4 \frac{A}{Z}}
\]

Subtracting 1 at the end takes care of the fact that \( \varepsilon\text{-\TeX}'s \texttt{\_fp\_int\_eval:w} \) rounds divisions instead of truncating (really, \( 1/2 \) would be sufficient, but we work with integers). We add 1 to \( Z_1 \) because \( Z_1 \leq 10^4Z < Z_1 + 1 \) and we need \( Q_A \) to be an underestimate. However, we are now underestimating \( Q_A \) too much: it can be wrong by up to 100, for instance when \( Z = 0.1 \) and \( A \approx 1 \). Then \( B \) could take values up to 10 (maybe more), and a few steps down the line, we would run into arithmetic overflow, since \( \TeX \) can only handle integers less than roughly \( 2 \cdot 10^9 \).

A better formula is to take

\[ Q_A = \text{\texttt{\int\_eval:n \left\{ \frac{10^4 \cdot A_1A_2}{Z_1Z_2} - 1 \right\} \cdot \left( \frac{y}{10^{-3} \cdot Z_1Z_2} \right)}}. \]

This is always less than \( 10^9A/(10^5Z) \), as we wanted. In words, we take the 5 first digits of \( Z \) into account, and the 8 first digits of \( A \), using 0 as a 9-th digit rather than the true digit for efficiency reasons. We shall prove that using this formula to define all the \( Q_i \) avoids any overflow. For convenience, let us denote

\[ y = \left\lfloor 10^{-3} \cdot Z_1Z_2 \right\rfloor + 1, \]

so that, taking into account the fact that \( \varepsilon\text{-\TeX} \) rounds ties away from zero,

\[ Q_A = \left\lfloor \frac{A_1A_20 - 1}{2} \right\rfloor \]

\[ > A_1A_20 \frac{3}{y} \]

\[ \leq \frac{10^{9}A}{y} + 1.6 \cdot y. \]

Note that \( 10^4 < y \leq 10^5 \), and 999 \( \leq Q_A \leq 99989 \). Also note that this formula does not cause an overflow as long as \( A < (2^{33} - 1)/10^9 \approx 2.147 \cdots \), since the numerator involves an integer slightly smaller than \( 10^9A \).

Let us bound \( B \):

\[
10^5B = A_1A_20 + 10 \cdot 0A_3A_4 - 10 \cdot Z_1Z_2Z_3Z_4 \cdot Q_A < A_1A_20 \left( 1 - 10 \cdot \frac{Z_1Z_2Z_3Z_4}{y} \right) + \frac{3}{2} 10 \cdot Z_1Z_2Z_3Z_4 + 10 \leq A_1A_20 \frac{y - 10 \cdot Z_1Z_2Z_3Z_4}{y} + \frac{3}{2} y + 10 \leq A_1A_20 \frac{1}{y} + \frac{3}{2} y + 10 \leq \frac{10^9A}{y} + 1.6 \cdot y.
\]

1072
At the last step, we hide 10 into the second term for later convenience. The same reasoning yields

\[ 10^5B < 10^9A/y + 1.6y, \]
\[ 10^5C < 10^9B/y + 1.6y, \]
\[ 10^5D < 10^9C/y + 1.6y, \]
\[ 10^5E < 10^9D/y + 1.6y. \]

The goal is now to prove that none of \( B, C, D, \) and \( E \) can go beyond \( (2^{31} - 1)/10^9 = 2.147 \ldots \).

Combining the various inequalities together with \( A < 1 \), we get

\[ 10^5B < 10^9/y + 1.6y, \]
\[ 10^5C < 10^{13}/y^2 + 1.6(y + 10^4), \]
\[ 10^5D < 10^{17}/y^3 + 1.6(y + 10^4 + 10^8/y), \]
\[ 10^5E < 10^{21}/y^4 + 1.6(y + 10^4 + 10^8/y + 10^{12}/y^2). \]

All of those bounds are convex functions of \( y \) (since every power of \( y \) involved is convex, and the coefficients are positive), and thus maximal at one of the end-points of the allowed range \( 10^4 < y \leq 10^5 \). Thus,

\[ 10^5B < \max(1.16 \cdot 10^5, 1.7 \cdot 10^5), \]
\[ 10^5C < \max(1.32 \cdot 10^5, 1.77 \cdot 10^5), \]
\[ 10^5D < \max(1.48 \cdot 10^5, 1.777 \cdot 10^5), \]
\[ 10^5E < \max(1.64 \cdot 10^5, 1.7777 \cdot 10^5). \]

All of those bounds are less than \( 2.147 \cdot 10^5 \), and we are thus within \( \text{TeX} \)'s bounds in all cases!

We later need to have a bound on the \( Q_i \). Their definitions imply that \( Q_A < 10^9A/y - 1/2 < 10^9A \) and similarly for the other \( Q_i \). Thus, all of them are less than 177770.

The last step is to ensure correct rounding. We have

\[ A/Z = \sum_{i=1}^{4} (10^{-4i}Q_i) + 10^{-16}E/Z \]

exactly. Furthermore, we know that the result is in \([0.1, 10]\), hence will be rounded to a multiple of \( 10^{-16} \) or of \( 10^{-15} \), so we only need to know the integer part of \( E/Z \), and a “rounding” digit encoding the rest. Equivalently, we need to find the integer part of \( 2E/Z \), and determine whether it was an exact integer or not (this serves to detect ties). Since

\[ \frac{2E}{Z} = 2 \frac{10^5E}{10^9Z} \leq 2 \frac{10^5E}{10^9} < 36, \]

1073
this integer part is between 0 and 35 inclusive. We let $\varepsilon$-\TeX round

$$P = \texttt{int\_eval:n} \left\{ \frac{2 \cdot E_1 E_2}{Z_1 Z_2} \right\},$$

which differs from $2E/Z$ by at most

$$\frac{1}{2} + 2 \left| \frac{E}{Z} - \frac{E}{10^{-8} Z_1 Z_2} \right| + 2 \left| \frac{10^{8} E - E_1 E_2}{Z_1 Z_2} \right| < 1,$$

$(1/2$ comes from $\varepsilon$-\TeX’s rounding) because each absolute value is less than $10^{-7}$. Thus $P$ is either the correct integer part, or is off by 1; furthermore, if $2E/Z$ is an integer, $P = 2E/Z$. We will check the sign of $2E-PZ$. If it is negative, then $E/Z \in ((P-1)/2, P/2)$. If it is zero, then $E/Z = P/2$. If it is positive, then $E/Z \in (P/2, (P-1)/2)$. In each case, we know how to round to an integer, depending on the parity of $P$, and the rounding mode.

### 72.3.3 Implementing the significand division

\begin{verbatim}
\_fp\_div\_significand\_i\_o:wnnw \texttt{(y)} ; \{\langle A_1 \rangle \ \{\langle A_2 \rangle \ \{\langle A_3 \rangle \ \{\langle A_4 \rangle \}} \} ; \langle \text{sign} \rangle
\{\langle Z_1 \rangle \ \{\langle Z_2 \rangle \ \{\langle Z_3 \rangle \ \{\langle Z_4 \rangle \}} \} \}
\end{verbatim}

The arguments for 4 consecutive calls to \_\_fp\_div\_significand\_calc:wnnnnnnnn. Each of these calls needs \texttt{(sign)} \texttt{(y)}, and it turns out that we need post-expansion there, hence the \texttt{int\_value:w}. Here, \#4 is six brace groups, which give the six first \texttt{n}-type arguments of the calc function.

\begin{verbatim}
25481 \cs_new:Npn \_fp\_div\_significand\_i\_o:wnnw \#1 ; \#2 #3 \#4 ;
25482 \{\exp_after:wN \_fp\_div\_significand\_test\_o:w
25483 \int_value:w \_fp\_int\_eval:w
25484 \exp_after:wN \_fp\_div\_significand\_calc:wnnnnnnnn
25485 \int_value:w \_fp\_int\_eval:w 999999 + \#2 \#3 \#4 ;
25487 \#2 \#3 ;
25487 \#4
25488 \{ \exp_after:wN \_fp\_div\_significand\_ii\_o:w \int_value:w \#1 \}
25489 \{ \exp_after:wN \_fp\_div\_significand\_ii\_o:w \int_value:w \#1 \}
25474 \{ \exp_after:wN \_fp\_div\_significand\_ii\_o:w \int_value:w \#1 \}
25475 \{ \exp_after:wN \_fp\_div\_significand\_ii\_o:w \int_value:w \#1 \}
25476 \}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \_\_fp\_div\_significand\_i\_o:wnnw.)

\begin{verbatim}
\_fp\_div\_significand\_calc:wnnnnnnnn \langle 10^6 + Q_A \rangle ; \{\langle A_1 \rangle \ \{\langle A_2 \rangle \ \{\langle A_3 \rangle \ \{\langle A_4 \rangle \}} \}
25478 \{\langle Z_1 \rangle \ \{\langle Z_2 \rangle \ \{\langle Z_3 \rangle \ \{\langle Z_4 \rangle \}}} \} \langle \text{continuation} \rangle
25479 \} \langle \text{continuation} \rangle
25480 \{ \langle B_1 \rangle \ \{\langle B_2 \rangle \ \{\langle B_3 \rangle \ \{\langle B_4 \rangle \}} \}
25481 \{\langle Z_1 \rangle \ \{\langle Z_2 \rangle \ \{\langle Z_3 \rangle \ \{\langle Z_4 \rangle \}}} \}
\end{verbatim}

expands to

$$\langle 10^6 + Q_A \rangle \langle \text{continuation} \rangle ; \langle B_1 \rangle \ \{\langle B_2 \rangle \ \{\langle B_3 \rangle \ \{\langle B_4 \rangle \}} \} \langle \text{continuation} \rangle \langle \text{continuation} \rangle$$

where $B = 10^4 A - Q_A \cdot Z$. This function is also used to compute $C$, $D$, $E$ (with the input shifted accordingly), and is used in \texttt{fp-expo}.

We know that $0 < Q_A < 1.8 \cdot 10^3$, so the product of $Q_A$ with each $Z_i$ is within \TeX’s bounds. However, it is a little bit too large for our purposes: we would not be able to

1074
use the usual trick of adding a large power of 10 to ensure that the number of digits is fixed.

The bound on $Q_A$, implies that $10^6 + Q_A$ starts with the digit 1, followed by 0 or 1. We test, and call different auxiliaries for the two cases. An earlier implementation did the tests within the computation, but since we added a $\langle$continuation$\rangle$, this is not possible because the macro has 9 parameters.

The result we want is then (the overall power of 10 is arbitrary):

$$10^{-4} (#2 - #1 \cdot #5 - 10 \cdot \langle i \rangle \cdot #5#6) + 10^{-8} (#3 - #1 \cdot #6 - 10 \cdot \langle i \rangle \cdot #7)$$
$$+ 10^{-12} (#4 - #1 \cdot #7 - 10 \cdot \langle i \rangle \cdot #8) + 10^{-16} (-#1 \cdot #8),$$

where $(i)$ stands for the $10^5$ digit of $Q_A$, which is 0 or 1, and #1, #2, etc. are the parameters of either auxiliary. The factors of 10 come from the fact that $Q_A = 10 \cdot 10^4 \cdot (i) + #1$. As usual, to combine all the terms, we need to choose some shifts which must ensure that the number of digits of the second, third, and fourth terms are each fixed. Here, the positive contributions are at most $10^8$ and the negative contributions can go up to $10^9$. Indeed, for the auxiliary with $(i) = 1$, #1 is at most 80000, leading to contributions of at worse $-8 \cdot 10^4$, while the other negative term is very small $< 10^6$ (except in the first expression, where we don’t care about the number of digits); for the auxiliary with $(i) = 0$, #1 can go up to 99999, but there is no other negative term. Hence, a good choice is $2 \cdot 10^9$, which produces totals in the range $[10^9, 2 \cdot 10^9]$. We are flirting with TeX’s limits once more.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_div_significand_calc:wwnnnnnnn 1#1
{ \if_meaning:w 1 #1 \exp_after:wN \__fp_div_significand_calc_i:wwnnnnnn
  \else: \exp_after:wN \__fp_div_significand_calc_ii:wwnnnnnn \fi: }
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_div_significand_calc_i:wwnnnnnn
#1; #2;#3#4 #5#6#7#8 #9
{ 1 1 #1 1 0 #1 \exp_after:wN ; \int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w \c__fp_Bigg_leading_shift_int
+ #2 - #1 * #5 - #5#60 \exp_after:wN \__fp_pack_Bigg:NNNNNNw
\int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w \c__fp_Bigg_middle_shift_int
+ #3 - #1 * #6 - #70 \exp_after:wN \__fp_pack_Bigg:NNNNNNw
\int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w \c__fp_Bigg_middle_shift_int
+ #4 - #1 * #7 - #80 \exp_after:wN \__fp_pack_Bigg:NNNNNNw
\int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w \c__fp_Bigg_trailing_shift_int
- #1 * #8 ; {#5}{#6}{#7}{#8} }
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_div_significand_calc_ii:wwnnnnnn
#1; #2;#3#4 #5#6#7#8 #9
{ 1 0 #1 }
\end{verbatim}
\_fp_div_significand_ii:wwn  
\_fp_div_significand_iii:wwnnnnn \(y\); \(\langle B_1\rangle\); \(\langle B_2\rangle\); \(\langle B_3\rangle\); \(\langle B_4\rangle\); \(\langle Z_1\rangle\); \(\langle Z_2\rangle\); \(\langle Z_3\rangle\); \(\langle Z_4\rangle\); \(\langle \text{sign} \rangle\)

We compute \(P \approx 2E / Z\) by rounding \(2E_1E_2/Z_1Z_2\). Note the first 0, which multiplies \(Q_D\) by 10: we later add (roughly) \(5 \cdot P\), which amounts to adding \(P/2 \approx E/Z\) to \(Q_D\), the appropriate correction from a hypothetical \(Q_E\).

\_fp_div_significand_iii:wwnnnnn

\_fp_div_significand_iv:wwnnnnnnn \(P\); \(\langle E_1\rangle\); \(\langle E_2\rangle\); \(\langle E_3\rangle\); \(\langle E_4\rangle\)

\(\langle Z_1\rangle\); \(\langle Z_2\rangle\); \(\langle Z_3\rangle\); \(\langle Z_4\rangle\); \(\langle \text{sign} \rangle\)

(End definition for \_fp_div_significand_iii:wwnnnnn.)

\_fp_div_significand_iv:wwnnnnnnn

\_fp_div_significand_v:NNw
\_fp_div_significand_vi:Nw
This adds to the current expression \((10^7 + 10 \cdot Q_D)\) a contribution of \(5 \cdot P + \text{sign}(T)\) with \(T = 2E - PZ\). This amounts to adding \(P/2\) to \(Q_D\), with an extra \((\text{rounding})\) digit. This \((\text{rounding})\) digit is 0 or 5 if \(T\) does not contribute, \(i.e.,\) if \(0 = T = 2E - PZ\), in other words if \(10^{16}A/Z\) is an integer or half-integer. Otherwise it is in the appropriate range, \([1, 4]\) or \([6, 9]\). This is precise enough for rounding purposes (in any mode).

It seems an overkill to compute \(T\) exactly as I do here, but I see no faster way right now.

Once more, we need to be careful and show that the calculation \#1 \#6 \#7 below does not cause an overflow: naively, \(P\) can be up to 35, and \#6 \#7 up to \(10^9\), but both cannot happen simultaneously. To show that things are fine, we split in two (non-disjoint) cases.

- For \(P < 10\), the product obeys \(P \cdot \#6 \#7 < 10^8 \cdot P < 10^9\).
- For large \(P \geq 3\), the rounding error on \(P\), which is at most 1, is less than a factor of 2, hence \(P \leq 4E/Z\). Also, \#6 \#7 \leq 4\(E^2\), hence \(P \cdot \#6 \#7 \leq 4E \cdot 10^8 < 10^9\).

Both inequalities could be made tighter if needed.

Note however that \(P \#8 \#9\) may overflow, since the two factors are now independent, and the result may reach \(3.5 \cdot 10^9\). Thus we compute the two lower levels separately. The rest is standard, except that we use + as a separator (ending integer expressions explicitly). \(T\) is negative if the first character is -, it is positive if the first character is neither 0 nor -. It is also positive if the first character is 0 and second argument of \__fp_div_significand vi:Nw, a sum of several terms, is also zero. Otherwise, there was an exact agreement: \(T = 0\).

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_div_significand_iv:wwnnnnnnn #1; #2;#3#4#5 #6#7#8#9
\exp_after:wN \__fp_div_significand_vi:Nw
\int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w -20 + 2*#2#3 - #1*#6#7 + \exp_after:wN \__fp_int_eval:w 199980 + 2*#4 - #1*#8 + \exp_after:wN \__fp_int_eval:w 200000 + 2*#5 - #1*#9 ;
\end{verbatim}

At this stage, we are in the following situation: \TeX\ is in the process of expanding several integer expressions, thus functions at the bottom expand before those above.
Here, \( \varepsilon = \text{sign}(T) \) is 0 in case \( 2E = PZ \), 1 in case \( 2E > PZ \), which means that \( P \) was the correct value, but not with an exact quotient, and \(-1\) if \( 2E < PZ \), i.e., \( P \) was an overestimate. The packing function we define now does nothing special: it removes the \( 10^6 \) and carries two digits (for the \( 10^5 \)'s and the \( 10^4 \)'s).

\[
\__fp_{\text{div_significand_pack}}:NNN 10^7 + 10 \cdot Q_D + 5 \cdot P + \varepsilon; (\text{sign})
\]

The reason we know that the first two digits are 1 and 0 is that the final result is known to be between 0.1 (inclusive) and 10, hence \( Q_A \) (the tilde denoting the contribution from the other \( Q_i \)) is at most 99999, and \( 10^6 + Q_A = 10^7 \).

It is now time to round. This depends on how many digits the final result will have.

\[
\__fp_{\text{round}}:NNN \__fp_{\text{round}}:NNN 0 \langle 5d \rangle; \langle 4d \rangle; \langle 4d \rangle; \langle 5d \rangle; \langle \text{final sign} \rangle
\]

Standard use of the functions \( \__fp_{\text{basics_pack_low}}:NNNNw \) and \( \__fp_{\text{basics_pack_high}}:NNNNw \). We finally get to use the \( (\text{final sign}) \) which has been sitting there for a while.

\[
\__fp_{\text{round}}:NNN \__fp_{\text{round}}:NNN 0 \langle 5d \rangle; \langle 4d \rangle; \langle 4d \rangle; \langle 5d \rangle; \langle \text{final sign} \rangle
\]

We know that the final result cannot reach 10, hence \#1\#2, together with contributions from the level below, cannot reach \( 2 \cdot 10^9 \). For rounding, we build the \( (\text{rounding digit}) \) from the last two of our 18 digits.
25577 \#1; \#2; \#3; \#4\#5\#6\#7\#8; \#9
25578 \{ + 1
25579 \exp_after:wN \__fp_basics_pack_weird_high:NNNNNNNNw
25580 \int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w 1 \#1 \#2
25581 \exp_after:wN \__fp_basics_pack_weird_low:NNNNw
25582 \int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w 1 \#3 \#4 \#5 \#6 +
25583 \exp_after:wN \__fp_round:NNN
25584 \exp_after:wN \#9
25585 \exp_after:wN \#6
25586 \int_value:w \__fp_round_digit:Nw \#7 \#8 ;
25587 \exp_after:wN ;
25588 \}
25589 (End definition for \_\_fp_div_significand_large_o:wwwNNNNw.)

72.4 Square root
\_\_fp_sqrt_o:w

Zeros are unchanged: \sqrt{-0} = -0 and \sqrt{+0} = +0. Negative numbers (other than \(-0\)) have no real square root. Positive infinity, and \(\text{nan}\), are unchanged. Finally, for normal positive numbers, there is some work to do.
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_sqrt_o:w \#1 \s__fp \__fp_chk:w \#2\#3\#4; @
25600 \{ \if_meaning:w 0 \#2 \__fp_case_return_same_o:w \fi:
25601 \if_meaning:w 2 \#3
25602 \__fp_case_use:nw { \__fp_invalid_operation_o:nw { sqrt } }
25603 \fi:
25604 \if_meaning:w 1 \#2 \else: \__fp_case_return_same_o:w \fi:
25605 \__fp_sqrt_npos_o:w
25606 \s__fp \__fp_chk:w \#2 \#3 \#4;
25607 \}
(End definition for \_\_fp_sqrt_o:w.)

\_\_fp_sqrt_npos_o:w
\_\_fp_sqrt_npos_auxi_o:wwnnN
\_\_fp_sqrt_npos_auxii_o:wNNNNNNNN

Prepare \_\_fp_sanitize:Nw to receive the final sign 0 (the result is always positive) and the exponent, equal to half of the exponent \#1 of the argument. If the exponent \#1 is even, find a first approximation of the square root of the significand \(10^8a_1+a_2 = 10^9\#2\#3\#4\#5\) through Newton’s method, starting at \(x = 57234133 \approx 10^{7.75}\). Otherwise, first shift the significand of the argument by one digit, getting \(a_1' \in [10^8, 10^9]\) instead of \([10^7, 10^8]\), then use Newton’s method starting at \(17782794 \approx 10^{7.25}\).
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_sqrt_npos_o:w \s__fp \_\_fp_chk:w 1 0 \#1\#2\#3\#4\#5;
25601 \{ \exp_after:wN \_\_fp_sanitize:Nw
25602 \exp_after:wN 0
25603 \int_value:w \_\_fp_int_eval:w
25604 \if_int_odd:w \#1 \exp_stop_f:
25605 \exp_after:wN \_\_fp_sqrt_npos_auxi_o:wwnnN
25606 \fi:
25607 \#1 / 2
25608 \_\_fp_sqrt_Newton_o:wwn 56234133; 0; \{\#2\#3\} \{\#4\#5\} 0
25609 \}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_sqrt_npos_auxi_o:wwnnN \#1 / 2 \#2; 0; \#3\#4\#5
25610 \{
Newton’s method maps $x \mapsto [(x + [10^8 a_1/x])/2]$ in each iteration, where $[b/c]$ denotes $\varepsilon$-TeX’s division. This division rounds the real number $b/c$ to the closest integer,rounding ties away from zero, hence when $c$ is even, $b/c - 1/2 + 1/c \leq [b/c] \leq b/c + 1/2$ and when $c$ is odd, $b/c - 1/2 + 1/(2c) \leq [b/c] \leq b/c + 1/2 - 1/(2c)$. For all $c$, $b/c - 1/2 + 1/(2c) \leq [b/c] \leq b/c + 1/2$.

Let us prove that the method converges when implemented with $\varepsilon$-TeX integer division, for any $10^6 \leq a_1 < 10^8$ and starting value $10^6 \leq x < 10^8$. Using the inequalities above and the arithmetic-geometric inequality $(x + t)/2 \geq \sqrt{xt}$ for $t = 10^8 a_1/x$, we find

$$x' = \frac{x + [10^8 a_1/x]}{2} \leq \frac{x + 10^8 a_1/x - 1/2 + 1/(2x)}{2} \geq \sqrt{10^8 a_1} - \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{4x}.$$ 

After any step of iteration, we thus have $\delta = x - \sqrt{10^8 a_1} \geq -0.25 + 0.25 \cdot 10^{-8}$. The new difference $\delta' = x' - \sqrt{10^8 a_1}$ after one step is bounded above as

$$x' - \sqrt{10^8 a_1} \leq \frac{x + 10^8 a_1/x + 1/2}{2} + \frac{1}{2} - \sqrt{10^8 a_1} \leq \frac{\delta}{2} \sqrt{10^8 a_1} + \delta + \frac{3}{4}.$$ 

For $\delta > 3/2$, this last expression is $\leq \delta/2 + 3/4 < \delta$, hence $\delta$ decreases at each step: since all $x$ are integers, $\delta$ must reach a value $-1/4 < \delta \leq 3/2$. In this range of values, we get $\delta' \leq \frac{3}{4} \sqrt{10^8 a_1} + \frac{3}{4} \leq 0.75 + 1.25 \cdot 10^{-7}$. We deduce that the difference $\delta = x - \sqrt{10^8 a_1}$ eventually reaches a value in the interval $[-0.25 + 0.25 \cdot 10^{-8}, 0.75 + 11.25 \cdot 10^{-8}]$, whose width is $1 + 11 \cdot 10^{-8}$. The corresponding interval for $x$ may contain two integers, hence $x$ might oscillate between those two values. However, the fact that $x \mapsto x - 1$ and $x - 1 \mapsto x$ puts stronger constraints, which are not compatible: the first implies

$$x + [10^8 a_1/x] \leq 2x - 2$$

hence $10^8 a_1/x \leq x - 3/2$, while the second implies

$$x - 1 + [10^8 a_1/(x - 1)] \geq 2x - 1$$

hence $10^8 a_1/(x - 1) \geq x - 1/2$. Combining the two inequalities yields $x^2 - 3x/2 \geq 10^8 a_1 \geq x - 3x/2 + 1/2$, which cannot hold. Therefore, the iteration always converges to a single integer $x$. To stop the iteration when two consecutive results are equal, the function \_\_fp_sqrt_Newton_o:w\_\_ receives the newly computed result as \#1, the previous result as \#2, and $a_1$ as \#3. Note that $\varepsilon$-TeX combines the computation of a multiplication and a following division, thus avoiding overflow in \#3 * 100000000 / \#1. In any case, the result is within $[10^7, 10^8]$. 

1080
This receives a continuation function \#1, then five blocks of 4 digits for y, then two 8-digit blocks and a single digit for a. A common estimate of $\sqrt{a} - y = (a - y^2)/(\sqrt{a} + y)$ is $(a - y^2)/(2y)$, which leads to alternating overestimates and underestimates. We tweak this, to only work with underestimates (no need then to worry about signs in the computation). Each step finds the largest integer $j \leq 6$ such that $10^{1j}(a - y^2) < 2 \cdot 10^8$, then computes the integer (with $\varepsilon$-TEX’s rounding division)

$$10^{1j} z = \left[\frac{\lfloor 10^{1j}(a - y^2) \rfloor - 257}{257} \cdot 0.5 \cdot 10^8 \right] / \lfloor 10^8 y + 1 \rfloor.$$ 

The choice of $j$ ensures that $10^{1j} z < 2 \cdot 10^8 \cdot 0.5 \cdot 10^8 / 10^7 = 10^9$, thus $10^9 + 10^{1j} z$ has exactly 10 digits, does not overflow \TeX{}’s integer range, and starts with 1. Incidentally, since all $a - y^2 \leq 3.2 \cdot 10^8$, we know that $j \geq 3$.

Let us show that $z$ is an underestimate of $\sqrt{a} - y$. On the one hand, $\sqrt{a} - y \leq 16 \cdot 10^{-8}$ because this holds for the initial $y$ and values of $y$ can only increase. On the other hand, the choice of $j$ implies that $\sqrt{a} - y \leq 5(\sqrt{a} + y)(\sqrt{a} - y) = 5(a - y^2) < 10^9 - 10^{1j}$. For $j = 3$, $10^8 y + 1$.
the first bound is better, while for larger \( j \), the second bound is better. For all \( j \in [3, 6] \), we find \( \sqrt{a} - y < 16 \cdot 10^{-2j} \). From this, we deduce that
\[
10^{4j}(\sqrt{a} - y) = \frac{10^{4j}(a - y^2 - (\sqrt{a} - y)^2)}{2y} \geq \frac{[10^{4j}(a - y^2)] - 257}{2 \cdot 10^{-8}[10^j y + 1]} + \frac{1}{2}
\]
where we have replaced the bound \( 10^{4j}(16 \cdot 10^{-2j}) = 256 \) by 257 and extracted the corresponding term \( 1/(2 \cdot 10^{-8}[10^j y + 1]) \geq 1/2 \). Given that \( c \)-TimX’s integer division obeys \( \lfloor h/c \rfloor \leq h/c + 1/2 \), we deduce that \( 10^j z \leq 10^j (\sqrt{a} - y) \), hence \( y + z \leq \sqrt{a} \) is an underestimate of \( \sqrt{a} \), as claimed. One implementation detail: because the computation involves \(-#4\#4 - 2\#3\#5 - 2\#2\#6\) which may be as low as \(-5 \cdot 10^9\), we need to use the \texttt{pack\_big} functions, and the big shifts.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{cs\_new:Np} & \ \ \text{\_fp\_sqrt\_auxii\_o:NnnnnnnN} \ #1 \ #2\#3\#5\#6 \ #7\#8\#9 \\
\{ & \\
\exp\_after:wN \ #1 \\
\int\_value:w \ \_fp\_int\_eval:w \ c\_fp\_big\_leading\_shift_int \\
+ \#7 * -\#2 * \#2 & \\
\exp\_after:wN \ \_fp\_pack\_big:NNNNN\text{w} \\
\int\_value:w \ \_fp\_int\_eval:w \ c\_fp\_big\_middle\_shift_int \\
- 2 * \#2 * \#3 & \\
\exp\_after:wN \ \_fp\_pack\_big:NNNNN\text{w} \\
\int\_value:w \ \_fp\_int\_eval:w \ c\_fp\_big\_middle\_shift_int \\
+ \#8 * -\#3 * \#3 - 2 * \#2 * \#4 & \\
\exp\_after:wN \ \_fp\_pack\_big:NNNNN\text{w} \\
\int\_value:w \ \_fp\_int\_eval:w \ c\_fp\_big\_middle\_shift_int \\
- 2 * \#3 * \#4 - 2 * \#2 * \#5 & \\
\exp\_after:wN \ \_fp\_pack\_big:NNNNN\text{w} \\
\int\_value:w \ \_fp\_int\_eval:w \ c\_fp\_big\_middle\_shift_int \\
+ \#9 000 0000 - \#4 * \#4 - 2 * \#3 * \#5 - 2 * \#2 * \#6 & \\
\exp\_after:wN \ \_fp\_pack\_big:NNNNN\text{w} \\
\int\_value:w \ \_fp\_int\_eval:w \ c\_fp\_big\_middle\_shift_int \\
- 2 * \#3 * \#4 - 2 * \#2 * \#5 & \\
\exp\_after:wN \ \_fp\_pack\_big:NNNNN\text{w} \\
\int\_value:w \ \_fp\_int\_eval:w \ c\_fp\_big\_middle\_shift_int \\
- \#5 * \#5 - 2 * \#4 * \#6 & \\
\exp\_after:wN \ \_fp\_pack\_big:NNNNN\text{w} \\
\int\_value:w \ \_fp\_int\_eval:w \ c\_fp\_big\_middle\_shift_int \\
- \#5 * \#5 - 2 * \#4 * \#6 & \\
\exp\_after:wN \ \_fp\_pack\_big:NNNNN\text{w} \\
\int\_value:w \ \_fp\_int\_eval:w \ c\_fp\_big\_middle\_shift_int \\
- \#6 * \#6 & \\
\%
- 257 \* 5000 0000 / (#2\#3 \+ 1) \+ 10 0000 0000 ; \\
\{#2\#3\#4\#5\#6 \ \{#7\#8\#9 \\
\}
\}
\end{align*}
\]
(End definition for \_fp\_sqrt\_auxii\_o:NnnnnnnN.)

We receive here the difference \( a - y^2 = d = \sum d_i \cdot 10^{-4i} \), as \( \langle d_2 \rangle \ldots \langle d_6 \rangle \), where each block has 4 digits, except \( \langle d_2 \rangle \). This function finds the largest \( j \leq 6 \) such that \( 10^{4j}(a - y^2) \leq 2 \cdot 10^9 \), then leaves an open parenthesis and the integer \( [10^{4j}(a - y^2)] \)
in an integer expression. The closing parenthesis is provided by the caller \_\_fp_sqrt_\-auxii_o:NnnnnnnN, which completes the expression

$$10^4 z = \left(\left(10^4 (a - y^2)\right) - 257\right) \cdot (0.5 \cdot 10^8) \div \left(10^8 y + 1\right)$$

for an estimate of $10^4 (\sqrt{a} - y)$. If $d_2 \geq 2$, $j = 3$ and the auxiv auxiliary receives $10^{12} z$. If $d_2 \leq 1$ but $10^4 d_2 + d_3 \geq 2$, $j = 4$ and the auxv auxiliary is called, and receives $10^{16} z$, and so on. In all those cases, the auxviii auxiliary is set up to add $z$ to $y$, then go back to the auxii step with continuation auxiii (the function we are currently describing). The maximum value of $j$ is 6, regardless of whether $10^{12} d_2 + 10^8 d_3 + 10^4 d_4 + d_5 \geq 1$. In this last case, we detect when $10^{24} z < 10^7$, which essentially means $\sqrt{a} - y \lesssim 10^{-17}$: once this threshold is reached, there is enough information to find the correctly rounded $\sqrt{a}$ with only one more call to \_\_fp_sqrt_auxii_o:NnnnnnnN. Note that the iteration cannot be stuck before reaching $j = 6$, because for $j < 6$, one has $2 \cdot 10^8 \leq 10^{2(j+1)}(a - y^2)$, hence

$$10^{4j} z \geq \frac{(20000 - 257)(0.5 \cdot 10^8)}{10^8 y + 1} \geq (20000 - 257) \cdot 0.5 > 0.$$
Simply add the two 8-digit blocks of \( z \), aligned to the last four of the five 4-digit blocks of \( y \), then call the \( \text{auxii} \) auxiliary to evaluate \( y'^2 = (y + z)^2 \).

At this stage, \( j = 6 \) and \( 10^{24} z < 10^7 \), hence

\[
10^7 + 1/2 > 10^{24} z + 1/2 \geq (10^{24}(a - y^2) - 258) \cdot (0.5 \cdot 10^8) / (10^8 y + 1),
\]

then \( 10^{24}(a - y^2) - 258 < 2(10^7 + 1/2)(y + 10^{-8}) \), and

\[
10^{24}(a - y^2) < (10^7 + 1290.5)(1 + 10^{-8})/2y < (10^7 + 1290.5)(1 + 10^{-7})(y + \sqrt{a}),
\]

which finally implies \( 0 \leq \sqrt{a} - y < 0.2 \cdot 10^{-16} \). In particular, \( y \) is an underestimate of \( \sqrt{a} \) and \( y + 0.5 \cdot 10^{-16} \) is a (strict) overestimate. There is at exactly one multiple \( m \) of \( 0.5 \cdot 10^{-16} \) in the interval \([y, y + 0.5 \cdot 10^{-16}]\); rather, only the last 4 digits \#8 of \( y \) are considered, and we do not perform any carry yet. The \( \text{auxxi} \) auxiliary sets up \( \text{auxii} \) with a continuation function \( \text{auxxii} \) instead of \( \text{auxiii} \) as before.

To prevent \( \text{auxii} \) from giving a negative results \( a - m^2 \), we compute \( a + 10^{-16} - m^2 \) instead, always positive since \( m < \sqrt{a} + 0.5 \cdot 10^{-16} \) and \( a \leq 1 - 10^{-16} \).
The difference $0 \leq a + 10^{-16} - m^2 \leq 10^{-16} + (\sqrt{a} - m)(\sqrt{a} + m) \leq 2 \cdot 10^{-16}$ was just computed: its first 8 digits vanish, as do the next four, $#1$, and most of the following four, $#2$. The guess $m$ is an overestimate if $a + 10^{-16} - m^2 < 10^{-16}$, that is, $#1#2$ vanishes. Otherwise it is an underestimate, unless $a + 10^{-16} - m^2 = 10^{-16}$ exactly. For an underestimate, call the auxxiv function with argument 9998. For an exact result call it with 9999, and for an overestimate call it with 10000.

This receives 9998, 9999 or 10000 as $#1$ when $m$ is an underestimate, exact, or an overestimate, respectively. Then comes $m$ as five blocks of 4 digits, but where the last block $#6$ may be 0, 5000, or 10000. In the latter case, we need to add a carry, unless $m$ is an overestimate ($#1$ is then 10000). Then comes $a$ as three arguments. Rounding is done by \_\_fp\_round:NNN, whose first argument is the final sign (square roots are positive). We fake its second argument. It should be the last digit kept, but this is only used when ties are “rounded to even”, and only when the result is exactly half-way between two representable numbers rational square roots of numbers with 16 significant digits have: this situation never arises for the square root, as any exact square root of a 16 digit number has at most 8 significant digits. Finally, the last argument is the next digit, possibly shifted by 1 when there are further nonzero digits. This is achieved by \_\_fp\_round\_digit:Nw, which receives (after removal of the 10000's digit) one of 0000, 0001, 4999, 5000, 5001, or 9999, which it converts to 0, 1, 4, 5, 6, and 9, respectively.
About the sign and exponent

The exponent of a normal number is its \textit{exponent} minus one.

Find the sign of the floating point: \texttt{nan}, +0, -0, +1 or -1.
This function is used for the unary minus and for \texttt{abs}. It leaves the sign of \texttt{nan} invariant, turns negative numbers (sign 2) to positive numbers (sign 0) and positive numbers (sign 0) to positive or negative numbers depending on \#1. It also expands after itself in the input stream, just like \texttt{__fp_set_sign\_o:w}.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_set_sign\_o:w #1 \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #2#3#4; @
\exp_after:wN \__fp_exp_after\_o:w
\exp_after:wN \s__fp
\exp_after:wN \__fp_chk:w
\exp_after:wN #2
\int_value:w
\if_case:w #3 \exp_stop_f: #1 \or: 1 \or: 0 \fi: \exp_stop_f:
#4;
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\__fp_set_sign\_o:w}.)

\subsection*{72.6 Operations on tuples}

Two cases: \texttt{abs(⟨tuple⟩)} for which \#1 is 0 (invalid for tuples) and \texttt{-(tuple)} for which \#1 is 2. In that case, map over all items in the tuple an auxiliary that dispatches to the type-appropriate sign-flipping function.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_tuple_set_sign\_o:w #1
\if_meaning:w 2 #1 \exp_after:wN \__fp_tuple_set_sign\_aux\_o:Nnw \fi:
\__fp_invalid_operation\_o:nw { abs }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\__fp_tuple_set_sign\_o:w}, \texttt{\__fp_tuple_set_sign\_aux\_o:Nnw}, and \texttt{\__fp_tuple_\_set_sign\_aux\_o:w}.)

\subsection*{Tuple arithmetic}

For \langle \textit{number}\rangle\ast\langle \textit{tuple}\rangle and \langle \textit{tuple}\rangle\ast\langle \textit{number}\rangle and \langle \textit{tuple}\rangle/\langle \textit{number}\rangle, loop through the \langle \textit{tuple}\rangle some code that multiplies or divides by the appropriate \langle \textit{number}\rangle. Importantly we need to dispatch according to the type, and we make sure to apply the operator in the correct order.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:cpn { __fp_\_tuple\_o:ww } #1 ;
\cs_new:cpn { __fp_tuple\_\_o:ww } #1 ; #2;
\cs_new:cpn { __fp_tuple\_map\_o:nw } \__fp_binary_type\_o:Nw * #1 ; \}
\cs_new:cpn { __fp_tuple\_\_o:ww } #1 ; #2;
\cs_new:cpn { __fp_tuple\_map\_o:nw } \__fp_binary_rev_type\_o:Nw * #2 ; \}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\_fp_\_tuple\_o:ww}, \texttt{\_fp_tuple\_\_o:ww}, and \texttt{\_fp_tuple/\_o:ww}.)

1087
\__fp_tuple_+_tuple_o:ww
\__fp_tuple_-_tuple_o:ww

Check the two tuples have the same number of items and map through these a helper that dispatches appropriately depending on the types. This means \((1,2)+((1,1),2)\) gives \((\text{nan},4)\).

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__fp_tmp:w #1
  { \cs_new:cpn { __fp_tuple_#1_tuple_o:ww } \s__fp_tuple \__fp_tuple_chk:w ##1 ; \s__fp_tuple \__fp_tuple_chk:w ##2 ;
    \int_compare:nNnTF { \__fp_array_count:n {##1} } = { \__fp_array_count:n {##2} } { \__fp_tuple_mapthread_o:nww { \__fp_binary_type_o:Nww #1 } } { \__fp_invalid_operation_o:nww #1 } \s__fp_tuple \__fp_tuple_chk:w {##1} ; \s__fp_tuple \__fp_tuple_chk:w {##2} ;
  }
\__fp_tmp:w +
\__fp_tmp:w -
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__fp_tuple_+_tuple_o:ww and \__fp_tuple_-_tuple_o:ww.)

\package
Chapter 73

l3fp-extended implementation

73.1 Description of fixed point numbers

This module provides a few functions to manipulate positive floating point numbers with extended precision (24 digits), but mostly provides functions for fixed-point numbers with this precision (24 digits). Those are used in the computation of Taylor series for the logarithm, exponential, and trigonometric functions. Since we eventually only care about the 16 first digits of the final result, some of the calculations are not performed with the full 24-digit precision. In other words, the last two blocks of each fixed point number may be wrong as long as the error is small enough to be rounded away when converting back to a floating point number. The fixed point numbers are expressed as

\[ \langle a_1 \rangle \{ \langle a_2 \rangle \{ \langle a_3 \rangle \{ \langle a_4 \rangle \{ \langle a_5 \rangle \{ \langle a_6 \rangle \} ; \]

where each \( \langle a_i \rangle \) is exactly 4 digits (ranging from 0000 to 9999), except \( \langle a_1 \rangle \), which may be any “not-too-large” non-negative integer, with or without leading zeros. Here, “not-too-large” depends on the specific function (see the corresponding comments for details). Checking for overflow is the responsibility of the code calling those functions. The fixed point number \( a \) corresponding to the representation above is \( a = \sum_{i=1}^{6} \langle a_i \rangle \cdot 10^{-4i} \).

Most functions we define here have the form

\[
\_\_fp_fixed_(calculation):wn (operand_1) ; (operand_2) ; \{ (continuation) \}
\]

They perform the \( (calculation) \) on the two \( (operands) \), then feed the result (6 brace groups followed by a semicolon) to the \( (continuation) \), responsible for the next step of the calculation. Some functions only accept an N-type \( (continuation) \). This allows constructions such as

\[
\_\_fp_fixed_add:wn \{ (X_1) \} ; (X_2) ;
\_\_fp_fixed_mul:wn \{ (X_3) \} ;
\_\_fp_fixed_add:wn \{ (X_4) \} ;
\]
to compute \((X_1 + X_2) \cdot X_3 + X_4\). This turns out to be very appropriate for computing continued fractions and Taylor series.

At the end of the calculation, the result is turned back to a floating point number using `__fp_fixed_to_float:wN`. This function has to change the exponent of the floating point number: it must be used after starting an integer expression for the overall exponent of the result.

### 73.2 Helpers for numbers with extended precision

**\c__fp_one_fixed_tl** The fixed-point number 1, used in l3fp-expo.

```latex
\tl_const:Nn \c__fp_one_fixed_tl
\{ \{10000\} \{0000\} \{0000\} \{0000\} \{0000\} \};
```

(End definition for \c__fp_one_fixed_tl.)

**\__fp_fixed_continue:wn** This function simply calls the next function.

```latex
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_fixed_continue:wn \#1; \#2 { \#2 \#1; }
```

(End definition for \__fp_fixed_continue:wn.)

**\__fp_fixed_add_one:wN**

\(\__fp_fixed_add_one:wN \langle a \rangle; \) \(\langle \text{continuation} \rangle\)

This function adds 1 to the fixed point \(\langle a \rangle\), by changing \(a_1 + 10000 \cdot a_1\), then calls the \(\langle \text{continuation} \rangle\). This requires \(a_1 + 10000 < 2^{31}\).

```latex
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_fixed_add_one:wN #1#2; #3
{ \exp_after:wN #3 \exp_after:wN \int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w \c__fp_myriad_int + #1 \#2 \#3 \};
```

(End definition for \__fp_fixed_add_one:wN.)

**\__fp_fixed_div_myriad:wn** Divide a fixed point number by 10000. This is a little bit more subtle than just removing the last group and adding a leading group of zeros: the first group \#1 may have any number of digits, and we must split \#1 into the new first group and a second group of exactly 4 digits. The choice of shifts allows \#1 to be in the range \([0, 5 \cdot 10^8 - 1]\).

```latex
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_fixed_div_myriad:wn \#1#2#3#4#5#6; 
{ \exp_after:wN \__fp_fixed_mul_after:wwn \\int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w \c__fp_leading_shift_int 
\exp_after:wN \__fp_pack:NNNNNw \\int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w \c__fp_trailing_shift_int 
+ #1 \#2 \#3 \#4 \#5 \#6; }
```

(End definition for \__fp_fixed_div_myriad:wn.)

**\__fp_fixed_mul_after:wwn** The fixed point operations which involve multiplication end by calling this auxiliary. It braces the last block of digits, and places the \(\langle \text{continuation} \rangle\) \#3 in front.

```latex
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_fixed_mul_after:wwn \#1; \#2; \#3 \{ \#3 \#1 \#2; }
```

(End definition for \__fp_fixed_mul_after:wwn.)
73.3 Multiplying a fixed point number by a short one

\__fp_fixed_mul_short:ww\n
\__(a_1)\ (a_2)\ (a_3)\ (a_4)\ (a_5)\ (a_6)\ ;
\__(b_0)\ (b_1)\ (b_2)\ ; \{\text{continuation}\}

Computes the product \(c = ab\) of \(a = \sum_i (a_i)10^{-4i}\) and \(b = \sum_i (b_i)10^{-4i}\), rounds it to the closest multiple of \(10^{-24}\), and leaves \{continuation\} \{(c_1)\} \ldots \{(c_6)\} ; in the input stream, where each of the \(c_i\) are blocks of 4 digits, except \(c_1\), which is any \TeX integer. Note that indices for \{(b)\} start at 0: for instance a second operand of \{0001\}{0000}{0000} leaves the first operand unchanged (rather than dividing it by \(10^4\), as \__fp_fixed_mul:ww would).

\texttt{\textbackslash cs new\textbackslash Np n \textbackslash _fp_fixed_mul_short:ww n \#1\#2\#3\#4\#5\#6; \#7\#8\#9;}
\texttt{\{}
\texttt{\textbackslash exp after\textbackslash w \textbackslash _fp_fixed_mul_after:ww n}
\texttt{\int value\textbackslash w \textbackslash _fp_int_eval\textbackslash w \textbackslash c\textunderscore fp\textunderscore leading\textunderscore shift\textbackslash int + \#1\#7}
\texttt{\textbackslash exp after\textbackslash w \textbackslash _fp_pack\textbackslash NNNNNw}
\texttt{\int value\textbackslash w \textbackslash _fp_int_eval\textbackslash w \textbackslash c\textunderscore fp\textunderscore middle\textunderscore shift\textbackslash int + \#1\#8 + \#2\#7}
\texttt{\textbackslash exp after\textbackslash w \textbackslash _fp_pack\textbackslash NNNNNw}
\texttt{\int value\textbackslash w \textbackslash _fp_int_eval\textbackslash w \textbackslash c\textunderscore fp\textunderscore middle\textbackslash shift\textbackslash int + \#1\#9 + \#2\#8 + \#3\#7}
\texttt{\textbackslash exp after\textbackslash w \textbackslash _fp_pack\textbackslash NNNNNw}
\texttt{\int value\textbackslash w \textbackslash _fp_int_eval\textbackslash w \textbackslash c\textunderscore fp\textunderscore middle\textbackslash shift\textbackslash int + \#2\#9 + \#3\#8 + \#4\#7}
\texttt{\textbackslash exp after\textbackslash w \textbackslash _fp_pack\textbackslash NNNNNw}
\texttt{\int value\textbackslash w \textbackslash _fp_int_eval\textbackslash w \textbackslash c\textunderscore fp\textunderscore middle\textbackslash shift\textbackslash int + \#3\#9 + \#4\#8 + \#5\#7}
\texttt{\textbackslash exp after\textbackslash w \textbackslash _fp_pack\textbackslash NNNNNw}
\texttt{\int value\textbackslash w \textbackslash _fp_int_eval\textbackslash w \textbackslash c\textunderscore fp\textunderscore trailing\textunderscore shift\textbackslash int + \#4\#9 + \#5\#8 + \#6\#7}
\texttt{+ ( \#5\#9 + \#6\#8 + \#6\#9 / \textbackslash c\textunderscore fp\textunderscore myriad\textunderscore int ) / \textbackslash c\textunderscore fp\textunderscore myriad\textunderscore int ; ;}
\texttt{\}}

(End definition for \__fp_fixed_mul_short:ww.)

73.4 Dividing a fixed point number by a small integer

\__fp_fixed_div_int:wwN
\__fp_fixed_div_int:wnN
\__fp_fixed_div_int_auxi:wnn
\__fp_fixed_div_int_auxii:wnn
\__fp_fixed_div_int_pack:Nw
\__fp_fixed_div_int_after:Nw
\__fp_fixed_div_int:wwN
\__(a)\ ; \{n\} ; \{\text{continuation}\}

Divides the fixed point number \(a\) by the (small) integer \(0 < \langle n\rangle < 10^4\) and feeds the result to the \{continuation\}. There is no bound on \(a_1\).

The arguments of the i auxiliary are 1: one of the \(a_i\), 2: \(n\), 3: the ii or the iii auxiliary. It computes a (somewhat tight) lower bound \(Q_i\) for the ratio \(a_i/n\).

The ii auxiliary receives \(Q_i\), \(n\), and \(a_i\) as arguments. It adds \(Q_i\) to a surrounding integer expression, and starts a new one with the initial value 9999, which ensures that the result of this expression has 5 digits. The auxiliary also computes \(a_i - n \cdot Q_i\), placing the result in front of the 4 digits of \(a_i+1\). The resulting \(a_i+1 = 10^4(a_i - n \cdot Q_i) + a_i+1\) serves as the first argument for a new call to the i auxiliary.

When the iii auxiliary is called, the situation looks like this:
where expansion is happening from the last line up. The \textit{iii} auxiliary adds $Q_6 + 2 \approx a_6/n + 1$ to the last 9999, giving the integer closest to $10000 + a_6/n$.

Each \textit{pack} auxiliary receives 5 digits followed by a semicolon. The first digit is added as a carry to the integer expression above, and the 4 other digits are braced. Each call to the \textit{pack} auxiliary thus produces one brace group. The last brace group is produced by the \textit{after} auxiliary, which places the \textit{continuation} as appropriate.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_fixed_div_int:wwN #1#2#3#4#5#6 ; #7 ; #8 
{ \exp_after:wN \__fp_fixed_div_int_after:Nw \int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w - 1 \__fp_fixed_div_int:wnN #1; {#7} \__fp_fixed_div_int_auxi:wnn #2; {#7} \__fp_fixed_div_int_auxi:wnn #3; {#7} \__fp_fixed_div_int_auxi:wnn #4; {#7} \__fp_fixed_div_int_auxi:wnn #5; {#7} \__fp_fixed_div_int_auxi:wnn #6; {#7} \__fp_fixed_div_int_auxii:wnn ; }
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_fixed_div_int:wnN #1; #2 #3 
{ \exp_after:wN \__fp_fixed_div_int_after:Nw \int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w #1 / #2 - 1 ; {#2} {#1} }
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_fixed_div_int_auxi:wnn #1; #2 #3 
{ + #1 \exp_after:wN \__fp_fixed_div_int_pack:Nw \int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w 9999 \exp_after:wN \__fp_fixed_div_int:wnN \int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w #3 - #1*#2 \__fp_int_eval_end: }
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_fixed_div_int_auxii:wnn #1; #2 #3 { + #1 + 2 ; }
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_fixed_div_int_pack:Nw #1 #2; { + #1; {#2} }
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_fixed_div_int_after:Nw #1 #2; { #1 {#2} }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\_fp\_fixed\_div\_int:wwN} and others.)

\subsection{Adding and subtracting fixed points}

\begin{verbatim}
\__fp_fixed_add:wn (a) ; (b) ; {\langle\textit{continuation}\rangle}
\__fp_fixed_sub:wn
\__fp_fixed_add:Nnnnnwnn
\__fp_fixed_add:nnNnnnwn
\__fp_fixed_add_pack:NnnnNnnn
\__fp_fixed_add_after:NnnnNnnn
\end{verbatim}

73.5 Adding and subtracting fixed points
Computes \(a + b\) (resp. \(a - b\)) and feeds the result to the \(\langle \text{continuation} \rangle\). This function requires \(0 \leq a_1, b_1 \leq 114748\); its result must be positive (this happens automatically for addition) and its first group must have at most 5 digits: \((a \pm b)_1 < 100000\). The two functions only differ by a sign, hence use a common auxiliary. It would be nice to grab the 12 brace groups in one go; only 9 parameters are allowed. Start by grabbing the sign, \(a_1, \ldots, a_4\), the rest of \(a\), and \(b_1\) and \(b_2\). The second auxiliary receives the rest of \(a\), the sign multiplying \(b\), the rest of \(b\), and the \(\langle \text{continuation} \rangle\) as arguments. After going down through the various level, we go back up, packing digits and bringing the \(\langle \text{continuation} \rangle\) \((\#8, \text{then} \#7)\) from the end of the argument list to its start.

\[
\text{\texttt{\textbackslash cs new:Npn \_fp_fixed_add:wwn}} \{ \_fp_fixed_add:Nnnnnwnn + \}
\]
\[
\text{\texttt{\textbackslash cs new:Npn \_fp_fixed_sub:wwn}} \{ \_fp_fixed_add:Nnnnnwnn - \}
\]
\[
\text{\texttt{\textbackslash cs new:Npn \_fp_fixed_add:Nnnnnwnn}} \ #1 \ #2\#3\#4\#5 \ #6; \ #7\#8
\]
\[
\text{\texttt{\exp after:wn \_fp_fixed_add_after:NNNNWn}}
\]
\[
\text{\texttt{\int value:w \_fp_int_eval:w 9 \#9999 \#9998 + \#2\#3 \ #1 \ #7\#8}}
\]
\[
\text{\texttt{\exp after:wn \_fp_fixed_add_pack:NNNNWn}}
\]
\[
\text{\texttt{\int value:w \_fp_int_eval:w 1 \#9999 \#9998 + \#4\#5}}
\]
\[
\text{\texttt{\_fp_fixed_add:nnnnnnnn}} \ #6 \ #1
\]
\[
\text{\texttt{\exp after:wn \_fp_fixed_add_pack:NNNNWn}}
\]
\[
\text{\texttt{\int value:w \_fp_int_eval:w 2 \#9999 \#9998 + \#3 \ #4\#5 \ #6\#7 \ #8}}
\]
\[
\text{\texttt{\_fp_fixed_add:nnnnnnnn}} \ #1\#2 \ #3 \ #4\#5 \ #6\#7 \ ; \ #8
\]
\[
\text{\texttt{\exp after:wn \_fp_fixed_add_pack:NNNNWn}}
\]
\[
\text{\texttt{\int value:w \_fp_int_eval:w \#3 \ #6\#7 + \#1\#2 \ ; \ (#8)}}
\]
\[
\text{\texttt{\_fp_fixed_add:nnnnnnnn}} \ #1 \ #2\#3\#4\#5 \ #6 \ ; \ #7
\]
\[
\text{\texttt{\exp after:wn \_fp_fixed_add_pack:NNNNWn}}
\]
\[
\text{\texttt{\int value:w \_fp_int_eval:w \#1 \ #2\#3\#4\#5 \ #6 \ ; \ #7}}
\]
\[
\text{\texttt{\_fp_fixed_add:nnnnnnnn}} \ #1 \ #2\#3\#4\#5 \ #6 \}
\]

(End definition for \_fp_fixed_add:wwn and others.)

### 73.6 Multiplying fixed points

\[
\text{\texttt{\_fp_fixed_mul:wwn}} \ (a); (b); \{\langle \text{continuation} \rangle\}
\]

Computes \(a \times b\) and feeds the result to \(\langle \text{continuation} \rangle\). This function requires \(0 \leq a_1, b_1 < 10000\). Once more, we need to play around the limit of 9 arguments for \LaTeX\ macros. Note that we don’t need to obtain an exact rounding, contrarily to the \* operator, so things could be harder. We wish to perform carries in

\[
a \times b = a_1 \cdot b_1 \cdot 10^{-8} \\
\hspace{1cm} + (a_1 \cdot b_2 + a_2 \cdot b_1) \cdot 10^{-12} \\
\hspace{1cm} + (a_1 \cdot b_3 + a_2 \cdot b_2 + a_3 \cdot b_1) \cdot 10^{-16} \\
\hspace{1cm} + (a_1 \cdot b_4 + a_2 \cdot b_3 + a_3 \cdot b_2 + a_4 \cdot b_1) \cdot 10^{-20} \\
\hspace{1cm} + \left( a_2 \cdot b_4 + a_3 \cdot b_3 + a_4 \cdot b_2 \\
\hspace{2cm} + a_3 \cdot b_4 + a_4 \cdot b_3 + a_1 \cdot b_6 + a_2 \cdot b_5 + a_5 \cdot b_2 + a_6 \cdot b_1 \right) \cdot 10^4 \\
\hspace{1cm} + a_1 \cdot b_5 + a_5 \cdot b_1 \right) \cdot 10^{-24} + O(10^{-24}),
\]
where the \(O(10^{-24})\) stands for terms which are at most \(5 \cdot 10^{-24}\), ignoring those leads to an error of at most 5 ulp. Note how the first 15 terms only depend on \(a_1, \ldots, a_4\) and \(b_1, \ldots, b_4\), while the last 6 terms only depend on \(a_1, a_2, a_5, a_6\), and the corresponding parts of \(b\). Hence, the first function grabs \(a_1, \ldots, a_4\), the rest of \(a\), and \(b_1, \ldots, b_4\), and writes the 15 first terms of the expression, including a left parenthesis for the fraction. The \(i\) auxiliary receives \(a_5, a_6, b_1, b_2, a_1, a_2, b_5, b_6\) and finally the \(\langle\text{continuation}\rangle\) as arguments. It writes the end of the expression, including the right parenthesis and the denominator of the fraction. The \(\langle\text{continuation}\rangle\) is finally placed in front of the 6 brace groups by \texttt{__fp\_fixed\_mul\_after:wwn}.

\begin{verbatim}
cs_new:Npn \__fp\_fixed\_mul:wwn \#1\#2\#3\#4 \#5; \#6\#7\#8\#9 
  { \exp_after:wN \__fp\_fixed\_mul\_after:wwn \int_value:w \__fp\_int\_eval:w \c__fp\_leading\_shift\_int 
  \exp_after:wN \__fp\_pack:NNNNNW \int_value:w \__fp\_int\_eval:w \c__fp\_middle\_shift\_int 
  + \#1*\#6 \exp_after:wN \__fp\_pack:NNNNNW \int_value:w \__fp\_int\_eval:w \c__fp\_middle\_shift\_int 
  + \#1*\#7 + \#2*\#6 \exp_after:wN \__fp\_pack:NNNNNW \int_value:w \__fp\_int\_eval:w \c__fp\_middle\_shift\_int 
  + \#1*\#8 + \#2*\#7 + \#3*\#6 \exp_after:wN \__fp\_pack:NNNNNW \int_value:w \__fp\_int\_eval:w \c__fp\_middle\_shift\_int 
  + \#1*\#9 + \#2*\#8 + \#3*\#7 + \#4*\#6 \exp_after:wN \__fp\_pack:NNNNNW \int_value:w \__fp\_int\_eval:w \c__fp\_trailing\_shift\_int 
  + \#1*\#9 + \#2*\#8 + \#3*\#7 + \#4*\#6 \exp_after:wN \__fp\_pack:NNNNNW \int_value:w \__fp\_int\_eval:w \c__fp\_myriad\_int 
  + \#1*\#9 + \#2*\#8 + \#3*\#7 + \#4*\#6 \}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\__fp\_fixed\_mul:wwn} and \texttt{\__fp\_fixed\_mul:nnnnnww}).

### 73.7 Combining product and sum of fixed points

\texttt{\__fp\_fixed\_mul\_add:wwn} \(a\) ; \(b\) ; \(c\) ; \{\text{continuation}\}
\texttt{\__fp\_fixed\_mul\_sub\_back:wwn} \(a\) ; \(b\) ; \(c\) ; \{\text{continuation}\}
\texttt{\__fp\_fixed\_one\_minus\_mul:wwn} \(a\) ; \(b\) ; \{\text{continuation}\}

Sometimes called FMA (fused multiply-add), these functions compute \(a \times b + c\), \(c - a \times b\), and \(1 - a \times b\) and feed the result to the \(\langle\text{continuation}\rangle\). Those functions require \(0 \leq a_1, b_1, c_1 \leq 10000\). Since those functions are at the heart of the computation of Taylor expansions, we over-optimize them a bit, and in particular we do not factor out the common parts of the three functions.
For definiteness, consider the task of computing \( a \times b + c \). We perform carries in
\[
\begin{align*}
a \times b + c &= (a_1 \cdot b_1 + c_1c_2) \cdot 10^{-8} \\
&\quad + (a_1 \cdot b_2 + a_2 \cdot b_1) \cdot 10^{-12} \\
&\quad + (a_1 \cdot b_3 + a_2 \cdot b_2 + a_3 \cdot b_1 + c_3c_4) \cdot 10^{-16} \\
&\quad + (a_1 \cdot b_4 + a_2 \cdot b_3 + a_3 \cdot b_2 + a_4 \cdot b_1) \cdot 10^{-20} \\
&\quad + \left( a_2 \cdot b_4 + a_3 \cdot b_3 + a_4 \cdot b_2 \\
&\quad + \frac{a_1 \cdot b_4 + a_4 \cdot b_3 + a_1 \cdot b_6 + a_2 \cdot b_5 + a_5 \cdot b_2 + a_6 \cdot b_1}{10^4} \\
&\quad + a_1 \cdot b_5 + a_5 \cdot b_1 + c_5c_6 \right) \cdot 10^{-24} + O(10^{-24}),
\end{align*}
\]
where \( c_1c_2, c_3c_4, c_5c_6 \) denote the 8-digit number obtained by juxtaposing the two blocks of digits of \( c \), and \( \cdot \) denotes multiplication. The task is obviously tough because we have 18 brace groups in front of us.

Each of the three functions starts the first two levels (the first, corresponding to \( 10^{-4} \), is empty), with \( c_1c_2 \) in the first level, calls the \( \text{auxiliary} \) with arguments described later, and adds a trailing \( + c_5c_6 \); \{\{\text{continuation}\}\};. The \( + c_5c_6 \) piece, which is omitted for \( \text{\_\_fp_fixed_one_minus_mul:wwn} \), is taken in the integer expression for the \( 10^{-24} \) level.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_fixed_mul_add:wwwn #1; #2; #3#4#5#6#7#8; { \exp_after:wN \_\_fp_fixed_mul_after:wwn \int_value:w \_\_fp_int_eval:w \c__fp_big_leading_shift_int \exp_after:wN \_\_fp_pack_big:NNNNNNw \int_value:w \_\_fp_int_eval:w \c__fp_big_middle_shift_int + #3 #4 \_\_fp_fixed_mul_add:Nwnnnwnnn + \#5 \#6 ; \#2 ; \#1 ; \#2 ; + \#7 \#8 ; ; }
\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_fixed_mul_sub_back:wwwn #1; #2; #3#4#5#6#7#8; { \exp_after:wN \_\_fp_fixed_mul_after:wwn \int_value:w \_\_fp_int_eval:w \c__fp_big_leading_shift_int \exp_after:wN \_\_fp_pack_big:NNNNNNw \int_value:w \_\_fp_int_eval:w \c__fp_big_middle_shift_int + #3 \#4 \_\_fp_fixed_mul_add:Nwnnnwnnn - \+ \#5 \#6 ; \#2 ; \#1 ; \#2 ; - \+ \#7 \#8 ; ; }
\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_fixed_one_minus_mul:wwn #1; #2; { \exp_after:wN \_\_fp_fixed_mul_after:wwn \int_value:w \_\_fp_int_eval:w \c__fp_big_leading_shift_int \exp_after:wN \_\_fp_pack_big:NNNNNNw \int_value:w \_\_fp_int_eval:w \c__fp_big_middle_shift_int + \#3 \#4 \_\_fp_fixed_mul_add:Nwnnnwnnn - 1 0000 0000 \_\_fp_fixed_mul_add:Nwnnnwnnn - \+ \#2 ; \#1 ; \#2 ; - \+ \#7 \#8 ; ; }
\end{verbatim}
Expressions was inserted by the \( \{ #7 + #4 \times #8 + #3 \times #9 + #2 \} \)

\[ \exp_after:wN \__fp_pack_big:NNNNNNw \]
\[ ( #1 \times #9 + #2 \times #8 + #3 \times #7 + #4 \times #6 ) \]
\[ \exp_after:wN \__fp_pack_big:NNNNNNw \]
\[ \exp_after:wN \__fp_int_eval:w \c__fp_big_middle_shift_int \]
\[ \int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w \c__fp_big_middle_shift_int \]
\[ \exp_after:wN \__fp_pack_big:NNNNNNw \]
\[ #1 \times #7 \times #3 \]
\[ \exp_after:wN \__fp_int_eval:w \c__fp_big_middle_shift_int \]
\[ \exp_after:wN \__fp_int_eval:w \c__fp_big_middle_shift_int \]
\[ \exp_after:wN \__fp_int_eval:w \c__fp_big_middle_shift_int \]
\[ #1 \times #7 \times #3 \times #8 \times #4 \times #1 \times #9 \times #3 \times #2 \]
\[ \exp_after:wN \__fp_int_eval:w \c__fp_big_middle_shift_int \]
\[ \exp_after:wN \__fp_int_eval:w \c__fp_big_middle_shift_int \]
\[ \exp_after:wN \__fp_int_eval:w \c__fp_big_middle_shift_int \]
\[ #1 \times \__fp_fixed_mul_add:nmannnnn \{ #7 \times #8 \times #9 \} \]

Level \( 10^{-20} \) is \( (a_1 \cdot b_4 + a_2 \cdot b_3 + a_3 \cdot b_2 + a_4 \cdot b_1) \), multiplied by the sign, which was inserted by the \( i \) auxiliary. Then we prepare level \( 10^{-24} \). We don’t have access to all parts of \( \langle a \rangle \) and \( \langle b \rangle \) needed to make all products. Instead, we prepare the partial expressions

\[ b_1 + a_4 \cdot b_2 + a_3 \cdot b_3 + a_2 \cdot b_4 + a_1 \]
\[ b_2 + a_4 \cdot b_3 + a_3 \cdot b_4 + a_2. \]

Obviously, those expressions make no mathematical sense: we complete them with \( a_5 \cdot b_5 \) and \( \cdot b_5 \), and with \( a_6 \cdot b_1 + a_5 \cdot b_5 + a_1 \cdot b_6 \), and of course with the trailing \( + c_5 \).
End definition for \_fp\_fixed\_mul\_add:nnnnwnnnn
\_fp\_fixed\_mul\_add:nnnnwnnnwN \{\text{(partial}\_1)\}\{\text{(partial}\_2)\}
\{\langle a_1\rangle\}\{\langle a_2\rangle\};\{\langle b_1\rangle\}\{\langle b_2\rangle\};
\langle op\rangle + \langle c_5\rangle \langle c_6\rangle;

Complete the \text{(partial}\_1) and \text{(partial}\_2) expressions as explained for the \text{ii} auxiliary.
The second one is divided by 10000: this is the carry from \text{level 10}^{-28}. The \text{trailing} + c_5c_6 is taken into the expression for \text{level 10}^{-24}. Note that the total of \text{level 10}^{-24} is in the interval \([-5 \cdot 10^8, 6 \cdot 10^8\) (give or take a couple of 10000), hence adding it to the shift gives a 10-digit number, as expected by the packing auxiliaries. See 13fp-aux for the definition of the shifts and packing auxiliaries.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp\_fixed\_mul\_add:nnnnwnnnwN #1#2 #3#4#5; #6#7#8; #9
\{
\exp_after:wN \__fp\_fixed\_mul\_add:nnnnwnnnwN \#1#2 #3#4#5; #6#7#8; #9
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp\_fixed\_mul\_add:nnnnwnnnwN #1#2 { #9 (#4* #1 *#7)
\#9 (#5*#6+#4* #2 *#7+#3*#8) / \c__fp\_myriad\_int
\}
\end{verbatim}

\textit{73.8 Extended-precision floating point numbers}

In this section we manipulate floating point numbers with roughly 24 significant figures ("extended-precision" numbers, in short, "ep"), which take the form of an integer exponent, followed by a comma, then six groups of digits, ending with a semicolon. The first group of digit may be any non-negative integer, while other groups of digits have 4 digits. In other words, an extended-precision number is an exponent ending in a comma, then a fixed point number. The corresponding value is \(0.\langle\text{digits}\rangle \cdot 10^{\langle\text{exponent}\rangle}\). This convention differs from floating points.

Converting an extended-precision number with an exponent at most 4 and a first block less than \(10^8\) to a fixed point number whose first block has 12 digits, hopefully starting with many zeros.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp\_ep\_to\_fixed:wwn #1,#2
\{
\exp_after:wN \__fp\_ep\_to\_fixed:wwn \#1#2
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp\_ep\_to\_fixed:wwn #1; #2; #3#4#5#6; #7
\{
\__fp\_pack\_eight:wNNNNNNNN
\__fp\_pack\_twice\_four:wNNNNNN
\__fp\_pack\_twice\_four:wNNNNNN
\__fp\_ep\_to\_fixed\_auxii:nnnnwnnnwN ;
\#2 \#1\#3\#4\#5\#6\#7 0000 !
\}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \_fp\_fixed\_mul\_add:nnnnwnnnwN)
Normalize an extended-precision number. More precisely, leading zeros are removed from the mantissa of the argument, decreasing its exponent as appropriate. Then the digits are packed into 6 groups of 4 (discarding any remaining digit, not rounding). Finally, the continuation \#8 is placed before the resulting exponent–mantissa pair. The input exponent may in fact be given as an integer expression. The loop auxiliary grabs a digit: if it is 0, decrement the exponent and continue looping, and otherwise call the end auxiliary, which places all digits in the right order (the digit that was not 0, and any remaining digits), followed by some 0, then packs them up neatly in $3 \times 2 = 6$ blocks of four. At the end of the day, remove with \_fp_use_i:ww any digit that did not make it in the final mantissa (typically only zeros, unless the original first block has more than 4 digits).

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_fp_ep_to_ep:wwN #1,#2#3#4#5#6#7; #8
\{ \exp_after:wN #8 \exp_after:wN \__fp_int_eval:w \int_value:w \_fp_int_eval:w #1 + 4 \exp_after:wN \use_i:nn \exp_after:wN \_fp_ep_to_ep_loop:N \int_value:w \_fp_int_eval:w 1 0000 0000 + #2 \_fp_int_eval_end: \_fp_ep_to_ep_zero:ww \fi: \_fp_ep_to_ep_loop:N \_fp_ep_to_ep_end:ww ; ; ! \}
\cs_new:Npn \_fp_ep_to_ep_loop:N #1
\{ \if_meaning:w 0 #1 - 1 \else: \_fp_ep_to_ep_end:ww \_fp_ep_to_ep_loop:N \fi: \_fp_ep_to_ep_loop:N \_fp_ep_to_ep_end:ww \}
\cs_new:Npn \_fp_ep_to_ep_end:ww
\_fp_ep_to_ep_zero:ww \fi: \_fp_ep_to_ep_loop:N #1 \_fp_ep_to_ep_loop:N #2; #3!
\{ \_fp_ep_to_ep_zero:ww \fi: \_fp_ep_to_ep_zero:ww \fi: \_fp_ep_to_ep_end:ww \}
\cs_new:Npn \_fp_ep_compare:wwww #1,#2#3#4#5#6#7;
\{ \_fp_ep_compare_aux:wwww \}
\end{verbatim}

In \texttt{l3fp-trig} we need to compare two extended-precision numbers. This is based on the same function for positive floating point numbers, with an extra test if comparing only 16 decimals is not enough to distinguish the numbers. Note that this function only works if the numbers are normalized so that their first block is in [1000, 9999].
Multiply two extended-precision numbers: first normalize them to avoid losing too much precision, then multiply the mantissas \#2 and \#4 as fixed point numbers, and sum the exponents \#1 and \#3. The result’s first block is in \[100, 0999].

\[ \langle n \rangle \div \langle d \rangle \in (0.01, 1). \]

73.9 Dividing extended-precision numbers

Divisions of extended-precision numbers are difficult to perform with exact rounding: the technique used in l3fp-basics for 16-digit floating point numbers does not generalize easily to 24-digit numbers. Thankfully, there is no need for exact rounding.

Let us call \( n \) the numerator and \( d \) the denominator. After a simple normalization step, we can assume that \( n \in [0.1, 1) \) and \( d \in [0.1, 1) \), and compute \( \langle n \rangle/\langle 10(d) \rangle \in (0.01, 1) \). In terms of the 6 blocks of digits \( \langle n_1 \rangle \cdots \langle n_6 \rangle \) and the 6 blocks \( \langle d_1 \rangle \cdots \langle d_6 \rangle \), the condition translates to \( \langle n_1 \rangle , \langle d_1 \rangle \in [1000, 9999] \).
We first find an integer estimate \( a \approx 10^8/\langle d \rangle \) by computing

\[
\begin{align*}
\alpha &= \left\lfloor \frac{10^9}{\langle d_1 \rangle + 1} \right\rfloor \\
\beta &= \left\lfloor \frac{10^9}{\langle d_1 \rangle} \right\rfloor \\
a &= 10^3 \alpha + (\beta - \alpha) \cdot \left( 10^3 - \left\lfloor \frac{\langle d_2 \rangle}{10} \right\rfloor \right) - 1250,
\end{align*}
\]

where \( \left\lfloor \frac{\cdot}{\cdot} \right\rfloor \) denotes \( \texttt{TeX}'s \) rounding division, which rounds ties away from zero. The idea is to interpolate between \( 10^3 \alpha \) and \( 10^3 \beta \) with a parameter \( \langle d_2 \rangle/10^4 \), so that when \( \langle d_2 \rangle = 0 \) one gets \( a = 10^3 \beta - 1250 \approx 10^{12}/\langle d_1 \rangle \approx 10^8/\langle d \rangle \), while when \( \langle d_2 \rangle = 9999 \) one gets \( a = 10^3 \alpha - 1250 \approx 10^{12}/(\langle d_1 \rangle + 1) \approx 10^8/\langle d \rangle \). The shift by 1250 helps to ensure that \( a \) is an underestimate of the correct value. We shall prove that

\[
1 - 1.755 \cdot 10^{-5} < \frac{\langle d \rangle a}{10^8} < 1.
\]

We can then compute the inverse of \( \langle d \rangle a/10^8 = 1 - \epsilon \) using the relation \( 1/(1 - \epsilon) \approx (1 + \epsilon)(1 + \epsilon^2) + \epsilon^4 \), which is correct up to a relative error of \( \epsilon^5 < 1.6 \cdot 10^{-24} \). This allows us to find the desired ratio as

\[
\frac{\langle n \rangle}{\langle d \rangle} = \frac{\langle n \rangle a}{10^8} (1 + \epsilon)(1 + \epsilon^2) + \epsilon^4.
\]

Let us prove the upper bound first (multiplied by \( 10^{15} \)). Note that \( 10^7 \langle d \rangle < 10^3 \langle d_1 \rangle + 10^{-1}(\langle d_2 \rangle + 1) \), and that \( \texttt{TeX}'s \) division \( \left\lfloor \frac{\langle d_2 \rangle}{10} \right\rfloor \) underestimates \( 10^{-1}(\langle d_2 \rangle + 1) \) by 0.5 at most, as can be checked for each possible last digit of \( \langle d_2 \rangle \). Then,

\[
10^7 \langle d \rangle a < \left( 10^3 \langle d_1 \rangle + \left\lfloor \frac{\langle d_2 \rangle}{10} \right\rfloor + \frac{1}{2} \right) \left( 10^3 - \left\lfloor \frac{\langle d_2 \rangle}{10} \right\rfloor \right) \beta + \left\lfloor \frac{\langle d_2 \rangle}{10} \right\rfloor \alpha - 1250
\]

(1)

\[
< \left( 10^3 \langle d_1 \rangle + \left\lfloor \frac{\langle d_2 \rangle}{10} \right\rfloor + \frac{1}{2} \right)
\]

(2)

\[
\left( 10^3 - \left\lfloor \frac{\langle d_2 \rangle}{10} \right\rfloor \right) \left( \left\lfloor \frac{\langle d_2 \rangle}{10} \right\rfloor + \frac{1}{2} \right) + \left\lfloor \frac{\langle d_2 \rangle}{10} \right\rfloor \left( \frac{10^9}{\langle d_1 \rangle + 1} \right) - 1250
\]

(3)

\[
< \left( 10^3 \langle d_1 \rangle + \left\lfloor \frac{\langle d_2 \rangle}{10} \right\rfloor + \frac{1}{2} \right) \left( 10^{12}/\langle d_1 \rangle - \left\lfloor \frac{\langle d_2 \rangle}{\langle d_1 \rangle(\langle d_1 \rangle + 1)} \right\rfloor - 750 \right)
\]

(4)

We recognize a quadratic polynomial in \( \left\lfloor \langle d_2 \rangle/10 \right\rfloor \) with a negative leading coefficient: this polynomial is bounded above, according to \( ((\langle d_2 \rangle/10) + a)(b - c(\langle d_2 \rangle/10)) \leq (b + ca)^2/(4c) \). Hence,

\[
10^7 \langle d \rangle a < \frac{10^{15}}{\langle d_1 \rangle(\langle d_1 \rangle + 1)} \left( \langle d_1 \rangle + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} 10^{-3} - \frac{3}{8} 10^{-9}(\langle d_1 \rangle(\langle d_1 \rangle + 1))^2 \right)
\]

Since \( \langle d_1 \rangle \) takes integer values within \([1000, 9999]\), it is a simple programming exercise to check that the squared expression is always less than \( \langle d_1 \rangle(\langle d_1 \rangle + 1) \), hence \( 10^7 \langle d \rangle a < 10^{15} \). The upper bound is proven. We also find that \( \frac{3}{8} \) can be replaced by slightly smaller numbers, but nothing less than 0.374563..., and going back through the derivation of
the upper bound, we find that 1250 is as small a shift as we can obtain without breaking the bound.

Now, the lower bound. The same computation as for the upper bound implies

\[ 10^7 (d) a > \left( 10^3 (d_1) + \left\lfloor \frac{d_2}{10} \right\rfloor - \frac{1}{2} \right) \left( 10^{12} \frac{10^9}{\langle d_1 \rangle} - \left\lfloor \frac{d_2}{10} \right\rfloor \langle d_1 \rangle (d_1 + 1) - 1750 \right) \]

This time, we want to find the minimum of this quadratic polynomial. Since the leading coefficient is still negative, the minimum is reached for one of the extreme values \([y/10] = 0\) or \([y/10] = 100\), and we easily check the bound for those values.

We have proven that the algorithm gives us a precise enough answer. Incidentally, the upper bound that we derived tells us that \(a < \frac{10^8}{\langle d \rangle} \leq \frac{10^9}{\langle d \rangle}\), hence we can compute \(a\) safely as a \TeX{} integer, and even add \(10^9\) to it to ease grabbing of all the digits. The lower bound implies \(10^8 - 1755 < a\), which we do not care about.

\[ \__fp_ep_div:wwwn \]

Compute the ratio of two extended-precision numbers. The result is an extended-precision number whose first block lies in the range \([100,9999]\), and is placed after the \langle continuation \rangle once we are done. First normalize the inputs so that both first block lie in \([1000,9999]\), then call \_\_fp_ep_div_esti:wwwn \langle denominator \rangle \langle numerator \rangle, responsible for estimating the inverse of the denominator.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_ep_div:wwwn #1,#2; #3,#4;
\{ \_\_fp_ep_to_ep:wwN #1,#2; \_\_fp_fixed_continue:wn
\{ \_\_fp_ep_to_ep:wwN #3,#4; \_\_fp_ep_div_esti:wwwn\}
\}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \_\_fp_ep_div:wwwn.)

\[ \__fp_ep_div_esti:wwwn \__fp_ep_div_esti:wwwn \__fp_ep_div_esti:wwwn \__fp_ep_div_esti:wwwn \]

The esti function evaluates \(\alpha = \frac{10^9}{\langle d_1 \rangle + 1}\), which is used twice in the expression for \(a\), and combines the exponents \(#1\) and \(#4\) (with a shift by 1 because we later compute \(\langle n \rangle/(10^d)\)). Then the estii function evaluates \(10^9 + a\), and puts the exponent \(#2\) after the continuation \#7: from there on we can forget exponents and focus on the mantissa. The estiii function multiplies the denominator \#7 by \(10^{-8} a\) (obtained as a split into the single digit \#1 and two blocks of 4 digits, \#2\#3\#4\#5 and \#6). The result \(10^{-8} a(d) = (1 - \epsilon)\), and a partially packed \(10^{-9} a\) (as a block of four digits, and five individual digits, not packed by lack of available macro parameters here) are passed to \_\_fp_ep_div_epi:wnNNNn, which computes \(10^{-9} a/(1 - \epsilon)\), that is, \(1/(10^d)\) and we finally multiply this by the numerator \#8.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_ep_div_esti:wwwn #1,#2; #3,#4, { \exp_after:wN \_\_fp_ep_div_estii:wwwn
\int_value:w \_\_fp_int_eval:w 10 0000 0000 / ( #2 + 1 ) \exp_after:wN \_\_fp_ep_div_estiii:wwwnnn
\int_value:w \_\_fp_int_eval:w #4 - #1 + 1 , \{#2\} #3; \}
\}
\end{verbatim}

\[ \__fp_ep_div_esti:wwwn \__fp_ep_div_esti:wwwn \__fp_ep_div_esti:wwwn \__fp_ep_div_esti:wwwn \]

1101
The bounds shown above imply that the \texttt{epsi} function’s first operand is \((1 - \epsilon)\) with 
\( \epsilon \in [0, 1.755 \cdot 10^{-5}] \). The \texttt{epsi} function computes \( \epsilon \) as \( 1 - (1 - \epsilon) \). Since \( \epsilon < 10^{-4} \), its first block vanishes and there is no need to explicitly use \#1 (which is 9999). Then \texttt{epsii} evaluates \( 10^{-9}a/(1 - \epsilon) \) as \((1 + \epsilon^2)(1 + \epsilon)(10^{-9}a) + 10^{-9}a \). Importantly, we compute \( 10^{-9}a \) before multiplying it with the rest, rather than multiplying by \( \epsilon \) and then \( 10^{-9}a \), as this second option loses more precision. Also, the combination of \texttt{short_mul} and \texttt{div_myriad} is both faster and more precise than a simple \texttt{mul}.
73.10 Inverse square root of extended precision numbers

The idea here is similar to division. Normalize the input, multiplying by powers of 100 until we have \( x \in [0.01, 1) \). Then find an integer approximation \( r \in [101, 1003] \) of \( 10^{2} / \sqrt{x} \), as the fixed point of iterations of the Newton method: essentially \( r \rightarrow (r + 10^{8} / (x r)) / 2 \), starting from a guess that optimizes the number of steps before convergence. In fact, just as there is a slight shift when computing divisions to ensure that some inequalities hold, we replace \( 10^{8} \) by a slightly larger number which ensures that \( r^2 x \geq 10^4 \). This also causes \( r \in [101, 1003] \). Another correction to the above is that the input is actually normalized to \( [0.1, 1) \), and we use either \( 10^{8} \) or \( 10^{9} \) in the Newton method, depending on the parity of the exponent. Skipping those technical hurdles, once we have the approximation \( r \), we set \( y = 10^{-4} r^2 x \) (or rather, the correct power of 10 to get \( y \approx 1 \)) and compute \( y^{-1/2} \) through another application of Newton’s method. This time, the starting value is \( z = 1 \), each step maps \( z \rightarrow z(1.5 - 0.5y z^2) \), and we perform a fixed number of steps. Our final result combines \( r \) with \( y^{-1/2} \) as \( x^{-1/2} = 10^{-2} y^{r - 1/2} \).

First normalize the input, then check the parity of the exponent \#1. If it is even, the result’s exponent will be \(-#1/2\), otherwise it will be \((#1 - 1)/2\) (except in the case where the input was an exact power of 100). The auxii function receives as \#1 the result’s exponent just computed, as \#2 the starting value for the iteration giving \( r \) (the values 168 and 535 lead to the least number of iterations before convergence, on average), as \#3 and \#4 one empty argument and one 0, depending on the parity of the original exponent, as \#5 and \#6 the normalized mantissa (\#5 \( \in [1000, 9999] \)), and as \#7 the continuation. It sets up the iteration giving \( r \): the esti function thus receives the initial two guesses \#2 and 0, an approximation \#5 of \( 10^4 x \) (its first block of digits), and the empty/zero arguments \#3 and \#4, followed by the mantissa and an altered continuation where we have stored the result’s exponent.
check by brute force that if \#4 is empty (the original exponent was even), the process computes an integer slightly larger than \(100/\sqrt{x}\) while if \#4 is \(0\) (the original exponent was odd), the result is an integer slightly larger than \(100/\sqrt{x}/10\). Once we are done, we evaluate \(100r^2/2\) or \(10r^2/2\) (when the exponent is even or odd, respectively) and feed that to estiii. This third auxiliary finds \(y_{\text{even}}/2 = 10^{-4}r^2x/2\) or \(y_{\text{odd}}/2 = 10^{-5}r^2x/2\) (again, depending on earlier parity). A simple program shows that \(y \in [1, 1.0201]\). The number \(y/2\) is fed to \__fp_ep_isqrt_epsii:wN\ which computes \(1/\sqrt{y}\), and we finally multiply the result by \(r\).

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_ep_isqrt_esti:wwwnn #1, #2, #3, #4
\if_int_compare:w #1 = #2 \exp_stop_f:
\exp_after:wN \__fp_ep_isqrt_estii:wwwnn
\fi:
\exp_after:wN \__fp_ep_isqrt_esti:wwwnn
\int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w (#1 + 1 0050 0000 \#4 / (#1 * #3)) / 2 , #1, #3, {#4}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_ep_isqrt_estii:wwwnn #1, #2, #3, #4#5
\exp_after:wN \__fp_ep_isqrt_estiii:NNNNNwwwn
\int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w 1000 0000 + #2 * #2 #5 * 5
\exp_after:wN , \int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w 10000 + #2 ;
\end{verbatim}

Here, we receive a fixed point number \(y/2\) with \(y \in [1, 1.0201]\). Starting from \(z = 1\) we iterate \(z \mapsto z(3/2 - z^2y/2)\). In fact, we start from the first iteration \(z = 3/2 - y/2\) to avoid useless multiplications. The epsii auxiliary receives \(z\) as \#1 and \(y\) as \#2.
73.11 Converting from fixed point to floating point

After computing Taylor series, we wish to convert the result from extended precision (with or without an exponent) to the public floating point format. The functions here should be called within an integer expression for the overall exponent of the floating point.

An extended-precision number is simply a comma-delimited exponent followed by a fixed point number. Leave the exponent in the current integer expression then convert the fixed point number.

\__fp_ep_to_float_o:wwN
\__fp_ep_inv_to_float_o:wwN

Another function which reduces to converting an extended precision number to a float.

\__fp_fixed_to_float_rad_o:wN

Converts the fixed point number \#1 from degrees to radians then to a floating point number. This could perhaps remain in l3fp-trig.

\__fp_fixed_to_float_o:wN
\__fp_fixed_to_float_o:Nw

And the to_fixed version gives six brace groups instead of 4, ensuring that 1000 ≤ \langle a'1\rangle ≤ 9999. At this stage, we know that \langle a1\rangle is positive (otherwise, it is sign of an error before), and we assume that it is less than 10^{8}.\footnote{Bruno: I must double check this assumption.}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_fixed_to_loop:N #1
{
  \if_meaning:w 0 #1
    - 1
  \exp_after:wN \__fp_fixed_to_loop:N
  \else:
    \exp_after:wN \__fp_fixed_to_loop_end:w
    \exp_after:wN #1
  \fi:
}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_fixed_to_loop_end:w #1 #2 ;
{
  \if_meaning:w ; #1
    \exp_after:wN \__fp_fixed_to_float_zero:w
  \else:
    \exp_after:wN \__fp_pack_twice_four:wNNNNNNNN
    \exp_after:wN \__fp_pack_twice_four:wNNNNNNNN
    \exp_after:wN \__fp_fixed_to_float_pack:ww
    \exp_after:wN ;
  \fi:
  #1 #2 0000 0000 0000 0000 ;
}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_fixed_to_float_zero:w ; 0000 0000 0000 0000 ;
{
  - 2 * \c__fp_max_exponent_int ;
  \{0000\} \{0000\} \{0000\} \{0000\} ;
}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_fixed_to_float_pack:ww #1 ; #2#3 ; ;
{
  \if_int_compare:w #2 > 4 \exp_stop_f:
    \exp_after:wN \__fp_fixed_to_float_round_up:wnnnw
  \exp_after:wN \__fp_fixed_to_float_round_up:wnnnw
  \exp_after:wN ;
  \exp_after:wN \__fp_basics_pack_high:NNNNNw
  \int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w 1 #1#2
  \exp_after:wN \__fp_basics_pack_low:NNNNNw
  \int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w 1 #3#4 + 1 ;
}
(End definition for \__fp_fixed_to_float:o:wN and \__fp_fixed_to_float:o:Nw.)
}
Chapter 74

l3fp-expo implementation

Unary functions.

\def\__fp_parse_word_exp:N #1\__fp_parse_word_exp:N \__fp_parse_word_ln:N \__fp_parse_word_fact:N

\newcommand*{\__fp_parse_word_exp:N}{\__fp_parse_unary_function:NNN \__fp_exp_o:w ?}
\newcommand*{\__fp_parse_word_ln:N}{\__fp_parse_unary_function:NNN \__fp_ln_o:w ?}
\newcommand*{\__fp_parse_word_fact:N}{\__fp_parse_unary_function:NNN \__fp_fact_o:w ?}

74.1 Logarithm

74.1.1 Work plan

As for many other functions, we filter out special cases in \__fp_ln_o:w. Then \__fp_-ln_npos_o:w receives a positive normal number, which we write in the form \(a \cdot 10^b\) with \(a \in [0,1)\).

The rest of this section is actually not in sync with the code. Or is the code not in sync with the section? In the current code, \(c \in [1,10]\) is such that \(0.7 \leq ac < 1.4\).

We are given a positive normal number, of the form \(a \cdot 10^b\) with \(a \in [0,1,1)\). To compute its logarithm, we find a small integer \(5 \leq c < 50\) such that \(0.91 \leq ac/5 < 1.1\), and use the relation

\[
\ln(a \cdot 10^b) = b \cdot \ln(10) - \ln(c/5) + \ln(ac/5).
\]

The logarithms \(\ln(10)\) and \(\ln(c/5)\) are looked up in a table. The last term is computed using the following Taylor series of \(\ln\) near 1:

\[
\ln \left(\frac{ac}{5}\right) = \ln \left(\frac{1 + t}{1 - t}\right) = 2t \left(1 + t^2 \left(\frac{1}{3} + t^2 \left(\frac{1}{5} + \ldots\right)\right)\right)
\]

where \(t = 1 - 10/(ac + 5)\). We can now see one reason for the choice of \(ac \sim 5\): then

\[
ac + 5 = 10(1 - \epsilon) \quad \text{with} \quad -0.05 < \epsilon \leq 0.045,
\]

hence

\[
t = \frac{\epsilon}{1 - \epsilon} = \epsilon(1 + \epsilon)(1 + \epsilon^2)(1 + \epsilon^4)\ldots,
\]

1107
is not too difficult to compute.

### 74.1.2 Some constants

A few values of the logarithm as extended fixed point numbers. Those are needed in the implementation. It turns out that we don’t need the value of $\ln(5)$.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Constant</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$\c__fp_ln_i_fixed_tl$</td>
<td>{0000}{0000}{0000}{0000}{0000}{0000};</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\c__fp_ln_ii_fixed_tl$</td>
<td>{6931}{4718}{0559}{9453}{0941}{7232};</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\c__fp_ln_iii_fixed_tl$</td>
<td>{10986}{1228}{8668}{1096}{9139}{5245};</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\c__fp_ln_iv_fixed_tl$</td>
<td>{13862}{9436}{1119}{8906}{1883}{4464};</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\c__fp_ln_vi_fixed_tl$</td>
<td>{17917}{5946}{9228}{0550}{0081}{2477};</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\c__fp_ln_vii_fixed_tl$</td>
<td>{19459}{1014}{9055}{3133}{0510}{5353};</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\c__fp_ln_viii_fixed_tl$</td>
<td>{20794}{4154}{1679}{8359}{2825}{1696};</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\c__fp_ln_ix_fixed_tl$</td>
<td>{21972}{2457}{7336}{2193}{8279}{0490};</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\c__fp_ln_x_fixed_tl$</td>
<td>{23025}{8509}{2994}{0456}{8401}{7991};</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(End definition for $\c__fp_ln_i_fixed_tl$ and others.)

### 74.1.3 Sign, exponent, and special numbers

The logarithm of negative numbers (including $-\infty$ and $0$) raises the “invalid” exception. The logarithm of $+0$ is $-\infty$, raising a division by zero exception. The logarithm of $+\infty$ or a nan is itself. Positive normal numbers call $\__fp_ln_npos_o:w$.

```latex
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_ln_o:w #1 \s__fp \__fp_chk:w 10#1#2#3; \0
{ %^^A todo: ln(1) should be "exact zero", not "underflow"
   \exp_after:wN \__fp_sanitize:Nw
   \int_value:w % for the overall sign
   \if_int_compare:w #1 < \c_one_int
      \else:
      \exp_after:wN \__fp_division_by_zero_O:Nnw \c_minus_inf_fp \ln
   \fi:
   \exp_after:wN \__fp_case_return_same_O:w
   \__fp_ln_npos_O:w \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #2#3#4;
}

(End definition for $\__fp_ln_o:w$)

### 74.1.4 Absolute ln

We catch the case of a significand very close to 0.1 or to 1. In all other cases, the final result is at least $10^{-4}$, and then an error of $0.5 \cdot 10^{-20}$ is acceptable.
This function expands to
\( \langle X_1 \rangle \{ \langle X_2 \rangle \{ \langle X_3 \rangle \{ \langle X_4 \rangle \{ \langle X_5 \rangle \{ \langle X_6 \rangle \{ \langle \text{continuation} \rangle \} \} \} \} \} \) ;

where \( Y = -\ln(X) \) as an extended fixed point.

\[ c \in [1, 10] \] such that \( 0.7 \leq ac < 1.4 \) in all cases. Compute \( 1 + x = 1 + ac \in [1.7, 2.4) \).
The Taylor series to be used is expressed in terms of 
\[ t = \frac{(x-1)}{(x+1)} = 1 - 2/(x+1). \]
We now compute the quotient with extended precision, reusing some code from \lowercase{l3fp-basics}. Note that 1 + x is known exactly.

To reuse notations from \lowercase{l3fp-basics}, we want to compute \( A/Z \) with \( A = 2 \) and \( Z = x + 1 \). In \lowercase{l3fp-basics}, we considered the case where both \( A \) and \( Z \) are arbitrary, in the range \([0, 1)\), and we had to monitor the growth of the sequence of remainders \( A, B, C, \ldots \) to ensure that no overflow occurred during the computation of the next quotient. The main source of risk was our choice to define the quotient as roughly \( 10^9 \cdot A/10^5 \cdot Z \): then \( A \) was bound to be below \( 2^{147} \ldots \), and this limit was never far.

In our case, we can simply work with \( 10^8 \cdot A \) and \( 10^4 \cdot Z \), because our reason to work with higher powers has gone: we needed the integer \( y \approx 10^5 \cdot Z \) to be at least \( 10^4 \), and now, the definition \( y \approx 10^4 \cdot Z \) suffices.

Let us thus define \( y = \lceil 10^4 \cdot Z \rceil + 1 \in (1.7 \cdot 10^4, 2.4 \cdot 10^4] \), and

\[ Q_1 = \left\lfloor \frac{10^8 \cdot A}{y} - 1 \right\rfloor. \]

(The 1/2 comes from how \( \varepsilon \)-TEX rounds.) As for division, it is easy to see that \( Q_1 \leq 10^4 A/Z \), i.e., \( Q_1 \) is an underestimate.

Exactly as we did for division, we set \( B = 10^4 A - Q_1 Z \). Then

\[ 10^4 B \leq A_1 A_2 A_3 A_4 - \left( \frac{A_1 A_2}{y} - \frac{3}{2} \right) 10^4 Z \]
\[ \leq A_1 A_2 \left( 1 - \frac{10^4 Z}{y} \right) + 1 + \frac{3}{2} \]
\[ \leq 10^8 \frac{A}{y} + 1 + \frac{3}{2} \]

In the same way, and using \( 1.7 \cdot 10^4 \leq y \leq 2.4 \cdot 10^4 \), and convexity, we get

\[ 10^4 A = 2 \cdot 10^4 \]
\[ 10^4 B \leq 10^8 \frac{A}{y} + 1.6y \leq 4.7 \cdot 10^4 \]
\[ 10^4 C \leq 10^8 \frac{B}{y} + 1.6y \leq 5.8 \cdot 10^4 \]
\[ 10^4 D \leq 10^8 \frac{C}{y} + 1.6y \leq 6.3 \cdot 10^4 \]
\[ 10^4 E \leq 10^8 \frac{D}{y} + 1.6y \leq 6.5 \cdot 10^4 \]
\[ 10^4 F \leq 10^8 \frac{E}{y} + 1.6y \leq 6.6 \cdot 10^4 \]

Note that we compute more steps than for division: since \( t \) is not the end result, we need to know it with more accuracy (on the other hand, the ending is much simpler, as we don’t need an exact rounding for transcendental functions, but just a faithful rounding).  

1110
The number is $x$. Compute $y$ by adding 1 to the five first digits.

We now have essentially

\[ \_\_fp\_ln\_x\_iv:wnnnnnnn\ (1 \text{ or } 2) \langle 8d \rangle ; \{4d\} \{4d\} \langle\text{fixed-tl}\rangle \]

where \langle\text{fixed-tl}\rangle holds the logarithm of a number in [1, 10], and \langle\text{exponent}\rangle is the exponent. Also, the expansion is done backwards. Then \_\_fp\_div\_significand\_pack:NNN puts things in the correct order to add the $Q_i$ together and put semicolons between each piece. Once those have been expanded, we get

\[ \_\_fp\_ln\_div\_after:Nw\ (\text{fixed-tl}) \]

\[ \_\_fp\_div\_significand\_pack:NNN 10^6 + Q_1 \]

\[ \_\_fp\_div\_significand\_pack:NNN 10^6 + Q_2 \]

\[ \_\_fp\_div\_significand\_pack:NNN 10^6 + Q_3 \]

\[ \_\_fp\_div\_significand\_pack:NNN 10^6 + Q_4 \]

\[ \_\_fp\_div\_significand\_pack:NNN 10^6 + Q_5 \]

\[ \_\_fp\_div\_significand\_pack:NNN 10^6 + Q_6 \]

\[ \langle\text{exponent}\rangle ; \langle\text{continuation}\rangle \]
Just as with division, we know that the first two digits are 1 and 0 because of bounds on the final result of the division $2/(x+1)$, which is between roughly 0.8 and 1.2. We then compute $1 - 2/(x+1)$, after testing whether $2/(x+1)$ is greater than or smaller than 1.

Compute the square $t^2$, and keep $t$ at the end with its sign. We know that $t < 0.1765$, so every piece has at most 4 digits. However, since we were not careful in \_\_\_fp\_ln\_t\_small:w, they can have less than 4 digits.
\int_value:w  \_\_fp_int_eval:w 9999 + 2*#5 \\
\exp_after:wN  \_\_fp_twice_t_pack:Nw \\
\int_value:w  \_\_fp_int_eval:w 9999 + 2*#6 \\
\exp_after:wN  \_\_fp_twice_t_pack:Nw \\
\int_value:w  \_\_fp_int_eval:w 9999 + 2*#7 \\
\exp_after:wN  \_\_fp_twice_t_pack:Nw \\
\int_value:w  \_\_fp_int_eval:w 10000 + 2*#8 ; ; \\
\{  \_\_fp_c:NwNw #1 \}  \\
#2 \\
} \\
\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_twice_t_pack:Nw #1 #2; { + #1 ; {#2} } \\
\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_twice_t_after:w #1; { ;;; {#1} } \\
\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_square_t_pack:NNNNNw #1 #2#3#4#5 #6; \\
{ + #1#2#3#4#5 ; {#6} } \\
\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_square_t_after:w 1 0 #1#2#3 #4; \\
\{  \_\_fp_Taylor:wwNw {0#1#2#3} {#4} \} \\
\_\_fp_Taylor:wwNw \\
\{ 0\} \{0000\} \{0000\} \{0000\} \{0000\}; \\
\{  \_\_fp_Taylor_loop:www 21 ; {0000}{0000}{0000}{0000}{0000} ; \} \\
\_\_fp_Taylor_loop:www #1; #2; #3; \\
{ \_\_fp_Taylor_break:w \_\_fp_c:NwNw \{sign\} ; \{continuation\} } \\
\_\_fp_Taylor:wwNw \\
\{ 0\} \{0000\} \{0000\} \{0000\} \{0000\}; \\
\{  \_\_fp_Taylor_loop:www 21 ; {0000}{0000}{0000}{0000}{0000} ; \} \\
\_\_fp_Taylor_loop:www #1; #2; #3; \\
\{ \\
\_\_fp_int_compare:w #1 = \_c_one_int \\
\_\_fp_Taylor_break:w \_\_fp_int_eval:w \_\_fp_int_eval:w #1 - 2 ; \\
\} \\
\_\_fp_Taylor:wwNw \\
\{ 0\} \{0000\} \{0000\} \{0000\} \{0000\}; \\
\{  \_\_fp_Taylor_loop:www 21 ; {0000}{0000}{0000}{0000}{0000} ; \} \\
\_\_fp_Taylor_loop:www #1; #2; #3; \\
\{ \\
\_\_fp_int_compare:w #1 = \_c_one_int \\
\_\_fp_Taylor_break:w \_\_fp_int_eval:w \_\_fp_int_eval:w #1 - 2 ; \\
\} \\
\_\_fp_Taylor:wwNw \\
\{ 0\} \{0000\} \{0000\} \{0000\} \{0000\}; \\
\{  \_\_fp_Taylor_loop:www 21 ; {0000}{0000}{0000}{0000}{0000} ; \} \\
\_\_fp_Taylor_loop:www #1; #2; #3; \\
\{ \\
\_\_fp_int_compare:w #1 = \_c_one_int \\
\_\_fp_Taylor_break:w \_\_fp_int_eval:w \_\_fp_int_eval:w #1 - 2 ; \\
\} \\
\_\_fp_Taylor:wwNw \\
\{ 0\} \{0000\} \{0000\} \{0000\} \{0000\}; \\
\{  \_\_fp_Taylor_loop:www 21 ; {0000}{0000}{0000}{0000}{0000} ; \} \\
\_\_fp_Taylor_loop:www #1; #2; #3; \\
\{ \\
\_\_fp_int_compare:w #1 = \_c_one_int \\
\_\_fp_Taylor_break:w \_\_fp_int_eval:w \_\_fp_int_eval:w #1 - 2 ; \\
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_ln_Taylor_break:w \fi: \#1 \__fp_fixed_add:wwn \#2\#3; \#4 ;
\exp_after:wN \__fp_fixed_mul:wwn \exp_after:wN { \int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w 10000 + \#2 } \#3;
\exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \__fp_fixed_sub:wwn \#3 \#2 ;

(End definition for \__fp_ln_Taylor:wwNw.)

\__fp_ln_c:NwNw \__fp_ln_c:NwNw \langle \text{sign} \rangle \langle \text{r}_1 \rangle \langle \text{r}_2 \rangle \langle \text{r}_3 \rangle \langle \text{r}_4 \rangle \langle \text{r}_5 \rangle \langle \text{r}_6 \rangle ;
\langle \text{fixed~tl} \rangle \langle \text{exponent} \rangle ;
\langle \text{continuation} \rangle

We are now reduced to finding \(\ln(c)\) and \(\langle \text{exponent} \rangle \ln(10)\) in a table, and adding it to the mixture. The first step is to get \(\ln(c) - \ln(x) = -\ln(a)\), then we get \(b\ln(10)\) and add or subtract.

For now, \(\ln(x)\) is given as \(-10^9\). Unless both the exponent is 1 and \(c = 1\), we shift to working in units of \(-10^4\), since the final result is at least \(\ln(10/7) \approx 0.35\).

\cs_new:Npn \__fp_ln_exponent:wn #1; #2
\if_case:w #2 \exp_stop_f: 0 \__fp_case_return:nw { \__fp_fixed_to_float_o:Nw 2 }
\or:w \__fp_ln_exponent_one:ww \int_value:w \else:w \__fp_ln_exponent_small:NNww \exp_after:wN \__fp_fixed_sub:wwn \int_value:w \fi:w #1 #2 ;

(End definition for \__fp_ln_c:NwNw)

\__fp_ln_exponent:wn
\langle \text{sign} \rangle \langle \text{s}_1 \rangle \langle \text{s}_2 \rangle \langle \text{s}_3 \rangle \langle \text{s}_4 \rangle \langle \text{s}_5 \rangle \langle \text{s}_6 \rangle ;
\langle \text{exponent} \rangle

Compute \(\langle \text{exponent} \rangle \times \ln(10)\). Apart from the cases where \(\langle \text{exponent} \rangle\) is 0 or 1, the result is necessarily at least \(\ln(10) \approx 2.3\) in magnitude. We can thus drop the least significant 4 digits. In the case of a very large (positive or negative) exponent, we can (and we need to) drop 4 additional digits, since the result is of order \(10^4\). Naively, one would think that in both cases we can drop 4 more digits than we do, but that would be slightly too tight for rounding to happen correctly. Besides, we already have addition and subtraction for 24 digits fixed point numbers.

\cs_new:Npn \__fp_ln_exponent:wn #1; #2
\if_case:w #2 \exp_stop_f: 0 \__fp_case_return:nw { \__fp_fixed_to_float_o:Nw 2 } \or:w \__fp_ln_exponent_one:ww \int_value:w \else:w \__fp_ln_exponent_small:NNww \exp_after:wN \__fp_fixed_add:wwn \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \__fp_fixed_sub:wwn \int_value:w \else:w
Now we painfully write all the cases.\textsuperscript{12} No overflow nor underflow can happen, except when computing $\ln(1)$.

For small exponents, we just drop one block of digits, and set the exponent of the log to 4 (minus any shift coming from leading zeros in the conversion from fixed point to floating point). Note that here the exponent has been made positive.

(End definition for \_\_fp_ln_exponent:wn.)

\textbf{74.2 Exponential}

\textbf{74.2.1 Sign, exponent, and special numbers}

(End definition for \_\_fp_ln_exponent:wn.)

\textsuperscript{12}Bruno: do rounding.
\or:
\__fp_case_return_same:o:w
\fi:
\s__fp \__fp_chk:w #2#3#4;
}

(End definition for \__fp_o:w)

\cs_new:Npn \__fp_exp_normal:o:w \s__fp \__fp_chk:w 1#1
{\if_meaning:w 0 #1
\__fp_exp_pos:o:NNwnw + \__fp_fixed_to_float:o:wN
\else:
\__fp_exp_pos:o:NNwnw - \__fp_fixed_inv_to_float:o:wN
\fi:}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_exp_pos:o:NNwnw #1#2#3 \fi: #4#5;
{\fi:
\if_int_compare:w #4 > \c__fp_max_exp_exponent_int
\token_if_eq_charcode:NNTF + #1
{ \__fp_exp_overflow:o:NN \c_inf_fp }
{ \__fp_exp_overflow:o:NN \c_zero_fp }
\exp:w
\else:
\exp_after:wN \__fp_exp_normal:o:w \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #1
{ \if_int_compare:w #4 < \c_zero_int
\exp_after:wN \use_i:nn
\else:
\exp_after:wN \use_ii:nn
\fi:
\exp:w
\fi:
\exp_after:wN \exp_end:
\exp_after:wN \__fp_sanitize:Nw
\exp_after:wN \__fp_eval:w
\int_value:w #1 \__fp_int_eval:w
\if_int_compare:w #4 < \c_zero_int
\exp_after:wN \use_i:nn
\else:
\exp_after:wN \use_ii:nn
\fi:
{ 0
\__fp_decimate:nNnnn { - #4 }
\__fp_exp_Taylor:NNwnn
}
{ \__fp_decimate:nNnnn { \c__fp_prec_int - #4 }
\__fp_exp_pos_large:NNNwnn
}
#5
{#4}
#1 #2 0
\exp:w
\exp_after:wN \exp_end:
}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_exp_overflow:o:NN #1#2#3 \fi: #4#5;
{\fi:
This function is called for numbers in the range \([10^{-9}, 10^{-1})\). We compute 10 terms of the Taylor series. The first argument is irrelevant (rounding digit used by some other functions). The next three arguments, at least 16 digits, delimited by a semicolon, form a fixed point number, so we pack it in blocks of 4 digits.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_exp_Taylor:Nnnwn #1#2#3 #4; #5 #6
\{
\exp_after:wN \__fp_exp_Taylor_ii:ww
\if_int_compare:w #1 = \c_one_int
\exp_after:wN \__fp_exp_Taylor_break:Nww
\fi:
\__fp_fixed_div_int:wwN #3 ; #1 ;
\__fp_fixed_add_one:wN
\__fp_fixed_mul:wwn #2 ;
\}\exp_after:wN \__fp_exp_Taylor_loop:www
\int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w #1 - 1 ; #2 ;
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_exp_Taylor_break:Nww #1 #2; #3 \s__fp_stop
\{
\__fp_fixed_add_one:wN #2 ;
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_exp_Taylor_ii:ww #1; #2;
\{
\__fp_exp_Taylor_loop:www 10 ; #1 ; #1 ; \s__fp_stop
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_exp_Taylor_loop:www #1; #2; #3;
\{
\__fp_fixed_div_int:wwN #3 ; #1 ;
\__fp_fixed_add_one:wN
\__fp_fixed_mul:wwn #2 ;
\exp_after:wN \__fp_exp_Taylor_loop:www
\int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w #1 - 1 ; #2 ;
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_exp_Taylor_break:Nww #1 #2; #3 \s__fp_stop
\{
\__fp_fixed_add_one:wN #2 ;
\}
\end{verbatim}

The integer array has \(6 \times 9 \times 4 = 216\) items encoding the values of \(\exp(j \times 10^i)\) for \(j = 1, \ldots, 9\) and \(i = -1, \ldots, 4\). Each value is expressed as \(\approx 10^p \times 0.m_1m_2m_3\) with three 8-digit blocks \(m_1, m_2, m_3\) and an integer exponent \(p\) (one more than the scientific exponent), and these are stored in the integer array as four items: \(p, 10^8 + m_1, 10^8 + m_2, 10^8 + m_3\). The various exponentials are stored in increasing order of \(j \times 10^i\).

Storing this data in an integer array makes it slightly harder to access (slower, too), but uses 16 bytes of memory per exponential stored, while storing as tokens used around 40 tokens; tokens have an especially large footprint in Unicode-aware engines.

\begin{verbatim}
\intarray_const_from_clist:Nn \c__fp_exp_intarray
\{
1 , 1 1105 1709 , 1 1807 5647 , 1 6248 1171 ,
1 , 1 1221 4027 , 1 5816 0169 , 1 8339 2107 ,
1 , 1 1349 8588 , 1 0757 6003 , 1 1039 8374 ,
1 , 1 1491 8246 , 1 9764 1270 , 1 3178 2485 ,
\}
\end{verbatim}
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1 1 1648 7212</th>
<th>1 0707 0128</th>
<th>1 1468 4865</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 1822 1188</td>
<td>1 0039 0508</td>
<td>1 9748 7537</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 2013 7527</td>
<td>1 0747 0476</td>
<td>1 5216 2455</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 2225 5409</td>
<td>1 2849 2467</td>
<td>1 6045 7954</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 2459 6031</td>
<td>1 1115 6949</td>
<td>1 6638 0013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 2718 2818</td>
<td>1 2845 9045</td>
<td>1 2353 6029</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 7389 0560</td>
<td>1 9893 0650</td>
<td>1 2272 3043</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1 2008 5536</td>
<td>1 9231 8766</td>
<td>1 7740 9285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1 5459 8150</td>
<td>1 0331 4423</td>
<td>1 9078 1103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1 1484 1315</td>
<td>1 9102 5766</td>
<td>1 0342 1116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1 4034 2879</td>
<td>1 3492 7351</td>
<td>1 2260 8387</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1 1096 6331</td>
<td>1 5842 8458</td>
<td>1 5992 6372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1 2980 9579</td>
<td>1 8704 1728</td>
<td>1 2747 4359</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1 8103 0839</td>
<td>1 2757 5384</td>
<td>1 0077 1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1 2202 6465</td>
<td>1 7948 0671</td>
<td>1 6516 9579</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1 4851 6519</td>
<td>1 5409 7902</td>
<td>1 7796 9107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1 1068 6474</td>
<td>1 5815 2446</td>
<td>1 2146 9905</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1 2353 8526</td>
<td>1 6837 0199</td>
<td>1 8542 7900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1 5184 7055</td>
<td>1 2858 7072</td>
<td>1 4640 8745</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1 1142 0073</td>
<td>1 8981 5684</td>
<td>1 2836 6296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1 2515 4386</td>
<td>1 7091 9167</td>
<td>1 0062 6578</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1 5540 6223</td>
<td>1 8439 3510</td>
<td>1 0525 7117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1 1220 4032</td>
<td>1 9431 7840</td>
<td>1 8020 0271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1 2688 1171</td>
<td>1 4181 6135</td>
<td>1 4484 1263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1 7225 9737</td>
<td>1 6812 5749</td>
<td>1 2581 7748</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1 1942 4263</td>
<td>1 9524 1255</td>
<td>1 9365 8421</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1 5221 4696</td>
<td>1 8976 4143</td>
<td>1 9505 8876</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1 1403 5922</td>
<td>1 1785 2837</td>
<td>1 4107 3977</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1 3773 0203</td>
<td>1 0092 9939</td>
<td>1 8234 0143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1 1014 2320</td>
<td>1 5473 5004</td>
<td>1 5094 5533</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1 2726 3745</td>
<td>1 7211 2566</td>
<td>1 5673 6478</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1 7328 8142</td>
<td>1 2230 7421</td>
<td>1 7051 8866</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1 1970 0711</td>
<td>1 1401 7046</td>
<td>1 9938 8888</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1 3881 1801</td>
<td>1 9428 4368</td>
<td>1 5764 8232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1 7646 2009</td>
<td>1 8905 4704</td>
<td>1 8893 1073</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1 1506 3559</td>
<td>1 7005 0524</td>
<td>1 9009 7592</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1 2967 6283</td>
<td>1 8402 3667</td>
<td>1 0689 6630</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1 5846 4389</td>
<td>1 5650 2114</td>
<td>1 7278 5046</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1 1151 7900</td>
<td>1 5080 6878</td>
<td>1 2914 4154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1 2269 1083</td>
<td>1 0850 6857</td>
<td>1 8724 0002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1 4470 3047</td>
<td>1 3316 5442</td>
<td>1 6408 6591</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1 8806 8182</td>
<td>1 2566 2921</td>
<td>1 5872 6150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1 7756 0047</td>
<td>1 2598 6861</td>
<td>1 0458 3204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1 6830 5723</td>
<td>1 7791 4884</td>
<td>1 1932 7351</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1 8015 5609</td>
<td>1 3095 3052</td>
<td>1 3494 7574</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1 5297 7951</td>
<td>1 6443 0315</td>
<td>1 3251 3576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1 4685 6719</td>
<td>1 0099 3379</td>
<td>1 5527 2929</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1 4108 9724</td>
<td>1 3326 3186</td>
<td>1 5271 5665</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1 3618 6973</td>
<td>1 3140 0875</td>
<td>1 3856 4102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1 3186 9209</td>
<td>1 6113 3900</td>
<td>1 6705 9685</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The first two arguments are irrelevant (a rounding digit, and a brace group with 8 zeros).
The third argument is the integer part of our number, then we have the decimal part delimited by a semicolon, and finally the exponent, in the range \([0, 5]\). Remove leading zeros from the integer part: putting \#4 in there too ensures that an integer part of 0 is also removed. Then read digits one by one, looking up \(\text{exp}(\langle \text{digit} \rangle \cdot 10^{<\text{exponent}>})\) in a table, and multiplying that to the current total. The loop is done by \_\_fp\_exp\_large:NWN, whose \#1 is the \(\langle \text{exponent} \rangle\), \#2 is the current mantissa, and \#3 is the \(\langle \text{digit} \rangle\). At the end, \_\_fp\_exp\_large\_after:wwn moves on to the Taylor series, eventually multiplied with the mantissa that we have just computed.

```latex
\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp\_exp\_pos\_large:NnnNwn \#1\#2\#3 \#4\#5; \#6
\begin{verbatim}
\exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_exp\_large:NwN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_exp\_large:NwN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_exp\_large:NwN \exp_after:wN \c\_\_fp\_one\_fixed\_tl \exp_after:wN \c\_\_fp\_one\_fixed\_tl \int_value:w \#3 \#4 \exp_stop_f: \int_value:w \#5 00000 ;
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp\_exp\_large:NwN \#1; \#2; \#3
\begin{verbatim}
\exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_exp\_large_after:wwn \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_exp\_large:NwN \exp_after:wN \c\_\_fp\_one\_fixed\_tl \int_value:w \#3 \#4 \exp_stop_f: \exp_after:wN \c\_\_fp\_one\_fixed\_tl \int_value:w \#2 \#3 \exp_stop_f:
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp\_exp\_large_after:wwn \#1; \#2; \#3
\begin{verbatim}
\exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_exp\_large_after:wwn \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_exp\_large_after:wwn \exp_after:wN \c\_\_fp\_one\_fixed\_tl \int_value:w \#3 \#4 \exp_stop_f: \exp_after:wN \c\_\_fp\_one\_fixed\_tl \int_value:w \#2 \#3 \exp_stop_f:
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp\_exp\_large_after:wwn \#1; \#2; \#3
\begin{verbatim}
\exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_exp\_large_after:wwn \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_exp\_large_after:wwn \exp_after:wN \c\_\_fp\_one\_fixed\_tl \int_value:w \#3 \#4 \exp_stop_f: \exp_after:wN \c\_\_fp\_one\_fixed\_tl \int_value:w \#2 \#3 \exp_stop_f:
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp\_exp\_large_after:wwn \#1; \#2; \#3
\begin{verbatim}
\exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_exp\_large_after:wwn \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_exp\_large_after:wwn \exp_after:wN \c\_\_fp\_one\_fixed\_tl \int_value:w \#3 \#4 \exp_stop_f: \exp_after:wN \c\_\_fp\_one\_fixed\_tl \int_value:w \#2 \#3 \exp_stop_f:
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp\_exp\_large_after:wwn \#1; \#2; \#3
\begin{verbatim}
\exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_exp\_large_after:wwn \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_exp\_large_after:wwn \exp_after:wN \c\_\_fp\_one\_fixed\_tl \int_value:w \#3 \#4 \exp_stop_f: \exp_after:wN \c\_\_fp\_one\_fixed\_tl \int_value:w \#2 \#3 \exp_stop_f:
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp\_exp\_large_after:wwn \#1; \#2; \#3
\begin{verbatim}
\exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_exp\_large_after:wwn \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_exp\_large_after:wwn \exp_after:wN \c\_\_fp\_one\_fixed\_tl \int_value:w \#3 \#4 \exp_stop_f: \exp_after:wN \c\_\_fp\_one\_fixed\_tl \int_value:w \#2 \#3 \exp_stop_f:
\end{verbatim}
```

1119
74.3 Power

Raising a number \( a \) to a power \( b \) leads to many distinct situations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>( a^b )</th>
<th>( -\infty )</th>
<th>( (-\infty, 0) )</th>
<th>(-\text{integer} )</th>
<th>( \pm 0 )</th>
<th>(+\text{integer} )</th>
<th>((0, \infty) )</th>
<th>(+\infty )</th>
<th>( \text{nan} )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(+\infty)</td>
<td>(+0)</td>
<td>(+0)</td>
<td>(+1)</td>
<td>(+\infty)</td>
<td>(+\infty)</td>
<td>(\text{nan})</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1, (\infty))</td>
<td>(+0)</td>
<td>(+[a]^b)</td>
<td>(+1)</td>
<td>(+[a]^b)</td>
<td>(+\infty)</td>
<td>(\text{nan})</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(+1)</td>
<td>(+1)</td>
<td>(+1)</td>
<td>(+1)</td>
<td>(+1)</td>
<td>(+1)</td>
<td>(\text{nan})</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(0, 1)</td>
<td>(+\infty)</td>
<td>(+[a]^b)</td>
<td>(+1)</td>
<td>(+[a]^b)</td>
<td>(0)</td>
<td>(\text{nan})</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(+0)</td>
<td>(+\infty)</td>
<td>(+\infty)</td>
<td>(+1)</td>
<td>(+0)</td>
<td>(0)</td>
<td>(\text{nan})</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-0)</td>
<td>(+\infty)</td>
<td>(\text{nan})</td>
<td>((−1)^b\infty)</td>
<td>(+1)</td>
<td>((-1)^b0)</td>
<td>(+0)</td>
<td>(0)</td>
<td>(\text{nan})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>((-1, 0))</td>
<td>(+\infty)</td>
<td>(\text{nan})</td>
<td>((−1)^b[a]^b)</td>
<td>(+1)</td>
<td>((-1)^b[a]^b)</td>
<td>(\text{nan})</td>
<td>(0)</td>
<td>(\text{nan})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-1)</td>
<td>(+1)</td>
<td>(\text{nan})</td>
<td>((−1)^b)</td>
<td>(+1)</td>
<td>((-1)^b)</td>
<td>(\text{nan})</td>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>(\text{nan})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>((-\infty, -1))</td>
<td>(+0)</td>
<td>(\text{nan})</td>
<td>((−1)^b[a]^b)</td>
<td>(+1)</td>
<td>((-1)^b[a]^b)</td>
<td>(\text{nan})</td>
<td>(\infty)</td>
<td>(\text{nan})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-\infty)</td>
<td>(+0)</td>
<td>(+0)</td>
<td>((−1)^b0)</td>
<td>(+1)</td>
<td>((-1)^b\infty)</td>
<td>(\text{nan})</td>
<td>(+\infty)</td>
<td>(\text{nan})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{nan})</td>
<td>(\text{nan})</td>
<td>(\text{nan})</td>
<td>(\text{nan})</td>
<td>(+1)</td>
<td>(\text{nan})</td>
<td>(\text{nan})</td>
<td>(\text{nan})</td>
<td>(\text{nan})</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We distinguished in this table the cases of finite (positive or negative) integer exponents, as \((-1)^b\) is defined in that case. One peculiarity of this operation is that \(\text{nan}^0 = 1\text{nan} = 1\), because this relation is obeyed for any number, even \(\pm\infty\).

We cram most of the tests into a single function to save csnames. First treat the case \(b = 0\): \(a^0 = 1\) for any \(a\), even \(\text{nan}\). Then test the sign of \(a\).

- If it is positive, and \(a\) is a normal number, call \(\_\_fp\_\_fp\_\_fp\_pow\_normal_o:ww\) followed by the two \(fp\) \(a\) and \(b\). For \(a = +0\) or \(+\text{inf}\), call \(\_\_fp\_\_fp\_\_fp\_pow\_zero_or_inf:ww\) instead, to return either \(+0\) or \(+\infty\) as appropriate.

- If \(a\) is a \(\text{nan}\), then skip to the next semicolon (which happens to be conveniently the end of \(b\)) and return \(\text{nan}\).

- Finally, if \(a\) is negative, compute \(a^b\) (\(\_\_fp\_\_fp\_\_fp\_pow\_normal_o:ww\) which ignores the sign of its first operand), and keep an extra copy of \(a\) and \(b\) (the second brace group, containing \(\{ b \ a \}\), is inserted between \(a\) and \(b\)). Then do some tests to find the final sign of the result if it exists.
\__fp_pow_neg:ww
\exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w \exp_after:wN \use:nn \else:\fi:
{\if_meaning:w 1 \s__fp:\__fp_chk:w #1#2#3; \fi:
{\s__fp:\__fp_chk:w #4#5#6; \s__fp:\__fp_chk:w #1#2#3; }
\s__fp:\__fp_chk:w #4#5#6; }

(End definition for \__fp_^-:ww.)
\__fp_pow_zero_or_inf:ww
Raising \(-0\) or \(-\infty\) to \texttt{nan} yields \texttt{nan}. For other powers, the result is \(+0\) if \(0\) is raised to a positive power or \(+\infty\) to a negative power, and \(+\infty\) otherwise. Thus, if the type of \(a\) and the sign of \(b\) coincide, the result is \(0\), since those conveniently take the same possible values, \(0\) and \(2\). Otherwise, either \(a = \pm \infty\) and \(b > 0\) and the result is \(+\infty\), or \(a = \pm 0\) with \(b < 0\) and we have a division by zero unless \(b = -\infty\).
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_pow_zero_or_inf:ww
\s__fp:\__fp_chk:w #1#2; \s__fp:\__fp_chk:w #3#4
{\if_meaning:w 1 #4 \__fp_case_return_same_o:w \fi:
\if_meaning:w #1 #4 \__fp_case_return_o:Nw \c_zero_fp \fi:
\if_meaning:w 2 \s__fp:\__fp_chk:w #1#2#3; }
\__fp_case_use:nw
{ \__fp_division_by_zero_o:NNww \c_inf_fp ^
\s__fp:\__fp_chk:w #1 #2 ; }
\s__fp:\__fp_chk:w #3#4 }

(End definition for \__fp_-^:ww.)
\__fp_pow_normal_o:ww
We have in front of us \(a\), and \(b \neq 0\), we know that \(a\) is a normal number, and we wish to compute \(|a|^{b}\). If \(|a| = 1\), we return \(1\), unless \(a = -1\) and \(b\) is \texttt{nan}. Indeed, returning \(1\) at this point would wrongly raise “invalid” when the sign is considered. If \(|a| \neq 1\), test the type of \(b\):

0 Impossible, we already filtered \(b = \pm 0\).
1. Call \texttt{\_fp\_pow\_npos\_o:Nww}.

2. Return $+\infty$ or $+0$ depending on the sign of $b$ and whether the exponent of $a$ is positive or not.

3. Return $b$.

```
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_pow_normal_o:ww
\s__fp \__fp_chk:w 1 #1#2#3; \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #4#5
\{  
\if:w 0 \_fp\_str\_if:equ:n { #2 #3 } { 1 {1000} {0000} {0000} {0000} }  
\if_int_compare:w #4 #1 = 32 \exp_stop_f:  
\exp_after:wN \__fp\_case\_return\_ii_o:ww  
\fi:  
\__fp\_case\_return\_o:Nww \c\_one_fp  
\fi:  
\if_case:w #4 \exp_stop_f:
\or:  
\exp_after:wN \__fp\_pow\_npos\_o:Nww  
\exp_after:wN \c\_inf_fp  
\fi:  
\if:w #4 \exp_stop_f:  
\or:  
\exp_after:wN \__fp\_pow\_npos\_o:Nww  
\exp_after:wN \c\_zero_fp  
\fi:  
\__fp\_case\_return\_ii_o:ww  
\fi:  
\__fp\_chk:w 1 #1 {#2} #3 ;  
\__fp\_chk:w #4 #5
\}
```

(End definition for \texttt{\_fp\_pow\_normal\_o:ww}.)

\texttt{\_fp\_pow\_npos\_o:Nww} We now know that $a \neq \pm 1$ is a normal number, and $b$ is a normal number too. We want to compute $|a|^b = (|x| \cdot 10^n)^{10^p} = \exp((\ln |x| + n \ln(10)) \cdot y \cdot 10^p) = \exp(z)$. To compute the exponential accurately, we need to know the digits of $z$ up to the 16-th position. Since the exponential of $10^5$ is infinite, we only need at most 21 digits, hence the fixed point result of \texttt{\_fp\_ln_o:w} is precise enough for our needs. Start an integer expression for the decimal exponent of $|z|$. If $z$ is negative, negate that decimal exponent, and prepare to take the inverse when converting from the fixed point to the floating point result.

```
\cs_new:Npn \__fp\_pow\_npos\_o:Nww #1 \s__fp \__fp_chk:w 1 #1#2#3  
\exp_after:wN \__fp\_sanitize:Nw  
\exp_after:wN 0  
\int_value:w  
\if:w #1 \if_int_compare:w #3 > \c\_zero_int 0 \else: 2 \fi:  
\exp_after:wN \__fp\_pow\_npos\_aux:NNNw  
\exp_after:wN +  
\exp_after:wN \__fp\_fixed\_to\_float\_o:wN
```

1122
\__fp_pow_npos_aux:NNnww

The first argument is the conversion function from fixed point to float. Then comes an
exponent and the 4 brace groups of \textit{x}, followed by \textit{b}. Compute $-\ln(x)$.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_pow_npos_o:Nww #1; \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #2 #3 #4 #5; #6
{ % #1
 \__fp_int_eval:w \__fp_ln_significand:NNNNnnnN #4 #5
 \__fp_pow_exponent:wnN {#3}
 \__fp_fixed_mul:wwn #8 {0000}{0000} ;
 \__fp_pow_B:wwN #7;
 #1 #2 0 % fixed_to_float_o:wN
}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_pow_exponent:wnN #1; #2
{ % A todo: use that in \ln.
 \exp_after:wN \__fp_pow_exponent:Nwnnnnnw % n\ln(10) - (-\ln(x))
 \exp_after:wN +
 \else:
 \exp_after:wN \__fp_pow_exponent:Nwnnnnnw % -(|n|\ln(10) + (-\ln(x)))
 \exp_after:wN -
 \fi:
 #2; #1;
}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_pow_exponent:Nwnnnnnw #1 #2 #3 #4 #5 #6 #7 #8;
{ % A todo: use that in \ln.
 \exp_after:wN \__fp_fixed_mul_after:wwn
 \int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w \c__fp_leading_shift_int
 \__fp_pack:NNNNNw
 \int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w \c__fp_middle_shift_int
 #1*2^{3025} - #1 #3
 \exp_after:wN \__fp_pack:NNNNNw
 \int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w \c__fp_middle_shift_int
 #1*2^{8509} - #1 #4
 \exp_after:wN \__fp_pack:NNNNNw
 \int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w \c__fp_middle_shift_int
 #1*2^{2994} - #1 #5
 \exp_after:wN \__fp_pack:NNNNNw
 \int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w \c__fp_middle_shift_int
 #1*2^{0456} - #1 #6
 \exp_after:wN \__fp_pack:NNNNNw
 \int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w \c__fp_trailing_shift_int
 #1*2^{7991} - #1 #7
 #1 ( #2*7991 - #8 ) / 1 0000 ;
}
\end{verbatim}

1123
This function is followed by three floating point numbers: $a^b$, $a \in [-\infty, -0]$, and $b$. If $b$ is an even integer (case -1), $a^b = a^b$. If $b$ is an odd integer (case 0), $a^b = -a^b$, obtained by a call to \_fp_pow_neg_aux:NNWN. Otherwise, the sign is undefined. This is invalid, unless $a^b$ turns out to be $+0$ or $\text{nan}$, in which case we return that as $a^b$. In particular, since the
underflow detection occurs before \_\_fp\_pow\_neg:www is called, \((-0.1)**(12345.67)\) gives +0 rather than complaining that the sign is not defined.

This function expects a floating point number, and determines its “parity”. It should be used after \if_case:w or in an integer expression. It gives -1 if the number is an even integer, 0 if the number is an odd integer, and 1 otherwise. Zeros and \pm\infty are even (because very large finite floating points are even), while \texttt{nan} is a non-integer. The sign of normal numbers is irrelevant to parity. After \_\_fp\_decimate:nNnnn the argument \#1 of \_\_fp\_pow\_neg\_case:aux:NNnn is a rounding digit, 0 if and only if the number was an integer, and #3 is the 8 least significant digits of that integer.
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_pow_neg_case_aux:Nnnw #1#2#3#4 ; 
{ 
\if_meaning:w 0 #1 
\if_int_odd:w #3 \exp_stop_f: 
  0 
\else: 
  -1 
\fi: 
\else: 
  1 
\fi: 
\fi: 
}(End definition for \__fp_pow_neg_case:w, \__fp_pow_neg_case_aux:nw, and \__fp_pow_neg_case_aux:Nnnw.)

74.4 Factorial

\c__fp_fact_max_arg_int The maximum integer whose factorial fits in the exponent range is 3248, as 3249! \sim 10^{10000.8}
\int_const:Nn \c__fp_fact_max_arg_int { 3248 } (End definition for \c__fp_fact_max_arg_int.)

\__fp_fact_o:w First detect ±0 and +∞ and nan. Then note that factorial of anything with a negative sign (except −0) is undefined. Then call \__fp_small_int:wTF to get an integer as the argument, and start a loop. This is not the most efficient way of computing the factorial, but it works all right. Of course we work with 24 digits instead of 16. It is easy to check that computing factorials with this precision is enough.
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_fact_o:w #1 \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #2#3#4; @ 
{ 
\if_case:w #2 \exp_stop_f: 
\__fp_case_return_o:Nw \c_one_fp 
\or: 
\or: 
\if_meaning:w 0 #3 
\exp_after:wN \__fp_case_return_same_o:w 
\fi: 
\or: 
\__fp_fact_pos_o:w \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #2 #3 #4 ; 
\fi: 
\fi: 
\__fp_case_use:nw { \__fp_invalid_operation_o:fw { fact } } 
\fi: 
\__fp_fact_pos_o:w \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #2 #3 #4 ; 
}(End definition for \__fp_fact_o:w.)
\__fp_fact_pos_o:w
\__fp_fact_int_o:w

Then check the input is an integer, and call __fp_factorial_int:o:n with that int as an argument. If it’s too big the factorial overflows. Otherwise call __fp_sanitize:Nw with a positive sign marker 0 and an integer expression that will mop up any exponent in the calculation.

\cs_new:Npn \__fp_fact_pos_o:w #1; 
{ \__fp_small_int:wTF #1; 
{ \__fp_fact_int_o:n } 
{ \__fp_invalid_operation_o:fw { fact } #1; } } 
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_fact_int_o:n #1 
{ \if_int_compare:w #1 > \c__fp_fact_max_arg_int 
\__fp_case_return:nw 
{ \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \__fp_overflow:w 
\exp_after:wN \c_inf_fp } 
\fi: 
\exp_after:wN \__fp_sanitize:Nw 
\exp_after:wN 0 
\int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w 
\__fp_fact_loop_o:w #1 . 4 , { 1 } { } { } { } { } { } ; 
} 

(End definition for __fp_fact_pos:o:w and __fp_fact_int:o:w.)

\__fp_fact_loop_o:w

The loop receives an integer #1 whose factorial we want to compute, which we progressively decrement, and the result so far as an extended-precision number #2 in the form ⟨exponent⟩,⟨mantissa⟩; The loop goes in steps of two because we compute #1*#1-1 as an integer expression (it must fit since #1 is at most 3248), then multiply with the result so far. We don’t need to fill in most of the mantissa with zeros because __fp__-ep_mul:wwwwn first normalizes the extended precision number to avoid loss of precision. When reaching a small enough number simply use a table of factorials less than 10^8. This limit is chosen because the normalization step cannot deal with larger integers.

\cs_new:Npn \__fp_fact_loop_o:w #1 . #2 ; 
{ \if_int_compare:w #1 < 12 \exp_stop_f: 
\__fp_fact_small_o:w #1 
\fi: 
\exp_after:wN \__fp_ep_mul:wwwwn 
\exp_after:wN 4 \exp_after:wN , 
\exp_after:wN \{ \int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w #1 * (#1 - 1) \} \} { } { } { } { } { } ; 
#2 ; 
{ \exp_after:wN \__fp_fact_loop_o:w 
\int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w #1 - 2 . 
} 
} 
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_fact_small_o:w #1 \fi: #2 ; #3 ; #4 
{ \fi: 

1127
\exp_after:wN \__fp_ep_mul:wwwwn
\exp_after:wN 4 \exp_after:wN ,
\exp_after:wN \{
  \int_value:w
  \if_case:w #1 \exp_stop_f:
    1 \or: 1 \or: 2 \or: 6 \or: 24 \or: 120 \or: 720 \or: 5040
    \or: 40320 \or: 362880 \or: 3628800 \or: 39916800
  \fi:
    \} \} \} \} \} \} \} ;
\__fp_ep_to_float_o:wwN 0
\}

(End definition for \__fp_fact_loop_o:w.)

{/package}
Chapter 75

l3fp-trig Implementation

Unary functions.

```
\__fp_parse_word_acos:N
\__fp_parse_word_acosd:N
\__fp_parse_word_acsc:N
\__fp_parse_word_acscd:N
\__fp_parse_word_asec:N
\__fp_parse_word_asecd:N
\__fp_parse_word_asin:N
\__fp_parse_word_asind:N
\__fp_parse_word_cos:N
\__fp_parse_word_cosd:N
\__fp_parse_word_cot:N
\__fp_parse_word_cotd:N
\__fp_parse_word_csc:N
\__fp_parse_word_cscd:N
\__fp_parse_word_sec:N
\__fp_parse_word_secd:N
\__fp_parse_word_sin:N
\__fp_parse_word_sind:N
\__fp_parse_word_tan:N
\__fp_parse_word_tand:N
```

(Top boundary for \__fp_parse_word_acos:N and others.)

Those functions may receive a variable number of arguments.

```
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_word_acot:N
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_word_atan:N
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_parse_word_atand:N
```

(End definition for \__fp_parse_word_acot:N and others.)
75.1 Direct trigonometric functions

The approach for all trigonometric functions (sine, cosine, tangent, cotangent, cosecant, and secant), with arguments given in radians or in degrees, is the same.

- Filter out special cases ($\pm 0$, $\pm \infty$ and nan).
- Keep the sign for later, and work with the absolute value $|x|$ of the argument.
- Small numbers ($|x| < 1$ in radians, $|x| < 10$ in degrees) are converted to fixed point numbers (and to radians if $|x|$ is in degrees).
- For larger numbers, we need argument reduction. Subtract a multiple of $\pi/2$ (in degrees, 90) to bring the number to the range to $[0, \pi/2)$ (in degrees, $[0, 90)$).
- Reduce further to $[0, \pi/4)$ (in degrees, $[0, 45)$) using $\sin x = \cos(\pi/2 - x)$, and when working in degrees, convert to radians.
- Use the appropriate power series depending on the octant $\left\lfloor \frac{x}{\pi/4} \right\rfloor$ mod 8 (in degrees, the same formula with $\pi/4 \rightarrow 45$), the sign, and the function to compute.

75.1.1 Filtering special cases

This function, and its analogs for $\cos$, $\csc$, $\sec$, $\tan$, and $\cot$ instead of $\sin$, are followed either by \use_i:nn and a float in radians or by \use_ii:nn and a float in degrees. The sine of $\pm 0$ or nan is the same float. The sine of $\pm \infty$ raises an invalid operation exception with the appropriate function name. Otherwise, call the trig function to perform argument reduction and if necessary convert the reduced argument to radians. Then, \_fp_sin_series_o:NNwwww is called to compute the Taylor series: this function receives a sign \#3, an initial octant of 0, and the function \_fp_ep_to_float_o:wwN which converts the result of the series to a floating point directly rather than taking its inverse, since $\sin(x) = \#3\sin|x|$.

\_fp_cos_o:w
The cosine of $\pm 0$ is 1. The cosine of $\pm \infty$ raises an invalid operation exception. The cosine of nan is itself. Otherwise, the trig function reduces the argument to at most half a right-angle and converts if necessary to radians. We then call the same series as
for sine, but using a positive sign 0 regardless of the sign of \(x\), and with an initial octant of 2, because \(\cos(x) = +\sin(\pi/2 + |x|)\).

\[
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_cos_o:w #1 \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #2#3; @
\begin{verbatim}
\if_case:w #2 \exp_stop_f:
\__fp_case_return_o:Nw \c_one_fp
\or: \__fp_case_use:nw
\{\__fp_trig:NNNNNwm #1 \__fp_sin_series_o:NNwww
\__fp_ep_to_float_o:wwN 0 2
\}
\or: \__fp_case_use:nw
{ \__fp_invalid_operation_o:fw { #1 { cos } { coss } } }
\else: \__fp_case_return_same_o:w
\fi:
\s__fp \__fp_chk:w #2 #3;
\end{verbatim}
\end{equation}

\textit{(End definition for \__fp_cos_o:w.)}

\texttt{\__fp_csc_o:w} The cosecant of \(\pm 0\) is \(\pm \infty\) with the same sign, with a division by zero exception (see \texttt{\__fp_cot_zero_o:Nfw} defined below), which requires the function name. The cosecant of \(\pm \infty\) raises an invalid operation exception. The cosecant of \texttt{nan} is itself. Otherwise, the \texttt{trig} function performs the argument reduction, and converts if necessary to radians before calling the same series as for sine, using the sign \#3, a starting octant of 0, and inverting during the conversion from the fixed point sine to the floating point result, because \(\csc(x) = \#3(\sin|x|)^{-1}\).

\[
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_csc_o:w #1 \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #2#3#4; @
\begin{verbatim}
\if_case:w #2 \exp_stop_f:
\__fp_cot_zero_o:Nfw #3 { #1 { csc } { cscd } }
\or: \__fp_case_use:nw
\{\__fp_trig:NNNNNwm #1 \__fp_sin_series_o:NNwww
\__fp_ep_inv_to_float_o:wwN #3 0
\}
\or: \__fp_case_use:nw
{ \__fp_invalid_operation_o:fw { #1 { csc } { cscd } } }
\else: \__fp_case_return_same_o:w
\fi:
\s__fp \__fp_chk:w #2 #3 #4;
\end{verbatim}
\end{equation}

\textit{(End definition for \__fp_csc_o:w.)}

\texttt{\__fp_sec_o:w} The secant of \(\pm 0\) is 1. The secant of \(\pm \infty\) raises an invalid operation exception. The secant of \texttt{nan} is itself. Otherwise, the \texttt{trig} function reduces the argument and turns it to radians before calling the same series as for sine, using a positive sign 0, a starting octant of 2, and inverting upon conversion, because \(\sec(x) = +1/\sin(\pi/2 + |x|)\).

\[
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_sec_o:w #1 \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #2#3; @
\begin{verbatim}
\if_case:w #2 \exp_stop_f:
\__fp_case_return_o:Nw \c_one_fp
\end{verbatim}
\end{equation}

1131
The tangent of ±0 or nan is the same floating point number. The tangent of ±∞ raises an invalid operation exception. Once more, the trig function does the argument reduction step and conversion to radians before calling \__fp_tan_series_o:NNwwww, with a sign #3 and an initial octant of 1 (this shift is somewhat arbitrary). See \__fp_cot_o:w for an explanation of the 0 argument.

The cotangent of ±0 is ±∞ with the same sign, with a division by zero exception (see \__fp_tan_zero_o:Nfw). The cotangent of ±∞ raises an invalid operation exception. The cotangent of nan is itself. We use cot x = −tan(π/2 + x), and the initial octant for the tangent was chosen to be 1, so the octant here starts at 3. The change in sign is obtained by feeding \__fp_tan_series_o:NNwwww two signs rather than just the sign of the argument: the first of those indicates whether we compute tangent or cotangent. Those signs are eventually combined.
\__fp_trig:NNNNNwn

The first argument is \texttt{\use_i:nn} if the operand is in radians and \texttt{\use_ii:nn} if it is in degrees. Arguments \#2 to \#5 control what trigonometric function we compute, and \#6 to \#8 are pieces of a normal floating point number. Call \texttt{\_series} function \#2, with arguments \#3, either a conversion function (\texttt{\__fp_ep_to_float:o:wN} or \texttt{\__fp_ep_inv_to_float:o:wN}) or a sign 0 or 2 when computing tangent or cotangent; \#4, a sign 0 or 2; the octant, computed in an integer expression starting with \#5 and stopped by a period; and a fixed point number obtained from the floating point number by argument reduction (if necessary) and conversion to radians (if necessary). Any argument reduction adjusts the octant accordingly by leaving a (positive) shift into its integer expression. Let us explain the integer comparison. Two of the four \texttt{\exp_after:wN} are expanded, the expansion hits the test, which is true if the float is at least 1 when working in radians, and at least 10 when working in degrees. Then one of the remaining \texttt{\exp_after:wN} hits \#1, which picks the \texttt{trig} or \texttt{trigd} function in whichever branch of the conditional was taken. The final \texttt{\exp_after:wN} closes the conditional. At the end of the day, a number is \textit{large} if it is \textgreater{} 1 in radians or \textgreater{} 10 in degrees, and \textit{small} otherwise. All four \texttt{trig/trigd} auxiliaries receive the operand as an expanded-precision number.

\texttt{\__fp_trig:NNNNNwn}

(End definition for \texttt{\__fp_trig:NNNNNwn}.)
75.1.3 Small arguments

\_fp\_trig\_small:ww

This receives a small extended-precision number in radians and converts it to a fixed point number. Some trailing digits may be lost in the conversion, so we keep the original floating point number around: when computing sine or tangent (or their inverses), the last step is to multiply by the floating point number (as an extended-precision number) rather than the fixed point number. The period serves to end the integer expression for the octant.

27181 \cs_new:Npn \_fp\_trig\_small:ww #1,#2;  
27182 { \_fp\_ep\_to\_fixed:wwn #1,#2; . #1,#2; }

(End definition for \_fp\_trig\_small:ww.)

\_fp\_trigd\_small:ww

Convert the extended-precision number to radians, then call \_fp\_trig\_small:ww to massage it in the form appropriate for the _series auxiliary.

27183 \cs_new:Npn \_fp\_trigd\_small:ww #1,#2;  
27184  
27185 \_fp\_ep\_mul\_raw:wwwwN -1,{1745}{3292}{5199}{4329}{5769}{2369}; #1,#2;  
27186 \_fp\_trig\_small:ww

(End definition for \_fp\_trigd\_small:ww.)

75.1.4 Argument reduction in degrees

\_fp\_trigd\_large:ww \_fp\_trigd\_large\_auxi:nnnnwNNNN \_fp\_trigd\_large\_auxii:wNw \_fp\_trigd\_large\_auxiii:www

Note that $25 \times 360 = 9000$, so $10^{k+1} \equiv 10^k \pmod{360}$ for $k \geq 3$. When the exponent #1 is very large, we can thus safely replace it by 22 (or even 19). We turn the floating point number into a fixed point number with two blocks of 8 digits followed by five blocks of 4 digits. The original float is $100 \times \langle block_1 \rangle \cdots \langle block_3 \rangle \langle block_4 \rangle \cdots \langle block_7 \rangle$, or is equal to it modulo 360 if the exponent #1 is very large. The first auxiliary finds $\langle block_1 \rangle + \langle block_2 \rangle$ (mod 9), a single digit, and prepends it to the 4 digits of $\langle block_3 \rangle$. It also unpacks $\langle block_4 \rangle$ and grabs the 4 digits of $\langle block_5 \rangle$. The second auxiliary grabs the $\langle block_3 \rangle$ plus any contribution from the first two blocks as #1, the first digit of $\langle block_4 \rangle$ (just after the decimal point in hundreds of degrees) as #2, and the third other digits as #3. It finds the quotient and remainder of #1#2 modulo 9, adds twice the quotient to the integer expression for the octant, and places the remainder (between 0 and 8) before #3 to form a new $\langle block_4 \rangle$. The resulting fixed point number is $x \in [0,0.9]$. If $x \geq 0.45$, we add 1 to the octant and feed $0.9 - x$ with an exponent of 2 (to compensate the fact that we are working in units of hundreds of degrees rather than degrees) to \_fp\_trig\_small:ww. Otherwise, we feed it $x$ with an exponent of 2. The third auxiliary also discards digits which were not packed into the various $\langle blocks \rangle$. Since the original exponent #1 is at least 2, those are all 0 and no precision is lost (#6 and #7 are four 0 each).

27189 \cs_new:Npn \_fp\_trigd\_large:ww #1, #2#3#4#5#6#7;  
27190 { \exp_after:wN \_fp\_pack\_eight:wwNNNNNNN  
27191 \exp_after:wN \_fp\_pack\_eight:wwNNNNNNN  
27192 \exp_after:wN \_fp\_pack\_twice\_four:wwNNNNNNN  
27193 \exp_after:wN \_fp\_pack\_twice\_four:wwNNNNNNN  
27194 \exp_after:wN \_fp\_trigd\_large\_auxi:nnnnwNNNN  
27195 \exp_after:wN \_fp\_trigd\_large\_auxii:wNw  
27196 \exp_after:wN \_fp\_trigd\_large\_auxiii:www  
27197 \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w
\begin{verbatim}
\prg_replicate:n { \int_max:n { 22 - #1 } { 0 } } { 0 }
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_trigd_large:ww #1; #2; #3; #4; #5;
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_trigd_large_auxii:ww #1; #2; #3;
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_trigd_large_auxiii:ww #1; #2; #3!
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\exp_after:wN \__fp_use_i_until_s:nw \exp_after:wN \__fp_fixed_continue:wn
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\exp_after:wN \__fp_fixed_sub:wwn {9000}{0000}{0000}; #1
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\exp_after:wN \__fp_trigd_small:ww 2, )
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__fp_trigd_large:ww and others.)

\subsection{75.1.5 Argument reduction in radians}

Arguments greater or equal to 1 need to be reduced to a range where we only need a few terms of the Taylor series. We reduce to the range \([0, 2\pi]\) by subtracting multiples of \(2\pi\), then to the smaller range \([0, \pi/2]\) by subtracting multiples of \(\pi/2\) (keeping track of how many times \(\pi/2\) is subtracted), then to \([0, \pi/4]\) by mapping \(x \rightarrow \pi/2 - x\) if appropriate. When the argument is very large, say, \(10^{100}\), an equally large multiple of \(2\pi\) must be subtracted, hence we must work with a very good approximation of \(2\pi\) in order to get a sensible remainder modulo \(2\pi\).

Specifically, we multiply the argument by an approximation of \(1/(2\pi)\) with 10048 digits, then discard the integer part of the result, keeping 52 digits of the fractional part. From the fractional part of \(x/(2\pi)\) we deduce the octant (quotient of the first three digits by 125). We then multiply by 8 or \(-8\) (the latter when the octant is odd), ignore any integer part (related to the octant), and convert the fractional part to an extended precision number, before multiplying by \(\pi/4\) to convert back to a value in radians in \([0, \pi/4]\).

It is possible to prove that given the precision of floating points and their range of exponents, the 52 digits may start at most with 24 zeros. The 5 last digits are affected by carries from computations which are not done, hence we are left with at least 52 - 24 - 5 = 23 significant digits, enough to round correctly up to \(0.6 \cdot \text{ulp}\) in all cases.
This integer array stores blocks of 8 decimals of $10^{-16}/(2\pi)$. Each entry is $10^8$ plus an 8 digit number storing 8 decimals. In total we store 10112 decimals of $10^{-16}/(2\pi)$. The number of decimals we really need is the maximum exponent plus the number of digits we later need, 52, plus 12 (4 – 1 groups of 4 digits). The memory footprint (1/2 byte per digit) is the same as an earlier method of storing the data as a control sequence name, but the major advantage is that we can unpack specific subsets of the digits without unpacking the 10112 decimals.
The exponent #1 is between 1 and 10000. We wish to look up decimals \( 10^{#1-16}/(2\pi) \) starting from the digit #1 + 1. Since they are stored in batches of 8, compute \([#1/8]\) and fetch blocks of 8 digits starting there. The numbering of items in \c__fp_trig_intarray\ starts at 1, so the block \([#1/8] + 1\) contains the digit we want, at one of the eight positions. Each call to \int_value:w \__kernel_intarray_item:Nn\ expands the next, until being stopped by \__fp_trig_large_auxiii:w using \exp_stop_f:. Once all these blocks are unpacked, the \exp_stop_f:\ and 0 to 7 digits are removed by \use_none:n...n. Finally, \__fp_trig_large_auxii:w\ packs 64 digits (there are between 65 and 72 at this point) into groups of 4 and the auxv auxiliary is called.
First come the first 64 digits of the fractional part of $10^{#1-16}/(2\pi)$, arranged in 16 blocks of 4, and ending with a semicolon. Then a few more digits of the same fractional part, ending with a semicolon, then 4 blocks of 4 digits holding the significand of the original argument. Multiply the 16-digit significand with the 64-digit fractional part: the auxvi auxiliary receives the significand as $#2#3#4#5$ and 16 digits of the fractional part as $#6#7#8#9$, and computes one step of the usual ladder of pack functions we use for multiplication (see e.g., \_\_fp_fixed_mul:www), then discards one block of the fractional part to set things up for the next step of the ladder. We perform 13 such steps, replacing the last middle shift by the appropriate trailing shift, then discard the significand and remaining 3 blocks from the fractional part, as there are not enough digits to compute any more step in the ladder. The last semicolon closes the ladder, and we return control to the auxvii auxiliary.
The auxvii auxiliary is followed by 52 digits and a semicolon. We find the octant as the integer part of 8 times what follows, or equivalently as the integer part of \( \frac{#1#2#3}{125} \), and add it to the surrounding integer expression for the octant. We then compute 8 times the 52-digit number, with a minus sign if the octant is odd. Again, the last middle shift is converted to a trailing shift. Any integer part (including negative values which come up when the octant is odd) is discarded by \( \__fp_use_i_until_s:nw \). The resulting fractional part should then be converted to radians by multiplying by 2\( \pi \)/8, but first, build an extended precision number by abusing \( \__fp_ep_to_ep_loop:N \) with the appropriate trailing markers. Finally, \( \__fp_trig_small:ww \) sets up the argument for the functions which compute the Taylor series.
### Computing the power series

Here we receive a conversion function `\__fp_ep_to_float_o:wwN` or `\__fp_inv_to_float_o:wwN`, a \langle sign \rangle (0 or 2), a (non-negative) \langle octant \rangle delimited by a dot, a \langle fixed point \rangle number delimited by a semicolon, and an extended-precision number. The auxiliary receives:

- the conversion function \#1;
- the final sign, which depends on the octant \#3 and the sign \#2;
- the octant \#3, which controls the series we use;
- the square \#4 * \#4 of the argument as a fixed point number, computed with `\__fp_fixed_mul:wwn`;
- the number itself as an extended-precision number.

If the octant is in \{1, 2, 5, 6, \ldots\}, we are near an extremum of the function and we use the series

\[
\cos(x) = 1 - x^2 \left( \frac{1}{2!} - x^2 \left( \frac{1}{4!} - x^2 \left( \cdots \right) \right) \right).
\]

Otherwise, the series

\[
\sin(x) = x \left( 1 - x^2 \left( \frac{1}{3!} - x^2 \left( \frac{1}{5!} - x^2 \left( \cdots \right) \right) \right) \right)
\]

is used. Finally, the extended-precision number is converted to a floating point number with the given sign, and `\__fp_sanitize:Nw` checks for overflow and underflow.
\[\tan(x) \approx \frac{x(1 - x^2(a_1 - x^2(a_2 - x^2(a_3 - x^2(a_4 - x^2a_5))))}{1 - x^2(b_1 - x^2(b_2 - x^2(b_3 - x^2(b_4 - x^2b_5))))}.\]
numerator and denominator are exchanged before computing the ratio. Note that this
\if_int_odd:w test relies on the fact that the octant is at least 1.

(End definition for \__fp_tan_series_o:NNwwww and \__fp_tan_series_aux_o:NNww.)

75.2 Inverse trigonometric functions

All inverse trigonometric functions (arcsine, arccosine, arctangent, arccotangent, arccosecant, and arcsecant) are based on a function often denoted atan2. This func-
Arctangent and arccotangent

Rather than introducing a new function, atan2, the arctangent function atan is overloaded: it can take one or two arguments. In the comments below, following many texts, we call the first argument y and the second x, because atan(y, x) = atan(y/x) is the argument reduction. The sign of y gives that of the result. We distinguish eight regions where the point (x, y) can lie, of angular size roughly $\pi/8$, characterized by their “octant”, between 0 and 7 included. In each region, we compute an arctangent as a Taylor series, then shift this arctangent by the appropriate multiple of $\pi/4$ and sign to get the result. Here is a list of octants, and how we compute the arctangent (we assume $y > 0$: otherwise replace y by $-y$ below):

\[
\begin{align*}
0 & \quad 0 < |y| < 0.41421x, \text{ then } \frac{|y|}{x} \text{ is given by a nicely convergent Taylor series;} \\
1 & \quad 0 < 0.41421x < |y| < x, \text{ then } \frac{|y|}{x} = \frac{\pi}{4} - \tan \frac{\pi - |y|}{x + |y|}; \\
2 & \quad 0 < 0.41421|y| < x < |y|, \text{ then } \frac{|y|}{x} = \frac{\pi}{4} + \tan \frac{x - |y|}{x + |y|}; \\
3 & \quad 0 < x < 0.41421|y|, \text{ then } \frac{|y|}{x} = \frac{\pi}{2} - \tan \frac{x}{|y|}; \\
4 & \quad 0 < -x < 0.41421|y|, \text{ then } \frac{|y|}{x} = \frac{\pi}{2} + \tan \frac{-x}{|y|}; \\
5 & \quad 0 < 0.41421|y| < -x < |y|, \text{ then } \frac{|y|}{x} = \frac{3\pi}{4} - \tan \frac{x - |y|}{x + |y|}; \\
6 & \quad 0 < -0.41421x < |y| < x, \text{ then } \frac{|y|}{x} = \frac{3\pi}{4} + \tan \frac{-x - |y|}{x + |y|}; \\
7 & \quad 0 < |y| < -0.41421x, \text{ then } \frac{|y|}{x} = \pi - \tan \frac{x}{-y}.
\end{align*}
\]

In the following, we denote by $z$ the ratio among $|\frac{\pi}{4}|$, $|\frac{\pi}{2}|$, $|\frac{\pi + |y|}{x + |y|}|$, $|\frac{\pi - |y|}{x + |y|}|$ which appears in the right-hand side above.

### 75.2.1 Arctangent and arccotangent

The parsing step manipulates atan and acot like min and max, reading in an array of operands, but also leaves \use_i:nn or \use_ii:nn depending on whether the result
should be given in radians or in degrees. The helper \_\_fp_parse_function_one_two:nnw checks that the operand is one or two floating point numbers (not tuples) and leaves its second argument or its tail accordingly (its first argument is used for error messages). More precisely if we are given a single floating point number \_\_fp_atan_default:w places \c_one_fp (expanded) after it; otherwise \_\_fp_atan_default:w is omitted by \_\_fp_parse_function_one_two:nnw.

\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_atan_o:Nw #1
\begin{verbatim}
\_\_fp_parse_function_one_two:nnw
\{ #1 \{ atan \} \{ atand \} \}
\end{verbatim}
\{ \_\_fp_atan_default:w \_\_fp_atanii_o:Nww #1 \}
\}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_acot_o:Nw #1
\begin{verbatim}
\_\_fp_parse_function_one_two:nnw
\{ #1 \{ acot \} \{ acotd \} \}
\end{verbatim}
\{ \_\_fp_atan_default:w \_\_fp_acotii_o:Nww #1 \}
\}
\cs_new:Npx \_\_fp_atan_default:w #1#2#3 @ { #1 #2 #3 \c_one_fp @ }
\end{verbatim}
(End definition for \_\_fp_atan_o:Nw, \_\_fp_acot_o:Nw, and \_\_fp_atan_default:w.)

\_\_fp_atanii_o:Nww
\_\_fp_acotii_o:Nww
If either operand is \texttt{nan}, we return it. If both are normal, we call \_\_fp_atan_normal_o:NNNw. If both are zero or both infinity, we call \_\_fp_atan_inf_o:NNWW with argument \texttt{2}, leading to a result among \{±\pi/4,±3\pi/4\} (in degrees, \{±45,±135\}). Otherwise, one is much bigger than the other, and we call \_\_fp_atan_inf_o:NNWW with an argument of \texttt{4}, leading to the values \{±\pi/2\} (in degrees, \{±90\}), or \texttt{0}, leading to \{±0,±\pi\} (in degrees, \{±0,±180\}). Since \texttt{acot(x,y) = atan(y,x)}, \_\_fp_acotii_o:ww simply reverses its two arguments.

\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_atanii_o:Nww
\begin{verbatim}
\_\_fp_acotii_o:Nww
\end{verbatim}
(End definition for \_\_fp_atanii_o:Nww and \_\_fp_acotii_o:Nww.)
This auxiliary is called whenever one number is \( \pm 0 \) or \( \pm \infty \) (and neither is \texttt{nan}). Then the result only depends on the signs, and its value is a multiple of \( \pi/4 \). We use the same auxiliary as for normal numbers, \__fp_atan_combine_o:NNNwN, with arguments the final sign \#2; the octant \#3; \( \text{atan} \frac{z}{z} = 1 \) as a fixed point number; \( z = 0 \) as a fixed point number; and \( z = 0 \) as an extended-precision number. Given the values we provide, \( \text{atan} z \) is computed to be 0, and the result is \( \lceil 3/2 \rceil \cdot \pi/4 \) if the sign \#5 of \( x \) is positive, and \( \lfloor (7 - 3)/2 \rfloor \cdot \pi/4 \) for negative \( x \), where the divisions are rounded up.

\[
\text{\__fp_atan_inf_o:NNNw} \text{\#1\#2\#3 \s__fp \__fp_chk:w \#4\#5\#6;}
\]

\[
\text{\__fp_atan_normal_o:NNNwNwN}
\]

Here we simply reorder the floating point data into a pair of signed extended-precision numbers, that is, a sign, an exponent ending with a comma, and a six-block mantissa ending with a semi-colon. This extended precision is required by other inverse trigonometric functions, to compute things like \( \text{atan}(x, \sqrt{1 - x^2}) \) without intermediate rounding errors.

\[
\text{\__fp_atan_test_o:NwwNwwN #1 \#2#3 \#4#5#6;}
\]
This receives two positive numbers $a$ and $b$ (equal to $|x|$ and $|y|$ in some order), each as an exponent and 6 blocks of 4 digits, such that $0 < a < b$. If $0.41421b < a$, the two numbers are “near”, hence the point $(y,x)$ that we started with is closer to the diagonals \{y = |x|\} than to the axes \{xy = 0\}. In that case, the octant is 1 (possibly combined with the 7− and 3− inserted earlier) and we wish to compute \(\frac{b - a}{a + b}\). Otherwise, the octant is 0 (again, combined with earlier terms) and we wish to compute \(\frac{b}{a}\). In any case, call \(\__fp_atan_div:wwwwn\) followed by \(z\), as a comma-delimited exponent and a fixed point number.

\(\__fp_atan_div:wwwwn\), \(\__fp_atan_near:wwwn\), and \(\__fp_atan_near_aux:wwn\)

\(\__fp_atan_auxi:ww\)

Convert $z$ from a representation as an exponent and a fixed point number in [0.01, 1) to a fixed point number only, then set up the call to \(\__fp_atan_Taylor_loop:www\), followed by the fixed point representation of $z$ and the old representation.

\(\__fp_atan_auxii:w\)
We compute the series of \((\text{atan} z)/z\). A typical intermediate stage has 
\[ k = 2^i - 1, \]
\[ z = \frac{1}{2^{i+1}} - z^2\left(\frac{1}{2^{i+1}} - z^2\left(\cdots - z^2\frac{1}{39}\right)\right), \] and 
\[ 3^2 = z^2. \]
To go to the next step \(k \rightarrow k - 1\), we compute
\[ \frac{1}{2^i}, \] then subtract from it \(z^2\) times \#2. The loop stops when \(k = 0\): then 
\#2 is \((\text{atan} z)/z\), and there is a need to clean up all the unnecessary data, end the integer
expression computing the octant with a semicolon, and leave the result \#2 afterwards.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_atan_Taylor_loop:www #1; #2; #3;
\{ \exp_after:wN \__fp_fixed_div_int:wwN \c__fp_one_fixed_tl #1; \__fp_rrot:www \__fp_fixed_mul_sub_back:wwwn #2; #3; \}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_atan_Taylor_break:w #1 \__fp_fixed_mul_sub_back:wwwn #2; #3 !
{ \fi: ; #2 ; }
\end{verbatim}
75.2.2 Arcsine and arccosine

\_\_fp_asin_o:w Again, the first argument provided by l3fp-parse is \use_i:nn if we are to work in radians and \use_i:nn for degrees. Then comes a floating point number. The arcsine of ±0 or nan is the same floating point number. The arcsine of ±∞ raises an invalid operation exception. Otherwise, call an auxiliary common with \_\_fp_acos_o:w, feeding it information about what function is being performed (for “invalid operation” exceptions).

\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_asin_o:w #1 \s__fp \s__fp_chk:w #2#3; @

\if_case:w #2 \exp_stop_f:
\__fp_case_return_same_o:w
\or:
\__fp_case_use:nw { \_\_fp_asin_normal_o:NfwNnnnnw #1 { #1 { \_\_fp_acos_o:w } } } 
\or:
\__fp_case_use:nw { \_\_fp_invalid_operation_o:fw { #1 { \_\_fp_acos_o:w } } } 
\else:
\__fp_case_return_same_o:w
\fi:
\s__fp \s__fp_chk:w #2 #3;

(End definition for \_\_fp_atan_combine_o:NwwwwN and \_\_fp_atan_combine_aux:ww.)
The arccosine of $\pm 0$ is $\pi/2$ (in degrees, 90). The arccosine of $\pm \infty$ raises an invalid operation exception. The arccosine of $\text{nan}$ is itself. Otherwise, call an auxiliary common with \_fp_sin_o:w, informing it that it was called by acos or acosd, and preparing to swap some arguments down the line.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_fp_acos_o:w #1 \s__fp \_fp_chk:w #2#3; @
{\if_case:w #2 \exp_stop_f:
  \_fp_case_use:nw { \_fp_atan_inf_o:NNNw #1 0 4 }
\or:
  \_fp_case_use:nw
    { \_fp_asin_normal_o:NfwNnnnnw #1 { #1 { acos } { acosd } }
      \_fp_reverse_args:Nww }
\or:
  \_fp_case_use:nw
    { \_fp_invalid_operation_o:fw {#2} }
\else:
  \_fp_case_return_same_o:w
\fi:
\s__fp \_fp_chk:w #2 #3; }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \_fp_acos_o:w)

\_fp_acos_normal_o:NfwNnnnnw

If the exponent \#5 is at most 0, the operand lies within $(-1,1)$ and the operation is permitted: call \_fp_asin_auxi_o:NnNww with the appropriate arguments. If the number is exactly $\pm 1$ (the test works because we know that \#5 $\geq 1$, \#6\#7 $\geq 1000000$, \#8\#9 $\geq 0$, with equality only for $\pm 1$), we also call \_fp_asin_auxi_o:NnNww. Otherwise, \_fp_use_i:ww gets rid of the asin auxiliary, and raises instead an invalid operation, because the operand is outside the domain of arcsine or arccosine.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_fp_acos_normal_o:NfwNnnnnw
{\if_int_compare:w \#5 < \c_one_int
  \exp_after:wN \_fp_use_none_until_s:w
\fi:
\if_int_compare:w \__fp_int_eval:w \#5 + \#6\#7 + \#8\#9 = 1000 0001
  \exp_after:wN \_fp_use_none_until_s:w
\fi:
\_fp_use_i:ww
\_fp_invalid_operation_o:fw \#2
\_s__fp \_fp_chk:w \#1#4#5#6#7#8#9;
\_fp_asin_auxi_o:NnNww
  \#1 \#3 \#4 \#5,\#6,\#7,\#8,\#9,\{0000\}{0000};
}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \_fp_acos_normal_o:NfwNnnnnw)

\_fp_acos_isqrt:wn

We compute $x/\sqrt{1-x^2}$. This function is used by asin and acos, but also by acsc and asec after inverting the operand, thus it must manipulate extended-precision numbers. First evaluate $1-x^2$ as $(1+x)(1-x)$: this behaves better near $x = 1$. We do the
addition/subtraction with fixed point numbers (they are not implemented for extended-
precision floats), but go back to extended-precision floats to multiply and compute the
inverse square root $1/\sqrt{1-x^2}$. Finally, multiply by the (positive) extended-precision float
$|x|$, and feed the (signed) result, and the number +1, as arguments to the arctangent
function. When computing the arccosecine, the arguments $x/\sqrt{1-x^2}$ and +1 are swapped
by #2 (\_\_fp\_reverse\_args:Nww in that case) before \_\_fp\_atan\_test\_o:NwwNww is
evaluated. Note that the arctangent function requires normalized arguments, hence the
need for ep\_to\_ep and continue after ep\_mul.

```
cs_new:Npn \_\_fp\_asin\_auxi\_o:NnNww #1#2#3#4,#5;
  \_\_fp\_ep\_to\_fixed:wwn #4,#5;
  \_\_fp\_asin\_isqrt:wn
  \_\_fp\_ep\_mul:wwwn #4,#5;
  \_\_fp\_ep\_to\_ep:wwN
  \_\_fp\_fixed\_continue:wn
  \{ #2 \_\_fp\_atan\_test\_o:NwwNwwN #3 \}
  0 1,{1000}{0000}{0000}{0000}{0000}{0000}; #1
\}
cs_new:Npn \_\_fp\_asin\_isqrt:wn #1;
  \exp_after:wN \_\_fp\_fixed\_sub:wwn \c\_\_fp\_one\_fixed_tl #1;
  \{ \_\_fp\_fixed\_add\_one:wn #1;
  \_\_fp\_fixed\_continue:wn \{ \_\_fp\_ep\_mul:wwwn 0, } 0,
  \}
  \_\_fp\_ep\_isqrt:wn
\}
```

(End definition for \_\_fp\_asin\_auxi\_o:NnNww and \_\_fp\_asin\_isqrt:wn.)

### 75.2.3 Arccosecant and arcsecant

\_\_fp\_acsc\_o:w

Cases are mostly labelled by #2, except when #2 is 2: then we use #3#2, which is 02 = 2
when the number is $+\infty$ and 22 when the number is $-\infty$. The arccosecant of ±0 raises
an invalid operation exception. The arccosecant of $\pm \infty$ is $\pm 0$ with the same sign. The
arcsecant of nan is itself. Otherwise, \_\_fp\_acsc\_normal\_o:NfwNww does some more
tests, keeping the function name (acsc or acscd) as an argument for invalid operation
exceptions.

```
cs_new:Npn \_\_fp\_acsc\_o:w #1 \s\_\_fp \_\_fp\_chk:w #2#3#4; @
  \{ \_\_fp\_case\_use:nw \_\_fp\_invalid\_operation\_o:fw \{ \_\_fp\_one\_fixed_tl #1 \}
  \_\_fp\_case\_return_o:Nw \c_zero_fp
  \_\_fp\_case\_return\_same_o:w
  \_\_fp\_case\_return_o:Nw \c\_\_fp\_one\_fixed_tl #1 \}
  \_\_fp\_acsc\_normal\_o:NfwNww #1 \_\_fp\_acsc\_o:w
  \_\_fp\_case\_return_same_o:w
  \fi:
  \_\_fp\_chk:w #2 #3 #4;
```

(End definition for \_\_fp\_acsc\_o:w.)

1153
The arcsecant of ±0 raises an invalid operation exception. The arcsecant of ±∞ is π/2 (in degrees, 90). The arcsecant of nan is itself. Otherwise, do some more tests, keeping
the function name asec (or asecd) as an argument for invalid operation exceptions, and
a \_\_fp_reverse_args:Nww following precisely that appearing in \_\_fp_acos_o:w.

\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_asec_o:w #1 \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #2#3; @
\begin{Verbatim}
\if_case:w #2 \exp_stop_f:
\__fp_case_use:nw { \__fp_invalid_operation_o:fw { #1 { asec } { asecd } } }
\or:
\__fp_case_use:nw
\begin{Verbatim}
\__fp_acsc_normal_o:NfwNnw #1 { #1 { asec } { asecd } }
\__fp_reverse_args:Nww
\end{Verbatim}
\or: \__fp_case_use:nw { \__fp_atan_inf_o:NNNw #1 0 4 }
\else: \__fp_case_return_same_o:w
\fi:
\s__fp \__fp_chk:w #2 #3;
\end{Verbatim}
\end{Verbatim}

\cs_new:Npn \__fp_acsc_normal_o:NfwNnw #1#2#3 \s__fp \__fp_chk:w 1#4#5#6;
\begin{Verbatim}
\int_compare:nNnTF {#5} < 1
\begin{Verbatim}
\__fp_invalid_operation_o:fw {#2}
\s__fp \__fp_chk:w 1#4{#5}#6;
\end{Verbatim}
\end{Verbatim}
\begin{Verbatim}
\__fp_ep_div:wwwwn 1,{1000}{0000}{0000}{0000};#5,#6{0000}{0000};
\__fp_asin_auxi_o:NnNww #1 {#3} #4 
\end{Verbatim}
\end{Verbatim}
\end{Verbatim}

(End definition for \_\_fp_asec_o:w.)

\cs_new:Npn \__fp_acsc_normal_o:NfwNnw #1#2#3 \s__fp \__fp_chk:w 1#4#5#6;
\begin{Verbatim}
\int_compare:nNnTF {#5} < 1
\begin{Verbatim}
\__fp_invalid_operation_o:fw {#2}
\s__fp \__fp_chk:w 1#4{#5}#6;
\end{Verbatim}
\end{Verbatim}
\begin{Verbatim}
\__fp_ep_div:wwwwn 1,{1000}{0000}{0000}{0000};#5,#6{0000}{0000};
\__fp_asin_auxi_o:NnNww #1 {#3} #4 
\end{Verbatim}
\end{Verbatim}

(End definition for \_\_fp_acsc_normal_o:NfwNnw.)
Chapter 76

13fp-convert implementation

76.1 Dealing with tuples

The first argument is for instance  \_\_fp_to_tl_dispatch:w, which converts any floating point object to the appropriate representation. We loop through all items, putting ,, between all of them and making sure to remove the leading ,-

```latex
\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_tuple_convert:Nw #1 \s__fp_tuple \__fp_tuple_chk:w #2 ;
\{\int_case:nnF { \__fp_array_count:n {#2} } { 0 } { ( ) } { 1 } { \_\_fp_tuple_convert:w @ { #1 #2 , } }\}
\__fp_tuple_convert_loop:nNw { } #1 #2 { ? \_\_fp_tuple_convert_end:w } ; \use_none:nn
```

(End definition for  \_\_fp_tuple_convert:Nw, \_\_fp_tuple_convert_loop:nW, and \_\_fp_tuple_convert_end:w.)

76.2 Trimming trailing zeros

If #1 ends with a 0, the loop auxiliary takes that zero as an end-delimiter for its first argument, and the second argument is the same loop auxiliary. Once the last trailing

```
\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_tuple_convert_loop:nNw #1#2#3; #4 @ #5
\{ \use_none:n #3 \exp_args:Nf \_\_fp_tuple_convert_loop:nW { #2 #3#4 ; } #2 #5 @ { \_\_fp_tuple_convert_end:w } \exp_after:wN ( \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w #4 )
```

```
\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_tuple_convert_end:w #1 @ #2
\{ \exp_after:wN ( \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w #2 )
```
zero is reached, the second argument is the dot auxiliary, which removes a trailing dot if any. We then clean-up with the end auxiliary, keeping only the number.

2794 \cs_new:Npn \__fp_trim_zeros:w #1 ;
2795 { \__fp_trim_zeros_loop:w #1 ; \__fp_trim_zeros:dot:w . ; \_s__fp_stop
2796 }
2797 \cs_new:Npn \__fp_trim_zeros_loop:w #1 0; #2 { #2 #1 ; #2 }
2798 \cs_new:Npn \__fp_trim_zeros:dot:w #1 .; { \__fp_trim_zeros_end:w #1 ; }
2799 \cs_new:Npn \__fp_trim_zeros_end:w #1 ; #2 \_s__fp_stop { #1 }

(End definition for \__fp_trim_zeros:w and others.)

76.3 Scientific notation

The three public functions evaluate their argument, then pass it to \_fp_to_scientific_dispatch:w.

\cs_new:Npn \_fp_to_scientific:N #1
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \_fp_to_scientific:N { c }
\cs_new:Npn \_fp_to_scientific:n
{ \exp_after:wN \__fp_to_scientific_dispatch:w \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w \_fp_parse:n }

(End definition for \_fp_to_scientific:N and \_fp_to_scientific:n. These functions are documented on page 242.)

\_fp_to_scientific_dispatch:w
\_fp_to_scientific_recover:w
\_fp_tuple_to_scientific:w

We allow tuples.

\cs_new:Npn \_fp_to_scientific_dispatch:w #1
{ \__fp_change_func_type:NNN
\_fp_to_scientific:w \_fp_to_scientific_recover:w
#1
}
\cs_new:Npn \_fp_to_scientific_recover:w #1 #2 ;
{ \_fp_error:nffn { unknown-type } { \_tl_to_str:n { #2 ; } } { } { }
\_nan
}
\cs_new:Npn \_fp_tuple_to_scientific:w
{ \_fp_tuple_convert:Nw \_fp_to_scientific_dispatch:w }

(End definition for \_fp_to_scientific_dispatch:w, \_fp_to_scientific_recover:w, and \_fp_tuple_to_scientific:w.)

Expressing an internal floating point number in scientific notation is quite easy: no rounding, and the format is very well defined. First cater for the sign: negative numbers (#2 = 2) start with -; we then only need to care about positive numbers and \_nan. Then filter the special cases: ±0 are represented as 0; infinities are converted to a number slightly larger than the largest after an “invalid_operation” exception; \_nan is represented as 0 after an “invalid_operation” exception. In the normal case, decrement the exponent.
and unbrace the 4 brace groups, then in a second step grab the first digit (previously
hidden in braces) to order the various parts correctly.

\cs_new:Npn \__fp_to_scientific:w \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #1#2
\{  
  \if_meaning:w 2 #2 \exp_after:wN - \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w \fi:
  \if_case:w #1 \exp_stop_f:
    \__fp_case_return:nw \{ \fp_to_scientific:N \c__fp_overflowing_fp \}
    \{ \fp_to_scientific \}
  \or:
    \__fp_case_use:nw
    \__fp_invalid_operation:nnw
    \{ \fp_to_scientific:N \c_zero_fp \}
    \{ \fp_to_scientific \}
  \or:
    \__fp_case_use:nw
    \__fp_invalid_operation:nnw
    \{ \fp_to_scientific \}
    \{ \fp_to_scientific \}
  \fi:
  \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #1 #2\}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_to_scientific_normal:wnnnnn
\s__fp \__fp_chk:w 1 #1 #2 #3 #4 #5 #6 ;
\{ \exp_after:wN \__fp_to_scientific_normal:wNw \exp_after:wN e \int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w #2 - 1 ; #3 #4 #5 #6 ; \}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_to_scientific_normal:wNw #1 ; #2 #3; \{ #2 #3 #1 \}
(End definition for \__fp_to_scientific:w, \__fp_to_scientific_normal:wnnnnn, and \__fp_to_scientific_normal:wnW.)

\section{Decimal representation}

\texttt{\_\_fp_to_decimal:N} \texttt{\_\_fp_to_decimal:c} \texttt{\_\_fp_to_decimal:n}

\texttt{\cs_new:Npn \fp_to_decimal:N #1 \{ \exp_after:wN \_\_fp_to_decimal_dispatch:w \#1 \}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \fp_to_decimal:N { c } \cs_new:Npn \fp_to_decimal:n \{ \exp_after:wN \_\_fp_to_decimal_dispatch:w \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w \_\_fp_parse:n \}
(End definition for \texttt{\fp_to_decimal:N} and \texttt{\fp_to_decimal:n}. These functions are documented on page 241.)
We allow tuples.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_to_decimal_dispatch:w #1
\{ \__fp_change_func_type:NNN \__fp_to_decimal:w \__fp_to_decimal_recover:w \}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_to_decimal_recover:w #1 #2 ;
\{ \__fp_error:nffn { unknown-type } { \tl_to_str:n { #2 ; } } { } { } nan \}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_tuple_to_decimal:w
\{ \__fp_tuple_convert:Nw \__fp_to_decimal_dispatch:w \}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__fp_to_decimal_dispatch:w, \__fp_to_decimal_recover:w, and \__fp_tuple_to_decimal:w.)

The structure is similar to \__fp_to_scientific:w. Insert - for negative numbers. Zero gives 0, ±∞ and nan yield an “invalid operation” exception; note that ±∞ produces a very large output, which we don’t expand now since it most likely won’t be needed. Normal numbers with an exponent in the range [1, 15] have that number of digits before the decimal separator: “decimate” them, and remove leading zeros with \int_value:w, then trim trailing zeros and dot. Normal numbers with an exponent 16 or larger have no decimal separator, we only need to add trailing zeros. When the exponent is non-positive, the result should be 0.(zeros)/(digits), trimmed.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_to_decimal:w \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #1#2
\{ \if_meaning:w 2 #2 \exp_after:wN - \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w \fi:
\if_case:w #1 \exp_stop_f:
\__fp_case_return:nw { 0 }
\or: \exp_after:wN \__fp_to_decimal_normal:wnnnnn
\or:
\__fp_case_use:nw
\{ \__fp_invalid_operation:nnw
\{ \fp_to_decimal:N \c__fp_overflowing_fp \}
\{ \fp_to_decimal \}
\}
\or:
\__fp_case_use:nw
\{ \__fp_invalid_operation:nnw
\{ 0 \}
\{ \fp_to_decimal \}
\}
\fi:
\s__fp \__fp_chk:w #1 #2
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_to_decimal_normal:wnnnnn
\s__fp \__fp_chk:w 1 #1 #2 #3#4#5#6 ;
\{ \int_compare:nNnTF {#2} > 0 
\}
\end{verbatim}

1158
\texttt{\_\_fp_compare:nNnTF \{#2\} < \c\_\_fp_prec_int}

\texttt{\_\_fp_decimate:nNnnn \{ \c\_\_fp_prec_int - \#2 \}}

\texttt{\_\_fp_to_decimal_large:Nnnw}

\texttt{\exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN}

\texttt{\exp:w \exp_stop_f: \prg_replicate:nn { - \#2 } { 0 } \#3\#4\#5\#6 ;}

\texttt{\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_to_decimal_large:Nnnw \#1\#2\#3\#4;}

\texttt{\exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN}

\texttt{\exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w \__fp_parse:n}

\texttt{(End definition for \_\_fp_to_decimal:w and others.)}

76.5 Token list representation

\texttt{\_\_fp_to_tl:N}

\texttt{\_\_fp_to_tl:c}

\texttt{\_\_fp_to_tl:n}

These three public functions evaluate their argument, then pass it to \_\_fp_to_tl_dispatch:w.

\texttt{\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_to_tl:N \#1 \{ \exp_after:wN \_\_fp_to_tl_dispatch:w \#1 \}}

\texttt{\cs_generate_variant:Nn \_\_fp_to_tl:N \{ c \}}

\texttt{\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_to_tl:n}

\texttt{\exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w \_\_fp_to_tl:n}

\texttt{(End definition for \_\_fp_to_tl:N and \_\_fp_to_tl:n. These functions are documented on page 242.)}

\texttt{\_\_fp_to_tl_dispatch:w}

\texttt{\_\_fp_to_tl_recover:w}

\texttt{\_\_fp_tuple_to_tl:w}

We allow tuples.

\texttt{\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_to_tl_dispatch:w \#1}

\texttt{\_\_fp_change_func_type:NNN \#1 \_\_fp_to_tl:w \_\_fp_to_tl_recover:w \#1}

\texttt{\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_to_tl_recover:w \#1 \#2 ;}

\texttt{\_\_fp_error:nffn \{ unknown-type \} \{ \tl_to_str:n \{ \#2 ; \} \} \} \}

1159
A structure similar to \_fp_to_scientific_dispatch:w and \_fp_to_decimal_dispatch:w, but without the “invalid operation” exception. First filter special cases. We express normal numbers in decimal notation if the exponent is in the range $[-2, 16]$, and otherwise use scientific notation.

\__fp_to_tl:w \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #1#2
\{ 
\if_meaning:w 2 #2 \exp_after:wN - \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w \fi:
\if_case:w #1 \exp_stop_f:
\__fp_case_return:nw { 0 }
\or: \exp_after:wN \__fp_to_tl_normal:nnnnn
\or: \__fp_case_return:nw { inf }
\else: \__fp_case_return:nw { nan }
\fi:
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_to_tl_normal:nnnnn #1
\{ 
\int_compare:nTF
{-2 <= #1 <= \c__fp_prec_int }
{ \__fp_to_decimal_normal:wnnnnn }
{ \__fp_to_tl_scientific:wnnnnn }
\s__fp \__fp_chk:w 1 0 {#1}
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_to_tl_scientific:wnnnnn \s__fp \__fp_chk:w 1 #1 #2 #3#4#5#6 ;
\{ 
\exp_after:wN \__fp_to_tl_scientific:wnw
\exp_after:wN e
\int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w #2 - 1
; #3 #4 #5 #6 ;
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_to_tl_scientific:wnw #1 ; #2#3;
\{ \__fp_trim_zeros:w #2.#3 ; #1 \}
(End definition for \_fp_to_tl:w and others.)

### 76.6 Formatting

This is not implemented yet, as it is not yet clear what a correct interface would be, for this kind of structured conversion from a floating point (or other types of variables) to a string. Ideas welcome.

### 76.7 Convert to dimension or integer

\fp_to_dim:N \fp_to_dim:c \fp_to_dim:n
\__fp_to_dim_dispatch:w \__fp_to_dim_recover:w
\__fp_to_dim:w
All three public variants are based on the same \_fp_to_dim_dispatch:w after evaluating their argument to an internal floating point. We only allow floating point numbers,
not tuples.

\cs_new:Npn \fp_to_dim:N #1
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \fp_to_dim:N { c }
\cs_new:Npn \fp_to_dim:n
{
\exp_after:wN \__fp_to_dim_dispatch:w #1 }
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_to_dim_dispatch:w #1#2 ;
{
\__fp_change_func_type:NNN #1 \__fp_to_dim:w \__fp_to_dim_recover:w #1 #2 ;
}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_to_dim_recover:w #1
{ \__fp_invalid_operation:nnw { 0pt } { fp_to_dim } }
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_to_dim:w #1; { \__fp_to_decimal:w #1 ; pt }

(End definition for \fp_to_dim:N and others. These functions are documented on page \pageref{page:241}.)

\fp_to_int:N
\fp_to_int:c
\fp_to_int:n
\__fp_to_int_dispatch:w
\__fp_to_int_recover:w

For the most part identical to \fp_to_dim:N but without pt, and where \__fp_to_int:w does more work. To convert to an integer, first round to 0 places (to the nearest integer), then express the result as a decimal number: the definition of \__fp_to_decimal_dispatch:w is such that there are no trailing dot nor zero.

\cs_new:Npn \fp_to_int:N #1 { \exp_after:wN \__fp_to_int_dispatch:w #1 }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \fp_to_int:N { c }
\cs_new:Npn \fp_to_int:n
{
\exp_after:wN \__fp_to_int_dispatch:w \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w \__fp_parse:n }
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_to_int_dispatch:w #1#2 ;
{
\__fp_change_func_type:NNN #1 \__fp_to_int:w \__fp_to_int_recover:w #1 #2 ;
}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_to_int_recover:w #1
{ \__fp_invalid_operation:nnw { 0 } { fp_to_int } }
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_to_int:w #1; { \__fp_to_decimal:w #1 ; pt }

(End definition for \fp_to_int:N and others. These functions are documented on page \pageref{page:241}.)

76.8 Convert from a dimension

\dim_to_fp:n
\__fp_from_dim_test:ww
\__fp_from_dim:wNNnnnnn
\__fp_from_dim:vNNnnnnW

The dimension expression (which can in fact be a glue expression) is evaluated, converted to a number (i.e., expressed in scaled points), then multiplied by $2^{-16} = 0.0000152587890625$ to give a value expressed in points. The auxiliary \__fp_mul_\texttt{npos_o:Nww} expects the desired (final sign) and two floating point operands (of the form
\s__fp...;) as arguments. This set of functions is also used to convert dimension
registers to floating points while parsing expressions: in this context there is an additional
exponent, which is the first argument of \__fp_from_dim_test:ww, and is combined with
the exponent \( -4 \) of \( 2^{-16} \). There is also a need to expand afterwards: this is performed
by \__fp_mul_npos_o:Nww, and cancelled by \prg_do_nothing: here.

\cs_new:Npn \dim_to_fp:n \#1
\exp_after:wN \__fp_from_dim_test:ww
\exp_after:wN \int_value:w \tex_glueexpr:D \#1;
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_from_dim_test:ww \#1, \#2
\if_meaning:w 0 \#2 \__fp_case_return:nw \exp_after:wN \c_zero_fp
\else:
\exp_after:wN \__fp_from_dim:wNw
\int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w \#1 - 4
\if_meaning:w - \#2 \exp_after:wN , \exp_after:wN 2 \int_value:w \#2
\else:
\exp_after:wN , \exp_after:wN 0 \int_value:w \#2
\fi:
\fi:
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_from_dim:wNw \#1,#2#3;\#4#5#6#7#8#9
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_from_dim:wnnnnwNn \#1; \#2#300 \{0000\};
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_from_dim:wNNnnnnnn \#1\#2\{10\}987654321; \#2 \{\#1\}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_mul_npos_o:Nww \#7
\s__fp \__fp_chk:w 1 \#7 \{\#5\} \#1;
\s__fp \__fp_chk:w 1 \#8 \{\#8\} \{1525\} \{8789\} \{0625\} \{0000\};
\prg_do_nothing;

(End definition for \dim_to_fp:n and others. This function is documented on page 213.)

\subsection{Use and eval}

\TeX\_\texttt{use:N}
\TeX\_\texttt{use:c}
\TeX\_\texttt{eval:n}

Those public functions are simple copies of the decimal conversions.

(End definition for \texttt{fp\_use:N} and \texttt{fp\_eval:n}. These functions are documented on page 242.)
\texttt{\texttt{\textbackslash fp\_sign:n}}  Trivial but useful. See the implementation of \texttt{\textbackslash fp\_add:Nn} for an explanation of why to use \texttt{\_\_fp\_parse:n}, namely, for better error reporting.

\begin{verbatim}
cs_new:Npn \fp\_sign:n #1 { \fp\_to\_decimal:n { sign \_\_fp\_parse:n (#1) } }
(End definition for \texttt{\textbackslash fp\_sign:n}. This function is documented on page 241.)
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\texttt{\textbackslash fp\_abs:n}}  Trivial but useful. See the implementation of \texttt{\textbackslash fp\_add:Nn} for an explanation of why to use \texttt{\_\_fp\_parse:n}, namely, for better error reporting.

\begin{verbatim}
cs_new:Npn \fp\_abs:n #1 { \fp\_to\_decimal:n { abs \_\_fp\_parse:n (#1) } }
(End definition for \texttt{\textbackslash fp\_abs:n}. This function is documented on page 257.)
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\texttt{\textbackslash fp\_max:nn}} \quad \texttt{\texttt{\textbackslash fp\_min:nn}}  Similar to \texttt{\textbackslash fp\_abs:n}, for consistency with \texttt{\textbackslash int\_max:nn}, etc.

\begin{verbatim}
cs_new:Npn \fp\_max:nn #1#2 { \fp\_to\_decimal:n { max ( \_\_fp\_parse:n (#1) , \_\_fp\_parse:n (#2) ) } }
cs_new:Npn \fp\_min:nn #1#2 { \fp\_to\_decimal:n { min ( \_\_fp\_parse:n (#1) , \_\_fp\_parse:n (#2) ) } }
(End definition for \texttt{\textbackslash fp\_max:nn} and \texttt{\textbackslash fp\_min:nn}. These functions are documented on page 257.)
\end{verbatim}

\subsection{76.10 Convert an array of floating points to a comma list}

\texttt{\texttt{\_\_fp\_array\_to\_clist:n}} \quad \texttt{\texttt{\_\_fp\_array\_to\_clist\_loop:Nw}}  Converts an array of floating point numbers to a comma-list. If speed here ends up irrelevant, we can simplify the code for the auxiliary to become

\begin{verbatim}
cs_new:Npn \_\_fp\_array\_to\_clist\_loop:Nw #1#2; { \use\_none:n #1 { , - } \fp\_to\_tl:n { #1 #2 ; } \_\_fp\_array\_to\_clist\_loop:Nw }
\end{verbatim}

The \texttt{\use\_ii:nn} function is expanded after \texttt{\_\_fp\_expand:n} is done, and it removes , - from the start of the representation.

\begin{verbatim}
cs_new:Npn \_\_fp\_array\_to\_clist:n #1 { \tl\_if\_empty:nF (#1) { \exp\_last\_unbraced:N \use\_ii:nn { \_\_fp\_array\_to\_clist\_loop:Nw #1 { ? \prg\_break: } ; \prg\_break\_point: } } }
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
cs_new:Npn \_\_fp\_array\_to\_clist\_loop:Nw #1#2; { \use\_none:n #1 , - }
\end{verbatim}

1163
\exp_not:f { \__fp_to_tl_dispatch:w #1 #2 ; }
\__fp_array_to_clist_loop:Nw
}\}

(End definition for \__fp_array_to_clist:n and \__fp_array_to_clist_loop:Nw.)

{/package}
Chapter 77

l3fp-random Implementation

Those functions may receive a variable number of arguments. We won’t use the argument ?.

(End definition for \_fp_parse_word_rand:N and \_fp_parse_word_randint:N.)

77.1 Engine support

Most engines provide random numbers, but not all. We write the test twice simply in order to write the false branch first.
Quite problematic, it is uncomfortably close to being so, and it becomes worse as it takes at the very least 16 seconds on a 2 giga-hertz processor). While this bias is not for \( k \) the seed). The recommended way to get a number from \( k \) raw 28-bit integer, as the engine’s RNG does. We will go further and in fact typically we go as often as other numbers, they are both mapped to the result 0. Under the hood, it maintains an array of \( \{1, 2, 3, 4, 0, 1\} \) integers in \( [0, N) \). Namely it has more triplets \((a, b, c)\) than expected obeying \( a = b + c \) modulo \( N \). Namely it will have of order \((K - 55) \times 3/4\) such triplets, when one would expect \( K^3/(6N) \). This starts to be detectable around \( N = 2^{18} > 55^3 \) (earlier if one keeps track of positions too, but this is more subtle than it looks because the array of 28-bit integers is read backwards by the engine). Hopefully the correlation is subtle enough to not affect realistic documents so we do not specifically mitigate against this. Since we typically use two calls to the RNG per \texttt{int_rand} we would need to investigate linear relations between the \( x_{2n} \) on the one hand and between the \( x_{2n+1} \) on the other hand. Such relations will have more complicated coefficients than \( \pm 1 \), which alleviates the issue.

Third, consider successive batches of 165 calls to the RNG (with argument \( 2^{28} \) or with argument 2 for instance), then most batches have more odd than even numbers. Note
that this does not mean that there are more odd than even numbers overall. Similar
issues are discussed in Knuth’s TAOCP volume 2 near exercise 3.3.2-31. We do not have
any mitigation strategy for this.

Ideally, our algorithm should be:

- **Uniform.** The result should be as uniform as possible assuming that the RNG’s
  underlying 28-bit integers are uniform.

- **Uncorrelated.** The result should not have detectable correlations between different
  seeds, similar to the lowest-bit ones mentioned earlier.

- **Quick.** The algorithm should be fast in TeX, so no “bit twiddling”, but “digit
  twiddling” is ok.

- **Simple.** The behaviour must be documentable precisely.

- **Predictable.** The number of calls to the RNG should be the same for any \texttt{int-}
  \texttt{rand:nn}, because then the algorithm can be modified later without changing the
  result of other uses of the RNG.

- **Robust.** It should work even for \texttt{int_rand:nn} \{ - \texttt{c_max_int} \} \{ \texttt{c_max_int} \}
  where the range is not representable as an integer. In fact, we also provide later a
  floating-point \texttt{randint} whose range can go all the way up to \(2 \times 10^{16} - 1\) possible
  values.

Some of these requirements conflict. For instance, uniformity cannot be achieved with a
fixed number of calls to the RNG.

Denote by \texttt{random}(N) one call to \texttt{tex_uniformdeviate:D} with argument \(N\), and by \texttt{ediv}(p, q)
the \(\varepsilon\)-TeX rounding division giving \([p/q + 1/2]\). Denote by \(\langle \min \rangle, \langle \max \rangle\)
and \(R = \langle \max \rangle - \langle \min \rangle + 1\) the arguments of \texttt{int_min:nn} and the number of possible
outcomes. Note that \(R \in [1, 2^{12} - 1]\) cannot necessarily be represented as an integer
(though, \(R < 2^{31}\) can). Our strategy is to get two 28-bit integers \(X\) and \(Y\) from the
RNG, split each into 14-bit integers, as \(X = X_1 \times 2^{14} + X_0\) and \(Y = Y_1 \times 2^{14} + Y_0\) then return essentially \(\langle \min \rangle + \lfloor R(X_1 \times 2^{-14} + Y_1 \times 2^{-28} + Y_0 \times 2^{-42} + X_0 \times 2^{-56}) \rfloor\). For
small \(R\) the \(X_0\) term has a tiny effect so we ignore it and we can compute \(R \times Y/2^{28}\)
much more directly by \texttt{random}(\(R\)).

- **If** \(R \leq 2^{17} - 1\) then return \(\texttt{ediv}(R \times \texttt{random}(2^{14}) + \texttt{random}(R) + 2^{13}, 2^{14}) - 1 + \langle \min \rangle\).
The shifts by \(2^{13}\) and \(-1\) convert \(\varepsilon\)-TeX division to truncated division. The bound
on \(R\) ensures that the number obtained after the shift is less than \(\texttt{c_max_int}\). The
non-uniformity is at most of order \(2^{17}/2^{42} = 2^{-25}\).

- **Split** \(R = R_2 \times 2^{28} + R_1 \times 2^{14} + R_0\), where \(R_2 \in [0, 15]\). Compute \(\langle \min \rangle + R_2 X_1 2^{14} +
(R_2 Y_1 + R_1 X_1) + \texttt{ediv}(R_2 Y_0 + R_1 Y_1 + R_0 X_1 + \texttt{ediv}(R_2 X_0 + R_0 Y_1 + \texttt{ediv}((2^{14} R_1 +
R_0)(2^{14} Y_0 + X_0), 2^{28}), 2^{14}), 2^{14})\) then map a result of \(\langle \max \rangle + 1\) to \(\langle \min \rangle\).
Writing each \texttt{ediv} in terms of truncated division with a shift, and using \([(p + [r/s])\lfloor q \rfloor = [(ps + r)/(sq)]\), what we compute is equal to \([\langle \texttt{exact} \rangle + 2^{-29} + 2^{-15} + 2^{-1}]\) with \(\langle \texttt{exact} \rangle = \langle \min \rangle + R \times 0.X_1 Y_1 Y_0 X_0\). Given we map \(\langle \max \rangle + 1\) to \(\langle \min \rangle\), the shift
has no effect on uniformity. The non-uniformity is bounded by \(R/2^{56} < 2^{-24}\). It
may be possible to speed up the code by dropping tiny terms such as \(R_0 X_0\), but the
analysis of non-uniformity proves too difficult.

To avoid the overflow when the computation yields \(\langle \max \rangle + 1\) with \(\langle \max \rangle = 2^{31} - 1\)
(note that \(R\) is then arbitrary), we compute the result in two pieces. Compute
\__kernel_randint_max_int

Constant equal to \[2^{17} - 1\], the maximal size of a range that \texttt{int\_range:nn} can do with its "simple" algorithm.

\begin{verbatim}
\def\__kernel_randint_max_int { 131071 }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\__kernel_randint_max_int}.)

\texttt{\_\_kernel_randint:n}

Used in an integer expression, \texttt{\_\_kernel_randint:n \{R\}} gives a random number \[1 + \lfloor (R \text{ random}(2^{14}) + \text{ random}(R))/2^{14} \rfloor\] that is in \(\{1, R\}\). Previous code was computing \([p/2^{14}]\) as \texttt{ediv}(\texttt{p} - 2^{13}, 2^{14})\) but that wrongly gives \(-1\) for \(p = 0\).

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_kernel_randint:n #1
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\_\_kernel_randint:n}.)

\texttt{\_\_fp_rand_myriads:n}
\texttt{\_\_fp_rand_myriads_loop:w}
\texttt{\_\_fp_rand_myriads_get:w}

Used as \texttt{\_\_fp_rand_myriads:n \{XXX\}} with one letter \(X\) (specifically) per block of four digits we want; it expands to \(X\) followed by the requested number of brace groups, each containing four (pseudo-random) digits. Digits are produced as a random number in \([0000, 19999]\) for the usual reason of preserving leading zeros.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \_\_fp_rand_myriads:n #1
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\_\_fp_rand_myriads:n}, \texttt{\_\_fp_rand_myriads_loop:w}, and \texttt{\_\_fp_rand_myriads_get:w}.)
77.2 Random floating point

First we check that \texttt{random} was called without argument. Then get four blocks of four digits and convert that fixed point number to a floating point number (this correctly sets the exponent). This has a minor bug: if all of the random numbers are zero then the result is correctly 0 but it raises the \texttt{underflow} flag; it should not do that.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_rand_o:Nw #1 \exp_after:wN \c_zero_fp
\tl_if_empty:nTF {#1}
    \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w
\__fp_rand_myriads:n { XXXX } { 0000 } { 0000 } ; 0
\msg_expandable_error:nnnnn
    \{ fp \} \{ num-args \} \{ rand() \} \{ 0 \} \{ 0 \}
\exp_after:wN \c_nan_fp
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__fp_rand_o:Nw and \__fp_rand_o:w)

77.3 Random integer

Enforce that there is one argument (then add first argument 1) or two arguments. Call \__fp_randint_badarg:w on each; this function inserts \texttt{1 \exp_stop_f:} to end the \texttt{if_case:w} statement if either the argument is not an integer or if its absolute value is $\geq 10^{16}$. Also bail out if \__fp_compare_back:ww yields 1, meaning that the bounds are not in the right order. Otherwise an auxiliary converts each argument times $10^{-16}$ (hence the shift in exponent) to a 24-digit fixed point number (see \texttt{l3fp-extended}). Then compute the number of choices, $\langle \max \rangle + 1 - \langle \min \rangle$. Create a random 24-digit fixed-point number with \__fp_randint_myriads:n, then use a fused multiply-add instruction to multiply the number of choices to that random number and add it to $\langle \min \rangle$. Then truncate to 16 digits (namely select the integer part of $10^{16}$ times the result) before converting back to a floating point number (\__fp_sanitize:Nw takes care of zero). To avoid issues with negative numbers, add 1 to all fixed point numbers (namely $10^{16}$ to the integers they represent), except of course when it is time to convert back to a float.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_randint_o:Nw ?
\__fp_parse_function_one_two:nnw
\__fp_randint_default:w \__fp_randint_o:w
\__fp_randint_auxii:o:ww
\__fp_randint_auxiii:o:ww
\__fp_randint_auxiv:o:ww
\__fp_randint_auxv:o:ww
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_randint_default:w #1 { \exp_after:wN #1 \c_one_fp }
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp\_randint\_badarg:w \s__fp \__fp\_chk:w #1#2#3; 
  { 
    \__fp\_int:wTF \s__fp \__fp\_chk:w #1#2#3; 
    { 
      \if_meaning:w 1 #1 
        \__fp\_int_compare:w 
        \__fp\_use_i\_until\_s:nw #3 ; \c__fp\_prec\_int 
        \c\_one\_int 
      \fi: 
    } 
    \c\_one\_int } 
\cs_new:Npn \__fp\_randint\_o:w #1; #2; @ 
  { 
    \if_case:w 
      \__fp\_randint\_badarg:w #1; 
      \__fp\_randint\_badarg:w #2; 
      \if:w 1 \__fp\_compare\_back:ww #2; #1; \c\_one\_int \fi: 
      \c\_zero\_int 
      \__fp\_randint\_auxi\_o:ww #1; #2; \or: 
      \__fp\_invalid\_operation\_tl\_o:ff 
        \{ \__fp\_randint \} \{ \__fp\_array\_to\_clist:n \{ #1; #2; \} \} 
      \exp:w 
      \fi: 
      \exp\_after:wN \exp\_end: 
    } 
\cs_new:Npn \__fp\_randint\_auxi\_o:ww #1; #2; #3 \exp\_end: 
  { 
    \if:w #1 
      \exp\_after:wN \use\_i:nn 
    \else: 
      \exp\_after:wN \use\_ii:nn 
    \fi: 
    \{ \exp\_after:wN \__fp\_fixed\_continue:wn \c\_fp\_one\_fixed\_tl \} 
  } 
\cs_new:Npn \__fp\_randint\_auxii:wn #1; \__fp\_randint\_auxiii\_o:ww } 
\cs_new:Npn \__fp\_randint\_auxii:wn \s__fp \__fp\_chk:w #1#2#3#4; 
  { 
    \if_meaning:w 0 #1 
      \exp\_after:wN \use\_i:nn 
    \else: 
      \exp\_after:wN \use\_ii:nn 
    \fi: 
    \{ \exp\_after:wN \__fp\_fixed\_continue:wn \c\_fp\_one\_fixed\_tl \} 
  } 
\cs_new:Npn \__fp\_fixed\_continue:wn \c\_fp\_one\_fixed\_tl } 
  { 
    \exp\_after:wN \__fp\_ep\_to\_fixed:wn 
    \int\_value:w \c\_fp\_int\_eval:w 
    \#3 - \c\_fp\_prec\_int , \#4 \{0000\} \{0000\}; 
  } 
\if_meaning:w 0 #2 
  \exp\_after:wN \use\_i:nnn 
  \exp\_after:wN \__fp\_fixed\_add\_one:wn 
  \fi: 
  \exp\_after:wN \__fp\_fixed\_sub:wn \c\_fp\_one\_fixed\_tl 
\__fp\_fixed\_continue:wn
\int_rand:nn Evaluate the argument and filter out the case where the lower bound \#1 is more than the upper bound \#2. Then determine whether the range is narrower than \c__kernel_randint_max_int; \#2-\#1 may overflow for very large positive \#2 and negative \#1. If the
range is narrow, call \texttt{\_kernel\_randint:n \{\langle choices \rangle\}} where \langle choices \rangle is the number of possible outcomes. If the range is wide, use somewhat slower code.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \int_rand:nn #1#2 {
  \int_eval:n {
    \exp_after:wN \__fp_randint:ww
    \int_value:w \int_eval:n \{#1\} \exp_after:wN ;
    \int_value:w \int_eval:n \{#2\} ;
  }
}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_randint:ww #1; #2;
{
  \if_int_compare:w #1 > #2 \exp_stop_f:
    \msg_expandable_error:nnnn { kernel } { randint-backward-range } {#1} {#2}
  \else:
    \if_int_compare:w \__fp_int_eval:w #2 \fi:
    { \__fp_int_eval:w \int_value:w \int_eval:n \{#1\} \exp_after:wN ;
      \int_value:w \int_eval:n \{#2\};
    }
    \else:
      \__kernel_randint:nn {#1} {#2}
    \fi:
\fi:
}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\int_rand:nn} and \texttt{\__fp_randint:ww}. This function is documented on page 165.)

Any \( n \in \left[-2^{31}+1, 2^{31}-1\right] \) is uniquely written as \( 2^{14}n_1 + n_2 \) with \( n_1 \in [-2^{17}, 2^{17}-1] \) and \( n_2 \in [0, 2^{14}-1] \). Calling \texttt{\_fp\_randint\_split\_o:Nw \{w\}} \( n \) gives \( n_1 \); \( n_2 \); and expands the next token once. We do this for two random numbers and apply \texttt{\_fp\_randint\_split\_o:Nw} twice to fully decompose the range \( R \). One subtlety is that we compute \( R - 2^{31} = \langle \max \rangle - \langle \min \rangle - (2^{31} - 1) \in \left[-2^{31}+1, 2^{31}-1\right] \) rather than \( R \) to avoid overflow.

Then we have \texttt{\_fp\_randint\_wide\_aux:w} \langle X_1 \rangle; \langle X_0 \rangle; \langle Y_1 \rangle; \langle Y_0 \rangle; \langle R_2 \rangle; \langle R_1 \rangle; \langle R_0 \rangle; and we apply the algorithm described earlier.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__kernel\_randint:nn \#1\#2 {
  \#1
  \exp_after:wN \__fp\_randint\_wide\_aux:w
  \int_value:w
  \exp_after:wN \__fp\_randint\_split\_o:Nw \int_eval:w \tex_uniformdeviate:D 268435456 ;
  \int_value:w
  \exp_after:wN \__fp\_randint\_split\_o:Nw
\end{verbatim}
\tex_uniformdeviate:D 268435456 ;
\int_value:w
\exp_after:wN \__fp_randint_split_o:Nw
\int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w 131072 +
\exp_after:wN \__fp_randint_split_o:Nw
\int_value:w
  \__kernel_int_add:nnn {#2} { -#1 } { -\c_max_int } ;
.
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_randint_split_o:Nw #1#2 ;
  {\if_meaning:w 0 #1 0 \exp_after:wN ; \int_value:w 0 \else:
    \exp_after:wN \__fp_randint_split_aux:w
    \int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w (#1#2 - 8192) / 16384 ;
    + #1#2
  \fi:
  \exp_after:wN ;
}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_randint_split_aux:w #1;
  {#1 \exp_after:wN ; \int_value:w - #1 * 16384}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_randint_wide_aux:w #1;#2; #3;#4; #5;#6;#7; .
  {\exp_after:wN \__fp_randint_wide_auxii:w
    \int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w #5 * #3 + #6 * #1 +
    (#5 * #4 + #6 * #3 + #7 * #1 +
    (#5 * #2 +
    #7 * #3 +
    (16384 * #6 + #7) * (16384 * #4 + #2) / 268435456) / 16384
  ) / 16384 \exp_after:wN ;
  \int_value:w \__fp_int_eval:w (#5 + #6) * 16384 + #7;
  #1 ; #5 ;}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_randint_wide_auxii:w #1;#2; #3;#4;
  {\if_int_odd:w 0 
    \if_int_compare:w #1 = #2 \else: \exp_stop_f: \fi:
     \if_int_compare:w #4 = \c_zero_int 1 \fi:
     \if_int_compare:w #3 = 16383 - 1 \fi:
     \exp_stop_f:
    \exp_after:wN \prg_break:
  \fi:
  \if_int_compare:w #4 < 8 \exp_stop_f:
    + #4 * #3 * 16384
  \else:
    + 8 * #3 * 16384 + (#4 - 8) * #3 * 16384
  \fi:
  + #1
  \prg_break_point:
}

(End definition for \__kernel_randint:nn and others.)
\int_rand:n
\_fp_randint:n

Similar to \int_rand:nn, but needs fewer checks.

\cs_new:Npn \int_rand:n #1
\{\int_eval:n
  \{ \exp_args:Nf \_fp_randint:n { \int_eval:n {#1} } \}
\}
\cs_new:Npn \_fp_randint:n #1
\{\if_int_compare:w #1 < \c_one_int
  \msg_expandable_error:nnnn { kernel } { randint-backward-range } { 1 } {#1}
  \_fp_randint:ww #1; 1;
\else:
  \if_int_compare:w #1 > \c__kernel_randint_max_int
    \_fp_randint:ww { 1 } {#1}
  \else:
    \_fp_randint:n {#1}
  \fi:
\fi:
\}

(End definition for \int_rand:n and \_fp_randint:n. This function is documented on page 165.)

End the initial conditional that ensures these commands are only defined in engines that support random numbers.
Chapter 78

l3fparray implementation

In analogy to l3intarray it would make sense to have <@@=fparray>, but we need direct access to \__fp_parse:n from l3fp-parse, and a few other (less crucial) internals of the l3fp family.

78.1 Allocating arrays

There are somewhat more than \((2^{31} - 1)^2\) floating point numbers so we store each floating point number as three entries in integer arrays. To avoid having to multiply indices by three or to add 1 etc, a floating point array is just a token list consisting of three tokens: integer arrays of the same size.

\texttt{\l__fp_array_loop_int}

Used to loop in \__fp_array_gzero:N.

\texttt{\fparray_new:Nn}

Build a three-token token list, then define all three tokens to be integer arrays of the same size. No need to initialize the data: the integer arrays start with zeros, and three zeros denote precisely \c_zero_fp, as we want.
\begin{verbatim}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \fparray_new:Nn { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__fp_array_new:nNNNN #1#2#3#4#5
\{\int_compare:nNnTF {#1} < 0
{\msg_error:nnn { kernel } { negative-array-size } {#1}
\cs_undefine:N #1
\int_gsub:Nn \g__fp_array_int { 3 } }
{\intarray_new:Nn #2 {#1}
\intarray_new:Nn #3 {#1}
\intarray_new:Nn #4 {#1}}\}
\intarray_new:Nn \__fp_array_bounds:NNnTF #1#2#3#4#5
\intarray_new:Nn \__fp_array_bounds_error:NNn #1#2#3
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\fparray_new:Nn} and \texttt{\_fp_array_new:nNNNN}. This function is documented on page 260.)

\begin{verbatim}
\fparray_count:N \fparray_count:c
\end{verbatim}

Size of any of the intarrays, here we pick the third.

\begin{verbatim}
\fparray_gset:Nnn \fparray_item:Nn
\end{verbatim}

See the \texttt{l3intarray} analogue: only names change. The functions \texttt{\fparray_gset:Nnn} and \texttt{\fparray_item:Nn} share bounds checking. The \texttt{T} branch is used if \#3 is within bounds of the array \#2.

78.2 Array items

See the \texttt{l3intarray} analogue: only names change. The functions \texttt{\fparray_gset:Nnn} and \texttt{\fparray_item:Nn} share bounds checking. The \texttt{T} branch is used if \#3 is within bounds of the array \#2.
\fparray_gset:Nnn
\fparray_gset:cnn
\_fp_array_gset:NNNNww
\_fp_array_gset_recover:Nw
\_fp_array_gset_special:nnNNN
\_fp_array_gset_normal:w

Evaluate, then store exponent in one intarray, sign and 8 digits of mantissa in the next, and 8 trailing digits in the last.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \fparray_gset:Nnn #1#2#3
\exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \__fp_array_gset:NNNNww \exp_after:wN #1 \exp_after:wN \int_value:w \int_eval:n {#2} \exp_after:wN ; \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w \__fp_parse:n {#3}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \fparray_gset:Nnn { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__fp_array_gset:NNNNww #1#2#3#4#5 ; #6 ;
\__fp_array_bounds:NNnTF \msg_error:nnxxx #4 {#5}
{ \exp_after:wN \__fp_change_func_type:NNN \__fp_use_i_until_s:nw #6 ; \__fp_array_gset:w \__fp_array_gset_recover:Nw #6 ; {#5} #1 #2 #3 }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__fp_array_gset_recover:Nw #1#2 ;
{ \__fp_error:nffn { unknown-type } { \tl_to_str:n { #2 ; } } { } { } \exp_after:wN #1 \c_nan_fp }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__fp_array_gset_normal:w \s__fp \__fp_chk:w #1#2#3#4#5 ; #6#7#8#9
{ \__kernel_intarray_gset:Nnn #7 {#6} {#2} \__kernel_intarray_gset:Nnn #8 {#6} \{ \if_meaning:w 2 #1 3 \else: 1 \fi: #3#4 \} \__kernel_intarray_gset:Nnn #9 {#6} { 1 \use:nn #5 } }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__fp_array_gset_special:nnNNN #1#2#3#4#5
{ \__kernel_intarray_gset:Nnn #3 {#2} {#1} \__kernel_intarray_gset:Nnn #4 {#2} {0} \__kernel_intarray_gset:Nnn #5 {#2} {0} }
(End definition for \parray_gzero:N and others. This function is documented on page 260.)

\parray_gzero:N
\parray_gzero:c
\cs_new_protected:Npn \parray_gzero:N #1
\int_zero:N \l__fp_array_loop_int
\prg_replicate:nn { \parray_count:N #1 }
\{ \int_incr:N \l__fp_array_loop_int
\exp_after:wN \__fp_array_gset_special:nnNNN
\exp_after:wN 0
\exp_after:wN \l__fp_array_loop_int
#1 }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \parray_gzero:N { c }

(End definition for \parray_gzero:N. This function is documented on page 260.)

\parray_item:Nn
\parray_item:cn
\parray_item_to_tl:Nn
\parray_item_to_tl:cn
\__fp_array_item:NwN
\__fp_array_item:NNNnN
\__fp_array_item:N
\__fp_array_item:w
\__fp_array_item_special:w
\__fp_array_item_normal:w
\cs_new:Npn \parray_item:Nn #1#2
\exp_after:wN \__fp_array_item:NwN \exp_after:wN #1 \int_value:w \int_eval:n {#2} ;
\__fp_to_decimal:w
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \parray_item:Nn { c }
\cs_new:Npn \parray_item_to_tl:Nn #1#2
\exp_after:wN \__fp_array_item:NwN \exp_after:wN #1 \int_value:w \int_eval:n {#2} ;
\__fp_to_tl:w
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \parray_item_to_tl:Nn { c }
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_array_item:NwN #1#2 ; #3
\__fp_array_bounds:NNnTF \msg_expandable_error:nnfff #1 {#2}
\{ \exp_after:wN \__fp_array_item:NNNnN \exp_after:wN #1 {#2} {#3} \}
\exp_after:wN \parray_item_to_tl:Nn #1#2#3#4
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_array_item:NNNnN #1
\exp_after:wN \__fp_array_item:N \exp_after:wN #1
\int_value:w \__kernel_intarray_item:Nn {#2} \exp_after:wN ;
\int_value:w \__kernel_intarray_item:Nn {#3} \exp_after:wN ;
\int_value:w \__kernel_intarray_item:Nn {#4} \exp_after:wN ;
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_array_item:N #1
\exp_after:wN \__fp_array_item:NNnN \exp_after:wN #1
\int_value:w \if_meaning:w 0 #1 \exp_after:wN \__fp_array_item_special:w \fi:
\exp_after:wN \__fp_array_item:w #1

1178
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_array_item:w #1 #2#3#4#5 #6 ; 1 #7 ;
{ \exp_after:wN \__fp_array_item_normal:w 
 \int_value:w \if_meaning:w #1 1 0 \else: 2 \fi: \exp_stop_f:
 #7 ; {#2#3#4#5} {#6} ; }
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_array_item_special:w #1 ; #2 ; #3 ; #4
{ \exp_after:wN #4 \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w 
 \if_case:w #3 \exp_stop_f:
 \exp_after:wN \c_zero_fp 
 \or: \exp_after:wN \c_nan_fp 
 \or: \exp_after:wN \c_minus_zero_fp 
 \or: \exp_after:wN \c_inf_fp 
 \else: \exp_after:wN \c_minus_inf_fp 
 \fi: 
}
\cs_new:Npn \__fp_array_item_normal:w #1 #2#3#4#5 #6 ; #7 ; #8 ; #9
{ #9 \a__fp \__fp_chk:w 1 #1 {#8} #7 {#2#3#4#5} {#6} ; }

(End definition for \fparray_item:Nn and others. These functions are documented on page 260.)

(/package)
Chapter 79

\texttt{l3cctab} implementation

As \LaTeX{} offers engine support for category code tables, and this is entirely lacking from the other engines, we need two complementary approaches. (Some future \TeX{} may add support, at which point the conditionals below would be different.)

\section*{79.1 Variables}

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{\_cctab\_stack\_seq} List of catcode tables saved by nested \texttt{cctab\_begin:N}, to restore catcodes at the matching \texttt{cctab\_end:.} When popped from the \texttt{\_cctab\_stack\_seq} the table numbers are stored in \texttt{\_cctab\_unused\_seq} for later reuse.
  \item \texttt{\_cctab\_group\_seq} A stack to store the group level when a catcode table started.
  \item \texttt{\_cctab\_allocate\_int} Integer to keep track of what category code table to allocate. In \LaTeX{} it is only used in format mode to implement \texttt{\_cctab\_new:N}. In other engines it is used to make csnames for dynamic tables.
  \item \texttt{\_cctab\_internal\_a\_tl} \texttt{\_cctab\_internal\_b\_tl} Scratch space. For instance, when popping \texttt{\_cctab\_stack\_seq/\_cctab\_unused\_seq}, consists of the catcode table number (integer denotation) in \LaTeX{}, or of an intarray variable (as a single token) in other engines.
\end{itemize}
In LuaTeX we store the \endlinechar associated to each \catcodetable in a property list, unless it is the default value 13.

\prop_new:N \g__cctab_endlinechar_prop

(End definition for \g__cctab_endlinechar_prop.)

79.2 Allocating category code tables

The \__cctab_new:N auxiliary allocates a new catcode table but does not attempt to set its value consistently across engines. It is used both in \cctab_new:N, which sets catcodes to \iniTeX values, and in \cctab_begin:N/\cctab_end: for dynamically allocated tables.

First, the LuaTeX case. Creating a new category code table is done like other registers. In ConTeXt, \newcatcodetable does not include the initialisation, so that is added explicitly.

\sys_if_engine_luatex:TF
\cs_new_protected:Npn \cctab_new:N #1
\__kernel_chk_if_free_cs:N #1
\__cctab_new:N #1
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__cctab_new:N #1
\newcatcodetable #1
\tex_initcatcodetable:D #1
\sys_if_engine_luatex:TF

Now the case for other engines. Here, each table is an integer array. Following the LuaTeX pattern, a new table starts with \iniTeX codes. The index base is out-by-one, so we have an internal function to handle that. The \iniTeX \endlinechar is 13.

\sys_if_engine_\other:TF
\cs_new_protected:Npn \cctab_new:N #1
\__kernel_chk_if_free_cs:N #1
\__cctab_new:N #1
\int_step_inline:nn { 256 }
\__kernel_intarray_gset:Nnn #1 {##1} { 12 }
\__kernel_intarray_gset:Nnn #1 { 257 } { 13 }
\__cctab_gstore:Nnn #1 { 0 } { 9 }
\__cctab_gstore:Nnn #1 { 13 } { 5 }
\__cctab_gstore:Nnn #1 { 32 } { 10 }
\__cctab_gstore:Nnn #1 { 37 } { 14 }
\int_step_inline:nnn { 65 } { 90 }
\__cctab_gstore:Nnn #1 {##1} { 11 }
\__cctab_gstore:Nnn #1 { 92 } { 0 }
\int_step_inline:nnn { 97 } { 122 }
\__cctab_gstore:Nnn #1 {##1} { 11 }
\__cctab_gstore:Nnn #1 { 127 } { 15 }
79.3 Saving category code tables

In various functions we need to save the current catcodes (globally) in a table. In LuaTeX, saving the catcodes is a primitive, but the \endlinechar needs more work: to avoid filling \g__cctab_endlinechar_prop with many entries we special-case the default value 13. In other engines we store 256 current catcodes and the \endlinechar in an intarray variable.

\begin{verbatim}
\sys_if_engine_luatex:TF
  \cs_new_protected:Npn \__cctab_gset:n #1
  { \exp_args:Nf \__cctab_gset_aux:n { \int_eval:n {#1} } }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__cctab_gset_aux:n #1
  { \tex_savecatcodetable:D #1 \scan_stop:
    \int_compare:nNnTF { \tex_endlinechar:D } = { 13 }
    { \prop_gremove:Nn \g__cctab_endlinechar_prop {#1} }
    { \prop_gput:NnV \g__cctab_endlinechar_prop {#1} \tex_endlinechar:D }
  }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__cctab_gset:n #1
  {
    \int_step_inline:nn { 256 }
    { \__kernel_intarray_gset:Nnn #1 {##1} \char_value_catcode:n { ##1 - 1 } }
    \__kernel_intarray_gset:Nnn #1 { 257 } \tex_endlinechar:D
  }
\end{verbatim}

\end{verbatim}

Category code tables are always global, so only one version of assignments is needed. Simply run the setup in a group and save the result in a category code table \#1, provided it is valid. The internal function is defined above depending on the engine.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \cctab_gset:Nn \cctab_gset:cn
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \cctab_new:N, \_\cctab_new:N, and \_\cctab_gstore:Nn. This function is documented on page 261.)
79.4 Using category code tables

In LuaTeX, we must ensure that the saved tables are read-only. This is done by applying the saved table, then switching immediately to a scratch table. Any later catcode assignment will affect that scratch table rather than the saved one. If we simply switched to the saved tables, then \char_set_catcode_other:N in the example below would change \c_document_cctab and a later use of that table would give the wrong category code to `_`.

\use:n {
  \cctab_begin:N \c_document_cctab
  \char_set_catcode_other:N `_`
  \cctab_end:
  \cctab_begin:N \c_document_cctab
  \int_compare:nTF { \char_value_catcode:n { `_` } = 8 }
    { \TRUE } { \ERROR }
  \cctab_end:
}\use:n {
  \cctab_begin:N \c_document_cctab
  \char_set_catcode_other:N `_`
  \cctab_end:
  \cctab_begin:N \c_document_cctab
  \int_compare:nTF { \char_value_catcode:n { `_` } = 8 }
    { \TRUE } { \ERROR }
  \cctab_end:
}\sys_if_engine_luatex:T {
  \__cctab_new:N \g__cctab_internal_cctab
  \cs_new:Npn \__cctab_internal_cctab_name:
    {
    \g__cctab_internal_cctab\_name
}\sys_if_engine_luatex:T

The public function simply checks the \textlangle\textcctab\textrangle exists before using the engine-dependent \textcctab_select:N. Skipping these checks would result in low-level engine-dependent errors. First, the \LaTeX case. In other engines, selecting a catcode table is a matter of doing 256 catcode assignments and setting the \textendlinechar.

\begin{verbatim}
cctab_select:N
\__cctab_select:N
\cs_new_protected:Npn \cctab_select:N #1
\{ \__cctab_chk_if_valid:NT #1 { \__cctab_select:N #1 } \}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \cctab_select:N { c }
\sys_if_engine_luatex:TF
\{
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__cctab_select:N #1
\{ \tex_catcodetable:D #1
\prop_get:NVNTF \g__cctab_endlinechar_prop #1 \l__cctab_internal_a_tl
\{ \int_set:Nn \tex_endlinechar:D { \l__cctab_internal_a_tl } \}
\{ \int_set:Nn \tex_endlinechar:D { 13 } \}
\cs_if_exist:cF { \__cctab_internal_cctab_name: }
\{ \exp_args:Nc \__cctab_new:N { \__cctab_internal_cctab_name: } \}
\exp_args:Nc \tex_savecatcodetable:D { \__cctab_internal_cctab_name: } \}
\exp_args:Nc \tex_catcodetable:D { \__cctab_internal_cctab_name: } \}
\}
\}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__cctab_select:N #1
\{ \int_step_inline:nn { 256 }
\{ \char_set_catcode:nn { #1 - 1 } \}
\{ \__kernel_intarray_item:Nn #1 {#1} \}
\}
\int_set:Nn \tex_endlinechar:D { \__kernel_intarray_item:Nn #1 { 257 } }
\}
\}
\}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \cctab_select:N and \__cctab_select:N. This function is documented on page 262.)
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__cctab_begin_aux:
 \{
 \__cctab_new:N \g__cctab_next_cctab
 \tl_set:NV \l__cctab_internal_a_tl \g__cctab_next_cctab
 \cs_undefine:N \g__cctab_next_cctab
 \}

(End definition for \g__cctab_next_cctab and \__cctab_begin_aux.)

\cctab_begin:N Check the (cctab var) exists, to avoid low-level errors. Get in \l__cctab_internal_a_tl
the number/name of a dynamic table, either from \g__cctab_unused_seq where we save
tables that are not currently in use, or from \__cctab_begin_aux: if none are available.
Then save the current catcodes into the table (pointed to by) \l__cctab_internal_a_tl
and save that table number in a stack before selecting the desired catcodes.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \cctab_begin:N #1
 \{
 \__cctab_chk_if_valid:NT #1
 \{
 \seq_gpop:NNF \g__cctab_unused_seq \l__cctab_internal_a_tl
 \{ \__cctab_begin_aux: \}
 \exp_args:Nx \__cctab_chk_group_begin:n
 \{ \__cctab_nesting_number:N \l__cctab_internal_a_tl \}
 \seq_gpush:NV \g__cctab_stack_seq \l__cctab_internal_a_tl
 \exp_args:NV \__cctab_gset:n \l__cctab_internal_a_tl
 \__cctab_select:N #1
 \}
 \}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \cctab_begin:N { c }

(End definition for \cctab_begin:N. This function is documented on page 261.)

\cctab_end: Make sure a \cctab_begin:N was used some time earlier, get in \l__cctab_internal_a_tl
the code table number/name in which the prevailing catcodes were stored, then
restore these catcodes. The dynamic table is now unused hence stored in \g__cctab_unused_seq
for recycling by later \cctab_begin:N.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \cctab_end:
 \{
 \seq_gpop:NNF \g__cctab_stack_seq \l__cctab_internal_a_tl
 \{ \seq_gpush:NV \g__cctab_unused_seq \l__cctab_internal_a_tl
 \exp_args:Nx \__cctab_chk_group_end:n
 \{ \__cctab_nesting_number:N \l__cctab_internal_a_tl \} \}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \cctab_begin:N { c }
Catcode tables are not allowed to be intermixed with groups, so here we check that they are properly nested regarding \TeX groups. \_\_cctab_chk_group_begin:n stores the current group level in a stack, and locally defines a dummy control sequence \_\_cctab_group_{\langle cctab-level \rangle}_chk:
\_\_cctab_chk_group_end:n pops the stack, and compares the returned value with \tex_currentgrouplevel:D. If they differ, \cctab_end: is in a different grouping level than the matching \cctab_begin:N. If they are the same, both happened at the same level, however a group might have ended and another started between \cctab_begin:N and \cctab_end:.

\begin{verbatim}
\group_begin:
  \cctab_begin:N \c_document_cctab
\group_end:
\cctab_end:
\group_end:
\end{verbatim}

In this case checking \tex_currentgrouplevel:D is not enough, so we locally define \_\_cctab_group_{\langle cctab-level \rangle}_chk:, and then check if it exist in \cctab_end:. If it doesn’t, we know there was a group end where it shouldn’t.

The \langle cctab-level \rangle in the sentinel macro above cannot be replaced by the more convenient \tex_currentgrouplevel:D because with the latter we might be tricked. Suppose:

\begin{verbatim}
\group_begin:
  \cctab_begin:N \c_code_cctab % A
\group_end:
\group_begin:
  \cctab_begin:N \c_code_cctab % B
  \cctab_end: % C
  \cctab_end: % D
\group_end:
\end{verbatim}

The line marked with A would start a \cctab with a sentinel token named \_\_cctab_group_1_chk:, which would disappear at the \group_end: that follows. But B would create the same sentinel token, since both are at the same group level. Line C would end the \cctab from line B correctly, but so would line D because line B created the same sentinel token. Using \langle cctab-level \rangle works correctly because it signals that certain \cctab level was activated somewhere, but if it doesn’t exist when the \cctab_end: is reached, we had a problem.

Unfortunately these tests only flag the wrong usage at the \cctab_end:, which might be far from the \cctab_begin:N. However it isn’t possible to signal the wrong usage at the \group_end: without using \tex_aftergroup:D, which is unsafe in certain types of groups.

The three cases checked here just raise an error, and no recovery is attempted: usually interleaving groups and catcode tables will work predictably.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__cctab_chk_group_begin:n #1
{
  \seq_gpush:Nx \g__cctab_group_seq { \int_use:N \tex_currentgrouplevel:D }
  \cs_set_eq:cN { __cctab_group_ #1 _chk: } \prg_do_nothing:
}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__cctab_chk_group_end:n #1
{
  \seq_gpop:NN \g__cctab_group_seq \l__cctab_internal_b_tl
  \bool_lazy_and:nnF
    { \int_compare_p:nNn { \tex_currentgrouplevel:D } = { \l__cctab_internal_b_tl } }
    { \cs_if_exist_p:c { __cctab_group_ #1 _chk: } }
    { \msg_error:nnx { cctab } { group-mismatch }
      \int_sign:n { \tex_currentgrouplevel:D - \l__cctab_internal_b_tl } }
  \cs_undefine:c { __cctab_group_ #1 _chk: }
}(End definition for \__cctab_chk_group_begin:n and \__cctab_chk_group_end:n.)
\__cctab_nesting_number:N\__cctab_nesting_number:w
This macro returns the numeric index of the current catcode table. In LuaTeX this is just
the argument, which is a count reference to a \catcodetable register. In other engines,
the number is extracted from the cctab variable.
\sys_if_engine_luatex:TF
  { \cs_new:Npn \__cctab_nesting_number:N #1 {#1} }
  {
    \cs_new:Npn \__cctab_nesting_number:N #1
      { \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \__cctab_nesting_number:w
        ##1 \tl_to_str:n { g__cctab_ } ##2 \tl_to_str:n { cctab } {##2} }
  }
(End definition for \__cctab_nesting_number:N and \__cctab_nesting_number:w.)
Finally, install some code at the end of the \TeX run to check that all \cctab_begin:N
were ended by some \cctab_end:.
\cs_if_exist:NT \hook_gput_code:nnn
  { \hook_gput_code:nnn { enddocument/end } { cctab } }
  {
    \seq_if_empty:NF \g__cctab_stack_seq
      { \msg_error:nn { cctab } { missing-end } }
}

1187
Evaluate the integer argument only once. In most engines the `cctab` variable only has 256 entries so we only look up the catcode for these entries, otherwise we use the current catcode. In particular, for out-of-range values we use whatever fall-back `\char_value_catcode:n`. In Lua\TeX, we use the `tex.getcatcode` function.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \cctab_item:Nn #1#2 { \exp_args:Nf \__cctab_item:nN { \int_eval:n {#2} } #1 }
\sys_if_engine_luatex:TF {
  \cs_new:Npn \__cctab_item:nN #1#2 { \lua_now:e { tex.print(-2, tex.getcatcode(\int_use:N #2, #1)) } }
} {
  \cs_new:Npn \__cctab_item:nN #1#2 {
    \int_compare:nNnTF {#1} < { 256 } { \intarray_item:Nn #2 { #1 + 1 } } { \char_value_catcode:n {#1} }
  }
}\cs_generate_variant:Nn \cctab_item:Nn { c }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \cctab_item:Nn. This function is documented on page 262.)

\subsection{79.5 Category code table conditionals}

\cctab_if_exist_p:N  Checks whether a \texttt{\langle cctab var \rangle} is defined.

\begin{verbatim}
\prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \cctab_if_exist:N \cs_if_exist:N {
  TF , T , F , p }
\prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \cctab_if_exist:c \cs_if_exist:c {
  TF , T , F , p }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \cctab_if_exist:NTF. This function is documented on page 262.)

\cctab_if_exist_p:c  \cctab_if_exist:NTF  \cctab_if_exist:c

\cctab_chk_if_valid:N  Checks whether the argument is defined and whether it is a valid \texttt{\langle cctab var \rangle}. In Lua\TeX the validity of the \texttt{\langle cctab var \rangle} is checked by the engine, which complains if the argument is not a \texttt{\chardef}'ed constant. In other engines, check if the given command is an intarray variable (the underlying definition is a copy of the cmr10 font).

\begin{verbatim}
\prg_new_protected_conditional:Npn \__cctab_chk_if_valid:N #1 { \cs_if_exist:N #1 {
  \__cctab_chk_if_valid_aux:NTF #1 {
    \msg_error:nnx { cctab } { invalid-cctab }{ \token_to_str:N #1 }
    \prg_return_false: }
  \prg_return_true: }
}{
  \msg_error:nnx { cctab } { invalid-cctab }
  \prg_return_false: }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \cctab_if_exist:NTF. This function is documented on page 262.)
\{ \msg_error:n { kernel } \{ command-not-defined \}
    \{ \token_to_str:N \#1 \}
\prg_return_false:
\}
\sys_if_engine_luatex:TF
\{ \cs_new_protected:Npn \__cctab_chk_if_valid_aux:NTF \#1
    \{ \int_compare:nNnTF {\#1-1} < { \e@alloc@ccodetable@count } \}
\cs_if_exist:NT \c_syst_catcodes_n
\{ \cs_gset_protected:Npn \__cctab_chk_if_valid_aux:NTF \#1
    \{ \int_compare:nTF { \#1 <= \c_syst_catcodes_n } \}
\}
\} \{ \cs_new_protected:Npn \__cctab_chk_if_valid_aux:NTF \#1
    \{ \exp_args:Nf \str_if_in:nnTF
    \{ \cs_meaning:N \#1 \}
    { select-font-cmr10-at- } \}
\}
\c_initex_cctab \c_other_cctab \c_str_cctab
Creating category code tables means thinking starting from iniTeX. For all-other and
the standard “string” tables that’s easy.
\cctab_new:N \c_initex_cctab
\cctab_const:Nn \c_other_cctab \c_str_cctab
\begin{verbatim}
1189
\end{verbatim}

79.6 Constant category code tables

\cctab_const:Nn \cctab_const:cn

Creates a new \langle ctab\ var\ \rangle then sets it with the current and user-supplied codes.
\cctab_new:N \cctab_const:Nn \cctab_const:Nn \cctab_new:N \cctab_const:Nn \cctab_new:N \cctab_const:Nn
\begin{verbatim}
1189
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \_\_cctab_chk_if_valid:NTF and \_\_cctab_chk_if_valid_aux:NTF.)
To pick up document-level category codes, we need to delay set up to the end of the format, where that’s possible. Also, as there are a lot of category codes to set, we avoid using the official interface and store the document codes using internal code. Depending on whether we are in the hook or not, the catcodes may be code or document, so we explicitly set up both correctly.

\cs_if_exist:NTF \@expl@finalise@setup@@
\use:n
\{ \__cctab_new:N \c_code_cctab
\group_begin:
\int_set:Nn \tex_endlinechar:D { 32 }
\bool_lazy_or:nnTF
\{ \sys_if_engine_xetex_p: \} \{ \sys_if_engine_luatex_p: \}
\{ \int_step_function:nN { 31 } \char_set_catcode_invalid:n \}
\{ \int_step_function:nN { 31 } \char_set_catcode_active:n \}
\int_step_function:nnN { 33 } { 64 } \char_set_catcode_other:n
\int_step_function:nnN { 65 } { 90 } \char_set_catcode_letter:n
\int_step_function:nnN { 91 } { 96 } \char_set_catcode_other:n
\int_step_function:nnN { 97 } { 122 } \char_set_catcode_letter:n
\char_set_catcode_ignore:n { 9 } % tab
\char_set_catcode_igraph:n { 10 } % lf
\char_set_catcode_active:n { 12 } % ff
\char_set_catcode_end_line:n { 13 } % cr
\char_set_catcode_ignore:n { 32 } % space
\char_set_catcode_parameter:n { 35 } % hash
\char_set_catcode_math_toggle:n { 36 } % dollar
\char_set_catcode_comment:n { 37 } % percent
\char_set_catcode_alignment:n { 38 } % ampersand
\char_set_catcode_letter:n { 58 } % colon
\char_set_catcode_escape:n { 92 } % backslash
\char_set_catcode_math_superscript:n { 94 } % circumflex
\char_set_catcode_letter:n { 95 } % underscore
\char_set_catcode_group_begin:n { 123 } % left brace
\char_set_catcode_other:n { 124 } % pipe
\char_set_catcode_group_end:n { 125 } % right brace
\char_set_catcode_space:n { 126 } % tild
\char_set_catcode_invalid:n { 127 } % ^^?
\bool_lazy_or:nnF
\{ \sys_if_engine_xetex_p: \} \{ \sys_if_engine_luatex_p: \}
\int_step_function:nnN { 128 } { 255 } \char_set_catcode_active:n
\__cctab_gset:n { \c_code_cctab }
\group_end:
\cctab_const:Nn \c_document_cctab
79.7 Messages

\msg_new:nnnn { cctab } { stack-full } { The-category-code-table-stack-is-exhausted. }
\msg_new:nnnn { cctab } { extra-end } { Extra-\iow_char:N\cctab_end: ignored-\msg_line_context:. }
\msg_new:nnnn { cctab } { missing-end } { Missing-\iow_char:N\cctab_end: before-end-of-TeX-run. }
\msg_new:nnnn { cctab } { invalid-cctab } { Invalid-\iow_char:N\catcode-table. }
\msg_new:nnnn { cctab } { group-mismatch } { Catcode-tables-and-groups-must-be-properly-nested,-but-
you-tried-to-interleave-them.-LaTeX-will-try-to-proceed,-
but-results-may-be-unexpected.

\prop_gput:Nnn \g_msg_module_name_prop { cctab } { LaTeX3 }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g_msg_module_type_prop { cctab } { }
Chapter 80

\texttt{l3unicode} implementation

Case changing both for strings and “text” requires data from the Unicode Consor-
tium. Some of this is build in to the format (as \texttt{lccode} and \texttt{uccode} values) but this
covers only the simple one-to-one situations and does not fully handle for example case
folding.

As only the data needs to remain at the end of this process, everything is set up
inside a group. The only thing that is outside is creating a stream: they are global
anyway and it is best to force a stream for all engines. For performance reasons, some
of the code here is very low-level: the material is read during loading expl3 in package
mode.

\begin{verbatim}
\ior_new:N \g__char_data_ior
\bool_lazy_or:nnTF { \sys_if_engine_luatex_p: } { \sys_if_engine_xetex_p: } { \group_begin: }
\accessprimitive{\__char_generate_char:n #1}{\tex_detokenize:D \tex_expandafter:D { \tex_Uchar:D " #1 } }
\end{verbatim}

Access the primitive but suppress further expansion: active chars are otherwise an issue.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_set:Npx \__char_generate:n #1 { \exp_not:N \tex_unexpanded:D \exp_not:N \exp_after:wN
\exp_not:N \tex_Ucharcat:D #1 ~ \tex_catcode:D #1 ~ }
\end{verbatim}

A fast local implementation for generating characters; the chars may be active, so we
prevent further expansion.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_set:Npx \__char_generate:n #1 {
\exp_not:N \tex_unexpanded:D \exp_not:N \exp_after:wN
\exp_not:N \tex_Ucharcat:D
#1 -
\tex_catcode:D #1 -
}
\end{verbatim}

Parse the main Unicode data file for two things. First, we want the titlecase exceptions:
the one-to-one lower- and uppercase mappings it contains are all be covered by the \TeX
data. Second, we need normalization data: at present, just the canonical NFD mappings.
Those all yield either one or two codepoints, so the split is relatively easy.

\begin{verbatim}
\ior_open:Nn \g__char_data_ior { UnicodeData.txt }
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__char_data_auxi:w
\end{verbatim}
The other data files all use C-style comments so we have to worry about `#` tokens (and reading as strings). The setup for case folding is in two parts. For the basic (core) mappings, folding is the same as lower casing in most positions so only store the differences. For the more complex foldings, always store the result, splitting up the two or three code points in the input as required.
For upper- and lowercasing special situations, there is a bit more to do as we also have

title casing to consider, plus we need to stop part-way through the file.

```latex
\ior_open:Nn \g__char_data_ior { SpecialCasing.txt }
\ior_set_protected:Nnn \__char_data_auxii:ws #1 - #2 - #3 - #4 \q_stop
\tl_const:cx { c__char_foldcase_ \__char_generate_char:n {#1} _tl }
\tl_const:cx { c__char_foldcase_ \__char_generate_char:n {#2} _tl }
\tl_const:cx { c__char_foldcase_ \__char_generate_char:n {#3} _tl }
\tl_const:cx { c__char_foldcase_ \__char_generate_char:n {#4} _tl }
\tl_const:cx { c__char_foldcase_ \__char_generate_char:n {#5} _tl }
\ior_str_map_inline:Nn \g__char_data_ior
\ior_close:N \g__char_data_ior
```

\ior_open:Nn \g__char_data_ior { SpecialCasing.txt }
\ior_set_protected:Nn \__char_data_auxii:ws #1 - #2 - #3 - #4 \q_stop
\tl_const:cx { c__char_foldcase_ \__char_generate_char:n {#1} _tl }
\tl_const:cx { c__char_foldcase_ \__char_generate_char:n {#2} _tl }
\tl_const:cx { c__char_foldcase_ \__char_generate_char:n {#3} _tl }
\tl_const:cx { c__char_foldcase_ \__char_generate_char:n {#4} _tl }
\tl_const:cx { c__char_foldcase_ \__char_generate_char:n {#5} _tl }
\ior_str_map_inline:Nn \g__char_data_ior
For the 8-bit engines, the above is skipped but there is still some set up required. As case changing can only be applied to bytes, and they have to be in the ASCII range, we define a series of data stores to represent them, and the data are used such that only these are ever case-changed. We do open and close one file to force allocation of a read: this keeps all engines in line.

\ior_open:N \g__char_data_ior \{ UnicodeData.txt \} \ior_close:N \g__char_data_ior \group_end:
Chapter 81

\textbf{13text implementation}

\section*{81.1 Internal auxiliaries}

\texttt{\s__text_stop} Internal scan marks.
\begin{verbatim}
\scan_new:N \s__text_stop
\end{verbatim}
(End definition for \s__text_stop.)

\texttt{\q__text_nil} Internal quarks.
\begin{verbatim}
\quark_new:N \q__text_nil
\end{verbatim}
(End definition for \q__text_nil.)

\texttt{\__text_quark_if_nil_p:n} Branching quark conditional.
\begin{verbatim}
\__kernel_quark_new_conditional:Nn \__text_quark_if_nil:n { TF }
\end{verbatim}
(End definition for \__text_quark_if_nil:nTF.)

\texttt{\q__text_recursion_tail} \texttt{\q__text_recursion_stop} Internal recursion quarks.
\begin{verbatim}
\quark_new:N \q__text_recursion_tail
\quark_new:N \q__text_recursion_stop
\end{verbatim}
(End definition for \q__text_recursion_tail and \q__text_recursion_stop.)

\texttt{\_text_use_i_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:nw} Functions to gobble up to a quark.
\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__text_use_i_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:nw #1 #2 \q__text_recursion_stop {#1}
\end{verbatim}
(End definition for \__text_use_i_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:nw.)

\texttt{\__text_if_recursion_tail_stop_do:Nn} Functions to query recursion quarks.
\begin{verbatim}
\__kernel_quark_new_test:N \__text_if_recursion_tail_stop_do:Nn
\end{verbatim}
(End definition for \__text_if_recursion_tail_stop_do:Nn.)
81.2 Utilities

The idea here is to take a token and ensure that if it’s an implicit char, we output the explicit version. Otherwise, the token needs to be unchanged. First, we have to split between control sequences and everything else.

```
\__text_token_to_explicit:N
\text_token_to_explicit_char:N
\text_token_to_explicit_cs:N
\text_token_to_explicit_cs_aux:N
\text_token_to_explicit_auxi:w
\text_token_to_explicit_auxii:w
\text_token_to_explicit_auxiii:w
```

For control sequences, we can check for macros versus other cases using `\if_meaning:w`, then explicitly check for `\chardef` and `\mathchardef`.

```
\cs_new:Npn \__text_token_to_explicit_cs:N #1
\cs_new:Npn \__text_token_to_explicit_cs_aux:N #1
```

For character tokens, we need to filter out the implicit characters from those that are explicit. That’s done here, then if necessary we work out the category code and generate the char. To avoid issues with alignment tabs, that one is done by elimination rather than looking up the code explicitly. The trick with finding the charcode is that the \TeX messages are either the ⟨something⟩ character ⟨char⟩ or the ⟨type⟩ ⟨char⟩.

```
\cs_new:Npn \__text_token_to_explicit_char:N #1
```
An idea from l3char: we need to get the category code of a specific token, not the general case.
\else:
  \if_catcode:w \exp_not:N #1 \c_alignment_token
    4
\else:
  \if_catcode:w \exp_not:N #1 \c_math_superscript_token
    7
\else:
  \if_catcode:w \exp_not:N #1 \c_math_subscript_token
    8
\else:
  \if_catcode:w \exp_not:N #1 \c_space_token
    10
\else:
  \if_catcode:w \exp_not:N #1 \c_catcode_letter_token
    11
\else:
  \if_catcode:w \exp_not:N #1 \c_catcode_other_token
    12
\else:
  \fi:
  \fi:
  \fi:
\fi:
\fi:
\fi:
\fi:
\fi:
\fi:
\fi:
\fi:
\fi:
\fi:
\fi:
\fi:
\fi:
\fi:

(End definition for \_text_char_catcode:N.)

\__text_if_expandable:NTF Test for tokens that make sense to expand here: that is more restrictive than the engine view.
\prg_new_conditional:Nppn \_text_if_expandable:N #1 { T , F , TF }
  \token_if_expandable:NTF #1
  \bool_lazy_any:nTF
  { \token_if_protected_macro_p:N #1 }
  { \token_if_protected_long_macro_p:N #1 }
  { \token_if_eq_meaning_p:NN \q__text_recursion_tail #1 }
  \prg_return_false: }
  \prg_return_true: }
  \prg_return_false: }
  \prg_return_true: }
(End definition for \_text_if_expandable:NTF.)
81.3 Configuration variables

\l_text_accents_tl
\l_text_letterlike_tl

Special cases for accents and letter-like symbols, which in some cases will need to be converted further.

\tl_new:N \l_text_accents_tl
\tl_set:Nn \l_text_accents_tl
{ \^ \~ \= \u \. " \r \H \v \d \c \k \b \t }

\tl_new:N \l_text_letterlike_tl
\tl_set:Nn \l_text_letterlike_tl
{ \AA \aa \AE \ae \DH \dh \DJ \dj \IJ \ij \L \l \NG \ng \O \o \OE \oe \SS \ss \TH \th }

(End definition for \l_text_accents_tl and \l_text_letterlike_tl. These variables are documented on page 267.)

\l_text_case_exclude_arg_tl

Non-text arguments.

\tl_new:N \l_text_case_exclude_arg_tl
\tl_set:Nn \l_text_case_exclude_arg_tl { \begin \cite \end \label \ref }

(End definition for \l_text_case_exclude_arg_tl. This variable is documented on page 268.)

\l_text_math_arg_tl

Math mode as arguments.

\tl_new:N \l_text_math_arg_tl
\tl_set:Nn \l_text_math_arg_tl { \ensuremath }

(End definition for \l_text_math_arg_tl. This variable is documented on page 268.)

\l_text_math_delims_tl

Paired math mode delimiters.

\tl_new:N \l_text_math_delims_tl
\tl_set:Nn \l_text_math_delims_tl { $ \( \) }

(End definition for \l_text_math_delims_tl. This variable is documented on page 268.)

\l_text_expand_exclude_tl

Commands which need not to expand.

\tl_new:N \l_text_expand_exclude_tl
\tl_set:Nn \l_text_expand_exclude_tl { \begin \cite \end \label \ref }

(End definition for \l_text_expand_exclude_tl. This variable is documented on page 268.)

\l__text_math_mode_tl

Used to control math mode output: internal as there is a dedicated setter.

\tl_new:N \l__text_math_mode_tl

(End definition for \l__text_math_mode_tl.)
81.4 Expansion to formatted text

Marker for implicit char handling.
\exp: \text_chardef: \text_mathchardef: \text_chardef_group: \text_mathchardef_group: \text_chardef_group_end: \text_mathchardef_group_end:

\text_chardef: \text_mathchardef: \text_chardef_group: \text_mathchardef_group: \text_chardef_group_end: \text_mathchardef_group_end:

After precautions against & tokens, start a simple loop: that of course means that “text” cannot contain the two recursion quarks. The loop here must be f-type expandable; we have arbitrary user commands which might be protected and take arguments, and if the expansion code is used in a typesetting context, that will otherwise explode. (The same issue applies more clearly to case changing: see the example there.)

\cs_new:Npn \text_expand:n #1
\__kernel_exp_not:w \exp_after:wN
\exp:w \__text_expand:n {#1}
\__text_expand_result:n { }

The approach to making the code f-type expandable is to use a marker result token and to shuffle the collected tokens.

\cs_new:Npn \__text_expand_loop:w #1 \q__text_recursion_stop
\tl_if_head_is_N_type:nTF {#1}
\__text_expand_N_type:N

The main loop is a standard “tl action”: groups are handled recursively, while spaces are just passed through. Thus all of the action is in handling N-type tokens.

\cs_new:Npn \__text_expand_result:n #1
\__text_expand_loop:w #1 \q__text_recursion_stop
\__text_expand_N_type:N
\__text_expand_loop:w #1 \q__text_recursion_stop
\__text_expand_N_type:N

\cs_new:Npn \__text_expand_store:n #1
\__text_expand_store:nw {#1}
Before we get into the real work, we have to watch out for problematic implicit characters: spaces and grouping tokens. Converting these to explicit characters later would lead to real issues as they are not \N-type. A space is the easy case, so it’s dealt with first: just insert the explicit token and continue the loop.

Implicit \{\} offer two issues. First, the token could be an implicit brace character: we need to avoid turning that into a brace group, so filter out the cases manually. Then we handle the case where an implicit group is present. That is done in an “open-ended” way: there’s the possibility the closing token is hidden somewhere.
The first step in dealing with \textit{N}-type tokens is to look for math mode material: that needs to be left alone. The starting function has to be split into two as we need \quark_{-if\_recursion\_tail\_stop:N} first before we can trigger the search. We then look for matching pairs of delimiters, allowing for the case where math mode starts but does not end. Within math mode, we simply pass all the tokens through unchanged, just checking the \textit{N}-type ones against the end marker.
At this stage, either we have a control sequence or a simple character: split and handle.

Next we exclude math commands: this is mainly as there might be an \textbf{ensuremath}.
\exp_not:V \l_text_math_arg_tl
\exp_not:V \l_text_expand_exclude_tl
}

#1
}
\cs_new:Npn \__text_expand_exclude:NN #1#2
{ \__text_expand_exclude:NN #2 #1
\q__text_recursion_tail \q__text_recursion_stop
}

\cs_new:Npn \__text_expand_exclude:NN #1#2
{ \__text_if_recursion_tail_stop_do:Nn #2
{ \__text_expand_accent:N #1 }
\str_if_eq:nnTF {#1} {#2}
{ \__text_use_i_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:nw
{ \__text_expand_exclude:Nn #1 }
{ \__text_expand_exclude:NN #1 }
}
\cs_new:Npn \__text_expand_accent:N #1
{ \exp_after:wN \__text_expand_accent:NN \exp_after:wN #1 \l_text_accents_tl
\q__text_recursion_tail \q__text_recursion_stop
}

\cs_new:Npn \__text_expand_accent:NN #1#2
{ \__text_if_recursion_tail_stop_do:Nn #2
{ \__text_expand_letterlike:N #1 }
\cs_if_eq:NNTF #2 #1
{ \__text_use_i_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:nw
{ \__text_expand_store:n {#1}
{ \__text_expand_loop:w

Accents.
\cs_new:Npn \__text_expand_accent:NN #1#2
{ \__text_if_recursion_tail_stop_do:Nn #2
{ \__text_expand_accent:N #1 }
\str_if_eq:nnTF {#1} {#2}
{ \__text_use_i_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:nw
{ \__text_expand_store:n {#1}
{ \__text_expand_loop:w

Another list of exceptions: these ones take no arguments so are easier to handle.
\cs_new:Npn \__text_expand_letterlike:N #1
{ \exp_after:wN \__text_expand_letterlike:N \exp_after:wN #1 \l_text_letterlike_tl

1206
\texttt{\LaTeX2e}’s \texttt{\protect} makes life interesting. Where possible, we simply remove it and replace with the “parent” command; of course, the \texttt{\protect} might be explicit, in which case we need to leave it alone if it’s required. There is also the case of a straight \texttt{\@protected@testopt} to cover.

\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{\textbackslash cs_new:Npn \_text_expand_letterlike:NN \#1\#2}
\texttt{\{}
\texttt{\_text_if_recursion_tail_stop_do:Nn \#2}
\texttt{\{ \_text_expand_cs:N \#1 \}}
\texttt{\cs_if_eq:NNTF \#2 \#1 \}
\texttt{\{
\_text_use_i_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:nw
\{
\_text_expand_store:n \{\#1\}
\_text_expand_loop:w
\}
\}
\{
\_text_expand_letterlike:NN \#1 \}
\}
\end{verbatim}
Deal with encoding-specific commands

\cs_new:Npn \__text_expand_encoding:N #1
{ \bool_lazy_or:nnTF
  { \cs_if_eq_p:NN #1 \@current@cmd }
  { \cs_if_eq_p:NN #1 \@changed@cmd }
  { \exp_after:wN \__text_expand_loop:w \__text_expand_encoding_escape:NN }
  { \__text_expand_replace:N #1 }
}
\cs_new:Npn \__text_expand_encoding_escape:NN #1#2 { \exp_not:n {#1} }

See if there is a dedicated replacement, and if there is, insert it.

\cs_new:Npn \__text_expand_replace:N #1
{ \bool_lazy_and:nnTF
  { \cs_if_exist_p:c { l__text_expand_ \token_to_str:N #1 _tl } }
  { \bool_lazy_or_p:nn
    { \token_if_cs_p:N #1 }
    { \token_if_active_p:N #1 }
  }
  { \exp_args:Nv \__text_expand_replace:n
    { l__text_expand_ \token_to_str:N #1 _tl } }
  { \__text_expand_cs_expand:N #1 }
}
\cs_new:Npn \__text_expand_replace:n #1
{ \__text_expand_loop:w #1 }

Finally, expand any macros which can be: this then loops back around to deal with what
they produce. The only issue is if the token is \exp_not:n, as that must apply to the
following balanced text.

\cs_new:Npn \__text_expand_cs_expand:N #1
{ \__text_if_expandable:NTF #1
  { \token_if_eq_meaning:NNTF #1 \exp_not:n
    { \__text_expand_unexpanded:w } }
  { \exp_after:wN \__text_expand_loop:w #1 }
}
\cs_new:Npn \__text_expand_loop:w
{ \__text_expand_store:n {#1}
  \__text_expand_loop:w
}

1208
Since \texttt{\texttt{exp_not:n}} is actually a primitive, it allows a strange syntax and it particular the primitive expands what follows and discards spaces and \texttt{\texttt{scan_stop:}} until finding a braced argument (the opening brace can be implicit but we will not support this here). Here, we repeatedly \texttt{f}-expand after such an \texttt{\texttt{exp_not:n}}, and test what follows. If it is a brace group, then we found the intended argument of \texttt{\texttt{exp_not:n}}. If it is a space, then the next \texttt{f}-expansion will eliminate it. If it is an \texttt{N}-type token then \_\texttt{text_-	exttt{expand_unexpanded}:N} leaves the token to be expanded if it is expandable, and otherwise removes it, assuming that it is \texttt{\texttt{scan_stop:}}. This silently hides errors when \texttt{\texttt{exp_not:n}} is incorrectly followed by some non-expandable token other than \texttt{\texttt{scan_stop:}}, but this should be pretty rare, and there is no good error recovery anyways.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__text_expand_unexpanded:w { \exp_after:wN \__text_expand_unexpanded_test:w \exp:w \exp_end_continue_f:w }
\cs_new:Npn \__text_expand_unexpanded_test:w #1 \q__text_recursion_stop { \tl_if_head_is_group:nTF {#1} { \__text_expand_unexpanded:n } { \__text_expand_unexpanded:w \tl_if_head_is_N_type:nT {#1} { \__text_expand_unexpanded:N } } #1 \q__text_recursion_stop }
\cs_new:Npn \__text_expand_unexpanded:n #1 { \__text_expand_store:n {#1} \__text_expand_loop:w }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{text_expand:n} and others. This function is documented on page 265.)

Create equivalents to allow replacement.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \text_declare_expand_equivalent:Nn \text_declare_expand_equivalent:cn
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \text_declare_expand_equivalent:Nn { c }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\texttt{text_declare_expand_equivalent:Nn}}. This function is documented on page 265.)
Chapter 82

\text-case implementation

82.1 Case changing

Needed to determine the route used in titlecasing.

\bool_new:N \l_text_titlecase_check_letter_bool
\bool_set_true:N \l_text_titlecase_check_letter_bool

(End definition for \l_text_titlecase_check_letter_bool. This variable is documented on page 268.)

The user level functions here are all wrappers around the internal functions for case changing.

\cs_new:Npn \text_lowercase:n #1
{ \__text_change_case:nnn { lower } { } {#1} }
\cs_new:Npn \text_uppercase:n #1
{ \__text_change_case:nnn { upper } { } {#1} }
\cs_new:Npn \text_titlecase:n #1
{ \__text_change_case:nnn { title } { } {#1} }
\cs_new:Npn \text_titlecase_first:n #1
{ \__text_change_case:nnn { titleonly } { } {#1} }
\cs_new:Npn \text_lowercase:nn #1#2
{ \__text_change_case:nnn { lower } {#1} {#2} }
\cs_new:Npn \text_uppercase:nn #1#2
{ \__text_change_case:nnn { upper } {#1} {#2} }
\cs_new:Npn \text_titlecase:nn #1#2
{ \__text_change_case:nnn { title } {#1} {#2} }
\cs_new:Npn \text_titlecase_first:nn #1#2
{ \__text_change_case:nnn { titleonly } {#1} {#2} }

(End definition for \text_lowercase:n and others. These functions are documented on page 266.)

As for the expansion code, the business end of case changing is the handling of N-type tokens. First, we expand the input fully (so the loops here don’t need to worry about awkward look-aheads and the like). Then we split into the different paths.

The code here needs to be f-type expandable to deal with the situation where case changing is applied in running text. There, we might have case changing as a document command and the text containing other non-expandable document commands.
If we use an e-type expansion and wrap each token in \exp_not:n, that would explode: the document command grabs \exp_not:n as an argument, and things go badly wrong. So we have to wrap the entire result in exactly one \exp_not:n, or rather in the kernel version.

As for expansion, collect up the tokens for future use.

The main loop is the standard \tl_action type.
For a group, we could worry about whether this contains a character or not. However, that would make life very complex for little gain: exactly what a first character is is rather weakly-defined anyway. So if there is a group, we simply assume that a character has been seen, and for title case we switch to the “rest of the tokens” situation. To avoid having too much testing, we use a two-step process here to allow the titlecase functions to be separate.
The first step of handling N-type tokens is to filter out the end-of-loop. That has to be done separately from the first real step as otherwise we pick up the wrong delimiter. The loop here is the same as the \texttt{expand} one, just passing the additional data long. If no close-math token is found then the final clean-up is forced (i.e. there is no assumption of “well-behaved” input in terms of math mode).
Once potential math-mode cases are filtered out the next stage is to test if the token grabbed is a control sequence: the two routes the code may take are then very different.

To deal with a control sequence there is first a need to test if it is on the list which indicate that case changing should be skipped. That’s done using a loop as for the other special cases. If a hit is found then the argument is grabbed and passed through as-is.
Letter-like commands may still be present: they are set up using a simple lookup approach, so can easily be handled with no loop. If there is no hit, we are at the end of the process: we loop around. Letter-like chars are all available only in upper- and lowercase, so titlecasing maps to the uppercase version.

For upper- and lowercase changes, once we get to this stage there are only a couple of questions remaining: is there a language-specific mapping and is there the special case of a terminal sigma. If not, then we pass to a simple character mapping.
If the current character is an uppercase sigma, a check is made on the next item in the input. If it is N-type and not a control sequence then there is a look-ahead phase: the logic here is simply based on letters. The one exception is Dutch: see below.

In the 8-bit engines, we have to look ahead once we find the first byte of the possible hit.
For title casing, we need to fully expand the new character to see if it is a letter (or active) but that means looking ahead in the 8-bit case, so we have to grab the required tokens up-front. Life is a lot easier for Unicode TeX’s, where we just have one token to worry about. The one wrinkle here is that for look-ahead we’d get into trouble: luckily, only Dutch has that issue.
For Unicode engines we can handle all characters directly. However, for the 8-bit engines the aim is to deal with (a subset of) Unicode (UTF-8) input. They deal with that by making the upper half of the range active, so we look for that and if found work out how many UTF-8 octets there are to deal with. Those can then be grabbed to reconstruct the full Unicode character, which is then used in a lookup. (As will become obvious below, there is no intention here of covering all of Unicode.) For (u)p-T\TeX{} there are a limited number of tokens we can touch.
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_char_auxii:nnnN \#1\#2\#3\#4
\{\__text_change_case_store:n \{\#4\}\use:c \{ \__text_change_case_char_next_:nn \} \{\#2\} \{\#3\}\}
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_char_UTFviii:nnn \#1\#2\#3\#4\#5\#6\#7
{ \__text_change_case_char_UTFviii:nnnn \#1\#2\#3\#4\#5\#6\#7 \}
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_char_UTFviii:nnnn \#1\#2\#3\#4\#5\#6\#7\#8
{ \__text_change_case_char_UTFviii:nnnn \#1\#2\#3\#4\#5\#6\#7\#8 \}
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_char_UTFviii:nnnn \#1\#2\#3\#4\#5\#6\#7\#8\#9
{ \__text_change_case_char_UTFviii:nnnn \#1\#2\#3\#4\#5\#6\#7\#8\#9 \}
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_char_UTFviii:nnnn \#1\#2\#3\#4\#5\#6\#7\#8\#9\#10
{ \__text_change_case_char_UTFviii:nnnn \#1\#2\#3\#4\#5\#6\#7\#8\#9\#10 \}
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_char_next_:nn \#1\#2
{ \__text_change_case_loop:nnw \#1 \#2 \}
\cs_new_eq:NN \__text_change_case_char_next_upper:nn \__text_change_case_char_next_:nn
\cs_new_eq:NN \__text_change_case_char_next_title:nn \__text_change_case_char_next_:nn
\cs_new_eq:NN \__text_change_case_char_next_titleonly:nn \__text_change_case_char_next_:nn
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_char_next_end:w \#1\#2
{ \__text_change_case_break:w }
(End definition for \__text_change_case:nnn and others.)
A simple alternative version for German.
\bool_lazy_or:nnTF
{ \sys_if_engine_luatex_p: }
{ \sys_if_engine_xetex_p: }
{ \cs_new:cpn \{ \__text_change_case_upper_de-alt:nnnn \} \#1\#2\#3\#4
{ \int_compare:nNnTF \{ \#4 \} = \{ "00DF \}
{ \__text_change_case_store:e \char_generate:nn \{ \#4 \} \}
\use:c \{ \__text_change_case_char_catcode:N \{ \#4 \} \}
\{\#2\} \{\#3\}
\}
{ \__text_change_case_char:nnnN \#1\#2\#3\#4 }
}
\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:cpx { __text_change_case_upper_de-alt:nnnN } #1#2#3#4
{ \exp_not:N \int_compare:nNnTF { '#4 } = { "00C3 } 
  { \exp_not:c { __text_change_case_upper_de-alt:nnnNN } #1#2#3#4 } 
  { \exp_not:N \__text_change_case_char:nnnN {#1} {#2} {#3} #4 } }
\cs_new:cpn { __text_change_case_upper_de-alt:nnnNN } #1#2#3#4#5
{ \int_compare:nNnTF { '#5 } = { "009F } 
  { \__text_change_case_store:V \c__text_grosses_Eszett_tl 
    \use:c { __text_change_case_char_next_ #2 :nn } {#2} {#3} } 
  { \__text_change_case_char:nnnN {#1} {#2} {#3} #4#5 } }
\bool_lazy_or:nnT { \sys_if_engine_luatex_p: } { \sys_if_engine_xetex_p: }
{ \cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_el:nnnN #1#2#3#4 
  { \__text_change_case_if_greek:nTF { '#4 } 
    { \exp_args:Ne \__text_change_case_upper_el:nnn 
      { \char_to_nfd:N #4 } {#2} {#3} } 
    { \__text_change_case_char:nnnN {#1} {#2} {#3} #4#5 } } 
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_el:nnn #1#2#3
{ \__text_change_case_upper_el:nnNw {#2} {#3} #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_el:nnNw #1#2#3#4 \q__text_recursion_stop
{ \tl_if_head_is_N_type:nTF {#4} 
  \__text_change_case_upper_el:nnNw {#2} {#3} #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_el:nNn #1#2#3
{ \__text_change_case_upper_el:nnNw {#2} {#3} #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_el:nnN #1#2#3
{ \__text_change_case_upper_el:nnNw {#2} {#3} #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_el:nN #1#2#3
{ \__text_change_case_upper_el:nnNw {#2} {#3} #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_el:nn #1#2#3
{ \__text_change_case_upper_el:nnNw {#2} {#3} #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_el:nnw #1#2#3
{ \__text_change_case_upper_el:nnNw {#2} {#3} #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_el:gobble:n #1#2#3
{ \__text_change_case_upper_el:nnNw {#2} {#3} #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_el:gobble:nw #1#2#3
{ \__text_change_case_upper_el:nnNw {#2} {#3} #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_el_dialytika:n #1#2#3
{ \__text_change_case_upper_el:nnNw {#2} {#3} #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_el_dialytika:p:n #1#2#3
{ \__text_change_case_upper_el:nnNw {#2} {#3} #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_el_dialytika:n: #1#2#3
{ \__text_change_case_upper_el:nnNw {#2} {#3} #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_el_dialytika:p: #1#2#3
{ \__text_change_case_upper_el:nnNw {#2} {#3} #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_if_greek:n #1#2#3
{ \__text_change_case_upper_el:nnNw {#2} {#3} #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_if_greek:p:n #1#2#3
{ \__text_change_case_upper_el:nnNw {#2} {#3} #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_if_greek:d:n #1#2#3
{ \__text_change_case_upper_el:nnNw {#2} {#3} #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_if_greek:diacritic:p:n #1#2#3
{ \__text_change_case_upper_el:nnNw {#2} {#3} #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_el:hiatus:n #1#2#3
{ \__text_change_case_upper_el:nnNw {#2} {#3} #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_el:hiatus:p:n #1#2#3
{ \__text_change_case_upper_el:nnNw {#2} {#3} #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_el:gobble:n #1#2#3
{ \__text_change_case_upper_el:nnNw {#2} {#3} #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_el:gobble:p:n #1#2#3
{ \__text_change_case_upper_el:nnNw {#2} {#3} #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_el:if_greek:n #1#2#3
{ \__text_change_case_upper_el:nnNw {#2} {#3} #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_el:if_greek:p:n #1#2#3
{ \__text_change_case_upper_el:nnNw {#2} {#3} #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_el:if_greek:d:n #1#2#3
{ \__text_change_case_upper_el:nnNw {#2} {#3} #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_el:if_greek:diacritic:p:n #1#2#3
{ \__text_change_case_upper_el:nnNw {#2} {#3} #1 } }
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_el:if_takes_dialytika:n #1#2#3
{ \__text_change_case_upper_el:nnNw {#2} {#3} #1 } }
\end{verbatim}

For Greek uppercasing, we need to know if characters in the Greek range have accents. That means doing a NFD conversion first, then starting a search. As described by the Unicode CLDR, Greek accents need to be found after any U+0308 (diaeresis) and are done in two groups to allow for the canonical ordering. The implementation here follows the data and examples from ICU (https://sites.google.com/site/icusite/design/case/greek-upper), although necessarily the implementation is somewhat different.

At this stage we have the first NFD codepoint as #3. What we need to know is whether after that we have another character token, either from the NFD or directly in the input. If not, we store the changed character at this stage.
Now, we check the detail of the next codepoint: again we filter out the not-a-char cases, before checking if it’s an dialytika, accent or diacritic. (The latter do not have the same hiatus behavior as accents.)

We handle **dialytika** in parts as it’s also needed for the hiatus. We know only two letters take it, so we can shortcut here on the second part of the tests.
Adding a hiatus needs some of the same ideas, but if there is not one we skip this code point, hence needing a separate function.

\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_el_hiatus:nnNw #1#2#3#4 \q__text_recursion_stop
{ \__text_change_case_store:e { \char_uppercase:N #3 }
tl_if_head_is_N_type:nTF {#4}
{ \__text_change_case_upper_el_hiatus:nnN }
{ \__text_change_case_loop:nnw }
{#1} {#2} #4 \q__text_recursion_stop }
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_el_gobble:nnw #1#2#3 
{ \tl_if_head_is_N_type:nTF {#3}
{ \__text_change_case_upper_el_gobble:nnN #1} {#2}
{ \__text_change_case_loop:nnw } {#1} {#2} #3 \q__text_recursion_stop }
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_el_gobble:nnN #1#2#3
{ \bool_lazy_or:nnTF { \token_if_cs_p:N #3 }
{ \bool_lazy_or_p:nn
{ \__text_change_case_if_greek_accent_p:n { '#3 } }
{ \__text_change_case_if_greek_diacritic_p:n { '#3 } }
{ \__text_change_case_loop:nnw } {#1} {#2} #3 \q__text_recursion_stop 
{ \__text_change_case_upper_el_gobble:nnw } {#1} {#2} #3 
{ \__text_change_case_loop:nnw } {#1} {#2} #3 
{ \__text_change_case_upper_el_gobble:nnw } {#1} {#2} #3 }
\prg_new_conditional:Nppn \__text_change_case_if_greek:n #1 { TF }
{ }

For clearing out trailing combining marks after we have dealt with the first one.

\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_el_gobble:nnw #1#2#3 \q__text_recursion_stop
{ \tl_if_head_is_N_type:nTF {#3}
{ \__text_change_case_upper_el_gobble:nnN } \__text_change_case_loop:nnw
{#1} {#2} #3 \q__text_recursion_stop }
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_el_gobble:nnN #1#2#3
{ \bool_lazy_or:nnTF { \token_if_cs_p:N #3 }
{ \bool_lazy_or_p:nn
{ \__text_change_case_if_greek_accent_p:n { '#3 } }
{ \__text_change_case_if_greek_diacritic_p:n { '#3 } }
{ \__text_change_case_loop:nnw } {#1} {#2} #3 
{ \__text_change_case_upper_el_gobble:nnw } {#1} {#2} #3 }
\prg_new_conditional:Nppn \__text_change_case_if_greek:n #1 { TF }
{ }

Luckily the Greek range is limited and clear.
We follow ICU in adding a few extras to the accent list here.

\prg_new_conditional:Nn \__text_change_case_if_greek_accent:n #1 { TF , p }
{
  \if_int_compare:w #1 = "0300 \exp_stop_f:
  \prg_return_true:
  \else:
  \if_int_compare:w #1 = "0301 \exp_stop_f:
  \prg_return_true:
  \else:
  \if_int_compare:w #1 = "0342 \exp_stop_f:
  \prg_return_true:
  \else:
  \if_int_compare:w #1 = "0302 \exp_stop_f:
  \prg_return_true:
  \else:
  \if_int_compare:w #1 = "0303 \exp_stop_f:
  \prg_return_true:
  \else:
    \fi:
  \fi:
  \else:
  \if_int_compare:w #1 = "0311 \exp_stop_f:
  \prg_return_true:
  \else:
    \fi:
  \fi:
  \fi:
  \fi:
  \fi:
  \fi:
\}
\prg_new_conditional:Nn \__text_change_case_if_greek_diacritic:n #1 { TF , p }
{
  \if_int_compare:w #1 = "0304 \exp_stop_f:
  \prg_return_true:
  \else:
  \if_int_compare:w #1 = "0306 \exp_stop_f:
    \fi:
  \else:
    \fi:
  \fi:
  \fi:
  \fi:
  \fi:
\}
\prg_new_conditional:Nn \__text_change_case_if_greek_accent:n #1 { TF , p }
{
  \if_int_compare:w #1 = "0300 \exp_stop_f:
  \prg_return_true:
  \else:
  \if_int_compare:w #1 = "0301 \exp_stop_f:
  \prg_return_true:
  \else:
  \if_int_compare:w #1 = "0342 \exp_stop_f:
  \prg_return_true:
  \else:
    \fi:
  \fi:
  \else:
    \fi:
  \fi:
  \fi:
  \fi:
\}
There is one special case in Greek that needs to be picked up based on being an isolated letter. We do that using a test similar to final sigma, but it has to fire off from the space grabber.

```latex
\bool_lazy_or:nnT
{ \sys_if_engine_luatex_p: }
{ \sys_if_engine_xetex_p: }
{ \cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_boundary_upper_el:Nnnw \#1 \#2 \#3 \#4 \q__text_recursion_stop
{ \tl_if_head_is_N_type:nTF \#4
{ \__text_change_case_boundary_upper_el:nnN }
{ \__text_change_case_loop:nnw }
} }
(End definition for \text_change_case_upper_el:nnN and others.)
```

1224
Titlecasing retains accents, but to prevent the uppercasing code from kicking in, there has to be an explicit function here.

\text{For Lithuanian, the issue to be dealt with is dots over lower case letters: these should be present if there is another accent. The first step is a simple match attempt: look for the...}
three uppercase accented letters which should gain a dot-above char in their lowercase form.

\bool_lazy_or:nnT
\sys_if_engine_luatex_p: }
\sys_if_engine_xetex_p: }
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_lower_lt:nnnN #1#2#3#4
\{ \exp_args:Ne \__text_change_case_lower_lt_auxi:nnnN
\{ \int_case:nn { '#4 } 
{ "00CC } { "0300 }
{ "00CD } { "0301 }
{ "0128 } { "0303 }
\}
\{#2} \{#3} #4
\}
\if@empty \__text_change_case_store:e
\char_generate:nn { "0069 } { \__text_char_catcode:N #4 }
\char_generate:nn { "0307 } { \__text_char_catcode:N #4 }
\char_generate:nn {#1} { \__text_char_catcode:N #4 }
\}
\__text_change_case_loop:nnw {#2} \{#3
\}
\}
\{ \exp_args:Ne \__text_change_case_lower_lt_auxii:nnnN
\{ \int_case:nn { '#4 } 
{ "0049 } { "0069 }
{ "004A } { "006A }
{ "012E } { "012F }
\}
\{#2} \{#3} #4
\}
\__text_change_case_lower: e
\char_generate:nn { "0069 } { \__text_char_catcode:N #4 }
\char_generate:nn { "0307 } { \__text_char_catcode:N #4 }
\char_generate:nn {#1} { \__text_char_catcode:N #4 }
\}
\__text_change_case_loop:nnw {#2} \{#3
\}
\}
\if@empty \__text_change_case_store:e
\char_generate:nn { "0069 } { \__text_char_catcode:N #4 }
\char_generate:nn { "0307 } { \__text_char_catcode:N #4 }
\char_generate:nn {#1} { \__text_char_catcode:N #4 }
\}
\__text_change_case_loop:nnw {#2} \{#3
\}
\}
\if@empty \__text_change_case_store:e
\char_generate:nn { "0069 } { \__text_char_catcode:N #4 }
\char_generate:nn { "0307 } { \__text_char_catcode:N #4 }
\char_generate:nn {#1} { \__text_char_catcode:N #4 }
\}
\__text_change_case_loop:nnw {#2} \{#3
\}
\}
\if@empty \__text_change_case_store:e
\char_generate:nn { "0069 } { \__text_char_catcode:N #4 }
\char_generate:nn { "0307 } { \__text_char_catcode:N #4 }
\char_generate:nn {#1} { \__text_char_catcode:N #4 }
\}
\__text_change_case_loop:nnw {#2} \{#3
\}
\}
\if@empty \__text_change_case_store:e
\char_generate:nn { "0069 } { \__text_char_catcode:N #4 }
\char_generate:nn { "0307 } { \__text_char_catcode:N #4 }
\char_generate:nn {#1} { \__text_char_catcode:N #4 }
\}
\__text_change_case_loop:nnw {#2} \{#3
\}
\}
Again, branch depending on a hit. If there is one, we output the character then need to
look for a combining accent: as usual, we need to be aware of the loop situation.
The uppercasing version: first find i/j/i-ogonek, then look for the combining char: drop it if present.

```latex
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_lt:nnN #1#2#3
\bool_lazy_or:nnT { \sys_if_engine_luatex_p: } { \sys_if_engine_xetex_p: }
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_lt:nnnN #1#2#3#4
\exp_args:Ne \__text_change_case_upper_lt_aux:nnnN {#1} {#2} {#3} {#4}
```

(End definition for \texttt{\__text_change_cases_lower_gt:nnnn} and others.)
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_lt_aux:nnnN #1#2#3#4
{
  \tl_if_blank:nTF {#1}
  { \__text_change_case_char:nnnN { upper } {#2} {#3} #4 }
  {
    \__text_change_case_store:e
    { \char_generate:nn {#1} \{ \__text_char_catcode:N #4 \} }
    \__text_change_case_upper_lt:nnw {#2} {#3}
  }
}
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_lt:nnw #1#2#3 \q__text_recursion_stop
{
  \tl_if_head_is_N_type:nTF {#3}
  { \__text_change_case_upper_lt:nnN }
  { \use:c { __text_change_case_char_next_ #1 :nn } }
  {#1} {#2} #3 \q__text_recursion_stop
}
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_upper_lt:nnN #1#2#3
{
  \bool_lazy_and:nnTF
  { ! \token_if_cs_p:N #3 }
  { \int_compare_p:nNn { '#3 } = { "0307 } }
  { \use:c { __text_change_case_char_next_ #1 :nn } {#1} {#2} #3 }
}

(End definition for \__text_change_cases_upper_lt:nnnN and others.)

\__text_change_case_title_nl:nnnN \__text_change_case_title_nl:nnw
\__text_change_case_title_nl:nw

For Dutch, there is a single look-ahead test for \textit{ij} when title casing. If the appropriate letters are found, produce \textit{IJ} and gobble the \textit{j}/\textit{J}.

\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_title_nl:nnnN #1#2#3#4
{
  \bool_lazy_or:nnTF
  { \int_compare_p:nNn { '#4 } = { "0049 } }
  { \int_compare_p:nNn { '#4 } = { "0069 } }
  { \__text_change_case_store:e
    { \char_generate:nn { "0049 } \{ \__text_char_catcode:N #4 \} }
    \__text_change_case_title_nl:nnw {#2} {#3}
  }
  { \__text_change_case_char:nnnN {#1} {#2} {#3} #4 }
}
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_title_nl:nnw #1#2#3 \q__text_recursion_stop
{
  \tl_if_head_is_N_type:nTF {#3}
  { \__text_change_case_title_nl:nnN }
  { \use:c { __text_change_case_char_next_ #1 :nn } }
  {#1} {#2} #3 \q__text_recursion_stop
}
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_title_nl:nnN #1#2#3
{
  \bool_lazy_and:nnTF
  { ! \token_if_cs_p:N #3 }
  { \int_compare_p:nNn { '#3 } = { "0049 } }
  { \int_compare_p:nNn { '#3 } = { "0069 } }
  { \__text_change_case_store:e
    { \char_generate:nn { "0049 } \{ \__text_char_catcode:N #4 \} }
    \__text_change_case_title_nl:nw {#2} {#3}
  }
  { \__text_change_case_char:nnnN {#1} {#2} {#3} #4 }
}
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_title_nl:nw #1#2#3 #4 \q__text_recursion_stop
{
  \tl_if_head_is_N_type:nTF {#3}
  { \__text_change_case_title_nl:nw {#1} {#2} {#3} #4 }
  { \use:c { __text_change_case_char_next_ #1 :nn } }
  {#1} {#2} #3 \q__text_recursion_stop
}
\cs_new:Npn \__text_change_case_title_nl:nw #1#2#3
{
  \bool_lazy_and:nnTF
  { ! \token_if_cs_p:N #3 }
  { \int_compare_p:nNn { '#3 } = { "0049 } }
  { \int_compare_p:nNn { '#3 } = { "0069 } }
  { \__text_change_case_store:e
    { \char_generate:nn { "0049 } \{ \__text_char_catcode:N #4 }
The Turkic languages need special treatment for dotted-i and dotless-i. The lower casing rule can be expressed in terms of searching first for either a dotless-I or a dotted-I. In the latter case the mapping is easy, but in the former there is a second stage search.

After a dotless-I there may be a dot-above character. If there is then a dotted-i should be produced, otherwise output a dotless-i. When the combination is found both the dotless-I and the dot-above char have to be removed from the input.
For 8-bit engines, dot-above is not available so there is a simple test for an upper-case I. Then we can look for the UTF-8 representation of an upper case dotted-I without the combining char. If it’s not there, preserve the UTF-8 sequence as-is. With 8bit engines, we cannot completely preserve category codes, so we have to make some assumptions: output a “normal” i for the dotted case. As the original character here is catcode-13, we have to make a choice about handling of i: generate a “normal” one.

\cs_new:Npn \text_case_lower_tr:nnnN #1#2#3#4
\int_compare:nNnTF { #4 } = { "0049 }
\__text_case_store:V \c__text_dotless_i_tl
\__text_case_loop:nnw {#1} {#3}
\__text_case_char:nnnN {#1} {#2} {#3} #4
\end{definition}
\cs_new:Npn \text_case_lower_tr:nnnNN #1#2#3#4#5
\int_compare:nNnTF { #5 } = { "00B0 }
\__text_case_store:e
\char_generate:nn { "0069 }
\char_value_catcode:n { "0069 } }
\__text_case_loop:nnw {#1} {#3}
\__text_case_char:nnnN {#1} {#2} {#3} #4#5
82.2 Case changing data for 8-bit engines

For cases where there is an 8-bit option in the T1 font set up, a variant is provided in both cases. There are also a few extras for LGR.
For 8-bit engines we now need to define the case-change data for the multi-octet mappings. This data is here not in the \texttt{char} module as the multi-byte nature means they are never $N$-type. These need a list of what code points are doable in $T1$ so the list is hard coded (there’s no saving in loading the mappings dynamically). All of the straight-forward ones have two octets, so that is taken as read.

\begin{verbatim}
\bool_lazy_or:nnF { \sys_if_engine_luatex_p: } { \sys_if_engine_xetex_p: }
{ \cs_set_protected:Npn \__text_loop:nn #1#2 }
{ \quark_if_recursion_tail_stop:n {#1} }
\use:x
{ \__text_tmp:w \char_to_utfvii_bytes:n { "#1 } }
\__text_loop:nn
{ \__text_tmp:nnnn #1#2#3#4#5 }
{ \tl_const:cx }
{ c__text_ #1 case_ }
\char_generate:nn {#2} { 12 }
\char_generate:nn {#3} { 12 }
\_tl
\}
{ \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN 
\char_not:N \char_generate:nn {#3} { 13 }
}
\}
\}
\use:x
{ \__text_tmp:w \char_to_utfvii_bytes:n { "#2 } }
\group_end:

(End definition for $c__text_dotless_i_tl$ and others.)
Add T2 (Cyrillic) as this is doable using a classical `\MakeUppercase` approach.
Greek support: everything in the two-octet range.
Odds and ends for Greek: mainly symbols that are for compatibility, but also things like the terminal sigma. Almost all are uppercase mappings, but there is one that is not!

```latex
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__text_tmp:w #1#2#3
\{
  \group_begin:
  \cs_set_protected:Npn \__text_tmp:w ##1##2##3##4##5##6##7##8
  \{
    \tl_const:cx
    \{ \_text_ _3 case_
      \char_generate:nn {##1} { 12 }
      \char_generate:nn {##2} { 12 }
      _tl
      \}
      \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN
      \exp_not:N \char_generate:nn {##5} { 13 }
      \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN
      \exp_not:N \char_generate:nn {##6} { 13 }
    \}
  \}
  \use:x
  \{
    \_text_tmp:w
    \char_to_utfviii_bytes:n { "#1 }
    \char_to_utfviii_bytes:n { "#2 }
  \}
  \group_end:
```

1237
Odds and ends that are not simple one-to-one mappings. These are still two-octet code points.

\cs_set_protected:Npn \__text_tmp:w #1#2#3
  {
    \group_begin:
    \cs_set_protected:Npn \__text_tmp:w ##1##2##3##4
      {
        \tl_const:cn
        {
          c__text_ #3 case_
          \char_generate:nn {##1} { 12 }
          \char_generate:nn {##2} { 12 }
          _tl
        }
        {#2}
      }
    \use:x
    { \__text_tmp:w \char_to_utfviii_bytes:n { "#1" } }
    \group_end:
  }
\__text_tmp:w \__text_tmp:w \__text_tmp:w \__text_tmp:w \03f4 \0388 \upper \03f5 \0395 \upper

Greek support: the three-octet code points.

\cs_set_protected:Npn \__text_tmp:w nnnnnn #1#2#3#4#5#6#7
  {
    \tl_const:cx
    {
      c__text_ \#1 case_
      \char_generate:nn {#2} { 12 }
      \char_generate:nn {#3} { 12 }
      \char_generate:nn {#4} { 12 }
      _tl
    }
    {\exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN
      \exp_not:N \char_generate:nn {#5} { 13 }
      \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN
      \exp_not:N \char_generate:nn {#6} { 13 }
      \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN
      \exp_not:N \char_generate:nn {#7} { 13 }
    }
  }
\__text_tmp:w \__text_tmp:w \__text_tmp:w \__text_tmp:w \00df \ss \upper \__text_tmp:w \00df \ss \title
\__text_tmp:w \__text_tmp:w \__text_tmp:w \0131 \i \upper
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__text_tmp:w nnnnnn #1#2#3#4#5#6#7
  {
    \tl_const:cx
    {
      c__text_lowercase_
      \char_generate:nn {#1} { 12 }
      \char_generate:nn {#2} { 12 }
      \char_generate:nn {#3} { 12 }
    }
  }
\__text_tmp:w \__text_tmp:w \__text_tmp:w \__text_tmp:w \1238
{ 1F68 } { 1F60 }
{ 1F69 } { 1F61 }
{ 1F6A } { 1F62 }
{ 1F6B } { 1F63 }
{ 1F6C } { 1F64 }
{ 1F6D } { 1F65 }
{ 1F6E } { 1F66 }
{ 1F6F } { 1F67 }
{ 1FBA } { 1F70 }
{ 1FBB } { 1F71 }
{ 1FC8 } { 1F72 }
{ 1FC9 } { 1F73 }
{ 1FCA } { 1F74 }
{ 1FCB } { 1F75 }
{ 1FDC } { 1F76 }
{ 1FDD } { 1F77 }
{ 1FE8 } { 1F78 }
{ 1FE9 } { 1F79 }
{ 1FEA } { 1F7A }
{ 1FEB } { 1F7B }
{ 1FEC } { 1F7C }
{ 1FED } { 1F7D }
{ 1FEE } { 1F7E }
{ 1FEF } { 1F7F }
{ 1F98 } { 1F90 }
{ 1F99 } { 1F91 }
{ 1F9A } { 1F92 }
{ 1F9B } { 1F93 }
{ 1F9C } { 1F94 }
{ 1F9D } { 1F95 }
{ 1F9E } { 1F96 }
{ 1F9F } { 1F97 }
{ 1FA8 } { 1FA0 }
{ 1FA9 } { 1FA1 }
{ 1FAA } { 1FA2 }
{ 1FAB } { 1FA3 }
{ 1FAC } { 1FA4 }
{ 1FAD } { 1FA5 }
{ 1FAE } { 1FA6 }
{ 1FAF } { 1FA7 }
{ 1FB8 } { 1FB0 }
{ 1FB9 } { 1FB1 }
{ 1FBC } { 1FB3 }
{ 1FCC } { 1FC3 }
{ 1FD8 } { 1FD0 }
{ 1FD9 } { 1FD1 }
{ 1FE8 } { 1FE0 }
{ 1FE9 } { 1FE1 }
One three-octet special case for Greek: it also moves to two-octets!

\cs_set_protected:Npn \__text_tmp:w #1#2#3
\group_begin:
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__text_tmp:w ##1##2##3##4##5##6##7##8
\group_end:
\__text_tmp:w { 1FBE } { 0399 } { upper }

The (fixed) look-up mappings for letter-like control sequences.
\group_begin:
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__text_change_case_setup:NN #1#2
\group_end:
To deal with possible encoding-specific extensions to \@uclclist, we check at the end of the preamble. This will therefore only apply to \LaTeX2ε package mode.

\cs_if_exist:cT { \@uclclist }
\{ 
\AtBeginDocument
\{ 
  \group_begin:
  \cs_set_protected:Npn \__text_change_case_setup:Nn #1#2 
  \{ 
    \quark_if_recursion_tail_stop:N #1 
    \tl_if_single_token:nT {#2} 
    \{ 
      \cs_if_exist:cF 
      \{ c__text_uppercase_ \token_to_str:N #1 _tl \} 
      \{ 
        \tl_const:cn
        \{ c__text_uppercase_ \token_to_str:N #1 _tl \} 
        \{ #2 \}
      \}
      \cs_if_exist:cF 
      \{ c__text_lowercase_ \token_to_str:N #2 _tl \} 
      \{ 
        \tl_const:cn
        \{ c__text_lowercase_ \token_to_str:N #2 _tl \} 
        \{ #1 \}
      \}
    \}
  \}
\exp_after:wN \__text_change_case_setup:Nn \@uclclist
\q_recursion_tail ?
\q_recursion_stop
\group_end:

⟨/package⟩
Chapter 83

l3text-purify implementation

83.1 Purifying text

As in the other parts of the module, we start off with a standard “action” loop, with expansion applied up-front.

As for expansion, collect up the tokens for future use.
The main loop is a standard “tl action”. Unlike the expansion or case changing, here any
groups have to be run inline. Most of the business end is as before in the \textsc{N}-type token
processing.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__text_purify_loop:w #1 \q__text_recursion_stop
{ \tl_if_head_is_N_type:nTF {#1}
  { \__text_purify_N_type:N }
  { \tl_if_head_is_group:nTF {#1}
    { \__text_purify_group:n }
    { \__text_purify_space:w }
  }
{ #1 \q__text_recursion_stop }
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__text_purify_group:n #1 { \__text_purify_loop:w #1 }
\exp_last_unbraced:NNo \cs_new:Npn \__text_purify_space:w \c_space_tl
{ \__text_purify_store:n { ~ }
  \__text_purify_loop:w }
\end{verbatim}

The first part of handling math mode is exactly the same as in the other functions: look
for a start-of-math mode token and if found start a new loop tracking the closing token.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__text_purify_math_search:NNN #1#2#3
{ \__text_if_recursion_tail_stop_do:Nn #2
  { \__text_purify_math_cmd:N #1 }
  \token_if_eq_meaning:NNTF #1 #2
  { \__text_use_i_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:nw
    { \__text_purify_math_start:NNw #2 #3 } }
  \__text_purify_math_search:NNN #1 }\q__text_recursion_stop
\cs_new:Npn \__text_purify_math_start:NNw #1#2 #3 \q__text_recursion_stop
{ \__text_purify_math_loop:NNw #1#2#3 \q__text_recursion_stop
  \__text_purify_math_result:n { }\q__text_recursion_stop
\}
\cs_new:Npn \__text_purify_math_store:n #1
\end{verbatim}
Then handle math mode as an argument: same outcomes, different input syntax.
For $N$-type tokens, we first look for a string-context replacement before anything else: this can therefore cover anything. Assuming we don’t find one, check to see if we can expand control sequences: if not, they have to be dropped. We also allow for LaTeX:\protect: there’s an assumption that we don’t have \protect \{ \oops \} or similar, but that’s also in the expansion code and seems like a reasonable balance.

Handle encoding commands, as detailed for expansion.
\cs_new:Npn \__text_purify_encoding:N #1
{
  \bool_lazy_or:nnTF
    { \cs_if_eq_p:NN #1 \@current@cmd }
    { \cs_if_eq_p:NN #1 \@changed@cmd }
    { \__text_purify_encoding_escape:NN }
  {
    \__text_if_expandable:NTF #1
    { \exp_after:wN \__text_purify_loop:w #1 }
    { \__text_purify_loop:w }
  }
}
\cs_new:Npn \__text_purify_encoding_escape:NN #1#2
{
  \__text_purify_store:n {#1}
  \__text_purify_loop:w
}
(End definition for \text_purify:n and others. This function is documented on page 267.)
\text_declare_purify_equivalent:Nn
\text_declare_purify_equivalent:Nx
\cs_new_protected:Npn \text_declare_purify_equivalent:Nn #1#2
{
  \tl_clear_new:c { l__text_purify_ \token_to_str:N #1 _tl }
  \tl_set:cn { l__text_purify_ \token_to_str:N #1 _tl } {#2}
}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \text_declare_purify_equivalent:Nn { Nx }
(End definition for \text_declare_purify_equivalent:Nn. This function is documented on page 267.)
Now pre-define a range of standard commands that need dedicated definitions in purified text. First handle font-related stuff: all of this needs to be disabled.
\tl_map_inline:nn
{
  \fontencoding
  \fontfamily
  \fontseries
  \fontshape
}{
  \text_declare_purify_equivalent:Nn #1 \use_none:n }
\text_declare_purify_equivalent:Nn \fontsize \use_none:nn
\text_declare_purify_equivalent:Nn \selectfont
\text_declare_purify_equivalent:Nn \usefont \use_none:nnnn
\tl_map_inline:nn
{
  \emph
  \text
  \textnormal
  \textbf
  \textrm
  \textsf
  \texttt
  \textit
  \textsl
}
Environments have to be handled by pure expansion. Environments have to be handled by pure expansion.

\__text_end_env:n

(End definition for \__text_end_env:n.)

Some common symbols and similar ideas.

Cross-referencing.

Spaces.

Spaces.
83.2 Accent and letter-like data for purifying text

In contrast to case changing, both 8-bit and Unicode engines need information for text purification to handle accents and letter-like functions: these all need to be removed. However, the results are of course engine-dependent.

For the letter-like commands, life is relatively easy: they are all simply added as standard exceptions. The only oddity is \SS, which gets converted to two letters. (At some stage an alternative version can presumably be added to babel or similar.)
Accent handling is a little more complex. Accents may exist as pre-composed codepoints or as independent glyphs. The former are all saved as single token lists, whilst for the latter the combining accent needs to be re-ordered compared to the character it applies to.

First set up the combining accents.

1. \text_declare_purify_equivalent:Nn SS \{ SS \}
2. \__text_purify_accent:NN #1 #2
3. \cs_new:Npn \__text_purify_accent:NN #1 #2
4. \cs_if_exist:cTF
5. \exp_not:v
6. \exp_not:n { #2 }
7. \tl_map_inline:Nn \l_text_accents_tl
8. \text_declare_purify_equivalent:Nn #1 { \__text_purify_accent:NN #1 }
\bool_lazy_or:nnTF
{ \sys_if_engine_luatex_p: }
{ \sys_if_engine_xetex_p: }
{\cs_set:Npn \__text_tmp:n #1
 {
 \char_generate:nn { #1 }
 \char_value_catcode:n { #1 }
 }
}
{\cs_set:Npn \__text_tmp:n #1
 {
 \exp_args:Ne \__text_tmp_aux:n
 { \char_to_utfviii_bytes:n { #1 } }
 }
\cs_set:Npn \__text_tmp_aux:n #1 { \__text_tmp:nnnn #1 }
\cs_set:Npn \__text_tmp:nnnn #1#2#3#4
 {
 \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN
 \exp_not:N \char_generate:nn {#1} { 13 }
 \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN
 \exp_not:N \char_generate:nn {#2} { 13 }
 }
\__text_loop:Nn
\^ { 0302 }
\_ { 0303 }
\~ { 0303 }
\= { 0304 }
\u { 0306 }
\. { 0307 }
\" { 0308 }
\r { 030A }
\H { 030B }
\v { 030C }
\d { 0323 }
\c { 0327 }
\k { 0328 }
\b { 0331 }
\t { 0361 }
\_ { 0361 }
\q_recursion_tail { }
\q_recursion_stop
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__text_loop:NNn #1#2}
{\quark_if_recursion_tail_stop:N #1
\tl_const:cx
\cs_set:Npn \_text_loop:Nn
\]}{\text{puenc.def}}.
All of
the precomposed cases take a single letter as their second argument. We do not try to
cover the case where an accent is added to a “real” dotless-i or -j, or a æ/Æ. Rather, we
assume that if the UTF-8 character is used, it will have the real accent character too.
\cs_set_protected:Npn \_text_loop:NNn #1#2#3
{\quark_if_recursion_tail_stop:N #1
\tl_const:cx
\cs_set:Npn \_text_loop:NNn
\]}
\H U { 0170 } 
\H u { 0171 } 
\k U { 0172 } 
\k u { 0173 } 
\^ W { 0174 } 
\^ w { 0175 } 
\^ Y { 0176 } 
\^ y { 0177 } 
\^ Y { 0178 } 
\^ Z { 0179 } 
\^ z { 017A } 
\. Z { 017B } 
\. z { 017C } 
\v Z { 017D } 
\v z { 017E } 
\v A { 01CD } 
\v a { 01CE } 
\v I { 01CF } 
\v i { 01D0 } 
\v \i { 01D1 } 
\v o { 01D2 } 
\v u { 01D3 } 
\v u { 01D4 } 
\v G { 01E6 } 
\v g { 01E7 } 
\v K { 01E8 } 
\v k { 01E9 } 
\k O { 01EA } 
\k o { 01EB } 
\v \j { 01F0 } 
\v j { 01F0 } 
\v \j { 01F4 } 
\v g { 01F5 } 
\v \n { 01F8 } 
\v \AE { 01FC } 
\v \ae { 01FD } 
\v \O { 01FE } 
\v \o { 01FF } 
\v H { 021E } 
\v h { 021F } 
\. A { 0226 } 
\. a { 0227 } 
\c E { 0228 } 
\c e { 0229 } 
\. O { 022E } 
\. o { 022F } 
\^ Y { 0232 } 
\^ y { 0233 } 
\q_recursion_tail ? { } 
\q_recursion_stop 
\group_end:
(End definition for \_text_purify_accent:III.)
Chapter 84

\texttt{l3box} implementation

84.1 Support code

\begin{verbatim}
\__box_dim_eval:w \__box_dim_eval:n
Evaluating a dimension expression expandably. The only difference with \texttt{\dim_eval:n}
is the lack of \texttt{\dim_use:N}, to produce an internal dimension rather than expand it into
characters.
\cs_new_eq:NN \__box_dim_eval:w \tex_dimexpr:D
\cs_new:Npn \__box_dim_eval:n #1
{ \__box_dim_eval:w #1 \scan_stop: }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\__box_dim_eval:w} and \texttt{\__box_dim_eval:n}.)

\begin{verbatim}
\__kernel_kern:n
We need kerns in a few places. At present, we don't have a module for this concept, so
it goes in at first use: here. The idea is to avoid repeated use of the bare primitive.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__kernel_kern:n #1
{ \tex_kern:D \__box_dim_eval:n #1 }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\__kernel_kern:n}.)

84.2 Creating and initialising boxes

The following test files are used for this code: \texttt{m3box001.lvt}.

\begin{verbatim}
\box_new:N \box_new:c
Defining a new \texttt{\textit{box}} register: remember that box 255 is not generally available.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \box_new:N #1
{ \__kernel_chk_if_free_cs:N #1
\cs:w newbox \cs_end: #1
}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \box_new:N { c }
\end{verbatim}
Clear a \emph{box} register.

\begin{verbatim}
\box_clear:N \box_clear:N #1
\box_clear:c \cs_new_protected:Npn \box_clear:N #1
\box_gclear:N \cs_new_protected:Npn \box_gclear:N #1
\box_gclear:c \cs_generate_variant:Nn \box_clear:N { c }
\end{verbatim}

Clear or new.

\begin{verbatim}
\box_clear_new:N \box_clear_new:N #1
\box_gclear_new:N \cs_new_protected:Npn \box_gclear_new:N #1
\box_gclear_new:c \cs_generate_variant:Nn \box_clear_new:N { c }
\end{verbatim}

Assigning the contents of a box to be another box.

\begin{verbatim}
\box_set_eq:NN \box_set_eq:cN \box_set_eq:Nc \box_set_eq:cc
\box_gset_eq:NN \box_gset_eq:cN \box_gset_eq:Nc \box_gset_eq:cc
\end{verbatim}

Assigning the contents of a box to be another box, then drops the original box.

\begin{verbatim}
\box_set_eq_drop:NN \box_set_eq_drop:cN \box_set_eq_drop:Nc \box_set_eq_drop:cc
\end{verbatim}

Copies of the \emph{cs} functions defined in \emph{l3basics}.

\begin{verbatim}
\prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \box_if_exist:N \cs_if_exist:N { TF, T, F, p }
\prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \box_if_exist:c \cs_if_exist:c { TF, T, F, p }
\end{verbatim}

84.3 Measuring and setting box dimensions

Accessing the height, depth, and width of a \emph{box} register.

\begin{verbatim}
\box_ht:N \box_ht:c \cs_new_eq:NN \box_ht:N \tex_ht:D
\box_dp:N \box_dp:c \cs_new_eq:NN \box_dp:N \tex_dp:D
\box wd:N \box wd:c \cs_new_eq:NN \box wd:N \tex wd:D
\end{verbatim}

The \emph{\box ht:N} and \emph{\box dp:N} primitives do not expand but rather are suitable for use after \emph{\the} or inside dimension expressions. Here we obtain the same behaviour by using \_\emph{\_box_dim_eval:n} (basically \emph{\dimexpr}) rather than \emph{\dim_eval:n} (basically \emph{\the \dimexpr}).
Setting the size whilst respecting local scope requires copying; the same issue does not come up when working globally. When debugging, the dimension expression \#2 is surrounded by parentheses to catch early termination.

84.4 Using boxes

Using a \langle box \rangle. These are just T\TeX{} primitives with meaningful names.

Move box material in different directions. When debugging, the dimension expression \#1 is surrounded by parentheses to catch early termination.
84.5 Box conditionals

The primitives for testing if a ⟨box⟩ is empty/void or which type of box it is.

\if_hbox:N
\if_vbox:N
\if_box_empty:N
\if_box_horizontal_p:N
\if_box_horizontal_p:c
\if_box_horizontal:N
\if_box_horizontal:c
\if_box_vertical_p:N
\if_box_vertical_p:c
\if_box_vertical:N
\if_box_vertical:c
\if_box_empty_p:N
\if_box_empty_p:c
\if_box_empty:N
\if_box_empty:c

84.6 The last box inserted

\box_set_to_last:N
\box_set_to_last:c
\box_gset_to_last:N
\box_gset_to_last:c

84.7 Constant boxes

\c_empty_box

(End definition for \c_empty_box. This variable is documented on page 273.)
84.8 Scratch boxes

\l_tmpa_box
\l_tmpb_box
\g_tmpa_box
\g_tmpb_box

(End definition for \l_tmpa_box and others. These variables are documented on page 273.)

84.9 Viewing box contents

\TeX’s \showbox is not really that helpful in many cases, and it is also inconsistent with other \TeX3 show functions as it does not actually shows material in the terminal. So we provide a richer set of functionality.

\box_show:N
\box_show:c
\box_show:Nnn
\box_show:cnn

Essentially a wrapper around the internal function, but evaluating the breadth and depth arguments now outside the group.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \box_show:N #1
{ \box_show:Nnn #1 \c_max_int \c_max_int }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \box_show:N { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \box_show:Nnn #1#2#3
{ \__box_show:NNff 1 #1 { \int_eval:n {#2} } { \int_eval:n {#3} } }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \box_show:Nnn { c }

(End definition for \box_show:N and \box_show:Nnn. These functions are documented on page 274.)

\box_log:N
\box_log:c
\box_log:Nnn
\box_log:cnn
\__box_log:nNnn

Getting \TeX to write to the log without interruption the run is done by altering the interaction mode. For that, the \texttt{-\TeX} extensions are needed.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \box_log:N #1
{ \box_log:Nnn #1 \c_max_int \c_max_int }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \box_log:N { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \box_log:Nnn
{ \exp_args:No \__box_log:nNnn { \tex_the:D \tex_interactionmode:D } }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__box_log:nNnn #1#2#3#4
{ \int_set:Nn \tex_interactionmode:D { 0 } \__box_show:NNff 0 #2 { \int_eval:n {#3} } { \int_eval:n {#4} } \int_set:Nn \tex_interactionmode:D {#1} }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \box_log:Nnn { c }

(End definition for \box_log:N, \box_log:Nnn, and \__box_log:nNnn. These functions are documented on page 274.)

\__box_show:NNnn
\__box_show:NNff

The internal auxiliary to actually do the output uses a group to deal with breadth and depth values. The \texttt{use:n} here gives better output appearance. Setting \texttt{tracingonline} and \texttt{errorcontextlines} is used to control what appears in the terminal.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__box_show:NNnn
{ \box_if_exist:NTF #2
  \{ \box_if_exist:NTF #3
    \{ \box_if_exist:NTF #4
      \{ \group_begin:
      \}
    \}
  \}
\}

1261
\int_set:Nn \tex_showboxbreadth:D {#3}
\int_set:Nn \tex_showboxdepth:D {#4}
\int_set:Nn \tex_tracingonline:D {#1}
\int_set:Nn \tex_errorcontextlines:D { -1 }
\tex_showbox:D \use:n {#2}
\group_end:
\group_end:
\msg_error:nnx { kernel } { variable-not-defined }
{ \token_to_str:N #2 }
\group_end:
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \__box_show:NNnn { NNff }
(End definition for \__box_show:NNnn.)

84.10 Horizontal mode boxes

\hbox:n
(The test suite for this command, and others in this file, is m3box002.ltx.)
Put a horizontal box directly into the input stream.
\hbox_set:Nn \hbox_set:cn \hbox_gset:Nn \hbox_gset:cn
\cs_new_protected:Npn \hbox_set:Nn #1#2
{ \tex_setbox:D #1 \tex_hbox:D
{ \color_group_begin: #2 \color_group_end: } }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \hbox_gset:Nn #1#2
{ \tex_global:D \tex_setbox:D #1 \tex_hbox:D
{ \color_group_begin: #2 \color_group_end: } }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \hbox_set:Nn { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \hbox_gset:Nn { c }
(End definition for \hbox_set:Nn and \hbox_gset:Nn. These functions are documented on page 274.)
\hbox_set_to_wd:Nnn \hbox_set_to_wd:cnn \hbox_gset_to_wd:Nnn \hbox_gset_to_wd:cnn
\cs_new_protected:Npn \hbox_set_to_wd:Nnn #1#2#3
{ \tex_setbox:D #1 \tex_hbox:D to \__box_dim_eval:n {#2}
{ \color_group_begin: #3 \color_group_end: } }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \hbox_gset_to_wd:Nnn #1#2#3
{ \tex_global:D \tex_setbox:D #1 \tex_hbox:D to \__box_dim_eval:n {#2}
{ \color_group_begin: #3 \color_group_end: } }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \hbox_set_to_wd:Nnn { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \hbox_gset_to_wd:Nnn { c }

Storing material in a horizontal box with a specified width. Again, put the dimension expression in parentheses when debugging.
Storing material in a horizontal box. This type is useful in environment definitions.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Nn \hbox_set:Nw #1
{ \tex_setbox:D #1 \tex_hbox:D \c_group_begin_token \color_group_begin: \color_group_end: \c_group_end_token }
\cs_new_protected:Nn \hbox_gset:Nw #1
{ \tex_global:D \tex_setbox:D #1 \tex_hbox:D \c_group_begin_token \color_group_begin: \color_group_end: \c_group_end_token }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \hbox_set:Nw { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \hbox_gset:Nw { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \hbox_set_end:
{ \color_group_end: \c_group_end_token }
\cs_new_eq:NN \hbox_gset_end: \hbox_set_end:
\end{verbatim}

Combining the above ideas.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Nn \hbox_set_to_wd:Nnw #1#2
{ \tex_hbox:D to \__box_dim_eval:n {#1} \color_group_begin: #2 \color_group_end: }
\cs_new_protected:Nn \hbox_gset_to_wd:Nnw #1#2
{ \tex_global:D \tex_setbox:D #1 \tex_hbox:D to \__box_dim_eval:n {#1} \color_group_begin: \color_group_end: \c_group_end_token }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \hbox_set_to_wd:Nnw { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \hbox_gset_to_wd:Nnw { c }
\end{verbatim}

Put a horizontal box directly into the input stream.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Nn \hbox_to_wd:nn #1#2
{ \tex_hbox:D to \__box_dim_eval:n {#1} \color_group_begin: \color_group_end: }
\cs_new_protected:Nn \hbox_to_zero:n #1
{ \tex_hbox:D to \c_zero_dim }
\end{verbatim}
Put a zero-sized box with the contents pushed against one side (which makes it stick out on the other) directly into the input stream.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \hbox_overlap_center:n #1
  \{ \hbox_to_zero:n { \tex_hss:D #1 \tex_hss:D } \}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \hbox_overlap_left:n #1
  \{ \hbox_to_zero:n { \tex_hss:D #1 } \}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \hbox_overlap_right:n #1
  \{ \hbox_to_zero:n { #1 \tex_hss:D } \}
\end{verbatim}

Unpacking a box and if requested also clear it.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_eq:NN \hbox_unpack:N \tex_unhcopy:D
\cs_new_eq:NN \hbox_unpack_drop:N \tex_unhbox:D
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \hbox_unpack:N { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \hbox_unpack_drop:N { c }
\end{verbatim}

84.11 Vertical mode boxes

\TeX ends these boxes directly with the internal \emph{end_graf} routine. This means that there is no \verb|\par| at the end of vertical boxes unless we insert one. Thus all vertical boxes include a \verb|\par| just before closing the color group.

\begin{verbatim}
\vbox:n \vbox_top:n
\end{verbatim}

The following test files are used for this code: \texttt{m3box003.lvt}.

\begin{verbatim}
\vbox_to_ht:nn \vbox_to_zero:n \vbox_to_ht:nn \vbox_to_zero:n
\end{verbatim}

Put a vertical box directly into the input stream.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \vbox_to_ht:nn #1#2
  \{ \tex_vbox:D to \_box_dim_eval:n \{#1\} \}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \vbox_to_zero:n #1
  \{ \tex_vbox:D to \_c_zero_dim \}
\end{verbatim}

These functions are documented on page 275.
Storing material in a vertical box with a natural height.
\begin{verbatim}
cs_new_protected:Npn \vbox_set:Nn \vbox_gset:Nn
  { \tex_setbox:D \tex_vbox:D
    { \color_group_begin: \par \color_group_end: }
  }
cs_new_protected:Npn \vbox_set:cn \vbox_gset:cn
  { \tex_global:D \tex_setbox:D \tex_vbox:D
    { \color_group_begin: \par \color_group_end: }
  }
cs_generate_variant:Nn \vbox_set:Nn { c }
cs_generate_variant:Nn \vbox_gset:Nn { c }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \vbox_set:Nn and \vbox_gset:Nn. These functions are documented on page 276.)

Storing material in a vertical box with a natural height and reference point at the baseline of the first object in the box.
\begin{verbatim}
cs_new_protected:Npn \vbox_set_top:Nn \vbox_gset_top:Nn
  { \tex_setbox:D \tex_vtop:D
    { \color_group_begin: \par \color_group_end: }
  }
cs_new_protected:Npn \vbox_gset_top:Nn
  { \tex_global:D \tex_setbox:D \tex_vtop:D
    { \color_group_begin: \par \color_group_end: }
  }
cs_generate_variant:Nn \vbox_set_top:Nn { c }
cs_generate_variant:Nn \vbox_gset_top:Nn { c }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \vbox_set_top:Nn and \vbox_gset_top:Nn. These functions are documented on page 276.)

Storing material in a vertical box with a specified height.
\begin{verbatim}
cs_new_protected:Npn \vbox_set_to_ht:Nnn \vbox_gset_to_ht:Nnn
  { \tex_setbox:D \tex_vbox:D to \__box_dim_eval:n {#2}
    { \color_group_begin: \par \color_group_end: }
  }
cs_new_protected:Npn \vbox_gset_to_ht:Nnn
  { \tex_global:D \tex_setbox:D \tex_vbox:D to \__box_dim_eval:n {#2}
    { \color_group_begin: \par \color_group_end: }
  }
cs_generate_variant:Nn \vbox_set_to_ht:Nnn { c }
cs_generate_variant:Nn \vbox_gset_to_ht:Nnn { c }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \vbox_set_to_ht:Nnn and \vbox_gset_to_ht:Nnn. These functions are documented on page 276.)
Storing material in a vertical box. This type is useful in environment definitions.

\begin{verbatim}
\vbox_set:Nw \vbox_set:cw \vbox_gset:Nw \vbox_gset:cw \vbox_set_end: \vbox_gset_end:
\cs_new_protected:Npn \vbox_set:Nw #1
{\tex_setbox:D \vbox:D \c_group_begin_token \color_group_begin: }
\cs_new_protected:Npm \vbox_set:Nw \vbox_gset:Nw \vbox_set:cw \vbox_gset:cw \vbox_set_end: \vbox_gset_end:
\cs_new_protected:Npm \vbox_gset:Nw \vbox_gset:cw \vbox_set_end: \vbox_gset_end:
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \vbox_set:Nw \c
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \vbox_gset:Nw \c
\cs_new_protected:Npn \vbox_set_end:
{\par \color_group_end: \c_group_end_token }
\cs_new_eq:NN \vbox_gset_end: \vbox_set_end: \vbox_set_to_ht:Nnw \vbox_set_to_ht:cnw \vbox_gset_to_ht:Nnw \vbox_gset_to_ht:cnw
\vbox_set_to_ht:Nnw \vbox_set_to_ht:cnw \vbox_gset_to_ht:Nnw \vbox_gset_to_ht:cnw
\vbox_set_to_ht:Nnw \vbox_set_to_ht:cnw \vbox_gset_to_ht:Nnw \vbox_gset_to_ht:cnw
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \vbox_set_to_ht:Nnw \c
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \vbox_gset_to_ht:Nnw \c
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \vbox_set:Nw and others. These functions are documented on page 276.)

\begin{verbatim}
\vbox_gset_to_ht:Nnw \vbox_gset_to_ht:cnw \vbox_set_to_ht:Nnw \vbox_set_to_ht:cnw
\vbox_gset_to_ht:Nnw \vbox_gset_to_ht:cnw \vbox_set_to_ht:Nnw \vbox_set_to_ht:cnw
\vbox_gset_to_ht:Nnw \vbox_gset_to_ht:cnw \vbox_set_to_ht:Nnw \vbox_set_to_ht:cnw
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \vbox_set_to_ht:Nnw \c
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \vbox_gset_to_ht:Nnw \c
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \vbox_set_to_ht:Nnw and \vbox_gset_to_ht:Nnw. These functions are documented on page 277.)

\begin{verbatim}
\vbox_unpack:N \vbox_unpack:c \vbox_unpack_drop:N \vbox_unpack_drop:c
\cs_new_eq:NN \vbox_unpack:N \tex_unvcopy:D \cs_new_eq:NN \vbox_unpack_drop:N \tex_unvbox:D
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \vbox_unpack:N \c
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \vbox_unpack_drop:N \c
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \vbox_unpack:N and \vbox_unpack_drop:N. These functions are documented on page 277.)

1266
Splitting a vertical box in two.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \vbox_set_split_to_ht:NNn #1#2#3
{ \tex_setbox:D #1 \tex_vsplit:D #2 to \_box_dim_eval:n {#3} }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \vbox_set_split_to_ht:NNn { c , Nc , cc }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \vbox_gset_split_to_ht:NNn #1#2#3
{ \tex_global:D \tex_setbox:D #1 \tex_vsplit:D #2 to \_box_dim_eval:n {#3} }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \vbox_gset_split_to_ht:NNn { c , Nc , cc }

(End definition for \vbox_set_split_to_ht:NNn and \vbox_gset_split_to_ht:NNn. These functions are documented on page 277.)

84.12 Affine transformations

\l__box_angle_fp When rotating boxes, the angle itself may be needed by the engine-dependent code. This is done using the \texttt{fp} module so that the value is tidied up properly.
\fp_new:N \l__box_angle_fp

(End definition for \l__box_angle_fp.)

\l__box_cos_fp \l__box_sin_fp These are used to hold the calculated sine and cosine values while carrying out a rotation.
\fp_new:N \l__box_cos_fp \fp_new:N \l__box_sin_fp

(End definition for \l__box_cos_fp and \l__box_sin_fp.)

\l__box_top_dim \l__box_bottom_dim \l__box_left_dim \l__box_right_dim These are the positions of the four edges of a box before manipulation.
\dim_new:N \l__box_top_dim \dim_new:N \l__box_bottom_dim \dim_new:N \l__box_left_dim \dim_new:N \l__box_right_dim

(End definition for \l__box_top_dim and others.)

\l__box_top_new_dim \l__box_bottom_new_dim \l__box_left_new_dim \l__box_right_new_dim These are the positions of the four edges of a box after manipulation.
\dim_new:N \l__box_top_new_dim \dim_new:N \l__box_bottom_new_dim \dim_new:N \l__box_left_new_dim \dim_new:N \l__box_right_new_dim

(End definition for \l__box_top_new_dim and others.)

\l__box_internal_box Scratch space, but also needed by some parts of the driver.
\box_new:N \l__box_internal_box

(End definition for \l__box_internal_box.)
Rotation of a box starts with working out the relevant sine and cosine. The actual rotation is in an auxiliary to keep the flow slightly clearer.

\begin{align*}
\text{Rotation of a box starts with working out the relevant sine and cosine. The actual rotation is in an auxiliary to keep the flow slightly clearer.}
\end{align*}

The edges of the box are then recorded: the left edge is always at zero. Rotation of the four edges then takes place: this is most efficiently done on a quadrant by quadrant basis.

The next step is to work out the $x$ and $y$ coordinates of vertices of the rotated box in relation to its original coordinates. The box can be visualized with vertices $B$, $C$, $D$ and $E$ is illustrated (Figure 1). The vertex $O$ is the reference point on the baseline, and in this implementation is also the centre of rotation. The formulae are, for a point $P$ and angle $\alpha$:

\begin{align*}
P'_x &= P_x - O_x \\
P'_y &= P_y - O_y \\
P''_x &= (P'_x \cos(\alpha)) - (P'_y \sin(\alpha)) \\
P''_y &= (P'_x \sin(\alpha)) + (P'_y \cos(\alpha)) \\
P'''_x &= P''_x + O_x + L_x \\
P'''_y &= P''_y + O_y
\end{align*}

\begin{figure}[h]
\centering
\begin{tikzpicture}
\draw (0,0) -- (2,0) node[midway,above] {B} -- (2,1) node[midway,above] {C} -- (0,1) node[midway,above] {O} -- (0,0);
\node at (1,0) {\textbullet};
\node at (1,1) {\textbullet};
\node at (0,0.5) {\textbullet};
\node at (2,0.5) {\textbullet};
\end{tikzpicture}
\caption{Co-ordinates of a box prior to rotation.}
\end{figure}
The “extra” horizontal translation $L_x$ at the end is calculated so that the leftmost point of the resulting box has $x$-coordinate 0. This is desirable as \TeX boxes must have the reference point at the left edge of the box. (As $O$ is always $(0,0)$, this part of the calculation is omitted here.)

\begin{verbatim}
\fp_compare:nNnTF \l__box_sin_fp > \c_zero_fp
  \fp_compare:nNnTF \l__box_cos_fp > \c_zero_fp
    { \__box_rotate_quadrant_one: }
    { \__box_rotate_quadrant_two: }
  }
  { \fp_compare:nNnTF \l__box_cos_fp < \c_zero_fp
    { \__box_rotate_quadrant_three: }
    { \__box_rotate_quadrant_four: }
  }
\end{verbatim}

The position of the box edges are now known, but the box at this stage be misplaced relative to the current \TeX reference point. So the content of the box is moved such that the reference point of the rotated box is in the same place as the original.

\begin{verbatim}
\hbox_set:Nn \l__box_internal_box { \box_use:N #1 }
\hbox_set:Nn \l__box_internal_box
  \__kernel_kern:n { -\l__box_left_new_dim }
\hbox:n
  \__box_backend_rotate:Nn
    \l__box_internal_box
    \l__box_angle_fp
\end{verbatim}

Tidy up the size of the box so that the material is actually inside the bounding box. The result can then be used to reset the original box.

\begin{verbatim}
\box_set_ht:Nn \l__box_internal_box { \l__box_top_new_dim }
\box_set_dp:Nn \l__box_internal_box { -\l__box_bottom_new_dim }
\box_set_wd:Nn \l__box_internal_box { \l__box_right_new_dim - \l__box_left_new_dim }
\box_use_drop:N \l__box_internal_box
\end{verbatim}

These functions take a general point $(#1, #2)$ and rotate its location about the origin, using the previously-set sine and cosine values. Each function gives only one component of the location of the updated point. This is because for rotation of a box each step needs only one value, and so performance is gained by avoiding working out both $x'$ and $y'$ at the same time. Contrast this with the equivalent function in the l3coffins module, where both parts are needed.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__box_rotate_xdir:nnN #1#2#3
  \dim_set:Nn #3
  \fp_to_dim:n
    \l__box_cos_fp * \dim_to_fp:n {#1}
    - \l__box_sin_fp * \dim_to_fp:n {#2}
\end{verbatim}
Rotation of the edges is done using a different formula for each quadrant. In every case, the top and bottom edges only need the resulting $y$-values, whereas the left and right edges need the $x$-values. Each case is a question of picking out which corner ends up at with the maximum top, bottom, left and right value. Doing this by hand means a lot less calculating and avoids lots of comparisons.

```latex
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__box_rotate_quadrant_one:n { \__box_rotate_ydir:nnN \l__box_right_dim \l__box_top_dim \l__box_top_new_dim \__box_rotate_ydir:nnN \l__box_left_dim \l__box_bottom_dim \l__box_bottom_new_dim \__box_rotate_xdir:nnN \l__box_right_dim \l__box_top_dim \l__box_left_new_dim \__box_rotate_xdir:nnN \l__box_left_dim \l__box_bottom_dim \l__box_right_new_dim }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__box_rotate_quadrant_two:n { \__box_rotate_ydir:nnN \l__box_right_dim \l__box_bottom_dim \l__box_top_new_dim \__box_rotate_ydir:nnN \l__box_left_dim \l__box_top_dim \l__box_bottom_new_dim \__box_rotate_xdir:nnN \l__box_right_dim \l__box_top_dim \l__box_left_new_dim \__box_rotate_xdir:nnN \l__box_left_dim \l__box_bottom_dim \l__box_right_new_dim }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__box_rotate_quadrant_three:n { \__box_rotate_ydir:nnN \l__box_left_dim \l__box_bottom_dim \l__box_top_new_dim \__box_rotate_ydir:nnN \l__box_right_dim \l__box_top_dim \l__box_bottom_new_dim \__box_rotate_xdir:nnN \l__box_right_dim \l__box_bottom_dim \l__box_left_new_dim \__box_rotate_xdir:nnN \l__box_left_dim \l__box_top_dim \l__box_right_new_dim }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__box_rotate_quadrant_four:n { \__box_rotate_ydir:nnN \l__box_left_dim \l__box_bottom_dim \l__box_top_new_dim \__box_rotate_ydir:nnN \l__box_right_dim \l__box_top_dim \l__box_bottom_new_dim \__box_rotate_xdir:nnN \l__box_right_dim \l__box_bottom_dim \l__box_left_new_dim \__box_rotate_xdir:nnN \l__box_left_dim \l__box_top_dim \l__box_right_new_dim }
```
\__box_rotate_ydir:nnN \l__box_left_dim \l__box_top_dim
\l__box_top_new_dim
\__box_rotate_ydir:nnN \l__box_right_dim \l__box_bottom_dim
\l__box_bottom_new_dim
\__box_rotate_xdir:nnN \l__box_left_dim \l__box_bottom_dim
\l__box_left_new_dim
\__box_rotate_xdir:nnN \l__box_right_dim \l__box_top_dim
\l__box_right_new_dim
\}

(End definition for \box_rotate:Nn and others. These functions are documented on page 281.)

Scaling is potentially different in the two axes.
\fp_new:N \l__box_scale_x_fp
\fp_new:N \l__box_scale_y_fp

(End definition for \l__box_scale_x_fp and \l__box_scale_y_fp.)

Resizing a box starts by working out the various dimensions of the existing box.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \box_resize_to_wd_and_ht_plus_dp:Nnn #1#2#3
{ \__box_resize_to_wd_and_ht_plus_dp:NnnN #1 {#2} {#3} }
\hbox_set:Nn
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \box_resize_to_wd_and_ht_plus_dp:Nnn { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \box_gresize_to_wd_and_ht_plus_dp:Nnn #1#2#3
{ \__box_resize_to_wd_and_ht_plus_dp:NnnN #1 {#2} {#3} }
\hbox_gset:Nn
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \box_gresize_to_wd_and_ht_plus_dp:Nnn { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__box_resize_to_wd_and_ht_plus_dp:NnnN #1#2#3#4
{ #4 #1 }
\__box_resize_set_corners:N \l__box_resize:N
\__box_resize:NNN

The $x$-scaling and resulting box size is easy enough to work out: the dimension is that given as #2, and the scale is simply the new width divided by the old one.
\fp_set:Nn \l__box_scale_x_fp
\{ \dim_to_fp:n \{#2\} / \dim_to_fp:n \{ \l__box_right_dim \} \}

The $y$-scaling needs both the height and the depth of the current box.
\fp_set:Nn \l__box_scale_y_fp
{ \dim_to_fp:n \{#3\} / \dim_to_fp:n \{ \l__box_top_dim - \l__box_bottom_dim \} }

Hand off to the auxiliary which does the rest of the work.
\__box_resize:N \l__box_resize:N
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__box_resize_set_corners:N \l__box_resize:N
\{ 1271
With at least one real scaling to do, the next phase is to find the new edge co-ordinates. In the $x$ direction this is relatively easy: just scale the right edge. In the $y$ direction, both dimensions have to be scaled, and this again needs the absolute scale value. Once that is all done, the common resize/rescale code can be employed.

Scaling to a (total) height or to a width is a simplified version of the main resizing operation, with the scale simply copied between the two parts. The internal auxiliary is called using the scaling value twice, as the sign for both parts is needed (as this allows the same internal code to be used as for the general case).

\[ \text{box_resize_to_ht:Nn} \]
\[ \text{box_resize_to_ht:cn} \]
\[ \text{box_gresize_to_ht:Nn} \]
\[ \text{box_gresize_to_ht:cn} \]
\[ \text{__box_resize_to_ht:NnN} \]
\[ \text{box_resize_to_ht_plus_dp:Nn} \]
\[ \text{box_resize_to_ht_plus_dp:cn} \]
\[ \text{box_gresize_to_ht_plus_dp:Nn} \]
\[ \text{box_gresize_to_ht_plus_dp:cn} \]
\[ \text{box_resize_to_wd:Nn} \]
\[ \text{box_resize_to_wd:cn} \]
\[ \text{box_gresize_to_wd:Nn} \]
\[ \text{box_gresize_to_wd:cn} \]
\[ \text{__box_resize_to_wd_and_ht:NnnN} \]
\[ \text{box_resize_to_wd_and_ht:cn} \]
\[ \text{box_resize_to_wd_and_ht:NNn} \]
\[ \text{box_gresize_to_wd_and_ht:NnnN} \]
\[ \text{box_gresize_to_wd_and_ht:CNN} \]
\[ \text{__box_resize_to_wd_ht:NnnN} \]
\[ \text{box_resize_to_wd_ht:NNnN} \]
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \box_resize_to_ht_plus_dp:Nn { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \box_gresize_to_ht_plus_dp:Nn #1 {#2}{#3}
{
\__box_resize_to_ht_plus_dp:NnN #1 {#2} \hbox_gset:Nn
}\cs_generate_variant:Nn \box_gresize_to_ht_plus_dp:Nn { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__box_resize_to_ht_plus_dp:NnN #1#2#3
{
\hbox_set:Nn \l__box_set_corners:N #1
\fp_set:Nn \l__box_scale_y_fp
{ \dim_to_fp:n {#2} / \dim_to_fp:n { \l__box_top_dim - \l__box_bottom_dim } }
\fp_set_eq:NN \l__box_scale_x_fp \l__box_scale_y_fp
\__box_resize:N #1
}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \box_resize_to_wd:Nn #1#2
{ \__box_resize_to_wd:NnN #1 {#2} \hbox_set:Nn }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \box_resize_to_wd:Nn { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \box_gresize_to_wd:Nn #1#2
{ \__box_resize_to_wd:NnN #1 {#2} \hbox_gset:Nn }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \box_gresize_to_wd:Nn { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__box_resize_to_wd:NnN #1#2#3
{
\hbox_set:Nn \l__box_set_corners:N #1
\fp_set:Nn \l__box_scale_x_fp
{ \dim_to_fp:n {#2} / \dim_to_fp:n { \l__box_right_dim } }
\fp_set:Nn \l__box_scale_y_fp
{ \dim_to_fp:n {#3} / \dim_to_fp:n { \l__box_top_dim } }
\__box_resize:N #1
}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \box_resize_to_wd_and_ht:Nnn #1#2#3
{ \__box_resize_to_wd_and_ht:NnnN #1 {#2} {#3} \hbox_set:Nn }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \box_resize_to_wd_and_ht:Nnn { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \box_gresize_to_wd_and_ht:Nnn #1#2#3
{ \__box_resize_to_wd_and_ht:NnnN #1 {#2} {#3} \hbox_gset:Nn }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \box_gresize_to_wd_and_ht:Nnn { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__box_resize_to_wd_and_ht:NnnN #1#2#3#4
{
\hbox_set:Nn \l__box_set_corners:N #1
\fp_set:Nn \l__box_scale_x_fp
{ \dim_to_fp:n {#2} / \dim_to_fp:n { \l__box_right_dim } }
\fp_set:Nn \l__box_scale_y_fp
{ \dim_to_fp:n {#3} / \dim_to_fp:n { \l__box_top_dim } }
\dim_to_fp:n { \l__box_dim }
}

1273
When scaling a box, setting the scaling itself is easy enough. The new dimensions are also relatively easy to find, allowing only for the need to keep them positive in all cases. Once that is done then after a check for the trivial scaling a hand-off can be made to the common code. The code here is split into two as this allows sharing with the auto-resizing functions.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \box_scale:Nnn #1#2#3
{ \__box_scale:NnnN #1 {#2} {#3} \hbox_set:Nn }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \box_scale:Nnn { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \box_gscale:Nnn #1#2#3
{ \__box_scale:NnnN #1 {#2} {#3} \hbox_gset:Nn }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \box_gscale:Nnn { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__box_scale:NnnN #1#2#3#4
{ #4 #1
  \fp_set:Nn \l__box_scale_x_fp {#2}
  \fp_set:Nn \l__box_scale_y_fp {#3}
  \__box_scale:N #1
}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__box_scale:N #1
{ \dim_set:Nn \l__box_top_dim { \box_ht:N #1 }
  \dim_set:Nn \l__box_bottom_dim { -\box_dp:N #1 }
  \dim_set:Nn \l__box_right_dim { \box_wd:N #1 }
  \dim_zero:N \l__box_left_dim
  \dim_set:Nn \l__box_top_new_dim
  { \fp_abs:n { \l__box_scale_y_fp } \l__box_top_dim }
  \dim_set:Nn \l__box_bottom_new_dim
  { \fp_abs:n { \l__box_scale_y_fp } \l__box_bottom_dim }
  \dim_set:Nn \l__box_right_new_dim
  { \fp_abs:n { \l__box_scale_x_fp } \l__box_right_dim }
  \__box_resize_common:N #1
}
\end{verbatim}

Although autosizing a box uses dimensions, it has more in common in implementation with scaling. As such, most of the real work here is done elsewhere.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \box_autosize_to_wd_and_ht:Nnn #1#2#3
{ \__box_autosize:NnnnN #1 #2 #3 \hbox_set:Nn }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \box_autosize_to_wd_and_ht:Nnn { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \box_gautosize_to_wd_and_ht:Nnn #1#2#3
{ \__box_autosize:NnnnN #1 #2 #3 \hbox_gset:Nn }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \box_gautosize_to_wd_and_ht:Nnn { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \box_autosize_to_wd_and_ht_plus_dp:Nnn #1#2#3
{ \__box_autosize:NnnnN #1 #2 #3 \hbox_set:Nn #1 + \box_dp:N #1 }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \box_resize_to_ht:Nn and others. These functions are documented on page 279.)
\hbox_set:Nn
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \box_autosize_to_wd_and_ht_plus_dp:Nnn { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \box_gautosize_to_wd_and_ht_plus_dp:Nnn #1#2#3
{ \__box_autosize:NnnnN #1 {#2} {#3} { \box_ht:N #1 + \box_dp:N #1 }
\hbox_gset:Nn
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \box_gautosize_to_wd_and_ht_plus_dp:Nnn { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__box_autosize:NnnnN #1#2#3#4#5
{ #5 #1
\fp_set:Nn \l__box_scale_x_fp { ( #2 ) / \box_wd:N #1 }
\fp_set:Nn \l__box_scale_y_fp { ( #3 ) / ( #4 ) }
\fp_compare:nNnTF \l__box_scale_x_fp > \c_zero_fp
{ \fp_set_eq:NN \l__box_scale_x_fp \l__box_scale_y_fp }
{ \fp_set_eq:NN \l__box_scale_y_fp \l__box_scale_x_fp }
\__box_scale:N #1
}
(End definition for \box_autosize_to_wd_and_ht:Nnn and others. These functions are documented on page 279.)

\__box_resize_common:N The main resize function places its input into a box which start off with zero width, and includes the handles for engine rescaling.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__box_resize_common:N #1
{ \hbox_set:Nn \l__box_internal_box
 \__box_backend_scale:Nnn #1
 \l__box_scale_x_fp
 \l__box_scale_y_fp
 }
The new height and depth can be applied directly.
\fp_compare:nNnTF \l__box_scale_y_fp > \c_zero_fp
{ \box_set_ht:Nn \l__box_internal_box \l__box_top_new_dim
 \box_set_dp:Nn \l__box_internal_box -\l__box_bottom_new_dim
 }
\fp_compare:nNnTF \l__box_scale_x_fp < \c_zero_fp
{ \hbox_to_wd:nn \l__box_right_new_dim
}
Things are not quite as obvious for the width, as the reference point needs to remain unchanged. For positive scaling factors resizing the box is all that is needed. However, for case of a negative scaling the material must be shifted such that the reference point ends up in the right place.
\fp_compare:nNnTF \l__box_scale_x_fp < \c_zero_fp
{ \hbox_to_wd:nn \l__box_right_new_dim
}
\{ \_\_kernel_kern:n \{ \l__box_right_new_dim \} \\
box_use_drop:N \l__box_internal_box \\
tex_hss:D \\
\}
}
{ \\
box_set_wd:Nn \l__box_internal_box \{ \l__box_right_new_dim \} \\
 hbox:n \\
{ \\
\_\_kernel_kern:n \{ Opt \} \\
box_use_drop:N \l__box_internal_box \\
tex_hss:D \\
} \\
}

(End definition for \_\_box_resize_common:N.)
Chapter 85

\texttt{l3coffins} Implementation

85.1 Coffins: data structures and general variables

\begin{verbatim}
\l__coffin_internal_box \l__coffin_internal_dim \l__coffin_internal_tl
\end{verbatim}

Scratch variables.

\begin{verbatim}
\box_new:N \l__coffin_internal_box \dim_new:N \l__coffin_internal_dim \tl_new:N \l__coffin_internal_tl
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \l__coffin_internal_box, \l__coffin_internal_dim, and \l__coffin_internal_tl.)

\begin{verbatim}
\c__coffin_corners_prop
\end{verbatim}

The “corners”; of a coffin define the real content, as opposed to the \TeX{} bounding box. They all start off in the same place, of course.

\begin{verbatim}
\prop_const_from_keyval:Nn \c__coffin_corners_prop
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\tl = { 0pt } { 0pt } , \tr = { 0pt } { 0pt } ,
\bl = { 0pt } { 0pt } , \br = { 0pt } { 0pt } ,
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \c__coffin_corners_prop.)

\begin{verbatim}
\c__coffin_poles_prop
\end{verbatim}

Pole positions are given for horizontal, vertical and reference-point based values.

\begin{verbatim}
\prop_const_from_keyval:Nn \c__coffin_poles_prop
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
l = { 0pt } { 0pt } { 0pt } { 1000pt } ,
hc = { 0pt } { 0pt } { 0pt } { 1000pt } ,
r = { 0pt } { 0pt } { 0pt } { 1000pt } ,
b = { 0pt } { 0pt } { 1000pt } { 0pt } ,
vc = { 0pt } { 0pt } { 1000pt } { 0pt } ,
t = { 0pt } { 0pt } { 1000pt } { 0pt } ,
B = { 0pt } { 0pt } { 1000pt } { 0pt } ,
H = { 0pt } { 0pt } { 1000pt } { 0pt } ,
T = { 0pt } { 0pt } { 1000pt } { 0pt } ,
\end{verbatim}
85.2 Basic coffin functions

There are a number of basic functions needed for creating coffins and placing material in them. This all relies on the following data structures.

\texttt{\_\_coffin_to_value:N}

Coffins are a two-part structure and we rely on the internal nature of box allocation to make everything work. As such, we need an interface to turn coffin identifiers into numbers. For the purposes here, the signature allowed is \texttt{N} despite the nature of the underlying primitive.

\texttt{\texttt{\_\_coffin_to_value:N \tex_number:D}}
Several of the higher-level coffin functions would give multiple errors if the coffin does not exist. A cleaner way to handle this is provided here: both the box and the coffin structure are checked.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_if_exist:NTF #1
\{\prg_return_true:\}
\{\prg_return_false:\}
\}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\coffin_if_exist:NTF}. This function is documented on page 282.)

Clearing coffins means emptying the box and resetting all of the structures.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_coffin_if_exist:NT \#1\#2
\{\endverbatim

(End definition for \texttt{\_\_coffin_if_exist:NT}.)

Clearing coffins means emptying the box and resetting all of the structures.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \coffin_clear:N \coffin_gclear:N
\{\endverbatim

(End definition for \texttt{\coffin_clear:N} and \texttt{\coffin_gclear:N}. These functions are documented on page 282.)
Creating a new coffin means making the underlying box and adding the data structures. The \debug_suspend: and \debug_resume: functions prevent \prop_gclear_new:c from writing useless information to the log file.

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \coffin_new:N \#1
{ \box_new:N \#1 \debug_suspend: \prop_gclear_new:c { coffin ~ \__coffin_to_value:N \#1 ~ corners } \prop_gclear_new:c { coffin ~ \__coffin_to_value:N \#1 ~ poles } \prop_gset_eq:cN { coffin ~ \__coffin_to_value:N \#1 ~ corners } \c__coffin_corners_prop \prop_gset_eq:cN { coffin ~ \__coffin_to_value:N \#1 ~ poles } \c__coffin_poles_prop \debug_resume: }
```

(End definition for \coffin_new:N. This function is documented on page 282.)

Horizontal coffins are relatively easy: set the appropriate box, reset the structures then update the handle positions.

```
\cs_new_protected:Npm \hcoffin_set:Nn \hcoffin_set:cn \hcoffin_gset:Nn \hcoffin_gset:cn
\__coffin_set_vertical:NnnNN \__coffin_set_vertical_aux:
\cs_new_protected:Npm \hcoffin_set:Nn \hcoffin_set:cn \hcoffin_gset:Nn \hcoffin_gset:cn
{ \__coffin_if_exist:NT \#1
{ \hbox_set:Nn \#1
{ \color_ensure_current: \#2
 \__coffin_update:N \#1
}
\__coffin_update:N \#1
}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \hcoffin_set:Nn \hcoffin_gset:Nn \#1\#2
```

(End definition for \hcoffin_set:Nn and \hcoffin_gset:Nn. These functions are documented on page 283.)

Setting vertical coffins is more complex. First, the material is typeset with a given width. The default handles and poles are set as for a horizontal coffin, before finding the top baseline using a temporary box. No \color_ensure_current: here as that would add a
whatsit to the start of the vertical box and mess up the location of the T pole (see \TeX
by Topic for discussion of the \textbackslash vtop primitive, used to do the measuring).

\begin{Verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \vcoffin_set:Nnn #1#2#3
\{ \__coffin_set_vertical:NnnNN #1 {#2} {#3} \vbox_set:Nn \__coffin_update:N \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \vcoffin_gset:Nnn #1#2#3
\{ \__coffin_set_vertical:NnnNN #1 {#2} {#3} \vbox_gset:Nn \__coffin_gupdate:N \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__coffin_set_vertical:NnnNN #1#2#3#4#5
\{ \__coffin_if_exist:NT #1
\{ #4 #1
\{ \dim_set:Nn \tex_hsize:D {#2} \__coffin_set_vertical_aux:
\#3 \}
#5 #1
\vbox_set_top:Nn \l__coffin_internal_box \vbox_unpack:N #1 \}
\__coffin_set_pole:Nnx #1 { T }
\{ 0pt \}
\dim_eval:n { \box_ht:N #1 - \box_ht:N \l__coffin_internal_box }
\} 1000pt \}
\}
\vbox_clear:N \l__coffin_internal_box
\}
\cs_new_protected:Npx \__coffin_set_vertical_aux:
\{ \bool_lazy_and:nnT \cs_if_exist_p:N \fmtname
\{ \str_if_eq_p:Vn \fmtname \LaTeX2e \}
\{ \dim_set_eq:NN \exp_not:N \linewidth \tex_hsize:D
\dim_set_eq:NN \exp_not:N \columnwidth \tex_hsize:D
\}
\}
\}

(End definition for \vcoffin_set:Nnn and others. These functions are documented on page 283.)

\hcoffin_set:Nw
\hcoffin_set:cw
\hcoffin_gset:Nw
\hcoffin_gset:cw
\hcoffin_set_end:
\hcoffin_gset_end:

These are the “begin”/“end” versions of the above: watch the grouping!
The same for vertical coffins.

\vcoffin_set:Nnw 
\vcoffin_set:cnw 
\vcoffin_gset:Nnw 
\vcoffin_gset:cnw 
\vcoffin_set_end: 
\vcoffin_gset_end: 

(End definition for \hcoffin_set:Nw and others. These functions are documented on page 283.)
Setting two coffins equal is just a wrapper around other functions.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \vcoffin_set_end: { }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \vcoffin_gset_end: { }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \vcoffin_set:NNw and others. These functions are documented on page 283.)

\begin{verbatim}
\coffin_set_eq:NN \coffin_set_eq:Nc \coffin_set_eq:cN \coffin_set_eq:cc
\coffin_gset_eq:NN \coffin_gset_eq:Nc \coffin_gset_eq:cN \coffin_gset_eq:cc
\end{verbatim}

Special coffins: these cannot be set up earlier as they need \coffin_new:N. The empty coffin is set as a box as the full coffin-setting system needs some material which is not yet available. The empty coffin is created entirely by hand: not everything is in place yet.
85.3 Measuring coffins

Coffins are just boxes when it comes to measurement. However, semantically a separate set of functions are required.

85.4 Coffins: handle and pole management

A simple wrapper around the recovery of a coffin pole, with some error checking and recovery built-in.
32916 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__coffin_greset_structure:N \ #1
32918 \ { 
32919 \prop_gset_eq:cN \{ coffin \ \__coffin_to_value:N \ #1 \ - \ corners \} 
32920 \c__coffin_corners_prop 
32921 \prop_gset_eq:cN \{ coffin \ \__coffin_to_value:N \ #1 \ - \ poles \} 
32922 \c__coffin_poles_prop 
32923 \ }

(End definition for \__coffin_reset_structure:N and \__coffin_greset_structure:N.)

\coffin_set_horizontal_pole:Nnn 
\coffin_set_horizontal_pole:cnn 
\coffin_gset_horizontal_pole:Nnn 
\coffin_gset_horizontal_pole:cnn 
\__coffin_set_horizontal_pole:NnnN 
\coffin_set_vertical_pole:Nnn 
\coffin_set_vertical_pole:cnn 
\coffin_gset_vertical_pole:Nnn 
\coffin_gset_vertical_pole:cnn 
\__coffin_set_vertical_pole:NnnN 
\__coffin_set_pole:Nnn 
\__coffin_set_pole:Nnx 

Setting the pole of a coffin at the user/designer level requires a bit more care. The idea here is to provide a reasonable interface to the system, then to do the setting with full expansion. The three-argument version is used internally to do a direct setting.

32921 \cs_new_protected:Npn \coffin_set_horizontal_pole:Nnn \ #1\ #2\ #3
32922 \ { \__coffin_set_horizontal_pole:NnnN \ #1 \ \{\ #2\ \} \ \{\ #3\ \} \ \prop_put:cnx \} 
32923 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \coffin_set_horizontal_pole:Nnn \ { c } 
32924 \cs_new_protected:Npn \coffin_gset_horizontal_pole:Nnn \ #1\ #2\ #3
32925 \ { \__coffin_set_horizontal_pole:NnnN \ #1 \ \{\ #2\ \} \ \{\ #3\ \} \ \prop_gput:cnx \} 
32926 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \coffin_gset_horizontal_pole:Nnn \ { c } 
32927 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__coffin_set_horizontal_pole:NnnN \ #1\ #2\ #3\ #4
32928 \ { 
32929 \__coffin_if_exist:NT \ #1
32930 \ { 
32931 \ #4 \ { coffin \ \__coffin_to_value:N \ #1 \ - \ poles \} 
32932 \ \{\ #2\ \}
32933 \ { \ Opt \} \ { \dim_eval:n \ (#3) \} 
32934 \ { \ 1000pt \} \ { \ Opt \}
32935 \ }
32936 \ }
32937 \cs_new_protected:Npn \coffin_set_vertical_pole:Nnn \ #1\ #2\ #3
32938 \ { \__coffin_set_vertical_pole:NnnN \ #1\ \{\ #2\ \} \ \{\ #3\ \} \ \prop_put:cnx \} 
32939 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \coffin_set_vertical_pole:Nnn \ { c } 
32940 \cs_new_protected:Npn \coffin_gset_vertical_pole:Nnn \ #1\ #2\ #3
32941 \ { \__coffin_set_vertical_pole:NnnN \ #1\ \{\ #2\ \} \ \{\ #3\ \} \ \prop_gput:cnx \} 
32942 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \coffin_gset_vertical_pole:Nnn \ { c } 
32943 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__coffin_set_vertical_pole:NnnN \ #1\ #2\ #3\ #4
32944 \ { 
32945 \__coffin_if_exist:NT \ #1
32946 \ { 
32947 \ #4 \ { coffin \ \__coffin_to_value:N \ #1 \ - \ poles \} 
32948 \ \{\ #2\ \}
32949 \ { \ Opt \} \ { \dim_eval:n \ (#3) \} \ { \ Opt \}
32950 \ { \ 1000pt \}
32951 \ }
32952 \ }
32953 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__coffin_set_pole:Nnn \ #1\ #2\ #3
32954 \ { 
32955 \prop_put:cnn \ { coffin \ \__coffin_to_value:N \ #1 \ - \ poles \} 
32956 \ \{\ #2\ \} \ \{\ #3\ \} }

1285
Simple shortcuts.

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__coffin_update:N #1 { \__coffin_reset_structure:N #1 \__coffin_update_corners:N #1 \__coffin_update_poles:N #1 }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__coffin_gupdate:N #1 { \__coffin_greset_structure:N #1 \__coffin_gupdate_corners:N #1 \__coffin_gupdate_poles:N #1 }
```

(End definition for \__coffin_update:N and \__coffin_gupdate:N.)

```
\cs_new_protected:Npm \__coffin_update_corners:NN { \__coffin_update_corners:NNN { coffin ~ \__coffin_to_value:N #1 ~ corners } \prop_put:Nnx }
\cs_new_protected:Npm \__coffin_gupdate_corners:N { \__coffin_gupdate_corners:NNN { coffin ~ \__coffin_to_value:N #1 ~ corners } \prop_gput:Nnx }
```

Updating the corners of a coffin is straightforward as at this stage there can be no rotation. So the corners of the content are just those of the underlying TeX box.

```
\cs_new_protected:Npm \__coffin_update_corners:NNN { \dim_eval:n { \box_wd:N #2 } \dim_eval:n { \box_ht:N #2 } } \prop_put:Nnx
```

(End definition for \__coffin_set_pole:Nnn and others. These functions are documented on page 283.)
This function is called when a coffin is set, and updates the poles to reflect the nature
of size of the box. Thus this function only alters poles where the default position is
dependent on the size of the box. It also does not set poles which are relevant only to
vertical coffins.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__coffin_update_poles:N #1
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__coffin_gupdate_poles:N #1
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__coffin_update_poles:NN #1#2
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__coffin_update_poles:NNN #1#2#3

(End definition for \__coffin_update_poles:N and others.)

(End definition for \__coffin_update_corners:N and others.)
85.5 Coffins: calculation of pole intersections

The lead off in finding intersections is to recover the two poles and then hand off to the auxiliary for the actual calculation. There may of course not be an intersection, for which an error trap is needed.

```latex
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__coffin_calculate_intersection:Nnn #1#2#3
\__coffin_get_pole:NnN #1 {#2} \l__coffin_pole_a_tl
\__coffin_get_pole:NnN #1 {#3} \l__coffin_pole_b_tl
\bool_set_false:N \l__coffin_error_bool
\exp_last_two_unbraced:Noo
\__coffin_calculate_intersection:nnnnnnnn
\l__coffin_pole_a_tl \l__coffin_pole_b_tl
\bool_if:NT \l__coffin_error_bool
\msg_error:nn { coffin } { no-pole-intersection }
\dim_zero:N \l__coffin_x_dim
\dim_zero:N \l__coffin_y_dim
```

The two poles passed here each have four values (as dimensions), \((a, b, c, d)\) and \((a', b', c', d')\). These are arguments 1–4 and 5–8, respectively. In both cases \(a\) and \(b\) are the co-ordinates of a point on the pole and \(c\) and \(d\) define the direction of the pole. Finding the intersection depends on the directions of the poles, which are given by \(d/c\) and \(d'/c'\). However, if one of the poles is either horizontal or vertical then one or more of \(c, d, c', d'\) are zero and a special case is needed.

```latex
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__coffin_calculate_intersection:nnnnnnnn
#1#2#3#4#5#6#7#8
\dim_compare:nNnTF {#3} = \c_zero_dim
\dim_set:Nn \l__coffin_x_dim {#1}
\dim_compare:nNnTF {#7} = \c_zero_dim
\dim_set:Nn \l__coffin_y_dim
{ \bool_set_true:N \l__coffin_error_bool }
```

The case where the first pole is vertical. So the \(x\)-component of the interaction is at \(a\). There is then a test on the second pole: if it is also vertical then there is an error.

```latex
\dim_set:Nn \l__coffin_x_dim {#1}
\dim_compare:nNnTF {#7} = \c_zero_dim
{ \bool_set_true:N \l__coffin_error_bool }
```

The second pole may still be horizontal, in which case the \(y\)-component of the intersection is \(b'\). If not,

\[
y = \frac{d'}{c'} (a - a') + b'
\]

with the \(x\)-component already known to be \(a\).

```latex
\dim_set:Nn \l__coffin_y_dim
{ \dim_compare:nNnTF {#8} = \c_zero_dim
\dim_compare:nNnTF {#7} = \c_zero_dim
{ \dim_set:Nn \l__coffin_y_dim
\fp_to_dim:n
{ \dim_to_fp:n {#8} / \dim_to_fp:n {#7} \)
\dim_to_fp:n {#1} - \dim_to_fp:n {#5} \)
```
If the first pole is not vertical then it may be horizontal. If so, then the procedure is essentially the same as that already done but with the $x$- and $y$-components interchanged.

Now we deal with the case where the second pole may be vertical, or if not we have

\[
x = \frac{c'}{d'}(b - b') + a'
\]

which is again handled by the same auxiliary.

The first pole is neither horizontal nor vertical. To avoid even more complexity, we now work out both slopes and pass to an auxiliary.

Assuming the two poles are not parallel, then the intersection point is found in two steps. First we find the $x$-value with

\[
x = \frac{sa - s'a' - b + b'}{s - s'}
\]
and then finding the \( y \)-value with

\[
y = s(x - a) + b
\]

\( \text{End definition for } \texttt{\_coffin_calculate_intersection:nnnnn}, \texttt{\_coffin_calculate_intersection:nnnnnnn}, \text{and } \texttt{\_coffin_calculate_intersection:nnnnnn}. \)

### 85.6 Affine transformations

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{\_coffin_sin_fp} \texttt{\_coffin_cos_fp} Used for rotations to get the sine and cosine values.
\item \texttt{\_coffin_bounding_prop} A property list for the bounding box of a coffin. This is only needed during the rotation, so there is just the one.
\item \texttt{\_coffin_corners_prop} \texttt{\_coffin_poles_prop} Used to avoid needing to track scope for intermediate steps.
\end{itemize}

\( \text{End definition for } \texttt{\_coffin_sin_fp} \text{ and } \texttt{\_coffin_cos_fp}. \)
The shift of the bounding box of a coffin from the real content.
\dim_new:N \l__coffin_bounding_shift_dim

These are used to hold maxima for the various corner values: these thus define the
minimum size of the bounding box after rotation.
\dim_new:N \l__coffin_left_corner_dim
\dim_new:N \l__coffin_right_corner_dim
\dim_new:N \l__coffin_bottom_corner_dim
\dim_new:N \l__coffin_top_corner_dim

Rotating a coffin requires several steps which can be conveniently run together. The sine
and cosine of the angle in degrees are computed. This is then used to set \l__coffin-_sin_fp
and \l__coffin_cos_fp, which are carried through unchanged for the rest of
the procedure.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \coffin_rotate:Nn #1#2
{ \__coffin_rotate:NnNNN #1 {#2} \box_rotate:Nn \prop_set_eq:cN \hbox_set:Nn }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \coffin_rotate:Nn { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \coffin_grotate:Nn #1#2
{ \__coffin_rotate:NnNNN #1 {#2} \box_grotate:Nn \prop_gset_eq:cN \hbox_gset:Nn }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \coffin_grotate:Nn { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__coffin_rotate:NnNNN #1#2#3#4#5
{ \fp_set:Nn \l__coffin_sin_fp { sind ( #2 ) } \fp_set:Nn \l__coffin_cos_fp { cosd ( #2 ) } }

Use a local copy of the property lists to avoid needing to pass the name and scope around.
\prop_map_inline:Nn \l__coffin_corners_prop { \__coffin_rotate_corner:Nnnn {##1} ##2 }
\prop_map_inline:Nn \l__coffin_poles_prop { \__coffin_rotate_pole:Nnnnnn {##1} {##2} }

The corners and poles of the coffin can now be rotated around the origin. This is best
achieved using mapping functions.
\prop_map_inline:Nn \l__coffin_corners_prop
{ \__coffin_rotate_corner:Nnnn {##1} ##2 }
\prop_map_inline:Nn \l__coffin_poles_prop
{ \__coffin_rotate_pole:Nnnnnn {##1} {##2} }

The bounding box of the coffin needs to be rotated, and to do this the corners have to be
found first. They are then rotated in the same way as the corners of the coffin material
itself.
\__coffin_set_bounding:N #1
\prop_map_inline:Nn \l__coffin_bounding_prop
{ \__coffin_rotate_bounding:Nnnn {##1} {##2} }

At this stage, there needs to be a calculation to find where the corners of the content
and the box itself will end up.
\__coffin_find_corner_maxima:N #1
\__coffin_find_bounding_shift:
#3 #1 {#2}
The correction of the box position itself takes place here. The idea is that the bounding box for a coffin is tight up to the content, and has the reference point at the bottom-left. The $x$-direction is handled by moving the content by the difference in the positions of the bounding box and the content left edge. The $y$-direction is dealt with by moving the box down by any depth it has acquired. The internal box is used here to allow for the next step.

```latex
\hbox_set:Nn \l__coffin_internal_box
\{ \__kernel_kern:n
\{ \l__coffin_bounding_shift_dim - \l__coffin_left_corner_dim \}
\box_move_down:nn \{ \l__coffin_bottom_corner_dim \}
\{ \box_use:N #1 \}
\}
```

If there have been any previous rotations then the size of the bounding box will be bigger than the contents. This can be corrected easily by setting the size of the box to the height and width of the content. As this operation requires setting box dimensions and these transcend grouping, the safe way to do this is to use the internal box and to reset the result into the target box.

```latex
\box_set_ht:Nn \l__coffin_internal_box
\{ \l__coffin_top_corner_dim - \l__coffin_bottom_corner_dim \}
\box_set_dp:Nn \l__coffin_internal_box \{ 0pt \}
\box_set_wd:Nn \l__coffin_internal_box
\{ \l__coffin_right_corner_dim - \l__coffin_left_corner_dim \}
\#5 \#1 \{ \box_use_drop:N \l__coffin_internal_box \}
```

The final task is to move the poles and corners such that they are back in alignment with the box reference point.

```latex
\prop_map_inline:Nn \l__coffin_corners_prop
\{ \__coffin_shift_corner:Nnnn #1 {##1} ##2 \}
\prop_map_inline:Nn \l__coffin_poles_prop
\{ \__coffin_shift_pole:Nnnnnn #1 {##1} ##2 \}
```

Update the coffin data.

```latex
\#4 \{ coffin - \__coffin_to_value:N #1 - corners \}
\l__coffin_corners_prop
\#4 \{ coffin - \__coffin_to_value:N #1 - poles \}
\l__coffin_poles_prop
```

(End definition for \coffin_rotate:Nn, \coffin_grotate:Nn, and \__coffin_rotate:NnnNN. These functions are documented on page 284.)

\__coffin_set_bounding:N

The bounding box corners for a coffin are easy enough to find: this is the same code as for the corners of the material itself, but using a dedicated property list.

```latex
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__coffin_set_bounding:N \#1
\prop_put:Nnx \l__coffin_bounding_prop \{ t1 \}
\{ \l__coffin_to_value:N #1 \}
\prop_put:Nnx \l__coffin_bounding_prop \{ tr \}
\{ \l__coffin_to_value:N #1 \}
```

1292
Rotating the position of the corner of the coffin is just a case of treating this as a vector from the reference point. The same treatment is used for the corners of the material itself and the bounding box.

\begin{Verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__coffin_rotate_bounding:nnn \#1\#2\#3
\{ \__coffin_rotate_vector:nnNN \#2 \#3 \l__coffin_x_dim \l__coffin_y_dim
\prop_put:Nnx \l__coffin_bounding_prop \{\#1\}
{ \dim_use:N \l__coffin_x_dim \dim_use:N \l__coffin_y_dim }
\}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__coffin_rotate_corner:Nnnn \#1\#2\#3\#4
\{ \__coffin_rotate_vector:nnNN \#3 \#4 \l__coffin_x_dim \l__coffin_y_dim
\prop_put:Nnx \l__coffin_corners_prop \{\#2\}
{ \dim_use:N \l__coffin_x_dim \dim_use:N \l__coffin_y_dim }
\}
\end{Verbatim}

\begin{Verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__coffin_rotate_pole:Nnnnnn \#1\#2\#3\#4\#5\#6
\{ \__coffin_rotate_vector:nnNN \#3 \#4 \l__coffin_x_dim \l__coffin_y_dim
\__coffin_rotate_vector:nnNN \#5 \#6 \l__coffin_x_prime_dim \l__coffin_y_prime_dim
\prop_put:Nnx \l__coffin_poles_prop \{\#2\}
{ \dim_use:N \l__coffin_x_dim \dim_use:N \l__coffin_y_dim }
{ \dim_use:N \l__coffin_x_prime_dim }
{ \dim_use:N \l__coffin_y_prime_dim }
\}
\end{Verbatim}

\begin{Verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__coffin_rotate_vector:nnNN \#1\#2\#3\#4
\{ \dim_set:Nn \l__coffin_internal_dim \-\box_dp:N \#1
\prop_put:Nnx \l__coffin_bounding_prop \{ bl \}
{ \opt }{ \dim_use:N \l__coffin_internal_dim }
\prop_put:Nnx \l__coffin_bounding_prop \{ br \}
{ \dim_eval:n \{ \box_wd:N \#1 \}
{ \dim_use:N \l__coffin_internal_dim }
\}
\}
\end{Verbatim}

Rotating a single pole simply means shifting the co-ordinate of the pole and its direction. The rotation here is about the bottom-left corner of the coffin.

\begin{Verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__coffin_rotate_pole:Nnnnnn \#1\#2\#3\#4\#5\#6
\{ \__coffin_rotate_vector:nnNN \#3 \#4 \l__coffin_x_dim \l__coffin_y_dim
\__coffin_rotate_vector:nnNN \#5 \#6 \l__coffin_x_prime_dim \l__coffin_y_prime_dim
\prop_put:Nnx \l__coffin_poles_prop \{\#2\}
{ \dim_use:N \l__coffin_x_dim \dim_use:N \l__coffin_y_dim }
{ \dim_use:N \l__coffin_x_prime_dim }
{ \dim_use:N \l__coffin_y_prime_dim }
\}
\end{Verbatim}

A rotation function, which needs only an input vector (as dimensions) and an output space. The values \l__coffin_cos_fp and \l__coffin_sin_fp should previously have been set up correctly. Working this way means that the floating point work is kept to a minimum: for any given rotation the sin and cosine values do no change, after all.

\begin{Verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__coffin_rotate_vector:nnNN \#1\#2\#3\#4
\{ \dim_set:Nn \#3
\end{Verbatim}
The idea here is to find the extremities of the content of the coffin. This is done by looking for the smallest values for the bottom and left corners, and the largest values for the top and right corners. The values start at the maximum dimensions so that the case where all are positive or all are negative works out correctly.

\__coffin_find_corner_maxima:N
\__coffin_find_corner_maxima_aux:nn

The approach to finding the shift for the bounding box is similar to that for the corners. However, there is only one value needed here and a fixed input property list, so things are a bit clearer.

\__coffin_find_bounding_shift: \__coffin_find_bounding_shift_aux:nn

\_coffin_find_bounding_shift: \_coffin_find_bounding_shift_aux:nn
Shifting the corners and poles of a coffin means subtracting the appropriate values from the \(x\) and \(y\)-components. For the poles, this means that the direction vector is unchanged.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{__coffin_shift_corner:Nnn} & \quad \text{__coffin_shift_pole:Nnnnnn} \\
\text{__coffin_scale_x_fp} & \quad \text{__coffin_scale_y_fp} \\
\text{__coffin_scaled_total_height_dim} & \quad \text{__coffin_scaled_width_dim} \\
\text{\__coffin_resize:Nnn} & \quad \text{\__coffin_resize:cnn} \\
\text{\__coffin_gresize:Nnn} & \quad \text{\__coffin_gresize:cnn} \\
\end{align*}
\]

Storage for the scaling factors in \(x\) and \(y\), respectively.

When scaling, the values given have to be turned into absolute values.

Resizing a coffin begins by setting up the user-friendly names for the dimensions of the coffin box. The new sizes are then turned into scale factor. This is the same operation as takes place for the underlying box, but that operation is grouped and so the same calculation is done here.
The poles and corners of the coffin are scaled to the appropriate places before actually resizing the underlying box.

Negative x-scaling values place the poles in the wrong location: this is corrected here.

For scaling, the opposite calculation is done to find the new dimensions for the coffin. Only the total height is needed, as this is the shift required for corners and poles. The
scaling is done the \TeX\ way as this works properly with floating point values without needing to use the \fp\ module.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \coffin_scale:Nnn #1#2#3
\__coffin_scale:NnnNN #1 {#2} {#3} \box_scale:Nnn \prop_set_eq:cN
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \coffin_scale:Nnn { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \coffin_gscale:Nnn #1#2#3
\__coffin_scale:NnnNN #1 {#2} {#3} \box_gscale:Nnn \prop_gset_eq:cN
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \coffin_gscale:Nnn { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__coffin_scale:NnnNN #1#2#3#4#5
{\fp_set:Nn \l__coffin_scale_x_fp {#2}
\fp_set:Nn \l__coffin_scale_y_fp {#3}
#4 #1 { \l__coffin_scale_x_fp } { \l__coffin_scale_y_fp }
\dim_set:Nn \l__coffin_internal_dim
{ \coffin_ht:N #1 + \coffin_dp:N #1 }
\dim_set:Nn \l__coffin_scaled_total_height_dim
{ \fp_abs:n { \l__coffin_scale_y_fp } \l__coffin_internal_dim }
\dim_set:Nn \l__coffin_scaled_width_dim
{ \fp_abs:n { \l__coffin_scale_x_fp } \coffin_wd:N #1 }
\__coffin_resize_common:NnnN #1 { \l__coffin_scaled_width_dim } { \l__coffin_scaled_total_height_dim } #5
}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \coffin_scale:Nnn, \coffin_gscale:Nnn, and \coffin_scale:NnnNN. These functions are documented on page 284.)

\__coffin_scale_vector:nnNN

This function scales a vector from the origin using the pre-set scale factors in \textit{x} and \textit{y}. This is a much less complex operation than rotation, and as a result the code is a lot clearer.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__coffin_scale_vector:nnNN #1#2#3#4
{\dim_set:Nn #3 { \fp_to_dim:n { \dim_to_fp:n {#1} * \l__coffin_scale_x_fp } }
\dim_set:Nn #4 { \fp_to_dim:n { \dim_to_fp:n {#2} * \l__coffin_scale_y_fp } }
}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__coffin_scale_vector:nnNN.)

\__coffin_scale_corner:Nnnn\__coffin_scale_pole:Nnnnnn

Scaling both corners and poles is a simple calculation using the preceding vector scaling.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__coffin_scale_corner:Nnnn #1#2#3#4
{ \__coffin_scale_vector:nnNN {#3} {#4} \l__coffin_x_dim \l__coffin_y_dim
\prop_put:Nnx \l__coffin_corners_prop {#2}
{ \dim_use:N \l__coffin_x_dim } { \dim_use:N \l__coffin_y_dim }
}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__coffin_scale_pole:Nnnnnn #1#2#3#4#5#6
{ \__coffin_scale_vector:nnNN {#3} {#4} \l__coffin_x_dim \l__coffin_y_dim
\prop_put:Nnx \l__coffin_poles_prop {#2}
{ \dim_use:N \l__coffin_x_dim } { \dim_use:N \l__coffin_y_dim }
{#5} {#6}
}
\end{verbatim}

1297
These functions correct for the $x$ displacement that takes place with a negative horizontal scaling.

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__coffin_x_shift_corner:Nnnn #1#2#3#4
\prop_put:Nnx \l__coffin_corners_prop {#2}
{ \dim_eval:n { #3 + \box_wd:N #1 } } {#4}
```

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__coffin_x_shift_pole:Nnnnnn #1#2#3#4#5#6
\prop_put:Nnx \l__coffin_poles_prop {#2}
{ \dim_eval:n { #3 + \box_wd:N #1 } } {#4}
{#5} {#6}
```

(End definition for \__coffin_scale_corner:Nnn and \__coffin_scale_pole:Nnnnnn.)

85.7 Aligning and typesetting of coffins

This command joins two coffins, using a horizontal and vertical pole from each coffin and making an offset between the two. The result is stored as the as a third coffin, which has all of its handles reset to standard values. First, the more basic alignment function is used to get things started.

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \coffin_join:NnnNnnnn #1#2#3#4#5#6#7#8
\__coffin_join:NnnNnnnnN #1 {#2} {#3} #4 {#5} {#6} {#7} {#8}
\coffin_set_eq:NN
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \coffin_join:NnnNnnnn { c , Nnnc , cnnc }
```

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \coffin_gjoin:NnnNnnnn #1#2#3#4#5#6#7#8
\__coffin_join:NnnNnnnnN #1 {#2} {#3} #4 {#5} {#6} {#7} {#8}
\coffin_gset_eq:NN
```

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__coffin_join:NnnNnnnnN #1#2#3#4#5#6#7#8#9
\__coffin_align:NnnNnnnnN #1 {#2} {#3} #4 {#5} {#6} {#7} {#8} \l__coffin_aligned_coffin
```

Correct the placement of the reference point. If the $x$-offset is negative then the reference point of the second box is to the left of that of the first, which is corrected using a kern. On the right side the first box might stick out, which would show up if it is wider than the sum of the $x$-offset and the width of the second box. So a second kern may be needed.

```
\hbox_set:Nn \l__coffin_aligned_coffin
```

1298
The coffin structure is reset, and the corners are cleared: only those from the two parent coffins are needed.

\_\_\_\_\_coffin_reset_structure:N \l__coffin_aligned_coffin
\prop_clear:c
{
  \_\_\_\_coffin_to_value:N \l__coffin_aligned_coffin
  \c_space_tl corners
}
\_\_\_\_\_coffin_update_poles:N \l__coffin_aligned_coffin

The structures of the parent coffins are now transferred to the new coffin, which requires that the appropriate offsets are applied. That then depends on whether any shift was needed.

\dim_compare:nNnTF \l__coffin_offset_x_dim < \c_zero_dim
{
  \_\_\_\_coffin_offset_poles:Nnn #1 { -\l__coffin_offset_x_dim } { 0pt }
  \_\_\_\_coffin_offset_poles:Nnn #4 { 0pt } { \l__coffin_offset_y_dim }
  \_\_\_\_coffin_offset_corners:Nnn #1 { -\l__coffin_offset_x_dim } { 0pt }
  \_\_\_\_coffin_offset_corners:Nnn #4 { 0pt } { \l__coffin_offset_y_dim }
}

\_\_\_\_\_coffin_update_vertical_poles:NNN #1 #4 \l__coffin_aligned_coffin
#9 #1 \l__coffin_aligned_coffin

(End definition for \coffin_join:NnnNnnnn, \coffin_gjoin:NnnNnnnn, and \_\_\_\_coffin_join:NnnNnnnnN. These functions are documented on page 285.)

\coffin_attach:NnnNnnnn
\coffin_attach:cnnNnnnn
\coffin_attach:NnnnNnnn
\coffin_attach:cmnnnNnnn
\coffin_gattach:NnnNnnnn
\coffin_gattach:cnnNnnnn
\coffin_gattach:Nnncnnnn
\coffin_gattach:cnncnnnn
\_\_\_\_\_\_coffin_attach:NnnNnnnnN
\_\_\_\_\_\_coffinAttach_mark:NnnNnnnn

A more simple version of the above, as it simply uses the size of the first coffin for the new one. This means that the work here is rather simplified compared to the above code. The function used when marking a position is here also as it is similar but without the structure updates.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \coffin_attach:NnnNnnnn #1#2#3#4#5#6#7#8
{
  \_\_\_\_\_\_coffin_attach:NnnNnnnn #1 \{#2\} \{#3\} \{#4\} \{#5\} \{#6\} \{#7\} \{#8\}
  \coffin_set_eq:NN
}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \coffin_attach:NnnNnnnn { c , Nnnc , cnnc }
The internal function aligns the two coffins into a third one, but performs no corrections on the resulting coffin poles. The process begins by finding the points of intersection for the poles for each of the input coffins. Those for the first coffin are worked out after those for the second coffin, as this allows the ‘primed’ storage area to be used for the second coffin. The ‘real’ box offsets are then calculated, before using these to re-box the input coffins. The default poles are then set up, but the final result depends on how the bounding box is being handled.
Transferring structures from one coffin to another requires that the positions are updated by the offset between the two coffins. This is done by mapping over the property list of the source coffins, moving as appropriate and saving to the new coffin data structures. The test for \( - \) means that the structures from the parent coffins are uniquely labelled and do not depend on the order of alignment. The pay off for this is that \( - \) should not be used in coffin pole or handle names, and that multiple alignments do not result in a whole set of values.

\begin{align*}
\text{\texttt{\__coffin_offset_poles:Nnn}} & \quad \text{\texttt{\__coffin_offset_pole:Nnnnnnn}} \\
\text{\texttt{\__coffin_offset_corners:Nnn}} & \quad \text{\texttt{\__coffin_offset_corner:Nnnnn}}
\end{align*}

Saving the offset corners of a coffin is very similar, except that there is no need to worry about naming: every corner can be saved here as order is unimportant.
The T and B poles need to be recalculated after alignment. These functions find the larger absolute value for the poles, but this is of course only logical when the poles are horizontal.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__coffin_update_vertical_poles:NNN #1#2#3
\{
 \__coffin_get_pole:NnN #3 \{ #1 -T \} \l__coffin_pole_a_tl
 \__coffin_get_pole:NnN #3 \{ #2 -T \} \l__coffin_pole_b_tl
 \exp_last_two_unbraced:Noo \__coffin_update_T:nnnnnnnnN
 \l__coffin_pole_a_tl \l__coffin_pole_b_tl #3
 \__coffin_get_pole:NnN #3 \{ #1 -B \} \l__coffin_pole_a_tl
 \__coffin_get_pole:NnN #3 \{ #2 -B \} \l__coffin_pole_b_tl
 \exp_last_two_unbraced:Noo \__coffin_update_B:nnnnnnnnN
 \l__coffin_pole_a_tl \l__coffin_pole_b_tl #3
\}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__coffin_update_T:nnnnnnnnN #1#2#3#4#5#6#7#8#9
\{
 \dim_compare:nNnTF {#2} < {#6}
 \{
 \__coffin_set_pole:Nnx #9 \{ T \}
 \{ { \Opt } \{#6\} \{ 1000pt \} \{ \Opt \} \}
 \}
 \}
 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__coffin_update_B:nnnnnnnnN #1#2#3#4#5#6#7#8#9
\{
 \dim_compare:nNnTF {#2} < {#6}
 \{
 \__coffin_set_pole:Nnx #9 \{ B \}
 \{ { \Opt } \{#2\} \{ 1000pt \} \{ \Opt \} \}
 \}
 \}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \__coffin_offset_corners:N nn and \__coffin_offset_corner:Nnn.)
An empty-but-horizontal coffin.

Typesetting a coffin means aligning it with the current position, which is done using a coffin with no content at all. As well as aligning to the empty coffin, there is also a need to leave vertical mode, if necessary.

This property list is used to print coffin handles at suitable positions. The offsets are expressed as multiples of the basic offset value, which therefore acts as a scale-factor.
\prop_put:Nnn \l__coffin_display_handles_prop { Thc } \{ \{ t \} \{ hc \} \{ 0 \} \{ -1 \} \}
\prop_put:Nnn \l__coffin_display_handles_prop { Tr } \{ \{ t \} \{ 1 \} \{ 1 \} \{ -1 \} \}
\prop_put:Nnn \l__coffin_display_handles_prop { Hl } \{ \{ vc \} \{ r \} \{ -1 \} \{ 1 \} \}
\prop_put:Nnn \l__coffin_display_handles_prop { Hhc } \{ \{ vc \} \{ hc \} \{ 0 \} \{ 1 \} \}
\prop_put:Nnn \l__coffin_display_handles_prop { Hr } \{ \{ vc \} \{ 1 \} \{ 1 \} \{ 1 \} \}
\prop_put:Nnn \l__coffin_display_handles_prop { Bl } \{ \{ b \} \{ r \} \{ -1 \} \{ -1 \} \}
\prop_put:Nnn \l__coffin_display_handles_prop { Bhc } \{ \{ b \} \{ hc \} \{ 0 \} \{ -1 \} \}
\prop_put:Nnn \l__coffin_display_handles_prop { Br } \{ \{ b \} \{ 1 \} \{ 1 \} \{ -1 \} \}

(End definition for \l__coffin_display_handles_prop)

\l__coffin_display_offset_dim
\dim_new:N \l__coffin_display_offset_dim
\dim_set:Nn \l__coffin_display_offset_dim \{ 2pt \}

(End definition for \l__coffin_display_offset_dim)

\l__coffin_display_x_dim \l__coffin_display_y_dim
As the intersections of poles have to be calculated to find which ones to print, there is a need to avoid repetition. This is done by saving the intersection into two dedicated values.
\dim_new:N \l__coffin_display_x_dim
\dim_new:N \l__coffin_display_y_dim

(End definition for \l__coffin_display_x_dim and \l__coffin_display_y_dim)

\l__coffin_display_poles_prop
A property list for printing poles: various things need to be deleted from this to get a “nice” output.
\prop_new:N \l__coffin_display_poles_prop

(End definition for \l__coffin_display_poles_prop)

\l__coffin_display_font_tl
Stores the settings used to print coffin data: this keeps things flexible.
\tl_new:N \l__coffin_display_font_tl
\bool_lazy_and:nnT \{ \cs_if_exist_p:N \fmtname \}
\{ \str_if_eq_p:Vn \fmtname { LaTeX2e } \}
\tl_set:Nn \l__coffin_display_font_tl \{ \sffamily \tiny \}

(End definition for \l__coffin_display_font_tl)

\__coffin_rule:nn
Abstract out creation of rules here until there is a higher-level interface.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__coffin_rule:nn \#1\#2
\mode_leave_vertical:
\hbox:n \{ \tex_vrule:D width \#1 height \#2 \scan_stop: \}

1304
Marking a single handle is relatively easy. The standard attachment function is used, meaning that there are two calculations for the location. However, this is likely to be okay given the load expected. Contrast with the more optimised version for showing all handles which comes next.

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \coffin_mark_handle:Nnnn \#1\#2\#3\#4
\begin{verbatim}
\hcoffin_set:Nn \l__coffin_display_pole_coffin
\begin{verbatim}
\color_select:n {\#4}
\__coffin_rule:nn { 1pt } { 1pt }
\end{verbatim}
\__coffin_attach_mark:NnnNnnnn \#1 {\#2} {\#3}
\hcoffin_set:Nn \l__coffin_display_pole_coffin { hc } { vc } { 0pt } { 0pt }
\__coffin_mark_handle:nnnn \#1 {\#2} {\#3} {\#4}
\\l__coffin_display_font_tl ( \tl_to_str:n { \#2 , \#3 } )
\prop_get:NnN \l__coffin_display_handles_prop { \#2 \#3 } \l__coffin_internal_tl
\quark_if_no_value:NTF \l__coffin_internal_tl
\__coffin_attach_mark:NnnNnnnn \#1 {\#2} {\#3}
\l__coffin_display_coord_coffin { l } { vc }
\\l__coffin_display_offset_dim}
\exp_last_unbraced:No \__coffin_mark_handle_aux:nnnnNnn
\\l__coffin_internal_tl \#1 \#2 \#3}
\exp_last_unbraced:No \__coffin_mark_handle_aux:nnnnNnn
\\l__coffin_internal_tl \#1 \#2 \#3}
\end{verbatim}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \coffin_mark_handle:Nnnn { c }
```

(End definition for \_\_coffin_rule:nn.)

...
Printing the poles starts by removing any duplicates, for which the \( H \) poles is used as the definitive version for the baseline and bottom. Two loops are then used to find the combinations of handles for all of these poles. This is done such that poles are removed during the loops to avoid duplication.

\[
\text{\texttt{cs\_new\_protected:Npn \ coffin\_display\_handles:Nn \#1#2}}
\]
\[
\begin{align*}
\text{\texttt{\hcoffin\_set:Nn \l__coffin\_display\_pole\_coffin}} \\
\text{\texttt{\color\_select:n \{#2\}}} \\
\text{\texttt{\__coffin\_rule:nn \{ 1pt \} \{ 1pt \}}} \\
\end{align*}
\]
\[
\text{\texttt{\prop\_set\_eq:Nc \l__coffin\_display\_poles\_prop}} \\
\text{\texttt{\coffin - \\__coffin\_to\_value:N \#1 - poles \}}} \\
\text{\texttt{\__coffin\_get\_pole:NnN #1 \{ H \} \l__coffin\_pole\_a\_tl}} \\
\text{\texttt{\__coffin\_get\_pole:NnN #1 \{ T \} \l__coffin\_pole\_b\_tl}} \\
\text{\texttt{\\tl\_if\_eq:NNT \l__coffin\_pole\_a\_tl \l__coffin\_pole\_b\_tl \l__coffin\_pole\_b\_tl}} \\
\text{\texttt{\prop\_remove:Nn \l__coffin\_display\_poles\_prop \{ T \}}} \\
\text{\texttt{\\tl\_if\_eq:NNT \l__coffin\_pole\_a\_tl \l__coffin\_pole\_b\_tl \l__coffin\_pole\_b\_tl}} \\
\text{\texttt{\prop\_remove:Nn \l__coffin\_display\_poles\_prop \{ B \}}} \\
\text{\texttt{\\prop\_set\_eq:NN \l__coffin\_display\_coffin \#1}} \\
\text{\texttt{\\prop\_map\_inline:Nn \l__coffin\_display\_poles\_prop \{}} \\
\text{\texttt{\prop\_remove:Nn \l__coffin\_display\_poles\_prop \{##1\}}} \\
\text{\texttt{\\__coffin\_display\_handles\_aux:nnnnn (##1) \#2 \{#2\}}} \\
\text{\texttt{\box\_use\_drop:N \l__coffin\_display\_coffin}}
\]

For each pole there is a check for an intersection, which here does not give an error if none is found. The successful values are stored and used to align the pole coffin with the main coffin for output. The positions are recovered from the preset list if available.

\[
\text{\texttt{\cs\_new\_protected:Npn \__coffin\_display\_handles\_aux:nnnnn \#1#2#3#4#5#6}}
\]
\[
\begin{align*}
\text{\texttt{\prop\_map\_inline:Nn \l__coffin\_display\_poles\_prop}} \\
\text{\texttt{\bool\_set\_false:N \l__coffin\_error\_bool}} \\
\text{\texttt{\\__coffin\_calculate\_intersection:nnnnn \{##2\} \{#3\} \{#4\} \#2 \#2}} \\
\text{\texttt{\bool\_if:NF \l__coffin\_error\_bool}} \\
\text{\texttt{\dim\_set:Nn \l__coffin\_display\_x\_dim \{ \l__coffin\_x\_dim \}}} \\
\text{\texttt{\dim\_set:Nn \l__coffin\_display\_y\_dim \{ \l__coffin\_y\_dim \}}} \\
\text{\texttt{\__coffin\_display\_attach:Nmnnn \l__coffin\_display\_pole\_coffin \{ hc \} \{ vc \} \{ 0pt \} \{ 0pt \} \lcoffin\_set:Nn \l__coffin\_display\_coord\_coffin}} \\
\text{\texttt{\color\_select:n \{#6\}}} \\
\text{\texttt{\l__coffin\_display\_font\_tl \{ \tl\_to\_str:n \{ \#1 \, \#1 \} \}}} \\
\text{\texttt{\prop\_get:NnN \l__coffin\_display\_handles\_prop \{ \#1 \#2 \}}} \\
\text{\texttt{\quark\_if\_no\_value:NTF \l__coffin\_internal\_tl}}
\]
This is a dedicated version of \texttt{\coffin_attach:Nnnnn} with a hard-wired first coffin. As the intersection is already known and stored for the display coffin the code simply uses it directly, with no calculation.
\coffin_show_structure:N
\coffin_show_structure:c
\coffin_log_structure:N
\coffin_log_structure:c
\__coffin_show_structure:NN

(End definition for \coffin_display_handles:Nn and others. This function is documented on page 285.)

\coffin_show:N
\coffin_show:c
\coffin_log:N
\coffin_log:c
\coffin_show:Nnn
\coffin_show:cnn
\coffin_log:Nnn
\coffin_log:cnn
\__coffin_show:NNNnn

Essentially a combination of \coffin_show_structure:N and \box_show:Nnn, but we need to avoid having two prompts, so we use \msg_term:nxxxx in the show case.

\coffin_log:Nnn
\__coffin_log:NNNnn
\__coffin_log:Nn
\__coffin_log:cnn
\__coffin_log:NNNnn

\coffin_log:N
\coffin_log:c
\coffin_log:Nnn
\__coffin_log:NNNnn
\__coffin_log:Nn
\__coffin_log:cnn
\__coffin_log:NNNnn

(End definition for \coffin_show_structure:N, \coffin_log_structure:N, and \__coffin_show_structure:N. These functions are documented on page 286.)
85.9 Messages

\msg_new:nnn { coffin } { no-pole-intersection }
\{ No-intersection-between-coffin-poles. \}
\{
  \LaTeX\-was-asked-to-find-the-intersection-between-two-poles,-
  but-they-do-not-have-a-unique-meeting-point:-
  the-value-(0pt,0pt)-will-be-used.
\}
\msg_new:nnn { coffin } { unknown }
\{ Unknown-coffin-’#1’. \}
\{ The-coffin-’#1’-was-never-defined. \}
\msg_new:nnn { coffin } { unknown-pole }
\{ Pole-’#1’-unknown-for-coffin-’#2’. \}
\{
  \LaTeX\-was-asked-to-find-a-typesetting-pole-for-a-coffin,-
  but-either-the-coffin-does-not-exist-or-the-pole-name-is-wrong.
\}
\msg_new:nnn { coffin } { show }
\{ Size-of-coffin-#1 : #2 \}
\{ Poles-of-coffin-#1 : #3 . \}
\{/package\}

(End definition for \coffin_show:§ and others. These functions are documented on page 286.)
Chapter 86

\textbf{l3color Implementation}

\section*{86.1 Basics}

\texttt{\color{current_tl}} The color currently active for foreground (text, \textit{etc.}) material. This is stored in the form of a color model followed by one or more values. There are four pre-defined models, three of which take numerical values in the range $[0, 1]$:

- \texttt{gray (gray)} Grayscale color with the $\langle$gray$\rangle$ value running from 0 (fully black) to 1 (fully white)
- \texttt{cmyk (cyan) (magenta) (yellow) (black)}
- \texttt{rgb (red) (green) (blue)}

Notice that the values are separated by spaces. There is a fourth pre-defined model using a string value and a numerical one:

- \texttt{spot (name) (tint)} A pre-defined spot color, where the $\langle$name$\rangle$ should be a pre-defined string color name and the $\langle$tint$\rangle$ should be in the range $[0, 1]$.

Additional models may be created to allow mixing of spot colors. The number of data entries these require will depend on the number of colors to be mixed.

\textbf{\TeXhackers note:} The content of $\color{current_tl}$ comprises two brace groups, the first containing the color model and the second containing the value(s) applicable in that model.

(End definition for $\color{current_tl}$.)

\texttt{\colorbegin:} Grouping for color is the same as using the basic $\groupbegin:$ and $\groupend:$ functions. However, for semantic reasons, they are renamed here.

(End definition for $\colorbegin:$ and $\colorend:$: These functions are documented on page 288.)
A driver-independent wrapper for setting the foreground color to the current color “now”.

\color_ensure_current:  
\cs_new_protected:Npn \color_ensure_current:  
  \__color_backend_pickup:N \l__color_current_tl  
  \__color_select:N \l__color_current_tl  
\}  
(End definition for \color_ensure_current:. This function is documented on page 288.)

\s__color_stop  
Internal scan marks.  
(End definition for \s__color_stop.)

\__color_select:N \__color_select_math:N \__color_select:nn  
Take an internal color specification and pass it to the driver. This code is needed to ensure the current color but will also be used by the higher-level material.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_select:N #1  
  \exp_after:wN \__color_select:nn #1  
  \group_insert_after:N \__color_backend_reset:  
\}  
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_select_math:N #1  
{ \exp_after:wN \__color_select:nn #1 }  
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_select:nn #1#2  
{ \use:c { \__color_backend_select_ #1 :n } {#2} }  
(End definition for \__color_select:N, \__color_select_math:N, and \__color_select:nn.)

\l__color_current_tl  
The current color, with the model and

\tl_new:N \l__color_current_tl  
\tl_set:Nn \l__color_current_tl \{ { gray } { 0 } \}  
(End definition for \l__color_current_tl.)

86.2 Predefined color names

The ability to predefine colors with a name is a key part of this module and means there has to be a method for storing the results. At first sight, it seems natural to follow the usual expl3 model and create a color variable type for the process. That would then allow both local and global colors, constant colors and the like. However, these names need to be accessible in some form at the user level, for selection of colors either simply by name or as part of a more complex expression. This does not require that the full name is exposed but does require that they can be looked up in a predictable way. As such, it is more useful to expose just the color names as part of the interface, with the result that only local color names can be created. (This is also seen for example in key creation in l3keys.) As a result, color names are declarative (no new functions).

Since there is no need to manipulate colors en masse, each is stored in a two-part structure: a prop for the colors themselves, and a tl for the default model for each color.
86.3 Setup

\l__color_internal_int
\l__color_internal_tl
\int_new:N \l__color_internal_int
\tl_new:N \l__color_internal_tl

(End definition for \l__color_internal_int and \l__color_internal_tl.)

\s__color_mark Internal scan marks. \s__color_stop is already defined in l3color-base.
\scan_new:N \s__color_mark

(End definition for \s__color_mark.)

86.4 Utility functions

\__color_if_defined:nTF A simple wrapper to avoid needing to have the lookup repeated in too many places. To
guard against a color created in a group, we need to test for entries in the prop.
\prg_new_conditional:Npn \__color_if_defined:n #1 { T, F, TF }
\prop_if_exist:cTF { l__color_named_ #1 _prop }
\prop_if_empty:cTF { l__color_named_ #1 _prop }
\prg_return_false:
\prg_return_true:
\prg_return_false:

(End definition for \__color_if_defined:nTF.)

\__color_model:N \__color_values:N
\cs_new:Npn \__color_model:N #1 { \exp_after:wN \use_i:nn #1 }
\cs_new:Npn \__color_values:N #1 { \exp_after:wN \use_ii:nn #1 }

(End definition for \__color_model:N and \__color_values:N.)

\__color_extract:nNN \__color_extract:VNN
Recover the values for the standard model for a color.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_extract:nNN #1#2#3
\tl_set_eq:Nc #2 { l__color_named_ #1 _tl }
\prop_get:cVN { l__color_named_ #1 _prop } #2 #3
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \__color_extract:nNN { V }

(End definition for \__color_extract:nNN.)
86.5 Model conversion

Model conversion is carried out using standard formulae for base models, as described in the manual for xcolor (see also the PostScript Language Reference Manual). For other models direct conversion might not be defined, so we go through the fallback models if necessary.

These rather odd values are based on NTSC television: the set are used for the cmyk conversion.
The conversion from rgb to cmyk is the most complex: a two-step procedure which requires black generation and undercolor removal functions. The PostScript reference describes them as device-dependent, but following xcolor we assume they are linear. Moreover, as the likelihood of anyone using a non-unitary matrix here is tiny, we simplify and treat those two concepts as no-ops.

The main function for parsing color expressions removes actives but otherwise expands, then starts working through the expression itself. At the end, we apply the payload.

### 86.6 Color expressions

Working space to store the color data whilst doing calculations: keeping it on the stack is attractive but gets tricky (return is non-trivial).

The conversion from rgb to cmyk is the most complex: a two-step procedure which requires black generation and undercolor removal functions. The PostScript reference describes them as device-dependent, but following xcolor we assume they are linear. Moreover, as the likelihood of anyone using a non-unitary matrix here is tiny, we simplify and treat those two concepts as no-ops.

The main function for parsing color expressions removes actives but otherwise expands, then starts working through the expression itself. At the end, we apply the payload.
Before going to all of the effort of parsing an expression, these two precursor functions look for a pre-defined name, either on its own or with a trailing `!` (which is the same thing).

Here, we have to allow for the case where there is a fixed model: that can’t be swept up by generic conversion as we are dealing with a named color.
Once we establish that a full parse is needed, the next job is to get the detail of the first

Once we establish that a full parse is needed, the next job is to get the detail of the first
color. That will determine the model we use for the calculation: splitting here makes
checking that a bit easier.

This is the loop proper: there can be an open-ended set of colors to parse, separated by
! tokens. There are a few cases to look out for. At the end of the expression and with
we find a mix of 100 then we simply skip the next color entirely (we can’t stop the loop
as there might be a further valid color to mix in). On the other hand, if we get a mix of
0 then drop everything so far and start again. There is also a trailing white to “read in”
if the final explicit data is a mix. Those conditions are separate from actually looping,
which is therefore sorted out by checking if we have further data to process: in contrast
to xcolor, we don’t allow !! so the test can be simplified.

The “payload” of calculation in the loop first. If the model for the upcoming color is
different from that of the existing (partial) color, convert the model. For gray the two
are flipped round so that the outcome is something with “real” color. We are then in
a position to do the actual calculation itself. The two auxiliaries here give us a way to
break the loop should an invalid name be found.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_parse_loop:nn #1#2
\{\__color_if_defined:nTF {#2}\{
  \__color_extract:nNN {#2} \l__color_next_model_tl \l__color_next_value_tl
  \tl_if_eq:NNF \l__color_model_tl \l__color_next_model_tl
  {\str_if_eq:VnTF \l__color_model_tl { gray } { \__color_parse_gray:n {#2} } { \__color_parse_std:n {#2} } }
  \tl_set:Nx \l__color_value_tl
  {\__color_parse_mix:NVVn \l__color_model_tl \l__color_value_tl \l__color_next_value_tl {#1} }
}\}
\msg_error:nnn { color } { unknown-color } {#2}
\__color_extract:nNN { black } \l__color_model_tl \l__color_value_tl
\__color_parse_break:w
\end{verbatim}

Do the vector arithmetic: mainly a question of shuffling input, along with one pre-
calculation to keep down the use of division.

The gray model needs special handling: the models need to be swapped: we do that
using a dedicated function.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_parse_gray:n #1
\{\tl_set_eq:NN \l__color_model_tl \l__color_next_model_tl
  \tl_set:Nn \l__color_next_model_tl { gray }
  \exp_args:NnV \__color_convert:nnN { gray } \l__color_model_tl
  \l__color_value_tl
  \prop_get:cVN { l__color_named_ #1 _prop } \l__color_model_tl
  \l__color_next_value_tl
\}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_parse_std:n #1
\{\prop_get:cVNF { l__color_named_ #1 _prop }
  \l__color_model_tl
  \l__color_next_value_tl
  \__color_convert:VVN
  \l__color_next_model_tl
  \l__color_model_tl
  \l__color_next_value_tl
\}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_parse_break:w #1 \__color_parse_end: { }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_parse_end: { }
\end{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \__color_parse_mix:Nnnn #1#2#3#4
{
  \exp_args:Nf \__color_parse_mix:nNnn
  \fp_eval:n { \#4 / 100 } #1 \{#2\} \{#3\}
}
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \__color_parse_mix:Nnnn { NVV }
\cs_new:Npn \__color_parse_mix_gray:nw #1#2 \s__color_mark #3 \s__color_stop
{ \fp_eval:n { #2 * #1 + #3 * ( 1 - #1 ) } }
\cs_new:Npn \__color_parse_mix_rgb:nw
#1#2 ~ #3 ~ #4 \s__color_mark #5 ~ #6 ~ #7 \s__color_stop
{ \fp_eval:n { #2 * #1 + #5 * ( 1 - #1 ) } \c_space_tl
  \fp_eval:n { #3 * #1 + #6 * ( 1 - #1 ) } \c_space_tl
  \fp_eval:n { #4 * #1 + #7 * ( 1 - #1 ) } }
\cs_new:Npn \__color_parse_mix_cmyk:nw
#1#2 ~ #3 ~ #4 ~ #5 \s__color_mark #6 ~ #7 ~ #8 ~ #9 \s__color_stop
{ \fp_eval:n { #2 * #1 + #6 * ( 1 - #1 ) } \c_space_tl
  \fp_eval:n { #3 * #1 + #7 * ( 1 - #1 ) } \c_space_tl
  \fp_eval:n { #4 * #1 + #8 * ( 1 - #1 ) } \c_space_tl
  \fp_eval:n { #5 * #1 + #9 * ( 1 - #1 ) } }
(End definition for \__color_parse:nN and others.)

\__color_parse_model_gray:w \__color_parse_model_rgb:w
\__color_parse_model_cmyk:w
\__color_parse_number:n
\__color_parse_number:w

Turn the input into internal form, also tidying up the number quickly.
\cs_new:Npn \__color_parse_model_gray:w #1 , #2 \s__color_stop
{ \{ gray \} \{ \__color_parse_number:n \{#1\} \} }
\cs_new:Npn \__color_parse_model_rgb:w #1 , #2 , #3 , #4 \s__color_stop
{ \{ rgb \}
  \{ \__color_parse_number:n \{#1\} -
    \__color_parse_number:n \{#2\} -
    \__color_parse_number:n \{#3\} \}
  \}
\cs_new:Npn \__color_parse_model_cmyk:w #1 , #2 , #3 , #4 , #5 \s__color_stop
{ \{ cmyk \}
  \{
    \__color_parse_number:n \{#1\} -
    \__color_parse_number:n \{#2\} -
    \__color_parse_number:n \{#3\} -
    \__color_parse_number:n \{#4\} -
    \__color_parse_number:n \{#5\} \}
  }
}
The conversion here is non-trivial but is described at length in the xcolor manual. For ease, we calculate the integer and fractional parts of the hue first, then use them to work out the possible values for \( r \), \( g \) and \( b \) before putting them in the correct places.
Following the description in the xcolor manual. As we always use rgb, there is no need to find the sixth, we just pass the information straight to the hsb auxiliary defined earlier.
\fp_compare:nNnTF {#1} < { 490 }
{
  \__color_parse_model_wave_auxii:nn
  { 4 - \__color_parse_model_wave_rho:n { (#1 - 440) / 50 } }
  {#2}
}
\fp_compare:nNnTF {#1} < { 510 }
{
  \__color_parse_model_wave_auxii:nn
  { 2 + \__color_parse_model_wave_rho:n { (#1 - 510) / -20 } }
  {#2}
}
\fp_compare:nNnTF {#1} < { 580 }
{
  \__color_parse_model_wave_auxii:nn
  { 2 - \__color_parse_model_wave_rho:n { (#1 - 510) / 70 } }
  {#2}
}
\fp_compare:nNnTF {#1} < { 645 }
{
  \__color_parse_model_wave_auxii:nn
  { \__color_parse_model_wave_rho:n { (#1 - 645) / -65 } }
  {#2}
}
\__color_check_model:N
\__color_check_model:nn
Check that the model in use is the one required.

(End definition for \__color_parse_model_Gray:w and others.)

86.7 Selecting colors (and color models)
\l_color_fixed_model_tl
For selecting a single fixed model.
\tl_new:N \l_color_fixed_model_tl
(End definition for \l_color_fixed_model_tl. This variable is documented on page 291.)

\__color_check_model:N
\__color_check_model:nn
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_check_model:N \#1
\tl_if_empty:NF \l_color_fixed_model_tl
\{ \exp_after:wN \__color_check_model:nn \#1
\tl_if_eq:NNF \l__color_model_tl \l_color_fixed_model_tl
\{ \__color_convert:VVN \l__color_model_tl \l_color_fixed_model_tl
\l__color_value_tl \}
\tl_set:Nx \#1 \{ \l_color_fixed_model_tl \} \{ \l__color_value_tl \} \}
\}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_check_model:nn \#1\#2
\{ \tl_set:Nn \l__color_model_tl {\#1}
\tl_set:Nn \l__color_value_tl {\#2}
\}

(End definition for \__color_check_model:N and \__color_check_model:nn.)
\__color_finalise_current:
A backend-neutral location for “last minute” manipulations before handing off to the
backend code. We set the special \_ syntax here: this will therefore always be available.
The finalisation is separate from the main function so it can also be applied to e.g. page color.
\cs_new_protected:Npx \__color_finalise_current: \{
\tl_set:Nx \exp_not:c { l__color_named_ . _tl }
\{ \exp_not:N \__color_model:N \exp_not:N \l__color_current_tl \}
\prop_clear:N \exp_not:c { l__color_named_ . _prop }
\prop_put:NVx \exp_not:c { l__color_named_ . _prop }
\exp_not:c { l__color_named_ . _tl }
\{ \exp_not:N \__color_values:N \exp_not:N \l__color_current_tl \}
\}
(End definition for \__color_finalise_current:.)
\color_select:n \color_select:nn
\__color_select_main:Nw \__color_select_loop:Nw \__color_select:nnN
\__color_select_swap:Nnn
Parse the input expressions then get the backend to actually activate them. The main
complexity here is the need to check through multiple models. That is done “locally”
here as the approach is subtly different to when different models are being stored.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \color_select:n \#1
\{ \__color_parse:nN \#1 \l__color_current_tl
\__color_finalise_current:
\__color_select:N \l__color_current_tl \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \color_select:nn \#1\#2
\{ \__color_select_main:Nw \l__color_current_tl
\#1 / \_a\_color_mark \#2 / \_a\_color_stop
\__color_finalise_current:
\__color_select:N \l__color_current_tl \}

1322
If the first color model is the fixed one, or if there is no fixed model, we don’t need most of the data: just set up and apply the backend function.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_select_main:Nw { \_color_select:nnN {#1} #2 {#5} #1 \bool_lazy_or:nnF \tl_if_empty_p:N \l_color_fixed_model_tl \str_if_eq_p:nV {#2} \l_color_fixed_model_tl { \_color_select_loop:Nw \_0 #3 / #4 \_0 \_0 / \_0 \_0 \_0 \_color_stop } }
\end{verbatim}

If a fixed model applies, we need to check each possible value in order. If there is no hit at all, fall back on the generic formula-based interchange.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_select_loop:Nw #1 #2 / #3 \_color_mark #4 / #5 \_color_stop { \str_if_eq:nVTF {#2} \l_color_fixed_model_tl { \_color_select:nnN {#2} {#4} #1 } \tl_if_blank:nTF {#2} { \exp_after:wN \__color_select_swap:Nnn \exp_after:wN #1 #1 } { \_color_select_loop:Nw \_0 \_3 / #4 \_0 \_0 \_0 \_0 \_color_stop } }
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_select:nnN #1#2#3 { \cs_if_exist:cTF { __color_parse_model_ #1 :w } { \tl_set:Nx #3 { \use:c { __color_parse_model_ #1 :w } \_0 \_0 \_0 \_0 \_color_stop } } { \msg_error:nnn { color } { unknown-model } {#1} } }
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_select_swap:Nnn #1#2#3 { \_color_convert:nVnN {#2} \l_color_fixed_model_tl \_0 \_3 \_color_value_tl \tl_set:Nx \_0 \_0 #1 \_0 \_color_value_tl \_0 \_color_value_tl }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \_color_select:n and others. These functions are documented on page 291.)

### 86.8 Math color

The approach here is the same as for the \LaTeX\ \texttt{mathcolor} command, but as we are working at the expl3 level we can make some minor changes.

\begin{verbatim}
\l_color_math_active_tl Tokens representing active sub/superscripts.
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \l_color_math_active_tl. This function is documented on page 292.)
Not all engines have multiple color stacks, and at the same time we are not expecting breaking within a colored math fragment. So we track the color stack ourselves.

\seq_new:N \g__color_math_seq

(End definition for \g__color_math_seq.)

The basic setup here is relatively simple: store the current color, parse the new color as-normal, then switch color before inserting the tokens we are asked to change. The tricky part is right at the end, handling the reset.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \color_math:nn #1#2
\__color_math:nn {#2}
\__color_parse:nN {#1} \l__color_current_tl

\cs_new_protected:Npn \color_math:nnn #1#2#3
\__color_math:nn {#3}
\__color_select_main:Nw \l__color_current_tl #1 / \s__color_mark #2 / \s__color_stop}

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_math:nn #1#2
\seq_gpush:NV \g__color_math_seq \l__color_current_tl #2
\__color_select_math:N \l__color_current_tl #1
\__color_math_scan:w

(End definition for \color_math:nn, \color_math:nnn, and \__color_math:nn. These functions are documented on page 292.)

The complication when changing the color back is due to the fact that the \color_math:nn(n) may be followed by \^ or \_ or the hidden superscript (for example ') and its argument may end in a \mathop in which case the sub- and superscripts may be attached as limits instead of after the material. All cases need separate treatment. To avoid repeatedly collecting the same token, we first check for an alignment tab: assuming we don’t have one of those, we can “recycle” \l_peek_token safely.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_math_scan:w
\{ \peek_remove_filler:n
\peek_catcode:NTF \c_alignment_token
\{ \__color_math_scan_end: \}
\}
\__color_math_scan:aux:1324
\__color_math_scan:auxi:1324
\__color_math_scan:auxii:1324
\__color_math_scan:end:1324}

Dealing with literal _ and ^ is easy, and as we have exactly two cases, we can hard-code this. We use a hard-coded list for limits: these are all primitives. The \use_none:n here also removes the test token so it is left just in the right place.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_math_scan:auxi:1324
The one final case to handle is math-active tokens, most obviously \', as these won’t be covered earlier.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_math_scan_auxii:
\tl_map_inline:Nn \l__color_math_active_tl
\token_if_eq_meaning:NNT \l_peek_token #1
\tl_map_break:n
\{ \__color_math_scan_auxiii:N #1 \}
\__color_math_scan_end:
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_math_scan_auxiii:N #1
\exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \__color_math_scan:w
\char_generate:nn { '#1 } { 13 }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_math_scan_end:
\__color_backend_reset:
\seq_gpop:NN \g__color_math_seq \l__color_current_tl
\__color_math_scripts:Nw \__color_math_script_aux:N

(End definition for \__color_math_scan:w and others.)

The tricky part of handling sub and superscripts is that we have to reset color to the one that is on the stack but reset it back to what it was before to allow for cases like

\[
\color_math:n { red } \{ a + \sum_{i = 1}^{n} \}
\]
Here, \TeX\ constructs a \texttt{\vbox} stacking subscript, summation sign, and superscript. So technically the superscript comes first and the \texttt{\sum} that should get colored red is the middle.

The approach here is to set up a brace group immediately after the script token, then to set the color appropriately in that argument. We need an extra group to keep the color contained, and as we need to allow for an explicit closing brace in the source, the inner group also is a brace one rather than \texttt{\group_begin:-based}. At the end of the outer group we need to insert \texttt{\__color_math_scan:w} to continue the search for a second script token.

Notice that here we \textit{don't} need to use the math-specific color selector as we can allow the \texttt{\group_insert_after:N \@@_backend_reset:} to operate normally.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_math_scripts:Nw #1
  { #1 \seq_get:NN \g__color_math_seq \l__color_current_tl
    \__color_select:N \l__color_current_tl
    \group_insert_after:N \c_group_end_token
    \group_insert_after:N \__color_math_scan:w
    \peek_remove_filler:n
    { \peek_catcode_remove:NF \c_group_begin_token
      { \__color_math_script_aux:N }
    }
  }
\end{verbatim}

Deal with the case where we do not have an explicit brace pair in the source.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_math_script_aux:N #1 { #1 \c_group_end_token }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\__color_math_scripts:Nw} and \texttt{\__color_math_script_aux:N}.)

### 86.9 Fill and stroke color

\begin{verbatim}
\color_fill:n
\color_stroke:nn
\color_fill:nn
\color_stroke:mm
\__color_draw:nnn
\cs_new_protected:Npn \color_fill:n #1
  { \__color_parse:nN {#1} \l__color_current_tl
    \exp_after:wN \__color_draw:nnn \l__color_current_tl { fill } }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \color_stroke:n #1
  { \__color_parse:nN {#1} \l__color_current_tl
    \exp_after:wN \__color_draw:nnn \l__color_current_tl { stroke } }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \color_fill:nn #1#2
  { \__color_select_main:Nw \l__color_current_tl
    #1 / / \s__color_mark #2 / / \s__color_stop
    \exp_after:wN \__color_draw:nnn \l__color_current_tl { fill } }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \color_stroke:nn #1#2
  { }
\end{verbatim}
86.10 Defining named colors

\l__color_named_tl Space to store the detail of the named color.

Defining named colors means working through the model list and saving both the “main” color and any equivalents in other models. Even if there is only one model, we store a prop as well as a tl, as there could be grouping weirdness, etc. When setting using an expression, we need to avoid any fixed model issues, which is done without a group as in l3keys.

When setting an expression-based color, there could be multiple model data available for one or more of the input colors. Where that is true for the first named color in an expression, we re-parse the expression when they are also parameter-based: only cmyk, gray and rgb make any sense here. There is a bit of a performance hit but this should be rare and taking place during set-up.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \color_set:nnn #1#2#3
\clist_map_inline:nn { cmyk, gray, rgb }
\prop_get:cnNT { l__color_named_ #3 _prop } {##1} \l__color_internal_tl
\prop_if_in:cnF { l__color_named_ #1 _prop } {##1}
\group_begin:
\tl_set:cn { l__color_named_ #3 _tl } {##1}
\__color_parse:nN {#2} \l__color_internal_tl
\exp_args:NNNV \group_end:
\tl_set:Nn \l__color_internal_tl \l__color_internal_tl
\prop_put:cxx { l__color_named_ #1 _prop }
{ \__color_model:N \l__color_internal_tl }
{ \__color_values:N \l__color_internal_tl }
\cs_new_protected:Npx \__color_set_aux:nnn #1#2#3
\str_if_eq:nnF {#1} { . }
\group_begin:
\tl_set:cn { l__color_named_ #1 _tl } \l__color_internal_tl
\exp_args:Nc \__color_set_aux:n { \tl_to_str:n {#2} }
\prop_put:cxx { l__color_named_ #1 _prop }
\group_end:
\use:x
\cs_new_protected:Npx \__color_set_aux:n { \tl_to_str:n {#2} }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \color_set:nnn #1#2#3
\tl_if_blank:nTF {#4}
\__color_set_loop:nw {#1} #3 \s__color_mark #4 \s__color_stop
\tl_if_blank:nF {#2}
\__color_set_loop:nw {#1} #4 \s__color_stop
\langle
\end{verbatim}

1328
A small set of colors are always defined.
\color_set:nn { black } { gray } { 0 }  
\color_set:nn { white } { gray } { 1 }  
\color_set:nn { cyan } { cmyk } { 1, 0, 0, 0 }  
\color_set:nn { magenta } { cmyk } { 0, 1, 0, 0 }  
\color_set:nn { yellow } { cmyk } { 0, 0, 1, 0 }  
\color_set:nn { red } { rgb } { 1, 0, 0 }  
\color_set:nn { green } { rgb } { 0, 1, 0 }  
\color_set:nn { blue } { rgb } { 0, 0, 1 }  

A special named color: this is always defined though not fixed in definition.
\prop_new:c { \l__color_named___prop }  
\tl_new:c { \l__color_named___tl }  
\tl_set:cx { \l__color_named___tl } { \_color_model:N \l__color_current_tl }  

(End definition for \l__color_named___prop and \l__color_named___tl.)

86.11 Exporting colors

\color_export:nnN  
\color_export:nnN  
\color_export:nnN  
\color_export:nnN
\_color_export:nnnN

A generic auxiliary for cases where only one model is appropriate.
\cs_new_protected:Npm \__color_export:nnnNN #1\#2\#3\#4\#5
\str_if_eq:nnTF {#2} {#1}
{ #5 \#4 \#3 \s__color_stop }
{ \__color_convert:nnnN {#2} {#1} {#3} \#4
\exp_after:wN \exp_after:wN \#4 \s__color_stop }
\tl_set:Nn #3 { {#1} {#2} \#4 }
(End definition for \__color_export:nnnNN.)
The text contains code with LaTeX and TeX commands. Here is a clean representation:

```
\group_begin:
\cs_set_protected:Npn \__color_tmp:w #1 #2 { \exp_not:N \__color_export:nnnNN {#2} {##1} {##2} ##3 \exp_not:c { \__color_export_ #1 :Nw } }
\__color_tmp:w { comma-sep-cmyk } { cmyk }
\__color_tmp:w { comma-sep-rgb } { rgb }
\__color_tmp:w { HTML } { rgb }
\__color_tmp:w { space-sep-cmyk } { cmyk }
\__color_tmp:w { space-sep-rgb } { rgb }
\group_end:
```

This represents the definition for `\__color_export_format_comma-sep-cmyk:nnN` and others. The code defines commands and functions for exporting colors in different formats. The LaTeX code includes commands for setting up and defining these commands with various parameters.

```
\cs_new_protected:cpn { __color_export_comma-sep-cmyk:Nw } #1 #2 ~ #3 ~ #4 ~ #5 \s__color_stop { \tl_set:Nn #1 { #2 , #3 , #4 , #5 } }
```

This part defines commands for exporting colors as comma-separated values in `cmyk` format. It sets up a new protected command and defines how to use it with parameters.

```
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_export_HTML:Nw #1 #2 ~ #3 ~ #4 \s__color_stop { \tl_set:Nx #1 { \__color_export_HTML:n {#2} \__color_export_HTML:n {#3} \__color_export_HTML:n {#4} } }
```

This defines a command for exporting colors as HTML values, with conversion from `rgb` to `cmyk` if necessary. The `\__color_export_HTML:n` function is also defined, which performs simple math operations to convert values to hexadecimal format.
86.12 Additional color models

\l__color_internal_prop

\prop_new:N \l__color_internal_prop

(End definition for \l__color_internal_prop.)

\g__color_model_int

A tracker for the total number of new models.

\int_new:N \g__color_model_int

(End definition for \g__color_model_int.)

\c__color_fallback_cmyk_tl \c__color_fallback_gray_tl \c__color_fallback_rgb_tl

For every colorspace, we define one of the base colorspaces as a fallback. The base
colorspaces themselves are their own fallback.

\tl_const:Nn \c__color_fallback_cmyk_tl { cmyk }
\tl_const:Nn \c__color_fallback_gray_tl { gray }
\tl_const:Nn \c__color_fallback_rgb_tl { rgb }

(End definition for \c__color_fallback_cmyk_tl, \c__color_fallback_gray_tl, and \c__color_fallback_rgb_tl.)

\g__color_colorants_prop

Mapping from names to colorants.

\prop_new:N \g__color_colorants_prop
\prop_gput:Nnn \g__color_colorants_prop { black } { Black }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g__color_colorants_prop { blue } { Blue }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g__color_colorants_prop { cyan } { Cyan }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g__color_colorants_prop { green } { Green }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g__color_colorants_prop { magenta } { Magenta }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g__color_colorants_prop { none } { None }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g__color_colorants_prop { red } { Red }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g__color_colorants_prop { yellow } { Yellow }

(End definition for \g__color_colorants_prop.)

\c__color_model_whitepoint_CIELAB_a_tl \c__color_model_whitepoint_CIELAB_b_tl \c__color_model_whitepoint_CIELAB_e_tl \c__color_model_whitepoint_CIELAB_d50_tl \c__color_model_whitepoint_CIELAB_d65_tl \c__color_model_whitepoint_CIELAB_d75_tl

Whitepoint data for the CIELAB profiles.

\tl_const:Nn \c__color_model_whitepoint_CIELAB_a_tl { 1.0985 - 1 - 0.3558 }
\tl_const:Nn \c__color_model_whitepoint_CIELAB_b_tl { 0.9807 - 1 - 1.1822 }
\tl_const:Nn \c__color_model_whitepoint_CIELAB_e_tl { 1 - 1 - 1 }
\tl_const:cn { \c__color_model_whitepoint_CIELAB_d50_tl } { 0.9642 - 1 - 0.8251 }
\tl_const:cn { \c__color_model_whitepoint_CIELAB_d65_tl } { 0.9568 - 1 - 0.9214 }
\tl_const:cn { \c__color_model_whitepoint_CIELAB_d75_tl } { 0.9504 - 1 - 1.0888 }
\tl_const:cn { \c__color_model_whitepoint_CIELAB_d75_tl } { 0.9497 - 1 - 1.2261 }

(End definition for \c__color_model_whitepoint_CIELAB_a_tl and others.)

\c__color_model_range_CIELAB_tl

The range for CIELAB color spaces.

\tl_const:Nn \c__color_model_range_CIELAB_tl { 0 - 100 - -128 - 127 - -128 - 127 }

(End definition for \c__color_model_range_CIELAB_tl.)
For tracking the alternative model set up for separations, etc.

\g__color_alternative_model_prop
\prop_new:N \g__color_alternative_model_prop
\clist_map_inline:nn { cyan , magenta , yellow , black }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g__color_alternative_model_prop {#1} { cmyk }
\clist_map_inline:nn { red , green , blue }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g__color_alternative_model_prop {#1} { rgb }

(End definition for \g__color_alternative_model_prop.)

\g__color_alternative_values_prop
\prop_new:N \g__color_alternative_values_prop
\prop_gput:Nnn \g__color_alternative_values_prop { cyan } { 1 , 0 , 0 , 0 }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g__color_alternative_values_prop { magenta } { 0 , 1 , 0 , 0 }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g__color_alternative_values_prop { yellow } { 0 , 0 , 1 , 0 }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g__color_alternative_values_prop { black } { 0 , 0 , 0 , 1 }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g__color_alternative_values_prop { red } { 1 , 0 , 0 , 0 }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g__color_alternative_values_prop { green } { 0 , 1 , 0 , 0 }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g__color_alternative_values_prop { blue } { 0 , 0 , 1 , 0 }

(End definition for \g__color_alternative_values_prop.)

\color_model_new:nnn \__color_model_new:nnn
Set up a new model: in general this has to be handled by a family-dependent function.
To avoid some “interesting” questions with casing, we fold the case of the family name.
The key–value list should always be present, so we convert it up-front to a prop, then
deal with the detail on a per-family basis.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \color_model_new:nnn #1#2#3
\exp_args:Nee \__color_model_new:nnn
\tl_to_str:n {#1}
\str_foldcase:n {#2} {#3}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_model_new:nnn #1#2#3
\cs_if_exist:cTF { __color_parse_model_ #1 :w }
\msg_error:nnn { color } { model-already-defined } {#1}
\cs_if_exist:cTF { __color_model_ #2 :n }
\prop_set_from_keyval:Nn \l__color_internal_prop {#3}
\use:c { __color_model_ #2 :n } {#1}
\msg_error:nnn { color } { unknown-model-type } {#2}

(End definition for \color_model_new:nnn and \__color_model_new:nnn. This function is documented
on page 294.)

\__color_model_init:nnnn \__color_model_init:nnnx
A shared auxiliary to do the basics of setting up a new model: reserve a number, create
a white-equivalent, set up links to the backend.
Separations must have a “real” name, which is pretty easy to find.

We have two keys to find at this stage: the alternative space model and linked values.
As each alternative space leads to a different requirement for conversion, and as there are only a small number of choices, we manually split the data and then set up. Notice that mixing tints is really just the same as mixing gray. The white color is special, as it allows tints to be adjusted without an additional color space. To make sure the data is set for that at all group levels, we need to work on a per-level basis. Within the output, only the set-up needs the “real” name of the colorspace: we use a simple tracking number for general usage as this is a clear namespace without issues of escaping chars.

---

As each alternative space leads to a different requirement for conversion, and as there are only a small number of choices, we manually split the data and then set up. Notice that mixing tints is really just the same as mixing gray. The white color is special, as it allows tints to be adjusted without an additional color space. To make sure the data is set for that at all group levels, we need to work on a per-level basis. Within the output, only the set-up needs the “real” name of the colorspace: we use a simple tracking number for general usage as this is a clear namespace without issues of escaping chars.
Generic model conversion via an alternative intermediate.

Setting up for CIELAB needs a bit more work: there is the illuminant and the need for an appropriate object.

If a CIELAB space is being set up, we need the illuminant, then create the appropriate set up. At present, this doesn’t include the BlackPoint or Range data, but that may be added later. As CIELAB colors cannot be converted to anything else, we fallback to...
producing black in the gray colorspace: the user should set up a second model for colors set up this way.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_model_separation_CIELAB:nnnnnn #1#2#3#4#5#6#7
\tl_if_exist:cTF { c__color_model_whitepoint_CIELAB_ #1 _tl }
\{ \__color_backend_separation_init_CIELAB:nnnn #1#2#3 \}
\tl_const:cn { c__color_fallback_#2 _tl } { gray }
\cs_new:cpn { __color_convert_#2 _gray:w } #1 \tl_const:cn { c__color_stop_#2 _tl } { 1 }
\cs_new:cpn { __color_convert_gray_#2 :w } #1 \tl_const:cn { c__color_stop_#2 _tl } { 1 }
\}
\msg_error:nnn { color } { unknown-CIELAB-illuminant } {#1}
\}

(End definition for \__color_model_separation:n and others.)

We require a list of component names here: one might call them colorants, but it’s convenient to use \TeX names instead so we slightly adjust the terminology.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_model_devicen:n #1
\prop_get:NnNTF \l__color_internal_prop { names }
\l__color_internal_tl
\exp_args:NV \__color_model_devicen:nn
\l__color_internal_tl {#1}
\}
\msg_error:nnn { color } { DeviceN-inconsistent-alternative } {#1}
\}

All valid models will have an alternative listed, either hard-coded for the core device ones, or dynamically added for Separations, etc.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_model_devicen:nn #1#2
\prop_get:NnTF \g__color_alternative_model_prop {#1}
\l__color_internal_tl
\exp_args:NV \__color_model_devicen:nn
\l__color_internal_tl {#1}
\}
\msg_error:nnn { color } { DeviceN-requires-names } {#1}
\}

1337
We now complete the data we require by first finding out how many colorants there are, then moving on to begin constructing the function required to map to the alternative color space.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_model_devicen:nnn #1#2#3
\exp_args:Nx \__color_model_devicen:nnnn
\clist_count:n {#2} {#1} {#2} {#3}
\__color_model_init:nnnx {#4} {#1} { devicen }
\cs_if_exist_use:cF { __color_model_devicen_parse_ #1 :nn }
\__color_model_devicen_parse_generic:nn
\__color_model_devicen_init:nnn {#1} {#2} {#3}
\__color_model_devicen_convert:nnnx {#4} {#2} {#3}
\prg_replicate:nn { #1 - 1 } { ~ 1 }

At this stage, we have checked everything is in place, so we can set up the \TeX{} and backend data structures. As for separations, it's not really possible in general to have a fallback, so we simply provide “black” for each element.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_model_devicen:nnnn #1#2#3#4
\__color_model_init:nnnx {#4} {#1} { devicen }
\cs_if_exist_use:cF { __color_model_devicen_parse_ #1 :nn }
\__color_model_devicen_parse_generic:nn
\__color_model_devicen_init:nnn {#1} {#2} {#3}
\__color_model_devicen_convert:nnnx {#4} {#2} {#3}
\prg_replicate:nn { #1 - 1 } { - 1 }

For short lists of DeviceN colors, we can use hand-tuned parsing. This lines up with other models, where we allow for up to four components. For larger spaces, rather than limit artificially, we use a somewhat slow approach based on open-ended commas-lists.

\cs_new_protected:cpn { __color_model_devicen_parse_1:nn } #1#2
\cs_new:cpn { __color_parse_model_ #1 :w } ##1 , ##2 \__color_stop
\{ {#1} \{ \__color_parse_number:n {##1} \} \}
\cs_new_eq:cN { __color_parse_mix_ #1 :nw } \__color_parse_mix_gray:nw
\}
\cs_new_protected:cpn { __color_model_devicen_parse_2:nn } #1#2
\{
\cs_new:cpn { __color_parse_model_ #1 :w } ##1 , ##2 , ##3 \__color_stop
\{ {#1} \{ \__color_parse_number:n {##1} \__color_parse_number:n {##2} \} \}
\cs_new:cpn { __color_parse_mix_ #1 :nw }
##1##2 \__color_mark ##3 \__color_stop
\{
\fp_eval:n { ##2 * ##1 + ##4 * ( 1 - ##1 ) } \c_space_tl
\fp_eval:n { ##3 * ##1 + ##5 * ( 1 - ##1 ) }
\}
\cs_new_protected:cpn { __color_model_devicen_parse_3:nn } #1#2
\{
\cs_new:cpn { __color_parse_model_ #1 :w } ##1 , ##2 , ##3 , ##4 \__color_stop
\{ {#1} \{ \__color_parse_number:n {##1} \__color_parse_number:n {##2} \__color_parse_number:n {##3} \} \}
\cs_new_eq:cN { __color_parse_mix_ #1 :nw } \__color_parse_mix_rgb:nw
\}
\cs_new_protected:cpn { __color_model_devicen_parse_4:nn } #1#2
\{
\cs_new:cpn { __color_parse_model_ #1 :w } ##1 , ##2 , ##3 , ##4 , ##5 \__color_stop
\{ {#1} \{ \__color_parse_number:n {##1} \__color_parse_number:n {##2} \__color_parse_number:n {##3} \__color_parse_number:n {##4} \} \}
\cs_new_eq:cN { __color_parse_mix_ #1 :nw } \__color_parse_mix_cmyk:nw
\}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_model_devicen_parse_generic:nn #1#2
\{
\cs_new:cpn { __color_parse_model_ #1 :w } ##1 , ##2 \__color_stop
\{ {#1} \{ \__color_parse_number:n {##1} \__color_parse_number:n {##2} \} \}
\cs_new_eq:cN { __color_parse_mix_ #1 :nw } \__color_parse_mix_cm:nn
\}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_model_devicen_parse_general:nn #1#2
\{
\cs_new:cpn { __color_parse_model_ #1 :w } ##1 , ##2 \__color_stop
\{ {#1} \{ \__color_model_devicen_parse:nw {#2} ##1 , ##2 , \q_nil , \__color_stop \}
\}
\cs_new:cpx { __color_parse_mix_ #1 :nw }
##1 ##2 \__color_mark ##3 \__color_stop
\{
\exp_not:N \__color_model_devicen_mix:nw {#1}
To construct the tint transformation, we have to use PostScript. The aim is to have the final tint for each device colorant as

\[ 1 - \prod_{n} (1 - X_n D X_n) \]

where \( X \) is a DeviceN colorant and \( D \) is the amount of device colorant that the DeviceN colorant maps to. At the start of the process, the PostScript stack will contain the \( X_n \) values, whilst we have the \( D \) values on a per-DeviceN colorant basis. The more convenient approach for us is therefore to take each DeviceN colorant in turn and find the value \( 1 - X_n D X_n \), multiplying as we go, and finalise with the subtraction. That contrasts to colorspace: it splits the process up by process color, which works better when you have a fixed list of colorants. (colorspace only supports up to 4 DeviceN colors, and only cmyk as the alternative space.) To set this up, we first need to know the number of values in the target color space: this is easily handled as there are a very small range of possibilities. Once we have that information, it’s relatively easy to build the required PostScript using some generic code.
As we always need to split the alternative values into parts, we use a shared auxiliary and only use a minimal difference between code paths. Construction of the tint transformation is as far as possible done using loops, which means there are some inefficiencies for device colors in the DeviceN space: we roll the stack one-at-a-time even if there is a potential shortcut. However, that way there is nothing to special-case. Once this is sorted, we can write the tint transform object, which will remain as the last object until we sort out the final step: the colorant list.

```latex
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_model_devicen_init:nnnn #1#2#3#4
\tl_set:Nx \l__color_internal_tl
\prg_replicate:nn {#1} { 1.0 ~ }
\int_zero:N \l__color_internal_int
\clist_map_inline:nn {#4}
\prg_replicate:nn {#1} { neg ~ 1.0 ~ add ~ #1 ~ -1 ~ roll ~ #1 ~ 1 ~ roll }
\use:x
\__color_backend_devicen_init:nnn
\clist_map_function:nN {#4}
\__color_model_devicen_colorant:n
\str_case:nn {#3}
\prg_replicate:nn {#2} { - pop } - #1 - 1 - roll
\tl_set:Nx \l__color_internal_tl
\prg_replicate:nn {#1} { 1.0 ~ }
\int_zero:N \l__color_internal_int
\prop_get:NnN \g__color_alternative_values_prop {##1} \l__color_value_tl
\exp_after:wN \__color_model_devicen_transform:w
\l__color_value_tl , 0 , 0 , 0 , \a__color_stop {#1} {#2}
\tl_put_right:Nx \l__color_internal_tl
\prg_replicate:nn {#1} { neg ~ 1.0 ~ add ~ #1 ~ -1 ~ roll ~ #1 ~ 1 ~ roll }
\use:x
\__color_backend_devicen_init:nnn
\clist_map_function:nN {#4}
\__color_model_devicen_colorant:n
\str_case:nn {#3}
\prg_replicate:nn {#2} { - pop } - #1 - 1 - roll
\tl_set:Nx \l__color_internal_tl
\prg_replicate:nn {#1} { 1.0 ~ }
\int_zero:N \l__color_internal_int
\prop_get:NnN \g__color_alternative_values_prop {##1} \l__color_value_tl
\exp_after:wN \__color_model_devicen_transform:w
\l__color_value_tl , 0 , 0 , 0 , \a__color_stop {#1} {#2}
```

1341
Here we need to set up conversion from the DeviceN space to the alternative at the TeX level. This also means supplying methods for inter-converting to other parameter-based spaces. Essentially the approach is exactly the same as the PostScript, just expressed in TeX terms.
\__color_model_devicen_convert:nnnn {#1} \{ rgb \} { 3 } \{#2}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_model_devicen_convert:nnnn #1#2#3#4#5
{ \cs_new:cpn { __color_convert_ #2 _ #1 :w } ##1 \s__color_stop {#5}
  \cs_new:cpx { __color_convert_ #1 _ #2 :w } ##1 \s__color_stop
  \exp_not:c { __color_convert_devicen_ #2 : \prg_replicate:nn {#3} { n } w }
  \prg_replicate:nn {#3} { { 1 } } - \exp_not:N \s__color_mark
  \clist_map_function:nN {#4} \__color_model_devicen_convert:n
  \exp_not:N \s__color_stop
}
\cs_new:Npn \__color_model_devicen_convert:n #1
{ \exp_args:Ne \__color_model_devicen_convert_aux:n
  { \prop_item:Nn \g__color_alternative_values_prop {#1} }
}
\cs_new:Npn \__color_model_devicen_convert_aux:n #1
{ \__color_model_devicen_convert_aux:w #1 , , , , \s__color_stop }
\cs_new:Npn \__color_model_devicen_convert_aux:w #1 , #2 , #3 , #4 , #5 \s__color_stop
{ {#1}
  \tl_if_blank:nF {#2}
  { {#2}
    \tl_if_blank:nF {#3}
    { {#3}
      \tl_if_blank:nF {#4} { {#4} }
    }
  }
}
\cs_new:Npn \__color_convert_devicen_cmyk:nnnnw
#1#2#3#4#5 ~ #6 \s__color_mark #7#8 \s__color_stop
{ \__color_convert_devicen_cmyk:nnnnnnnnn {#5} {#1} {#2} {#3} {#4} #7
  #6 \s__color_mark #8 \s__color_stop }
\cs_new:Npn \__color_convert_devicen_cmyk:nnnnnnnnn #1#2#3#4#5#6#7#8#9
{ \use:e
  \exp_not:N \__color_convert_devicen_cmyk_aux:nnnnw
  { \fp_eval:n { #2 * (1 - (#1 * #6)) } }
  \fp_eval:n { #3 * (1 - (#1 * #7)) } }
  \fp_eval:n { #4 * (1 - (#1 * #8)) } }
  \fp_eval:n { #5 * (1 - (#1 * #9)) } }
}
\cs_new:Npn \__color_convert_devicen_cmyk_aux:nnnnw\#1\#2\#3\#4 \#5 \s__color_mark \#6 \s__color_stop
{
  \tl_if_blank:nTF {\#5}
  {
    \fp_eval:n { 1 - \#1 } -
    \fp_eval:n { 1 - \#2 } -
    \fp_eval:n { 1 - \#3 } -
    \fp_eval:n { 1 - \#4 }
  }
  {
    \__color_convert_devicen_cmyk:nnnnw {\#1} {\#2} {\#3} {\#4}
    \#5 \s__color_mark \#6 \s__color_stop
  }
}
\cs_new:Npn \__color_convert_devicen_gray:nw
\#1\#2 \#3 \s__color_mark \#4\#5 \s__color_stop
{
  \__color_convert_devicen_gray:nnn {\#2} {\#1} \#4
  \#3 \s__color_mark \#5 \s__color_stop
}
\cs_new:Npn \__color_convert_devicen_rgb:nnnw
\#1\#2\#3\#4 \#5 \s__color_mark \#6\#7 \s__color_stop
{
  \__color_convert_devicen_rgb:nnnnnnn {\#4} {\#1} {\#2} {\#3} \#6
  \#5 \s__color_mark \#7 \s__color_stop
}
\cs_new:Npn \__color_convert_devicen_rgb_aux:nnnw
\#1\#2\#3 \#4 \s__color_mark \#5 \s__color_stop

The signatures in the ICC file header indicating the underlying colorspace. We map it to three values: The number of components, the values corresponding to white, and the range.

```latex
\prop_const_from_keyval:Nn \c__color_icc_colorspace_signatures_prop
```

For an ICC profile, we need a file name and a number of components. The file name is processed here so the backend can treat it as a string.

```latex
\cs_new_protected:Npm \_\_\_color_model_iccbased:n \_\_\_color_model_iccbased:nn \_\_\_color_model_iccbased:nnn \_\_\_color_model_iccbased_aux:nnn
```

(End definition for \_\_\_color_model_devicen:n and others.)
Here, we can use the same internals as for DeviceN approach as we know the number of components. No conversion is possible, so there is no need to worry about that at all.

```latex
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_model_iccbased_aux:nnnnnn #1#2#3#4#5#6
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_model_iccbased_aux:nnnn #1#2#3#4#5#6
\__color_model_init:nnnn {#5} {#1} { iccbased } {#3}
\tl_const:cn { c__color_fallback_#5_tl } { gray }
\cs_new:cpn { __color_convert_#5_gray:w } {#1 \s__color_stop { 0 } }
\cs_new:cpn { __color_convert_gray_#5:w } {#1 \s__color_stop { #2 } }
\use:c { __color_model_devicen_parse_#1:nn } {#5} {#1}
\exp_args:Nx \__color_backend_iccbased_init:nnn
{ \file_full_name:n {#6} } {#1} {#4}
```

(End definition for \__color_model_iccbased:n and others.)

### 8.13 Applying profiles

With a limited range of outcomes, this is largely about getting data to the backend.

```latex
\cs_new_protected:Npn \color_profile_apply:nn \__color_profile_apply:nn \__color_profile_apply_gray:n \__color_profile_apply_rgb:n \__color_profile_apply_cmyk:n
\color_profile_apply:nn
```

```latex
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_profile_apply:nn
\exp_args:Ne \__color_profile_apply:nn
{ \file_full_name:n {#1} } {#2}
```

```latex
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_profile_apply_gray:n #1
\int_gincr:N \g__color_model_int
\__color_backend_iccbased_device:nnn {#1} { Gray } { 1 }
```

```latex
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_profile_apply_rgb:n #1
\int_gincr:N \g__color_model_int
\__color_backend_iccbased_device:nnn {#1} { RGB } { 3 }
```

```latex
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__color_profile_apply_cmyk:n #1
\int_gincr:N \g__color_model_int
\__color_backend_iccbased_device:nnn {#1} { CMYK } { 4 }
```

86.14 Diagnostics

Extract the information about a color and format for the user: the approach is similar to the keys module here.

\color\_show:n
\color\_log:n
\__color\_show:Nn
\__color\_show:n
\cs\_new\_protected:Npn \color\_show:n
\cs\_new\_protected:Npn \color\_log:n
\cs\_new\_protected:Npn \__color\_show:Nn \#1\#2
\cs\_new\_protected:Npn \__color\_show:n \#1
\msg\_new:nnnn { color } \texttt{CIELAB-requires-illuminant}
\msg\_new:nnnn { color } \texttt{conversion-not-available}
\msg\_new:nnnn { color } \texttt{DeviceN-inconsistent-alternative}

(End definition for \color\_profile\_apply:nn and others. This function is documented on page 294.)

86.15 Messages
DeviceN-color-spaces-require-a-single-alternative-space.  
\{  
  LaTeX has been asked to create a DeviceN-color-space-'#1', but the constituent colors do not have a common alternative color.  
\}
\msg_new:nnnn { color } { DeviceN-no-alternative }  
\{  
  LaTeX has been asked to create a DeviceN-color-space-'#1', but the constituent colors do not all have a device-based alternative.  
\}
\msg_new:nnnn { color } { DeviceN-requires-names }  
\{  
  LaTeX has been asked to create a DeviceN-color-space-'#1'-require-a-list-of-names.  
\}
\{  
  LaTeX has been asked to create a DeviceN-color-space,'#1'-require-a-list-of-names.  
\}
\msg_new:nnnn { color } { ICC-Device-unknown }  
\{  
  Unknown device color space '#1'.  
\}
\msg_new:nnnn { color } { ICCBased-unsupported-colorspace }  
\{  
  ICCBased-color-space-'#1'-uses-an-unsupported-data-color-space.  
\}
\{  
  ICCBased-color-space-'#1'-uses-an-unsupported-data-color-space.  
\}
\{  
  ICCBased-color-space-'#1'-uses-an-unsupported-data-color-space.  
\}
\msg_new:nnnn { color } { ICCBased-requires-file }  
\{  
  ICCBased-color-space-'#1'-require-an-file.  
\}
\{  
  ICCBased-color-space-'#1'-require-an-file.  
\}
\{  
  ICCBased-color-space-'#1'-require-an-file.  
\}
\msg_new:nnnn { color } { model-already-defined }  
\{  
  Color-model-'#1'-already-defined.  
\}
\{  
  Color-model-'#1'-already-defined.  
\}
\{  
  Color-model-'#1'-already-defined.  
\}
\msg_new:nnnn { color } { separation-alternative-model }  
\{  
  Separation-color-space-'#1'-require-an-alternative-model.  
\}
\{  
  Separation-color-space-'#1'-require-an-alternative-model.  
\}
\{  
  Separation-color-space-'#1'-require-an-alternative-model.  
\}
but-no-\\
% alternative-model=-<model>
\\
\% key-was-given-with-the-correct-information.
}
\msg_new:nnnn { color } { separation-alternative-values }
{ Separation-color-space-'#1'-require-values-for-the-alternative-space. }
{ LaTeX-has-been-asked-to-create-a-separation-color-space,-
  but-no-\\
% alternative-values=-<model>
\\
% key-was-given-with-the-correct-information.
}
\msg_new:nnnn { color } { separation-requires-name }
{ Separation-color-space-'#1'-require-a-formal-name. }
{ LaTeX-has-been-asked-to-create-a-separation-color-space,-
  but-no-\\
% name=-<formal-name>
\\
% key-was-given-with-the-correct-information.
}
\msg_new:nnnn { color } { unknown-color }
{ Unknown-color-'#1'. }
{ LaTeX-has-been-asked-to-use-a-color-named-'#1',-
  but-this-has-never-been-defined. }
\msg_new:nnnn { color } { unknown-alternative-model }
{ Separation-color-space-'#1'-require-a-valid-alternative-space. }
{ LaTeX-has-been-asked-to-create-a-separation-color-space,-
  but-the-model-given-as\\
% alternative-model=-<model>
\\
% is-unknown. }
\msg_new:nnnn { color } { unknown-export-format }
{ Unknown-export-format-'#1'. }
{ LaTeX-has-been-asked-to-export-a-color-in-format-'#1',-
  but-this-has-never-been-defined. }
\msg_new:nnnn { color } { unknown-CIELAB-illuminant }
{ Unknown-illuminant-model-'#1'. }
{ LaTeX-has-been-asked-to-use-create-a-color-space-using-CIELAB-
  illuminant-'#1',-but-this-does-not-exist. }
\msg_new:nnnn { color } { unknown-model }
{ Unknown-color-model-'#1'. }
{ LaTeX-has-been-asked-to-use-a-color-model-called-'#1',-
but this model is not set up.

\msg_new:nnn { color } { unknown-model-type }
{ Unknown-color-model-type-'#1'. }
{
  LaTeX has been asked to create a new color model called-'#1',
  but this type of model was never set up.
}
\prop_gput:Nnn \g_msg_module_name_prop { color } { LaTeX3 }
\prop_gput:Nnn \g_msg_module_type_prop { color } { }
\msg_new:nnn { color } { show }
{
  The-color-#1-
  \tl_if_empty:nTF {#2}
  { is undefined. }
  { has-the-properties: #2 }
}
(/package)
Chapter 87

l3pdf implementation

\s__pdf_stop Internal scan marks.
\scan_new:N \s__pdf_stop
(End definition for \s__pdf_stop.)

\g__pdf_init_bool A flag so we have some chance of avoiding setting things we are not allowed to. As we
are potentially early in the format, we have to work a bit harder than ideal.
\bool_new:N \g__pdf_init_bool
\bool_lazy_and:nnT
{ \str_if_eq_p:Vn \fmtname { LaTeX2e } }
{ \tl_if_exist_p:N @expl@finalise@setup@@ }
{ \tl_gput_right:Nn \@expl@finalise@setup@@
  \tl_gput_right:Nn \@kernel@after@begindocument
  \bool_gset_true:N \g__pdf_init_bool }
\tl_gput_right:Nn \@expl@finalise@setup@@
\tl_gput_right:Nn \@kernel@after@begindocument
\bool_gset_true:N \g__pdf_init_bool
(End definition for \g__pdf_init_bool.)

87.1 Compression

\pdf_uncompress: Simple to do.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \pdf_uncompress:
{ \bool_if:NF \g__pdf_init_bool
  { \__pdf_backend_compresslevel:n { 0 }
    \__pdf_backend_compress_objects:n { \c_false_bool } }
  }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \pdf_uncompress:
\cs_new_protected:Npn \pdf_uncompress:
{ \bool_if:NF \g__pdf_init_bool
  { \__pdf_backend_compresslevel:n { 0 }
    \__pdf_backend_compress_objects:n { \c_false_bool } }
  }
(End definition for \pdf_uncompress:. This function is documented on page 297.)
87.2 Objects

Simple to do.

87.3 Version

To compare version, we need to split the given value then deal with both major and minor version.

End definition for \pdf_object_new:nn and others. These functions are documented on page 295.

(End definition for \pdf_pageobject_ref:n. This function is documented on page 296.)
\bool_lazy_and_p:nn
\{ \int_compare_p:nNn __pdf_backend_version_major: = {#1} \}
\{ \int_compare_p:nNn __pdf_backend_version_minor: < {#2} \}
\}
\{ \prg_return_true: \}
\{ \prg_return_false: \}
\}
\cs_new:cpn \{ __pdf_version_compare_>:w \} #1 . #2 . #3 \s__pdf_stop
\{
\bool_lazy_or:nnTF
\{ \int_compare_p:nNn __pdf_backend_version_major: > {#1} \}
\{
\bool_lazy_and_p:nn
\{ \int_compare_p:nNn __pdf_backend_version_major: = {#1} \}
\{ \int_compare_p:nNn __pdf_backend_version_minor: > {#2} \}
\}
\{ \prg_return_true: \}
\{ \prg_return_false: \}
\}
\pdf_version: \pdf_version_major: \pdf_version_minor:
\cs_new:Npn \pdf_version: \pdf_version_major: \pdf_version_minor:
\{ __pdf_backend_version_major: . __pdf_backend_version_minor: \}
\cs_new:Npn \pdf_version_major: \{ __pdf_backend_version_major: \}
\cs_new:Npn \pdf_version_minor: \{ __pdf_backend_version_minor: \}
\pdf_version_gset:n
\pdf_version_min_gset:n
\__pdf_version_gset:w
\cs_new_protected:Npn \pdf_version_gset:n #1
\{ __pdf_version_gset:w #1 . . \s__pdf_stop \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \pdf_version_min_gset:n #1
\{ \pdf_version_compare:NnT < {#1} \}
\{ __pdf_version_gset:w #1 . . \s__pdf_stop \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__pdf_version_gset:w #1 . #2 . #3\s__pdf_stop
\{ \bool_if:NF \g__pdf_init_bool
\{ \__pdf_backend_version_major_gset:n {#1} \}
\__pdf_backend_version_minor_gset:n {#2} \}
\}

(End definition for \pdf_version_compare:Nn and others. This function is documented on page ??.)

Split the version and set.
\pdf_version_gset:n \pdf_version_min_gset:n \__pdf_version_gset:w
\cs_new_protected:Npm \pdf_version_gset:n #1
\{ \__pdf_version_gset:w #1 . . \s__pdf_stop \}
\cs_new_protected:Npm \pdf_version_min_gset:n #1
\{ \pdf_version_compare:NnT < {#1} \}
\{ __pdf_version_gset:w #1 . . \s__pdf_stop \}
\cs_new_protected:Npm \__pdf_version_gset:w #1 . #2 . #3\s__pdf_stop
\{ \bool_if:NF \g__pdf_init_bool
\{ \__pdf_backend_version_major_gset:n {#1} \}
\__pdf_backend_version_minor_gset:n {#2} \}
\}

(End definition for \pdf_version_gset:n, \pdf_version_min_gset:n, and \__pdf_version_gset:w. These functions are documented on page 296.)

Wrappers.
\pdf_version: \pdf_version_major: \pdf_version_minor:
\cs_new:Npm \pdf_version:
\{ \__pdf_backend_version_major: . \__pdf_backend_version_minor: \}
\cs_new:Npm \pdf_version_major: \{ \__pdf_backend_version_major: \}
\cs_new:Npm \pdf_version_minor: \{ \__pdf_backend_version_minor: \}

(End definition for \pdf_version:, \pdf_version_major:, and \pdf_version_minor:. These functions are documented on page 296.)
87.4 Destinations

\pdf_destination:nn

\cs_new_protected:Npn \pdf_destination:nn \#1\#2
\{ \__pdf_backend_destination:nn \{#1\} \{#2\} \}

(End definition for \pdf_destination:nn. This function is documented on page 297.)

\pdf_destination:nnnn

\cs_new_protected:Npn \pdf_destination:nnnn \#1\#2\#3\#4
\{ \hbox_to_zero:n \{ \__pdf_backend_destination:nnnn \{#1\} \{#2\} \{#3\} \{#4\} \}
\}

(End definition for \pdf_destination:nnnn. This function is documented on page 298.)
Chapter 88

l3candidates Implementation

88.1 Additions to l3box

88.1.1 Viewing part of a box

A wrapper around the driver-dependent code.

\box_clip:N
\box_clip:c
\box_gclip:N
\box_gclip:c

A wrapper around the driver-dependent code.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \box_clip:N #1
{ \hbox_set:Nn #1 { \__box_backend_clip:N #1 } }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \box_clip:N { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \box_gclip:N #1
{ \hbox_gset:Nn #1 { \__box_backend_clip:N #1 } }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \box_gclip:N { c }

(End definition for \box_clip:N and \box_gclip:N. These functions are documented on page 301.)

\box_set_trim:Nnnnn
\box_set_trim:cnnnn
\box_gset_trim:Nnnnn
\box_gset_trim:cnnnn
\__box_set_trim:NnnnnN

Trimming from the left- and right-hand edges of the box is easy: kern the appropriate parts off each side.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \box_set_trim:Nnnnn #1#2#3#4#5
{ \__box_set_trim:NnnnnN #1 {#2} {#3} {#4} {#5} \box_set_eq:NN }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \box_set_trim:Nnnnn { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \box_gset_trim:Nnnnn #1#2#3#4#5
{ \__box_set_trim:NnnnnN #1 {#2} {#3} {#4} {#5} \box_gset_eq:NN }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \box_gset_trim:Nnnnn { c }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__box_set_trim:NnnnnN #1#2#3#4#5
{ \hbox_set:Nn \l__box_internal_box
{ \__kernel_kern:n { -#2 }
\box_use:N #1
\__kernel_kern:n { -#4 }
}
\box_move_down:nn }

For the height and depth, there is a need to watch the baseline is respected. Material always has to stay on the correct side, so trimming has to check that there is enough material to trim. First, the bottom edge. If there is enough depth, simply set the depth, or if not move down so the result is zero depth. \box_move_down:nn is used in both
cases so the resulting box always contains a \texttt{lower} primitive. The internal box is used here as it allows safe use of \texttt{\box_set_dp:Nn}.

\begin{verbatim}
\dim_compare:nNnTF { \box_dp:N #1 } > {#3}
{ \hbox_set:Nn \l__box_internal_box
  \box_move_down:nn \c_zero_dim
  \box_use_drop:N \l__box_internal_box
}
\box_set_dp:Nn \l__box_internal_box { \box_dp:N #1 - (#3) }
\end{verbatim}

Same thing, this time from the top of the box.

\begin{verbatim}
\dim_compare:nNnTF { \box_ht:N \l__box_internal_box } > {#5}
{ \hbox_set:Nn \l__box_internal_box
  \box_move_up:nn \c_zero_dim
  \box_use_drop:N \l__box_internal_box
}
\box_set_ht:Nn \l__box_internal_box { \box_ht:N \l__box_internal_box - (#5) }
\end{verbatim}

The same general logic as for the trim operation, but with absolute dimensions. As a result, there are some things to watch out for in the vertical direction.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \box_set_viewport:Nnnnn \box_set_viewport:cnmnn \box_gset_viewport:Nnnnn \box_gset_viewport:cnmnn \__box_viewport:Nnnnn
The same general logic as for the trim operation, but with absolute dimensions. As a result, there are some things to watch out for in the vertical direction.

\end{verbatim}
88.2 Additions to \texttt{l3flag}

\begin{quote}
\texttt{@@=flag}
\end{quote}
It might be faster to just call the “trap” function in all cases but conceptually the function name suggests we should only run it if the flag is zero in case the “trap” made customizable in the future.

\flag_raise_if_clear:n

\cs_new:Npn \flag_raise_if_clear:n #1
\{
  \if_cs_exist:w flag~#1~0 \cs_end:
  \else:
    \cs:w flag~#1 \cs_end: 0 ;
  \fi:
\}

(End definition for \flag_raise_if_clear:n. This function is documented on page 302.)

88.3 Additions to \l3msg

A short-hand used for \int_show:n and similar functions that passes to \tl_show:n the result of applying #1 (a function such as \int_eval:n) to the expression #2. The use of f-expansion ensures that #1 is expanded in the scope in which the show command is called, rather than in the group created by \iow_wrap:nnN. This is only important for expressions involving the \currentgrouplevel or \currentgrouptype. On the other hand we want the expression to be converted to a string with the usual escape character, hence within the wrapping code.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \msg_show_eval:Nn #1#2
\{ \exp_args:Nf \__msg_show_eval:nnN { #1 {#2} } {#2} \tl_show:n \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \msg_log_eval:Nn #1#2
\{ \exp_args:Nf \__msg_show_eval:nnN { #1 {#2} } {#2} \tl_log:n \}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__msg_show_eval:nnN #1#2#3 { #3 { #2 = #1 } }

(End definition for \msg_show_eval:Nn, \msg_log_eval:Nn, and \__msg_show_eval:nnN. These functions are documented on page 303.)

Each item in the variable is formatted using one of the following functions. We cannot use \ and so on because these short-hands cannot be used inside the arguments of messages, only when defining the messages.

\cs_new:Npx \msg_show_item:n #1
\cs_new:Npx \msg_show_item_unbraced:n #1
\cs_new:Npx \msg_show_item:nn #1#2
\cs_new:Npx \msg_show_item_unbraced:nn #1#2

\cs_new:Npx \msg_show_item:n #1
\cs_new:Npx \msg_show_item_unbraced:n #1
\cs_new:Npx \msg_show_item:nn #1#2
\cs_new:Npx \msg_show_item_unbraced:nn #1#2

1358
88.4 Additions to \texttt{l3prg}

Set to false or true locally or globally.

\begin{verbatim}
\bool_set_inverse:N \bool_set_inverse:c \bool_gset_inverse:N \bool_gset_inverse:c
\end{verbatim}

For boolean cases the overall idea is the same as for \texttt{\tl_case:nnTF} as described in \texttt{l3tl}.

\begin{verbatim}
\bool_case_true:nTF \bool_case_true:nT #1#2 \bool_case_true:nF #1
\bool_case_false:nTF \bool_case_false:nT #1#2 \bool_case_false:nF #1
\__bool_case:NnTF \__bool_case_true:w \__bool_case_false:w \__bool_case_end:nw
\end{verbatim}
88.5 Additions to `l3prop`

`\_prop_use_i_delimit_by_s_stop:nw` Functions to gobble up to a scan mark.

`\prop_rand_key_value:N` `\prop_rand_key_value:c` `\_prop_rand_item:w`

Contrarily to `clist`, `seq` and `tl`, there is no function to get an item of a `prop` given an integer between 1 and the number of items, so we write the appropriate code. There is no bounds checking because `\int_rand:nn` is always within bounds. The initial `\int_-value:w` is stopped by the first `\s__prop` in `#1`.

`\cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_rand_key_value:N { c }`

`\_prop_rand_item:w` `\prop_rand_key_value:N`

(End definition for `\prop_rand_key_value:N` and `\_prop_rand_item:w`. This function is documented on page 304.)

88.6 Additions to `l3seq`

The idea is to first expand both sequences, adding the usual `{ ? \prg_break: } { }` to the end of each one. This is most conveniently done in two steps using an auxiliary function. The mapping then throws away the first tokens of `#2` and `#5`, which for items in both sequences are `\s__seq \s__seq_item:n`. The function to be mapped are then be applied to the two entries. When the code hits the end of one of the sequences, the break material stops the entire loop and tidy up. This avoids needing to find the count of the two sequences, or worrying about which is longer.
\cs_new:Npn \seq_mapthread_function:NNN \#1\#2\#3
{ \exp_after:wN \__seq_mapthread_function:wNN \s__seq_stop \#1 \#2 \#3 }
\cs_new:Npn \__seq_mapthread_function:wNN \s__seq \#1 \s__seq_stop \#2 \#3
{ \exp_after:wN \__seq_mapthread_function:wNw \s__seq \#2 \s__seq_stop \#3 \#1 \{ \prg_break: \} \{} \prg_break_point:
\cs_new:Npn \__seq_mapthread_function:wNw \s__seq \#1 \s__seq_stop \#2
{ \__seq_mapthread_function:Nnnwnn \#2 \#1 \{ \prg_break: \} \{} \s__seq_stop }
\cs_new:Npn \__seq_mapthread_function:Nnnwnn \#1 \#2 \#3 \#4 \s__seq_stop \#5 \#6
{ \use_none:n \#2 \use_none:n \#5 \#1 \{\#3 \} \{\#6\} \__seq_mapthread_function:Nnnwnn \#1 \#4 \s__seq_stop }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_mapthread_function:NNN { Nc , c , cc }

(End definition for \seq_mapthread_function:NNN and others. This function is documented on page 305.)

\seq_set_filter:NNn \seq_gset_filter:NNn \__seq_set_filter:NNNn
Similar to \seq_map_inline:Nn, without a \prg_break_point: because the user’s code is performed within the evaluation of a boolean expression, and skipping out of that would break horribly. The \__seq_wrap_item:n function inserts the relevant \__seq_item:n without expansion in the input stream, hence in the \texttt{x}-expanding assignment.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \seq_set_filter:NNn
{ \__seq_set_filter:NNNn \__kernel_tl_set:Nx }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \seq_gset_filter:NNn
{ \__seq_set_filter:NNNn \__kernel_tl_gset:Nx }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__seq_set_filter:NNNn \#1 \#2 \#3 \#4
{ \__seq_push_item_def:n \{ \bool_if:nN \{\#4\} \{ \__seq_wrap_item:n \{\#1\} \} \#1 \#2 \{ \#3 \} \__seq_pop_item_def:
\__seq_pop_item_def:
}

(End definition for \seq_set_filter:NNn, \seq_gset_filter:NNn, and \__seq_set_filter:NNNn. These functions are documented on page 305.)

\seq_set_from_inline_x:Nnn \seq_gset_from_inline_x:Nnn \__seq_set_from_inline_x:NNnn
Set \__seq_item:n then map it using the loop code.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \seq_set_from_inline_x:Nnn
{ \__seq_set_from_inline_x:NNnn \__kernel_tl_set:Nx }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \seq_gset_from_inline_x:Nnn
{ \__seq_set_from_inline_x:NNnn \__kernel_tl_gset:Nx }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__seq_set_from_inline_x:NNnn \#1 \#2 \#3 \#4
{ \__seq_push_item_def:n \{ \exp_not:N \__seq_item:n \{\#4\} \} \#1 \#2 \{ \#3 \} \__seq_pop_item_def:
\__seq_pop_item_def:
}
\seq_set_from_inline_x:Nnn, \seq_gset_from_inline_x:Nnn, and \__seq_set_from_inline_x:NNnn. These functions are documented on page 305.

\seq_set_from_function:NnN
\seq_gset_from_function:NnN

Reuse \seq_set_from_inline_x:Nnn.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \seq_set_from_function:NnN #1#2#3
\seq_gset_from_function:NnN #1#2#3

(End definition for \seq_set_from_function:Nn and \seq_gset_from_function:Nn. These functions
are documented on page 305.)
\__seq_int_eval:w
Useful to more quickly go through items.
\cs_new_eq:NN \__seq_int_eval:w \tex_numexpr:D
(End definition for \__seq_int_eval:w.)

\seq_set_item:Nnn
\seq_set_item:cnn
The conditionals are distinguished from the Nnn versions by the last argument \use_ii:nn vs \use_i:nn.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \seq_set_item:Nnn #1#2#3
\seq_gset_item:Nnn #1#2#3
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_set_item:Nnn { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_gset_item:Nnn { c }
\prg_new_protected_conditional:Npnn \seq_set_item:Nnn #1#2#3 { TF , T , F }
\prg_new_protected_conditional:Npnn \seq_gset_item:Nnn #1#2#3 { TF , T , F }
\prg_generate_conditional_variant:Nnn \seq_set_item:Nnn { c } { TF , T , F }
\prg_generate_conditional_variant:Nnn \seq_gset_item:Nnn { c } { TF , T , F }

Save the item to be stored and evaluate the position and the sequence length only once. Then
depending on the sign of the position, check that it is not bigger than the length
(in absolute value) nor zero.
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__seq_set_item:NnnNN #1#2#3
\__seq_set_item:nnNNNN #1#2 #3
\__seq_set_item:nn:#3 #1 #2 #3
\__seq_set_item:nn:NNNN #1 #2 #3 #1
\__seq_set_item_false:nnNNNN #1 #2
\__seq_set_item_end:w

1362
If the position is not ok, \texttt{\_\_seq_set_item_false:nnNNNN} calls an error or returns \texttt{false} (depending on the \texttt{\use_i:nn} vs \texttt{\use_ii:nn} argument mentioned above).

```latex
\begin{verbatim}
cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_seq_set_item_false:nnNNNN #1#2#3#4#5#6
{ #6
 \msg_error:nxxx { seq } { item-too-large }
 \{ \token_to_str:N #3 \} {#2} {#1}
 \}
 \prg_return_false: }
\end{verbatim}
```

If the position is ok, \texttt{\_\_seq_set_item:nNnnNNNN} makes the assignment and returns \texttt{true} (in the case of conditionnals). Here \#1 is an integer expression (position minus one), it needs to be evaluated. The sequence \#5 starts with \texttt{\s__seq} (even if empty), which stops the integer expression and is absorbed by it. The \texttt{\if_meaning:w} test is slightly faster than an integer test (but only works when testing against zero, hence the offset we chose in the position). When we are done skipping items, insert the saved item \texttt{l__seq_internal_a_tl}. For put functions the last argument of \texttt{\_\_seq_set_item_end:w} is \texttt{\use_none:nn} and it absorbs the item \#2 that we are removing: this is only useful for the pop functions.

```latex
\begin{verbatim}
cs_new_protected:Npn \_\_seq_set_item:nNnnNNNN #1#2#3#4#5#6#7#8
{ #7 #5
 \s__seq
 \exp_after:wN \_\_seq_set_item:wn
 \int_value:w \_\_seq_int_eval:w #1 #5 \s__seq_stop #6
 }
 \prg_return_true: }
\end{verbatim}
```

```latex
\begin{verbatim}
cs_new:Npn \_\_seq_set_item:wn #1 \_\_seq_item:n #2
{ \if_meaning:w 0 #1 \_\_seq_set_item_end:w \fi:
 \exp_not:n \{ \_\_seq_item:n {#2} \}
 \exp_after:wN \_\_seq_set_item:wn
 \int_value:w \_\_seq_int_eval:w #1 - 1 \s__seq
 }
cs_new:Npn \_\_seq_set_item_end:w #1 \exp_not:n #2 #3 \s__seq #4 \s__seq_stop #5
{ #1
 \exp_not:o \l__seq_internal_a_tl
 \exp_not:n {#4}
\end{verbatim}
```
The \texttt{NnN} versions simply call the conditionals, for which we will rely on the internals of \texttt{\seq_set_item:Nnn}.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \seq_pop_item:NnN \#1 \#2 \#3
  { \seq_pop_item:NnNTF \#1 \{\#2\} \#3 \{ \} \{ \} }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \seq_gpop_item:NnN \#1 \#2 \#3
  { \seq_gpop_item:NnNTF \#1 \{\#2\} \#3 \{ \} \{ \} }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_pop_item:NnN { c }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_gpop_item:NnN { c }
\prg_new_protected_conditional:Npnn \seq_pop_item:NnN \#1 \#2 \#3
  { \__seq_pop_item:NnNN \#1 \{\#2\} \#3 \__kernel_tl_set:Nx }
\prg_new_protected_conditional:Npnn \seq_gpop_item:NnN \#1 \#2 \#3
  { \__seq_pop_item:NnNN \#1 \{\#2\} \#3 \__kernel_tl_gset:Nx }
\prg_generate_conditional_variant:Nnn \seq_pop_item:NnN { c } { TF, T, F }
\prg_generate_conditional_variant:Nnn \seq_gpop_item:NnN { c } { TF, T, F }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__seq_pop_item:NnNN \#1 \#2 \#3 \#4
  { \tl_clear:N \l__seq_internal_a_tl \tl_set:Nn \l__seq_internal_b_tl { \__kernel_tl_set:Nx \#3 } \exp_args:Nff \__seq_set_item:nnNNNN \{ \int_eval:n {\#2} \} \seq_count:N \#1 \#1 \__seq_pop_item_aux:w \#4 \__seq_pop_item:nn }
\cs_new:Npn \__seq_pop_item_aux:w \__seq_item:n \#1
  { \if_false: \fi: \l__seq_internal_b_tl { \if_false: \fi: \exp_not:n \{ \#1 \} } }
\cs_new:Npn \__seq_pop_item_aux:w \__seq_item:n \#1
  { \if_false: \fi: \l__seq_internal_b_tl \exp_not:n \{ \#1 \} }{1364}
\end{verbatim}

Save in \texttt{\_\_seq_internal_b_tl} the token list variable \#3 in which we will store the item. The \texttt{\_\_seq_set_item:nNnNNN} auxiliary eventually inserts \texttt{\_\_seq_internal_a_tl} in place of the item found in the sequence, so we empty that. Instead of the last argument \texttt{\use_i:n} or \texttt{\use_ii:n} used for put functions, we introduce \texttt{\_\_seq_pop_item:nn}, which stores \texttt{\q_no_value} before calling its second argument (\texttt{\prg_return_true:/false:}) to end the conditional. The item found is passed to \texttt{\_\_seq_pop_item_aux:w}, which interrupts the \texttt{x}-expanding sequence assignment and stores the item using the assignment function in \texttt{\_\_seq_internal_b_tl}.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__seq_pop_item:nn \#1 \#2
  { \tl_clear:N \l__seq_internal_a_tl \tl_set:Nn \l__seq_internal_b_tl { \__kernel_tl_set:Nx \#3 } \exp_args:Nff \__seq_set_item:nnNNNN \{ \int_eval:n {\#2} \} \seq_count:N \#1 \#1 \__seq_pop_item_aux:w \#4 \__seq_pop_item:nn }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__seq_pop_item_aux:w \__seq_item:n \#1
  { \if_false: \fi: \l__seq_internal_b_tl { \if_false: \fi: \exp_not:n \{ \#1 \} } \#1 \__seq_pop_item_aux:w \__seq_item:n \#1
  \if_false: \fi: \l__seq_internal_b_tl \exp_not:n \{ \#1 \} }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\seq_set_item:NnnTF} and others. These functions are documented on page \texttt{306}.)

1364
88.7 Additions to l3sys

Various different engines, various different ways to extract the data!

\c_sys_engine_version_str

\str_const:Nx \c_sys_engine_version_str
{ \str_case:on \c_sys_engine_str
{ { pdfTeX }
  { \fp_eval:n { round(\int_use:N \tex_pdfTeXversion:D / 100 , 2) } }
  \tex_pdfTeXrevision:D
 }
{ ptex }
{ \cs_if_exist:NT \tex_ptexversion:D
  { p
    \int_use:N \tex_ptexversion:D
    .
    \int_use:N \tex_ptexminorversion:D
    \tex_ptexrevision:D
    -
    \int_use:N \tex_epTeXversion:D
  }
 }
{ luatex }
{ \fp_eval:n { round(\int_use:N \tex_luatexversion:D / 100 , 2) } }
\tex_luatexrevision:D
 }
{ uptex }
{ \cs_if_exist:NT \tex_ptexversion:D
  { p
    \int_use:N \tex_ptexversion:D
    .
    \int_use:N \tex_ptexminorversion:D
    \tex_ptexrevision:D
    -
    \int_use:N \tex_uptexversion:D
    \tex_uptexrevision:D
    -
    \int_use:N \tex_epTeXversion:D
  }
 }
{ xetex }
{ \int_use:N \tex_XeTeXversion:D
1365
88.8 Additions to l3file

Actually much easier than either the standard open or input versions! When calling \_kernel_ior_open:Nn the file the pipe is added to signal a shell command, but the quotes are not added yet—they are added later by \_kernel_file_name_quote:n.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \ior_shell_open:Nn #1#2
\{ \sys_if_shell:TF
\{ \exp_args:No \_ior_shell_open:nN { \tl_to_str:n {#2} } #1 \}
\{ \msg_error:nn { ior } { pipe-failed } \}
\}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_ior_shell_open:nN #1#2
\{ \tl_if_in:nnTF {#1} { " }
\{ \msg_error:nmx
\{ ior \} { quote-in-shell } {#1}
\}
\{ \_kernel_ior_open:Nn #2 { |#1 } \}
\msg_new:nnnn { ior } { pipe-failed }
\{ Cannot-run-piped-system-commands. \}
\{ LaTeX-tried-to-call-a-system-process-but-this-was-not-possible.\ Try-the-"--shell-escape"-(or-"--enable-pipes")-option. \}

(End definition for \ior_shell_open:Nn and \_ior_shell_open:nN. This function is documented on page 302.)

88.9 Additions to l3tl

88.9.1 Building a token list

\exp_end: ... \exp_end: \_tl_build_last:Nnn \assignment \next_tl
\{(left)\} \(right)\)

where \(right\) is not braced. The “data” it represents is \(left\) followed by the “data” of \(next\tl\) followed by \(right\). The \(next\tl\) is a token list variable whose name is that of \tl followed by \(^\prime\). There are between 0 and 4 \exp_end: to keep track of when \tl
First construct the \langle next tl \rangle: using a prime here conflicts with the usual expl3 convention but we need a name that can be derived from #1 without any external data such as a counter. Empty that \langle next tl \rangle and setup the structure. The local and global versions only differ by a single function \cs_(g)set_nopar:Npx used for all assignments: this is important because only that function is stored in the \langle tl var \rangle and \langle next tl \rangle for subsequent assignments. In principle \__tl_build_begin:NNN could use \tl_(g)clear_new:N to empty #1 and make sure it is defined, but logging the definition does not seem useful so we just do #3 #1 {} to clear it locally or globally as appropriate.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \tl_build_begin:N #1
{ \__tl_build_begin:NN \cs_set_nopar:Npx #1 }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \tl_build_gbegin:N #1
{ \__tl_build_begin:NN \cs_gset_nopar:Npx #1 }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__tl_build_begin:NN #1#2
{ \exp_args:Nc \__tl_build_begin:NNN { \cs_to_str:N #2 ' } #2 #1 }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__tl_build_begin:NNN #1#2#3
{ #3 #1 { } #3 #2
\exp_not:n { \exp_end: \exp_end: \exp_end: \exp_end: }
\exp_not:n { \__tl_build_last:NNn #3 #1 { } }
}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \tl_build_begin:N and others. These functions are documented on page 307.)

The begin and gbegin functions already clear enough to make the token list variable effectively empty. Eventually the begin and gbegin functions should check that #1' is empty or undefined, while the clear and gclear functions ought to empty #1', #1'', and so on, similar to \tl_build_end:N. This only affects memory usage.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_eq:NN \tl_build_clear:N \tl_build_begin:N
\cs_new_eq:NN \tl_build_gclear:N \tl_build_gbegin:N
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \tl_build_clear:N and \tl_build_gclear:N. These functions are documented on page 307.)

Similar to \tl_put_right:Nn, but apply \exp:w to #1. Most of the time this just removes one \exp_end:. When there are none left, \__tl_build_last:NNn is expanded instead. It resets the definition of the \langle tl var \rangle by ending the \exp_not:n and the definition early. Then it makes sure the \langle next tl \rangle (its argument #1) is set-up and starts a new definition. Then \__tl_build_put:nn and \__tl_build_put:nn place the \langle left \rangle part of the original \langle tl var \rangle as appropriate for the definition of the \langle next tl \rangle (the \langle right \rangle part is left in the right place without ever becoming a macro argument). We use \exp_after:wN rather than some \exp_args:N to avoid reading arguments that are likely very long token lists. We use \cs_(g)set_nopar:Npx rather than \tl_(g)set:Nn partly for the same reason and partly because the assignments are interrupted by brace tricks, which implies that the assignment does not simply set the token list to an x-expansion of the second argument.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \tl_build_put_right:Nn #1#2
{ \cs_set_nopar:Npx #1 #2 }
\end{verbatim}

1367
See `\tl_build_put_left:Nn` for all the machinery. We could easily provide `\tl_build_put_left_right:Nnn`, by just add the ⟨right⟩ material after the ⟨left⟩ in the x-expanding assignment.
The idea is to expand the \( \langle \text{tl var} \rangle \) then the \( \langle \text{next tl} \rangle \) and so on, all within an \texttt{x}-expanding assignment, and wrap as appropriate in \texttt{\exp_not:n}. The various \( \langle \text{left} \rangle \) parts are left in the assignment as we go, which enables us to expand the \( \langle \text{next tl} \rangle \) at the right place. The various \( \langle \text{right} \rangle \) parts are eventually picked up in one last \texttt{\exp_not:n}, with a brace trick to wrap all the \( \langle \text{right} \rangle \) parts together.

\[ \begin{align*}
\tl_build_get:NN & \quad \text{Get the data then clear the} \langle \text{next tl} \rangle \text{ recursively until finding an empty one. It is perhaps wasteful to repeatedly use} \ \texttt{\cs_to_sr:N}. \text{ The local/global scope is checked by} \ \texttt{\tl_set:Nx} \ \text{or} \ \texttt{\tl_gset:Nx}.
\end{align*} \]

\[ \begin{align*}
\tl_build_end:N & \quad \text{End definition for} \ \texttt{\tl_build_end:N}, \ \texttt{\tl_build_gend:N}, \ \text{and} \ \texttt{\_\_tl_build_end_loop:NN}. \text{ These functions are documented on page 308.}
\end{align*} \]
88.9.2 Other additions to \texttt{l3tl}  
For the braced version \texttt{\_\_tl_range_braced:w} sets up \texttt{\_\_tl_range_collect_braced:w} which stores items one by one in an argument after the semicolon. The unbraced version is almost identical. The version preserving braces and spaces starts by deleting spaces before the argument to avoid collecting them, and sets up \texttt{\_\_tl_range_collect:nn} with a first argument of the form \{\texttt{(collected)}\texttt{tokens}\}, whose head is the collected tokens and whose tail is what remains of the original token list. This form makes it easier to move tokens to the (\texttt{collected}) tokens.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new:Npn \tl_range_braced:Nnn { \exp_args:No \tl_range_braced:nnn }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_range_braced:Nnn { c }
\cs_new:Npn \tl_range_braced:nnn { \__tl_range:Nnnn \__tl_range_braced:w }
\cs_new:Npn \tl_range_unbraced:Nnn { \exp_args:No \tl_range_unbraced:nnn }
\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_range_unbraced:Nnn { c }
\cs_new:Npn \tl_range_unbraced:nnn { \__tl_range:Nnnn \__tl_range_unbraced:w }
\cs_new:Npn \__tl_range_braced:w #1 ; #2
\{ \__tl_range_collect_braced:w #1 ; { } #2 \}
\cs_new:Npn \__tl_range_unbraced:w #1 ; #2
\{ \__tl_range_collect_unbraced:w #1 ; { } #2 \}
\cs_new:Npn \__tl_range_collect_braced:w #1 ; #2#3
\{ \if_int_compare:w #1 > \c_one_int \exp_after:wN \__tl_range_collect_braced:w
\int_value:w \int_eval:n { #1 - 1 } \exp_after:wN ;
\fi: \{ #2 #3 \} \}
\cs_new:Npn \__tl_range_collect_unbraced:w #1 ; #2#3
\{ \if_int_compare:w #1 > \c_one_int \exp_after:wN \__tl_range_collect_unbraced:w
\int_value:w \int_eval:n { #1 - 1 } \exp_after:wN ;
\fi: \{ #2 #3 \} \}
\end{verbatim}

(\textsl{End definition for \_\_tl_range_braced:Nnn and others. These functions are documented on page 307.})

88.10 Additions to \texttt{l3token}

\texttt{\_c_catcode_active_space_tl}  
While \texttt{\char_generate:nn} can produce active characters in some engines it cannot in general. It would be possible to simply change the catcode of space but then the code would need to avoid all spaces, making it quite unreadable. Instead we use the primitive \texttt{\tex_lowercase:D} trick.

\begin{verbatim}
\group_begin:
\char_set_catcode_active:N *
\char_set_lccode:nn { `* } { `< }
tex_lowercase:D \{ \tl_const:Nn \_c_catcode_active_space_tl { * } \}
\group_end:
\end{verbatim}

1370
\l__peek_collect_tl

\peek_catcode_collect_inline:Nn
\peek_charcode_collect_inline:Nn
\peek_meaning_collectInline:Nn
\__peek_collect:NNn
\__peek_collect_remove:nw
\__peek_collect:N

Most of the work is done by \__peek_execute_branches..., which calls either \__peek_true:w or \__peek_false:w according to whether the next token \l_peek_token matches the search token (stored in \l__peek_search_token and \l__peek_search_tl). Here, in the true case we run \__peek_collect_true:w, which generally calls \__peek_collect:N to store the peeked token into \l__peek_collect_tl, except in special non-N-type cases (begin-group, end-group, or space), where a frozen token is stored. The true branch calls \__peek_execute_branches... to fetch more matching tokens. Once there are no more, \__peek_false_aux:n closes the safe-align group and runs the user’s inline code.

\cs_new_protected:Npn \peek_catcode_collect_inline:Nn
{ \__peek_collect:NNn \__peek_execute_branches_catcode: }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \peek_charcode_collect_inline:Nn
{ \__peek_collect:NNn \__peek_execute_branches_charcode: }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \peek_meaning_collect_inline:Nn
{ \__peek_collect:NNn \__peek_execute_branches_meaning: }
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__peek_collect:NNn #1#2#3
{ \group_align_safe_begin:
\cs_set_eq:NN \l__peek_search_token #2
\tl_set:Nn \l__peek_search_tl {#2}
\tl_clear:N \l__peek_collect_tl
\cs_set:Npn \__peek_false:w
{ \exp_args:No \__peek_false_aux:n \l__peek_collect_tl }
\cs_set:Npn \__peek_false_aux:n #1
{ \group_align_safe_end: #3
}\cs_set_eq:NN \__peek_true:w \__peek_collect_true:w
\cs_set:Npn \__peek_true_aux:w { \peek_after:Nw #1 }
\__peek_true_aux:w
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__peek_collect_true:w
{ \l_if_case:w \exp_not:N \l_peek_token \exp_case:Nn \l_peek_token { 1 \exp_stop_f: \fi:
\exp_not:N \l_peek_token 2 \exp_stop_f: \fi:
\exp_not:N \l_peek_token 3 \exp_stop_f: \fi:
\exp_after:wN \__peek_collect:N
\exp_not:N \c_group_begin_token
\exp_not:N \c_group_end_token
\exp_not:N ~ \exp_stop_f:
\fi:
}\group_align_safe_end:
}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__peek_collect:N \#1
\tl_put_right:Nn \l__peek_collect_tl {\#1}
\__peek_true_aux:w
\cs_new_protected:Npn \__peek_collect_remove:nw \#1
\tl_put_right:Nn \l__peek_collect_tl {\#1}
\exp_after:wN \__peek_true_remove:w
(End definition for \peek_catcode_collect_inline:Nn and others. These functions are documented on page 309.)

(/package)
Chapter 89

\l3\text{deprecation implementation}

\subsection*{89.1 Patching definitions to deprecate}

\begin{verbatim}
\_\_kernel_patch_deprecation:nnNNpn\{(date)\}\{(replacement)\}\{(definition)\} \{(function)\}\{(parameters)\}\{(code)\}
\end{verbatim}

defines the \textit{function} to produce a warning and run its \textit{code}, or to produce an error and not run any \textit{code}, depending on the expl3 date.

- If the expl3 date is less than the \textit{date} (plus 6 months in case \texttt{undo-recent-deprecations} is used) then we define the \textit{function} to produce a warning and run its code. The warning is actually suppressed in two cases:
  - if neither \texttt{undo-recent-deprecations} nor \texttt{enable-debug} are in effect we may be in an end-user’s document so it is suppressed;
  - if the command is expandable then we cannot produce a warning.

- Otherwise, we define the \textit{function} to produce an error.

In both cases we additionally make \texttt{\debug_on:n \texttt{deprecation}} turn the \textit{function} into an \texttt{\outer} error, and \texttt{\debug_off:n \texttt{deprecation}} restore whatever the behaviour was without \texttt{\debug_on:n \texttt{deprecation}}.

In later sections we use the \l3doc key \texttt{deprecated} with a date equal to that \textit{date} plus 6 months, so that \l3doc will complain if we forget to remove the stale \textit{parameters} and \textit{code}.

In the explanations below, \textit{\texttt{definition}} \texttt{(function)} \texttt{(parameters)} \texttt{(code)} or assignments that only differ in the scope of the \textit{\texttt{definition}} will be called “the standard definition”.

\begin{verbatim}
\_\_kernel_patch_deprecation:nnNNpn
\_\_deprecation_patch_aux:nnNNn
\_\_deprecation_warn_once:nnNnn
\_\_deprecation_patch_aux:Nn
\_\_deprecation_just_error:nnNN
\end{verbatim}

(The parameter text is grabbed using \#5\#.) The arguments of \texttt{\_\_kernel_deprecation\_code:nn} are run upon \texttt{\debug_on:n \texttt{deprecation}} and \texttt{\debug_off:n \texttt{deprecation}}, respectively. In both scenarios we the \texttt{function} may be \texttt{\outer} so we undefine it with \texttt{\tex\_let:D \texttt{before redefining it, with \_\_kernel_deprecation\_error:NNn or with some code added shortly.}
In case we want a warning, the \textit{function} is defined to produce such a warning without grabbing any argument, then redefine itself to the standard definition that the \textit{function} should have, with arguments, and call that definition. The x-type expansion and \texttt{\exp_not:n} avoid needing to double the #, which we could not do anyways. We then deal with the code for \texttt{\textbackslash debug_off:n \{deprecation\}}: presumably someone doing that does not need the warning so we simply do the standard definition.

In case we want neither warning nor error, the \textit{function} is given its standard definition. Here #1 is \texttt{\textbackslash cs\_new\_Npn} or \texttt{\textbackslash cs\_new\_protected\_Npn} and #2 is \textit{function} \texttt{(parameters)} \texttt{\{\texttt{code}\}}, so #1#2 performs the assignment. For \texttt{\textbackslash debug\_off:n \{deprecation\}} we want to use the same assignment but with a different scope, hence the \texttt{\textbackslash cs\_if\_eq:NNTF} test.
\_kernel_deprecation_error:Nnn

The \texttt{\_outer} definition here ensures the command cannot appear in an argument. Use this auxiliary on all commands that have been removed since 2015.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_kernel_deprecation_error:Nnn #1#2#3
\{\text_protected:D \text_outer:D \text_edef:D #1
\exp_not:N \msg_expansible_error:nnnn
{ \texttt{deprecation} } { \texttt{deprecated-command} }
{ \tl_to_str:n {#3} } { \token_to_str:N #1 } { \tl_to_str:n {#2} }
\exp_not:N \msg_error:nnnnn
{ \texttt{deprecation} } { \texttt{deprecated-command} }
{ \tl_to_str:n {#3} } { \token_to_str:N #1 } { \tl_to_str:n {#2} }
\}
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \_kernel_deprecation_error:Nnn.)

\msg_new:nnn { deprecation } { \texttt{deprecated-command} }
\{
\tl_if_blank:nF {#3} { \texttt{Use-} \tl_trim_spaces:n {#3} \texttt{-not-} }
\}
\texttt{\#2-deprecated-on-\#1}.\texttt{\}.

89.2 Removed functions

\_deprecation_old_protected:Nnn \_deprecation_old:Nnn

Short-hands for old commands whose definition does not matter any more as they were removed.

\begin{verbatim}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_deprecation_old_protected:Nnn #1#2#3
\{\_kernel_patch_deprecation:nnNNpn {#3} {#2}
\cs_gset_protected:Npn #1 { }
\}
\cs_new_protected:Npn \_deprecation_old:Nnn #1#2#3
\{\_kernel_patch_deprecation:nnNNpn {#3} {#2}
\cs_gset:Npn #1 { }
\}
\__deprecation_old_protected:Nnn \box_gset_eq_clear:NN
\{ \box_gset_eq_drop:NN \} { 2021-07-01 }
\__deprecation_old_protected:Nnn \box_set_eq_clear:NN
\{ \box_set_eq_drop:NN \} { 2021-07-01 }
\__deprecation_old_protected:Nnn \box_resize:Nnn
\{ \box_resize_to_wd_and_ht_plus_dp:Nnn \} { 2019-01-01 }
\__deprecation_old_protected:Nnn \box_use_clear:N
\{ \box_use_drop:N \} { 2019-01-01 }
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \c_job_name_tl \{ \c_sys_jobname_str \} { 2017-01-01 }
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \c_minus_one \{ -1 \} { 2019-01-01 }
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \c_zero \{ 0 \} { 2020-01-01 }
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \c_one \{ 1 \} { 2020-01-01 }
\end{verbatim}
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \c_two
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \c_three
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \c_four
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \c_five
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \c_six
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \c_seven
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \c_eight
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \c_nine
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \c_ten
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \c_eleven
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \c_twelve
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \c_thirteen
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \c_fourteen
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \c_fifteen
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \c_sixteen
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \c_thirty_two
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \c_one_hundred
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \c_two_hundred_fifty_five
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \c_two_hundred_fifty_six
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \c_one_thousand
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \c_ten_thousand
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \c_term_ior
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \dim_case:nnn
\__deprecation_old_protected:Nnn \file_add_path:nN
\__deprecation_old_protected:Nnn \file_get_full_name:nN
\__deprecation_old_protected:Nnn \file_if_exist:input:nT
\__deprecation_old_protected:Nnn \file_if_exist:input:nF
\__deprecation_old_protected:Nnn \file_log_list: 
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \pdftex_if_engine:F
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \pdftex_if_engine:T
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \pdftex_if_engine:TF
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \prop_get:cn
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \prop_get:Nn
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \quark_if_recursion_tail_break:N
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \quark_if_recursion_tail_break:n
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \scan_align_safe_stop:
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \sort_ordered:
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \sort_reversed:
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \str_case:nnn
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \str_case:onn
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \str_case_x:nn
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \str_case_x:nnn
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \str_case_x:nnT
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \str_case_x:nnTF
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \str_case_x:nnF
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \str_if_eq_x_p:nn
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \str_if_eq_x:nnT
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \str_if_eq_x:nnF
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \str_if_eq_x:nnTF
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \str_if_eq_x:nnF
\__deprecation_old_protected:Nnn \tl_show_analysis:N
\__deprecation_old_protected:Nnn \tl_show_analysis:n
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \tl_case:cnn
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \tl_case:cmF
\__deprecation_old:Nnn \tl_case:NNn
89.3 Deprecated \l3str functions

This command was made internal, with one more argument. There is no easy way to compute a reasonable value for that extra argument so we take a value that is big enough to accommodate all of Unicode.

\str_declare_eight_bit_encoding:nnn

(End definition for \str_lower_case:n, \str_upper_case:n, and \str_fold_case:n. These functions are documented on page ??.)
89.4 Deprecated l3seq functions

(End definition for \str_declare_eight_bit_encoding:nnn. This function is documented on page ??.)

89.5 Deprecated l3sys functions

(End definition for \seq_indexed_map_inline:Nn and \seq_indexed_map_function:NN. These functions are documented on page ??.)

89.6 Deprecated l3tl functions

(End definition for \tl_lower_case:n and others. These functions are documented on page ??.)
89.7 Deprecated \texttt{l3token} functions

\begin{verbatim}
\char_lower_case:N \char_upper_case:N \char_mixed_case:N \char_fold_case:N \char_str_lower_case:N \char_str_upper_case:N \char_str_mixed_case:N \char_str_fold_case:N
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\__kernel_patch_deprecation:nnNNpn { 2020-01-03 } { \char_lowercase:N }
\cs_gset:Npn \char_lower_case:N { \char_lowercase:N }
\__kernel_patch_deprecation:nnNNpn { 2020-01-03 } { \char_uppercase:N }
\cs_gset:Npn \char_upper_case:N { \char_uppercase:N }
\__kernel_patch_deprecation:nnNNpn { 2020-01-03 } { \char_titlecase:N }
\cs_gset:Npn \char_mixed_case:N { \char_titlecase:N }
\__kernel_patch_deprecation:nnNNpn { 2020-01-03 } { \char_foldcase:N }
\cs_gset:Npn \char_fold_case:N { \char_foldcase:N }
\__kernel_patch_deprecation:nnNNpn { 2020-01-03 } { \char_str_lowercase:N }
\cs_gset:Npn \char_str_lower_case:N { \char_str_lowercase:N }
\__kernel_patch_deprecation:nnNNpn { 2020-01-03 } { \char_str_uppercase:N }
\cs_gset:Npn \char_str_upper_case:N { \char_str_uppercase:N }
\__kernel_patch_deprecation:nnNNpn { 2020-01-03 } { \char_str_titlecase:N }
\cs_gset:Npn \char_str_mixed_case:N { \char_str_titlecase:N }
\__kernel_patch_deprecation:nnNNpn { 2020-01-03 } { \char_str_foldcase:N }
\cs_gset:Npn \char_str_fold_case:N { \char_str_foldcase:N }
\end{verbatim}

(End definition for \texttt{\char_lower_case:N} and others. These functions are documented on page ??.)

A little extra fun here to deal with the expansion.

\begin{verbatim}
\tl_map_inline:nn
\{} \{ \texttt{catcode} \} \{ \texttt{catcode_remove} \}
\} \{ \{ \texttt{charcode} \} \{ \texttt{charcode_remove} \}
\} \{ \{ \texttt{meaning} \} \{ \texttt{meaning_remove} \}
\}{\use:x
\{}
\{} \{ \__kernel_patch_deprecation:nnNNpn { 2022-01-11 } { \peek_remove_spaces:n }
\cs_gset_protected:Npn \exp_not:c { \peek_ #1 _ignore_spaces:NTF } ####1####2####3
\}{\peek_remove_spaces:n
\}{\exp_not:c { \peek_ #1 :NTF } ####1 {####2} {####3}}
\}
\} \{ \__kernel_patch_deprecation:nnNNpn { 2022-01-11 } { \peek_remove_spaces:n }
\cs_gset_protected:Npn \exp_not:c { \peek_ #1 _ignore_spaces:NF } ####1####2
\}{\peek_remove_spaces:n
\}{\exp_not:c { \peek_ #1 :NF } ####1 {####2}}
\}
\} \{ \__kernel_patch_deprecation:nnNNpn { 2022-01-11 } { \peek_remove_spaces:n }
\cs_gset_protected:Npn \exp_not:c { \peek_ #1 _ignore_spaces:TF } ####1####2####3
\}{\peek_remove_spaces:n
\}{\exp_not:c { \peek_ #1 :TF } ####1 {####2} {####3}}
\}
\}
\end{verbatim}
(End definition for `peek_catcode_ignore_spaces`:NTF and others. These functions are documented on page ??.)

```latex
\end{package}
```
Index

The italic numbers denote the pages where the corresponding entry is described, numbers underlined point to the definition, all others indicate the places where it is used.

Symbols

! ................................................. 252
" .............................................. 18579, 18582,
29380, 31718, 31742, 31748, 31752,
31758, 31762, 31768, 31774, 31781,
31782, 31788, 31792, 31794, 31903
\# ........................................... 10492, 13700, 18579, 31587
\$ ........................................... 5375, 13699, 18579, 18582, 31587
\% ........................................... 10494, 13701, 18579, 31587
& ........................................... 9299, 13692, 18579, 18592
&........................................... 251
\' ........................................... 29380, 31712, 31739,
31746, 31750, 31755, 31760, 31763,
31765, 31772, 31777, 31778, 31785,
31790, 31793, 31801, 31802, 31849,
31850, 31857, 31858, 31869, 31870,
31875, 31876, 31904, 31905, 31927,
31928, 31931, 31932, 31933, 31934
\( .......................................... 10994, 11180, 11255, 29401
\) ........................................... 29401
* ........................................... 13835, 13408, 18956, 18958, 18962, 18970
** ......................................... 252
+ ........................................... 251, 252
-, ........................................... 20577, 31599
- ........................................... 251, 252
- ........................................... 180
\ ........................................... 29380, 31717,
31805, 31806, 31815, 31816, 31825,
31826, 31843, 31855, 31856, 31906,
31907, 31937, 31938, 31941, 31942
/ ........................................... 252
\| ........................................... 179, 4254
\: ........................................... 13698
\:: 42, 379, 406,
2258, 2259, 2260, 2261, 2262, 2263,
2264, 2266, 2270, 2271, 2274, 2277,
2284, 2287, 2290, 2296, 2383, 2459,
2461, 2466, 2473, 2477, 2480, 2485,
2500, 2541, 2542, 2543, 2544, 2555
\::N ........................................ 42, 2262, 2383, 2544
\::V ........................................ 42, 2290
\::V_unbraced .............................. 42, 2458
\::e ........................................ 42, 2264
\:e ........................................ 42, 2268, 2383
\::e_unbraced ............................ 42, 2458, 2500

\::error .................................... 83
\::f ........................................ 42, 2277, 2544
\::f_unbraced ............................. 42, 2458
\::n ........................................ 42, 2277, 2544, 2541
\::o ........................................ 42, 2266, 2542
\::o_unbraced ............................. 42, 2458, 2541, 2542, 2543, 2544
\::p ........................................ 42, 379, 2263
\::v ........................................ 42, 2290
\::v_unbraced ............................. 42, 2458
\::x ........................................ 42, 2458,
\:x_unbraced ............................ 42, 2458, 2555
< ........................................... 251
= ........................................... 251
\= ........................................... 20578,
29380, 31715, 31795, 31796, 31811,
31812, 31834, 31835, 31836, 31863,
31864, 31889, 31890, 31943, 31944
> ........................................... 251
? ........................................... 251
? ........................................... 251
??: ........................................... 608
\ ........................................... 2176, 3675, 3678, 3679,
3703, 3704, 3711, 3712, 4199, 4389,
4713, 4714, 6091, 6098, 6099, 6100,
6224, 8042, 8046, 8051, 8085, 8094,
8098, 8103, 8123, 8125, 8126, 8128,
8131, 8133, 8138, 8140, 8142, 8147,
8151, 8154, 8158, 8160, 8164, 8166,
8172, 8174, 8178, 8180, 8184, 8189,
8191, 8233, 8235, 8240, 8242, 8248,
8253, 8254, 8258, 8262, 8272, 8275,
8279, 8280, 8284, 8292, 8318, 8363,
9202, 9220, 9222, 9227, 9228, 9252,
9262, 9269, 9284, 9691, 9699, 9706,
9718, 9719, 9734, 9735, 9742, 9756,
9759, 9760, 9792, 9820, 9853, 9854,
9867, 9915, 9916, 9924, 9931, 9932,
9954, 9970, 9974, 9979, 9986, 10497,
11496, 11500, 11501, 11503, 11509,
11511, 11516, 11517, 11519, 11520,
11522, 11524, 11536, 11546, 11548,
11549, 11550, 13694, 14248, 14249,
14252, 14574, 14577, 14578, 14579,
14580, 14585, 14591, 14596, 14603,
14762, 14765, 14766, 14767, 14769,
Index

1384

\AA 29384, 31279, 31636
\aa 29384, 31279, 31646
\above 181
\abovedisplayshortskip 182
\abovedisplayskip 183
\abovewithdelims 184
\abs 252
\accent 185
\acos 254
\acot 255
\acotd 255
\acsc 254
\acs 254
\acsd 254
\adjdemerits 186
\adjustspacing 899
\advance 187
\AE 29385, 31280, 31637, 31931
\ae 29385, 31280, 31647, 31932
\afterassignment 188
\aftergroup 189
\alignmark 774
\aligntab 775
\asec 254
\asecd 254
\asin 254
\asind 254
\atan 255
\atanh 255
\atand 255
\AtBeginDocument 648, 11404, 31297
\atop 190
\atopwithdelims 776
\attribute 777
\attributedef 777
\automatiscomputationary 778
\automaticpemmode 780
\automaticpempenalty 781
\autoparagraph 1098
\autoparagraphspace 1099
\B 29380, 31275
\badness 192
\baselineskip 193
\batchmode 194
\begin 11490, 11493, 24817, 29397, 29404, 31582
\begingroup 3, 20, 24, 29, 48, 94, 172, 195
\begininlin 503
\begininl 504
\belowdisplayskip 196
\belowdisplayshortskip 197
\bfseries 31561
\binoppenalty .................. 198
\bodydir .......................... 784
\bodydirection .................... 785
bool commands:
  \bool_case_false:n .......... 304, 35829
  \bool_case_false:nTF ........ 304, 35829, 35839, 35841
  \bool_case_true:n .......... 304, 35829
  \bool_case_true:nTF ........ 304, 35829, 35839, 35833
  \bool_const:Nn ............. 65, 8372
  \bool_do_until:Nn .......... 68, 8580
  \bool_do_until:nn .......... 69, 8586
  \bool_do_while:NN .......... 69, 8586
  \bool_gset:N ...... 223, 21085
  \bool_gset:Nn .......... 65, 8394
  \bool_gset_eq:NN ............ 65, 4508, 6749, 8390
  \bool_gset_false:N .......... 65, 6696, 8378, 13907, 13916, 35825
  \bool_gset_inverse:N ....... 223, 21093
  \bool_gset_inverse:Nn ..... 303, 35821
  \bool_gset_true:N ......... 65, 6762, 8378, 8843, 13897,
                            35581, 35603, 35610, 35825, 36600
  \bool_if:NFT ............. 65, 136, 2044,
                           5490, 5499, 5940, 6095, 6181, 6199,
                           6217, 6371, 6590, 6598, 6831, 7434,
                           7457, 7530, 7752, 7922, 7928, 7969,
                           8336, 8341, 8411, 8420, 8575, 8577,
                           8581, 8583, 8841, 10712, 10719,
                           13911, 13920, 19600, 19608, 20614,
                           20777, 21006, 21015, 21061, 21277,
                           21279, 21281, 21283, 21239, 21331,
                           21349, 21371, 21373, 21389, 21391,
                           21393, 21432, 21473, 21492, 21494,
                           21496, 21506, 21570, 21599, 21609,
                           21637, 30091, 33061, 33756, 35586,
                           35569, 35822, 35825, 35847, 36508
  \bool_if:NFT ...... 65, 67, 69, 878, 8184,
                    8422, 8454, 8525, 8551, 8558,
                    8567, 8588, 8597, 8601, 8610, 8683,
                    11889, 11894, 35582, 35588, 35912
  \bool_if_exist:N.TF .... 66, 8450, 20800
  \bool_if_exist:p:N ........ 66, 8450
  \bool_if_p:N ............. 65, 8411
  \bool_if_p:N ............. 67, 569, 8375, 8397, 8402,
                           8454, 8462, 8532, 8558, 8564, 8568
  \bool_lazy_all:nTF ...... 67, 68, 5773, 8512
  \bool_lazy_all:p:n ...... 68, 8512
  \bool_lazy_and:nTF ...... 67, 68, 8529,
                           8755, 8971, 10294, 11477, 28873,
                           29657, 29704, 30552, 30650, 30633,
                           31471, 32785, 33669, 35574, 35620
  \bool_lazy_and:p:n ........ 67, 68, 8529, 30080, 35631, 35643
  \bool_lazy_any:nTF ........ 67, 68, 8538, 11092, 13749, 14021,
                            14045, 14067, 14237, 29367, 29470
  \bool_lazy_any:p:n ...... 67, 68, 8538, 30555
  \bool_lazy_or:nTF ......... 67,
                            68, 3783, 8555, 8738, 8811, 15021,
                            18940, 29008, 29024, 29087, 29275,
                            29487, 29495, 29695, 30019, 30077,
                            30093, 30098, 30133, 30194, 30230,
                            30293, 30332, 30436, 30450, 30484,
                            30491, 30569, 30614, 30647, 30678,
                            30725, 30748, 30784, 31506, 31600,
                            31685, 34077, 34382, 35628, 35640
  \bool_lazy_or:p:n .......... 68, 8555,
                            29707, 30335, 30453, 30636, 31474
  \bool_log:N .................. 66, 8427
  \bool_log:n ................ 66, 8423
  \bool_new:N ................. 65, 4455, 4885, 6665, 6666,
                            6668, 6669, 6670, 8370, 8446, 8447,
                            8448, 8449, 8838, 10440, 13760,
                            20441, 20680, 20681, 20688, 20689,
                            20963, 20980, 29767, 32658, 35573
  \bool_not:p:n .............. 68, 8564
  \bool_set:N ................ 223, 21085
  \bool_set:N .......... 65, 561, 8394
  \bool_set_eq:NN ............ 65, 4592, 6910, 8390, 19618, 19620
  \bool_set_false:N .......... 65, 151, 5464,
                            5660, 6640, 6711, 6725, 6788, 6830,
                            8378, 10546, 10688, 10696, 10704,
                            10714, 10721, 20719, 21271, 21272,
                            21273, 21233, 21324, 21328, 21364,
                            21372, 21374, 21383, 21384, 21394,
                            21415, 21480, 33057, 33754, 35822
  \bool_set_inverse:N ....... 223, 21093
  \bool_set_inverse:N ........ 303, 35821
  \bool_set_true:N .......... 65, 165, 5469,
                            5673, 6634, 6828, 6909, 8378, 10674,
                            20714, 21278, 21280, 21282, 21322,
                            21330, 21332, 21365, 21366, 21370,
                            21385, 21390, 21392, 21410, 21487,
                            29708, 33075, 33097, 33128, 35822
  \bool_show:N ................ 66, 8427
  \bool_show:n .............. 66, 8423
  \bool_to_str:N ............. 65, 8420
  \bool_to_str:n ............ 65, 8420, 8424, 8426
  \bool_until_do:N .......... 69, 8574
  \bool_until_do:n .......... 69, 8586
  \bool_while_do:N .......... 69, 8574

Index

1385
Index

32852, 32896, 32897, 32992, 32997,
33034, 33041, 33213, 33217, 33496,
33517, 33819, 35716, 35724, 35729
\box_ht_plus_dp:N ............. 272, 31996
\box_if_empty:NTF ............. 273, 32049
\box_if_empty_p:N ............. 273, 32049
\box_if_exist:NTF ............. 271, 31986
\box_if_exist_p:N ............. 271, 31986
\box_if_horizontal:NTF ... 273, 32041
\box_if_horizontal_p:N ... 273, 32041
\box_if_vertical:NTF ....... 273, 32041
\box_if_vertical_p:N ....... 273, 32041
\box_log:N ................. 274, 32070
\box_log:Nnn ............... 274, 32070
\box_move_down:nn 271, 31995, 32030,
33192, 35703, 35711, 35754, 35761
\box_move_left:nn ....... 271, 32030
\box_move_right:nn ....... 271, 32030
\box_move_up:nn 271, 32030, 33537,
33816, 35720, 35729, 35768, 35781
\box_new:N .................. 270,
271, 31960, 32050, 32060, 32061,
32062, 32063, 32289, 32634, 32709
\box_resize:Nnn ............. 36347
\box_resize_to_ht:N ....... 279, 32457
\box_resize_to_ht_plus_dp:Nn ... 280, 32457
\box_resize_to_wd:N ....... 280, 32457
\box_resize_to_wd_and_ht:Nn ... 280, 32457
\box_resize_to_wd_and_ht_plus_dp:Nn ... 280, 32457
\box_rotate:Nn ... 281, 32290, 33165
\box_scale:Nnn ....... 281, 32535, 33372
\box_set_dp:Nn ......... 272, 1356, 31999, 32335,
32606, 32069, 33197, 33497, 35181,
33820, 35706, 35714, 35757, 35762
\box_set_eq:NN ............. 36373
\box_set_eq_drop:NN ........ 278, 31980, 36374
\box_set_ht:N ....... 272, 31999, 32334,
32605, 32610, 33195, 33496, 35171,
33818, 35723, 35732, 35771, 35784
\box_set_to_last:N ......... 273, 32053
\box_set_trim:Nnnn ....... 301, 35685
\box_set_viewport:Nnnnn .. 301, 35736
\box_set_wd:N ....... 272, 31999, 32336,
32622, 33198, 34398, 35319, 33822
\box_show:N ........ 274, 277, 286, 32064
\box_show:Nnn .............. 274, 286, 1308, 32064, 33585, 33861
\box_use:N ................. 271, 32026, 32323, 31913, 35344,
33537, 33813, 33816, 35696, 35747
\box_use_clear:N ........... 36377
\box_use_drop:N ........... 278, 32026
32338, 32617, 32626, 32200, 33620,
33748, 35704, 35712, 35721, 35730,
35755, 35761, 35769, 35782, 36378
\box wd:N ................. 272,
23333, 31990, 32020, 32024, 32310,
32439, 32554, 32586, 32898, 32899,
32996, 33005, 33023, 33028, 33216,
33224, 33418, 33425, 33451, 33498,
33519, 33535, 33814, 33823, 35748
\c_empty_box ............... 270, 273, 31963, 31966, 32059
\g_tampa_box .............. 273, 32000
\l_tampa_box .............. 273, 32000
\l_tmbp_box ............... 273, 32000
\_box_internal_commands:
\l__box_angle_fp ........... 32278, 32300, 32301, 32302, 32331
\l__box_autosize:Nnnnn .... 32564
\l__box_backend_clip:N .... 35680, 35683
\l__box_backend_rotate:Nn ... 32329
\l__box_backend_scale:Nn ... 32598
\l__box_bottom_dim ....... 32251
32309, 32366, 32370, 32375, 32381,
32386, 32390, 32399, 32401, 32430,
32438, 32447, 32491, 32553, 32559
\l__box_bottom_new_dim ... 32255, 32335, 32367, 32378, 32389,
32400, 32446, 32558, 32606, 32610
\l__box_cos_fp ............ 32279
32302, 32314, 32319, 32346, 32358
\l__box_dim_eval:n .......... 1258, 31951, 19555,
31997, 32002, 32006, 32011, 32015,
32020, 32024, 32031, 32033, 32035,
32037, 32116, 32121, 32148, 32154,
32162, 32186, 32220, 32225, 32253,
32259, 32270, 32275, 35757, 35781
\l__box_dim_eval:w ....... 31951
\l__box_internal_box 32289, 32323,
32324, 32330, 32334, 32335, 32336,
32338, 32596, 32605, 32606, 32609,
32610, 32617, 32622, 32626, 35693,
35701, 35704, 35706, 35709, 35712,
35714, 35716, 35718, 35721, 35723,
35724, 35727, 35729, 35730, 35732,
35734, 35744, 35752, 35755, 35757,
35760, 35761, 35766, 35769,
35771, 35779, 35782, 35784, 35786
cctab internal commands:
\g__cctab_allocate_int .......... 28700, 28832, 28834, 28836
   ............. 28700, 28832, 28834, 28836
\cctab_begin_aux: .............. 1184, 1185, 28820, 28844
\cctabchk_group_begin:n ........ 1186, 28845, 28864
\cctabchk_group_end:n ........... 1186, 28858, 28864
\cctabchk_if_valid:NTF .......... 28771, 28792, 28841, 28930
\cctabchk_if_valid_aux:NTF ...... 28930
\g__cctab_endlinechar_prop ....... 1182, 28703, 28750, 28752, 28799
\g__cctab_group_seq ............. 28609, 28866, 28872
\cctab_gset:n .................. 28742, 28776, 28848, 29027
\cctab_gset_aux:n ............... 28742
\cctab_gstore:N ................ 28704
\l__cctab_internal_a_tl ........ 1184, 1185, 28701, 28799, 28800,
   28825, 28835, 28843, 28846, 28847,
   28848, 28855, 28857, 28859, 28860
   \l__cctab_internal_b_tl ........ 28701, 28872, 28876, 28883
\g__cctab_internal_cctab ......... 28781
\cctab_item:n .................. 28781, 28802, 28803, 28804, 28805
\cctab_item:n .................. 28821, 28914, 28918
\cctab_nested_number:N .......... 28846, 28859, 28888
\cctab_nested_number:w .......... 28888
\cctab_new:N 1184, 28704,
   28783, 28803, 28824, 28833, 28904
\cctab_next_cctab .............. 28820
\cctab_select:N ................. 1184, 28791, 28849, 28860
\cctab_stack_seq ................. 1180, 28697, 28847, 28855, 28906
\cctabunused_seq ................. 1180, 28697, 28847, 28855, 28906
ceil ................................ 253
\char ................................ 204, 19135
char commands:
\l__char_active_seq .. 85, 186, 18577
\char_fold_case:N ............. 36621
\char_foldcase:N ............... 183, 18826, 36627, 36628
\char_file:nn ................. 117, 182, 246, 444, 445, 531, 671, 729,
   1370, 3729, 3730, 3731, 3732, 3733,
   3735, 3736, 3737, 4300, 4316, 4328,
   4746, 5783, 6139, 12131, 12147,
   13821, 14076, 14092, 18604, 18819,
   18823, 18854, 18883, 18938, 18947,
   29279, 29317, 30035, 30045, 30046,
   30203, 30296, 30297, 30468, 30479,
   30526, 30527, 30528, 30539, 30564,
   30592, 30619, 30642, 30659, 30671,
   30683, 30688, 30713, 30731, 30760,
   30762, 30766, 30804, 30805, 30810,
   30812, 30820, 30821, 30826, 30828,
   31048, 31049, 31054, 31056, 31085,
   31086, 31103, 31104, 31105, 31110,
   31112, 31114, 31122, 31123, 31124,
   31129, 31131, 31133, 31245, 31246,
   31247, 31252, 31254, 31609, 31630,
   31632, 31691, 31705, 31707, 34483
\char_generate:nn .............. 182, 18583
\char_generate_eq:nN .......... 182, 18583
\char_lower_case:N ............. 36021
\char_lowercase:N ............... 36021
\charmixed_case:N .............. 36021
\charset_active_eq:nN .......... 182, 3726, 18583
\char_set_active_eq:nN .......... 182, 140, 141, 142, 143, 144, 145, 146, 147,
   148, 158, 15843, 18409, 18492, 18494,
   18496, 18498, 18500, 18502, 18504,
   18506, 18508, 18510, 18512, 18514,
   18516, 18518, 18520, 18522, 18524,
   18526, 18528, 18530, 18532, 18534,
   18536, 18538, 18540, 18542, 18544,
   18546, 18548, 18550, 18552, 28813
\charset_catcode_active:N ....... 183, 3777, 7266, 9299, 18489,
   18584, 18641, 18970, 31591, 36249
\charset_catcode_active:n ...... 184, 140, 141, 142, 143, 144, 145, 146, 147,
   149, 158, 15843, 18409, 18492, 18494,
   18496, 18498, 18500, 18502, 18504,
   18506, 18508, 18510, 18512, 18514,
   18516, 18518, 18520, 18522, 18524,
   18526, 18528, 18530, 18532, 18534,
   18536, 18538, 18540, 18542, 18544,
   18546, 18548, 18550, 18552, 28813
\charset_catcode_alignment:N ...... 183, 7318, 18489, 18958
\charset_catcode_alignment:n .... 184, 158, 18521, 18676, 29014
\charset_catcode_comment:N ...... 183, 18489
\charset_catcode_comment:n ...... 184, 18521, 29013
\charset_catcode_end_line:N ...... 183, 18489
\charset_catcode_end_line:n ...... 184, 18521, 29009
\charset_catcode_escape:N 183, 18489
Index

1396

\color_select:nn

\color_math:nnn

\color_select:nn(n)

\color_math:nn

\color_log:n

\color_profile_apply:nn

\color_group_end:

\color_group_begin:

\color_set:nn

\color_math_active_tl

\color_model_new:nnn

\color_profile_apply:nn

\color_set:nnn

\color_select:nn

\color_select:nn(n)

\color_set:nn

\__color_convert_devicen_-

\__color_convert_devicen_gray_-

\__color_convert_devicen_-

\__color_convert_devicen_cmyk_-

\__color_convert_devicen_-

\__color_convert:nnnN

\__color_convert:nnN

\__color_convert_cmyk_rgb:w

\__color_convert_cmyk_gray:w

\__color_convert_cmyk_cmyk:w

\__color_backend_separation_-

\__color_backend_reset:

\__color_backend_iccbased_-

\__color_backend_devicen_-

\__color_check_model:nn

\__color_check_model:N

\__color_alternative_model_prop

\__color_alternative_values_-prop

\__color_backenddevicen_-

\__color_check_model:nn

\__color_alternative_model_prop

\__color_alternative_values_-prop

\__color_backenddevicen_-

\__color_set:nn

\__color_set_eq:nn

\__color_set:nnn

\__color_convert_devicen_gray:-

\__color_backend_separation_-

\__color_backend_reset:

\__color_backend_iccbased_-

\__color_backend_devicen_-

\__color_check_model:nn

\__color_check_model:N

\__color_alternative_model_prop

\__color_alternative_values_-prop

\__color_backenddevicen_-

\__color_check_model:nn

\__color_check_model:N

\__color_alternative_model_prop

\__color_alternative_values_-prop

\__color_backenddevicen_-

\__color_set:nn

\__color_set_eq:nn

\__color_set:nnn
15901, 16003, 16005, 16016, 16023, 19965, 19968, 19971, 19973, 19980, 19982, 20063, 20185, 20192, 20204, 20261, 20265, 20275, 20281, 20291, 20293, 20301, 20303, 20307, 20309, 20311, 20313, 20317, 20319, 20354, 20358, 20366, 20372, 20478, 20380, 20384, 20386, 20394, 20396, 20400, 20402, 20404, 20406, 20410, 20412, 20422, 20426, 20703, 20705, 20712, 20717, 20722, 20735, 20742, 20746, 20755, 20760, 20769, 20775, 20792, 20795, 20798, 20814, 20816, 20818, 20834, 20845, 20847, 20849, 20866, 20869, 20876, 20891, 20904, 20909, 20920, 20922, 20924, 20943, 20950, 20952, 20966, 20976, 21004, 21013, 21022, 21055, 21068, 21079, 21085, 21087, 21089, 21091, 21093, 21095, 21097, 21099, 21101, 21103, 21105, 21107, 21109, 21111, 21113, 21115, 21117, 21119, 21221, 21223, 21225, 21127, 21129, 21131, 21133, 21135, 21137, 21139, 21141, 21143, 21145, 21147, 21149, 21151, 21153, 21155, 21157, 21159, 21161, 21163, 21165, 21167, 21169, 21171, 21173, 21175, 21177, 21179, 21181, 21183, 21185, 21187, 21189, 21191, 21193, 21195, 21197, 21199, 21201, 21203, 21205, 21207, 21209, 21211, 21213, 21215, 21217, 21219, 21221, 21223, 21225, 21227, 21229, 21231, 21233, 21235, 21237, 21239, 21241, 21243, 21245, 21247, 21249, 21251, 21253, 21255, 21257, 21259, 21261, 21263, 21265, 21267, 21288, 21290, 21296, 21302, 21308, 21315, 21318, 21337, 21344, 21350, 21357, 21360, 21379, 21400, 21402, 21408, 21413, 21418, 21438, 21443, 21447, 21453, 21458, 21464, 21478, 21504, 21523, 21538, 21552, 21568, 21592, 21616, 21648, 21735, 21737, 21739, 21822, 21828, 21913, 21915, 21976, 22013, 22039, 22048, 22057, 22092, 22094, 22102, 22113, 22121, 22128, 22134, 22162, 22171, 22215, 22220, 22230, 22232, 22244, 22245, 22250, 22255, 22269, 22274, 22279, 22294, 22305, 22329, 22332, 22443, 22716, 22733, 22735, 22737, 22739, 22767, 22769, 22771, 22773, 22793, 22795, 22797, 22799, 22801, 22803, 22805, 22807, 22809, 24530, 24533, 24535, 24537, 24546, 24547,
Index

\_cs_use_none_delimit_by_s_-
  stop:w 2874, 3199
\csc 254
\csd 254
\csname \_ 364, 4, 21, 25,
\csname 30, 43, 65, 66, 68, 77, 98, 102, 121, 215
\csstring 796
\currentcjktoken 1100, 1157
\currentgrouplevel 507
\currentgroupertype 508
\currentibranch 509
\currentiflevel 510
\currentiftype 511
\currentspacingmode 1101
\currentxspacingmode 1102
\d 29380, 31722
\date 343
\day 216, 1305, 8988
\dd 257
\deadcycles 217
debug commands:
  \debug_off: 343
  \debug_off:n 29, 1373, 1974, 1544
  \debug_on: 343
  \debug_resume: 29, 1280, 1554, 32717
  \debug_suspend: 29, 1280, 1554, 32710
debug internal commands:
  g__debug_deprecation_off_tl 1556
  g__debug_deprecation_on_tl 1556
\def 49, 50, 51,
  76, 78, 79, 95, 96, 99, 110, 134, 173, 218
default commands:
  .default:n 224, 21137
  \defaulthyphenchar 219
  \defaultskewchar 220
  \deg 256
  \delcode 221
  \delimiter 222
  \delimiterfactor 223
  \delimitershortfall 224
deprecation internal commands:
  \_deprecation_just_error:nnNN 36304
  \_deprecation_old:Mnn 36361
  \_deprecation_old_protected:NNn
  \_deprecation_patch_aux:NNn 36304
  \_deprecation_patch_aux:NNNNNn
  \_deprecation_patch_warn_once:nnNnm 36304
\detokenize 43, 121, 512
\DH 29386, 31281, 31638
\dh 29386, 31281, 31648
dim commands:
  \dim_abs:n 207, 902, 19989
  \dim_add:Nn 207, 19971
  \dim_case:nn 210, 20069
  \dim_case:nnn 36431
  \dim_case:ntF 210, 20069, 20074, 20079, 36432
  \dim_compare:nnTF 208–211, 243, 20024, 20093, 20129, 20137, 20146, 20152, 20164, 20167, 20178, 33071, 33074, 33079, 33093, 33096, 33101, 33447, 33452, 33462, 33591, 33603, 35699, 35716, 35750, 35764, 35774
  \dim_compare:ntF 208, 209,
  211, 20029, 20101, 20109, 20118, 20124
  \dim_compare:p:n 209, 20029
  \dim_compare:p:nnn 208, 20024
  \dim_const:Nn 206,
  895, 905, 19038, 20267, 20268, 22046
  \dim_do_until:n 211, 20099
  \dim_do_until:nnnn 210, 21027
  \dim_do_while:nnn 211, 20099
  \dim_do_while:nnnn 210, 21027
  \dim_eval:n 208, 209, 212, 895, 1257,
  1258, 19941, 20072, 20077, 20082, 20087, 20182, 20210, 20262, 20266, 32774, 32851, 32937, 32955, 32992, 32996, 32997, 33001, 33005, 33006, 33023, 33028, 33034, 33041, 33048, 33213, 33216, 33217, 33224, 33306, 33307, 33314, 33315, 33418, 33425,
  33574, 33575, 33839, 33840, 33841
  \dim_gadd:Nn 207, 19971
  \dim_gset:N 224, 21145
  \dim_gset:Nn 207, 895, 19959
  \dim_gset_eq:NN 207, 19965
  \dim_gsub:Nn 207, 19971
  \dim_gzero:N 206, 19944, 19952, 20288
  \dim_gzero_new:N 206, 19949
  \dim_if_exist:NTF
  \dim_if_exist_p:N 207, 19950, 19952, 19955
  \dim_log:N 214, 20263
  \dim_log:n 214, 20263
  \dim_max:nn 207, 19989, 33285, 33289
  \dim_min:nn 207, 19989, 33283, 33287, 33300
  \dim_new:N 206, 19932, 19940, 19950,
  19952, 20269, 20270, 20271, 20272,
  32281, 32282, 32283, 32284, 32285,
  32286, 32287, 32288, 32635, 32659,
  32660, 32663, 32664, 32665, 32666,
Index

1423

7096, 7120, 7155, 7160, 7166, 7503,
8670, 8672, 9012, 10104, 10325,
10588, 10602, 10614, 10824, 12932,
12991, 12997, 13466, 13482, 13522,
13528, 13540, 13557, 13789, 13797,
14004, 14005, 14006, 14011, 14012,
14036, 14407, 14469, 14473, 14503,
14506, 14522, 14526, 14547, 14627,
14629, 14649, 14667, 14669, 14723,
14726, 14727, 14846, 14851, 14992,
16341, 16928, 16942, 16952, 17144,
17149, 17303, 18484, 18486, 18554,
18556, 18560, 18562, 18566, 18568,
18572, 18574, 18576, 18580, 18612,
18620, 18621, 18622, 18623, 18629,
18646, 18651, 18659, 18719, 18733,
18979, 20045, 20216, 22076, 22079,
22208, 22285, 22289, 22319, 22524,
22639, 22654, 22901, 22927, 22976,
22988, 23054, 23195, 23225, 23381,
23424, 23475, 23495, 23522, 23536,
23571, 23598, 23607, 23626, 23642,
23658, 23676, 23737, 23756, 23772,
24006, 24045, 24136, 24374, 24378,
24392, 24694, 24709, 24726, 24734,
24735, 24932, 25052, 25058, 25073,
25110, 25183, 2616, 2617, 2621,
2629, 2657, 2659, 26704, 26705,
2704, 2705, 2710, 2777, 2795

exp internal commands:
\__exp_last_unbraced:nn \ 2458
\__exp_arg_next:NN \ 2258, 2265
\__exp_arg_next:NNn \ 381, 2258, 2267, 2275, 2279, 2292, 2298
\__exp_e:NN \ 2600, 2630
\__exp_e:nn \ 383, 390, 2347
\__exp_e:NNn \ 2478, 2506, 2610, 2621, 2629, 2657,
2659, 2704, 2705, 2710, 2777, 2795
\__exp_e:N \ 2630, 2639
\__exp_e_end:nn \ 390, 2596, 2729
\__exp_e:expandable:NN \ 391, 2630
\__exp_e:group:n \ 2603, 2617
\__exp_e_if_toks_register:N \ 2841
\__exp_e_if_toks_register:NTF \ 2792, 2841
\__exp_e_noexpand:NNn \ 2650, 2685, 2707
\__exp_e_primitive:N \ 2652, 2660
\__exp_e_primitive_aux:NNnn \ 2660
\__exp_e_primitive_aux:NNw \ 2660
\__exp_e_primitive_other:NNn \ 2660
\__exp_e_primitive_other_aux:nNNnn \ 2660
\__exp_e_protected:NNn \ 391, 2630
\__exp_e_end:nn \ 2603, 2617
\__exp_e_put:nn \ 2607, 2615
\__exp_e_the:N \ 2773
\__exp_e_the:Nn \ 2651, 2686, 2773
\__exp_e_the_errhelp: \ 2841
\__exp_e_the_everycr: \ 2841
\__exp_e_the_everydisplay: \ 2841
\__exp_e_the_everyeof: \ 2841
\__exp_e_the_everyhbox: \ 2841
\__exp_e_the_everyjob: \ 2841
\__exp_e_the_everymath: \ 2841
\__exp_e_the_everypar: \ 2841
\__exp_e_the_everyjob: \ 2841
\__exp_e_the_everyvbox: \ 2841
\__exp_e_the_output: \ 2841
\__exp_e_the_pdfpageattr: \ 2841
\__exp_e_the_pdfpageresources: \ 2841
\__exp_e_the_pdfpkmode: \ 2841
\__exp_e_the_pdfpageattr: \ 2841
\__exp_e_the_toks:N \ 2841
\__exp_e_the_toks:n \ 2789, 2813
\__exp_e_the_toks:wnn \ 2788, 2813
\__exp_e_the_XeTeXinterchartoks: \ 2841
\__exp_e_unexpanded:NNn \ 2712
\__exp_e_unexpanded:NN \ 393, 2712
\__exp_e_unexpanded:nn \ 2712
\__exp_e_unexpanded:nnn \ 2649, 2684, 2712
\__exp_eval_error_msg:w \ 2302
\__exp_eval_register:N \ 2293, 2299, 2302, 2355,
2360, 2366, 2372, 2400, 2406, 2418,
2419, 2426, 2433, 2464, 2499, 2492,
2494, 2509, 2523, 2532, 2577, 2582
file commands:
\file_add_path:nN  .......  36433
\file_compare_timestamp:nNn  ....  97
\file_compare_timestamp:nNnNTF  ..........  97, 11207
\file_compare_timestamp_p:nNn  ..........  97, 11207
\g_file_curr_dir_str  ...  97, 10746, 11305, 11311, 11324
\g_file_curr_ext_str  ...........  97, 10746, 11307, 11313, 11326
\g_file_curr_name_str  ...........  93, 9080, 9207, 10746, 11306, 11312, 11325, 36446
\g_file_current_name_tl  ......  36445
\g_file_full_name:n  ...  94, 10913, 11012, 11072, 11080, 11086, 11132, 11211, 11212, 35372, 35377
\g_file_get:nnN  ...........  94, 10872, 10872, 10872, 10872, 10872, 36546, 36548, 36550, 36552
\g_file_get:nnNNTF  ....  94, 10872, 10872, 10874
\g_file_get_full_name:nN  ...........  94, 344, 11003, 36434
\g_file_get_full_name:nNNTF  ....  94, 10095, 10879, 11003, 11005, 11017, 11018, 11261, 11267, 11272, 11284
\g_file_get_hex_dump:nN  ....  95, 11148
\g_file_get_hex_dump:nnNN  ..........  95, 11192
\g_file_get_hex_dump:nnNNNTF  ..........  95, 11192, 11194
\g_file_get_hex_dump:nnNTF  ..........  95, 11148, 11149
\g_file_get_mdfive_hash:nN  ...........  96, 11150, 11158
\g_file_get_mdfive_hash:nN\file_get_size:n ...........  11148
\g_file_get_mdfive_hash:nN\file_get_size:nNTF  ..........  11148
\g_file_get_mdfive_hash:nNNTF  96, 11151
\g_file_get_size:nN  ..........  96
\g_file_get_size:nNNTF  ..........  96, 11153
\g_file_get_timestamp:nN  ..........  96, 11148
\g_file_get_timestamp:nNNTF  ..........  96, 11148, 11155
\g_file_hex_dump:nN  ...........  95, 11083
\g_file_hex_dump:nnNN  ..........  95, 11083, 11201, 35354
\g_file_if_exist:nNTF  ...........  97, 9, 11259, 11570, 11572, 11576, 13975, 36436, 36438
\g_file_if_exist_input:n  ..........  97, 11265
\g_file_if_exist_input:nNTF  ..........  97, 11265, 36435, 36437
\g_file_input:n  ...........  97, 11252, 13979, 36436, 36438
\g_file_input_stop: ..........  97, 11276
\g_file_list: ...........  36439
\g_file_log_list:  ....  97, 11385, 36440
\g_file_mdfive_hash:n  ..........  96, 11065
\g_file_parse_full_name:n  95, 646, 11328
\g_file_parse_full_name:nnNN  ..........  95, 11042, 11309, 11373
\g_file_parse_full_name:apply:nN  ..........  95, 646, 11328, 11375
\g_file_path:include:n  ..........  36441
\g_file_path:remove:n  ..........  36443
\g_file_search_path_seq  ....  94–97, 10780, 10927, 11027, 36442, 36444
\g_file_shows_list:  ...........  97, 11385
\g_file_size:n  ..........  96, 11065
\g_file_timestamp:n  ..........  96, 11065

file internal commands:
\l_file_search_path_seq  ....  94–97, 10780, 10927, 11027, 36442, 36444
\l_file_shows_list:  ...........  97, 11385
\l_file_size:n  ..........  96, 11065
\l_file_timestamp:n  ..........  96, 11065
\l_file_base_name_tl  ...........  10775, 11024, 11060
\l_file_compare_timestamp:nNn  ....  1207
\l_file_const:nN  ..........  11584
\l_file_details:nN  ..........  11065
\l_file_details_aux:nN  ....  11065, 11100
\l_file_dir_str  ...........  10777, 11043, 11310, 11311
\l_file_ext_check:nN  ...........  10936, 10948, 10955
\l_file_ext_check:nN  ...........  10970, 10975
\l_file_ext_check:nNn  ..........  10976, 10977
\l_file_ext_check:nnNn  ..........  10961, 10966
\l_file_ext_check:nnNn  ..........  10956, 10957, 10964
Index

\_\_file_tmp:w .......................... \floatingpenalty .......................... 264
\_\_file_tmp_seq ........................ \floor .................................. 253
10751, 10755, 10759, 10765, 10771 \fmtname .................................. 97, 8736, 8739,
11392, 11395, 11396, 11398, 11406, 8740, 8752, 8762, 29658, 29659,
11411, 11482, 11484, 11507, 11511 32786, 32787, 33670, 33671, 35575
\filedum p .................................. 766 \font .................................. 265
\filemoddate ................................ \fontcharp ................................ 521
\filesize .................................. \fontcharht ................................ 522
\finalhyphenemerges ...................... \fontcharic ................................ 523
\firstmark .................................. \fontcharwd ................................ 524
\firstmarks .................................. \fontdimen ................................ 949, 266
\firstvalidlangu age ..................... \fontencoding .............................. 31529
\c\_five .................................. \fontfamily ................................. 31530
\fontid .................................. 810
\fontsize .................................. \fontit .................................. 267
\fontshape .................................. \fontserseries ......................... 31531
\fontsize .................................. \fontshape .................................. 31532
\fontnotesize .............................. \fontshape .................................. 31535
\forcecjktoken ......................... 1160
\formatname ................................ \forcecjktoken ......................... 1160
\c\_four .................................. \formatname ................................ 811
\c\_fourteen .............................. \formatname ................................ 36391
\c\_fourteen .............................. \formatname ................................ 36411

fp commands:
\c\_e\_fp .................................. \c\_e\_fp .................................. 247, 249, 24503
flag\_fp\_division\_by\_zero ........................ 248, 22172
flag\_fp\_invalid\_operation .................. 248, 22172
flag\_fp\_overflow .......................... 248, 22172
flag\_fp\_underflow ........................ 248, 22172
\fp\_add\_Nn ................................ \c\_e\_fp .................................. 247, 249, 24503
\fp\_compare\_Nn\_TF ........................ 243–245,
24634, 24775, 24781, 24786, 24794,
24855, 24861, 32312, 32314, 32319,
32588, 32603, 32612, 33127, 33359,
34275, 34279, 34287, 34294, 34301,
34308, 34315, 34728, 34731, 35177
\fp\_compare\_TF .............................. 243–245,
251, 24618, 24747, 24753, 24758, 24766
\fp\_compare\_p\_n ................................ \fp\_compare\_p\_n ................................ 244, 24618
\fp\_compare\_p\_n\_Nn .................... 243, 24634
\fp\_const\_Nn ................................ \fp\_compare\_p\_n ................................ 244, 24634
\c\_e\_fp .................................. 247, 249, 24503
\fp\_do\_until\_nNn ......................... 245, 24772
\fp\_do\_until\_n\_Nn ......................... 244, 24772
\fp\_do\_while\_n ...... \fp\_do\_while\_n .... 245, 24744
\fp\_do\_while\_n\_Nnn ........................ 244, 24772
\fp\_eval\_n ................................ \fp\_eval\_n ................................ 241,
244, 251–257, 1043, 28196, 33977,
33979, 33985, 33989, 33990, 33991,
33995, 33998, 33999, 34000, 34149,
34159, 34163, 34164, 34165, 34170,
\fp_to_decimal:n
\fp_to_decimal:N
\fp_step_variable:nnnNn
\fp_step_inline:nnnn
\fp_step_function:nnnN
\fp_sign:n
\fp_show:n
\fp_set:Nn
\fp_new:N
\fp_max:nn
\fp_log:n
\fp_if_nan_p:n
\fp_if_nan:n
\fp_if_exist_p:N
\fp_gzero_new:N
\fp_gzero:N
\fp_gsub:Nn
\fp_gset_eq:NN
\fp_gset:Nn
\fp_show:N
\fp_set_eq:NN
\fp_to_dim:N
\fp_to_decimal:n
\fp_to_decimal:N
\fp_to_int:N
\fp_to_int:n
\fp_to_scientific:N
\fp_to_scientific:n
\fp_to_t1:n
\fp_format:nn
\fp_to_tl:n
\fp_to_scientific:nn
\fp_zero_new:N
\fp_zero:N
\fp_while_do:nNnn
\fp_while_do:nn
\fp_use:N
\fp_until_do:nNnn
\fp_until_do:nn
\fp_to_int:N
\fp_to_dim:n
\c_one_fp
\c_minus_inf_fp
\c_pi_fp
\c_one_degree_fp

\l_tmpb_fp
\l_tmpa_fp
\g_tmpa_fp
\c_one_fp
\c_zero_fp
Index

\_fp_round:Nww ... 23030, 23044
\_fp_round_aux:o:Nw .......... 23017
\_fp_round_digit:Nw .......... 23017

.............. 977, 991, 1068, 1069, 1085, 22600, 22984, 25178, 25321, 25422, 25434, 25587, 25773
\_fp_round_name_from_cs:N ....

.... 23020, 23040, 23066, 23070, 23093
\_fp_round_neg:NNN ...... 989, 992, 1065, 22995, 25283, 25298, 25316
\_fp_round_no_arg:o:Nw 23027, 23034
\_fp_round_normal:NNwwNnn ... 23081
\_fp_round_normal:NWWNww ... 23081
\_fp_round_normal:NNWWNww ... 23081
\_fp_round_normal_end:wwNnn ... 23081
\_fp_round_o:Nw ........... 22885, 22887, 22889, 22893, 23017
\_fp_round_pack:Nw .......... 23081
\_fp_round_return_one: ....... 989, 22900, 22906, 22916, 22924, 22928, 22937, 22941, 22950, 22957, 22961, 22999, 23010
\_fp_round_s:NNww ............. 989, 991, 1069, 22968, 23660, 23678
\_fp_round_special:NWWNnn ... 23081
\_fp_round_special_aux:Nw ... 23081
\_fp_round_to_nearest:NNN ....

.............. 922, 923, 22893, 22896, 22900, 23004, 23036, 23046, 28159
\_fp_round_to_nearest_neg:NNN 22995
\_fp_round_to_nearest_ninf:N ..

.............. 993, 22900, 23015
\_fp_round_to_nearest_ninf:-neg:NNN .. 22995
\_fp_round_to_nearest_pinf:N ....

.............. 993, 22900, 23006
\_fp_round_to_nearest_pinf:-neg:NNN .......... 22995
\_fp_round_to_nearest_zero:N ....

.............. 993, 22900
\_fp_round_to_nearest_zero:-neg:NNN ........ 22995
\_fp_round_to_ninf:N ......... 22887, 22900, 23003, 23074
\_fp_round_to_ninf_neg:NNN ...... 22995
\_fp_round_to_pinf:N .......... 22889, 22900, 22995, 23076
\_fp_round_to_pinf_neg:NNN ...... 22995
\_fp_round_to_zero:N .......... 22885, 22900, 23072
\_fp_round_to_zero_neg:NNN ...... 22995
\_fp_sqrt:ww .................. 22326, 27763
\_fp_sanitize:Nw ............ 1060, 1063, 1068, 1071, 1079, 1127,

1142, 1150, 1169, 22384, 23150, 23168, 25107, 25201, 25373, 25454, 25602, 26327, 26570, 26811, 27003, 27604, 27648, 27775, 28291, 28386
\_fp_sanitize:w .............. 1010, 1014, 22384, 23373, 23871
\_fp_sanitize_zero:w .......... 22384
\_fp_sec:o:w ................ 27114
\_fp_set_sign:o:w ............ 23864, 25033, 25084, 25805, 25826
\_fp_show:N ................. 24566
\_fp_show_validate:w .......... 24566
\_fp_sign_aux:o:w ........... 25703
\_fp_sign_o:w ................ 25037, 25703
\_fp_sin:o: .. 981, 1024, 1152, 27069
\_fp_sin_series_aux:o:NWWW .. 27556
\_fp_sin_series_o:NWWW ...... 1130, 1144, 27075, 27090, 27105, 27120, 27556
\_fp_small_int:wTF ........... 1126, 22652, 23083, 26990
\_fp_small_int_normal:NwwTF ... 23052
\_fp_small_int_test:NwwwTF ... 23052
\_fp_small_int_test:NwwNw .... 22671, 22674
\_fp_small_int_true:wTF ...... 25852
\_fp_sqrt_auxi:o:NWWWNwN ...... 25624, 25632
\_fp_sqrt_auxii:o:NnnnnnnnN 

1081, 1083, 25634, 25638, 25718, 25730
\_fp_sqrt_auxiii:o:NnnnnnnnN .... 25635, 25673, 25719
\_fp_sqrt_auxiv:o:NnnnnwN .... 25673
\_fp_sqrt_auxix:o:wwwnw ....... 25707
\_fp_sqrt_auxy:o:NnnnnwN ....... 25707
\_fp_sqrt_auxii:o:NnnnnwN ...... 25707
\_fp_sqrt_auxvii:o:nnnnnnnn ...... 25695, 25697, 25699, 25705, 25707
\_fp_sqrt_auxv:o:nnnnnnnnn ...... 25703, 25721
\_fp_sqrt_auxx:o:nnnnn ...... 25721
\_fp_sqrt_auxxi:o:wwwnwN ....... 25721
\_fp_sqrt_auxxii:o:nnnnnnnn ....... 25731, 25735
\_fp_sqrt_auxxiv:o:wwnnnnnn .... 25474, 25747, 25750, 25758, 25760
\_fp_sqrt_Newton:o:wwn ........ 1080, 25609, 25620, 25621
\_fp_sqrt_npos_auxi:o:wwnnN .... 25600
\_fp_sqrt_npos_auxii:o:wwnnnnnN ............ 25600
\_fp_sqrt_npos_o:w ..... 25597, 25600
\_fp_sqrt_o:w ................ 25039, 25590
Index

\__fp_use_none_until_s:w ............
  22222, 25626, 26923, 27844, 27847
\__fp_use_s:n ..................... 22220
\__fp_use_s:nn .................... 22220
\__fp_zero_fp:N 22362, 22808, 23156
\__fp_l:o:ww ..................... 1045, 24957
\__fp_l:tuple_o:ww ............... 24957
parray commands:
\fparray_count:N .................
  260, 28551, 28563, 28574, 28630
\fparray_get:Nn ... 260, 1176, 28576
\fparray_gzero:N ................. 260, 28627
\fparray_item:Nn ... 260, 1176, 28640
\fparray_item_to_tl:Nn ... 260, 28640
\fparray_new:Nn ................. 260, 28524
\futurelet .........................

G
\gdef ............................ 269
get commands:
\get Luadata ........................ 11854
\GetIdInfo ........................ 10, 11411
\gregs ................................ 817
\global ................................ 170, 270
\globaldefs ........................ 271
\glueexpr .......................... 525
\glueshrink ........................ 526
\gluestretch ........................ 527
\gluestretchorder .................. 528
\gluetomu .......................... 530
\group_align_safe_begin/end: 429, 572
\group_align_safe_begin: 71, 565,
  674, 679, 3770, 8466, 8669, 12222,
  12843, 19344, 19365, 19397, 20461,
  20605, 29422, 29797, 31343, 36263
\group_align_safe_end: ............... 71, 674, 679,
  3773, 8468, 8669, 12243, 12826,
  19353, 19362, 19402, 19408, 20464,
  20605, 29434, 29810, 31343, 36271
\group_begin: ....................... 13,
  670, 1310, 1326, 1436, 2169, 2172,
  2175, 2584, 3055, 3246, 3409, 3466,
  3725, 3769, 3776, 3849, 4009, 4193,
  4588, 4680, 5004, 5515, 5849, 6072,
  6173, 6603, 6980, 7260, 7510, 7536,
  7548, 7558, 7567, 7748, 7781, 7902,
  8069, 8714, 8867, 8963, 9270, 9294,
  9310, 9376, 10232, 10442, 10488,
  10750, 10891, 11421, 11959, 12096,
  12318, 12331, 13083, 13110, 13384,
  13407, 13814, 13924, 13977, 14272,
  14320, 14366, 14373, 14702, 14884,
  16439, 16476, 18583, 18589, 18640,
  18706, 18951, 18969, 18993, 19081,
  19100, 19480, 20442, 20581, 20625,
  21686, 24957, 25773, 28995, 29089,
  29135, 29219, 29246, 30747, 30754,
  30783, 31042, 31079, 31239, 31268,
  31299, 31590, 31677, 32086, 33895,
  34067, 34564, 34652, 34694, 36248
\c_group_begin_token ............... 106, 194, 309, 445, 689, 863,
  3814, 4313, 12689, 12727, 18951,
  18975, 29502, 29507, 32129, 32135,
  32149, 32155, 32233, 32239, 32254,
  32260, 34493, 34494, 34501, 36286
\group_end: ....................... 13, 14, 442, 549, 790,
  1183, 1186, 1310, 1436, 2169, 2172,
  2178, 2593, 3058, 3249, 3413, 3454,
  3663, 3739, 3774, 3795, 3856, 4033,
  4184, 4609, 5037, 5045, 5528,
  5853, 6132, 6180, 6187, 6195, 6607,
  6608, 7017, 7524, 7515, 7543, 7631,
  7775, 7821, 7903, 7904, 8673, 8733,
  8884, 8991, 9289, 9302, 9321, 9530,
  10238, 10446, 10517, 10773, 10909,
  11424, 11962, 12118, 12168, 12321,
  12335, 13101, 13133, 13389, 13412,
  13824, 13937, 13980, 14285, 14332,
  14391, 14453, 14883, 15015, 16448,
  16486, 16491, 18591, 18589, 18709,
  18725, 18968, 18972, 19000, 19099,
  19148, 19504, 20580, 20606, 20665,
  21700, 24981, 25777, 29028, 29144,
  29216, 29233, 29262, 30772, 30782,
  31065, 31093, 31263, 31267, 31294,
  31325, 31359, 31947, 32092, 33896,
  34072, 34567, 34657, 34709, 36252
\c_group_end_token ................. 309, 863,
  3817, 18051, 18980, 29303, 29513,
  32143, 32248, 34497, 34505, 36287
\group_insert_after:N ............. 14,
  1422, 4596, 33906, 34497, 34498, 34511
\group_log_list: ................... 14, 2181
\group_show_list: .................. 14, 2181

groups commands:
  .groups:n ...................... 224, 21161

H
\H 29380, 31720, 31867, 31868, 31895, 31896
\halign ........................... 272
\hangafter ......................... 273
\hangindent ....................... 274
\hbadness ........................ 275
\hbox ............................. 276
Index

hbox commands:
\hbox:n ........................................ 270, 274, 32100, 32227, 32623, 33679  
\hbox_gset:Nn ............................. 283, 32720  
\hbox_gset:Nw .................................. 283, 32720  
\hbox_gset_end: ................................ 283, 32720  
\hbox_gset_to_wd:Nnn ....................... 283, 32720  
\hbox_overlap_center:n ................. 283, 32720  
\hbox_overlap_left:n ..................... 283, 32720  
\hbox_overlap_right:n .................... 283, 32720  
\hbox_set:N .................................. 270, 274, 275, 288, 32102, 32229, 32323, 32324, 32411, 32458, 32478, 32498, 32515, 32536, 32565, 32573, 32596, 32724, 33165, 33188, 33445, 33532, 33811, 33860, 35680, 35693, 35701, 35709, 35718, 35727, 35744, 35752, 35760, 35766, 35779  
\hbox_set:Nw ............................. 275, 32112, 32177  
\hbox_set:end: .................................. 275, 32112  
\hbox_set_to_wd:Nnn ............... 275, 32112, 32114  
\hbox_to_wd:n .................................. 275, 32112  
\hbox_to_zero:n ......................... 275, 32112  
\hbox_unpack:N .................................. 275, 32112, 33449  
\hbox_unpack_clear:N .................... 36447  
\hbox_unpack_drop:N ..................... 278, 32112, 36448  

coffin commands:
\coffin_gset:N .................................. 283, 32720  
\coffin_gset:Nw ............................. 283, 32720  
\coffin_gset_end: ......................... 283, 32720  
\coffin_set:N .................................. 283, 32720  
\coffin_set:Nw ............................. 283, 32720  
\coffin_set_end: ......................... 283, 32720  
\fi .............................................. 1108  
\fi .......................................... 277  
\fi .......................................... 278  
\fi .......................................... 279  
\hjcode ..................................... 812  
\hoffset .................................. 281  
\holdinginserts .......................... 282  

hook commands:
\hook_gput_code:nn .......................... 28902, 28904  
\hpack ...................................... 813  
\hrule ...................................... 283  
\hspace ...................................... 284  
\hskip ...................................... 285  
\hss ........................................ 286  

\ht ................................................................ 287  
\huge .......................................... 31568  
\huge .......................................... 31572  
\hyphenation ................................ 288  
\hyphenationbounds ......................... 814  
\hyphenationmin ............................. 815  
\hyphenchar ................................ 289  
\hyphenpenalty ............................. 290  
\hyphenpenaltymode .......................... 816  

I
\iff ............................................ 225, 291  
if commands:
\iff ............................................ 28, 181, 362, 363  
400, 406, 676, 677, 680, 690, 691, 704, 1407, 1767, 2063, 2064, 2047, 2950, 2951, 2952, 2953, 2968, 2969, 2970, 2971, 2972, 2973, 2974, 2975, 2976, 3040, 3041, 3043, 4905, 12272, 12282, 12378, 12741, 12761, 12776, 13209, 13216, 13221, 17601, 19265, 23085, 23458, 23462, 23484, 23577, 23609, 23628, 23694, 23708, 23725, 23746, 23785, 23797, 24083, 24125, 24245, 24260, 24612, 26784, 26814, 28321, 29149, 29157, 29174, 29286  
\iff ............................................ 70, 561, 1417, 8268, 8413  
\iff ............................................ 281, 32028, 32050  
\iff ............................................. 167, 710, 712, 714, 819, 978, 1070, 1125, 1169, 1970, 2638, 3825, 4019, 4547, 4819, 5632, 5661, 5718, 6375, 6428, 7049, 7096, 7194, 7503, 8013, 8024, 10602, 13482, 13556, 13890, 14829, 16909, 17492, 17525, 18718, 22386, 22639, 22654, 23025, 23054, 24333, 24374, 25048, 25183, 25258, 25283, 25335, 25779, 25795, 25812, 26089, 26316, 26343, 26501, 26536, 26694, 26739, 26790, 26916, 26939, 26972, 27031, 27071, 27086, 27101, 27116, 27131, 27146, 27672, 27725, 27809, 27824, 27876, 27899, 27973, 28027, 28101, 28318, 28605, 28684, 36280  
\iff ............................................. 28, 689, 876, 1407, 3087, 3814, 3817, 3971, 3973, 3975, 3977, 3979, 3981, 3983, 4205, 4206, 4313, 12684, 12725, 18886, 18889, 18892, 18895, 18898, 18901, 18904, 18975, 18980, 18985, 18990, 18997, 19004,


Index

28559, 28563, 29150, 29319, 30345, 30348, 30349, 30352, 30365, 30368, 30371, 30374, 30377, 30380, 30394, 30397, 30400, 30403, 30406, 30418, 30421, 30424, 30427, 36234, 36242
\if_int_odd:w ........... 168, 1145, 4025, 4204, 4556, 4940, 4948, 4960, 5386, 5701, 16909, 17038, 17208, 17216, 17716, 18619, 18627, 18644, 19485, 22927, 22974, 22986, 24370, 25319, 25605, 26960, 27524, 27563, 27573, 27616, 27640, 27800, 28484
\if_meaning:w ........... 27, 689, 776, 1054, 1198, 1363, 1407, 1618, 1644, 1662, 1724, 1729, 1738, 1791, 1809, 1819, 1837, 1988, 2002, 2124, 2241, 2304, 2305, 23100, 23135, 23138, 23141, 23161, 23176, 23217, 23333, 23334, 2335, 23336, 23339, 24335, 24358, 24554, 24563, 24598, 24672, 24674, 24675, 24666, 24680, 24990, 24921, 24922, 24950, 24962, 24969, 24986, 25049, 25084, 25098, 25144, 25151, 25227, 25239, 25339, 25342, 25353, 25406, 25479, 25549, 25552, 25659, 25692, 25766, 25769, 25771, 25772, 25797, 25798, 27524, 27563, 27573, 27616, 27640, 27800, 28484
\if_mode_horizontal: .. 28, 1418, 8664
\if_mode_inner: ...... 28, 1418, 8666
\if_mode_math: ...... 28, 1418, 8668
\if_mode_vertical: .. 28, 1418, 2251, 8662
\if_predicate:w .... 62, 64, 70, 8368, 8456, 8516, 8531, 8542, 8557, 8568
\if_true: ............. 27, 64, 1407, 11880, 11884, 12767, 12773
\if_vbox:w ............ 281, 30208, 32044
\ifabsdim ............... 903
\ifabsnum ............... 904
\ifcase ................. 292
\ifcat ................ 293
\ifcondition ........... 818
\ifcsname .............. 313, 633, 531
\ifdbox ................ 1109
\ifdir .................. 1110
\ifdefined ............... 33, 532
\ifdim ................. 294
\ifeof .................. 295
\iffalse ................. 296
\iffontchar ............. 533
\ifhbox ................ 297
\ifhmode ................. 298
\ifinsname .............. 677
\ifinner ................. 299
\iffont ................ 1111
\ifmbox .................. 1112
\ifmdir ................ 1113
\ifmode ................ 300
\ifnum ................. 27, 35, 64, 71, 301
\ifodd ................ 302
\ifpdfabsdim ............. 638
\ifpdfabsnum ........... 639
\ifpdfprimitive .......... 640
\ifprimitive ........... 770
\ifbbox ................. 1114
\ifdir ................. 1116
\iffont ................. 1115
\iftrue ................ 303, 11873
\ifvbox ................. 304
\ifvmode ................. 305
\ifvoid ................ 306
\ifx 4, 21, 25, 30, 65, 66, 68, 77, 97, 98, 307
Index

\ifybox .......................... 1117
\ifydir ................................ 1118
\ignoreligaturesinfont .............. 905
\ignorespaces .......................... 308
\IJ .................................... 29388, 31283, 31640
\ij .................................... 29388, 31283, 31652
\immediate ................................ 309
\immediateassigned .................... 819
\immediateassignment ................... 820
\in ...................................... 257
\indent .................................. 310
\int ...................................... 23336, 23337

\inherit:n .............................. 225, 21163
\inhibitglue ............................. 1119
\inhibitxspcode .......................... 1120
\initialcataliasable ..................... 821

\initial:n ................................ 225, 21165
\input ................................... 31, 311
\inputlineno ................................ 312
\insert ................................... 313
\insertht ................................... 906
\insertpenalties .......................... 314

\int ...................................... 156, 804, 16038, 22123
\int_add:N ................................. 158, 4530, 5073, 6510, 6511, 6709, 6841, 10697, 17068
\int_case:nn ................................ 160, 804, 17176, 17355, 17361, 29068, 30499, 30514, 30577
\int_case:nnn ............................... 36449
\int_case:nTF ................................ 160, 4288, 8334, 16812, 17176, 17181, 17186, 18309, 23245, 27922, 36450
\int_compare:nTF ......................... 158-161, 243, 3321, 4151, 4574, 4586, 4739, 5066, 5068, 5933, 6718, 7072, 7231, 7623, 7815, 8351, 8743, 8749, 9095, 10397, 10510, 10982, 11106, 11116, 11464, 11507, 12099, 12127, 12142, 12150, 12887, 12894, 12961, 13445, 13447, 13456, 14144, 14220, 15027, 16433, 16622, 16629, 17019, 17025, 17168, 17200, 17252, 17260, 17269, 17275, 17287, 17290, 17351, 17439, 17445, 17451, 17471, 17625, 17644, 17646, 17688, 18381, 18383, 18388, 18397, 18417, 18434, 18451, 18852, 18936, 20243, 21832, 22061, 22066, 22073, 22181, 22257, 22283, 24701, 25842, 27905, 28050, 28052, 28539, 28749, 28920, 28953, 30025, 30054, 30061, 30141, 30143, 30154, 30200, 30213, 30222, 30263, 30653, 30656, 30696, 30702, 30709, 30723, 34081, 34180, 35082, 35088, 35788, 35951, 35952, 35954, 35956
\int_compare:nTF ......................... 159, 161, 244, 897, 6138, 6178, 8070, 8299, 8300, 8305, 8307, 10137, 10351, 17115, 17224, 17232, 17241, 17247, 28110, 28959, 35976, 35978
\int_compare:p:n ....................... 159, 6185, 17115
\int_compare:p:nN ....................... 159, 5778, 5779, 857, 8974, 9074, 9076, 9078, 10296, 11095, 11096, 17168, 28875, 30082, 30294, 30295, 30454, 30455, 30557, 30558, 30607, 30615, 30616, 30637, 30638, 30680, 34079, 35621, 35622, 35629, 35632, 35633, 35641, 35644, 35645
\int_compare:p:nNn ...................... 157, 4465, 4466, 4467, 4468, 4877, 4878, 4879, 4880, 4881, 4882, 4886, 4887, 4888, 4889, 4890, 4891, 4892, 4893, 4894, 4895, 4896, 4897, 4898, 8888, 8889, 8988, 8989, 8990, 9061, 10068, 10225, 10291, 10292, 13729, 13730, 17015, 17654, 17655, 17656, 17657, 17658, 17659, 17660, 17661, 17662, 17663, 17664, 17665, 17666, 17667, 17712, 17713, 17714, 22349, 22350, 22351, 22352, 22353, 22354, 22355, 22539, 22540, 22541, 22543, 22544, 22545, 22548, 22549, 22550, 22899, 23173, 23174, 23175, 23176, 23177, 23178, 23179, 23180, 23181, 23182, 23183, 23184, 23185, 23186, 23187, 26096, 28258
\int_dec:n ................................ 158, 3481, 3482, 3483, 3546, 3547, 3556, 3556, 3557, 3556, 3567, 3804, 7213, 7290, 7505, 7600, 17080
\int_div_round:nn ...................... 156, 16070
\int_div_truncate:nn ................... 156, 157, 8987, 13845, 13850, 14444, 14452, 14534, 14900, 14911, 16709, 17366, 17464, 17484, 18746, 18764, 18776
\int_do_until:nn ......................... 161, 17222
\int_do_until:nN ......................... 160, 17250
\int_do_until:nNn ....................... 161, 17222
\int_do_while:nn ....................... 161, 17222
\int_do_while:nN ......................... 160, 17250
Index
7211, 7220, 7272, 7289, 7312, 7644,
7652, 8675, 8869, 9003, 9053, 10892,
11239, 12098, 12941, 12990, 13199,
13204, 13521, 13556, 14188, 14987,
17005, 17006, 17019, 17050, 17051,
17102, 17110, 17287, 17290, 17712,
18613, 18628, 19486, 19487, 19488,
20065, 20243, 22055, 22181, 22679,
22905, 22909, 22911, 22915, 22919,
22932, 22945, 22952, 22965, 22977,
22989, 22998, 23001, 23012, 23118,
23123, 24686, 24718, 25702, 25737,
25739, 25740, 25741, 26506, 26573,
26796, 26814, 26837, 26869, 27715,
28075, 28293, 28322, 28422, 28486
int internal commands:
\__int_abs:N . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 16938
\__int_case:nnTF . . . . . . . . . . . . 17176
\__int_case:nw . . . . . . . . . . . . . 17176
\__int_case_end:nw . . . . . . . . . . 17176
\__int_compare:nnN . . . . . . 811, 17115
\__int_compare:NNw . . 810, 811, 17115
\__int_compare:Nw . . . 810, 811, 17115
\__int_compare:w . . . . . . . . 810, 17115
\__int_compare_!=:NNw . . . . . . . 17115
\__int_compare_<:NNw . . . . . . . . 17115
\__int_compare_<=:NNw . . . . . . . 17115
\__int_compare_=:NNw . . . . . . . . 17115
\__int_compare_==:NNw . . . . . . . 17115
\__int_compare_>:NNw . . . . . . . . 17115
\__int_compare_>=:NNw . . . . . . . 17115
\__int_compare_end_=:NNw . 811, 17115
\__int_compare_error: . . . . . . . . .
. . . . . . 809, 810, 17100, 17118, 17120
\__int_compare_error:Nw . . . . . . . .
. . . . . . . . . . . 809–811, 17100, 17140
\__int_const:nN . . . . . . . . . . . . 17015
\__int_constdef:Nw . . . . . . . . . . 17015
\__int_div_truncate:NwNw . . . . . 16970
\__int_eval:w . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .
342, 804, 805, 810, 16909, 16922,
16923, 16927, 16941, 16949, 16950,
16957, 16958, 16972, 16974, 16975,
16992, 16995, 16996, 16997, 17004,
17035, 17069, 17071, 17073, 17075,
17093, 17095, 17118, 17152, 17170,
17208, 17216, 17281, 17282, 17283,
17309, 17492, 17519, 17525, 17552
\__int_eval_end: . . . 16909, 16922,
16927, 16941, 16976, 16992, 16998,
17007, 17035, 17069, 17071, 17073,
17075, 17093, 17095, 17170, 17208,
17216, 17492, 17519, 17525, 17552
\__int_from_alph:N . . . . . . 822, 17609

1451
\__int_from_alph:nN . . . . . 822, 17609
\__int_from_base:N . . . . . . 822, 17626
\__int_from_base:nnN . . . . 822, 17626
\__int_from_roman:NN . . . . . . . . 17668
\c__int_from_roman_C_int . . . . . 17654
\c__int_from_roman_c_int . . . . . 17654
\c__int_from_roman_D_int . . . . . 17654
\c__int_from_roman_d_int . . . . . 17654
\__int_from_roman_error:w . . . . 17668
\c__int_from_roman_I_int . . . . . 17654
\c__int_from_roman_i_int . . . . . 17654
\c__int_from_roman_L_int . . . . . 17654
\c__int_from_roman_l_int . . . . . 17654
\c__int_from_roman_M_int . . . . . 17654
\c__int_from_roman_m_int . . . . . 17654
\c__int_from_roman_V_int . . . . . 17654
\c__int_from_roman_v_int . . . . . 17654
\c__int_from_roman_X_int . . . . . 17654
\c__int_from_roman_x_int . . . . . 17654
\__int_if_recursion_tail_stop:N .
. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 16919, 17681
\__int_if_recursion_tail_stop_do:Nn . . . 16919, 17620, 17637, 17684
\l__int_internal_a_int . . . . . . . 17728
\l__int_internal_b_int . . . . . . . 17728
\c__int_max_constdef_int . . . . . 17015
\__int_maxmin:wwN . . . . . . . . . . . 16938
\__int_mod:ww . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 16970
\__int_pass_signs:wn . . . . . . . . . .
. . . . . . . . . 821, 17599, 17613, 17630
\__int_pass_signs_end:wn . . . . . 17599
\__int_show:nN . . . . . . . . . . . . . 17704
\__int_sign:Nw . . . . . . . . . . . . . 16924
\__int_step:NNnnnn . . . . . . . . . . 17315
\__int_step:NwnnN . . . . . . . . . . . 17278
\__int_step:wwwN . . . . . . . . . . . . 17278
\__int_to_Base:nn . . . . . . . . . . . 17433
\__int_to_base:nn . . . . . . . . . . . 17433
\__int_to_Base:nnN . . . . . . . . . . 17433
\__int_to_base:nnN . . . . . . . . . . 17433
\__int_to_Base:nnnN . . . . . . . . . 17433
\__int_to_base:nnnN . . . . . . . . . 17433
\__int_to_Letter:n . . . . . . . . . . 17433
\__int_to_letter:n . . . . . . . . . . 17433
\__int_to_roman:N . . . . . . . . . . . 17563
\__int_to_roman:w . . . . . . . . . 810,
821, 1440, 16909, 17128, 17566, 17576
\__int_to_Roman_aux:N . . . . . . . . .
. . . . . . . . . . . . . 17575, 17578, 17581
\__int_to_Roman_c:w . . . . . . . . . 17563
\__int_to_roman_c:w . . . . . . . . . 17563
\__int_to_Roman_d:w . . . . . . . . . 17563
\__int_to_roman_d:w . . . . . . . . . 17563
\__int_to_Roman_i:w . . . . . . . . . 17563


\ior commands:
\ior_close:N .............. 86, 302, 10116, 10135, 11038, 11051, 11485, 29145, 29178, 29215, 29232
\ior_get:N ................ 87, 88, 302, 10192, 10272
\ior_get:NNTF ............. 87, 10192, 10193
\ior_get_str:N ............ 36463
\ior_get_term:N ........... 302, 10226
\ior_if_eof:N ............. 616
\ior_if_eof:NNTF .......... 90, 10176, 10198, 10218, 10258, 10277, 11048, 11062
\ior_if_eof:Np:N ........... 90, 10176
\ior_list_streams: ......... 36465
\ior_log:N ................ 86, 10147
\ior_log_list: ............ 87, 10163, 36468
\ior_log_streams: ........ 36467
\ior_map_break: ........... 89, 10241, 10259, 10266, 10278, 10284, 29140, 29211
\ior_map_break:n .......... 89, 10241
\ior_map_inline:Nn ........ 88, 10245, 11483
\ior_map_variable:Nn ...... 88, 10271, 29137
\ior_new:N ................. 86, 10085, 10087, 10088, 11064, 29086
\ior_open:N ................ 86, 645, 10089, 29101, 29146, 29179, 29231
\ior_open:NNTF ............. 86, 10090, 10093
\ior_shell_open:N ........ 302, 11472, 36092
\ior_show:N ................ 86, 10147
\ior_show_list: ............ 87, 10163, 36466
\ior_str_get:N ............. 87, 88, 302, 10205, 10274, 36464
\ior_str_get:NNTF .......... 88, 10205, 10206
\ior_str_get_term:n ....... 302, 10226
\ior_str_map_inline:Nn ...... 88, 89, 10245, 29172, 29202
\ior_str_map_variable:Nn ... 89, 10271
\ioc_term_ior .............. 36429
\ig_tmap_ior .............. 93, 10087
\ig_tmapb_ior ............. 93, 10087
\io internal commands:
\io_list_streams: ........ 36469
\io_log:N ................ 86, 10331, 10349
\io_log:n ................ 92, 624, 625, 8319, 9719, 9854, 9916, 9924, 9932, 10468, 10500, 10505, 14250, 14575, 14763, 22848, 22860, 35432, 35461, 35483, 35499, 35508, 35517, 35532
\io_list_streams: ......... 36469
\io_log:N ................ 86, 10361
\io_log:n ................ 92, 440, 625, 4153, 4157, 9271, 10110, 10159, 10508, 10514, 10552
\io_list_streams: ......... 36469
\io_log:N ................ 86, 10361
\io_log:n ................ 90, 1880, 9480, 9487, 10113, 13041, 36490
\io_list_streams: ......... 36472
\io_new:N ................. 86, 10320, 10322, 10323
\io_newline: .............. 80, 90–92, 345, 591, 621, 698,
Index 1456

\_kernel_intarray_gset_range:-
from clist:Nn ............... 344, 6870, 20212, 22215
\_kernel_intarray_item:Nn ...
........... 344, 953, 958, 1140,
4433, 6818, 6845, 6929, 6930, 6954,
6955, 6963, 6970, 7027, 7031, 7050,
7578, 7768, 7987, 21936, 22144,
22192, 22211, 26713, 26719, 26722,
26725, 27458, 27461, 27464, 27467,
27470, 27473, 27476, 27479, 27482,
28665, 28666, 28667, 28814, 28817
\_kernel_intarray_range_to:-
clist:Nn . 344, 6799, 21997, 22196
\_kernel_iow_open:Nn . 344, 1366,
10097, 10114, 11046, 31061
\_kernel_iow_with:Nn .........
... 345, 491, 621, 628, 6936, 9308,
9521, 9523, 10395, 10409, 13030, 13032
\_kernel_kern:n ....... 345, 1406,
31954, 32326, 32616, 32625, 33190,
33448, 33453, 33535, 33536, 33814,
33815, 35695, 35697, 35746, 35748
\_ kernel_keyval_allow_blank:-
keys_bool .......... 19000,
19008, 19018, 19620, 20411, 20614
\_kernel_msg_error:nm ....
\_kernel_msg_error:mmmm ....
\_kernel_msg_error:mmmmm ...
\_kernel_msg_expandable:-
error:mmn .......... 9681
\_kernel_msg_expandable:-
error:mmmmm .........
\_kernel_msg_info:mmmm ....
\_kernel_msg_new:mmn ....
\_kernel_msg_new:mmmmm ..... 9665
\_kernel_msg_warning:mm ... 9669
\_kernel_patch_deprecation:mmNNn
................. 1373,
36504, 36563, 36568, 36576, 36578,
36580, 36582, 36584, 36586, 36588,
36591, 36593, 36595, 36603, 36606,
36609, 36612, 36615, 36618, 36621,
36623, 36625, 36627, 36629, 36631,
36633, 36635, 36646, 36652, 36658
\_kernel_prefix_arg_replacement:WN
...................... 2202
\g_kernel_prgr_map_int ...........
................. 345, 438, 682, 815,
901, 1406, 4047, 4049, 4069, 4179,
4181, 4197, 8676, 10251, 10253,
10260, 12460, 12462, 12464, 12469,
13323, 13325, 13329, 13334, 16680,
16681, 16687, 16688, 16738, 16740,
16742, 16744, 17321, 17324, 17332,
17335, 17346, 18203, 18205, 18207,
18212, 19859, 19860, 19865, 19867,
20187, 20190, 20194, 20197, 20208,
24872, 24875, 24879, 24882, 24893
\_kernel_primitive:NN .... 316,
173, 178, 179, 180, 181, 182, 183,
184, 185, 186, 187, 188, 189, 190,
191, 192, 193, 194, 195, 196, 197,
198, 199, 200, 201, 202, 203, 204,
205, 206, 207, 208, 209, 210, 211,
212, 213, 214, 215, 216, 217, 218,
219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225,
226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 231, 232,
233, 234, 235, 236, 237, 238, 239,
240, 241, 242, 243, 244, 245, 246,
247, 248, 249, 250, 251, 252, 253,
254, 255, 256, 257, 258, 259, 260,
261, 262, 263, 264, 265, 266, 267,
268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274,
275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281,
282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 288,
289, 290, 291, 292, 293, 294, 295,
296, 297, 298, 299, 300, 301, 302,
303, 304, 305, 306, 307, 308, 309,
310, 311, 312, 313, 314, 315, 316,
317, 318, 319, 320, 321, 322, 323,
324, 325, 326, 327, 328, 329, 330,
331, 332, 333, 334, 335, 336, 337,
338, 339, 340, 341, 342, 343, 344,
345, 346, 347, 348, 349, 350, 351,
352, 353, 354, 355, 356, 357, 358,
359, 360, 361, 362, 363, 364, 365,
366, 367, 368, 369, 370, 371, 372,
373, 374, 375, 376, 377, 378, 379,
380, 381, 382, 383, 384, 385, 386,
387, 388, 389, 390, 391, 392, 393,
394, 395, 396, 397, 398, 399, 400,
401, 402, 403, 404, 405, 406, 407,
408, 409, 410, 411, 412, 413, 414,
415, 416, 417, 418, 419, 420, 421,
422, 423, 424, 425, 426, 427, 428,
429, 430, 431, 432, 433, 434, 435,
436, 437, 438, 439, 440, 441, 442,
443, 444, 445, 446, 447, 448, 449,
450, 451, 452, 453, 454, 455, 456,
457, 458, 459, 460, 461, 462, 463,
Index

\__kernel_tl_gset:Nn .............. 347, 961, 22286, 28433, 28437, 28512
\c_kernel_tl_gset_max_int ..... 1171, 1406, 22283, 28258, 28427, 28511
\__kernel_register_log:N ........ 347, 2149, 17708, 20263, 20264, 20356, 20357, 20424, 20425
\__kernel_register_show:N .. 347, 697, 2149, 17704, 20259, 20352, 20420
\__kernel_register_show_aux:NN 2149
\__kernel_register_show_aux:NN 2149
\__kernel_register_show:N ...... 2167
\__kernel_register_show:NN ...... 2149
\__kernel_register_log:N ... 2149
\__kernel_register_log:N ..... 2167
\__kernel_tl_to_str:w .............. 348, 679, 680, 1433, 12282, 12379, 12510, 13305, 13373, 16001
keys commands:
\l_keys_choice_int . 223, 226, 228, 229, 20674, 20852, 20855, 20860, 20861
\l_keys_choice_tl ......... ........ 223, 226, 228, 229, 20674, 20859
\keys_define:nn .......... 222, 9852, 20703
\keys_if_choice_exist:nnNT ......... ........ 233, 21727
\keys_if_choice_exist_p:nnn .... 233, 21727
\keys_if_choice_exist:nnn .... 233, 21727
\keys_if_exist:nn ...... 233, 21719, 21744
\keys_if_exist:p:nn .... 233, 21719
\l_keys_key_str 230, 20677, 20809, 20934, 21429, 21430, 21529, 21533, 21558, 21561, 21562, 21598, 21655
\l_keys_key_tl ........ 20677, 21430
\keys_log:nn ........ 233, 21735
\l_keys_path_str 230, 20682, 20731, 20750, 20757, 20765, 20766, 20767, 20784, 20802, 20804, 20806, 20821, 20824, 20828, 20836, 20838, 20839, 20842, 20857, 20871, 20881, 20886, 20896, 20900, 20907, 20912, 20916, 20917, 20927, 20929, 20931, 20945, 20951, 20955, 20957, 20972, 20983, 20989, 20993, 21009, 21018, 21060, 21071, 21112, 21420, 21428, 21466, 21469, 21508, 21512, 21517, 21526, 21540, 21542, 21543, 21545, 21555, 21578, 21608, 21631, 21643, 21652
\l_keys_path_tl . 20682, 20767, 20828
\keys_set:nn .............. 222, 225, 230, 231, 20947, 20951, 21267
\keys_set:nn .......... 222, 21347
\keys_set:nnnN .......... 222, 21347
\keys_set:nnnN .......... 222, 21347
\keys_set:groups:nnn .... 222, 21347
\keys_set:known:nnn .... 231, 21296
\keys_set:known:nnnN .... 231, 21296
\keys_set:known:NNN ...... 231, 21296
\keys_set:known:nnnN .... 231, 21296
\keys_set:show:nn ........ 233, 21735
\l_keys_usage_load_prop ........ .... 230, 20696, 21029, 21035, 21042
\l_keys_usage_preamble_prop .... .... 230, 20696, 21030, 21037, 21044
\l_keys_value_tl 230, 20692, 21009, 21511, 21515, 21521, 21532, 21543, 21562, 21575, 21600, 21610, 21638
keys internal commands:
\__keys_bool_set:Nn ........ 20792, 21086, 21088, 21090, 21092
\_\_keys\_bool\_set:Nnnn
\_\_keys\_bool\_set\_inverse:NN
\_\_keys\_check\_forbidden:
\_\_keys\_check\_groups:
\_\_keys\_check\_required:
C\_\_keys\_check\_root\_str:
\_\_keys\_choice\_find:n
\_\_keys\_choice\_find:nn
\_\_keys\_choice\_make:
\_\_keys\_choice\_make:N
\_\_keys\_choice\_make\_aux:N
\_\_keys\_choices\_make:nn
\_\_keys\_choices\_make:Nnn
\_\_keys\_cmd\_set:nn
\_\_keys\_default\_inherit:
C\_\_keys\_default\_root\_str
\_\_keys\_default\_set:n
\_\_keys\_define:n
\_\_keys\_define:nn
\_\_keys\_define:nnn
\_\_keys\_define\_aux:nn
\_\_keys\_define\_code:n
\_\_keys\_define\_code:w
\_\_keys\_execute:
\_\_keys\_execute:nn
\_\_keys\_execute\_inherit:
\_\_keys\_execute\_unknown:
\l\_\_keys\_filtered\_bool
\_\_keys\_find\_key\_module:wNN
\_\_keys\_find\_key\_module\_auxii:NN
\_\_keys\_find\_key\_module\_auxiii:NN
\_\_keys\_find\_key\_module\_auxxiv:NN
\l\_\_keys\_groups\_clist
\c\_\_keys\_groups\_root\_str
\_\_keys\_groups\_set:n
\_\_keys\_inherit:n
\c\_\_keys\_inherit\_root\_str
\l\_\_keys\_inherit\_str
\_\_keys\_initialise:n
\_\_keys\_initialise\_in:
\_\_keys\_initialise\_out:
\_\_keys\_initialise\_root:
\l\_\_keys\_module\_str
\_\_keys\_multichoice\_find:n
\_\_keys\_multichoice\_make:
\_\_keys\_multichoices\_make:nn
\l\_\_keys\_no\_value\_bool
\_\_keys\_only\_known\_bool
\_\_keys\_parent:n
\l\_\_keys\_parent\_auxi:w
\_\_keys\_parent\_auxii:w
\_\_keys\_parent\_auxiii:w
\_\_keys\_parent\_auxiv:w
\l\_\_keys\_root\_str
\_\_keys\_search\_forbidden:
\_\_keys\_search\_groups:
\_\_keys\_search\_required:
\c\_\_keys\_code\_root\_str
\_\_keys\_cs\_set:NNpn
\_\_keys\_default\_inherit:
\c\_\_keys\_default\_root\_str
\_\_keys\_default\_set:n
\_\_keys\_execute:
\_\_keys\_execute:nn
\_\_keys\_execute\_inherit:
\_\_keys\_execute\_unknown:
\l\_\_keys\_filtered\_bool
\_\_keys\_find\_key\_module\_auxii:NN
\_\_keys\_find\_key\_module\_auxiii:NN
\_\_keys\_find\_key\_module\_auxxiv:NN
keyval commands:
\keyval_parse:NNn  235, 918, 20445, 20708, 21293
\keyval_parse:nn  234, 235, 912, 917, 19619, 20445
\keyval_clean_up_active:w  915, 20484, 20497, 20518, 20550, 20570
\keyval_clean_up_other:w  916, 20523, 20528, 20539
\keyval_end_loop_active:w  20471, 20564
\keyval_end_loop_other:w  916, 20481, 20564
\keyval_if_blank:w  20542, 20586, 20595, 20607
\keyval_if_empty:w  20007
\keyval_if_recursion_tail:w  20470, 20480, 20607
\keyval_key:nnn  916, 20544, 20581, 20610
\keyval_loop_active:w  20452, 20462, 20468, 20571
\keyval_loop_other:nnn  913, 20472, 20478, 20554, 20562, 20574, 20591, 20600, 20611, 20612, 20617
\keyval_misplaced_equal_after-_active_error:w  914, 20491, 20495, 20546
\keyval_misplaced_equal_in_-split_error:w  20502, 20507, 20511, 20515, 20531, 20536, 20546
\keyval_pair:nnnn  915, 20517, 20538, 20581
\keyval_split_active:w  913, 914, 20474, 20482, 20501, 20566
\keyval_split_active_auxi:w  20483, 20488, 20519, 20569
\keyval_split_active_auxii:w  914, 20488, 20548
\keyval_split_active_auxiii:w  914, 20488
\keyval_split_active_auxiv:w  914, 20488
\keyval_split_other:w  20474, 20490, 20510, 20521, 20530
\keyval_split_other_auxi:w  915, 20522, 20525, 20540
\keyval_split_other_auxii:w  20525
\keyval_tmp:w  917, 20443, 20579, 20582, 20604, 20605, 20626, 20664
\keyval_trim:n  20498, 20517, 20526, 20538, 20544, 20610, 20625
\keyval_trim_auxi:w  20625
\keyval_trim_auxii:w  20625
\keyval_trim_auxiii:w  20625
\keyval_trim_auxiv:w  20625
\kuten

L
\L  29389, 31284, 31641
\l  29389, 31284, 31653
\label  29397, 29404, 31589
\language  318
\LARGE  31569
\Large  31570
\large  31573
\lastallocatedtoks  3372
\lastbox  319
\lastkern  320
\lastlinefit  536
\lastnamedcs  822
\lastnodechar  1130
\lastnodesubtype  1131
\lastnodetype  537
\lastpenalty  321
\lastsavedboxresourceindex  907
\lastsavedimageresourceindex  909
\lastsavedimageresourcepages  911
\lastskip  322
\lastxpos  913
\lastypos  914
\latexua  823
\lateluafunction  824
\lccode  323
\leaders  324
\left  325
\leftghost  825
\lefthyphenmin  326
\leftmargin kern  678
\leftskip  327
\legacy if
\legacy_if:nTF  100, 11871
\legacy_if_gset:n  225, 21181
\legacy_if_gset:nn  100, 11887
\legacy_if_gset_false:n  100, 11870, 11894
\legacy_if_gset_inverse:n  225, 21181
\legacy_if_gset_true:n  100, 11870, 11894
\legacy_if_p:n  100, 11871
Index

1462

\legacy_if_set:n \ 225, 21181 \luatexcodecall \ 832
\legacy_if_set:nn \ 100, 11887 \luatexcopyinputnodes \ 833
\legacy_if_set_false:n \ \ 100, 11879, 11889 \ludef \ 844
\legacy_if_set_inverse:n \ 225, 21181 \luadef \ 11796
\legacy_if_set_true:n \ \ 100, 11879, 11889 \luaescapestring \ 837
\let \ 328 \luafunction \ 838
\letcharcode \ 826 \luafunctioncall \ 839
\letterspacefont \ 679 \lua \ 840
\limits \ 1324, 330 \luaalignmark \ 1233
\LineBreak \ 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 76, 78 \luaalignp: \ 36479
\linedir \ 827 \luaattributedef \ 1236
\linedirection \ 828 \luabanner \ 840
\linepenalty \ 331 \luabodydir \ 1272
\lineskip \ 332 \luaboxdir \ 1273
\lineskiplimit \ 333 \luacontextodef \ 1237
\linewidth \ 32789 \luaforwardmark \ 1238
\loccount \ 26838, 26841 \luaformatname \ 1245
\localbrokenpenalty \ 252 \luaformatleaders \ 1246
\localinterlinepenalty \ 829 \luaforwardmarkstyle \ 1247
\localleftbox \ 830 \luaformatindex \ 1239
\localrightbox \ 835 \luaforwardtabspace \ 1248
\loccount \ 836 \luaforwardtabspaceafter \ 1249
\localtable \ 10079, 10310 \luaforwardtabstop \ 1240
\loctoks \ 32789, 3344, 3345, 3371 \luaforwardtabstopafter \ 1241
\logb \ 252 \luaforwardtext \ 1242
\long \ 173, 334, 19137, 19141 \luaformatnameafter \ 1243
\LongText \ 51, 88 \luaformatnameafterstyle \ 1244
\looseness \ 335 \luaformatnameaftertext \ 1245
\lower \ 336 \luaformatnameaftertextafter \ 1246
\lowercase \ 337 \luaformatnameaftertextafterstyle \ 1247
\lpcode \ 680 \luaformatnameaftertextaftertext \ 1248
\ltxutils \ 99, 11635 \luaformatnameaftertextaftertextafter \ 1249
\ltxutilsfiledump \ 99, 11703 \luaformatnameaftertextaftertextafterstyle \ 1250
\ltxutilsfileemd5sum \ 99, 11724 \luaformatnameaftertextaftertextaftertext \ 1251
\ltxutilsfilemoddate \ 99, 11733 \luaformatnameaftertextaftertextaftertextafter \ 1252
\ltxutilsfilesize \ 99, 11786 \luaformatnameaftertextaftertextaftertextafterstyle \ 1253
lua commands:
\luaescape: 99, 11594, 11596, 36474 \luaescapebottomoffset \ 1254
\luaescapex: 36473 \luaexpagedir \ 1281
\luaescape:x: 98, 8715, 8724, 11595, 11596, 28915, 36476 \luaexpageheight \ 1282
\luaescape:x:n \ 36475 \luaexpagerightoffset \ 1283
\luaexpagewx:n \ 98, 11596 \luaexpagetooffset \ 1284
\luaexpagewx:n \ 98, 11596, 36478 \luaexpagewwidth \ 1285
\luaexpardir \ 36477 \luaexpartment \ 1286
lua internal commands:
\\_luaescape:n \ 11591, 11601 \luaexpartment \ 1257
\\_luaescapex:n \ 11591, 11596 \luaexpartment \ 1258
\\_luaescapex:n \ 11591, 11598 \luaexpartment \ 1259
\\_luaescapex:n \ 11591, 11598 \luaexpartment \ 1260
\\luaescape \ 831 \luaexprevision \ 841
Index

\luatextrighthost ............................. 1287
\luatexsavetocodetable ...................... 1261
\luatexscantextokens ....................... 1262
\luatexsuppressnotfounderror ............. 1232, 1271
\luatexsuppresifcnsnameerror ............. 1264
\luatexsuppreslongerror .................... 1265
\luatexsuppresmathparerror ............... 1267
\luatexsuppresoutererror .................. 1268
\luatextextdir .............................. 1288
\luatexUchar ................................ 1269
\luatexversion .............................. 27, 71, 842
\medmuskip .................................. 357
\message ..................................... 358
\MessageBreak ................................ 76
\meta commands:
  \meta:n ....................................... 225, 21189
  \meta:nn ...................................... 225, 21191
\middle ....................................... 539
\min ........................................... 253
\nc_minus_one ................................ 36381
\mkern ........................................ 359
\mm ............................................. 257
\mode commands:
  \mode_if_horizontal:TF ...................... 70, 8663
  \mode_if_horizontal_p: ..................... 70, 8663
  \mode_if_inner:TF ........................... 70, 8665
  \mode_if_inner_p: ......................... 70, 8665
  \mode_if_math:TF ............................ 70, 8667
  \mode_if_math_p: ........................... 70, 8667
  \mode_if_vertical:TF ....................... 70, 8661
  \mode_if_vertical_p: ....................... 70, 8661
  \mode_leave_vertical: ..................... 28, 2249, 33617, 33678
\month ........................................ 360, 1311, 8989
\moveleft .................................... 361
\moveright ................................... 362
\msg commands:
  \msg_critical:nnnnnn ........................ 81, 97, 9428
  \msg_critical:nnnnnnn ....................... 81, 9428
  \msg_critical:nnnnnnnn ..................... 81, 9428
  \msg_critical:nnnnnnnnn ................... 81, 9428
  \msg_critical:nnnnnnnnnn .................. 81, 9428
  \msg_critical:nnnnnnnnnnn ................... 81, 9428
  \msg_critical_text:n ....................... 79, 9328, 9431
  \msg_error:nnn .............................. 81, 1961, 4986, 5019,
                                             5067, 5070, 5543, 5814, 7229, 7313,
                                             8774, 9436, 28862, 28907, 33063, 36096
  \msg_error:nnnnnnnnnnnn ..................... 81, 1546, 1551, 1619, 1674, 1725,
                                             1730, 1861, 2057, 2145, 2919, 3193,
                                             3669, 5025, 5248, 5642, 5655, 5694,
                                             5727, 5841, 7002, 7009, 7221, 7327,
                                             8862, 9017, 9436, 9534, 9676, 1177,
                                             11279, 11622, 12196, 13150, 13893,
                                             13952, 16008, 16032, 16036, 16181,
                                             16435, 16466, 19615, 20773, 20808,
                                             20933, 20999, 21017, 21834, 22063,
                                             22307, 22330, 22728, 28541, 28800,
                                             28938, 28944, 32095, 32685, 34061,
                                             34118, 34405, 34636, 34672, 34782,
                                             34791, 34825, 34838, 34853, 34858,
                                             34928, 34947, 34960, 34977, 34987,
                                             34995, 35347, 35360, 35383, 36102
  \msg_error:nnnnnnnnnnnn ..................... 81, 1610, 1650, 1744, 1861, 1888,
                                             2014, 3004, 3213, 3236, 3532, 3539,
\normalfont .................................. 31557
\normalhoffset .................................. 1348
\normalinput .................................. 1337
\normalitaliccancellation ..................... 1347, 1349
\normallanguage .................................. 1338
\normalleft .................................. 1355, 1356
\normalmathop .................................. 1338
\normalmonth .................................. 1340
\nomalouter .................................. 1341
\nomalover .................................. 1342
\nomalright .................................. 1358
\nomalshottokens .................................. 1351
\nomalsize .................................. 31574
\nomalunexpanded .................................. 1344
\nomalvcenter .................................. 1343
\nomalvoffset .................................. 1350
\nospaces .................................. 861
\notexpanded: (token) .......................... 196
\novo规则 .................................. 862
\nullfont .................................. 376
\num .................................. 299
\numexpr .................................. 377
\numexpr .................................. 542
\O .................................. 29391, 31286, 31643, 31933
\o .................................. 29391, 31286, 31655, 31934
\odc .................................. 1167
\odlm .................................. 1168
\OE .................................. 29392, 31287, 31644
\oe .................................. 29392, 31287, 31656
\omathaccent .................................. 1169
\omathchar .................................. 1170
\omathchardef .................................. 1171
\omathcode .................................. 1172
\omit .................................. 378
\c .................................. 36385
\c_one .................................. 36419
\openin .................................. 379
\openout .................................. 380
\or .................................. 381
\or: .................................. 167, 710, 712, 978
\oradical .................................. 1173
\oriesveryjob .................................. 1328, 1329
\oripdfoutput .................................. 1331, 1332
\outer .................................. 7, 806, 382
\output .................................. 383
\outputbox .................................. 863
\OUTPUTmode .................................. 916
\outputpenalty .................................. 384
\over .................................. 385
\overfullrule .................................. 386
\overline .................................. 387
\overwithdelims .................................. 388
\PackageError .................................. 79, 87
\pagebottomoffset .................................. 864
\pagedepth .................................. 389
\pagedir .................................. 865
\pagedirection .................................. 866
Index

\pagediscards .......................... 543
\pagefillstretch ......................... 390
\pagefillstretch ......................... 391
\pagefillstretch ......................... 392
\pagefillstretch ......................... 1134
\pagegoal .............................. 393
\pageheight ................................ 917
\pageleftoffset .......................... 867
\pagerightoffset ......................... 868
\pagesizehrink .......................... 394
\pagetextstretch ......................... 395
\pagetopoffset .......................... 869
\pagetotal ................................ 396
\pagevertical ............................ 918
\par ...................................... 14–19, 87, 369, 1264, 397, 32181, 32183, 32187, 32192, 32197, 32202, 32209, 32214, 32221, 32226, 32246
\pardir .................................... 870
\pardirection .............................. 871
\parfillskip ................................ 398
\parindent .................................. 399
\parshape .................................. 400
\parshapewidth ................................ 544
\parshapeheight ................................ 545
\parskip .................................... 401
\partokencontext .......................... 1174
\partokenname ................................ 1175
\patterns .................................... 402
\pausing .................................... 403
pc ............................................ 257

pdf commands:
\pdf_destination:nn .......................... 297, 35609
\pdf_destination:nnnn .......................... 297, 35671
\pdf_object_if_exist:NTF ..................... 295, 35592
\pdf_object_if_exist_p:n ..................... 295, 35592
\pdf_object_new:nn ............................ 295, 35592
\pdf_object_ref:n ............................ 296, 35592
\pdf_object_ref_last: .......................... 296, 35592
\pdf_object_unnamed_write:nn .......................... 296, 35592
\pdf_object_write:nn .......................... 295, 35592
\pdf_pageobject_ref:n ....................... 296, 35614
\pdf_pagobject_ref:n .......................... 296
\pdf_uncompress: .............................. 296, 35584
\pdf_version: ................................ 296, 35605
\pdf_version_compare:NN ....................... 296, 35655
\pdf_version_compare:NNTF .................... 296, 35654
\pdf_version_compare:NNn ...................... 296
\pdf_version_gset:n .......................... 296, 35689
\pdf_version_major: .......................... 296, 35655
\pdf_version_minor: .......................... 296, 35655

pdf internal commands:
\__pdf_backend_compress_objects:n .......................... 35589
\__pdf_backend_compresslevel:n .......................... 35588
\__pdf_backend_destination:nnn .......................... 35570
\__pdf_backend_destination:nnnn .......................... 35674
\__pdf_backend_object_last: .......................... 35613
\__pdf_backend_object_new:nn .......................... 35593
\__pdf_backend_object_nov:nn .......................... 35609
\__pdf_backend_object_ref:n .......................... 35606
\__pdf_backend_object_write:nn .......................... 35602
\__pdf_backend_pageobject_ref:n .......................... 35615
\__pdf_backend_version_major: .......................... 35621, 35629, 35632, 35641, 35644, 35666, 35667
\__pdf_backend_version_minor:- .......................... 35661
\__pdf_backend_version_minor:- .......................... 35601
\__pdf_backend_version_compare=:w .......................... 35616
\__pdf_backend_version_compare=:w .......................... 35616
\__pdf_backend_version_compare>=:w .......................... 35616
\__pdf_version_gset:w .......................... 35650
\pdfadjustspacing ................................ 641
\pdfannot ..................................... 569
\pdfcatalog ................................... 570
\pdfcolorstack ................................ 572
\pdfcolorstackinit ............................. 573
\pdfcompresslevel ............................. 571
\pdfcopyfont ................................. 642
\pdfcreationdate .............................. 574
\pdfdecimaldigits ............................. 575
\pdfdest ...................................... 576
\pdfdestmargin ............................... 577
\pdfdraftmode ................................ 643
\pdffanchain ................................ 644
\pdffchainedepth ................................ 644
\pdffchainheight ................................ 645
\pdfelapsedtime ............................... 646
\pdfendlink ................................... 578
\pdfendthread ................................ 579
\pdfextension ................................. 872
\pdffeedback .................................. 873
\pdffiledump .................................. 703
\pdffilemodate ................................ 702
\pdffilesize .................................. 700
\pdffirstlineheight ........................... 647
\pdffontattr .................................. 580
\pdffontexpans ................................ 648
\peek_charcode_collect_inline:Nn \peek_charcode_ignore_spaces:NTF \peek_charcode_remove:NTF \peek_gafter:Nw \peek_meaning:NTF \peek_meaning_collect_inline:Nn \peek_meaning_ignore_spaces:NTF \peek_meaning_remove:NTF \peek_N_type:TF \peek_regex:NTF \peek_regex:nTF \peek_regex_remove_once:nTF \peek_regex_remove_once:NTF \peek_regex_collect_inline:Nn \peek_regex_remove_spaces:NTF \peek_regex_replace_once:NNn \peek_regex_replace_once:NnTF \peek_regex_replace_once:NTF \peek_remove_fillers:n \peek_remove_spaces:n \peek_token \l_peek_token {\peek_collect:N 1371, 36255 \peek_collect:NNn 36255 \peek_collect_remove:nw 36255 \l_peek_collect_tl 1371, 36254, 36260, 36268, 36293, 36298 \l_peek_collect_true:w 1371, 36255}
Index
30407, 30419, 30422, 30425, 30428,
32042, 32044, 32050, 32673, 33923,
35597, 35623, 35635, 35647, 35989
\prg_set_conditional:Nnn . . . . . . .
. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 62, 1587, 8369
\prg_set_conditional:Npnn . . . . . .
. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 62–64, 1570,
1789, 1801, 1817, 1829, 8369, 11250
\prg_set_eq_conditional:NNn . . . .
. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 64, 1706, 8369
\prg_set_protected_conditional:Nnn
. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 63, 1587, 8369
\prg_set_protected_conditional:Npnn
. . . . . . . . . . . . 63, 1570, 8369, 11022
prg internal commands:
\__prg_break_point:Nn . . . . . . . . 377
\__prg_F_true:w . . . . . . . . . . . . 1659
\__prg_generate_conditional:nnNNNnnn
. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 1582, 1607, 1616
\__prg_generate_conditional:NNnnnnNw
. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 1616
\__prg_generate_conditional_count:NNNnn . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 1587
\__prg_generate_conditional_count:nnNNNnn . . . . . . . . . . . . 1587
\__prg_generate_conditional_fast:nw . . . . . . . . . . 358, 359, 1616
\__prg_generate_conditional_parm:NNNpnn . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 1570
\__prg_generate_conditional_test:w . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 1616
\__prg_generate_F_form:wNNnnnnN 1659
\__prg_generate_p_form:wNNnnnnN .
. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 358, 1659
\__prg_generate_T_form:wNNnnnnN 1659
\__prg_generate_TF_form:wNNnnnnN
. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 1659
\__prg_p_true:w . . . . . . . . . . . . 1659
\__prg_replicate:N . . . . . . . . . . 8613
\__prg_replicate_ . . . . . . . . . . . 8613
\__prg_replicate_0:n . . . . . . . . 8613
\__prg_replicate_1:n . . . . . . . . 8613
\__prg_replicate_2:n . . . . . . . . 8613
\__prg_replicate_3:n . . . . . . . . 8613
\__prg_replicate_4:n . . . . . . . . 8613
\__prg_replicate_5:n . . . . . . . . 8613
\__prg_replicate_6:n . . . . . . . . 8613
\__prg_replicate_7:n . . . . . . . . 8613
\__prg_replicate_8:n . . . . . . . . 8613
\__prg_replicate_9:n . . . . . . . . 8613
\__prg_replicate_first:N . . . . . 8613
\__prg_replicate_first_-:n . . . 8613
\__prg_replicate_first_0:n . . . 8613
\__prg_replicate_first_1:n . . . 8613

1473
\__prg_replicate_first_2:n . . . 8613
\__prg_replicate_first_3:n . . . 8613
\__prg_replicate_first_4:n . . . 8613
\__prg_replicate_first_5:n . . . 8613
\__prg_replicate_first_6:n . . . 8613
\__prg_replicate_first_7:n . . . 8613
\__prg_replicate_first_8:n . . . 8613
\__prg_replicate_first_9:n . . . 8613
\__prg_set_eq_conditional:NNNn 1706
\__prg_set_eq_conditional:nnNnnNNw
. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 1714, 1722
\__prg_set_eq_conditional_F_form:nnn . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 1722
\__prg_set_eq_conditional_F_form:wNnnnn . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 1759
\__prg_set_eq_conditional_loop:nnnnNw . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 1722
\__prg_set_eq_conditional_p_form:nnn . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 1722
\__prg_set_eq_conditional_p_form:wNnnnn . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 1753
\__prg_set_eq_conditional_T_form:nnn . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 1722
\__prg_set_eq_conditional_T_form:wNnnnn . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 1757
\__prg_set_eq_conditional_TF_form:nnn . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 1722
\__prg_set_eq_conditional_TF_form:wNnnnn . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 1755
\__prg_T_true:w . . . . . . . . . . . . 1659
\__prg_TF_true:w . . . . . . . . . 359, 1659
\__prg_use_none_delimit_by_q_recursion_stop:w . . . . . . . . . .
. . . . . . . 1568, 1645, 1727, 1732, 1739
\primitive . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 771
prop commands:
\c_empty_prop . . . . . . . . . . . . 205,
882, 19529, 19539, 19543, 19546, 19802
\prop_clear:N . . . . . . . 198, 19542,
19549, 19581, 19595, 33456, 34360
\prop_clear_new:N . . . . . . . . . . . . .
. . . . 198, 19548, 34550, 34581, 34622
\prop_concat:NNN . . . . 200, 882, 19567
\prop_const_from_keyval:Nn . . . . .
. . . . 199, 19579, 32637, 32644, 35327
\prop_count:N . . . . . 201, 19690, 35871
\prop_gclear:N 198, 19542, 19552, 19587
\prop_gclear_new:N . . . . . . . . . . . .
. . . . . 198, 1280, 19548, 32711, 32712
\prop_gconcat:NNN . . . . . . . 200, 19567
\prop_get:Nn . . . . . . . 71, 36501, 36503
\prop_get:NnN . . . . . 137, 138, 200,
201, 19649, 33696, 33700, 33769,
33773, 33932, 34041, 34129, 35124


\prop_get:NnTF \ 200, 201, 9566, 9586, 9641, 10155, 10369, 13971, 19829, 21057, 28799, 32902, 34035, 34134, 34560, 34818, 34831, 34846, 34925, 34953, 34969, 35340, 35533
\prop_gpop:Nn \ 200, 19057
\prop_gpop:NnTF \ 200, 201, 19736
\prop_gput:N \ 226, 21211
\prop_gput:Nnn \ 199, 3715, 3716, 8327, 8328, 9356, 9358, 10049, 10050, 10057, 10058, 10060, 10061, 10062, 10063, 10083, 10129, 10314, 10344, 13734, 13735, 13736, 13737, 13738, 13739, 13740, 13741, 13742, 13743, 13744, 13745, 13746, 13747, 13748, 13755, 13758, 14607, 14608, 19611, 19758, 20623, 20624, 21801, 21802, 22707, 22708, 28752, 29081, 29082, 29289, 32946, 32981, 33012, 34743, 34744, 34745, 34746, 34747, 34748, 34749, 34750, 34761, 34763, 34765, 34766, 34767, 34768, 34769, 34770, 34771, 34871, 34872, 34886, 34900, 34910, 35560, 35561
\prop_gput_from_keyval:Nn \ 200, 19579
\prop_gput_if_new:Nn \ 199, 19779
\prop_gremove:Nn \ 201, 10140, 10354, 19633, 28750
\prop_gset_eq:NN \ 199, 19546, 19554, 19571, 32713, 32715, 32880, 32882, 32919, 32921, 33168, 33334, 33375
\prop_gset_from_keyval:Nn \ 200, 19057
\prop_hput:Nn \ 19758
\prop_if_empty:NTF \ 201, 19705, 19725, 19800, 33921, 35868
\prop_if_empty_p:N \ 201, 19800
\prop_if_exist:NTF \ 201, 19549, 19552, 19796, 20954, 33919
\prop_if_exist_p:N \ 201, 19796
\prop_if_in:NnTF \ 202, 9361, 9367, 98087, 34562
\prop_if_in_p:Nn \ 202, 19807
\prop_item:Nn \ 201, 203, 9362, 9368, 19679, 35187, 35226, 36502, 36504
\prop_log:Nn \ 204, 19898
\prop_map_break: \ 203, 891, 892, 19837, 19838, 19839, 19840, 19841, 19863, 19875, 19876, 19877, 19878, 19879, 19894
\prop_map_break:n \ 204, 19687, 19816, 19894
\prop_map_function:NN \ 203, 303, 892, 10170, 10384, 19695, 19713, 19728, 19831, 19913, 33844, 35415
\prop_map_inline:NNn \ 203, 19576, 19856, 33178, 33180, 33183, 33201, 33203, 33277, 33294, 33355, 33357, 33361, 33363, 33543, 33562, 33743, 33752
\prop_map_tokens:Nn \ 203, 796, 886, 890, 19681, 19809, 19871
\prop_new:Nn \ 199, 9355, 9357, 9379, 9538, 10071, 10302, 13733, 19536, 19549, 19552, 19562, 19563, 19564, 19565, 19566, 20696, 20697, 20954, 28703, 33156, 33157, 33158, 33626, 33667, 34647, 34737, 34742, 34759, 34764
\prop_pop:Nn \ 200, 19657
\prop_pop:NnTF \ 200, 201, 19730
\prop_put:N \ 226, 21211
\prop_put:Nn \ 199, 200, 209, 399, 880, 881, 9614, 9630, 9647, 19576, 19603, 19758, 21064, 32925, 32943, 32962, 32979, 33010, 33212, 33214, 33220, 33222, 33231, 33237, 33245, 33304, 33312, 33402, 33408, 33416, 33423, 33567, 33627, 33629, 33631, 33633, 33635, 33637, 33639, 33641, 33643, 33645, 33647, 33649, 33651, 33653, 33655, 33657, 33659, 33661, 34013, 34361, 34551, 34569, 34612, 34627, 34808
\prop_put_from_keyval:Nn \ 200, 19579
\prop_put_if_new:Nn \ 199, 19779
\prop_rand_key_value:N \ 304, 35866
\prop_remove:Nn \ 201, 9611, 9620, 19633, 33738, 33741, 33745
\prop_set_eq:NN \ 199, 19543, 19554, 19568, 19575, 32868, 32870, 32912, 32914, 33165, 33174, 33176, 33227, 33351, 33353, 33372, 33500, 33573, 34632
\prop_set_from_keyval:Nn \ 199, 200, 882, 19579, 34787
\prop_show:Nn \ 204, 19808
\prop_to_keyval:N \ 201, 19700
\g_tampa_prop \ 204, 19562
\l_tampa_prop \ 204, 19562
\l_tampb_prop \ 204, 19562
\prop internal commands:
  \__prop_count:nn \ 19690
  \l_tmpa_prop \ 199
  \g_tmpb_prop \ 199
  \prop_show:N \ 19690
  \prop_from_keyval:w \ 883
  \prop_from_keyval:value:w \ 883
  \prop_if_in:nn \ 19807
\_prop\_if\_recursion\_tail\_stop:n \hspace{2cm} 19534
\_prop\_internal\_prop \hspace{2cm}  \hspace{2cm} 19554
\_prop\_internal\_tl \hspace{2cm} 888, 19252, 19528, 19792
\_prop\_item:nn \hspace{2cm} 886, 19679
\_prop\_map\_function:Nw \hspace{2cm} 891, 19831
\_prop\_map\_tokens:nn \hspace{2cm} 19871
\_prop\_missing_eq:n \hspace{2cm} 19579
\_prop\_pair:wn \hspace{2cm} 880, 884, 891, 892, 19525, 19552, 19627, 19630, 19634, 19787, 19837, 19838, 19839, 19840, 19844, 19845, 19846, 19847, 1985, 19561, 19866, 19875, 19876, 19877, 19887, 19882, 19883, 19884, 19885, 19598, 19917, 19920, 35876
\_prop\_put:NNn \hspace{2cm} 19758
\_prop\_put\_if\_new:NNn \hspace{2cm} 19779
\_prop\_rand\_item:w \hspace{2cm} 35866
\_prop\_show:NN \hspace{2cm} 19898
\_prop\_show\_validate:w \hspace{2cm} 19898
\_prop\_split:NNTF \hspace{2cm} 881, 888–890, 19622, 19635, 19641, 19651, 19659, 19668, 19738, 19748, 19767, 19790, 19822
\_prop\_split\_aux:NNTF \hspace{2cm} 19622
\_prop\_split\_aux:w \hspace{2cm} 884, 19622
\_prop\_to\_keyval:nn \hspace{2cm} 19790
\_prop\_to\_keyval:nnw \hspace{2cm} 19790
\_prop\_to\_keyval\_exp\_after:wn \hspace{2cm} 1987, 19700
\_prop\_use\_i\_delimit\_by:s- \hspace{2cm} stop:nw \hspace{2cm} 35865, 35879
\protect \hspace{2cm} 1207, 19502, 23274, 29654, 29677, 29679, 31495
\protected \hspace{2cm} 108, 110, 134, 548, 19139, 19141
\protrudechars \hspace{2cm} 919
\ProvidesExplClass \hspace{2cm} 9
\ProvidesExplFile \hspace{2cm} 9
\ProvidesExplPackage \hspace{2cm} 9
\pt \hspace{2cm} 257
\ptex\_minor\_version \hspace{2cm} 1137
\ptex\_revision \hspace{2cm} 1138
\ptex\_version \hspace{2cm} 1139
\px\_dimen \hspace{2cm} 920

Q

quark commands:
\q\_mark \hspace{2cm} 138, 426, 15906
\q\_nil \hspace{2cm} 25, 118, 138, 354, 772, 774, 776, 1526, 1529, 15906, 15960, 15979, 15985, 16000, 16001, 16007, 16031, 16035, 21668, 21669, 21671, 21673, 21675, 21677, 21683, 35070, 35076, 35077
\q\_no\_value \hspace{2cm} 74, 87, 88, 94–96, 137, 138, 144, 145, 151, 178, 200, 306, 772, 774, 791, 792, 835, 885, 1364, 8850, 10193, 10206, 10875, 11006, 11034, 11149, 11151, 11153, 11155, 11195, 15906, 15968, 15989, 15995, 16497, 16505, 16517, 16543, 17949, 17964, 19653, 19664, 19673, 36028
\quark\_if\_nil:n \hspace{2cm} 774, 775
\quark\_if\_nil:NTF \hspace{2cm} 138, 347, 776, 15958
\quark\_if\_nil:NTF \hspace{2cm} 138, 679, 773, 774, 776, 15976, 35084, 35097
\quark\_if\_nil:p:N \hspace{2cm} 138, 15958
\quark\_if\_nil:p:n \hspace{2cm} 138, 15976
\quark\_if\_no\_value:NTF \hspace{2cm} 138, 11036, 15006, 33698, 33702, 33771, 33775
\quark\_if\_no\_value:nTF \hspace{2cm} 138, 15976
\quark\_if\_no\_value:n:p \hspace{2cm} 138, 15958
\quark\_if\_no\_value:p:n \hspace{2cm} 138, 15976
\quark\_if\_recursion\_tail\_break:N \hspace{2cm} 36505
\quark\_if\_recursion\_tail\_break:n \hspace{2cm} 36507
\quark\_if\_recursion\_tail\_break:nN \hspace{2cm} 140, 775, 15946
\quark\_if\_recursion\_tail\_break:NN \hspace{2cm} 140, 775, 15946
\quark\_if\_recursion\_tail\_break:NNN \hspace{2cm} 139, 346, 775, 1204, 15914, 29222, 31271, 31302, 31606, 31618, 31680, 31731
\quark\_if\_recursion\_tail\_break:nN \hspace{2cm} 139, 346, 775, 5964, 6066, 15928, 16898, 19919, 30790
\quark\_if\_recursion\_tail\_break:nn \hspace{2cm} 139, 346, 775, 15914
\quark\_if\_recursion\_tail\_break:nnn \hspace{2cm} 139, 346, 775, 15928
\quark\_new:N \hspace{2cm} 138, 346, 347, 778, 4469, 4470, 8406, 8407, 10319, 10783, 10785, 10786, 12074, 12075, 12076, 12077, 12078, 13079, 13080, 13732, 15901, 15906, 15907, 15908, 15909, 15910, 15911, 15913, 16917, 16918, 18481, 19532, 19533, 20701, 29239, 29241, 29242
\quark\_recursion\_stop \hspace{2cm} 25, 139, 140, 354, 772, 1528, 1532, 5960, 6061, 15910.
Index
\q__text_recursion_stop . . . . . . . .
. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 29241, 29244,
29424, 29438, 29447, 29526, 29542,
29551, 29594, 29616, 29636, 29736,
29744, 29800, 29814, 29823, 29825,
29892, 29908, 29917, 29961, 30029,
30038, 30065, 30073, 30245, 30253,
30301, 30307, 30323, 30328, 30441,
30446, 30462, 30471, 30543, 30548,
30596, 30601, 30624, 30629, 30665,
30674, 31345, 31358, 31367, 31385,
31398, 31400, 31417, 31426, 31454
\q__text_recursion_tail . . . . . . . .
. . . . 29241, 29371, 29424, 29525,
29594, 29616, 29636, 29800, 29825,
29891, 29961, 31345, 31384, 31454
\q__tl_mark . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .
673, 12074, 12181, 12183, 12185, 12187
\q__tl_nil . . . . . . . . 674, 12074, 12207
\q__tl_recursion_stop . . . . . . . 12077
\q__tl_recursion_tail . 12077, 12882
\q__tl_stop . . . . . . . 674, 12074, 12206
\quitvmode . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 681
R
\r 29380, 31719, 31743, 31769, 31893, 31894
\radical . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 411
\raise . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 412
rand . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 256
randint . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 256
\randomseed . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 921
\read . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 413
\readline . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 549
\readpapersizespecial . . . . . . . . . . 1140
\ref . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 29397, 29404
regex commands:
\regex_case_replace_all:nN . . . 7443
\regex_case_replace_all:nNTF . 7443
\regex_const:Nn . . . . . . . . . . 54, 7336
\regex_count:NnN . . . . . . . . . . 55, 7384
\regex_count:nnN . . . . . . 55, 537, 7384
\regex_extract_all:NnN . . . . . 56, 7402
\regex_extract_all:nnN . . . . . . . . .
. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 47, 56, 449, 7402
\regex_extract_all:NnNTF . . . 56, 7402
\regex_extract_all:nnNTF . . . 56, 7402
\regex_extract_once:NnN . . . . 56, 7402
\regex_extract_once:nnN . . . . 56, 7402
\regex_extract_once:NnNTF . . 56, 7402
\regex_extract_once:nnNTF 50, 56, 7402
\regex_gset:Nn . . . . . . . . . . . 54, 7336
\regex_log:N . . . . . . . . . 54, 492, 7351
\regex_log:n . . . . . . . . . . . . . 54, 7351
\regex_match:NnTF . . . . . . . . . 55, 7374

1477
\regex_match:nnTF . . 55, 539, 549, 7374
\regex_match_case:nn . . . . . . . . . .
. . . . . . . 55, 58, 471, 500, 7388, 7522
\regex_match_case:nnTF . . . . . . . . .
. . . . . . . . . . . . . 55, 7388, 7398, 7400
\regex_new:N . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .
54, 452, 7330, 7332, 7333, 7334, 7335
\regex_replace:nnN . . . . . . . . . . . 182
\regex_replace_all:NnN . . . . . 57, 7402
\regex_replace_all:nnN . . . . . . . . .
. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 47, 57, 536, 7402
\regex_replace_all:NnNTF . . . 57, 7402
\regex_replace_all:nnNTF . . . 57, 7402
\regex_replace_case_all:nN . . . . .
. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 58, 7448, 7460
\regex_replace_case_all:nNTF . . .
58, 7443, 7461, 7462, 7463, 7464, 7465
\regex_replace_case_once:nN 58, 7420
\regex_replace_case_once:nNTF . . .
. . . . . . . . . . . . . 58, 7420, 7439, 7441
\regex_replace_once:NnN . . . . 57, 7402
\regex_replace_once:nnN . . . . . . . .
. . . . . . . . . . . . 56–58, 195, 536, 7402
\regex_replace_once:NnNTF . . 57, 7402
\regex_replace_once:nnNTF . . . . . .
. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 57, 552, 7402
\regex_set:Nn . . . . . . 46, 54, 55, 7336
\regex_show:N . . . . . . . . 54, 492, 7351
\regex_show:n . . . . . . 47, 52, 54, 7351
\regex_split:NnN . . . . . . . . . . 57, 7402
\regex_split:nnN . . . . . . . . . . 57, 7402
\regex_split:NnNTF . . . . . . . . 57, 7402
\regex_split:nnNTF . . . . . . . . 57, 7402
\g_tmpa_regex . . . . . . . . . . . . 59, 7332
\l_tmpa_regex . . . . . . . . . . . . 59, 7332
\g_tmpb_regex . . . . . . . . . . . . 59, 7332
\l_tmpb_regex . . . . . . . . . . . . 59, 7332
regex internal commands:
\__regex_A_test: . . . . . . 464, 5352,
5374, 5990, 5993, 5999, 6099, 6583
\__regex_action_cost:n . . . . . . . . .
499, 503, 6372, 6373, 6381, 6831, 6857
\__regex_action_free:n . . . . . 499,
512, 6395, 6401, 6402, 6413, 6471,
6475, 6500, 6525, 6529, 6532, 6560,
6568, 6578, 6592, 6635, 6829, 6833
\__regex_action_free_aux:nn . . 6833
\__regex_action_free_group:n . . .
. . . . 499, 512, 6421, 6540, 6543, 6833
\__regex_action_start_wildcard:N
. . . . . . . . . . . . 499, 6253, 6273, 6826
\__regex_action_submatch:nN . . . .
. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 499, 6277,
6302, 6494, 6495, 6633, 6882, 6884


\_\_regex_case_replacement_tl...
          \_\_regex_compile_class_posix:NNNNw
          \_\_regex_clean_group:nnnN
          \_\_regex_clean_reg_loop:w
          \_\_regex_clean_exact_cs:w
          \_\_regex_clean_exact_cs:n
          \_\_regex_clean_class_loop:nnn
          \_\_regex_clean_class:n
          \_\_regex_clean_branch_loop:n
          \_\_regex_clean_branch:n
          \_\_regex_clean_assertion:Nn
          \_\_regex_class_repeat:nnN
          \_\_regex_class_repeat:nN
          \__regex_class_repeat:n
          \_\_regex_class_repeat:n
          \_\_regex_class_mode_int
          \_\_regex_class:NnnnN
          \_\_regex CHK C Allowed:TF
          \_\_regex_class:NNnn 464, 472, 473,
          \_\_regex_class:NN 5775, 5908, 5918, 5980, 6089, 6366
          \_\_regex_clean_class_mode_int
          \_\_regex_compile_class_posix:NNNNw
          \_\_regex_clean_int_aux:N
          \_\_regex_clean_int:n
          \_\_regex_clean_int:n
          \_\_regex_clean_class_loop:nnn
          \_\_regex_clean_int:n
          \_\_regex_clean_class_catcode:w
          \_\_regex_clean_class_catcode:n
          \_\_regex_clean_class_loop:nnn
          \_\_regex_clean_int:n
          \_\_regex_clean_int:n
          \_\_regex_clean_class_mode_int
          \_\_regex_clean_class:n
          \_\_regex_clean_class:n
          \_\_regex_clean_class:n
          \_\_regex_clean_class:n
          \_\_regex_clean_class:n
          \_\_regex_clean_class:n
          \_\_regex_clean_class:n
Index

6487, 6501, 6510, 6522, 6526, 6530, 6533, 6538, 6541, 6544, 6552, 6566, 6569, 6572, 6575, 6579, 6585, 6638
\l_regex_right_state_seq ........... 6231, 6298, 6308, 6331, 6338, 6474
\l_regex_saved_success_bool ........... 54, 592, 599, 6668
\_regex_show:N 534, 6070, 7356, 7368
\_regex_show:NN ............... 7351
\_regex_show:NN ............... 7351
\_regex_show_char:n ............. 6102, 6106, 6109, 6113, 6122, 6135
\_regex_show_class:NnnN ........ 6089, 6171
\_regex_show_group_aux:nnnN .... 6084, 6086, 6088, 6162
\_regex_show_item_exact_cs:n .... 6120, 6151
\_regex_show_item_catcode:NnnnN ... 6116, 6118, 6207
\_regex_show_item_catcode:NnnnN ... 6116, 6118, 6207
\_regex_show_int ............ 6129
\_regex_show_item_exact_cs:n .... 6120, 6125, 6151, 6212
\_regex_show_item_exact_cs:n .... 6120, 6125, 6151, 6212
\_regex_show_prefix_seq ........ 4900, 6076, 6079, 6127, 6147, 6152, 6154
\_regex_show_push:n ............. 6128, 6151, 6165, 6176
\_regex_show_scope:nn ........... 6120, 6125, 6151, 6212
\_regex_single_match ........... 49, 502, 513, 514, 6600, 6701, 6807, 6810, 6818, 6845
\_regex_split:nN ............ 7419, 7505
\_regex_standard_escapechar: ... 4888, 4885, 5051, 6247, 6268
\_regex_start_pos_int ........... 6624, 6643, 6719, 6724, 6731, 7571, 7583, 7596, 7599, 7722, 7804
\_regex_state_active_intarray: ... 449, 502, 513, 514, 6600, 6701, 6807, 6810, 6818, 6845
\_regex_step_int 449, 6657, 6703, 6709, 6808, 6812, 6820, 6834, 6836
\_regex_store_state:n ........... 512, 6729, 6859, 6862
\_regex_store_submatches: ... 6862
\_regex_store_submatches:n ... 6861
\_regex_store_submatches:nn .... 6864, 6868
\_regex_submatch_balance:n ... 6925, 6957, 7040, 7142, 7640
\_regex_submatch_begin:-intarray: ........... 449, 502, 513, 6439, 6580, 6687, 6688, 6701, 6807, 6810, 6818, 6845
\_regex_submatch_case_intarray: ... 7051, 7472, 7717, 7723
\_regex_submatch_end_intarray: ........... 449, 544, 6955, 6964, 7472, 7575, 7591, 7738, 7768, 7987
\_regex_submatch_int ........... 449, 557, 540, 541, 546, 6710, 7469, 7590, 7592, 7595, 7597, 7600, 7613, 7712, 7716, 7718, 7719, 7793, 7801
\_regex_submatch_prev_intarray: ........... 449, 537, 544, 6929, 7028, 7472, 7573, 7589, 7715, 7721
\_regex_success_bool ........... 514, 4953, 4958, 4968, 6696, 6750, 6762, 7434, 7457, 7481, 7530, 7711, 7752, 7922, 7928, 7969
\_regex_success_pos_int........... 6642, 6705, 6724, 6912, 7571
\_regex_success_submatches_tl .... 512, 544, 6655, 6915, 7726
\_regex_tests_action_cost:n .......... 6366, 6387, 6396, 6414
\_regex_thread_info_intarray: .......
\_regex_tl_even_items:n .......... 4437, 7455
\_regex_tl_even_items_loop:n .... 4437, 7455, 7528
\_regex_tl_odd_items:n .......... 4437, 7431, 7454, 7528
\_regex_tmp:w ........... 54, 544, 4407, 4499, 4413, 4415, 4449, 5326, 5336, 5337, 5338, 5339, 5340, 5363, 5374, 5375, 7402, 7419, 7413, 7415, 7417, 7419, 7609, 7614, 7632, 7638, 7676, 7681, 7685, 7689, 7694, 7704
\_regex_toks_clear:N ........... 4439, 6307, 6347
\_regex_toks_memcpy:Nnn .................. 496, 6512
\_regex_toks_put_left:N ........... 4405, 6276, 6300, 6342, 6494, 6495
\_regex_toks_put_right:N .................. 459, 4405, 6252, 6255, 6272, 6320, 6344, 6355, 6586, 6631
\_regex_toks_set:N .................. 4391, 7500, 8009
\_regex_toks_use:w .................. 4390, 6809, 6947, 8363
\_regex_trace:nn .................. 8345, 8362
\_regex_trace:pop:nn .................. 8345
\_regex_trace_push:nn .................. 8355
\_regex_trace_regex_int ........... 8356
\_regex_trace_states:n .......... 4902
scan internal commands:
\s__bool_mark ... 35827, 35848, 35862
\s__bool_stop ... 35827, 35848, 35862
\s__clist_mark ... 35827, 35848, 35862
\s__clist_stop ... 35827, 35848, 35862
\s__color_mark ... 35827, 35848, 35862
\s__color_stop ... 35827, 35848, 35862
\s__cs_mark ... 35827, 35848, 35862
\s__cs_stop ... 35827, 35848, 35862
\s__dim_mark ... 35827, 35848, 35862
\s__dim_stop ... 35827, 35848, 35862
\s__file_stop ... 35827, 35848, 35862
\s__fp ... 35827, 35848, 35862
\s__cs_dim_mark ... 35827, 35848, 35862
\s__cs_dim_stop ... 35827, 35848, 35862
\s__file_dim_stop ... 35827, 35848, 35862
\s__fp ... 35827, 35848, 35862
\s__color_dim_mark ... 35827, 35848, 35862
\s__color_dim_stop ... 35827, 35848, 35862
Index

\sys_get_shell:nnN \ldots 74, 8847
\sys_get_shell:nnN\T \ldots 74, 302, 8847, 8849
\sys_get_rand_seed:n \ldots 74, 256, 9007
\c_sys_hour_int \ldots 72, 8961
\sys_if_engine_latex:TF \ldots 73, 98, 2689, 8697, 8722, 8747, 8806, 8816, 8817, 8887, 8909, 8941, 9033, 9063, 10131, 10900, 11133, 11295, 11564, 11603, 18645, 19149, 28704, 28742, 28781, 28794, 28820, 28888, 28912, 28949, 36482, 36484, 36486
\sys_if_engine_latex:p \ldots 73, 8697, 10295, 13751, 14023, 14047, 14069, 14239, 15022, 28909, 29025, 29087, 30020, 30094, 30134, 30195, 30231, 30437, 30485, 30492, 30570, 30648, 30726, 30749, 30785, 31601, 31686, 36480
\sys_if_engine_pdfTeX:TF \ldots 73, 8697, 8718, 8742, 9115, 30150, 36496, 36498, 35600
\sys_if_engine_pdfTeX:p \ldots 73, 8697, 8756, 36494
\sys_if_engine_ptex:TF \ldots 73, 8697, 8720, 8745
\sys_if_engine_ptex:p \ldots 73, 3784, 8697
\sys_if_engine_upTeX:TF \ldots 73, 8697, 8721, 8746
\sys_if_engine_upTeX:p \ldots 73, 3785, 8697
\sys_if_engine_xetex:TF \ldots 73, 9022, 9091
\sys_if_engine_xetex:p \ldots 73, 9022, 9091
\sys_if_output_pdf:TF \ldots 73, 8961
\sys_if_output_pdf:p \ldots 73, 8961
\sys_if_platform_unix:TF \ldots 74, 8768, 11582
\sys_if_platform_unix:p \ldots 74, 8768, 11582
\sys_if_platform_windows:TF \ldots 74, 8768, 11582
\sys_if_platform_windows:p \ldots 74, 8768, 11582
\sys_if_rand_exist:TF \ldots 306, 576, 8766, 8995, 9009, 22248, 28232, 28256
\sys_if_rand_exist:p \ldots 306, 8766
\sys_if_shell: \ldots 75
\sys_if_shell:TF \ldots 75, 8847, 9071, 36094
\sys_if_shell:p \ldots 75, 9071
\sys_if_shell_restricted:TF \ldots 75, 9071
\sys_if_shell_restricted:p \ldots 75, 9071
\sys_if_shell_unrestricted:TF \ldots 75, 9071
\sys_if_shell_unrestricted:p \ldots 75, 9071
\sys_if_timer_exist:TF \ldots 9022
\sys_if_timer_exist:p \ldots 9022
\c_sys_jobname_str \ldots 72, 93, 584, 8950, 36380
\sys_load_backend:n \ldots 75, 8768
\sys_load_backend_check:N \ldots 75, 8768
\sys_load_backend:n \ldots 75, 8768
\sys_load_backend_check:N \ldots 75, 8768
\sys_load_debug: \ldots 76, 8839
\sys_load_deprecation: \ldots 36595
\c_sys_minute_int \ldots 75, 8961
\c_sys_month_int \ldots 75, 8961
\c_sys_output_str \ldots 73, 9091
\c_sys_platform_str \ldots 74, 8768, 11564, 11585
\sys_rand_seed: \ldots 74, 147, 256, 8903
\c_sys_shell_escape_int \ldots 75, 9059, 9074, 9076, 9078
\sys_shell_now:n \ldots 75, 8839
\sys_shell_shipout:n \ldots 75, 8920
\sys_timer: \ldots 73, 9022
\c_sys_year_int \ldots 72, 8961
sys internal commands:
\g__sys_backend_tl \ldots 8951, 8959, 8961, 8993, 9057, 9073, 9075, 9077, 9100, 9102
\_sys_const:nn \ldots 8681, 8711, 8766, 8957, 9007, 9074, 10900, 11022
\_sys_debug_bool \ldots 8838, 8841, 8843
\_sys_elapsedtime: \ldots 9022
\_sys_everyjob:n \ldots 8951, 8959, 8961, 8993, 9057, 9073, 9075, 9077, 9100, 9102
\_sys_everyjob:tl \ldots 8951, 8959, 8961, 9057, 9073, 9075, 9077, 9100, 9102
\_sys_finalise:n \ldots 9057, 9073, 9075, 9077, 9100, 9102
\_sys_finalise:tl \ldots 9057, 9073, 9075, 9077, 9100, 9102
\_sys_get:nnN \ldots 8847
\_sys_get:do:Nw \ldots 8847
\_sys_internal:tl \ldots 8847
\_sys_load_backend_check:N \ldots 8768
\c_sys_marker_tl \ldots 8846, 8870, 8882
\_sys_shell_now:n \ldots 8889
\_sys_shell_shipout:n \ldots 8920
\c_sys_shell_stream_int \ldots 8887, 8916, 8948
\_sys_tmp:w ................................. 8964, 8985, 8987, 8988, 8989, 8990
syst commands:
\c_syst_catcodes_n .... 28955, 28959
\c_syst_last_allocated_toks .. 3372
T
\t ........................................... 29380, 31726
\tabskip ................................... 685
\tate ..................................... 254
\tand ..................................... 254
\tbaselineshift ......................... 1147
\tc_ten .................................... 1148
\tbox ..................................... 278
\tcodetable ......................... 1181, 1184, 1187
\char .................................. 197
\chardef .... 189, 190, 562, 807, 1198
\conditionally@untraceoff ....... 624, 9543, 10489
\conditionally@untraceon ....... 9561
\copy .................................. 271
\ct ................................... 197, 411
\cr ..................................... 572
\crop@shipout ................. 1201
\csname .................. 21, 343, 633, 634
\cstring .................................. 363
\currentgrouplevel ............ 375, 1183, 1558
\currentgrouptype ............ 375, 1558
\def .................................. 197
\detokenize ......................... 107
\development@branch@name 11478, 11479
\dimen .................................. 867
\dimendef .......................... 867
\dimexpr ...................... 1258
\directlua ................................ 98
\dp .................................... 272, 1009, 1010
\dup@shipout ......................... 1202
\e@alloc@codetable@count .... 28953
\e@alloc@top ............ 411, 3358
\edef .................................. 3, 6, 664
\end .................................. 396, 594
\endcsname ......................... 21
\endinput ................................ 81
\endlinedelimiter ..................... 87, 117,
\enlinetab ....................... 118, 670, 671, 869, 1181, 1182, 1184
\endtemplate ......................... 71, 572
\error .................................. 590
\errmessage ......................... 590, 591
\errorcontextlines ................. 345, 591, 698, 1261
\escapechar ................... 107, 363, 375, 449, 623
\everyeof ...................... 671
\everyjob ................................ 581
\everypar ........................... 28, 193, 378, 396
\expandafter ......................... 38, 40
\expanded ................................ 6, 25, 33, 35,
\fi ....................................... 380, 383, 390, 392, 397, 403, 670, 687
\futurelet ................................
\global .................................. 316
\GPTorg@shipout ..................... 1203
\halign ...................... 71, 378, 572, 857
\hskip .................................. 217
\ht .................................... 272, 1009, 1010
\ht .................................... 272, 1009, 1010

\box ..................................... 278
\catactable ....................... 1181, 1184, 1187
\char .................................. 197
\chardef .... 189, 190, 562, 807, 1198
\conditionally@untraceoff ....... 624, 9543, 10489
\conditionally@untraceon ....... 9561
\copy .................................. 271
\ct ................................... 197, 411
\cr ..................................... 572
\crop@shipout ................. 1201
\csname .................. 21, 343, 633, 634
\cstring .................................. 363
\currentgrouplevel ............ 375, 1183, 1558
\currentgrouptype ............ 375, 1558
\def .................................. 197
\detokenize ......................... 107
\development@branch@name 11478, 11479
\dimen .................................. 867
\dimendef .......................... 867
\dimexpr ...................... 1258
\directlua ................................ 98
\dp .................................... 272, 1009, 1010
\dup@shipout ......................... 1202
\e@alloc@codetable@count .... 28953
\e@alloc@top ............ 411, 3358
\edef .................................. 3, 6, 664
\end .................................. 396, 594
\endcsname ......................... 21
\endinput ................................ 81
\endlinedelimiter ..................... 87, 117,
\enlinetab ....................... 118, 670, 671, 869, 1181, 1182, 1184
\endtemplate ......................... 71, 572
\error .................................. 590
\errmessage ......................... 590, 591
\errorcontextlines ................. 345, 591, 698, 1261
\escapechar ................... 107, 363, 375, 449, 623
\everyeof ...................... 671
\everyjob ................................ 581
\everypar ........................... 28, 193, 378, 396
\expandafter ......................... 38, 40
\expanded ................................ 6, 25, 33, 35,
\fi ....................................... 380, 383, 390, 392, 397, 403, 670, 687
\futurelet ................................
Index

\hyphen ........................................ 869
\hyphenchar .............................. 956
\ifcase .................................. 167
\ifdim .................................. 220
\ifeof .................................. 93
\iffalse .................................. 65
\ifhbox .................................. 281
\ifnum .................................. 167
\ifodd .................................. 168, 878
\iftrue .................................. 65
\ifvmode ................................ 281
\ifvoid ................................ 281
\ifx .................................... 27, 314
\indent .................................. 378
\infinity ................................ 249
\input .................................. 336
\input@path .............................. 197, 637, 10929, 10931, 11029, 11031
\italiccorr ................................ 869
\jobname .................................. 72, 581
\lastnamedcs ............................. 366
\lccode ................................. 429, 433, 825, 1193
\leavevmode .............................. 28
\let ..................................... 316
\let@charcode ............................ 854
\LL@shipout .............................. 1204
\longtoks ................................ 411
\long .................................... 5, 197, 391, 698
\lower ................................... 1356
\lowercase ................................ 539–532
\luaescapestring ......................... 99
\makeatletter ................................ 9
\MakeUppercase ............................ 1235
\matchchar ................................ 197
\matchchardef ........................... 190, 807, 1198
\mathop ................................ 1324
\mathord .................................. 292
\meaning .................................. 20, 187, 196, 197, 428, 867, 868, 877, 878
\mem@oldshipout ........................... 1205
\message .................................. 1206
\newcatcodeable ......................... 1181
\newif .................................. 65, 100
\newlinechar ............................. 117, 118, 345, 366, 591, 621, 670, 671, 698
\newread ................................ 612
\newtoks ................................ 43, 422, 449
\newline ................................ 618
\newwrite ................................ 618
\noexpand ................................ 39, 196, 390–393
\nullfont ................................ 869
\number .................................. 167, 804, 1064
\numexpr ................................ 344, 394
\opem@shipout ............................ 1206
\or ........................................ 167
\outer .................................. 313, 441, 442, 612, 618, 878, 1373, 1375
\parindent ................................ 28
\pdfescapehex ............................ 734
\pdfescapename ......................... 134, 734
\pdfescapestring ....................... 134, 734
\pdffilesize ............................. 656, 637
\pdfmapfile ................................ 338
\pdfmapline ................................ 338
\pdfstrcmp ............................... 311–314, 327
\pdfuniformdeviate ...................... 256
\pr@shipout ................................ 1208
\pgfpages@originalshipout ............ 1207
\pi ....................................... 249
\ProvidesPackage ......................... 9
\ProvidesClass .......................... 9
\ProvidesFile ................................ 9
\quitvmode ................................ 378
\read ..................................... 87, 616
\relax .................................... 88, 616
\relax@ ................................... 27, 196, 314, 359, 964, 975, 987, 996, 997, 1023
\RequirePackage ... 10, 314, 361
\reserveinserts .......................... 313
\savecatcodeable ......................... 1183
\scantokens ................................ 118, 136, 636, 669
\shipout .................................. 336
\show ..................................... 20, 109, 375
\showbox .................................. 1261
\showgroups ................................ 14, 376
\showthe .................................. 375, 824, 904, 908, 910
\showtokens ................................ 109, 596, 698
\sin ....................................... 249
\skip ....................................... 434, 435
\space ..................................... 869
\splitbotmark ............................. 869
\splitfirstmark ........................... 869
\SS ......................................... 1249
\string .................................. 187, 429–431
\tenrm .................................... 196
\the ...................................... 158, 196, 212, 216, 219, 382, 390–392, 394, 395, 804, 1258
\toks@ ..................................... 396
\toksdef .................................. 422
\topmark .................................. 197, 869
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\text_Udelimiterover</td>
<td>935</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Udelimiterunder</td>
<td>936</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Uextendsible</td>
<td>937</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathaccent</td>
<td>938</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathaxis</td>
<td>939</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathbinbinspacing</td>
<td>940</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathbinbinclosespacing</td>
<td>941</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathbininnerespacing</td>
<td>942</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathbinopspacing</td>
<td>943</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathbinordspacing</td>
<td>944</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathbinpunctspacing</td>
<td>945</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathbinrelspacing</td>
<td>946</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathchar</td>
<td>947</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathcharclass</td>
<td>948</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathchardef</td>
<td>949</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathcharfam</td>
<td>950</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathcharnum</td>
<td>951</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathcharnumdef</td>
<td>952</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathcharslot</td>
<td>953</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathclosebinspacing</td>
<td>954</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathclosebinrelspacing</td>
<td>955</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathclosebinorderspacing</td>
<td>956</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathclosebinnnerspacing</td>
<td>957</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathcloseopenbinspacing</td>
<td>958</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathcloseopenorderspacing</td>
<td>959</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathcloseopeninnerespacing</td>
<td>960</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathcloseopenpunctspacing</td>
<td>961</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathcloseopenrelspacing</td>
<td>962</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathcloseopenorderspacing</td>
<td>963</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathcloseopeninnerspacing</td>
<td>964</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathcloseopenrelclosespacing</td>
<td>965</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathcodenum</td>
<td>966</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathconnectoverlapmin</td>
<td>967</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathfractiondelsize</td>
<td>968</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathfractiondenomdown</td>
<td>969</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathfractiondenom网游ap</td>
<td>970</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathfractionnummunump</td>
<td>971</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathfractionnummunvgap</td>
<td>972</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathfractionrule</td>
<td>973</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathinnerbinspacing</td>
<td>974</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathinnerbinclosespacing</td>
<td>975</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathinnerbinnnerspacing</td>
<td>976</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathinneropenbinspacing</td>
<td>977</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathinneropenorderspacing</td>
<td>978</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathinneropeninnerspacing</td>
<td>979</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathinneropenrelclosespacing</td>
<td>980</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathinneropenrelorderspacing</td>
<td>981</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathinneropenpunctspacing</td>
<td>982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathinneropenrelrulespacing</td>
<td>983</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathinnerpunctspacing</td>
<td>984</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathinnerpunctrulespacing</td>
<td>985</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathinnerpunctrulespacing</td>
<td>986</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathlimitaboverevgap</td>
<td>987</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathlimitabovemargin</td>
<td>988</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathlimitabovemargin</td>
<td>989</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathlimitabovemargin</td>
<td>990</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathlimitabovemargin</td>
<td>991</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathlimitabovemargin</td>
<td>992</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathlimitabovemargin</td>
<td>993</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathlimitabovemargin</td>
<td>994</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathlimitabovemargin</td>
<td>995</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathlimitabovemargin</td>
<td>996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text_Umathlimitabovemargin</td>
<td>997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11202, 12260, 21450, 21455, 21604, 34028, 34439, 34610, 34972, 34993</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\tl_if_empty:nTF</td>
<td>\ldots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\tl_if_empty:p:n</td>
<td>\ldots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\tl_if_empty:p:n</td>
<td>\ldots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\tl_if_eq:NN</td>
<td>\ldots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\tl_if_eq:NN</td>
<td>\ldots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\tl_if_eq:nTF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\ldots</td>
<td>105, 123, 147, 174, 787, 12329, 18139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\tl_if_eq:NN</td>
<td>\ldots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\tl_if_exist:N</td>
<td>\ldots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\tl_if_exist:nTF</td>
<td>\ldots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\tl_if_exist:p:N</td>
<td>\ldots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\tl_if_head_eq:catcode:nN</td>
<td>\ldots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\tl_if_head_eq:catcode:nTF</td>
<td>\ldots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\tl_if_head_eq:catcode:pn</td>
<td>\ldots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\tl_if_head_eq:charcode:NN</td>
<td>\ldots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\tl_if_head_eq:charcode:nTF</td>
<td>\ldots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\tl_if_head_eq:charcode:pn</td>
<td>\ldots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\tl_if_head_eq:meaning:nN</td>
<td>\ldots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\tl_if_head_eq:meaning:nTF</td>
<td>\ldots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\tl_if_head_eq:meaning:pn</td>
<td>\ldots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\tl_if_head_is_group:nTF</td>
<td>\ldots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\tl_if_head_is_group:pn</td>
<td>\ldots</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

\Umathcloseclosespacing \hspace{1cm} 956 \hspace{1cm} \Umathordordspacing \hspace{1cm} 1019
\Umathcloseinnerspacing \hspace{1cm} 958 \hspace{1cm} \Umathordpunctspacing \hspace{1cm} 1020
\Umathcloseopenspacing \hspace{1cm} 960 \hspace{1cm} \Umathordrelspacing \hspace{1cm} 1021
\Umathcloseopspacing \hspace{1cm} 961 \hspace{1cm} \Umathoverbarkern \hspace{1cm} 1022
\Umathcloseordspacing \hspace{1cm} 962 \hspace{1cm} \Umathoverbarrule \hspace{1cm} 1023
\Umathclosepunctspacing \hspace{1cm} 963 \hspace{1cm} \Umathoverbargvgap \hspace{1cm} 1024
\Umathcloserelspacing \hspace{1cm} 965 \hspace{1cm} \Umathoverdelimiterbgap \hspace{1cm} 1025
\Umathcode \hspace{1cm} 966 \hspace{1cm} \Umathoverdelimitervgap \hspace{1cm} 1027
\Umathcodenum \hspace{1cm} 967 \hspace{1cm} \Umathpunctbinspacing \hspace{1cm} 1029
\Umathconnectoroverlap \hspace{1cm} 968 \hspace{1cm} \Umathpunctclosespacing \hspace{1cm} 1030
\Umathfractiondelsize \hspace{1cm} 970 \hspace{1cm} \Umathpunctinnerspacing \hspace{1cm} 1032
\Umathfractiondenomdown \hspace{1cm} 971 \hspace{1cm} \Umathpunctopenspacing \hspace{1cm} 1034
\Umathfractiondenomvgap \hspace{1cm} 973 \hspace{1cm} \Umathpuncttopspacing \hspace{1cm} 1035
\Umathfractionnumup \hspace{1cm} 975 \hspace{1cm} \Umathpunctordspacing \hspace{1cm} 1036
\Umathfractionnumvgap \hspace{1cm} 976 \hspace{1cm} \Umathpuncttrelspacing \hspace{1cm} 1037
\Umathfractionrule \hspace{1cm} 977 \hspace{1cm} \Umathpunctrelspacing \hspace{1cm} 1039
\Umathinnerbinspacing \hspace{1cm} 978 \hspace{1cm} \Umathquad \hspace{1cm} 1040
\Umathinnerclosespacing \hspace{1cm} 979 \hspace{1cm} \Umathradicaldegearafter \hspace{1cm} 1041
\Umathinnerinnerspacing \hspace{1cm} 981 \hspace{1cm} \Umathradicaldegeeafter \hspace{1cm} 1043
\Umathinneropenspacing \hspace{1cm} 983 \hspace{1cm} \Umathradicaldegeraise \hspace{1cm} 1045
\Umathinneropenspacing \hspace{1cm} 984 \hspace{1cm} \Umathradicalkern \hspace{1cm} 1047
\Umathinnerordspacing \hspace{1cm} 985 \hspace{1cm} \Umathradicalrule \hspace{1cm} 1048
\Umathinnerpunctspacing \hspace{1cm} 986 \hspace{1cm} \Umathradicalvgap \hspace{1cm} 1049
\Umathinnerrelspacing \hspace{1cm} 988 \hspace{1cm} \Umathrelbinspacing \hspace{1cm} 1050
\Umathinnerrelgap \hspace{1cm} 989 \hspace{1cm} \Umathrelclosespacing \hspace{1cm} 1051
\Umathinnerrelvgap \hspace{1cm} 990 \hspace{1cm} \Umathrelkern \hspace{1cm} 1052
\Umathinnerrelvgap \hspace{1cm} 991 \hspace{1cm} \Umathrelkern \hspace{1cm} 1053
\Umathinnerrelvgap \hspace{1cm} 992 \hspace{1cm} \Umathrelkern \hspace{1cm} 1054
\Umathinnerrelvgap \hspace{1cm} 993 \hspace{1cm} \Umathrelkern \hspace{1cm} 1055
\Umathinnerrelvgap \hspace{1cm} 994 \hspace{1cm} \Umathrelkern \hspace{1cm} 1056
\Umathinnerrelvgap \hspace{1cm} 995 \hspace{1cm} \Umathrelkern \hspace{1cm} 1057
\Umathinnerrelvgap \hspace{1cm} 996 \hspace{1cm} \Umathrelkern \hspace{1cm} 1058
\Umathinnerrelvgap \hspace{1cm} 997 \hspace{1cm} \Umathrelkern \hspace{1cm} 1059
\Umathinnerrelvgap \hspace{1cm} 998 \hspace{1cm} \Umathrelkern \hspace{1cm} 1060
\Umathinnerrelvgap \hspace{1cm} 999 \hspace{1cm} \Umathrelkern \hspace{1cm} 1061
\Umathinnerrelvgap \hspace{1cm} 1000 \hspace{1cm} \Umathrelkern \hspace{1cm} 1062
\Umathinnerrelvgap \hspace{1cm} 1001 \hspace{1cm} \Umathrelkern \hspace{1cm} 1063
\Umathinnerrelvgap \hspace{1cm} 1002 \hspace{1cm} \Umathrelkern \hspace{1cm} 1064
\Umathinnerrelvgap \hspace{1cm} 1003 \hspace{1cm} \Umathrelkern \hspace{1cm} 1065
\Umathinnerrelvgap \hspace{1cm} 1004 \hspace{1cm} \Umathrelkern \hspace{1cm} 1066
\Umathinnerrelvgap \hspace{1cm} 1005 \hspace{1cm} \Umathrelkern \hspace{1cm} 1067
\Umathinnerrelvgap \hspace{1cm} 1006 \hspace{1cm} \Umathrelkern \hspace{1cm} 1068
\Umathinnerrelvgap \hspace{1cm} 1007 \hspace{1cm} \Umathrelkern \hspace{1cm} 1069
\Umathinnerrelvgap \hspace{1cm} 1008 \hspace{1cm} \Umathrelkern \hspace{1cm} 1070
\Umathinnerrelvgap \hspace{1cm} 1009 \hspace{1cm} \Umathrelkern \hspace{1cm} 1071
\Umathinnerrelvgap \hspace{1cm} 1010 \hspace{1cm} \Umathrelkern \hspace{1cm} 1072
\Umathinnerrelvgap \hspace{1cm} 1012 \hspace{1cm} \Umathrelkern \hspace{1cm} 1073
\Umathinnerrelvgap \hspace{1cm} 1013 \hspace{1cm} \Umathrelkern \hspace{1cm} 1074
\Umathinnerrelvgap \hspace{1cm} 1014 \hspace{1cm} \Umathrelkern \hspace{1cm} 1075
\Umathinnerrelvgap \hspace{1cm} 1015 \hspace{1cm} \Umathrelkern \hspace{1cm} 1076
\Umathinnerrelvgap \hspace{1cm} 1016 \hspace{1cm} \Umathrelkern \hspace{1cm} 1077
\Umathinnerrelvgap \hspace{1cm} 1017 \hspace{1cm} \Umathrelkern \hspace{1cm} 1078
\Umathinnerrelvgap \hspace{1cm} 1018 \hspace{1cm} \underline{227, 21259}
\Umathopenrelspspacing \hspace{1cm} 1017 \hspace{1cm} \underline{471}
\Umathopeninnerspacing \hspace{1cm} 1016 \hspace{1cm}
Index

vbox commands:
\vbox:n ......... 271, 276, 32180
\vbox_gae:Nn .... 276, 32194, 32755
\vbox_gae:Nw .... 276, 32230, 32830
\vbox_gae:end: ... 276, 32230, 32832
\vbox_gae_split_to_ht:NNn 277, 32269
\vbox_gae_to_ht:Nnn .... 276, 32218
\vbox_gae_to_ht:Nnw .... 277, 32251
\vbox_gae_top:NNn .... 276, 32200
\vbox_set:Nn .... 276, 32194, 32749
\vbox_set:Nw .... 276, 32230, 32823
\vbox_set:end: ... 276, 32230, 32828
\vbox_set_split_to_ht:NNN 277, 32269
\vbox_set_to_ht:Nnn .... 276, 32218
\vbox_set_to_ht:Nnw .... 277, 32251
\vbox_set_top:NNn .... 276, 32200
\vbox_set:NNn .... 276, 32230, 32828
\vbox_to_ht:nn ... 276, 32180
\vbox_to_zero:n .... 276, 32184
\vbox_top:n .... 276, 32180
\vbox_unpack:N 277, 32265, 32769, 32846
\vbox_unpack_clear:N 36565
\vbox_unpack_drop:N 276, 32265, 36566
\vcenter .................. 484
\vcoffin commands:
\vcoffin_gae:Nn .... 283, 32746
\vcoffin_gae:Nw .... 283, 32821
\vcoffin_gae:end: ... 283, 32821
\vcoffin_set:Nn .... 283, 32746
\vcoffin_set:Nw .... 283, 32821
\vcoffin_set:end: ... 283, 32821
\vfi .................. 1156
\vfil .................. 485
\vfill .................. 486
\vfillneg ............... 487
\v fuzz .................. 488
\voffset ................. 489
\vpack .................. 898
\vrule .................. 490
\vsizes .................. 491
\vskip .................. 492
\vsplit .................. 493
\vss .................. 494
\vtop .................. 495
\wd .................. 496
\widowpenalties ........ 568
\widowpenalty ........ 497
\write .................. 498
\xdef .................. 499
\xtex commands:
\xtex_if_engine:TF .... 36569, 36571, 36573
\xtex_if_engine_p: .... 36567
\XeTeXcharclass ........ 706
\XeTeXcharglyph ........ 707
\XeTeXcountfeatures .... 708
\XeTeXcountglyphs ..... 709
\XeTeXcountselectors .. 710
\XeTeXcountvariations .. 711
\XeTeXdashbreakstate .. 713
\XeTeXdefaultencoding .. 712
\XeTeXfeaturecode ..... 714
\XeTeXfeaturename ..... 715
\XeTeXfindfeaturebyname .. 716
\XeTeXfindselectorbyname .. 718
\XeTeXfindvariationbyname .. 720
\XeTeXfirstfontchar .. 722
\XeTeXfonttype ........ 723
\XeTeXgenerateactualtext .. 724
\XeTeXglyph ........ 726
\XeTeXglyphbounds ...... 727
\XeTeXglyphindex .... 728
\XeTeXglyphname .... 729
\XeTeXinputencoding .. 730
\XeTeXinputnormalization .. 731
\XeTeXinterchartokenstate .. 733
\XeTeXinterchartoks .... 735
\XeTeXisdefaultselector .. 736
\XeTeXisexclusivefeature .. 738
\XeTeXdefaultencoding .. 740
\XeTeXlinebreaklocale .. 742
\XeTeXlinebreakpenalty .. 743
\XeTeXlinebreakskip .. 744
\XeTeXlinebreakpenalty .. 745
\XeTeXOTcountscripts .. 746
\XeTeXOTcountlanguages .. 748
\XeTeXOTscripttag ........ 749
\XeTeXOTlanguagetag ........ 751
\XeTeXOTfeaturetag ........ 753
\XeTeXdefaultencoding .. 755
\XeTeXupwardsmode ........ 756
\XeTeXselectorname ........ 758
\XeTeXlinebreaklocale ........ 759
\XeTeXinterchartokenstate ........ 760
\XeTeXinterchartoks ........ 762
\XeTeXglyphname ........ 764
\XeTeXglyphbounds ........ 765
\XeTeXglyphindex ........ 766
\XeTeXglyphname ........ 767
\XeTeXinputencoding ........ 769
\XeTeXinputnormalization ........ 771
\XeTeXinterchartokenstate ........ 773
\XeTeXinterchartoks ........ 775
\XeTeXisdefaultselector ........ 776
\XeTeXisexclusivefeature ........ 778
\XeTeXdefaultencoding ........ 780
\XeTeXlinebreaklocale ........ 782
\XeTeXinterchartokenstate ........ 784
\XeTeXinterchartoks ........ 786
\XeTeXisdefaultselector ........ 788
\XeTeXisexclusivefeature ........ 790
\XeTeXdefaultencoding ........ 792
\XeTeXupwardsmode ........ 794
\XeTeXselectorname ........ 796
\XeTeXlinebreaklocale ........ 798
\XeTeXinterchartokenstate ........ 800
\XeTeXinterchartoks ........ 802
\XeTeXisdefaultselector ........ 804
\XeTeXisexclusivefeature ........ 806
\XeTeXdefaultencoding ........ 808
\XeTeXupwardsmode ........ 810
\XeTeXselectorname ........ 812
\XeTeXlinebreaklocale ........ 814
\XeTeXinterchartokenstate ........ 816
\XeTeXinterchartoks ........ 818
\XeTeXisdefaultselector ........ 820
\XeTeXisexclusivefeature ........ 822
\XeTeXdefaultencoding ........ 824
\XeTeXupwardsmode ........ 826
\XeTeXselectorname ........ 828
\XeTeXlinebreaklocale ........ 830
\XeTeXinterchartokenstate ........ 832
\XeTeXinterchartoks ........ 834
\XeTeXisdefaultselector ........ 836
\XeTeXisexclusivefeature ........ 838
\XeTeXdefaultencoding ........ 840
\XeTeXupwardsmode ........ 842
\XeTeXselectorname ........ 844
\XeTeXlinebreaklocale ........ 846
\XeTeXinterchartokenstate ........ 848
\XeTeXinterchartoks ........ 850
\XeTeXisdefaultselector ........ 852
\XeTeXisexclusivefeature ........ 854
\XeTeXdefaultencoding ........ 856
\XeTeXupwardsmode ........ 858
\XeTeXselectorname ........ 860
\XeTeXlinebreaklocale ........ 862
\XeTeXinterchartokenstate ........ 864
\XeTeXinterchartoks ........ 866
"
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\kanjiskip</td>
<td>1152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\leaders</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\spaceskip</td>
<td>501</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\spcode</td>
<td>1153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\ybaselineshift</td>
<td>1154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\year</td>
<td>502, 1317, 8990</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\yoko</td>
<td>1155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\c_zero</td>
<td>36383</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>